GUIDE TO THE STUDY AND READING OF AMERICAN HISTORY

CHANNING-HART-TURNER

NIVERSITY LIBRARIES
ASHINGTON, DC 20059

WITHDRAWN

1236
C45

COPYRIGHT, 1896, BY EDWARD CHANNING AND
ALBERT BUSHNELL HART

YRIGHT, 1912, BY EDWARD CHANNING, ALBERT BUSHNELL HART
AND FREDERICK JACKSON TURNER
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

630.1

DUNBARTON COLLEGE
LIBRARY

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

In 1896 appeared the *Guide to the Study of American History*, which is the foundation of the present work. The two original authors have taken part in the preparation of the volume now laid before the public, and with them has joined Professor Turner. The book is therefore the outcome of thirty years' experience in the study and teaching of American history by the three authors, and is based upon their own class work and investigation. Their point of view is that every scholar owes it to the cause to communicate his collection of materials, so that through such mutual exchange American history may be made clearer and more authentic.

In several ways the present work differs from the preceding form: it has been extended from 1865 down to 1910; it includes a great number of references to the immense literature which has accumulated since 1896; it replaces earlier and less accessible books with references to more available works; it enlarges and increases the sections on social, economic, and industrial history; and it includes a new set of references from the growing wealth of writings upon the West.

As in the previous issue, the volume is divided into parts. Part I attempts to make clear the general place of American history as a study, a recreation, and a discipline. Part II is a reclassified and enlarged set of references to groups of related books, such as general works, biographies, sources, and so on. This is intended to contain the titles of the most significant books dealing with America, the United States, the states, and notable individuals and phases of history. It must be understood that all these lists are selected from a larger mass of material, and are not intended to be complete or comprehensive bibliographies. Part III includes the pedagogical apparatus of the work, much reduced in length from the first edition because of the large amount of good material on the teaching of American history

which has come forward in the last sixteen years. In § 10, Part I, is a bibliography of books and articles on this subject.

Parts IV, V, and VI contain references made and classified on an entirely different basis from that of the earlier part of the work. Under one hundred and seventy-nine successive topics appear specific references to works and designated parts of works, arranged under the four captions, General, Special, Sources, and Bibliography. These references are intended to be useful to readers, students, and teachers who wish to be directed to the most convenient and most available treatment of particular subjects. In some cases, particularly in the topics on economic and social history, there is a subdivision easily understood by the user.

As to the general scope of the work a paragraph may be quoted from the preface to the first edition: "No one can be better aware than the authors of the inadequacy of this work; the immense mass of rich material on American history cannot be condensed into a single volume; and doubtless much has been omitted that ought to go in, or inserted that might well be left out. It is to be remembered, however, that the plan of the work does not admit of complete bibliographical information on any topic. It has been our endeavor to select out of the available material that likely to be most immediately useful to the searcher into political, social, constitutional, and economic history. For the antiquarian and the genealogist we have not been able to provide. We have, however, noted as many as possible of the more elaborate bibliographies, to serve as guides to more complete information; and we have ventured to save space in some cases by referring to bibliographies or other material previously prepared by the same hands."

In the preparation of the book every effort has been made to select accurate references and to verify them. The Index covers, together with other matter, an alphabetic list by authors of most of the works to which reference is made; but, inasmuch as little additional information is given by a mere second reference to a title, the Index enters only that page upon which the name of a book is printed in full, with place and date of publication, or on which the book is first mentioned if the title is nowhere given fully. In spite of all efforts to the contrary, errors have doubtless crept in; and the

authors will be grateful for any indication of mistakes, and for any suggestions as to the improvement of the *Guide* in case later editions should be called for. Without the expert aid of David M. Matteson and Miss Addie F. Rowe, the work could not have been carried to completion.

All three authors take joint responsibility for the whole book; but Professor Channing has been especially interested in Part II (Classified Bibliography) and Part IV (Colonial History and the Revolution); Professor Hart has worked upon Parts I and III (Methods), and Part V (United States History to 1865); Professor Turner has taken responsibility for most of the references on the West, and for Part VI (Recent United States History).

EDWARD CHANNING
ALBERT BUSHNELL HART
FREDERICK J. TURNER

CAMBRIDGE, August 31 1912

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

https://archive.org/details/reprintguidetost0000chan

CONTENTS

PART I

STATUS AND METHODS

CHAPTER PAGE

I. STATUS OF AMERICAN HISTORY

§ 1. What is American History? 1
§ 2. Relation to the History of Other Countries . . 2
§ 3. Materials for American History 3
§ 4. Proper Position in a Curriculum 4
§ 5. Educational Value of American History . . . 5
§ 6. Complexity and Unity 6
§ 7. The Truth in American History 8
§ 8. Point of View 10
§ 9. Convenient Subdivisions 12

II. HISTORICAL METHODS

§ 10. Bibliography of Methods 15
§ 11. Reports of Conferences and Societies 16
§ 12. Books and Essays on Methods 17
§ 13. Selected Periodical Articles on Methods . . . 19
§ 14. Collateral Authorities on Methods 22
§ 15. Place of Method 22
§ 16. Preparation of Teachers 23
§ 17. School Work 24
§ 18. College Work 25
§ 19. Investigation 25
§ 20. Study without a Teacher 26

PART II

CLASSIFIED BIBLIOGRAPHY

III. BIBLIOGRAPHICAL AIDS

§ 21. Special Aids 28
§ 22. Formal Bibliographies 30

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 23. Topical Outlines 31
§ 24. Useful Indexes 32
§ 25. Useful Library Catalogues 34
§ 26. Indexes to Public Documents 35

IV. GENERAL WORKS

§ 27. General Reference Books 38
§ 28. Brief Histories 40
§ 29. Larger Comprehensive Works 41

V. GEOGRAPHY

§ 30. Historical Geography 45
§ 31. Physical Geography of America 47
§ 32. Physical Maps of North America 49
§ 33. Historical Maps 50
§ 34. Sources of Historical Geography 51
§ 35. Gazetteers, Geographies, and Registers 53

VI. SPECIAL WORKS

§ 36. Works on Special Topics 57
§ 37. State and Local Histories 62
§ 38. Books of Travel 89
§ 39. Biographies 102

VII. SOURCES

§ 40. Periodicals 122
§ 41. Newspapers 125
§ 42. Collections of Public Records and Statutes . . 128
§ 43. Colonial, State, and Local Records, Statutes, and Constitutions 132
§ 44. United States Records 152
§ 45. Publications of Learned Societies 157
§ 46. Collected Works of American Statesmen . . 163
§ 47. Autobiographies and Reminiscences . . . 168
§ 48. Unofficial Collections of Narratives, Documents, and Speeches 176
§ 49. Manuscript Sources 180

VIII. ILLUSTRATIVE WORKS

§ 50. Illustrative Material 182
§ 51. Historical Novels 183
§ 52. Poems and Ballads 189

PART III

TEACHING AND READING HISTORY

CHAPTER PAGE

IX. WORKING LIBRARIES

§ 53. Necessity of Working Libraries 191
§ 54. Small Collections 191
§ 55. Small Standard Library 193
§ 56. Collateral Use of Public Libraries 194
§ 57. Use of Great Libraries 195
§ 58. Special Use of Libraries by Students . . . 196

X. CLASS EXERCISES

§ 59. Recitations 198
§ 60. Use of Textbooks 199
§ 61. Chronology and Memorizing 199
§ 62. Reviews 206
§ 63. The "Quiz" 207
§ 64. Physical Geography and Maps 208
§ 65. Political Geography 209
§ 66. Illustrative Methods 210
§ 67. Historical Recreations 210
§ 68. Debates 211
§ 69. Oral Reports of Pupils 212
§ 70. Student Lectures 212
§ 71. Seminaries 213
§ 72. Classroom Tests 214
§ 73. Oral Examinations 214
§ 74. Formal Written Tests 215

XI. HISTORICAL READING

§ 75. Necessity of Reading 216
§ 76. Consecutive Reading 217
§ 77. Topical Reading 217
§ 78. Conference System 217
§ 79. How to use Books 218
§ 80. Secondary and Primary Materials 220
§ 81. Use of Sources 220

XII. LECTURES

§ 82. Talks by Teachers 222
§ 83. Formal Lectures 222

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 84. Student's Note Taking in Lectures . . . 223
§ 85. Investigator's Note Taking 225
§ 86. Giving out References 227

XIII. Written Work

§ 87. Written Reviews 228
§ 88. Brief Written Recitations 228
§ 89. Classroom Papers 229
§ 90. Topical System 229
§ 91. Subjects for Topics 230
§ 92. Composition in Historical Subjects . . . 231
§ 93. Special Report System 232
§ 94. Essay or Thesis System 232
§ 95. Monographs 234

PART IV

COLONIAL HISTORY AND THE REVOLUTION
1492–1783

XIV. Discovery and Latin Colonization, 1492–1783

§ 96. Physiography of North America 236
§ 97. Geography of North America, 1492–1775 . . 236
§ 98. Archæology 240
§ 99. The Aborigines 241
§ 100. Pre-Columbian Discoveries 243
§ 101. Columbian Discoveries 244
§ 102. Companions and Successors of Columbus . . 245
§ 103. Naming of America 246
§ 104. The Spanish Conquerors 247
§ 105. The Spaniards in the United States . . . 248
§ 106. Early French Explorers 249
§ 107. Huguenot Settlements 250
§ 108. Champlain and French Colonization in the North 251
§ 109. French Explorers in the Interior 252
§ 110. Settlement of Louisiana 253

XV. English Explorers and the Southern Colonies, 1497–1760

§ 111. The Cabots 255

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 112. The English Seamen 256
§ 113. The Ralegh Colonies 257
§ 114. Genesis of the United States 258
§ 115. The Virginia Colony to 1624 258
§ 116. Virginia, 1624–1688 260
§ 117. Provincial Virginia, 1688–1760 261
§ 118. Settlement of Maryland 262
§ 119. Puritans in Maryland 263
§ 120. The Carolinas 264
§ 121. Georgia 265

XVI. Middle Colonies, 1609–1760

§ 122. New Netherland 266
§ 123. The English in New York 267
§ 124. New Jersey 268
§ 125. Settlement of Pennsylvania 269
§ 126. Pennsylvania and Delaware, 1685–1760 . . 270

XVII. New England, 1607–1760

§ 127. New England before 1620 272
§ 128. The English Puritans 272
§ 129. The Pilgrims 273
§ 130. Plymouth, 1620–1629 274
§ 131. New Plymouth Colony, 1629–1691 . . . 275
§ 132. The Council for New England 275
§ 133. Early Massachusetts, 1620–1628 276
§ 134. The Massachusetts Bay Company . . . 277
§ 135. Development of Massachusetts, 1630–1650 . . 278
§ 136. Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1636–1640 280
§ 137. Rhode Island to 1665 281
§ 138. Connecticut, 1638–1662 281
§ 139. New Haven Colony, 1638–1662 282
§ 140. Northern Settlements, 1620–1660 . . . 283
§ 141. The New England Confederation . . . 283
§ 142. The Quakers 284
§ 143. King Philip's War 285
§ 144. Overthrow of the Massachusetts Charter . . 285
§ 145. The Tyranny of Andros 286
§ 146. Provincial New England 286

CHAPTER PAGE

XVIII. EXPULSION OF THE FRENCH, 1689–1763

§ 147. Conflict with France on the Seaboard . . 288
§ 148. Struggle for the Possession of the Great Valleys 289

XIX. THE REVOLUTION, 1760–1783

§ 149. The Colonies in 1760 291
§ 150. Passive Resistance, 1761–1766 295
§ 151. Active Resistance, 1767–1774 298
§ 152. Revolution Precipitated, 1772–1776 . . . 301
§ 153. The Declaration of Independence, 1774–1776 . 303
§ 154. The War in the Middle States and in the West 304
§ 155. The French Alliance 308
§ 156. The War in the Southern Department . . 309
§ 157. The Treaty of Peace 310
§ 158. Formation of the Confederation, 1775–1783 . 311
§ 159. The State Constitutions, 1775–1781 . . . 313

PART V

UNITED STATES HISTORY, 1781–1865

XX. GENESIS OF THE UNION, 1607–1775

§ 160. Political Geography of the United States, 1775–1911 316
§ 161. People of the United States, 1607–1911 . . 317
§ 162. The English in the West, 1730–1775 . . 318
§ 163. English Political Institutions to 1775 . . 323
§ 164. Colonial Political Institutions 325
§ 165. Colonial Social Institutions and Slavery . . 327

XXI. CONFEDERATION AND CONSTITUTION, 1781–1788

§ 166. Government of the Confederation, 1781–1788 . 329
§ 167. Territorial Questions under the Confederation, 1781–1789 330
§ 168. Settlement of the West and Land Policy, 1775–1789 331
§ 169. Finances of the Confederation, 1781–1788 . . 333
§ 170. Slavery Questions under the Confederation, 1774–1787 334

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 171. Foreign and Commercial Relations of the Confederation, 1783–1789 335
§ 172. States under the Confederation, 1781–1788 . 337
§ 173. The Federal Convention of 1787 . . . 339
§ 174. Ratification of the Constitution, 1787–1790 . 341
§ 175. Theories of the Constitution 343

XXII. Organization of the Government, 1789–1801

§ 176. Organization of the Three Departments of Government, 1789–1793 346
§ 177. Organization of a Financial System, 1789–1791 . 348
§ 178. Doctrine of Implied Powers, 1789–1911 . . 350
§ 179. Political Parties, 1789–1793 351
§ 180. Territorial and Slavery Questions, 1789–1802 . 352
§ 181. Foreign and Indian Relations, 1789–1798 . . 354
§ 182. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1792–1797 356
§ 183. Breach with France, 1797–1800 . . . 358
§ 184. Alien and Sedition Acts, and Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 1798–1800 . . 360
§ 185. Fall of the Federalists, 1799–1801 . . . 361

XXIII. Foreign Complications, 1801–1815

§ 186. Thomas Jefferson and his Party, 1801–1805 . 363
§ 187. Annexation of Louisiana, West Florida, and Oregon, 1800–1812 365
§ 188. The Burr Conspiracy, 1803–1807 . . . 367
§ 189. Neutral Trade, 1789–1807 368
§ 190. The Embargo and Non-Intercourse, 1807–1811 . 370
§ 191. The War of 1812, 1812–1815 371
§ 192. Opposition to the War, 1811–1815 . . . 374
§ 193. Settlement of the West, 1789–1820 . . . 375

XXIV. Reorganization, 1815–1829

§ 194. Financial and Commercial Organization, 1816–1820 379
§ 195. The Great Constitutional Decisions, 1792–1824 . 381
§ 196. Era of Good Feeling in Politics, 1817–1825 . 383
§ 197. The Missouri Compromise 384
§ 198. The Monroe Doctrine 386
§ 199. Administration of John Quincy Adams . . 388

CHAPTER PAGE

XXV. JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829–1837

§ 200. Development of American Society, 1820–1860 391
§ 201. Development of Industry and Transportation, 1820–1860 398
§ 202. Development of Labor and Occupations, 1820–1860 405
§ 203. Development of Government and Administration, 1820–1860 408
§ 204. Andrew Jackson and his Policy . . . 412
§ 205. Jackson's War on the Bank, 1829–1832 . . 414
§ 206. Tariff and Nullification, 1828–1833 . . . 415
§ 207. Removal of the Deposits, 1833–1837 . . 417
§ 208. Territorial Questions and Surplus Revenue, 1829–1841 419

XXVI. SLAVERY AND TEXAS, 1830–1848

§ 209. Negro Slavery from 1830 to 1860 . . . 421
§ 210. The Abolition Movement, 1830–1850 . . 423
§ 211. Public Controversy as to Slavery, 1835–1844 . 425
§ 212. International and Interstate Status of Slavery, 1830–1850 426
§ 213. Van Buren's Administration, 1837–1841 . . 428
§ 214. The Whigs and Tyler, 1840–1844 . . . 430
§ 215. Exploration of the Far West to 1850 . . 431
§ 216. Trade and Settlement of the Far West to 1850 433
§ 217. Northeastern and Northwestern Boundaries, 1783–1846 437
§ 218. Annexation of Texas, 1836–1846 . . . 439
§ 219. The Mexican War, 1846–1848 441
§ 220. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1845–1849 443

XXVII. THE SLAVERY CRISIS, 1846–1860

§ 221. Territorial Crisis, 1846–1849 445
§ 222. Compromise of 1850 447
§ 223. Fugitive Slaves and Anti-Slavery Propaganda, 1850–1860 449
§ 224. American Diplomacy, 1844–1860 . . . 451
§ 225. Kansas-Nebraska Act, 1854 452
§ 226. The Kansas Struggle, 1854–1861 . . . 454
§ 227. Rise of the Republican Party, 1852–1858 . 456

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 228. Dred Scott Decision and John Brown's Raid, 1857–1859 458
§ 229. Presidential Election of 1860 459

XXVIII. The Civil War Period

§ 230. The Sections Compared, 1861 462
§ 231. Theory of Secession 464
§ 232. Process of Secession, 1860–1861 . . . 466
§ 233. Coercion and Compromise, 1860–1861 . . 468
§ 234. Abraham Lincoln and the Outbreak of War, 1860–1861 470
§ 235. The Southern Confederacy, 1861–1865 . . 472
§ 236. Military Events of the Civil War, 1861–1865 . 475
§ 237. Financial Measures of the Civil War, 1861–1865 478
§ 238. International Complications of the War, 1861–1865 480
§ 239. National Administration and Northern People during the War, 1861–1865 . . . 483
§ 240. Abolition of Slavery, 1861–1865 . . . 485

PART VI

RECENT UNITED STATES HISTORY, 1865–1910

XXIX. Reconstruction and Development, 1865–1872

§ 241. Presidential and Congressional Reconstruction, 1863–1868 489
§ 242. Carpetbag and Negro Rule, 1868–1877 . . 495
§ 243. Financial Reconstruction, 1865–1872 . . 498
§ 244. Foreign Relations, 1865–1885 . . . 500
§ 245. Development of the Mining Frontier, 1859–1876 502
§ 246. Continental Railroads, 1861–1872 . . . 504
§ 247. Indian Relations, 1860–1876 505
§ 248. Lands and Western Agriculture, 1862–1880 . 507

XXX. Political Reaction, 1872–1880

§ 249. Administrative Demoralization and the Liberal Republicans, 1869–1875 . . . 510

CHAPTER PAGE

§ 250. Transportation and the Granger Movement, 1867–1877 512
§ 251. Disputed Election and the Closing of Reconstruction, 1876–1879 514
§ 252. Financial Questions, 1873–1880 516
§ 253. Commercial Reorganization, 1865–1880 . . 517

XXXI. New Industrial Foundations, 1880–1890

§ 254. Administrative Problems and the Surplus, 1880–1884 520
§ 255. Democratic Administration, 1885–1889 . . 521
§ 256. Capital and Labor, 1885–1890 523
§ 257. Canal Diplomacy, 1866–1889 525
§ 258. Problem of Immigration, 1878–1898 . . 528
§ 259. Extension of Transportation and Population to the Northwest, 1880–1890 530
§ 260. Extension of Transportation and Population to the Great Plains and the Southwest, 1880–1896 533
§ 261. The New South, 1870–1895 536

XXXII. Economic Unrest, 1890–1898

§ 262. Money and Tariff, 1890–1898 539
§ 263. Foreign Relations, 1885–1897 543
§ 264. Development of the Pacific Coast, 1890–1910 . 545

XXXIII. The Transforming Nation, 1898–1910

§ 265. Cuba and the Spanish-American War, 1895–1899 549
§ 266. Government of Dependencies, 1899–1910 . 551
§ 267. American Diplomatic Problems, 1901–1910 . 554
§ 268. The Orient, 1861–1910 557
§ 269. The Trust Problem, 1898–1910 560
§ 270. Labor and Injunction, 1894–1910 566
§ 271. Tariff, 1898–1910 570
§ 272. Politics and Parties, 1900–1910 571
§ 273. Conservation 576
§ 274. American Society in the Twentieth Century . 581

Index 587

GUIDE TO AMERICAN HISTORY

PART I. STATUS AND METHODS

CHAPTER I

STATUS OF AMERICAN HISTORY[1]

§ 1. What is American History?

USED in its broadest sense, the term "American History" would mean an account of everything that has ever happened within the western hemisphere. But such an inclusion would be beyond the bounds of human acquirement; for previous to the discovery by Europeans written records are few and are with the greatest difficulty deciphered. The records of Mexico and Peru have little that is suggestive to the modern world; native traditions are scanty and ill-preserved; among the Indians there were no great national organizations, and hence little history in the modern sense. There is little significance to present-day readers in American history earlier than the discovery by Columbus. Before that we get but an imperfect notion of native communities confusedly struggling with each other, and a few far-away suggestions of earlier discoverers. It is impossible to ascertain even the race origin of the aborigines.

In the development of America during the historic period the Latin-American races have had a large part. Spain was the first to discover, first to conquer, first to colonize. France preceded England, both on the Atlantic coast (except for Cabot) and in the interior. Portugal was in the field a century earlier than England as a colonizing American power. During the three hundred years

[1] A longer discussion of this subject may be found in the *Guide*, 1st ed. (1896), §§ 1–7.

of colonization two of these three powers shared in the development of regions which later became English, or a part of the United States. Since about 1820, however, the parts of Latin America not incorporated in the United States have pursued a separate road and developed a civilization and history of their own.

It is common and allowable, therefore, for the people of the United States to use the term "American History" to cover the history of the regions now a part of the continental United States and subject to the dominance of Anglo-Saxon ideas and institutions. This includes the history of the Spanish, French, Dutch, and Swedish colonies; the extension of the English flag previous to the Revolution; and the growth, development, and external and internal affairs of the United States of America down to the present day. It is for the field thus defined and circumscribed that this volume undertakes to analyze the events and tendencies.

§ 2. Relation to the History of Other Countries

Throughout the story it should be recognized that the history of America cannot be entirely separated from that of the Old World; we must take into account the nations out of which our civilization has sprung, and particularly England. The early colonies brought with them an inheritance of ideas: the feudal system; the medieval church; traditions of Roman law and institutions; aristocracy and royalty; civil and criminal law and justice. The English colonists who came to the most vigorous and permanent colonial life had also an obstinate belief in the English principles of personal freedom, local self-control, representative government, and the traditional common law, which are the common inheritance of all the members of the Anglo-Saxon race.

Hence a reasonable point of departure for the study of American history is a brief account of the conditions of the colonizing countries, and particularly of England, at the beginning of the colonization period; for these social and political ideas were as much a part of the outfit of the colonists as their clothing, arms, and cattle.

From discovery to the independence of the Spanish-American states, the history of the colonies and the United States is closely

enwrapped with the history of the European powers. Then for about eighty years the United States had few political relations with European countries except with the possessors of neighboring colonies. Since 1898 the United States has become an Asiatic power, and through its relations with other European powers in the Orient seems likely to take part in the general affairs of the world.

§ 3. Materials for American History

Although there were throughout colonial times historians of this or that colony, it was not till fifty years after the Revolution that a literature of American history sprang up; and most of the renowned writers of the nineteenth century such as Bancroft, Irving, Prescott, and Parkman, were attracted by the romantic and eventful side of the colonial period. Since the Civil War there has grown up a second cycle of historical writers, — Fiske, Schouler, McMaster, Henry Adams, Holst, Rhodes, Avery, and others, — who have undertaken to write on considerable areas of American history in detail, and from a broad standpoint of interest in the various developments of American life. A swarm of monographs has also poured from the press, founded upon archives, manuscript collections, and the enormous mass of publications from historical and other learned societies.

The textbooks of American history were at first of the Mercy Warren or Peter Parley type, — dull summaries of the colonial and revolutionary periods, or easy-going, gossipy little books. Until about 1880 there was no school history of the United States written by anybody who had made himself an expert in American history. Now there are many such books, which not only are truthful and reasonably impartial, but deal with social, economic, and industrial history as well as with political events, and refer the pupil to the best detailed accounts.

This development of sources, secondary books, and textbooks is a proof that the American people look upon their history as worth reading about, worth studying, and worth teaching to their children. In schools, academies, and universities American history is recognized as an important and often an essential subject. The material is, however, still much unorganized, and methods

of dealing with it are in many places crude and unformed. To open up highways and footpaths into this literature, and thus to contribute to sound learning and accurate judgment of cause and effect, is another purpose of this work.

§ 4. Proper Position in a Curriculum

The most recent discussions of the teaching of history in elementary schools advise Indian and frontier stories on American history in the first grade; and formal study with textbooks as early as the sixth grade (which is about the eleventh year of age for most children) is recommended in the Report of the Committee of Eight on the *Study of History in Elementary Schools* and in Bliss, *History in the Elementary Schools* (see §§ 9, 12 below). American history is an almost universal subject in the high school, sometimes taken up in three different years.

There should be no study of American history without somewhere in the course also a study of the history and conditions of the countries and eras from which much of American civilization is derived. Greek and Roman history are important to the American youth, not because originally written in Greek and Latin, but because our ideas of the government of republics, of the concentration and diffusion of power, and of the nature of law are largely an inheritance from those wonderful peoples. American children need cross-lights, contacts with other races and experiences. On the other hand, American children need formal teaching on the conditions that they see around them in their own towns, cities, states, and Union. In many schools the method of historical treatment is from within outward, beginning with the town meeting or city government, and widening to state, nation, all America, and the rest of the world. For high school and college pupils the obverse of this method is advisable, — beginning with a study of ancient, medieval, or English history, as preceding and conditioning American history.

Laterally, American history is closely related to several other subjects that have by force of circumstances come into the curriculum. Such are civil government, political science, constitutional law, economics, and international law, which last is in these

days of close approach between nations becoming an essential part of the outfit of well-educated persons.

§ 5. Educational Value of American History

The time has long gone by when history had a slender hold upon the schools as an adjunct to the study of Greek and Latin. History is an intellectual discipline which has many peculiar advantages. Like literature, it deals with humanity, with character, with intellectual progress. Like the sciences, it is based on a body of facts, some of which must be kept in mind through the training of the memory. Like economics, it abounds in generalizations drawn from a multitude of data, and it develops the judgment. Like philosophy, history attempts to study the workings of the human mind, and from the experiences of the past to derive some light for the future. Few subjects studied in school or college bring so clearly to the mind the process of arriving at the truth out of a mass of apparently chaotic material.

The history of the United States is inferior to that of no other country in the romance of discovery, border warfare, and frontier life, or in the record of the material results of a nation's efforts. The Indians are certainly as interesting in customs, warfare, and tribal government as the ancient Germans. The three centuries of strife between these native races and the white invaders — what Parkman calls "the history of the forest" — is one of the world's treasure houses of romantic episodes, comparable with the history of chivalry. To the men and the principles of the Revolution the world has agreed to give its admiration. The later settlement of the West is a movement not less important than the migrations of the nations at the close of the period of greatness of the Roman Empire. The slavery struggle, culminating in the Civil War, is one of the two most important and interesting episodes since the French Revolution. In no other country have the modern rivalries of capital and labor, and of associations of capital and individuals, been so clearly brought out; and no other country has more resolutely attempted to find a remedy for the resulting evils.

As a training in the use of materials, American history has the

great advantage of possessing a large body of sources in English, the only language known to most school children; and these are scattered abroad in many available volumes. The stimulating study of local history by American young people is of course confined to American history. Logical reasoning is as well applied to the growth of the United States as to the growth of Rome; and accurate knowledge, the foundation of good judgment, is much easier to attain.

As a means of training the judgment, American history has also great advantages. The mind is chiefly developed in three ways: by cultivating the power of discriminating observation; by strengthening the logical faculty of following an argument from point to point; and by improving the process of comparison, that is, the judgment. It seems reasonable to claim that judgment about a country into the spirit of which a child is born ought to have as sound a basis, and to be as quickly applicable to new problems, as judgment about a foreign nation with which its associations are purely artificial. The principal purpose of the study of history is to put the student into such a frame of mind that he may apply known principles to things with which he is for the first time confronted. It is the best training for administrative duties, for citizenship, for public life, and especially for the decision of any question which needs a knowledge of the past for its settlement. As for the study of character and the value of example, American history furnishes a host of strong, individual, idea-producing men.

§ 6. Complexity and Unity

Few countries have a history more complex and more difficult to reduce to a system than the United States. Many native races of various degrees of barbarism, and most races of Europe, besides some of Africa, have helped to people the United States. Settlements began at a number of widely separated points along the coast, and expanded into many little commonwealths, each with its own institutions, interests, and public men. Many of the early commonwealths became merged into others, as New Plymouth and New Haven; most of these commonwealths continued, and the nation has thrown off additional states till there are now

forty-eight, each having a history of its own. The central government is complicated, and each part of it has had its peculiar growth. It is difficult to find a clew through the maze; but it is not impossible, if regard be had for certain well-defined principles.

In the first place, the first settlers whose children were to control North America were of one stock, and had one general set of institutions which they brought with them from Britain. As the English race grew and developed, Britain and the colonies diverged both from one another and from the original type, the colonies perhaps less than the mother country; but to this day the two nations have substantially the same system of law and the same political traditions.

In the second place, the significant part of America has never ceased growing since the beginning. Colonization has always been going on through the immigration of foreigners and through the steady westward movement; in our day, also, through the acquisition of tropical colonies, both in America and in Asia. Because of this unceasing change the basis of the nation has continually been widening; hence unexpected changes have succeeded each other in the make-up of the general government.

The sectional divergences which at one time threatened to wreck the Union have ceased to alarm. The building of roads, canals, and railroads on the Atlantic coast, inland, and thence to the Pacific, has forever bound together the East and the West. Slavery, which for eighty years was a cause of difference between North and South, has long since come to an end. The people of the whole United States are constantly coming closer together.

Since the Revolution the history of the states and cities has to a large degree been merged in that of the Union. Public attention is, indeed, centered too much on national affairs and national statesmen. The present great problem of the United States is to make the government correspond to the economic and social problems which are increasing in greatness and in number. National, state, and local governments all have a similar task, and are moved by one general public opinion. It is therefore possible to make the history of federal America interesting, instructive, and uplifting; American history is one of the most valuable disciplines of the schools and colleges.

§ 7. The Truth in American History

Like all study of the annals of mankind, American history abounds in uncertain, disputed, and hotly controverted questions. The voyages of Vespucius, the purposes of Nathaniel Bacon, the loyalty, or otherwise, of Charles Lee, Jackson's orders in Florida, the Battle of the Maps, McClellan's strategy, the blowing up of the *Maine*, are examples of questions which apparently no research can settle, because the materials are too scanty or the prejudices of writers too great. What is the guarantee of the teacher or the reader that any particular thing happened, or that any particular man was bad, or good, or like Franklin Pierce?

The main occurrences of American history are better verified than those of most countries, because they are comparatively recent and are founded on undisputed records. The date of the discovery of America is stated by Columbus; the landing at Plymouth stands on Bradford's history; the X Y Z correspondence is found in the diplomatic archives of the government; the battle of Manila is described in the report of Admiral Dewey. America is rich in contemporary records of every kind, — private letters, official reports, records of town meetings, assemblies, and congresses, newspapers, the works of travelers and observers. The exact dates of notable events have been worked out by a succession of careful scholars, and with few exceptions are not assailed.

Doubtless many important and significant events have not been recorded: we are at the mercy of the sense, judgment, and discrimination of voyagers, town clerks, and newspaper editors. On the other hand, the events and personages of greatest significance have been brought into prominence by the constant discussion of later times. Probably no important Atlantic coasting voyage previous to 1560 escaped the lawyers who later made up arguments for the possession of the coast, based upon such voyages. In like manner, the character and motives of men like Daniel Webster, Thaddeus Stevens, and Grover Cleveland have been studied from so many points of view that notable happenings in their lives can hardly have escaped notice. The facts of American history are reasonably well established.

The choice out of the enormous number of facts presumably true is a different matter; it depends on the wisdom and impartiality of secondary writers in dealing with the first-hand materials for themselves, and choosing one event out of a hundred because to their minds it is typical of broad conditions. Hence, any one who reads two histories by competent minds in the same field will be struck with the things which seem to one writer vital and by another are omitted.

The great difficulty of all historical writing is to arrive at the motives of the individuals whose relations with each other form the tangled web of history; for the occurrences of nature — storm, flood, earthquake, and dark day — form but a trifling part of what mankind has agreed to consider history. Motives are things which a man's intimate friends frequently cannot discover; and later generations are often still more deceived by a reputation, bad or good, which a man has acquired in his lifetime, and which goes on down indefinitely. Hence the endless discussions over such characters as Charles I., William Penn, Thomas Hutchinson Andrew Jackson, Stephen A. Douglas, and James G. Blaine. Were they single-minded patriots? Were they hypocrites and self-seekers? Were they mixtures of good and bad qualities? No final results can be reached on such questions. The only historical truth that can be impregnably established about them is that it is not possible to penetrate into the intricacies of human character. Nevertheless, the place of most American public characters is pretty definitely fixed by the consensus of historical writers. Franklin, Washington, Jefferson, Lincoln, Hamilton, have an undisputed place among the world's great men; and, if there is dispute as to the motives of Webster, Calhoun, Jefferson Davis, or Samuel J. Tilden, their relation to the history of their times is indisputable.

More difficult still is the study of sectional or national motives; and from century to century what seemed to be absolutely established judgments come to be modified. We now admit that Andros was not simply a tyrant, that he had in view a consolidation of the colonies which might have been to their advantage. The colonies in 1775 were not ground down by oppression, but, as a matter of fact, were freer than any civilized people of their

times. In 1861 the North thought most of the Southern people pirates and traitors, and the South thought most of the Northern people cowards and ogres: both opinions have been dispelled by fifty years' experience. The searcher for historical truth becomes convinced that even bad individuals have some good in them, and that national enemies may, when peace is declared, appear very decent fellows.

§ 8. Point of View

The search for historical truth depends in great part on what writers and readers of history look upon as the really significant part of the nation's life. On this subject there has been a great change since the beginning of systematic study of national history, about one hundred years ago. For a long time historians, and particularly writers of textbooks, were chiefly interested in warfare, — wars with the Indians, wars with the French and Spanish, the Revolutionary War, and so to the end. There is a romantic and exhilarating side to frontier fighting, — Miles Standish is a kind of American Cid; but the details of all warfare are a technical matter, about as instructive to the ordinary reader as the calculation of stresses for bridge building. Alongside this militant matter came naturally some account of the externals of colonial, and later of state and national, governments: the governors, and their quarrels with the assemblies; early legislation; and especially the quaint social and criminal laws. As a part of the Revolutionary War, came into the histories the Declaration of Independence, which has had a deserved attraction for the young American.

Not till after the Civil War did the development of forms of government in the colonies and in the United States come to be recognized as an essential part of the study of American history. Then general histories and textbooks began to trace modern democracy from England through the colonial governments into the Revolution, and out of it to the national government. A still later development has been to see that the state governments and the city governments, as they came along, were a part of the experience of the nation, interwoven with national progress.

The next step was to discover that the political side of Ameri-

can history did not account completely for the extraordinary growth of the nation. Then arose a school of historians who busied themselves with the study of the social customs of the people; who followed the immigrant to the factory and the frontiersman to his farm; who treated the dress, food, and houses of the Americans as indications of their standards of life; who studied their educational systems, reviewed their literature, examined their labor systems, went into their religious life, and tried to present them as they actually lived, moved, quarreled, plowed, and prayed.

From the social life it was a short step to the economic and the industrial, particularly as it came to be seen that laws and governments were extremely affected by the occupations and the markets of the people. Hence there strode into the formal history and the textbook an investigation into the physical setting of the colonies: the mountains, rivers, forests, prairies, and seaports; the products most easily gathered; exports and imports, course of commerce, shipping and internal transportation; fisheries; manufactures; governmental restrictions, whether English or colonial; the economic reasons for colonial prosperity and for the Revolution.

Gradually all these different points of view have been fused into the conviction that the true American history must take into account all the great factors of the life of a community: the character of the population; its spread upon the land; its pursuits; its social, and particularly its religious, life; its efforts to create governments that would answer the needs of its complicated existence; the great principles of human rights and of human government which underlie all American laws and constitutions. From this comprehensive point of view the national controversies must all be described and judged. For instance, slavery no longer appears as simply a moral question, or as a political issue, a balancing of sections; it is also a race question and an economic question, a contest between rival forms of labor.

In such an attempt to generalize, to assemble events, tendencies, and states of public opinion, it is necessary to keep in mind the unequal development of various parts of the Union, and the coming of one section after another into the common life. Thus, in colonial history every writer notices and treats separately

the New England, Southern, and Middle groups. Every writer brings into prominence the later differences in habits and point of view between the Northern and Southern states. Only in the last few decades has it been clearly seen that the West has always had and still has an individuality of its own, and that the Pacific slope has a yet different origin and course of growth, while the new dependencies add another element to make up the national composite.

The *Guide* undertakes to analyze the whole chronological course of American history, keeping in mind all these various points of view. In the numbered sections below will be found summaries and references upon political, international, national, state, and municipal questions in their historic aspects. The aim is to give aid to the searcher into party history, social history, economic history, industrial history, the history of North, South, West, the islands of the sea, and all the other parts of one general and comprehensive history of the United States of America.

§ 9. Convenient Subdivisions

Students and teachers of American history are much aided by a subdivision of the field into appropriate periods. While the history of America, like that of every country, is a continuous series of events and episodes springing out of previous ones, there are many recognizable transition points between which material may be grouped.

So many elaborate and careful systems have been drawn up for this purpose that the users of this book may be referred to the abundant works on method, containing analyses of the subject; and to those secondary histories, particularly school textbooks, which are carefully and logically arranged. Some of the most helpful of these subdivisions are to be found in the following books on method.

In *History Teachers' Magazine*, I, No. 4, and II, No. 5, is a bibliography of syllabi, many of which contain outlines of American history. Helpful syllabi of this kind are the following:

John G. Allen, *Topical Studies in American History*. Rev. ed. N.Y., 1899.

American Historical Association, Committee of Eight, *Study of History in the Elementary Schools;* also in the Association's *Annual Report,* 1906, I, 72–86. (See § 11 below.) — Contains topics on American history intermixed with those of European history.

A. W. Bacheler, *Reference Handbook of American History by the Library Method for Secondary Schools.* Boston, 1895. — Gives 223 topics on the period 1781–1889.

W. F. Bliss, *History in the Elementary Schools Methods, Courses of Study, Bibliographies.* N.Y., etc., 1911. — A topical analysis of the whole subject.

Edward Channing and A. B. Hart, *Guide to the Study of American History.* 1st ed. Boston, 1896. — Subdivisions into ten, twenty, fifty, and one hundred topics, covering American history to 1895, appear in §§ 7 a–7 d.

George R. Crissman, *Library Method in American History; a Reference Outline and Guide.* Davisville, N.Y., 1905. — Covers the history to 1905 in 109 main topics with many subdivisions.

G. S. Hall, *Method in Teaching History.* Rev. ed. Boston, 1885. (See § 12 below.) — Contains a list of subdivisions to 1877.

A. B. Hart, *Manual of American History, Diplomacy, and Government: for Class Use.* Cambridge, Mass., 1908.— Contains 90 detailed topics on the period 1789–1903; and 30 for the period 1775–1903; besides lists of 90 and 30 topics on diplomatic history from 1492 to 1907.

Andrew C. McLaughlin, *Teaching of American History.* N.Y., 1899. — A pamphlet to accompany his school history; contains a list of topics.

New England History Teachers' Association, *History Syllabus for Secondary Schools.* Boston, 1904. — 39 headings, to 1904, each with subdivisions.

Many of the textbooks in American history are subdivided into periods and epochs, and most of the more recent ones are arranged in consecutively numbered paragraphs — ranging from 400 to 700 topics. Examples are:

E. Channing, *Students' History of the United States.* N.Y., 1897, and later eds. — With a "perspective" showing subdivisions in four degrees.

W. F. Gordy, *History of the United States for Schools.* New ed. N.Y., 1911. — 450 topics.

A. B. Hart, *Essentials in American History.* N.Y., 1905, and later eds. — 507 topics.

A. C. McLaughlin and C. H. Van Tyne, *History of the United States for Schools.* N.Y., 1911. — 737 topics.

D. H. Montgomery, *Leading Facts of American History*. New ed. Boston, 1910. — 432 topics.

In the advanced and comprehensive histories of the United States (see §§ 28, 29) the division into periods is little accented. *The American Nation*, § 29, in its twenty-six volumes of text, has about five hundred chapters, which are substantially topics. In the two brief series, *American History Series* and *Epochs of American History* (see § 28 below) there are convenient subdivisions with topics.

CHAPTER II

HISTORICAL METHODS[1]

§ 10. Bibliography of Methods

To the subject of methods in history great attention has been paid of late years, and a considerable literature both of books and periodical articles has grown up. Those mentioned in this book are almost all in English. The principal works dealing with the subject are as follows:

Mary Sheldon Barnes, *Studies in Historical Methods.* Boston, 1896. — Part v is a bibliography.

G. Stanley Hall and John Mansfield, *Hints toward a Select and Descriptive Bibliography of Education.* Boston, 1886. — Includes the titles of many books, pamphlets, and articles on history, especially at pp. 140–149.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *How to Study and Teach History with Particular Reference to the History of the United States.* N.Y., 1894. (International Education series, Vol. XXV.) — Bibliographical note at the beginning of each chapter. An admirable book in arrangement and execution.

National Educational Association, *Fiftieth Anniversary Volume,* Winona, Minn., 1907. — Pages 692–693 contain a bibliography of articles on history teaching which had been published in the *Proceedings* of the Association from 1889 to 1905.

James W. Thompson, *Bibliography upon the Teaching of History in Secondary Schools Abroad.* (*School Review,* XV, 217–218.) Chicago, 1907.

United States Bureau of Education, *Bulletin: Bibliography of Education.* Washington, 1908–. — A periodic work of which two numbers, covering 1907–1909, have been issued. Contains a section on history teaching.

[1] This subject is treated at much greater length in the *Guide,* 1st ed., Boston, 1896, §§ 8–14.

James I. Wyer, *Bibliography of the Study and Teaching of History.* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1899, I, 559–612.) Washington, 1900. — The most comprehensive list, containing foreign as well as English works. The bibliography was intended to form a section of the report of the Committee of Seven (see § 11 below), but only a part of the titles are given as Appendix vii in that report.

§ 11. Reports of Conferences and Societies

During recent years various associations of teachers of history have published the proceedings of their meetings, and have also put forth reports by special committees on methods of teaching history. The American Historical Association also, through three special committees, as well as by several conferences on particular phases of the question, has made important contributions to the study of method.

American Historical Association, *Annual Reports:* 1905, I, 133 and 1906, I, 61 ("Conferences on History in Elementary Schools"); 1905, I, 147 and 1906, I, 105 ("Conferences on History in College"); 1907, I, 43 ("Conference on Relation of Geography and History"); 1908, I, 65 ("Conference on History in Secondary Schools").

American Historical Association: Committee of Eight, *Study of History in Elementary Schools.* N.Y., 1909. — Ranks with Bliss, *History in the Elementary Schools* (see § 9), as the standard on its subject.

American Historical Association: Committee of Five, *Study of History in Secondary Schools.* N.Y., 1911. — A reconsideration of the report of the Committee of Seven (see next title).

American Historical Association: Committee of Seven, *Study of History in Schools.* N.Y., 1899. Also in the Association's *Annual Report*, 1898, p. 427. — An epoch-making work in the teaching of history.

Association of History Teachers of the Middle States and Maryland, *Annual Conventions*, 1903–. — Much discussion of methods.

National Education Association: Committee on Secondary School Studies (Committee of Ten), *Report, with the Reports of the Conferences.* (United States Bureau of Education, Whole No. 205.) Washington, 1893; another edition, N.Y., 1894. The "Report of the Conference on History, Civil Government, and Political Economy" is at pp. 162–203 in both editions. — This is the first and most influential of the reports on history teaching.

National Society for the Scientific Study of Education, *Second Year*

Book. Chicago, 1903. — Part ii contains a "Course of Study in History in the Common School."

New England History Teachers' Association, *Publications* [*Annual Register* and *Report*, and occasional issues, 1897–]. — Many discussions based on actual experience.

New England History Teachers' Association, *Historical Sources in School*. (See § 22.)

New England History Teachers' Association, *History Syllabus*. (See § 9.)

North Central History Teachers' Association, *Proceedings*, 1899–. Chicago, [1899–]. — Discussions and reports.

§ 12. Books and Essays on Methods [1]

J. E. E. D. Acton (baron), *Lecture on the Study of History*. N.Y., 1895.

Herbert B. Adams, *The Study of History in American Colleges and Universities*. (United States Bureau of Education, *Circular of Information*, No. 2, 1887.) Washington, 1887.

Rafael Altamira, *La Enseñanza de la Historia*. 2d ed. Madrid, 1895.

Hubert H. Bancroft, *Literary Industries*. (*Works*, Vol. XXXIX.) San Francisco, 1890. — An account of the method of his historical work.

Mary Sheldon Barnes, *Studies in Historical Methods*. Boston, 1896. — Originally prepared with especial reference to use of sources.

Ernst Bernheim, *Lehrbuch der historischen Methode und der Geschichtsphilosophie*. 4th ed. Leipsic, 1903. — The standard modern German work.

Henry E. Bourne, *Teaching of History and Civics in the Elementary and the Secondary School*. (American Teachers series.) N.Y., 1902. — A full, sane, and comprehensive book; one of the best.

John B. Bury, *Inaugural Lecture* [*on the Science of History*]. Cambridge, Eng., 1903.

F. M. Fling and H. W. Caldwell, *Studies in European and American History: an Introduction to the Source Study Method in History*. Lincoln, Neb., 1898. — The best aid to the source method.

Frank H. Foster, *The Seminary Method of Original Study in the Historical Sciences Illustrated from Church History*. N.Y., 1888.

[1] Several titles of books on historical method no longer in print may be found in the *Guide*, 1st ed., Boston, 1896, § 15 a.

Edward A. Freeman, *Methods of Historical Study*. London, 1886. — Eight lectures read in the University of Oxford. Not pedagogical.

W. F. Gordy and W. I. Twitchell, *A Pathfinder in American History*. Boston, 1893. — For the use of teachers, normal schools, and more mature pupils.

G. Stanley Hall, editor, *Methods of Teaching History*. Boston, 1883; 2d ed., 1885, entirely recast and rewritten. (Pedagogical Library, Vol. I.) — Essays by various hands. Bibliography of French and German works, pp. v–viii. Now overshadowed by more recent works.

Frederic Harrison, *The Meaning of History*. London, 1894.

A. B. Hart, *Studies in American Education*. N.Y., 1895. — Essays iv and v are on the study and teaching of history.

B. A. Hinsdale, *How to Study History*. (See § 10.) — Very helpful to the teacher.

Oskar Jäger, *Teaching of History*. Translated from the German by H. J. Clayton. Oxford, 1908. — On teaching history in Prussian schools.

Maurice W. Keatinge, *Studies in the Teaching of History*. London, 1910.

Karl Lamprecht, *Alte und neue Richtungen in der Geschichtswissenschaft*. Berlin, 1897. — Develops the author's theories of vital history.

Karl Lamprecht, *What is History?* Translated from the German by E. A. Andrews. N.Y., 1905.

C. V. Langlois and Charles Seignobos, *Introduction aux Études Historiques*. Paris, 1898. English translation, by G. G. Berry. N.Y., 1898. — Standard French book on the subject.

William H. Mace, *Method in History for Teachers and Students*. Boston, 1897. — General in treatment, but illustrates from American history.

Charles A. McMurry, *Special Method in History: a Complete Outline of a Course of Study in History for the Grades below the High School*. N.Y., 1903.

Frederick W. Maitland and others, *Essays on the Teaching of History*. Cambridge, Eng., 1901.

James F. Rhodes, *Historical Essays*. N.Y., 1909. — Essays i–iv treat of method in historical writing; by an expert in graphic writing.

H. J. Rogers, editor, *Congress of Arts and Science, Universal Exposition, St. Louis*. Vol. II, *History;* Vol. VI, *Social Sciences*. Boston, 1906. — Various papers on historical methods and problems.

James Schouler, *Historical Briefs*. N.Y., 1896. — Several of the essays are on method in writing history; with some reference to his own experience.

A. W. Small, *The Meaning of Social Science*. Chicago, [1910]. — An exposition of the need of coöperation by history and other social sciences.

§ 13. Selected Periodical Articles on Methods

Academy, Syracuse. [*Discontinued in 1892*]

A. B. Hart, *History in High and Preparatory Schools* (II, 256, 306: 1887); I. B. Burgess, *Methods of Teaching College Preparatory History* (III, 293: 1888); Mary S. Barnes, *General History in the High School* (IV, 285: 1889); Lucy M. Salmon, *History in Academies and Colleges* (V, 283: 1890); Rose B. Winterburn, *History in High Schools* (VI, 510: 1891).

American Antiquarian Society Proceedings, Worcester

W. E. Foster, *Point of View in History* (new series, XVII, 349: 1906). —One of the most stimulating studies of the subject.

Papers of the American Historical Association, Washington

W. H. Mace, *Organization of Historical Material* (V, 143: 1891).

Reports of the American Historical Association

1896, H. B. Adams, *Teaching of History* (I, 243); J. H. Robinson, *Teaching of European History* (I, 265); 1897, J. A. Woodburn, *Undergraduate Students and the Use of Sources* (p. 43); 1898, Mary R. W. Stubbert, *Cambridge School of History* (p. 381); 1899, C. M. Andrews, *Should Recent European History have a Place in the College Curriculum?* (I, 537); 1900, Edward Eggleston, *New History* (I, 35); 1902, A. T. Mahan, *Subordination in Historical Treatment* (I, 49).

American Historical Review, New York

J. W. Burgess, *Political Science and History* (II, 401: 1897); A. B. Hart, *Historical Opportunity in America* (IV, 1: 1898); F. M. Fling, *Historical Synthesis* (IX, 1: 1903); H. C. Lea, *Ethical Values in History* (IX, 233: 1904); Goldwin Smith, *Treatment of History* (X, 511: 1905); A. H. Lloyd, *History and Materialism* (X, 727: 1905); S. E. Baldwin, *Religion still the Key to History* (XII, 219: 1907); D. J. Hill, *Ethical Function of the Historian* (XIV, 9: 1908); G. B. Adams, *History and the Philosophy of History* (XIV, 221: 1909); A. B. Hart, *Imagination in History* (XV, 227: 1910); F. J. Teggart, *The Circumstance or the Substance of History* (XV, 709: 1910); F. J. Turner, *Social Forces in American History* (XVI, 217: 1911).

Atlantic Monthly, Boston

Goldwin Smith, *Study of History* (XXV, 44: 1870); A. T. Mahan, *Writing of History* (XCI, 289: 1903); Carl Becker, *Detachment and the Writing of History* (CVI, 524: 1910).

Education, Boston

J. L. Hughes, *Topical Reading of History* (II, 410: 1882); J. M. Greenwood, *Teaching of History* (IV, 623: 1884); H. P. Judson, *History in Secondary Schools* (VI, 19: 1885); H. B. Adams, *History in American Colleges* (Harvard, VI, 535, 618: 1886; Columbia, VII, 7, 92; Amherst, VII, 177; Yale, VII, 334: 1887); S. MacKibbin, *Outline Course of Study in History* (X, 159: 1889); W. Boughton, *Study of Local History* (XIII, 400: 1893); Lucy M. Seymour, *Teaching History* (XVII, 624: 1897); M. A. Tucker, *Modern Methods of Teaching History* (XX, 220: 1899); Edward McMahon, *History in our Public Schools* (XXIII, 109: 1902); M. A. Carringer, *Preparation for History Teaching* (XXVI, 275: 1906); A. C. Barrows, *Teaching History* (XXIX, 140: 1908); C. A. Ellwood, *How History can be Taught from a Sociological Point of View* (XXX, 300: 1910); Charles Welsh, *Outlook in Teaching History* (XXXI, 370: 1911).

Educational Review, New York

Lucy M. Salmon, *History in Elementary Schools* (I, 438: 1891); R. G. Huling, *History in Secondary Education* (VII, 448: 1894); A. B. Hart, *Entrance Requirements in History* (X, 417: 1895); Emily J. Rice, *History in the Common Schools* (XII, 169: 1896); *Text-books in American History* (XVI, 480: 1898); Anna B. Thompson, *How to study History* (XVII, 167: 1899); G. E. Howard, *Study of History in Schools* (XIX, 257: 1900); H. B. Learned, *College Preparatory Work in American History* (XXII, 397: 1901); *History Teaching in New York State* (XXIII, 400: 1902); Lucy M. Salmon, *How should the Entrance Examination Paper in History be constructed?* (XXVI, 22: 1903); Smith Burnham, *History in the Schools* (XXVII, 521: 1904); Ellen G. Davison, *History in German Secondary Schools* (XL, 356: 1910).

Elementary School Teacher, Chicago

History in the Grades (V, 528–558: 1905).

History Teacher's Magazine, Philadelphia

This monthly journal, of which the first number appeared in September, 1909, is entirely devoted to the teaching of history in schools and colleges.

Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science, Baltimore

H. B. Adams, *Methods of Historical Study* (II, Nos. 1, 2: 1884); A. D. White, *European Schools of History and Politics* (V, No. 12: 1887);

P. Fredericq, *Study of History* (in England and Scotland, V, No. 12: 1887; in Germany and France, VIII, Nos. 5, 6; and in Belgium and Holland, No. 10: 1890).

Journal of Philosophy, Psychology, and Scientific Methods, New York

J. H. Robinson, *Relation of History to the Newer Sciences of Man* (VIII, 141: 1911).

Nation, New York

Situation of History in Secondary Schools (LXXXV, 225, 279, 323, 324: 1907). — Discussion by several teachers.

National Education Association Proceedings and Addresses

Volume for 1906 (*Fiftieth Anniversary Volume*), pp. 692–693, a list of all the articles on history teaching published in the *Proceedings* (also to be reached through pp. 88–89 of the *Index to the Publications for the First Fifty Years*); 1909, V. K. Froula, *Scope and Value of History in the High School* (p. 507).

Popular Science Monthly, New York

Lynn Thorndike, *Scientific Presentation of History* (LXXVI, 170: 1910).

Psychological Review, Baltimore

Hugo Münsterberg, *Psychology and History* (VI, 1: 1899).

School Review, Chicago

New England Association of Colleges and Preparatory Schools, *Report of the Conference on College Entrance Requirements*, and *Complete Report of the Tenth Annual Meeting* (III, 469, 597: 1895); O. J. Thatcher, *Preparation for College in History* (VI, 84: 1898); E. V. D. Robinson, *Ideal Course in History in Secondary Schools* (VI, 672: 1898); W. M. Sloane, *How to bring out the Ethical Value of History* (VI, 724: 1898); H. E. Bolton, *Place of American History in the High School Course* (IX, 516: 1901); G. W. Knight, *What the Teacher of American History should Be and Do* (X, 208: 1902); A. D. Cromwell, *Source, or Scientific, Method in History* (XI, 677: 1903); Lotta A. Clark, *A Good Way to Teach History* (XVII, 255: 1909); J. M. Gillette, *Reconstruction of History for Teaching Purposes* (XVII, 548: 1909); L. A. Chase, *Institutional History in the High School* (XVIII, 698: 1910).

Teachers' College Record, New York

Problem of Adapting History to Children in the Elementary School (IX, 293: 1908).

§ 14. Collateral Authorities on Methods

Parts of some of the general books contain special material on American history, especially Hall, Bourne, Fling and Caldwell, Hinsdale, and Mace (see § 12). Special suggestions to teachers may be found in the introduction to many of the brief school histories, especially E. Channing, *Students' History of the United States;* W. F. Gordy, *History of the United States for Schools;* A. B. Hart, *Essentials of American History;* A. C. McLaughlin, *Teaching of American History*, published to accompany his *History of the American Nation* (see § 9).

§ 15. Place of Method [1]

It is easy to plunge into the study of American history; to reach a satisfactory result is more difficult. No other historical subject has more need of intelligent selection of topics and references, or of systematic and thorough investigation.

"Method" is simply the use of devices which experience has suggested for gaining and holding the student's or reader's interest, and for applying his time and thought in such a way as to make mental effort go farthest toward securing a permanent impression. Method is simply a means to an end; the objects to be attained are simple, and a few principles may be laid down as to the best way of attaining them.

The primary necessity in history is to know the truth, and that implies that every student should see for himself how history is written. This is best done by some study of the sources; hence all good methods include at least information about the original records on which a statement is based. In schools this part of the work can usually be done by the use of extracts from the sources; in colleges a considerable body of sources on limited subjects may be used; in graduate work the student must learn to exhaust all the sources of information on his subject.

The next essential is to train the student to handle secondary works with discrimination. In schools this may be done by using several parallel textbooks, and comparing them with standard

[1] This subject is treated at greater length in the *Guide*, 1st ed., Boston, 1896, §§ 8–14.

authors; in colleges by wide collateral reading; in advanced work by studying authors and tracking them back to their sources. One of the first things to break up in a child's mind is the confidence that "it must be so because the book says so"; he must learn to discriminate between accurate and inaccurate books, between accounts written at second or third hand and records of contemporaries.

The task of finding material which bears on a particular subject grows harder as books multiply; hence every pupil, reader, teacher, and investigator must know how to use bibliographical aids, with the least possible expenditure of energy. In schools such work must be very simple, and may be confined to the lists of books in textbooks and standard authors; in colleges every student should learn how to use library and periodical indexes; in investigation a knowledge of bibliography opens the gate to many important fields of material.

The study of history also includes experience in recording what one hears or reads; hence a good method includes training in note taking and in the statement of results in a clear and comprehensible fashion. The youngest child can note historical facts in their simplest and broadest form. In the college, where lectures are common, notebooks are indispensable. To the investigator, training in workmanlike note taking is especially desirable, for on it the value of his conclusions often depends.

§ 16. Preparation of Teachers

In 1893 the Conference on History, Civil Government, and Political Economy, in its Report to the Committee of Ten, thought it necessary to give this warning: "Finally, we urge that only teachers who have had adequate special training shall be employed to teach these important subjects." Such preparation is no longer difficult to get by those who are fitting themselves for the profession of teaching; and, through self-preparation and the summer extension and collegiate courses open in various universities and cities, it is not out of the reach of those already in service.

Assuming good general training, how is the teacher to prepare for the day's exercises? He should in his own reading have

accumulated extracts and illustrations with which to enrich the lesson; he should know the textbook so well that he need not open it. The teacher's function is not only to enforce study, but also to arrange and organize the material outside the textbook, to apply it where it will enlarge the textbook, and to stimulate the pupils.

§ 17. School Work

What part of the work in American history may be undertaken in primary and secondary schools? The most advanced suggestion is that the study of history should extend over eight years, of which about a third to a half would be given to American history and allied subjects, such as civil government. Children should usually first hear and then read the legends and stories, then take up the lives of notable people. When sufficiently advanced, they should cover the whole field in a simple textbook; later they should go over the same ground again with a more advanced textbook, wider reading, topical work, and compositions on subjects chosen from American history, taking up as parallel studies civil government and the principles of economics. Throughout the course, historical geography ought to be taught, reiterated, and enforced, till it comes home to the child's mind as an inseparable part of historical study. Illustrative methods should also be used, such as the display of maps, charts, and lantern-slides; and interest may be stimulated by visits to historic places, by debates, and by mock legislatures. Children may also be aroused by the study of their own local history and institutions.

History is almost the only subject in the grammar school curriculum dealing with human character and motives as a basis for study. To pupils going on to colleges and professional schools it should be a foundation for later work. Toward the end of the grammar school course there should be a year devoted to American history taught as a practical and not simply as a textbook subject. In the high schools the instruction should include more use of materials and more written work, more instruction in kindred subjects, such as European history, economics, and government.

§ 18. College Work

With older minds, already accustomed to read, to study, and to digest history, the only textbook should be some brief and comprehensive book, intended merely to show the relation of the parts of the subject and the development of one period out of another. Details should be gained by extensive reading, so arranged as to take in a variety of authors. Historical reading is like the making of Japanese lacquer work: one imperceptible coating is added to another; by and by it is found that where the layers are most numerous a pattern stands out in relief. The literature in American history is extraordinarily rich in biographies and books of reminiscence, as well as in the works of public men; so that there is opportunity to weigh opinions and set them over against each other. (See § 78 for a description of a method of collateral reading known as the "conference system.")

The college is also a place where written work of all kinds is most easily carried out. In later pages (§§ 87–95) several systems are described in detail. In American history such work is especially advisable; in few subjects is there such a variety of topics of every degree of difficulty, many of them as yet unwrought. The college has also an atmosphere of interest in political and historical matters, which makes possible many side devices for lighting up the subject, such as lectures, public debates, discussions, and the like. Furthermore, it is possible in college to specialize in American history — to take courses in the theory of government, in constitutional law, in American diplomacy, in financial or economic history, in American government or American literature, — and to make a special study of some one period or topic.

§ 19. Investigation

Investigation is the most difficult kind of historical study; but it is perhaps the most valuable sort of training, because it requires patience and thoroughness in searching for material, judgment in selecting out of it the cogent facts, a peculiar use of the analytical powers in arranging and classifying it, a high degree of mental force in making generalizations, and quick imagination in so stating the results as to appeal to other minds.

These advantages may be gained throughout all the parts of the educational field. The youngest pupil who begins to study history for himself may be taught to bring in a contribution of facts got somewhere outside of the textbook. As he progresses, more emphasis may be laid on the difference between contemporary accounts and records and later works based on such material.

In college the benefits of investigation can best be gained by practice in going to the bottom of very limited subjects, so as to be prepared in later life to look up historical points or intelligently to review the work of others. In the graduate school, and often in the upper classes of the college, where there is an opportunity for specialization, historical investigation becomes the most important element in the student's training. He must learn to exhaust the literature of the subject, to use all the available material, and to make himself master of that which he undertakes to investigate.

§ 20. Study without a Teacher

Since the material of history is to be found in considerable part in print, the subject is one which can be carried on without a teacher and even without access to a large library. A distinction must be made between reading history and studying it: the study of history implies a concentration upon a field small enough to permit the use of various parallel authorities.

American history is well adapted for home study. The first necessity is to choose some brief books which cover the ground in a summary fashion, so that the student may have in his mind the dimensions of the subject; then comes the process of widening, the working out of the ground plan of the historical edifice. For this purpose the student should choose some of the standard histories, such as are suggested in § 29 below or through the topical analyses (§ 23). Many students have derived benefit from the practice of writing out in brief form the ideas which have been gathered from reading on some previous day.

Having thus gone over several books on a period, the student begins to find that one effaces another; the knowledge of men and events laboriously acquired begins to dissolve in the very multiplicity of facts. Hence it is desirable for the student at

home to make up some written outline of his subject, arranged in what seems to him a logical order. This outline will be in a sense his own history.

The student at home should not neglect the use of sources. Presumably he will not have material so abundant that he may base his study upon it; but he ought to read enough to give him that flavor of original accounts which is indispensable for the right understanding of history.

It is difficult to get a sharp and permanent impression from general books, or even from sources, without some system of note taking. Students may do too much of this. They need not copy out long, exact quotations from books which are perfectly accessible; they should reduce the author's statements to a brief form. Notes should be a summary rather than a digest; they should state the main points with sufficient illustration to make the argument clear. The principal danger for the lonely student is always that he will read too much and absorb too little.

PART II. CLASSIFIED BIBLIOGRAPHY

CHAPTER III

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL AIDS

§ 21. Special Aids

No systematic bibliography concerning the whole field of American history has as yet been completed, though several works cover portions of the field in detail; and there are numerous special bibliographies of persons, periods, or special subjects.

A list of bibliographies and check lists of American history is P. L. Ford, *Check List of Bibliographies . . . of American Books and Subjects*, Brooklyn, 1889; and the *Annual Literary Index* and *Annual Library Index* (1892–) list current bibliographies on general and specific topics (see § 24 below, under Poole).

The most significant bibliographies on a considerable scale are as follows:

Joseph Sabin, *Dictionary of Books relating to America* (see § 24). This is intended to include the title of every book published in America or about America; but it contains only titles up to the dates of the several volumes (1868–1892), and it does not refer to periodicals. It now (1911) reaches the name of Henry H. Smith; publication has been suspended and the work is out of print. A set, including all numbers so far published, would probably cost five hundred dollars.

Charles Evans, *American Bibliography* (§ 24) has only reached 1785 and will not extend beyond 1820.

Bradford and Henkel, *Bibliographer's Manual* (§ 24) is confined to state and local history.

F. Leypoldt, *American Catalogue* and its continuations (§ 24) contain the titles of all books in print in America in 1876, and since issued. Marion E. Potter, *United States Catalog* (§ 24) serves the same purpose for book in print in 1902 or since issued.

Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History* (§ 29) is a work of vast learning, and includes admirable bibliographies of all subjects treated up to about 1820, giving the titles of the best books issued up to the date of publication.

J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History* (§ 22) is a very helpful coöperative work with characterization of over four thousand titles, topically arranged.

Writings on American History (§ 24) is an annual bibliography, including articles in periodicals and proceedings of societies. It was first issued for the year 1902.

The publications of American and Canadian historical societies down to 1905 have been made available by A. P. C. Griffin's *Bibliography of American Historical Societies* (§ 24).

Historical articles in general literature and essays may be found through W. I. Fletcher's *A. L. A. Index* (§ 24), supplemented by the lists in Guthrie's *Readers' Guide* (§ 24) and the *Annual Library Index* (see § 24, under Poole).

For periodical literature, *Poole's Index*, Guthrie's *Readers' Guide*, and L. A. Jones's *Index to Legal Periodical Literature* are indispensable guides. Jones's work stops with 1899, but since 1908 its place has been taken by the *Index to Legal Periodicals* (see § 24).

None of the great American libraries has recently issued a printed catalogue (see § 25), though the card catalogues of the Boston Athenæum, Boston Public Library, Harvard College Library, Library of Congress, and New York Public Library are especially serviceable; and printed catalogue cards on almost any subject in American history can be bought from the Library of Congress (see § 24). Full titles of most books published before 1900 can be found in the printed catalogue of the British Museum.

Several topical outlines have been prepared by college and other teachers, some of which are listed in §§ 9, 23; but they usually deal little with sources.

During recent years there has been much activity in making guides to the government documents, so that Poore's *Catalogue*, formerly the only general help, has been both supplemented and partly superseded (see § 26).

For many subjects the easiest path of entrance is by the footnotes and bibliographical chapters or appendices of the standard histories (see § 29) and biographies (§ 39). The most serviceable are those of George Bancroft in the earlier volumes of his first edition and his *History of the Constitution;* Henry Adams, *United States;* E. M. Avery, *United States;* Edward Channing, *United States;* A. B. Hart, *American Nation;*

H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies;* H. von Holst, *Constitutional History;* J. B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States;* J. F. Rhodes, *United States since 1850;* J. Schouler, *United States;* and, more than all others for this purpose, Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History.*

§ 22. Formal Bibliographies

C. K. Adams, *Manual of Historical Literature, comprising Brief Descriptions of the Most Important Histories in English, French, and German.* N.Y., 1882. — Discusses a limited number of authors and works.

C. M. Andrews, J. M. Gambrill, and L. L. Tall, *A Bibliography of History for Schools and Libraries.* N.Y., 1910. — The most recent comprehensive work.

E. L. Bogart, *Economic History of the United States.* N.Y., 1908. — Bibliography at pp. 471–502. Summarizes economic work.

R. R. Bowker and George Iles, editors, *Reader's Guide in Economic, Social, and Political Science.* (Economic Tracts, No. 27.) N.Y., 1891. — A classified bibliography, American, English, French, and German, with descriptive notes, author, title, and subject index, courses of reading, college courses, etc.; now almost out of date.

Paul Leicester Ford, *Pamphlets on the Constitution of the United States.* Brooklyn, 1888. — "Bibliography and Reference List of the History and Literature of the United States Constitution," at pp. 381–441. Standard list on its subject.

A. B. Hart, editor, *The American Nation: a History.* 26 vols. and index vol. N.Y., 1904–1908. — A bibliographical chapter at the end of each volume, subdivided into topics.

Harvard University: Department of Social Ethics, *Guide to Reading in Social Ethics and Allied Subjects.* Cambridge, Mass., 1910. — An evaluated list of books and articles, intended primarily for the use of general readers; has many titles of special reference to American conditions.

The History Teacher's Magazine (Monthly). Edited by A. E. McKinley. Phila., 1909– . — Each number contains a brief annotated bibliography of "History and Civics."

Alexander Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia of Political Science.* Chicago, 1881–1884. — Valuable bibliographies are appended to his signed articles. The articles are reprinted by J. A. Woodburn as *American Political History, 1763–1876.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1905.

J. N. Larned, editor, *Literature of American History: a Bibliographical Guide.* Boston, American Library Association, 1902. — Supplements, 1900–1904, by P. P. Wells: that for 1900–1901, published, Boston, 1902; those for 1902 and 1903 in *Annotated Titles of Books on English and Amer-*

ican History, issued by the Association in 1904; that for 1904 in the *A. L. A. Booklist* for February, 1906. — A very serviceable book, excellent in analysis, choice of titles, execution, and index. Brief signed appreciations of about 4000 books.

Library of Congress: Division of Bibliography, *Lists* [on various subjects]. Compiled by A. P. C. Griffin and others. Washington, 1898. — Not analyzed or characterized.

Henry Matson, *References for Literary Workers; with Introductions to Topics and Questions for Debate.* Chicago, 1892. — Includes many subjects related to American history. Now out of date.

New England History Teachers' Association, *Historical Sources in Schools.* By a Select Committee. N.Y., 1902. — Contains bibliographies of sources.

Justin Winsor, *Reader's Handbook of the American Revolution, 1761–1783.* Boston, 1880. Substantially incorporated in his *Narrative and Critical History* (see § 21).

§ 23. Topical Outlines

Many teachers in colleges and schools have prepared outlines of their courses, with references and other helps. Some of these aids have been printed and thus made available for other people. A brief list of such books is printed above (§ 9); to which may be added the following titles:

H. V. Ames, *Outline of Lectures on American Political and Institutional History during the Colonial and Revolutionary Periods; with References for Collateral Reading.* Revised edition. University of Pennsylvania [Phila.], 1902.

Hannah H. Davidson, *Reference History of the United States for High Schools and Academies.* Boston, 1892. — Refers chiefly to brief books.

C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References, History of Financial Legislation in the United States.* Cambridge, 1892.

C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References in Political Economy IV: Economic History of Europe and America since the Seven Years' War.* Cambridge, 1885.

C. R. Fish, *Syllabus for American History, Course 4.* University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1907.

W. F. Gordy and W. I. Twitchwell, *A Pathfinder in American History.* Boston, 1893.

F. H. Hodder, *Outlines of American Colonial History.* Lawrence, Kansas, 1910.

W. H. Mace, *A Working Manual of American History for Teachers and Students.* Syracuse, N.Y., 1895.

New York State Education Department, *Syllabus for Secondary Schools: History and Social Science.* Albany, 1910.

R. R. Price, *Topics and References for the Class in American History at the State Agricultural College, Manhattan, Kansas.* Revised edition. [Manhattan], 1908.

R. C. Ringwalt and W. D. Brookings, *Briefs for Debate.* N.Y., 1896.

R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions, with Selected Lists of References.* N.Y., 1905.

E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists in American History.* Columbus, 1893.

F. W. Taussig, *Topics and References in Economics 6: Tariff Legislation in the United States.* Cambridge, 1896.

Washington (D.C.) High Schools, *Course of Study* [*in*] *American History: Colonial Period.* [No place, no date.]

§ 24. Useful Indexes

R. R. Bowker, *State Publications: a Provisional List of the Official Publications of the Several States.* 4 pts. N.Y., 1899–1908.

T. L. Bradford and S. V. Henkels, *Bibliographer's Manual of American History, containing an Account of All State, Territory, Town, and County Histories.* 4 vols. and index vol. Phila., 1907–1910.

Cumulative Book Review Digest. Vols. I-VI (1905–1910). Minneapolis, 1905–. — Monthly issues cumulating in the December number of each year.

Charles Evans, *American Bibliography: a Chronological Dictionary of All Books, Pamphlets, and Periodical Publications printed in the United States . . . from . . . 1639 down to . . . 1820.* Vols. I–VI [1639–1785]. Chicago, 1903–. — In progress.

W. I. Fletcher, *The "A. L. A" Index: an Index to General Literature, Essays and Sketches, Publications of Societies, etc.* Issued by the publishing board of the American Library Association. 2d ed. Boston, 1901. — An avenue of approach to collected essays and similar works.

A. P. C. Griffin, *Bibliography of American Historical Societies* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1905, Vol. II). Washington, 1907. — A vast number of entries with a fair index.

A. P. C. Griffin, *Index of Articles upon American Local History.* See § 37.

Anna L. Guthrie, *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature.* Vols. I, II (1900–1909). Minneapolis, 1905–. — Continued by monthly issues

cumulating quarterly into annual volumes, with final volumes each fifth year. The work also supplements the *A. L. A. Index.*

Adelaide R. Hasse, *Index of Economic Material in Documents of the States.* (Carnegie Institution, *Publications*, No. 85.) 10 pts. [Washington], 1907–. — Includes, to 1911, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, New York, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, California, Illinois, Kentucky, Delaware. Extends only to 1904.

Index to Legal Periodicals and Law Library Journal. Chicago and Madison, 1908–. — Issued quarterly, with annual cumulation.

Leonard A. Jones, *Index to Legal Periodical Literature.* [Vol. I], Boston, 1888. Vol. II (1887–1899), Boston, 1899. — Well analyzed and very serviceable.

F. Leypoldt and L. E. Jones, *The American Catalogue: Author and Title [and Subject] Entries of Books in Print . . . 1876.* Continued to 1907 by R. R. Bowker and others. 8 vols. N.Y., 1880–1908. — The work is now published cumulatively from the entries in *Publishers' Weekly*, and is finally put into main volumes. — This series contains titles of substantially all the books in print in the United States in 1876, and since published.

W. C. Lane and Nina E. Browne, *A. L. A. Portrait Index: Index to Portraits contained in Printed Books and Periodicals.* Washington, 1906.

Library of Congress, *A. L. A. Catalog: 8000 Volumes for a Popular Library, with Notes.* Washington, 1904. — Supplement in preparation in 1911.

Library of Congress, *Monthly Lists of State Publications.* Beginning January, 1910.

Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Charlemagne Tower Collection of American Colonial Laws.* Phila., 1890.

W. F. Poole, *Poole's Index to Periodical Literature.* 3d ed. (to 1882), with the assistance of W. I. Fletcher. Boston, 1882. — There are five supplements (1882–1906), edited first by Poole and Fletcher, later by Fletcher and others, Boston, 1888–1908. The work is continued by Fletcher and the American Library Association as *The Annual Literary Index*, 1892–1904, and *The Annual Library Index*, 1905– (N.Y., 1893–), which also supplements the *A. L. A. Index* and gives lists of bibliographies. — *Poole's Index, Abridged Edition*, and the *First Supplement* index 37 periodicals, 1815–1904 (Boston, 1901–1905).

Marion E. Potter, *United States Catalog: Books in Print 1902.* Minneapolis, 1903. *Supplement: Books published 1902–1905.* Minneapolis, 1906. Continued by the *Cumulative Book Index;* — monthly issues cumulating quarterly into annual volumes.

Joseph Sabin, *Dictionary of Books relating to America, from its Discovery to the Present Time.* 20 vols. N.Y., 1868–1892. — Unfinished (see § 21).

W. S. Sonnenschein, *Best Books.* 3d ed. Part I. London, 1910–. — In progress.

C. C. Soule, *Lawyer's Reference Manual of Law Books and Citations.* Boston, 1883.

Writings on American History: year 1902, compiled by E. C. Richardson and A. E. Morse, Princeton, 1904; year 1903, by A. C. McLaughlin and others, Washington, 1905; years 1904 and 1905, never issued; years 1906–1908 by Grace G. Griffin, N.Y., 1908–1910; now issued by the American Historical Association in its *Annual Reports*, beginning with 1909.

§ 25. Useful Library Catalogues

George A. Barringer, *Catalogue de l'Histoire de l'Amérique.* (Bibliothèque Nationale.) 3 vols. Paris, 1903–1907.

Bibliothèque Nationale, *Catalogue General des Livres Imprimés: Auteurs.* Vols. I–XLI (A–Dri.). Paris, 1897–. — In progress.

Boston Public Library, *Annual List of New and Important Books* [1896–1907]. Boston, 1898–1908. — Selected from and continued by the *Monthly Bulletin* [1896–1908], 13 vols., Boston, 1896–1908, and by the *Bulletin*, 3d series, Vols. I–IV. Boston, 1908–.

British Museum, *Catalogue of Printed Books.* London, 1881–1900. — Supplement [1882–1899], London, 1900–1905.

Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, *Classified Catalogue:* years 1895–1902, 3 vols., Pittsburgh, 1907; years 1902–1906, 2 vols., Pittsburgh, 1908.

George W. Cole, *Catalogue of Books relating to the Discovery and Early History of North and South America, forming a Part of the Library of E. D. Church.* 5 vols. N.Y., 1907.

G. K. Fortescue, *Subject Index of the Modern Works added to the Library of the British Museum* [1881–1905]. 4 vols. London, 1902–1906.

Harvard College Library, *Card Catalogue Subjects.* To be used in connection with the card catalogue.

Harvard Law School, *Catalogue of the Library.* 2 vols. Cambridge, 1909.

Library of Congress, *Catalogue, Index of Subjects.* 2 vols. Washington, 1869.

Library of Congress, printed catalogue cards of all books copyrighted since 1899 and of older or foreign books in the Library in certain groups (which include most works on United States history). For sale by title, series, set, or general subject. See the Library's *Handbook of Card Distribution*, 2d ed., Washington, 1907.

Massachusetts State Library, *Catalogue.* Boston, 1880. — *Annual Supplement*, 1880–. (*Massachusetts Public Documents*, 1880–.)

New York (City) Public Library, *Bulletin.* Vols. I–XV. N.Y., 1897–. — Monthly numbers, which contain "recent accessions of interest" and also lists of works relating to special subjects.

New York State Library, *Best Books, with Notes.* — Published annually at Albany since 1897; has a special brief section on American history.

Peabody Institute of Baltimore, *Catalogue of the Library.* 5 vols. Baltimore, 1883–1892. — *Second Catalogue*, 8 vols., Baltimore, 1896–1905.

§ 26. Indexes to Public Documents

To the valuable set of government documents there is no adequate complete guide. Poore's *Catalogue* (1774–1881), Ames's *Comprehensive Index* (1881–1893), and the *Document Catalogue* of the Superintendent of Documents (1893–) together cover the whole period since 1774; the last two works are adequate, but Poore furnishes less aid by reason of an imperfect and misleading index. The Superintendent of Documents' *Table and Index* is of first importance for the Congressional series of documents from 1817 to 1893. General books on the system and excellent guides in all matters concerning the Public Documents, but not themselves indexes, are the following:

Elfrida Everhart, *Handbook of United States Public Documents.* Minneapolis, 1910.

J. I. Wyer, Jr., *United States Government Documents.* (N. Y. State Library, *Bulletin*, No. 102.) Albany, 1906.

The following is a nearly complete list of aids that are now of value, arranged chronologically:

[1774–1881.] B. P. Poore, *Descriptive Catalogue of Government Publications.* Washington, 1885.

[1774–1789.] Library of Congress, *Journals of the Continental Congress.* Washington, 1904–. — In progress. Bibliographical notes at end of Journals of each year.

[1789–1901.] J. M. Baker, *Finding List to Important Serial Documents published by the Government.* (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess. No. 238.) Washington, 1901.

[1789–1895.] F. A. Crandall, *Checklist of Public Documents containing Debates and Proceedings of Congress . . ., with Miscellaneous Lists of Documents and Historical and Bibliographical Notes.* 2d ed. Washington, 1895. — The checklist has been superseded by the *Tables and Index* (1817–1893), but the other material remains useful. "Advance sheets" of a third edition (to 1907), which will include a classification of departmental publications, are now being issued.

[1789–1891.] *Digested Summary and Alphabetical List of Private Claims presented to the House.* Washington, 1853–1896. — Issued from time to time (4 pts. in 6 vols.) in the Congressional series as follows: *House Misc. Docs.*, 32 Cong. 1 sess. [unnumbered; serial numbers, 653–655]; 42 Cong. 3 sess. No. 109; 47 Cong. 1 sess. No. 53; 53 Cong. 2 sess. No. 213.

[1789–1873.] Edward McPherson, *Index of Bills presented in the House . . . relating to Banks, Currency, Public Debt, Tariff, and Direct Taxes, showing . . . Disposition of the Bill.* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 43 Cong. 2 sess. No. 92.) Washington, 1875.

[1789–1869.] *Index to the Executive Communications made to the House,* and *Index to the Reports of Committees.* Washington, 1824–1870. — Issued from time to time (together for 1789–1839 and separately for 1839–1869, 6 pts.) in the Congressional series, as follows: *House Docs.*, 18 Cong. 1 sess. No. 163; 17 Cong. 2 sess. [unnumbered]; 21 Cong. 2 sess. [unnumbered]; 25 Cong. 3 sess. [unnumbered]; 40 Cong. 3 sess. [2 vols., unnumbered]. The volumes have the following serial numbers: 104, 85^2, 209^2, 350, 1386, 1387.

[1789–1863.] Boston Public Library, *Index* (ed. 1861), pp. 794–842 (especially the index, 815–842); and *First Supplement* (ed. 1866), pp. 644–654 (especially 647–654).

[1789–1821.] Albert Ordway, *General Index of the Journals of Congress.* (*House Reports*, 46 Cong. 2 sess. No. 1776; 47 Cong. 1 sess. No. 1559.) Washington, 1880–1883.

[1789–1821.] *General Personal Index of the Journals of Congress.* (*House Reports*, 48 Cong. 2 sess. No. 2692; 49 Cong. 1 sess. No. 3475.) Washington, 1885–1887.

[1789–1817.] A. W. Greely, *Public Documents of the First Fourteen Congresses.* (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 1 sess. No. 428.) Washington, 1900.

[1815–1899.] *List of Private Claims brought before the Senate.* Washington, 1881–1900. — Issued from time to time (3 pts., in

7 vols.) in the Congressional series, as follows: *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 46 Cong. 3 sess. No. 14; 53 Cong. 2 sess. No. 266; *Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 1 sess. No. 449.

[1815–1887.] T. H. McKee [*Indexes to*] *Reports of the Select and Special Committees, United States Senate.* Washington, 1887. — Also same of the House, Washington, 1887.

[1817–1893.] Superintendent of Documents, *Table of and Annotated Index to the Congressional Series of United States Public Documents.* Washington, 1902. — Gives the serial numbers of the Congressional series. The set of three volumes, of which this (Vol. II) is the only one published, will form an index of all government publications from 1789 to 1893, connecting with the *Document Catalogue* (1893–).

[1871–1880.] J. B. Holloway and W. H. French, *Consolidated Index of Claims reported by the Commissioners of Claims to the House.* Washington, 1892.

[1881–1893.] J. G. Ames, *Comprehensive Index of the Publications of the United States Government.* 2 vols. Washington, 1905.

[1885–1894.] J. H. Hickcox, *United States Government Publications, Monthly Catalogue.* 10 vols. Washington, 1885–1894. — Succeeded by the Superintendent of Documents' *Monthly Catalogue.*

[1893– .] Superintendent of Documents, *Catalogue of the Public Documents of . . . Congress and of other Departments of the Government* [commonly cited as *Document Catalogue*]. Vols. I–VIII (to 1907). — Published under act of January 12, 1895, one volume for the period of each Congress except the 54th, which has two. The *Index to Reports and Documents of . . . Congress* [cited as *Document Index*], one volume for each session and listing only the Congressional series, is a temporary form of the *Document Catalogue.*

[1895– .] Superintendent of Documents, *Monthly Catalogue, United States Documents.* Washington, 1895–. — Provided for by act of January 12, 1895; until July, 1907, called *Catalogue of United States Public Documents.* After various changes the index is now (1911) issued separately each quarter, and is cumulated annually.

CHAPTER IV

GENERAL WORKS

§ 27. General Reference Books

The following works contain a variety of historical data, usually arranged alphabetically by persons or subjects; such books facilitate easy topical work, and the better ones are a guide to more detailed information:

S. A. Allibone, *Critical Dictionary of English Literature and British and American Authors.* 3 vols. Phila., 1858–1871. — Supplement, edited by J. F. Kirk, 2 vols., 1891. — About 83,000 articles.

American Year Book, a Record of Events and Progress. Edited under the Direction of a Supervisory Board representing National Learned Societies. Vol. I, 1910, edited by S. N. D. North, N.Y., 1911. — An Annual containing departments of history, international law, government, etc.

Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia and Register of Important Events (1861–1902). 42 vols. N.Y., 1862–1903. — The volumes from 1861 to 1875, inclusive, form one series, entitled *American Annual Cyclopædia*, with a separate index volume. The second or "New Series" (1876–1895) has an index at the end of the 1895 volume. The index to the "Third Series" (1896–1902) is cumulative.

Appletons' Cyclopædia of American Biography (see Wilson and Fiske).

Biographical Congressional Directory, 1774 to 1903. (*House Docs.*, 57 Cong. 2 sess. No. 458.) Washington, 1903.

John H. Brown, *Lamb's Biographical Dictionary of the United States.* 7 vols. Boston, 1900–1903. — Reissued, with changes, by Rossiter Johnson as *Twentieth Century Biographical Dictionary of Notable Americans*, 10 vols., Boston, 1904. — About 16,000 names.

Century Cyclopedia of Names (see B. E. Smith).

F. M. Colby and others, *International Year Book: a Compendium of the World's Progress in every Department of Human Knowledge* (1898–1902). 5 vols. N.Y., [1899–1903]. — Cumulative index in Vols. III–

V. — Also a *New International Year Book* (1907–), N.Y., 1908– (not indexed).

E. A. and G. L. Duyckinck, *Cyclopædia of American Literature.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1856. — Supplement, N.Y., 1866; and a later edition, "edited to date by M. Laird Simons," 2 vols., Phila., 1875.

Encyclopædia Britannica. 11th ed. 28 vols. and index vol. Cambridge, England, 1911. — Many articles on American history and affairs.

D. C. Gilman and others, *New International Encyclopædia.* New edition, revised to 1907. 20 vols., with an extra volume entitled *Courses of Reading and Study.* N.Y., 1907.

Harper's Encyclopædia of United States History from 458 to 1902. 10 vols. N.Y., 1902. — Based on Lossing's earlier work.

Haydn's Dictionary of Dates and Universal Information. 24th ed. London, 1906.

International Cyclopædia and *International Year Book* (see F. M. Colby, D. C. Gilman).

J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia of Political Science, Political Economy, and of the Political History of the United States.* 3 vols. Chicago, 1881–1884.

J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference from the Best Historians, Biographers, and Specialists: their own Words in a Complete System of History* (to 1910). 7 vols. Springfield, Mass., 1894–1910. — Chiefly extracts from secondary writers, ingeniously fitted to each other.

C. E. Little, *Cyclopedia of Classified Dates.* N.Y., 1900.

Lippincott's Dictionary of Biography (see Joseph Thomas).

A. C. McLaughlin and A. B. Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1913. — About 2500 articles, mostly with bibliographies.

C. W. Moulton, *Library of Literary Criticism of English and American Authors* (1680–1904). 8 vols. Buffalo, 1901–1905.

National Cyclopædia of American Biography. 13 vols. and index vol. N.Y., 1892–1906. — Vols. I, II, revised, 1898–1899. — About 16,000 names.

Karl Ploetz, *Epitome of Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern History.* Translated, with extensive additions, by W. H. Tillinghast. New revised edition (to 1908). Boston, [1909].

B. E. Smith, *Century Cyclopedia of Names.* N.Y., [1894]. — Various later issues with minor changes, and a supplement which includes all changes, in *Century Dictionary and Cyclopedia*, Vol. XII, N.Y., [1909].

Statesman's Year Book (1864–). London, 1864–. — Beginning with 1906, a special part is devoted to the United States and to separate states and dependencies.

Joseph Thomas, *Universal Pronouncing Dictionary of Biography and Mythology.* 3d ed., rev. Phila., 1901.

Who's Who in America: a Biographical Dictionary of Notable Living Men and Women of the United States. Biennial volumes. Chicago, [1899–].

J. H. Willsey, *Harper's Book of Facts: a Classified History of the World.* N.Y., 1895.

J. G. Wilson and John Fiske, *Appletons' Cyclopædia of American Biography.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1887–1889. — New edition, 6 vols., N.Y., 1900. The new material in this edition is also printed in a separate volume (1901), which is published as Vol. VII to the first edition. — About 20,000 names.

§ 28. Brief Histories

Textbooks are not included in the following list. A few of them are listed in § 9.

[1450–1877.] *American History Series.* 7 vols. N.Y. — Vol. I, G. P. Fisher, *The Colonial Era* (1892); Vol. II, W. M. Sloane, *The French War and the Revolution* (1893); Vol. III, F. A. Walker, *The Making of the Nation, 1783–1817* (1895); Vol. IV, J. W. Burgess, *The Middle Period, 1817–1858* (1897); Vols. V, VI, J. W. Burgess, *The Civil War and the Constitution* (1901); Vol. VII, J. W. Burgess, *Reconstruction and the Constitution* (1902).

[1000–1890.] E. B. Andrews, *History of the United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1894.

[1577–1902.] *Cambridge Modern History.* Edited by A. W. Ward, G. W. Prothero, and Stanley Leathes. Vol. VII, *United States.* Cambridge, England, 1904.

[1765–1865.] Edward Channing, *United States of America, 1765–1865.* (Cambridge Historical series.) N.Y., 1896.

[1513–1824.] Ernst Daenell, *Die Spanier in Nordamerika.* (Historische Bibliothek, Vol. XV.) Munich, 1911.

[1607–1907.] Paul Darmstaedter, *Vereinigten Staaten von Amerika.* (Bibliothek der Geschichtswissenschaft, Vol. VI.) Leipsic, 1909.

[1578–1910.] *Encyclopædia Britannica.* 11th ed. Vol. XXVIII, pp. 663–735 (article on history of United States). Cambridge, England, 1911.

[1492–1909.] *Epochs of American History.* Edited by A. B. Hart. 3 vols. N.Y. — Vol. I, R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*

(1891, latest edition, 1910); Vol. II, A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union* (1892, latest edition, 1910); Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion* (1893, latest edition, by E. S. Corwin, 1910).

[986–1905.] T. W. Higginson and William MacDonald, *History of the United States*. N.Y., 1905. — A new edition of Higginson's *Larger History*.

[1760–1909.] Alexander Johnston, *History of American Politics*. N.Y., 1880. — Enlarged edition, revised by W. M. Sloane, continued by W. M. Daniels, 1910.

[1607–1887.] Alexander Johnston, *The United States; its History and Constitution*. N.Y., 1889. — New edition, 1902.

[1607–1899.] Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History and Government of the United States*. Revised edition. Boston, 1900.

[1492–1871.] Goldwin Smith, *The United States; an Outline of Political History*. N.Y., 1893.

[1783–1900.] E. E. Sparks, *United States of America*. (Story of the Nations series.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1904.

§ 29. Larger Comprehensive Works

[1800–1817.] Henry Adams, *History of the United States*. 9 vols. N.Y., 1889–1891.

[1760–1804.] John Adolphus, *History of England*. 7 vols. London, 1840–1845.

[1492– .] E. M. Avery, *History of the United States and its People from their Earliest Records to the Present Time*. Vols. I–VII (to 1806), Cleveland, 1904–1910. — In progress.

[1492–1789.] George Bancroft, *History of the United States*. 10 vols. Boston, 1834–1874. (A general index, paged consecutively with Vol. X, is bound separately.) — Six-volume edition, known as *The Author's Last Revision*. N.Y., 1883–1885.

[1501–1890.] H. H. Bancroft, *History of the Pacific States*. 34 vols. San Francisco, 1882–1890. Also *Native Races of the Pacific States*, 5 vols., N.Y., 1874–1876. The whole reissued as *Works*, 39 vols., San Francisco, 1883–1890. Various parts are also published under other titles (see § 37).

[1492–1893.] W. C. Bryant and S. H. Gay, *Popular History of the United States*. 5 vols. N.Y., 1876–1898. — Vol. V, by Noah Brooks and others, is entitled *Scribner's Popular History of the United States*.

[1607– .] W. E. Chancellor and F. W. Hewes, *The United States, a History of Three Centuries.* Vols. I, II (to 1774). N.Y., 1904–1905. — No more published. Partly statistical.

[1000– .] Edward Channing, *History of the United States.* Vols. I, II (to 1760). N.Y., 1905–1908. — In progress.

[1783–1877.] G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History of the United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1889–1896. — Vol. I is a reprint of the author's *History of the Constitution.* 2 vols., 1854. Vol. II is edited by J. C. Clayton.

[1784–1875.] Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1881.

[1492–1760.] J. A. Doyle, *The English in America.* 5 vols. London, 1882–1907; reprinted with a different pagination, in N.Y., as *English Colonies in America.* — Vol. I bears also the title *Virginia, Maryland, and the Carolinas;* Vols. II, III, *The Puritan Colonies;* Vol. IV, *The Middle Colonies;* Vol. V, *The Colonies under the House of Hanover.*

[1850–1865.] J. W. Draper, *History of the American Civil War.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1867–1870.

[1492–1904.] H. W. Elson, *History of the United States of America.* N.Y., 1904. — 2d ed., 5 vols., 1905.

[1000–1865.] John Fiske, *Discovery of America.* 2 vols. Boston, 1892. — Fiske's other historical works form, with this, part of a comprehensive history, as follows: *Old Virginia and her Neighbours*, 2 vols., 1897; *Beginnings of New England*, 1889; *Dutch and Quaker Colonies in America*, 2 vols., 1899; *New France and New England*, 1902; *The American Revolution*, 2 vols., 1892–1893; *Critical Period of American History, 1783–1789*, 1888; *Mississippi Valley in the Civil War*, 1900.

[1000–1905.] The whole field was later covered by Fiske in three volumes, — *Colonization of the New World*, *Independence of the New World*, and (with J. B. McMaster) *Modern Development of the New World*, — published since his death as Vols. XXI–XXIII of *A History of All Nations*, edited by J. H. Wright; 24 vols., Phila., [1905].

[1000–1906.] J. W. Garner and H. C. Lodge, *The United States.* 2 vols. (*The History of Nations*, edited by H. C. Lodge, Vols. XXIII, XXIV.) Phila., [copyright, 1906]. — Also published as *History of the United States*, 4 vols. (paged continuously), Phila., 1906.

[1776–1865.] Horace Greeley, *The American Conflict.* 2 vols. Hartford, 1864–1867.

[1300–1907.] A. B. Hart, editor, *The American Nation: a History.* 26 vols. and index vol. N.Y., 1904–1908.

[1492–1821.] Richard Hildreth, *History of the United States.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1849–1856. — Revised edition, 1880–1882.

[1700–1800.] W. E. H. Lecky, *History of England in the Eighteenth Century.* 8 vols. London, 1878–1890. — American edition, 8 vols., N.Y., 1878–1890. References in the later pages of the *Guide* are made to this edition. — The chapters and passages relating to America in Lecky's work have been arranged and edited by J. A. Woodburn as *The American Revolution, 1763–1783,* N.Y., [1898].

[1783– .] J. B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States from the Revolution to the Civil War.* Vols. I–VII (to 1850). N.Y., 1883–1910. — An eighth volume will complete the work.

[1713–1783.] Lord Mahon, *History of England.* 3d ed., revised. 7 vols. Boston, 1853–1854. — A convenient edition is the "Tauchnitz," in paper covers.

[1745–1802.] W. N. Massey, *History of England during the Reign of George the Third.* 4 vols. London, 1855–1863.

[1492–1775.] J. G. Palfrey, *History of New England.* 5 vols. Boston, Little, 1858–1890.

[1492–1763.] Francis Parkman, *France and England in North America: a Series of Historical Narratives.* 9 vols. Boston, 1865–1892. — Parkman's volumes bear the following titles: I, *Pioneers of France in the New World;* II, *The Jesuits in North America in the Seventeenth Century;* III, *Discovery of the Great West* (11th ed. called *La Salle and the Discovery,* etc.); IV, *The Old Régime in Canada;* V, *Count Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV;* VI, *A Half-Century of Conflict* (2 vols.); VII, *Montcalm and Wolfe* (2 vols.). — The series is supplemented by *The Conspiracy of Pontiac,* 6th ed., 2 vols., 1870.

[1497–1797.] Timothy Pitkin, *Political and Civil History in the United States.* 2 vols. New Haven, 1828.

[1849–1877.] J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States from the Compromise of 1850.* 7 vols. N.Y., 1893–1906. — A continuation is in progress.

[1783–1865.] James Schouler, *History of the United States under the Constitution.* Revised edition. 6 vols. N.Y., [copyright, 1894–1899].

[1607–1909.] *The South in the Building of the Nation.* 12 vols. Richmond, [copyright, 1909–1910]. —— A coöperative history.

[1861–1865.] A. H. Stephens, *Constitutional View of the Late War between the States.* 2 vols. Phila., [copyright, 1868–1870].

[1600–1841.] George Tucker, *History of the United States.* 4 vols. Phila., 1856–1857.

[1776–1850.] F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutional History of the American People.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1898.

[1765–1895.] F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutional History of the United States.* 3 vols. Chicago, 1901.

[986–1900.] F. N. Thorpe, *History of the American People.* Chicago, 1901.

[1750–1861.] Hermann von Holst, *Constitutional and Political History of the United States.* Translated from the German by Lalor and Mason. 7 vols. and index vol. Chicago, 1876–1892. — New edition, 1899.

[1620–1877.] Henry Wilson, *History of the Rise and Fall of the Slave Power in America.* 3 vols. Boston, 1872–1877.

[1492–1900.] Woodrow Wilson, *History of the American People.* 5 vols. N.Y., 1902.

[1000–1850.] Justin Winsor, editor, *Narrative and Critical History of America.* 8 vols. Boston, [copyright, 1884–1889].

CHAPTER V

GEOGRAPHY

§ 30. Historical Geography

No other important subject connected with American history has been so neglected as the historical geography of the United States. Territorial history is nevertheless essential to an understanding of the general subject. In the American Historical Association's *Annual Report for 1907*, I, 45–48, is a "Report of Conference on the Relation of Geography and History," and in the *Twenty-second Meeting* of the New England History Teachers' Association a paper on the same subject by Professor G. L. Burr (see § 11). The sources are: (1) the reports of the first explorers, the contemporaneous accounts of the early explorations, and the maps of the old cartographers; (2) the grants made by various European powers to their colonies, especially the English charters; (3) treaties defining international boundaries; (4) decisions of the English Privy Council on contested boundaries, and of international courts of arbitration; and (5) the statutes of the United States establishing territories and admitting states.

Several books contain descriptions of the physical characteristics of the country and their influence on men of European origin. Among them may be mentioned the works of Professors Whitney and Shaler, both entitled *The United States*, and the books by A. P. Brigham and Ellen C. Semple (see § 31). The more important works dealing with the territorial development are Winsor's contributions in his *Columbus*, *Cartier to Frontenac*, *Mississippi Basin*, and *Westward Movement*, and in the *Narrative and Critical History*. Professor Hinsdale has done good work in this field, especially in his *Old Northwest;* and the government publications connected with the names of Gannett and Donaldson contain many valuable

suggestions and documents. In the general histories, such as those of Bancroft, Hildreth, McMaster, and Henry Adams, may be found elaborate discussions of boundary and other territorial questions. The larger state histories and historical society reports contain many important discussions of these and kindred subjects.

Besides the treatment of the subject in the general histories (especially Hildreth's), the following special authorities may be mentioned:

Bioren and Duane, *Laws of the United States . . . including many other Valuable . . . Documents.* 5 vols. Phila., 1815. — Usually cited as "Duane's Laws."

Thomas Donaldson, *The Public Domain.* 3d ed. (*House Misc. Docs.*, 47 Cong. 2 sess. No. 45, Pt. 4.) Washington, 1884.

Existing Laws of the United States of a General and Permanent Character and relating to the . . . Public Domain. (*Ibid.*, Pt. 1.) Washington, 1884.

Laws of the United States of a Local or Temporary Character, and exhibiting the Entire Legislation of Congress upon which the Public Land Titles in each State and Territory have depended. (*Ibid.*, Pts. 2, 3.) 2 vols. Washington, 1884.

Henry Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States and of the several States and Territories.* 3d ed. (U. S. Geological Survey, *Bulletin*, No. 226.) Washington, 1904.

Henry Gannett, *Origin of Certain Place Names in the United States.* 2d ed. (United States Geological Survey, *Bulletin*, No. 258.) Washington, 1905.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *Bounding the Original United States.* — Reprint from *Magazine of Western History*, II, 401–423 (Sept., 1885).

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *The Old Northwest; with a View of the Thirteen Colonies as constituted by the Royal Charters.* N.Y., 1891. — Revised edition, Boston, [copyright, 1899].

Archer B. Hulbert, *Historic Highways of America.* 15 vols. and index vol. Cleveland, 1902–1905.

Organic Acts for the Territories of the United States. (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 1 sess. No. 148.) Washington, 1900.

C. C. Royce, *Indian Land Cessions.* (Bureau of American Ethnology, *18th Annual Report*, Pt. ii.) Washington, 1899.

W. B. Scaife, *America: its Geographical History.* Baltimore, 1892.

Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History of America.* 8 vols. Boston, [copyright, 1884–1889]. — Especially VII, 527–562.

§ 31. Physical Geography of America

Physical geography and geology are intimately connected, and much geographical matter is to be found in the publications of national and state geological surveys and in those of the coast survey. The reports of state surveys are easily found in libraries under the names of the states, the more recent publications generally giving the best material. National geological surveys were for a number of years conducted under various governmental bureaus, and their work was confined to the western part of the continent. The most important of them were the Hayden, King, Powell, and Wheeler surveys, each of which published a report. A bibliography of these reports is in *Bulletin*, No. 222, of the United States Geological Survey. Vol. I of the Wheeler Survey contains an analytical account of all explorations west of the Mississippi River from 1500 to 1880. In 1879 these separate surveys were discontinued and the United States Geological Survey was organized (for its history and operations see *Bulletin*, No. 227.) It publishes *Annual Reports*, *Bulletins*, *Monographs*, *Water-Supply Papers*, *Mineral Resources*, *Professional Papers*, topographic and geologic maps, besides special publications, of which an analytical bibliography (1880–1901) is contained in *Bulletin*, No. 177, and continued to 1903 in *Bulletin*, No. 215. Complete lists of all publications (except topographic maps) are also issued periodically. The following bibliographical bulletins of the Survey deserve mention: *Dictionary of Altitudes of the United States* (*Bulletin*, No. 274 ; 5th ed. in preparation) ; *Catalogue and Index of Contributions to North American Geology* (1732–1891, *Bulletin*, No. 127 ; 1892–1900, *Bulletins*, Nos. 188, 189, and periodic continuations) ; *Catalogue of Geological Maps of America* (*Bulletin*, No. 7). Much geographical material is also to be found in the *American Geologist* (discontinued in 1905), and in the *Journal of Geology*, the National Geographic Society's *National Geographic Magazine*, the *Bulletin* of the American Geographical Society, and the *Journal of Geography*. In McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, are several discussions of American geography.

Upon the basis of the geography of the country, — its physiog-

raphy, — references will be found in §§ 32–34 below. The following books will also be found serviceable:

A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences in American History.* Boston, 1903.

W. M. Davis, *Continent of North America.* (R. H. Mill, *International Geography*, 664–678.) N.Y., 1901.

W. M. Davis, *Physical Geography of the United States.* (*Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th ed., XXVII, 612–624.) Cambridge, England, 1911.

W. M. Davis, *Practical Exercises in Physical Geography* [with Atlas]. Boston, 1908.

W. M. Davis, C. F. King, and G. L. Collie, *Report on Governmental Maps for Use in Schools.* N.Y., 1894.

J. W. Draper, *History of the American Civil War.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1867–1870. — At Vol. I, 39–62.

H. E. Gregory, A. G. Keller, and A. L. Bishop, *Physical and Commercial Geography.* Boston, 1910.

A. J. Henry, *Climatology of the United States.* (Weather Bureau, No. 361.) Washington, 1906.

Jedidiah Morse, *American Universal Geography.* 2 parts. Boston, 1793. — 6th ed., 1812.

National Geographic Monographs. Vol. I, Nos. 1–10. N.Y., 1895. — No more published. Of special value are J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions;* B. Willis, *Northern Appalachians;* C. W. Hayes, *Southern Appalachians.*

J. H. Patton, *Natural Resources of the United States.* N.Y., 1888.

Friedrich Ratzel, *Die Vereinigten Staaten von Nord-Amerika.* 2 vols. Munich, 1878–1880.

R. D. Salisbury and W. W. Atwood, *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.* (U.S. Geological Survey, *Professional Paper*, No. 60.) Washington, 1908.

Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions.* Boston, 1903.

Ellen C. Semple, *Influence of Geographic Environment, on the Basis of Ratzel's System of Anthropo-geography.* N.Y., 1911.

N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in America.* N.Y., 1891; also 1899.

N. S. Shaler, *United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1894. — Also in 3 vols., paged continuously.

C. R. Van Hise, *Conservation of Natural Resources in the United States.* N. Y., 1910.

J. D. Whitney. *United States.* Boston, 1889. — Supplement, 1894.

§ 32. Physical Maps of North America

The data for a complete physical map of the United States do not yet exist. Henry Gannett, in his essay on the *Maps of the United States* (Washington, National Geographic Society, 1892), points out the sources. The United States Geological Survey has in progress a topographic map to serve as a basis for a geologic map on the scales of one, two, and four miles to the inch. Nearly two thousand sheets have been issued, and many more will be needed to complete the map. Various states have coöperated with the Survey in its topographic work, with the result that all the sheets for Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Jersey are completed. The volume by Davis, King, and Collie noted in § 31, and that by Salisbury and Atwood, show how to use these sheets in teaching geography.

The United States Geological Survey has issued four very useful maps. (1) The most beautiful is the *United States Relief Map*, printed in several shades of brown; (2) the *United States Contour Map*, giving the contour lines in brown, is more useful; (3) a map of the same size as these ($28 \times 17\frac{1}{2}$ inches), but without title and showing only land and water (base map), is most serviceable for the filling in of historical data. These maps are the originals of the physical maps printed in the ordinary textbooks. An excellent map showing the forms of land in colors may be found in J. W. Powell's *Physiographic Regions of the United States* (National Geographic Monographs, I, No. 3), N.Y., 1895.

The Survey has also issued a map of the United States in three sheets on the scale of forty miles to the inch. The names and political boundaries are in black, the contours in brown, the water in blue. This is an admirable map for wall reference in the classroom. In the census publications there are some similar maps, especially in the *Statistical Atlas* prepared at the twelfth census and published at Washington, 1903; or in the similar work of the thirteenth census, now in preparation.

Outline maps for school use are now abundant and may be obtained from any school supply company.

In the recent school histories are usually to be found colored maps in relief, based on the government maps. A similar one is

in *Epoch Maps*, No. 1. Some of the most valuable physical wall maps are the following:

Richard Kiepert, *Nord-Amerika*. Published by Dietrich Reimer. Berlin, 1894. Scale of 1 cm. to 80 km.

Emil von Sydow and Hermann Habenicht, *Nord-Amerika; orohydrographische Schul-Wandkarte*. Published by Justus Perthes. Gotha, 1894. Scale of 1 cm. to 60 km. — These two maps are published in America by Rand and McNally, Chicago.

Physical Map of the United States. Rand and McNally, Chicago, 1910. 66 × 46 inches.

[Steinwehr], *Case's Map of the United States, the British Provinces, Mexico, and Part of the West Indies*. Hartford, 1893. $60\frac{1}{2} \times 60\frac{5}{8}$ inches.

United States Land Office, *Map of the United States and Territories with Adjacent Parts of Canada and Mexico*. Washington, Land Office, 1909. — This excellent wall map may be had from the Land Office for $1, unmounted. Size, 5 × 7 feet.

§ 33. Historical Maps

There is great need of an elaborate historical atlas of North America, worked out from the documentary sources as illustrated by contemporary maps; and it is understood that the Division of Historical Research of the Carnegie Institution of Washington has in mind the making of such an atlas. The New England History Teachers' Association has just issued a brief *Catalogue of . . . [its] Collection of Historical Material*. In Avery's *United States*, Channing's *United States*, and the *American Nation* (see § 29) are sets of maps which taken together constitute, or will constitute, in each series an informal atlas.

There are a few series of historical maps of the United States outside of the ordinary histories, including the following:

A. B. Hart, *Epoch Maps Illustrating American History*. N.Y., 1910. — Fifteen colored maps; the same maps appear in the three volumes of *Epochs of American History*.

F. W. Hewes and Henry Gannett, *Scribner's Statistical Atlas of the United States*. N.Y., 1885. — Pages 31–40; plates 12–17.

Townsend MacCoun, *Historical Geography of the United States*. Boston, 1901. Substantially a reprint of the maps in Labberton's *Atlas*.

William R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas.* (American Historical series.) N.Y., 1911. — A general atlas containing twenty-four maps connected with United States history.

Several series of reprints of early maps are serviceable, especially:

Samuel Abbott, *Fac-similes of Old Historical American Maps.* Boston, [no date]. — Seven maps, from 1520 to 1775; issued separately with booklets.

A. B. Hulbert, *Crown Collection of Photographs of American Maps.* 5 vols. Cleveland, 1904–1908. — Second Series. 3 vols. 1910.

E. L. Stevenson, *Atlas of Portolan Charts.* N.Y., 1911. — Facsimile of manuscript probably of 1508; contains 20 maps, 4 of which relate to the New World.

E. L. Stevenson, *Maps illustrating Early Discovery and Exploration in America, 1502–1530.* New Brunswick, N.J., 1906. — Twelve maps, from Cantino to Verrazano.

In Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History* (§ 29) there are many reprints; also in his other works (§ 36).

§ 34. Sources of Historical Geography

The advanced student of the subject must search for his material first of all in the various patents and charters, English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Dutch, Swedish, and Russian. The principal English patents have been collected in Poore's *Charters and Constitutions*, and are reëdited in Thorpe's edition (see § 42). Many of the Dutch and Swedish documents are to be found in O'Callaghan's *Documentary History of the State of New York;* the French grants of Louisiana are in Gayarré's *Histoire de la Louisiane.* The Canadian documents may be found through the index to the *Canadian Archives*, published at Ottawa in 1909. Care should be taken in all these cases to keep as near as possible to the originals, as imperfect texts and translations are not uncommon.

For the treaties of partition and delimitation among the various European nations from 1492 to 1910, the best collections are the following:

Recueil des Traitez de Paix, de Trève, . . . et d'autres Actes Publics. 4 vols., folio. Amsterdam, 1700.

George Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties between Great Britain and other Powers.* 2 vols. London, 1790.

Jean Dumont, *Corps Universel Diplomatique du Droit des Gens.* 8 vols. Amsterdam, 1726–1731.

Barbeyrac and Rousset, *Supplément au Corps Universel Diplomatique.* 5 vols. Amsterdam, 1739.

Guillaume de Garden, *Histoire Générale des Traités de Paix.* 15 vols. Paris, 1848–1887.

A General Collection of Treatys. 4 vols. London, 1732.

James Watson Gerard, *The Peace of Utrecht.* N.Y., 1885.

Christophe Guillaume de Koch, *Abrégé de l'Histoire des Traités de Paix.* 4 vols. Basle, 1796–1797.

Friedrich Schoell, *Histoire Abrégée des Traités de Paix.* 15 vols. Paris, 1817–1818. — This is Koch's work recast and continued.

Charles de Martens et Ferdinand de Cussy, *Traités et Conventions Diplomatiques.* 7 vols. Leipsic, 1846–1857.

Georges Frédéric de Martens and others, *Recueil de Traités des Puissances et États de l'Europe* (1761–1910). 85 vols. (including 4 supplementary ones) in 90 parts, and an extra index vol. Göttingen and Leipsic, 1817–1910. — After Vol. VIII the title became *Nouveau Recueil*, etc., and other changes appear in titles of the later volumes.

All the treaties to which the United States was a party are in the official volumes, *Treaties and Conventions* and Malloy's *Treaties, Conventions, and International Acts* (§ 44). The Carnegie Institution has in preparation a publication giving all treaties between European powers that bear in any way on America. Internal colonial boundaries must be ascertained from the original grants, the colonial records (§ 43), and the decisions of the Privy Council. Internal boundaries within the United States are usually defined by act of Congress (*Statutes at Large*); but frequently they are described in presidential proclamations, which may be found in the *Statutes* since 1855, and in J. D. Richardson's *Messages and Papers of the Presidents* (§ 48). Controversies between states have almost always been subjects for investigation by Congress, and in such cases they are described in the *Congressional Documents;* or they have given rise to suits before the Supreme Court of the United States, and the decisions are recorded in the *Reports* of the court. Many monographs and separate reports on these topics will be found under the topical readings in Parts IV, V, and VI of this *Guide.*

§ 35. Gazetteers, Geographies, and Registers

Books of this type are often of value in fixing local names and giving details of routes of travel, prices of commodities, rates of fare, etc., that are otherwise difficult to discover. The following volumes, among others, have been found useful by one or another of the compilers. A few state gazetteers are noted in § 37. Others (for Colorado, Connecticut, Cuba, Delaware, Indian Territory, Kansas, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Porto Rico, Rhode Island, Texas, Utah, Virginia, and West Virginia), compiled by Henry Gannett, are published in the *Bulletins* of the United States Geological Survey.

William Amphlett, *The Emigrant's Directory to the Western States of North America.* London, 1819.

Appletons' Companion Hand-Book of Travel to the United States and British Provinces. N.Y., 1861.

Daniel Blowe, *Geographical, Commercial, and Agricultural View of the United States.* Liverpool, about 1820.

Bowles's New Map of North America and the West Indies. London, 1781. — Shows the limits of the British Empire as fixed by the treaty of 1763, and also the dominions of other European states.

Samuel R. Brown, *The Western Gazetteer, or Emigrant's Directory.* Auburn, N.Y., 1817.

J. Ross Browne, *Resources of the Pacific Slope.* N.Y., 1869.

William Cobbett, *The Emigrant's Guide; in Ten Letters, addressed to the Tax-Payers of England.* London, 1829.

A. J. Coolidge and J. B. Mansfield, *History and Description of New England, General and Local.* Vol. I, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont. Boston, 1859. — No more published.

Samuel Cumings, *The Western Pilot, containing Charts of the Ohio River, and of the Mississippi.* Cincinnati, 1828, 1829, 1834, etc.

Edwin A. Curley, *Nebraska, its Advantages, Resources, and Drawbacks.* N.Y., 1875.

Dakota: Department of Immigration, *Resources of Dakota.* Pierre, 1887. — Other editions.

E. Dana, *Description of the Bounty Lands in the State of Illinois.* Cincinnati, 1819. — Contains also the principal roads and routes, by land and water, in the United States, from New Brunswick to the Pacific.

E. Dana, *Geographical Sketches on the Western Country: designed for*

Emigrants and Settlers. Cincinnati, 1819. — Contains also a list of the public roads from Eastport to the Missouri River.

William Darby, *The Emigrants' Guide to the Western and Southwestern States and Territories.* N.Y., 1818.

William Darby, *Geographical Description of the State of Louisiana.* N.Y., 1816. — 2d ed., 1817.

G. M. Davison, *The Traveller's Guide through the Middle and Northern States and the Provinces of Canada.* 8th ed. Saratoga, 1840. — The early editions (1825–1830) were called *The Fashionable Tour.*

[John Disturnell], *A Trip through the Lakes of North America. . . . A Complete Guide for the Pleasure Traveler and Emigrant.* N.Y., 1857.

[John Disturnell], *The Western Traveller; embracing the Canal and Railroad Routes from Albany and Troy to Buffalo and Niagara Falls.* N.Y., 1844.

[Theodore Dwight], *The Northern Traveller and Northern Tour.* 5th ed. N.Y., [1834]. — Earlier editions, 1825, 1831, etc.

The Emigrants' Guide; or, Pocket Geography of the Western States and Territories. Cincinnati, 1818.

Richard S. Fisher, *A New and Complete Statistical Gazetteer of the United States of America.* N.Y., 1853.

R. S. Fisher and Charles Colby, *American Statistical Annual.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1854–1855.

Timothy Flint, *History and Geography of the Mississippi Valley,* etc. 3d ed. 2 vols. (in one). Cincinnati, 1833. Earlier editions, 1828, 1832.

Peter Force, *A National Calendar* (1820–29). 7 vols. Published annually at Washington.

[*Hugh*] *Gaine's Universal Register, or American and British Kalendar for the Year 1776.* N.Y.

John Hayward, *Gazetteer of the United States of America.* Hartford, 1853. — Hayward also compiled *The New England Gazetteer* (Boston, 1839, 1840, etc.), and gazetteers of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Vermont.

Samuel Hazard, editor, *Hazard's United States Commercial and Statistical Register.* 6 vols. Phila., 1840–1842.

D. Hewett, *The American Traveller.* Washington, 1825.

John S. Hittell, *Resources of California.* 6th ed. San Francisco, 1874.

C. C. Hutchinson, *Resources of Kansas.* Topeka, 1871.

Indiana Gazetteer, or Topographical Dictionary. Indianapolis, 1833, 1849.

Abner D. Jones, *Illinois and the West.* Boston, 1838. — Especially good on pioneer conditions.

John Lathrop, Jr., *Gentleman's Pocket Register, and Free-Mason's Annual Anthology, for . . . 1813.* Boston.

John Melish, *Geographical Description of the United States.* Phila., 1826. — Earlier editions, 1816, 1818, 1822. Some of the material was published in 1815 as Part I of *The Traveller's Directory* (below).

John Melise, *Information and Advice to Emigrants to the United States.* Phila., 1819.

John Melish, *The Traveller's Directory through the United States.* 5th ed. Phila., 1819. — Earlier editions, 1815, 1818; enlarged edition called *A Statistical View of the United States,* N.Y., 1825. The second part of the work is *A Description of the Roads in the United States* (Phila., 1814, etc.).

Mills and Hicks's British and American Register, with an Almanack. 2 vols. Boston, 1774–1775.

[Samuel A. Mitchell], *An Accompaniment to Mitchell's Reference and Distance Map of the United States.* Phila., 1834. — Other editions, 1835–1845.

[Samuel Mitchell], *Illinois in 1837.* Phila., 1837.

Montana: Bureau of Agriculture, *The Treasure State: Montana and its Magnificent Resources.* Helena, 1899. — Extra edition of the Board's sixth annual report.

Jedidiah Morse, *The American Gazetteer.* Boston, 1797. — 2d and 3d eds., revised and enlarged; 1804, 1810.

Jedidiah Morse, *The American Geography.* Elizabethtown, 1789.

New Empires in the Northwest. (*Library of Tribune Extras,* I, No. 8.) N.Y., 1889.

Oregon: Immigration Board, *Pacific Northwest: Information for Settlers and Others.* N.Y., 1883. — Various later editions sometimes with change of title.

J. M. Peck, *A Guide for Emigrants, containing Sketches of Illinois, Missouri,* etc. Boston, 1831.

J. M. Peck, *A New Guide for Emigrants to the West.* Boston, 1836, 1837, 1844, etc.

Poor Clergyman's Almanack; or, an Astronomical Diary and Serious Monitor (1809–1822). Published annually at Boston.

Joseph Scott, *Geographical Dictionary of the United States of North America.* Phila., 1805.

Joseph Scott, *United States Gazetteer.* Phila., 1795.

Ernest Seyd, *California and its Resources.* London, 1858.

Joshua Shaw, *United States Directory for the Use of Travellers and Merchants, giving an account of the Principal Establishments of Business and Pleasure throughout the Union.* Phila., [1823].

John Calvin Smith, *Western Tourist and Emigrant's Guide.* N.Y., 1840.

Horatio Gates Spafford, *Pocket Guide for the Tourist and Traveller along the line of the Canals and the Interior Commerce of the State of New York.* N.Y., 1824.

[Oliver G. Steele], *Steele's Western Guide Book and Emigrant's Directory.* 11th ed. Buffalo, 1839. — 1st ed., 1832.

H. S. Tanner, *The American Traveller; or Guide through the United States.* 8th ed. Phila., 1842.

H. S. Tanner, *The Central Traveller, or Tourist's Guide through the States of Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland,* etc. 2d ed. N.Y., 1844.

H. S. Tanner, *Geographical, Historical, and Statistical View of the Central or Middle United States.* Phila., 1841.

George Temple, *The American Tourist's Pocket Companion; or a Guide to the Springs and Trip to the Lakes.* N.Y., 1812.

D. B. Warden, *Statistical, Political, and Historical Account of the United States of North America.* 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1819.

Henry J. Winser, *The Great Northwest; a Guide Book and Itinerary.* N.Y., 1883.

CHAPTER VI

SPECIAL WORKS

§ 36. Works on Special Topics

In addition to the works that attempt to give a general summary of a longer or a shorter period, there is a body of literature devoted to special topics which runs all the way through American history. Many such works are elaborate studies of very limited fields; others sweep over several centuries and have the dignity of standard histories.

The monographs have commonly been produced under the auspices of some historical society (§ 45) or some university. The Johns Hopkins *Studies in Historical and Political Science*, the Columbia *Studies in History, Economics, and Public Law*, the Harvard *Historical Studies*, and the publications of the universities of Michigan, Wisconsin, Nebraska, and Pennsylvania have been the means of bringing out carefully prepared books on American history. In the *Papers* and *Reports* of the American Historical Association are also to be found some valuable monographs. This kind of literature is on the increase, and as yet there is no complete guide to it; but it is partly indexed in Griffin's *Bibliography* (see § 24).

Akin to this form of historical writing is the coöperative history, of which the great examples are the *Memorial History of Boston* and the *Narrative and Critical History of America*, both edited by Justin Winsor; the *Memorial History of New York*, edited by James Grant Wilson; *The United States*, edited by N. S. Shaler; and the *American Nation: a History*, edited by Albert Bushnell Hart. The recent editions of the encyclopædias (§ 27) with their signed articles have adopted the same system. Below is a list of some of the more useful works of this class; others will be found in Parts IV, V, and VI of this *Guide*.

James R. Albach, *Annals of the West.* Pittsburg, 1858.

American Church History Series. 13 vols. N.Y., 1893–1897.

E. B. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time* (1870–1903). N.Y., 1903.

[Anon.], *History of the British Dominions in North America, 1497–1763.* London, 1773.

Susan B. Anthony and others, *History of Woman Suffrage.* 4 vols. N.Y. and Rochester, 1881–[1902].

J. L. Bishop, *History of American Manufactures from 1608 to 1860.* 2 vols. Phila., 1861–1864.

E. L. Bogart, *Economic History of the United States.* N.Y., 1908.

E. E. Brown, *Making of Our Middle Schools.* N.Y., 1903.

W. G. Brown, *The Lower South in American History.* N.Y., 1902.

[Edmund Burke], *Account of the European Settlements in America.* 2d ed. 2 vols. London, 1758.

James Bryce, *The American Commonwealth.* 3d ed. 2 vols. N.Y., 1893–1895. — 4th ed., revised, 2 vols., 1910.

J. M. Callahan, *American Relations in the Pacific and the Far East.* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIX, Nos. 1–3.) Baltimore, 1901.

J. M. Callahan, *Cuba and International Relations.* (*Ibid.*, Extra Vol. XXI.) Baltimore, 1899.

J. M. Callahan, *Diplomatic History of the Southern Confederacy.* Baltimore, 1901.

F. T. Carlton, *History and Problem of Organized Labor.* Boston, 1911.

Century Company, *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War.* 4 vols. N.Y., [copyright, 1884–1888].

F. E. Chadwick, *Relations of the United States and Spain.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1909–1911. — Vol. I, *Diplomacy;* Vols. II, III, *Spanish-American War.*

George Chalmers, *Political Annals of the Present United Colonies, from their Settlement to the Peace of 1763.* Book I (all ever published). London, 1780.

H. M. Chittenden, *The American Fur Trade of the Far West.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1902.

George R. Clark and others, *Short History of the United States Navy.* Phila., 1911.

Katharine Coman, *Industrial History of the United States.* N.Y., 1905. — Revised edition, 1910.

J. R. Commons and others, editors, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society.* 10 vols. Cleveland, 1909–1911.

John R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants in America.* N.Y., 1907.

A. C. Coolidge, *United States as a World Power.* N.Y., 1908.

Clive Day, *History of Commerce.* N.Y., 1907.

D. R. Dewey, *Financial History of the United States.* (American Citizen series.) N.Y., 1903. — 3d ed., 1907.

E. G. Dexter, *History of Education in the United States.* N.Y., 1904.

T. A. Dodge, *Bird's-eye View of Our Civil War.* Revised edition. Boston, 1897.

William Douglass, *A Summary, Historical and Political, of the . . . British Settlements in North America.* 2 vols. London, 1760.

S. A. Drake, *Making of the Great West, 1512–1883.* N.Y., 1887.

W. A. Dunning, *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction, and Related Topics.* N.Y., 1898.

Edward Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation.* N.Y., 1896.

Edward Eggleston, *Transit of Civilization from England to America.* N.Y., 1901.

C. W. Elliott, *New England History, from the Discovery of the Continent by the Northmen,* A.D. *986, to 1776.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1857.

A. B. Faust, *German Element in the United States.* 2 vols. Boston, 1909.

Joseph B. Felt, *Ecclesiastical History of New England.* 2 vols. Boston, 1855–1862.

Amelia C. Ford, *Colonial Precedents of Our National Land System.* (University of Wisconsin, *Bulletin*, History series, Vol. II, No. 2.) Madison, 1910.

H. J. Ford, *Rise and Growth of American Politics.* N.Y., 1898.

J. W. Foster, *American Diplomacy in the Orient.* Boston, 1903.

J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy* (1776–1876). Boston, 1900.

R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic of the United States.* Boston, 1872.

Albert A. Giesecke, *American Commercial Legislation before 1789.* (University of Pennsylvania, *Publications in Political Economy and Public Law.*) N.Y., 1910.

J. P. Gordy, *Political History of the United States* (1787–1828). 2d. ed. 2 vols. (No more published.) N.Y., 1900–1903. — First edition was published as *History of Political Parties.*

G. W. Greene, *Historical View of the American Revolution.* Boston, 1865.

L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways* (to 1887). (University of Wisconsin, *Bulletin*, Economics and Political Science series, Vol. III, No. 2, Vol. VI, No. 1.) 2 vols. Madison, 1908–1910.

A. B. Hart, *Foundations of American Foreign Policy.* N.Y., 1901.

A. B. Hart, *National Ideals Historically Traced.* (*The American Nation,* Vol. XXVI.) N.Y., 1907.

A. B. Hart, *Southern South.* N.Y., 1910.

R. T. Hill, *Public Domain and Democracy.* N.Y., 1910.

B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest.* N.Y., 1888.

Mary L. Hinsdale, *History of the President's Cabinet.* Ann Arbor, 1911.

J. K. Hosmer, *History of the Louisiana Purchase.* N.Y., 1902.

J. K. Hosmer, *Short History of the Mississippi Valley.* Boston, 1901.

D. F. Houston, *Critical Study of Nullification in South Carolina.* (*Harvard Historical Studies,* Vol. III.) N.Y., 1896.

L. M. Keasbey, *Nicaragua Canal and the Monroe Doctrine.* N.Y., 1896.

J. H. Latané, *Diplomatic Relations of the United States and Spanish America.* Baltimore, 1900.

H. B. Learned, *The President's Cabinet.* New Haven, 1912.

Mary S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery in America, 1619–1808.* (Radcliffe College, *Monographs,* No. 11.) Boston, 1901.

H. C. Lodge, *Story of the Revolution.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1898. — Also in one volume, 1903.

Jesse Macy, *Political Parties in the United States, 1846–1861.* (Citizen's Library.) N.Y., 1900.

E. S. Maclay, *History of American Privateers.* N.Y., 1899.

E. S. Maclay, *History of the United States Navy from 1775 to 1902.* Enlarged edition. 3 vols. N.Y., 1901–1902.

A. T. Mahan, *Sea Power in its Relations to the War of 1812.* 2 vols. Boston, 1905.

Lois K. Mathews, *The Expansion of New England.* Boston, 1909.

C. E. Merriam, *History of American Political Theories.* N.Y., 1903.

J. W. Monette, *History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1846.

J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy, its Spirit and Achievements.* N.Y., 1905.

A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years of American Finance.* N.Y., 1909.

Herbert L. Osgood, *The American Colonies in the Seventeenth Century.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1904–1907.

J. G. Palfrey, *History of New England* (1492–1774). 5 vols. Boston, 1858–1890. — The last volume was published after the author's death under the editorship of his son, F. W. Palfrey.

Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War in America.* 4 vols. Phila., 1875–[1888].

F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier.* N.Y., 1910.

John H. Perkins, *Annals of the West.* Cincinnati, 1846.

W. F. Reddaway, *Monroe Doctrine.* Cambridge, Eng., 1898.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Naval War of 1812.* 3d ed. N.Y., 1883.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Winning of the West.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1889–1896. — Also Sagamore edition, 6 vols.

J. B. Sanborn, *Congressional Grants of Land in Aid of Railways.* (University of Wisconsin, *Bulletin*, Economics, Political Science, and History series, Vol. II, No. 3.) Madison, 1899.

J. C. Schwab, *Confederate States, . . . a Financial and Industrial History.* N.Y., 1901.

H. E. Scudder, *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago.* (Sans Souci series.) N.Y., 1876.

W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad.* N.Y., 1898.

Richmond Mayo Smith, *Emigration and Immigration.* N.Y., 1890.

E. E. Sparks, *Expansion of the American People.* Chicago, 1900.

John R. Spears, *History of our Navy.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1897. — An additional volume on Spanish War, 1898.

O. M. W. Sprague, *History of Crises under the National Banking System.* (National Monetary Commission.) Washington, 1910.

Edward Stanwood, *American Tariff Controversies in the Nineteenth Century.* 2 vols. Boston, 1903.

Edward Stanwood, *History of the Presidency.* Boston, 1898.

F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States.* N.Y., 1888. — 5th ed., revised (to 1909), [1910].

R. H. Titherington, *History of the Spanish-American War of 1898.* N.Y., 1900.

P. J. Treat, *National Land System, 1785-1820.* N.Y., 1910.

G. O. Trevelyan, *American Revolution.* Parts I–III (to 1778). N.Y., 1899–1907. — In progress.

M. C. Tyler, *History of American Literature during the Colonial Time.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1907.

M. C. Tyler, *Literary History of the American Revolution.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1897.

J. C. Van Dyke, editor, *History of American Art.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1903-1905.

Charles Warren, *History of the American Bar, Colonial and Federal, to 1860.* Boston, 1911.

W. B. Weeden, *Economic and Social History of New England.* 2 vols. Boston, 1890.

Barrett Wendell, *Literary History of America.* (Library of Literary History.) N.Y., 1900.

G. W. Williams, *History of the Negro Race in America from 1619 to 1880.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1883.

Justin Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac: Geographical Discovery in the Interior of North America, 1534–1700.* Boston, 1894.

Justin Winsor, *The Mississippi Basin: the Struggle in America between England and France, 1697–1763.* Boston, 1895.

Justin Winsor, *The Westward Movement: the Colonies and the Republic West of the Alleghanies.* Boston, 1897.

J. A. Woodburn, *American Politics: Political Parties and Party Problems in the United States.* N.Y., 1903.

§ 37. State and Local Histories

Of late years successful attempts have been made to arouse interest among school children and college students in the history of their own states and towns. It is hence desirable that every good school library should have a set of all available books on the local history; the state histories are also often sources for the study of national history or of special topics. Two series of brief state histories have been partly completed, — the *American Commonwealth* series, edited by H. E. Scudder, and the *Story of the States* series, edited by E. S. Brooks; and there are older and more exhaustive works on nearly all the states. County and town histories abound; but there is little good literature on the history of cities.

The following list is arranged alphabetically by states, bibliographies (when there are any) standing first in each case, then state histories and important books on prominent cities and other places of local interest in alphabetical order. Additional material on most of the states will be found among the state papers (§ 29) and in the publications of the historical societies (§ 31).

Bradford and Henkels, *Bibliographer's Manual.* (See § 24.)

A. P. C. Griffin, *Index of Articles upon American Local History in Historical Collections in the Boston Public Library.* (Boston Public Library, *Bulletin*, April, 1883, etc.) Reprinted, Boston, 1889. — Supplemented by his *Index of the Literature of American Local History, in Collections published in 1890–1895.* Boston, 1896.

F. B. Perkins, *Check List for American Local History.* (Boston Public Library, *Bulletin*, January, 1876, etc.) Reprinted, Boston, 1876. — Gives titles of independent works only.

Alabama

Thomas M. Owen, *Bibliography of Alabama.* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1897, pp. 777–1248.) Washington, 1898.

W. Brewer, *Alabama: her History, Resources, War Record, and Public Men.* Montgomery, 1872.

W. G. Brown, *History of Alabama for Use in Schools.* (State History series.) N.Y., 1900.

Peter J. Hamilton, *Colonial Mobile.* Boston, 1897. — Revised edition, 1910.

Albert J. Pickett, *History of Alabama, and incidentally of Georgia and Mississippi.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1851.

Alaska

W. H. Dall and Marcus Baker, *Partial List of Charts, Maps, and Publications relating to Alaska and the Adjacent Region.* [Washington, 1880.]

H. H. Bancroft, *Alaska.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVIII.) San Francisco, 1886.

William H. Dall, *Alaska and its Resources.* Boston, 1870.

George Davidson, *The Alaska Boundary.* San Francisco, 1903.

Henry W. Elliott, *Our Arctic Province.* N.Y., 1886.

Henry W. Elliott, *Report on the Condition of Affairs in Alaska.* Washington, 1875.

A. W. Greely, *Handbook of Alaska; its Resources, Products, and Attractions.* N.Y., 1909.

Arizona

J. A. Munk, *Arizona Bibliography: a Private Collection of Arizoniana.* 2d ed. Los Angeles, Cal., 1908. — The first edition, 1900, is a much smaller collection.

H. H. Bancroft, *Arizona and New Mexico.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XII.) San Francisco, 1888.

Patrick Hamilton, *The Resources of Arizona.* 3d ed. San Francisco, 1884.

Arkansas

John Hallum, *Biographical and Pictorial History of Arkansas.* Vol. I. Albany, 1887.

John Hugh Reynolds, *Makers of Arkansas.* (Stories of the States series.) N.Y., [1905].

California

H. H. Bancroft, *California.* 7 vols. (*History of the Pacific States,* Vols. XIII–XIX.) San Francisco, 1884–1890.

J. S. Hittell, *History of the City of San Francisco.* San Francisco, 1878.

T. H. Hittell, *History of California.* 4 vols. San Francisco, 1885–1897.

I. B. Richman, *California under Spain and Mexico, 1535–1847.* Boston, 1911.

Josiah Royce, *California from the Conquest in 1846 to the Second Vigilance Committee in San Francisco.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1886.

Colorado

F. L. Paxson, *A Preliminary Bibliography of Colorado History.* (*University of Colorado Studies,* III, No. 3, pp. 101–114.) Boulder, 1906.

H. H. Bancroft, *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming.* (*History of the Pacific States,* Vol. XX.) San Francisco, 1890.

[O. L. Baskin & Co., publishers], *History of Denver and Colorado.* Chicago, 1880. — The publishers state that the historical portion of this work was prepared by W. B. Vickers.

D. Boyd, *History of Greeley, and the Union Colony of Colorado.* Greeley, 1891.

Connecticut

Charles A. Flagg, *Reference List of Connecticut Local History.* (New York State Library, *Bulletin,* No. 53, "Bibliography 23.") Albany, 1900.

J. H. Trumbull, *List of Books printed in Connecticut, 1709–1800.* [Hartford], 1904.

Edward E. Atwater, *History of the Colony of New Haven to its Absorption into Connecticut.* New Haven, 1881.

Frances M. Caulkins, *History of New London, from the First Survey of the Coast in 1612.* New London, 1852.

Frances M. Caulkins, *History of Norwich, from its Possession by the Indians till 1866.* "Published by the Author," [Hartford], 1866. Another edition was pubished by "Friends of the Author" in 1874.

Theodore Dwight, *History of Connecticut, from the First Settlement.* N.Y., 1841.

M. Louise Greene, *Development of Religious Liberty in Connecticut.* Boston, 1905.

Gideon H. Hollister, *History of Connecticut, from the First Settlement of the Colony.* 2 vols. Hartford, 1857.

Alexander Johnston, *Connecticut: a Study of a Commonwealth-Democracy.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1887. — New edition, 1903.

Edward R. Lambert, *History of the Colony of New Haven, before and after the Union with Connecticut.* New Haven, 1838.

Ellen D. Larned, *History of Windham County, Connecticut.* 2 vols. Worcester, 1874.

Charles H. Levermore, *The Republic of New Haven.* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, Extra Vol. I.) Baltimore, 1886.

Elias B. Sanford, *History of Connecticut.* Hartford, 1888.

Bernard C. Steiner, *History of the Plantation of Menunkatuck and of the Original Town of Guilford, Connecticut, comprising the Present Towns of Guilford and Madison.* Baltimore, 1897.

Henry Reed Stiles, *History of Ancient Windsor.* N.Y., 1859.

Henry Reed Stiles, *History and Genealogies of Ancient Windsor, 1635–1891.* 2 vols. (Vol. I, History; Vol. II, Genealogies and Biographies.) Hartford, 1891–1892.

Benjamin Trumbull, *Complete History of Connecticut, from 1630 to 1764.* 2 vols. New Haven, 1818. — New edition (with index). 2 vols. New London, 1898.

James Hammond Trumbull, *Memorial History of Hartford County, Connecticut, 1633–1884.* 2 vols. Boston, 1886.

Dakota

M. K. Armstrong, *The Early Empire Builders of the Great West.* St. Paul, 1901. — Compiled from his *Early History of Dakota Territory*, 1866.

G. A. Batchelder, *Sketch of the History and Resources of Dakota Territory.* Yankton, 1870.

W. M. Blackburn, *Historical Sketch of North and South Dakota.* (South Dakota Historical Society, *Collections*, I, 23–162.) Aberdeen, 1902.

North Dakota Historical Society, *Collections.* Vols. I–II. Bismarck, N.D., 1906–1908. — Contains much correlated matter on the history of the state.

Doane Robinson, *Brief History of South Dakota.* N.Y., [1905].

South Dakota Historical Society, *Collections.* Vols. I–IV. Aberdeen, S.D., 1902–1908. — Contains much correlated matter on the history of the state.

Delaware

Israel Acrelius, *Beskrifning om de Swenska Församlingars gedan Nya Nederland.* Stockholm, 1759. — Translated by William M. Reynolds as *History of New Sweden.* (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs,* Vol. XI.) Phila., 1876.

J. C. Clay, *Annals of the Swedes on the Delaware.* Phila., 1835.

H. C. Conrad, *History of the State of Delaware.* 3 vols. Wilmington, 1908.

Benjamin Ferris, *History of the Original Settlements on the Delaware.* Wilmington, 1840.

Thomas C. Holm, *Kort Beskrifning om Provincien Nya Swerige.* Stockholm, 1702. — Translated by Peter S. du Ponceau, as *Description of the Province of New Sweden.* Phila., 1834.

Amandus Johnson, *Swedish Settlements on the Delaware, 1638–1664.* 2 vols. Phila., 1911.

J. T. Scharf, *History of Delaware, 1609–1888.* 2 vols. Phila., 1888.

Florida

W. W. Dewhurst, *History of Saint Augustine, Florida.* N.Y., 1881.

George R. Fairbanks, *History of Florida, 1512–1842.* Phila., 1871.

George R. Fairbanks, *Florida; its History and its Romance, 1497–1898.* New edition. Jacksonville, 1898.

James G. Forbes, *Sketches, Historical and Topographical, of the Floridas; more especially of East Florida.* N.Y., 1821.

H. B. Fuller, *The Purchase of Florida; its History and Diplomacy.* Cleveland, 1906.

Paul Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Floride Française.* Paris, 1875.

Sidney Lanier, *Florida: its Scenery, Climate, and History.* Phila., [copyright, 1875].

John Wallace, *Carpet Bag Rule in Florida.* Jacksonville, 1888.

John Lee Williams, *The Territory of Florida.* N.Y., 1837.

Georgia

Books relating to the History of Georgia in the Library of Wymberley Jones De Renne. [Copyright, Savannah, 1905.]

Charles Colcock Jones, *History of Georgia.* 2 vols. Boston, 1883.

Hugh McCall, *History of Georgia.* 2 vols. Savannah, 1811.

U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights.* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report,* 1901, Vol. II.) Washington, 1902.

Adiel Sherwood, *Gazetteer of the State of Georgia.* Washington City 1827, 1829, 1837, etc.

W. B. Stevens, *History of Georgia.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1847; Phila., 1859.

Adelaide Wilson, *Historic and Picturesque Savannah.* Boston, 1889.

Idaho

H. H. Bancroft, *Washington, Idaho, and Montana.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVI.) San Francisco, 1890.

John Hailey, *History of Idaho.* Boise, 1910.

Illinois

A. T. Andreas, *History of Chicago.* 3 vols. Chicago, 1885.

Harlan H. Barrows, *Geography of the Middle Illinois Valley.* (Illinois State Geological Survey, *Bulletin*, No. 15.) Urbana, 1910.

A. C. Boggess, *Settlement of Illinois, 1778–1830.* Chicago, 1908.

Sidney Breese, *Early History of Illinois.* Chicago, 1884.

Henry Brown, *History of Illinois.* N.Y., 1844.

Alexander Davidson and Bernard Stuvé, *Complete History of Illinois, from 1673 to 1873.* Springfield, 1874.

George Flower, *History of the English Settlement in Edwards County, Illinois.* (Chicago Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. I.) Chicago, 1882.

Thomas Ford, *History of Illinois.* Chicago, 1854.

Edward G. Mason, *Chapters from Illinois History.* Chicago, 1901.

John Moses, *Illinois, Historical and Statistical.* 2 vols. Chicago, 1889–1892.

J. M. Peck, *Gazetteer of Illinois.* Jacksonville, 1834; Phila., 1837.

W. V. Pooley, *Settlement of Illinois, 1830–1850.* Madison, Wis., 1908.

John Reynolds, *Pioneer History of Illinois.* Belleville, Ill., 1852. — 2d ed., Chicago, 1887.

Indiana

Wallace A. Brice, *History of Fort Wayne.* Fort Wayne, 1868.

Charles Rufus Brown, *The Government of Indiana, including the History.* Kalamazoo, 1875.

Ignatius Brown, *Logan's History of Indianapolis.* [No date.]

W. M. Cockrum, *Pioneer History of Indiana.* Oakland City, 1907.

John B. Dillon, *History of Indiana to the Close of the Territorial Government in 1816.* Indianapolis, 1859.

Jacob P. Dunn, *Indiana, a Redemption from Slavery.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1888.

De Witt Goodrich and C. R. Tuttle, *Illustrated History of the State of Indiana.* Indianapolis, 1874. — Revised edition by W. S. Haymond, 1879.

Julia H. Levering, *Historic Indiana.* N.Y., 1909.

William Henry Smith, *History of the State of Indiana.* 2 vols. Indianapolis, 1897.

Iowa

[Anon.], *History of Marshall County, Iowa.* Chicago, 1878.

B. F. Gue, *History of Iowa from the Earliest Times.* 4 vols. N.Y., [copyright, 1903].

W. J. J. Harsha, *The Story of Iowa.* Omaha, 1890.

L. D. Ingersoll, *Iowa and the Rebellion.* Phila., 1866. — 3d ed. 1867.

William Salter, *Iowa, the First Free State in the Louisiana Purchase.* Chicago, 1905.

B. F. Shambaugh, ed., *Iowa Biographical Series.* Iowa City, 1907–.

Kansas

F. W. Giles, *Thirty Years in Topeka: a Historical Sketch.* Topeka, 1886.

John N. Holloway, *History of Kansas.* Lafayette, Ind., 1868.

Leverett W. Spring, *Kansas: the Prelude to the War for the Union.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1885.

D. W. Wilder, *Annals of Kansas.* Topeka, 1875. — Another edition, 1886.

Kentucky

Mann Butler, *History of the Commonwealth of Kentucky.* Louisville, 1834. — 2d ed. Cincinnati, 1836.

Benjamin Casseday, *History of Louisville.* Louisville, 1852.

Lewis Collins, *Historical Sketches of Kentucky.* Published by the author at Maysville, Ky., and by J. A. James, at Cincinnati, 1848.

Lewis Collins, *History of Kentucky.* Revised and enlarged by his son, Richard H. Collins. 2 vols. Covington, Ky., 1878.

Daniel Drake, *Pioneer Life in Kentucky.* Edited by his son, Charles D. Drake. Cincinnati, 1870.

R. M. McElroy, *Kentucky in the Nation's History.* N.Y., 1909. — Bibliography at pp. 547–577.

Humphrey Marshall, *History of Kentucky.* 2 vols. Frankfort, 1824.

George W. Ranck, *History of Lexington, Kentucky.* Cincinnati, 1872.

N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky: a Pioneer Commonwealth.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1885.

Zachary F. Smith, *History of Kentucky.* Louisville, 1886. — Contains a bibliography and a facsimile of Filson's map.

Louisiana

François Barbé-Marbois, *Histoire de la Louisiane et de la Cession.* Paris, 1829. — Translated as *History of Louisiana, particularly of the Cession of that Colony to the United States.* Phila., 1830.

Alcée Fortier, *History of Louisiana.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1904.

Alexander Franz, *Die Kolonisation des Mississippitales bis zum Ausgange der französischen Herrschaft.* Leipsic, 1906.

B. F. French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana.* 5 vols. N.Y., 1846–1853.

B. F. French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1869–1875.

Charles Gayarré, *Histoire de la Louisiane.* 2 vols. (in one). New Orleans, 1846.

Charles Gayarré, *History of Louisiana.* 3d ed. 4 vols. New Orleans, 1885.

Pierre Heinrich, *La Louisiane sous la Compagnie des Indes, 1717–1731.* Paris, [1908].

Grace King, *New Orleans, the Place and the People.* N.Y., 1895.

Grace King, *Sieur de Bienville.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

Grace King and John R. Ficklen, *History of Louisiana.* 3d ed. N.Y., 1897.

François Xavier Martin, *History of Louisiana.* 2 vols. New Orleans, 1827. — Reprinted in 1 vol. (with continuation to 1861), 1882.

J. W. Monette, *History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1846.

B. M. Norman, *New Orleans and Environs.* New Orleans, 1845.

Albert Phelps, *Louisiana; a Record of Expansion.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1905.

Le Page du Pratz, *Histoire de la Louisiane.* 3 vols. Paris, 1758. — Translation: *History of Louisiana.* 2 vols. London, 1763; new edition in 1 vol., 1774.

James A. Robertson, editor, *Louisiana under the Rule of Spain, France, and the United States, 1785–1807.* 2 vols. Cleveland, 1911. — Contemporary accounts by Paul Alliot and others. Has a bibliography.

State Papers and Correspondence bearing upon the Purchase of the Territory of Louisiana. (*House Docs.*, 57 Cong. 2 sess. No. 431.) Washington, 1903.

Amos Stoddard, *Sketches, Historical and Descriptive, of Louisiana.* Phila., 1812.

Marc de Villiers du Terrage, *Les Dernières Années de la Louisiane Française.* Paris, [1904].

Maurice Thompson, *The Story of Louisiana.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1889.

Maine

D. B. Hall, *Reference List on Maine Local History.* (New York State Library, *Bulletin*, No. 63, "Bibliography 28.") Albany, 1901.

Joseph Williamson, *Bibliography of the State of Maine.* 2 vols. Portland, 1896.

James Sullivan, *History of the District of Maine.* Boston, 1795.

George Jones Varney, *Brief History of Maine.* Portland, 1888.

W. D. Williamson, *History of the State of Maine.* 2 vols. Hallowell, 1832.

Maryland

Francis C. Sparks, *Appendix [to the proposed report of the Maryland Public Records Commission.* Baltimore, 1910.] — A list of officers and towns, with dates of establishment.

Bernard C. Steiner, *Descriptions of Maryland.* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XXII, Nos. 11–12.) Baltimore, 1904. — This is a bibliography of Maryland.

L. L. Bozman, *History of Maryland* (1633-1660). 2 vols. Baltimore, 1837.

George Johnston, *History of Cecil County, Maryland.* Elkton, 1881.

W. H. Lowdermilk, *History of Cumberland.* Washington, 1878.

John V. L. McMahon, *Historical View of the Government of Maryland.* Baltimore, 1831.

Newton D. Mereness, *Maryland as a Proprietary Province.* N.Y., 1901.

David Ridgely, *Annals of Annapolis.* Baltimore, 1841.

J. T. Scharf, *Chronicles of Baltimore.* Baltimore, 1874.

J. T. Scharf, *History of Maryland from the Earliest Period to the Present Day.* 3 vols. Baltimore, 1879.

Massachusetts [1]

Brooks Adams, *The Emancipation of Massachusetts.* Boston, 1887.

C. F. Adams, *Massachusetts, Historians and History.* Boston, 1893.

C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History.* 2 vols. Boston, 1892.

[1] Books on Massachusetts are arranged in two lists, — (1) those relating to the state; (2) those dealing with the local history. The latter are arranged alphabetically by places.

John S. Barry, *History of Massachusetts* (1492–1820). 3 vols. Boston, 1855–1857.

Alden Bradford, *History of Massachusetts*. 3 vols. Boston, 1822–1829.— Vol. I deals with the years 1764–1777; II, with 1775–1789; III, with 1790–1820.

George E. Ellis, *Puritan Age and Rule in the Colony of the Massachusetts-Bay, 1629–1685*. Boston, 1888.

Thomas Hutchinson, *History of the Colony [and Province] of Massachusetts-Bay*. 3 vols. London, 1765, 1768, and 1828. — Vol. I deals with the years 1628–1691; II, with 1691–1750; III, with 1750–1774.

G. R. Minot, *Continuation of the History of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, from the Year 1748 to 1765*. 2 vols. Boston, 1798–1803.

Peter Oliver, *The Puritan Commonwealth: an Historical Review of the Puritan Government in Massachusetts*. Boston, 1856.

Jeremiah Colburn, *Bibliography of the Local History of Massachusetts*. Boston, 1871.

Charles A. Flagg, *Guide to Massachusetts Local History*. Salem, [copyright, 1907].

Joseph Merrill, *History of Amesbury and Merrimac*. Haverhill, 1880.

John Daggett, *Sketch of the History of Attleborough*. Dedham, 1834.

Samuel Gardner Drake, *History and Antiquities of Boston*. Boston, 1856. — 2d ed., 1857; also in 2 vols., 1857.

H. C. Lodge, *Boston*. (Historic Towns series.) N.Y., 1891.

Josiah Quincy, *Municipal History of Boston*. Boston, 1852.

Caleb H. Snow, *History of Boston*. 2d ed. Boston, 1828.

Justin Winsor, editor, *Memorial History of Boston, 1630–1880*. 4 vols. Boston, 1880–1881.

Charles Francis Adams, *History of Braintree, the North Precinct of Braintree, and the Town of Quincy*. Cambridge, 1891.

W. S. Pattee, *History of Old Braintree and Quincy*. Quincy, 1878.

Harriet F. Woods, *Historical Sketches of Brookline*. Boston, 1874.

Lucius R. Paige, *History of Cambridge, 1630–1877*. Boston, 1877.

Frederick Freeman, *History of Cape Cod*. 2 vols. Boston, 1860–1862.

Richard Frothingham, *History of Charlestown*. Boston, 1845.

Alfred S. Hudson, *History of Concord*. Vol. I: *Colonial Concord*. Concord, 1904.

Herman Mann, *Historical Annals of Dedham*. Dedham, 1847.

George Sheldon, *History of Deerfield*. 2 vols. Deerfield, 1895–1896.

James Blake, *Annals of the Town of Dorchester [to] 1750.* (Dorchester Antiquarian and Historical Society, *Collections*, No. 2.) Boston, 1846.

History of the Town of Dorchester (1626–1858). By a Committee of the Dorchester Antiquarian and Historical Society. Boston, 1859.

John J. Babson, *History of the Town of Gloucester, Cape Ann, including the Town of Rockport.* Gloucester, 1860.

Frederick C. Pierce, *History of Grafton.* Worcester, 1879.

Francis M. Thompson, *History of Greenfield.* 2 vols. Greenfield, 1904.

Samuel A. Green, *Groton Historical Series.* Boston, 1882, etc.

Sylvester Judd, *History of Hadley.* Northampton, 1863. — New edition, edited by George Sheldon, Springfield, 1905.

Lucius R. Paige, *History of Hardwick.* Boston, 1883.

George W. Chase, *History of Haverhill.* Haverhill, 1861.

History of the Town of Hingham. 3 vols. Hingham, 1893. — Published by the town. Vol. I (in two parts) is historical.

Joseph B. Felt, *History of Ipswich, Essex, and Hamilton.* Cambridge, 1834.

Thomas F. Waters, *Ipswich in the Massachusetts Bay Colony.* Ipswich, 1905.

Samuel Roads, *History and Traditions of Marblehead.* Boston, 1880.

John G. Metcalf, *Annals of the Town of Mendon.* Providence, 1880.

Obed Macy, *History of Nantucket.* 2 pts. Boston, 1835.

Joshua Coffin, *Sketch of the History of Newbury, Newburyport, and West Newbury.* Boston, 1845.

Joseph E. A. Smith, *History of Pittsfield, 1734–1800.* Boston, 1869.

William Thomas Davis, *Ancient Landmarks of Plymouth.* Boston, 1883.

John Abbott Goodwin, *The Pilgrim Republic: an Historical Review of the Colony of New Plymouth.* Boston, 1888.

Francis S. Drake, *The Town of Roxbury.* Roxbury, 1878.

Joseph B. Felt, *Annals of Salem.* Salem, 1827.

W. A. Benedict and H. A. Tracy, *History of the Town of Sutton.* Worcester, 1878.

J. G. Holland, *History of Western Massachusetts.* 2 vols. Springfield, 1855.

Michigan

Thomas M. Cooley, *Michigan: a History of Governments.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1885. — New edition, 1905.

James H. Lanman, *History of Michigan.* N.Y., 1839.

Electra M. Sheldon, *Early History of Michigan.* N.Y., 1856.

Minnesota

[J. F. Williams], *Bibliography of Minnesota.* (Minnesota Historical Society, *Collections*, III, 13–75.) St. Paul, 1880.

W. W. Folwell, *Minnesota, the North Star State.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1908.

Edward D. Neill, *Concise History of Minnesota.* Minneapolis, 1887.

Edward D. Neill, *History of Minnesota, from the Earliest French Explorations to the Present Time.* Phila., 1858. — 5th edition, revised and enlarged, Minneapolis, 1883.

E. S. Seymour, *Sketches of Minnesota.* N.Y., 1850.

J. F. Williams, *History of the City of Saint Paul, Minnesota.* St. Paul, 1876. — This forms the fourth volume of the *Collections* of the Minnesota Historical Society.

Mississippi

Director of the Department of Archives and History of Mississippi, *Annual Reports*, 1902–1904. 3 vols. Jackson, Miss., and Nashville, Tenn., 1902–1905. — Contains catalogues of letters, documents, Confederate war records, etc.

Thomas M. Owen, *Bibliography of Mississippi.* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1899, I, 633–828.) Washington, 1900. — Also bound separately.

J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi as a Province, Territory, and State.* Jackson, 1880.

Robert Lowry and W. H. McCardle, *History of Mississippi.* Jackson, 1891.

Albert J. Pickett, *History of Alabama, Georgia, and Mississippi.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1851.

Missouri

Chancy R. Barns, editor, *The Commonwealth of Missouri.* St. Louis, 1877. — The chapter on "Educational Progress" is by W. T. Harris.

Frederic L. Billon, *Annals of St. Louis in its Territorial Days, 1804-1821.* St. Louis, 1889.

Lucien Carr, *Missouri, a Bone of Contention.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1888.

W. B. Davis and D. S. Durrie, *Illustrated History of Missouri.* St Louis, 1876.

Richard Edwards and M. Hopewell, *Edwards' Great West and her Commercial Metropolis* [*St. Louis*]. St. Louis, 1860.

Louis Houck, *History of Missouri, from the Earliest Explorations . . . until the Admission of the State into the Union* [1821]. 3 vols. Chicago, 1908.

Louis Houck, *Spanish Régime in Missouri: a Collection of Papers and Documents.* 2 vols. Cape Girardeau, Mo., 1910.

J. T. Scharf, *History of Saint Louis, City and County, from the Earliest Periods to the Present Day.* 2 vols. Phila., 1883.

Elihu H. Shepard, *Early History of St. Louis and Missouri.* St. Louis, 1870.

Montana

H. H. Bancroft, *Washington, Idaho, and Montana.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVI.) San Francisco, 1890.

C. P. Connolly, *The Story of Montana.* (*McClure's Magazine*, XXVII, 346–361, 451–465, 629–639; XXVIII, 27–43, 198–210.) N.Y., 1906.

Howard Elliott, *Montana: an Address . . . delivered at the Interstate Fair*, September 1, 1910. [Anaconda, Mont., 1910.]

Historical Society of Montana, *Contributions.* Helena, 1876, etc. — Contains much correlated matter on the history of the state.

Katharine B. Judson, *Montana, "the Land of Shining Mountains."* Chicago, 1909.

C. N. [Joaquin] Miller, *Illustrated History of the State of Montana.* 2 vols. Chicago, 1894.

Nebraska

A. B. Hayes and S. D. Cox, *History of the City of Lincoln.* Lincoln, 1889.

Harrison Johnson, *History of Nebraska.* Omaha, 1880.

J. S. Morton and others, *Illustrated History of Nebraska.* 3 vols. Lincoln, 1905–1906.

Nevada

H. H. Bancroft, *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XX.) San Francisco, 1890.

Nevada Historical Society, *Biennial Reports*, passim. Carson City, 1909–.

C. H. Shinn, *Story of the Mine as illustrated by the great Comstock Lode of Nevada.* (Story of the West series.) N.Y., 1896.

New Hampshire

Dover Public Library, *List of Books and Pamphlets in the Dover Public Library relating to New Hampshire.* Dover, 1903.

Nathaniel Adams, *Annals of Portsmouth.* Portsmouth, 1825.

Jeremy Belknap, *History of New Hampshire.* 3 vols. Boston, 1791–1792. — 2d ed., 3 vols., Boston, 1813.

Charles H. Bell, *History of the Town of Exeter.* Exeter, 1888.

Nathaniel Bouton, *History of Concord.* Concord, 1856.

C. W. Brewster, *Rambles about Portsmouth.* Portsmouth, 1859. — Second series, published after the author's death, 1869.

Benjamin Chase, *History of Old Chester.* Auburn, N.H., 1869.

John Farmer and J. B. Moore, *Collections, Topographical, Historical, and Biographical, relating principally to New Hampshire.* 3 vols. Concord, 1822–1824.

W. H. Fry, *New Hampshire as a Royal Province.* (Columbia University, *Studies in History*, etc., Vol. XXIX, No. 2.) N.Y., 1908. — Also published separately.

Walter Harriman, *History of Warner, 1735–1879.* Concord, 1879.

J. N. McClintock, *History of New Hampshire.* Boston, 1888.

C. E. Potter, *History of Manchester.* Manchester, 1856.

Moses T. Runnels, *History of Sanbornton.* 2 vols. Boston, 1882. — Vol. I contains Annals.

E. D. Sanborn, *History of New Hampshire.* Manchester, 1875.

F. B. Sanborn, *New Hampshire.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1907.

H. H. Saunderson, *History of Charlestown.* Claremont, N.H., 1876.

Ezra S. Stearns, *History of Rindge, 1736–1874.* Boston, 1875.

New Jersey

Joseph Atkinson, *History of Newark.* Newark, 1878.

T. F. Chambers, *The Early Germans of New Jersey.* Dover, N.J., 1895.

Thomas F. Gordon, *History of New Jersey, from its Discovery by Europeans to the Adoption of the Federal Constitution.* Trenton, 1834.

Edwin F. Hatfield, *History of Elizabeth.* N.Y., 1868.

Alfred M. Heston, *Absegami: Annals of Eyren Haven and Atlantic City, 1609–1904.* 2 vols. [Camden, N.J.], 1904.

F. B. Lee, *New Jersey as a Colony and as a State.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1902.

A. D. Mellick, Jr., *The Story of an Old Farm.* Somerville, N.J., 1889.

I. S. Mulford, *Civil and Political History of New Jersey.* Camden, 1848.

Nicholas Murray, *Notes, Historical and Biographical, concerning Elizabeth-Town.* Elizabeth-Town, 1844.

John O. Raum, *History of New Jersey, from its Earliest Settlement to the Present Time.* 2 vols. Phila., 1877.

Edwin Salter, *History of Monmouth and Ocean Counties.* Bayonne, N.J., 1890.

Samuel Smith, *History of the Colony of Nova-Cæsaria, or New Jersey.* Burlington, N.J., 1765. — Reprinted, Trenton, 1877.

Lewis T. Stevens, *History of Cape May County.* Cape May City, N.J., 1897.

W. A. Whitehead, *Early History of Perth Amboy.* N.Y., 1856.

W. A. Whitehead, *East Jersey under the Proprietary Governments.* (New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. I.) [N.Y.], 1846. — 2d ed. separately printed, Newark, 1875.

New Mexico

H. H. Bancroft, *Arizona and New Mexico.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XII.) San Francisco, 1888.

Helen Haines, *History of New Mexico.* N.Y., 1891.

Horatio O. Ladd, *The Story of New Mexico.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1892.

R. E. Twitchell, *History of New Mexico.* Cedar Rapids, 1910.

New York [1]

C. A. Flagg and J. T. Jennings, *Bibliography of New York Colonial History.* (New York State Library, *Bulletin*, No. 56, "Bibliography 24.") Albany, 1901.

J. W. Barber and Henry Howe, *Historical Collections of the State of New York.* N.Y., 1845.

J. R. Brodhead, *History of the State of New York.* 2 vols. Vol. I, 1609–1664, N.Y., 1853; Vol. II, 1664–1691, N.Y., 1871.

Elbridge S. Brooks, *The Story of New York.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1888.

Thomas F. Gordon, *Gazetteer of the State of New York.* Phila., 1836.

J. D. Hammond, *History of Political Parties in the State of New York.* 4th ed. 2 vols. Cooperstown, 1846.

J. S. Jenkins, *History of Political Parties in the State of New York.* Auburn, 1846.

[1] Books on New York are arranged in two lists: (1) those relating to the state; and (2) those dealing with the local history. The latter are arranged alphabetically by places.

James Macauley, *History of the State of New York.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1829.

E. B. O'Callaghan, *History of New Netherland.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1848. — This work extends only to 1664.

Ellis H. Roberts, *New York: The Planting and the Growth of the Empire State.* (American Commonwealth series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1887. — New edition, 2 vols., 1904.

George W. Schuyler, *Colonial New York: Philip Schuyler and his Family.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

William Smith, *History of the Late Province of New-York, from its Discovery to 1762.* 2 vols. (New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1st series, Vols. IV, V.) N.Y., 1829–1830. — Earlier editions, 1757, 1776, 1814.

H. G. Spafford, *Gazetteer of the State of New York.* Albany, 1813 and 1824.

J. V. N. Yates and J. W. Moulton, *History of the State of New York.* Vol. I. N.Y., 1824.

Gabriel Furman, *Notes, Geographical and Historical, relating to the Town of Brooklyn.* Brooklyn, 1865.

Henry Reed Stiles, *History of the City of Brooklyn.* 3 vols. Brooklyn, 1867–1870.

William Ketchum, *History of Buffalo.* 2 vols. Buffalo, 1864–1865.

Peter Sailly Palmer, *History of Lake Champlain, from its First Exploration by the French in 1609, to 1814.* Plattsburg, 1853. — [2d ed.], Albany, 1866.

Jay Gould, *History of Delaware County, and Border Wars of New York.* Roxbury, 1856.

Gertrude L. Vanderbilt, *Social History of Flatbush.* N.Y., 1882.

James Riker, *Harlem (City of New York) : its Origin and Early Annals.* N.Y., 1881.

O. Turner, *Pioneer History of the Holland Purchase.* Buffalo, 1849.

B. J. Lossing, *The Hudson, from the Wilderness to the Sea.* N.Y., 1866.

Franklin B. Hough, *History of Jefferson County, New York, from the Earliest Period.* Albany, 1854.

Marius Schoonmaker, *History of Kingston, New York, from its Early Settlement to the Year 1820.* N.Y., 1888.

Franklin B. Hough, *History of Lewis County, New York, from the Beginning of its Settlement.* Albany, 1860.

Martha B. Flint, *Early Long Island: a Colonial Study.* N.Y., 1896.

Gabriel Furman, *Antiquities of Long Island;* to which is added a

Bibliography of Long Island, by Henry Onderdonk, Jr., Edited by Frank Moore. N.Y., 1875.

Nathaniel S. Prime, *History of Long Island, from its First Settlement by Europeans to the Year 1845.* 2 pts. (in one vol.). N.Y., 1845.

Benjamin F. Thompson, *History of Long Island.* N.Y., 1839. — 2d ed., 2 vols., 1843.

Silas Wood, *Sketch of the First Settlement of the several Towns on Long Island.* Brooklyn, 1828.

W. Max Reid, *The Mohawk Valley, its Legends and its History.* N.Y., 1902.

J. H. Innes, *New Amsterdam and its People.* N.Y., 1902.

E. M. Ruttenber, *History of the Town of Newburgh.* Newburgh, 1859.

E. M. Ruttenber, *History of the County of Orange . . . with a History of the Town and City of Newburgh.* Newburgh, 1875.

Mary Louise Booth, *History of the City of New York.* N.Y., 1880.

Thomas A. Janvier, *In Old New York.* N.Y.,1894.

Martha J. Lamb, *History of the City of New York.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1877–1880.

B. J. Lossing, *History of New York City, 1609–1884.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1884.

Theodore Roosevelt, *New York.* (Historic Towns series.) N.Y., 1891.

William L. Stone, Jr., *History of New York City.* N.Y., 1872.

Charles B. Todd, *Story of the City of New York.* (Great Cities of the Republic series.) N.Y., 1890.

David T. Valentine, *History of the City of New York.* N.Y., 1853.

David T. Valentine, *New York City, before and during the American Revolution.* (From Valentine's *Manual of the Common Council of New York*, 1862, pp. 499–773.)

John F. Watson, *Annals and Occurrences of New York City and State.* Phila., 1846.

James Grant Wilson, editor, *Memorial History of the City of New York.* [By various hands.] 4 vols. N.Y., 1892–1893.

O. Turner, *History of the Pioneer Settlement of Phelps and Gorham's Purchase.* Rochester, 1870.

Charles W. Baird, *History of Rye, New York.* N.Y., 1871.

Franklin B. Hough, *History of St. Lawrence and Franklin Counties, New York, from the Earliest Period.* Albany, 1853.

Jonathan Pearson and others, *History of the Schenectady Patent in the Dutch and English Times.* Albany, 1883.

George R. Howell, *Early History of Southampton, L.I.* 2d ed. Albany, 1887.

Epher Whitaker, *History of Southold, L.I.; its First Century.* Southold, 1881.

J. J. Clute, *Annals of Staten Island, from its Discovery to the Present Time.* N.Y., 1877.

William W. Campbell, *Annals of Tryon County.* N.Y., 1831.

James H. Hotchkin, *History of the Purchase and Settlement of Western New York.* N.Y., 1848.

North Carolina

Stephen B. Weeks, *Bibliography of the Historical Literature of North Carolina.* (Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 48.) Cambridge, 1895.

Samuel A. Ashe, *History of North Carolina.* Vol. I. Greensboro, N. C., 1908. — In progress.

John H. Clewell, *History of Wachovia in North Carolina.* N.Y., 1902.

Daniel Coxe, *Description of the English Province of Carolana, by the Spaniards called Florida, and by the French La Louisiane.* London, 1722.

William Henry Foote, *Sketches of North Carolina.* N.Y., 1846.

Francis L. Hawks, *History of North Carolina.* 2 vols. Fayetteville, 1857–1858. — Vol. I is "2d edition."

C. L. Hunter, *Sketches of Western North Carolina.* Raleigh, 1877.

F. X. Martin, *History of North Carolina, from the Earliest Period.* 2 vols. New Orleans, 1829.

John W. Moore, *History of North Carolina; from the Earliest Discoveries to the Present Time.* 2 vols. Raleigh, 1880.

Charles L. Raper, *North Carolina: a Study in English Colonial Government.* N.Y., 1904.

Jethro Rumple, *History of Rowan County.* Salisbury, N.C., 1881.

David Schenck, *North Carolina, 1780–81.* Raleigh, 1889.

John H. Wheeler, *Historical Sketches of North Carolina, from 1584 to 1851.* 2 vols. (in one). Phila., 1851.

John H. Wheeler, *Reminiscences and Memoirs of North Carolina and Eminent North Carolinians.* Columbus, Ohio, 1884.

Hugh Williamson, *History of North Carolina.* 2 vols. Phila., 1812.

North Dakota. — See Dakota

Ohio

Peter G. Thomson, compiler, *Bibliography of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1880.

Peter G. Thomson, *Catalogue of Books relating to the State of Ohio.* Published by the Historical and Philosophical Society of Ohio. Cincinnati, 1893.

Caleb Atwater, *History of the State of Ohio.* 2d ed. Cincinnati, 1838.

J. A. Barrett, *Evolution of the Ordinance of 1787; with an Account of the Earlier Plans for the Government of the Northwest Territory.* (University of Nebraska, Departments of History and Economics.) N.Y., 1891.

Alexander Black, *The Story of Ohio.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, [1888].

Rufus Blanchard, *Discovery and Conquests of the Northwest.* Chicago, 1880.

Jacob Burnet, *Notes on the Early Settlement of the North-western Territory.* N.Y., 1847.

Henry Bushnell, *History of Granville, Licking County, Ohio.* Columbus, 1889.

Consul W. Butterfield, *History of the Girtys.* Cincinnati, 1890.

Salmon P. Chase, *Sketch of the History of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1833.

Charles Cist, *Cincinnati in 1841: its Early Annals and Future Prospects.* Cincinnati, 1841.

[Harvey W. Crew, editor], *History of Dayton.* [By Robert Wilbur Steele and others.] Dayton, 1889.

William P. Cutler, *Ordinance of July 13th, 1787, for the Government of the Territory Northwest of the River Ohio.* Marietta, O., 1887.

Berthold Fernow, *The Ohio Valley in Colonial Days.* (Munsell's Historical series, No. 17.) Albany, 1890.

Henry A. and Kate B. Ford, compilers, *History of Cincinnati.* Cleveland, 1881.

Charles T. Greve, *Centennial History of Cincinnati.* 2 vols. Chicago, 1904.

Samuel P. Hildreth, *Pioneer History: being an Account of the First Examinations of the Ohio Valley, and the Early Settlement of the Northwest Territory.* Cincinnati, 1848.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *The Old Northwest.* N.Y., 1888. — New edition, 1899.

Henry Howe, *Historical Collections of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1847. — Also the "Ohio Centennial Edition." 3 vols. (in two), Columbus, 1889–1891.

James H. Kennedy, *History of the City of Cleveland.* Cleveland, 1896.

John Kilbourn, *Ohio Gazetteer or Topographical Dictionary.* Columbus, 1816, 1819, 1821, etc.

Rufus King, *Ohio: First Fruits of the Ordinance of 1787.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1888. — New edition, 1903.

H. S. Knapp, *History of the Maumee Valley, commencing with its Occupation by the French in 1680.* Toledo, 1872.

Francis W. Miller, *Cincinnati's Beginnings.* Cincinnati, 1880.

A. Banning Norton, *History of Knox County, Ohio, from 1779 to 1862.* Columbus, 1862.

Jacob H. Studer, *Columbus, Ohio.* Columbus, [copyright, 1873].

James W. Taylor, *History of the State of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1854.

Charles M. Walker, *History of Athens County.* Cincinnati, 1869.

Charles Whittlesey, *Early History of Cleveland.* Cleveland, 1867.

Oklahoma

Luther J. Abbott, *History and Civics of Oklahoma.* Boston, 1910.

S. J. Buck, *Settlement of Oklahoma.* (Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, *Transactions*, Vol. XV, 325–380.)

L. B. Hill, *History of the State of Oklahoma.* 2 vols. Chicago, 1908.

Oregon

C. W. Smith, *Check List.* [See below under Washington.]

H. H. Bancroft, *Oregon.* 2 vols. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vols. XXIV, XXV.) San Francisco, 1886–1888.

William Barrows, *Oregon: the Struggle for Possession.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1883. — 7th ed., 1892.

Thomas Bulfinch, *Oregon and Eldorado; or, Romance of the Rivers.* Boston, 1866.

M. Fédix, *L'Orégon et les Côtes de l'Océan Pacifique du Nord.* Paris, 1846.

Gabriel Franchère, *Narrative of a Voyage to the Northwest Coast of America in 1811–14.* Translated and edited by Jedediah Vincent Huntington. N.Y., 1854.

W. H. Gray, *History of Oregon, 1792–1849.* Portland, Ore., 1870.

Robert Greenhow, *History of Oregon and California, and the Other Territories on the Northwest Coast of North America.* Boston, 1844.

Robert Greenhow, *Memoir, Historical and Political, on the Northwest Coast of North America.* Washington, 1840.

Gustavus Hines, *Oregon: its History, Condition, and Prospects.* N.Y., 1859.

Washington Irving, *Astoria.* 2 vols. Phila., 1836.

Hall Jackson Kelley, *History of the Settlement of Oregon and the Interior of Upper California.* Springfield, Mass., 1868.

H. S. Lyman, *History of Oregon.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1903.

Alexander Ross, *Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon or Columbia River.* London, 1849.

Joseph Schafer, *History of the Pacific Northwest.* N.Y., 1905.

J. Q. Thornton, *Oregon and California in 1848.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1855.

Benjamin Waterhouse, *Oregon; or a Short History of a Long Journey from the Atlantic Ocean to the Region of the Pacific, by Land.* "Drawn up from the notes . . . of John B. Wyeth." Cambridge, 1833.

George Wilkes, *History of Oregon.* N.Y., 1845.

Pennsylvania

Pennsylvania State Library, *Check-List of Pennsylvania County, Town, and Township Histories, 1794–1892.* Harrisburg, 1892.

Daniel Agnew, *History of the Region of Pennsylvania North of the Ohio and West of the Allegheny River.* Phila., 1887.

Isaac A. Chapman, *Sketch of the History of Wyoming.* Wilkesbarre, Penn., 1830.

William M. Cornell. *History of Pennsylvania, from the Earliest Discovery to the Present Time.* Phila., [1876].

Boyd Crumrine, *History of Washington County.* Phila., 1882.

Sherman Day, *Historical Collections of the State of Pennsylvania.* Phila., [copyright, 1843].

P. S. Duponceau, *Historical Discourse delivered before the Society for the Commemoration of the Landing of William Penn, October 24th, 1832.* Phila., 1832.

William Henry Egle, *Illustrated History of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (1609–1876). Harrisburg, 1876. — Part I, General History; Part II, County Histories.

Thomas F. Gordon, *History of Pennsylvania, from its Discovery by Europeans to 1776.* Phila., 1829.

Samuel Hazard, *Annals of Pennsylvania, from the Discovery of the Deleware, 1609–1682.* Phila., 1850.

Charles Miner, *History of Wyoming, in a Series of Letters to his Son.* Phila., 1845.

Jacob I. Mombert, *Authentic History of Lancaster County.* Lancaster, Penn., 1869.

Stewart Pearce, *Annals of Luzerne County, from the First Settlement at Wyoming to 1860.* Phila., 1860.

George Peck, *Wyoming; its History, Stirring Incidents, and Romantic Adventures.* N.Y., 1858.

J. P. Rousselot de Surgy, *Histoire Naturelle et Politique de la Pensylvanie.* Translated from the German. Paris, 1768.

Robert Proud, *History of Pennsylvania, from the Original Settlement in 1681, till after the Year 1742* [with a description of Pennsylvania. 1760–1770, and an Appendix]. 2 vols. Phila., 1797–1798.

Isaac D. Rupp, *Early History of Western Pennsylvania, and of the*

West, and of Western Expeditions and Campaigns, from 1754 to 1833. Pittsburg, 1846.

Isaac D. Rupp, *History of Lancaster County.* Lancaster, Penn., 1844.

Laura G. Sanford, *History of Erie County.* Phila., 1862.

J. T. Scharf and Thompson Westcott, *History of Philadelphia, 1609–1884.* 3 vols. Phila., 1884.

Johann Ludewig Schulze, *Nachrichten von den vereinigten Deutschen Evangelisch-Lutherischen Gemeinen in Nord-America, absonderlich in Pensylvanien.* Halle, 1787.

Isaac Sharpless, *History of Quaker Government in Pennsylvania.* 2 vols. Phila., 1898–1899. — Vol. I is entitled *A Quaker Experiment in Government.*

George Smith, *History of Delaware County.* Phila., 1862.

William L. Stone, *The Poetry and History of Wyoming.* N.Y., 1841.

James M. Swank, *Progressive Pennsylvania.* Phila., 1908.

Gabriel Thomas, *Historical and Geographical Account of the Province and Country of Pensilvania; and of West-New-Jersey in America.* London, 1698. — Lithographed for H. A. Brady, of the New York Historical Society, N.Y., 1848.

James Veech, *The Monongahela of Old.* Pittsburg, about 1858.

John F. Watson, *Annals of Philadelphia and Pennsylvania, in the Olden Time.* 2 vols. Phila., 1857.

Sarah C. Woolsey [Susan Coolidge], *Short History of the City of Philadelphia, from its Foundation to the Present Time.* Boston, 1887.

Rhode Island

John R. Bartlett, *Bibliography of Rhode Island.* Providence, 1864.

Clarence S. Brigham, *Bibliography of Rhode Island History.* (In Edward Field's *State of Rhode Island,* III, 653–681.) Boston, 1902. — Reprinted separately, 1902.

Clarence S. Brigham, *Report on the Archives of Rhode Island.* Washington, 1904.

Samuel G. Arnold, *History of Rhode Island.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1859.

C. S. Brigham, *History of the State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.* (In Field's *Rhode Island,* I, 3–392.) Boston, 1902.

John Callender, *Historical Discourse on the . . . Colony of Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations* (1638–1738). Boston, 1739.

G. W. Greene, *Short History of Rhode Island.* Providence, 1877.

Wilfred H. Munro, *History of Bristol, R.I.* Providence, 1880.

E. R. Potter, Jr., *Early History of Narragansett.* (Rhode Island Historical Society, *Collections,* Vol. III.) Providence, 1835.

Irving B. Richman, *Rhode Island, its Making and its Meaning.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1902. — New edition, 2 vols. (in one), 1907.

Irving B. Richman, *Rhode Island, a Study in Separatism.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1905.

[Sidney S. Rider, editor], *Rhode Island Historical Tracts.* 1st series, 20 nos., Providence, 1877–1895; 2d series, Nos. 1–2, Providence, 1895.

William R. Staples, *Annals of the Town of Providence, from its First Settlement, to the Organization of the City Government, in June, 1832.* Providence, 1843.

Wilkins Updike, *History of the Episcopal Church in Narragansett.* N.Y., 1847. —2d ed., edited by Daniel Goodwin. 3 vols. Boston, 1907.

W. B. Weeden, *Early Rhode Island: a Social History of the People.* N.Y., [copyright, 1910].

South Carolina

B. R. Carroll, compiler, *Historical Collections of South Carolina* (1492–1776). 2 vols. N.Y., 1836.

[W. A. Courtenay], *Centennial Address.* (In *Charleston Year Book*, 1883, Appendix, 351–573.) [Charleston, 1884.] — Also published in *The Centennial of Incorporation, 1783–1883*, 26–254. [Charleston, 1884.]

[James Glen], *Description of South Carolina.* London, 1761.

Alexander Hewatt, *Historical Account of the Rise and Progress of the Colonies of South Carolina and Georgia.* 2 vols. London, 1779.

T. J. Kirkland and R. M. Kennedy, *Historic Camden.* Part I, Colonial and Revolutionary. Columbia, 1905.

John H. Logan, *History of the Upper Country of South Carolina, from the Earliest Periods to the Close of the War of Independence.* Vol. I. Charleston, 1859.

Edward McCrady, *History of South Carolina under the Proprietary Government, 1670–1719*, N.Y., 1897; *History of South Carolina under the Royal Government, 1719–1776*, N.Y., 1899; *History of South Carolina in the Revolution, 1775–1780*, N.Y., 1901; *History of South Carolina in the Revolution, 1780–1783*, N.Y., 1902.

Robert Mills, *Statistics of South Carolina, including a View of its Natural, Civil, and Military History.* Charleston, 1826.

James Sheppard Pike, *The Prostrate State: South Carolina under Negro Government.* N.Y., 1874.

David Ramsay, *History of South Carolina, from its First Settlement in 1670, to the Year 1808.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1809.

Mrs. St. Julian Ravenel, *Charleston, the Place and the People.* N.Y., 1906.

William A. Schaper, *Sectionalism and Representation in South Carolina.* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1900, I, 237–463.) Washington, 1901. — Also published separately.

William G. Simms, *History of South Carolina.* Charleston, 1840.

W. Roy Smith, *South Carolina as a Royal Province, 1719–1776.* N.Y. 1903.

South Dakota. — See Dakota

Tennessee

Joshua W. Caldwell, *Studies in the Constitutional History of Tennessee.* Cincinnati, 1895.

W. R. Garrett and A. V. Goodpasture, *History of Tennessee, its People and its Institutions.* Nashville, 1900.

J. R. Gilmore [Edmund Kirke], *The Rear-Guard of the Revolution,* N.Y., 1886; *John Sevier as a Commonwealth Builder,* N.Y., 1887; *The Advance-Guard of Western Civilization,* N.Y., 1888.

John Haywood, *Civil and Political History of the State of Tennessee, from its Earliest Settlement up to the Year 1796.* Exact reprint of the edition of 1823. Nashville, 1891.

James Phelan, *History of Tennessee: the Making of a State.* Boston, 1888.

J. G. M. Ramsey, *Annals of Tennessee to the End of the Eighteenth Century.* Charleston, 1853.

[John Wooldridge, editor], *History of Nashville,* Tenn. [By J. Wooldridge, E. E. Hoss, W. B. Reese, and others.] Nashville, 1890.

Texas

C. W. Raines, *Bibliography of Texas.* Austin, Tex., 1896.

H. H. Bancroft, *North Mexican States and Texas.* 2 vols. (*History of the Pacific States,* Vols. X, XI.) San Francisco, 1883–1889.

John Henry Brown, *History of Texas.* 2 vols. St. Louis, [1892–1893].

Henry S. Foote, *Texas and the Texans; or, Advance of the Anglo-Americans to the Southwest.* 2 vols. Phila., 1841.

George P. Garrison, *Texas; a Contest of Civilizations.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1903.

W. M. Gouge, *Fiscal History of Texas, 1834–52.* Phila., 1852.

George W. Kendall, *Narrative of the Texan Santa Fé Expedition.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1844.

William Kennedy, *Texas: the Rise, Progress, and Prospects of the Republic of Texas.* 2 vols. London, 1841.

N. D. Maillard, *History of the Republic of Texas, from the Discovery of the Country to the Present Time.* London, 1842.

Justin H. Smith, *Annexation of Texas.* N.Y., 1911.

Dudley G. Wooten, editor, *A Comprehensive History of Texas.* [By

various hands.] 2 vols. Dallas, 1898. — Reprints the greater part of Yoakum's *Texas*.

H. Yoakum, *History of Texas, from its First Settlement in 1685, to its Annexation to the United States in 1846*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1856.

Utah

H. H. Bancroft, *Utah*. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXI.) San Francisco, 1889. — Reprinted separately as *History of Utah*, 1890.

C. H. Brough, *Irrigation in Utah*. Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, Extra Vol. XIX.) Baltimore, 1898. — Also published separately.

Orson F. Whitney, *History of Utah*. Vols. I, II. Salt Lake City, 1892–93.

Vermont

M. D. Gilman, *Bibliography of Vermont*. Burlington, 1897.

Ira Allen, *Natural and Political History of the State of Vermont*. London, 1798.

Benjamin Homer Hall, *History of Eastern Vermont, from its Earliest Settlement to the Close of the Eighteenth Century*. N.Y., 1858.

Hiland Hall, *History of Vermont, from its Discovery to its Admission into the Union in 1791*. Albany, 1868.

John L. Heaton, *The Story of Vermont*. (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1889.

Nathan Hoskins, *History of the State of Vermont, from its Discovery and Settlement to the Close of the Year 1830*. Vergennes, 1831.

Isaac Jennings, *Memorials of a Century*. Boston, 1869.— Relates chiefly to the early history of Bennington, Vt., and its first church.

Rowland E. Robinson, *Vermont: a Study of Independence*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1892.

Samuel Williams, *Natural and Civil History of Vermont*. Walpole, N.H., 1794. — 2d ed., 1809.

Virginia

Virginia State Library, *A Trial Bibliography of Colonial Virginia*. (Department of Bibliography, *Special Report*, by W. Clayton-Torrence.) Richmond, 1908.

[Robert Beverly], *History of Virginia, in Four Parts* (1584–1720). 2d ed. London, 1722.

Robert A. Brock, *Virginia and Virginians, 1606–1888*. 2 vols. Richmond and Toledo, 1888. — In this work, the "History of Virginia, from the Settlement of Jamestown to the Close of the Civil War" was written by Virgil A. Lewis and revised by R. A. Brock.

Alexander Brown, *The First Republic in America.* Boston, 1898.

Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States.* 2 vols. Boston, 1890; reprinted, 1891.

Philip A. Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1896; reprinted, 1907.

Philip A. Bruce, *Institutional History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1910.

John (Daly) Burk, *History of Virginia, from its First Settlement to the Present Day.* 3 vols. (to 1775). Petersburg, Va., 1804–1805. — Continued in a fourth volume (1775–1781) by Skelton Jones and Louis Hue Girardin, Petersburg, 1816.

Charles Campbell, *History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia.* Phila., 1860.

Charles Campbell, *Introduction to the History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia.* Richmond, 1847.

John Esten Cooke, *Virginia: a History of the People.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1883.

William H. Foote, *Sketches of Virginia, Historical and Biographical.* 1st series, Phila., 1850; 2d series, Phila., 1855.

William S. Forrest, *Historical and Descriptive Sketches of Norfolk and Vicinity, including Portsmouth and the adjacent Counties, during a Period of Two Hundred Years.* Phila., 1853.

Wills de Hass, *History of the Early Settlement and Indian Wars of Western Virginia.* Wheeling, 1851.

[Thomas Jefferson], *Notes on the State of Virginia.* [Paris], 1782.

Samuel Kercheval, *History of the Valley of Virginia.* Winchester, 1833.

Joseph Martin, *New and Comprehensive Gazetteer of Virginia, and the District of Columbia.* (To this is added *A History of Virginia, from its First Settlement to the Year 1754,* with a sketch of events up to 1775.) Charlottesville, 1835.

Bishop [William] Meade, *Old Churches, Ministers, and Families of Virginia.* 2 vols. Phila., 1857.

J. L. Peyton, *History of Augusta County, Virginia.* Staunton, Va., 1882.

Philip Slaughter, *History of Bristol Parish, Va.* 2d ed. Richmond, 1879.

Philip Slaughter, *History of St. George's Parish, in the County of Spottsylvania, and Diocese of Virginia.* Edited by R. A. Brock. Richmond, 1890.

Philip Slaughter, *History of St. Mark's Parish, Culpeper County.* Richmond, 1877.

William Stith, *History of the First Discovery and Settlement of Virginia.* Virginia, printed 1747; London, reprinted 1753.

William Stith, *History of the First Discovery and Settlement of Virginia.* (Sabin's reprint of the Williamsburg edition of 1747.) N.Y., 1865.

Joseph A. Waddell, *Annals of Augusta County, Virginia.* Richmond, 1886. — The book contains also a "Diary of the War," 1861–1865, and a chapter on "Reconstruction," 1865–1871. The edition of 1888 contains all of the foregoing, with a supplement.

Alexander S. Withers, *Chronicles of Border Warfare; or History of the Settlement, by the Whites, of Northwestern Virginia.* Edited by R. G. Thwaites. Cincinnati, 1895.

Washington

Charles W. Smith, compiler, *Check-List of Books and Pamphlets relating to the History of the Pacific Northwest.* Washington State Library. Olympia, 1909.

[Anon.], *The State of Washington.* Published by the World's Fair Commission of the State of Washington. Tacoma, 1893.

H. H. Bancroft, *Washington, Idaho, and Montana.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVI.) San Francisco, 1890.

Edmond S. Meany, *History of the State of Washington.* N.Y., 1910.

Ezra Meeker, *Pioneer Reminiscences of Puget Sound.* Seattle, 1905.

James G. Swan, *The Northwest Coast; or, Three Years' Residence in Washington Territory.* N.Y., 1857.

West Virginia

Department of Archives and History of West Virginia, *First Biennial Report.* By Virgil A. Lewis. [Charleston, 1906.] — Contains lists of state papers, and of towns, forts, battlefields, etc.

Virgil A. Lewis, *History of West Virginia.* Phila., 1889.

Wisconsin

James S. Buck, *Pioneer History of Milwaukee, from the First American Settlement in 1833, to 1846.* 4 vols. Milwaukee, 1876–1886.

[H. C. Campbell, editor], *Wisconsin in Three Centuries, 1634–1905.* 4 vols. N.Y., [1906]. — Written by various hands.

Daniel S. Durrie, *History of Madison.* Madison, 1874.

Donald McLeod, *History of Wisconsin, from its Discovery to the Present Period.* Buffalo, 1846.

William Rudolph Smith, *History of Wisconsin.* In three parts: Part 1, Historical (Vol. I); Part 2, Documentary (Vol. III). Madison, 1854. — No more published.

Moses M. Strong, compiler, *History of the Territory of Wisconsin, from 1836 to 1848.* Madison, 1885.

R. G. Thwaites, *The Story of Wisconsin.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1890.

R. G. Thwaites, *Wisconsin; the Americanization of a French Settlement.* (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1908.

Charles R. Tuttle, *Illustrated History of the State of Wisconsin.* Boston, 1875.

Wyoming

H. H. Bancroft, *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XX.) San Francisco, 1890.

C. G. Coutant, *History of Wyoming.* Vol. I. Laramie, 1899. — No more published.

§ 38. Books of Travel

Our knowledge of the inner life of the past is based to a considerable extent on accounts by travelers of what they saw while on their journeyings. Perhaps it would be better to regard these books not so much as descriptions of what actually passed before the tourist's eyes, as descriptions of what the narrator thought he saw. We are all aware of the deficiency of vision of later visitors; there is no reason to suppose that earlier writers were better fitted to observe what was going on about them or to understand the genius of the people whose manners they depicted. A traveler also naturally notes the peculiar things he sees, and thus gives a distorted picture at best. These books must be used with the greatest caution and checked in every possible way by reference to recorded fact. They are sometimes indispensable, however, to light up an otherwise dreary story, and some of them are good reading.

Lists and Discussions

The following works describe some of the travels in America, or discuss the criticisms on the United States contained in them.

John Graham Brooks, *As Others see us; a Study of Progress in the United States.* N.Y., 1908.

C. W. Plympton, *Select Bibliography on Travel in North America.* (New York State Library, *Bulletin*, "Bibliography 3.") Albany, 1897.

H. T. Tuckerman, *America and her Commentators; with a Critical Sketch of Travel in the United States.* N.Y., 1864.

Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History.* (See § 29.) — Vol. VIII, 489–494 contain a list of books on travel down to 1820.

Collections of Narrative and Travels

J. F. Jameson, editor, *Original Narratives of Early American History.* 10 vols. N.Y., 1906–1910.—This series includes, thus far, *The Northmen, Columbus and Cabot*, ed. J. E. Olson and E. G. Bourne; *The Spanish Explorers in the Southern United States*, ed. F. W. Hodge and T. H. Lewis; *Early English and French Voyages*, ed. H. S. Burrage; *The Voyages of Champlain*, ed. W. L. Grant; *Narratives of Early Virginia*, ed. L. G. Tyler; *Bradford's History of Plymouth Plantation*, ed. W. T. Davis; *Winthrop's Journal* (2 vols.) ed. J. K. Hosmer; *Narratives of New Netherland*, and *Johnson's Wonder-Working Providence*, ed. J. F. Jameson.

J. B. McMaster, editor, *The Trail Makers.* 17 vols. N.Y., 1903–1905. — The volumes thus far published are *Journey of Cabeça de Vaca and his Companions*, ed. A. F. Bandelier; *Narratives of De Soto* (2 vols.) and *Voyages of Champlain* (2 vols.), ed. E. G. Bourne; *Journey of Coronado*, ed. G. P. Winship; *Journey of La Salle and his Companions* (2 vols.), ed. I. J. Cox; *Lewis and Clark Expedition* (3 vols.), ed. J. B. McMaster; D. W. Harmon's *Journal of Voyages and Travels;* Cadwallader Colden, *History of the Five Nations* (2 vols.); Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages through North America in 1789 and 1793* (2 vols.); W. F. Butler, *The Wild North-land* (1872–1873).

R. G. Thwaites, editor, *Early Western Travels, 1748–1846.* 32 vols. Cleveland, 1904–1907. — The title-pages vary according to the contents of the several volumes. The last two volumes are indexes.

R. G. Thwaites, editor, *Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents, 1610–1791.* 73 vols. Cleveland, 1896–1901. — The last two volumes are indexes.

G. P. Winship, editor, *Sailors' Narratives of Voyages along the New England Coast, 1524–1624.* Boston, 1905.

Alphabetical List

The following list, while not aiming to be complete, is fairly representative of the material of this kind.

A

Edward S. Abdy, *Journal of a Residence and Tour in the United States of North America . . . 1833, . . . 1834.* 3 vols. London, 1835.

J. E. Alexander, *Transatlantic Sketches.* 2 vols. London, 1833; reprinted, Phila., 1833.

Jean Jacques Ampère, *Promenade en Amérique: États-Unis, Cuba, Mexique* (1851–1852). 2 vols. Paris, 1855.

[Thomas Anburey], *Travels through the Interior Parts of America* (1776–1781). 2 vols. London, 1789.

[Anon.], *Things as They are: or, Notes of a Traveller through the Middle and Southern States.* N.Y., 1834.

[Anon.], *A Visit to Texas: being the Journal of a Traveller through those Parts most Interesting to American Settlers.* N.Y., 1834.

Carl D. Arfwedson, *The United States and Canada, in 1832, 1833, and 1834.* 2 vols. London, 1834.

Sir Edwin Arnold, *Seas and Lands.* London, 1892.

Thomas Ashe, *Travels in America in 1806.* London, 1808.

J. W. Audubon and F. H. Hodder, *Audubon's Western Journal, 1849–1850.* Cleveland, 1906.

B

A. F. de Bacourt, *Souvenirs d'un Diplomate: Lettres Intimes sur l'Amérique* (1837–1845). Paris, 1882. — Translation, N.Y., 1885.

Francis Baily, *Journal of a Tour in Unsettled Parts of North America in 1796 and 1797.* London, 1856.

Robert Barclay, *Agricultural Tour in the United States and Upper Canada.* Edinburgh, 1842.

W. H. Barneby, *Life and Labour in the Far, Far West.* London, 1884.

John R. Bartlett, *Personal Narrative of Explorations and Incidents in Texas, New Mexico, California, Sonora, and Chihuahua* (1850–1853). 2 vols. N.Y., 1854.

William Bartram, *Travels through North and South Carolina, Georgia, East and West Florida*, etc. (1773–1778). Phila., 1791.

G. C. Beltrami, *A Pilgrimage in Europe and America.* 2 vols. London, 1828.

Bernhard, Duke of Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach, *Reise durch Nord-Amerika in . . . 1825–1826.* Edited by Heinrich Luden. 2 pts. (in one vol.) Weimar, 1828.

Bernhard, Duke of Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach, *Travels through North America, during the Years 1825 and 1826.* 2 vols. Phila., 1828.

J. Richard Beste, *The Wabash; or Adventures of an English Gentleman's Family in the Interior of America.* 2 vols. London, 1855.

Isabella Bird, *The Englishwoman in America.* London, 1856.

Morris Birkbeck, *Notes on a Journey in America.* Phila., 1817. — Many other editions.

Morris Birkbeck, *Letters from Illinois.* Phila., 1818; London, 1818.

[William Newnham Blane], *An Excursion through the United States and Canada during the Years 1822–1823. By an English Gentleman.* London, 1824.

James Boardman, *America and the Americans.* London, 1833.

Paul Bourget, *Outre-Mer; Impressions of America.* N.Y., 1895.

John Bradbury, *Travels in the Interior of America, in the Years 1809, 1810, and 1811.* Liverpool, 1817. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. V, Cleveland, 1904.

Fredrika Bremer, *The Homes of the New World; Impressions of America* (1849–1851). Translated by Mary Howitt. 2 vols. N.Y., 1853.

J. P. Brissot de Warville, *Nouveau Voyage dans les États-Unis de l'Amérique Septentrionale, fait en 1788.* 3 vols. Paris, 1791.

J. P. Brissot de Warville, *New Travels in the United States, performed in 1788.* 2d ed. 2 vols. London, 1794.

Traugott Bromme, *Reisen durch die Vereinigten Staaten und Ober-Canada.* 3 vols. Baltimore, 1834–1835.

Thomas Brothers, *The United States as they Are; not as they are generally Described.* London, 1840.

James S. Buckingham, *America, Historical, Statistic, and Descriptive* (1837–1838). 2 vols. N.Y., 1841.

James S. Buckingham, *The Eastern and Western States of America* (1839–1840). 3 vols. London, [1842].

James S. Buckingham, *The Slave States of America* (1839). 2 vols. London, [1842].

William Bullock, *Sketch of a Journey from New Orleans to New York, in 1827, with a Description of the . . . City of Cincinnati, by Benjamin Drake and Edward Deering Mansfield.* London, 1827. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. XIX, Cleveland, 1905.

Andrew Burnaby, *Travels through the Middle Settlements in North America, in the Years 1759 and 1760.* London, 1775.

Frances Anne [Kemble] Butler, *Journal* (1832–1833). 2 vols. Phila., 1835; London, 1835.

Sir William Francis Butler, *The Wild Northland: being the Story of a Winter Journey with Dogs across Northern North America, in 1872–73.* (Trail Makers series.) N.Y., 1904.

Tilly Buttrick, Jr., *Voyages, Travels, and Discoveries* (1812–1819). Boston, 1831. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, VIII, 21–89. Cleveland, 1904.

C

Isaac Candler, *A Summary View of America.* London, 1824.

William Chambers, *Things as they are in America.* London, 1854.

Marquis [François Jean] de Chastellux, *Voyages dans l'Amérique Septentrionale dans les Années 1780, 1781 et 1782.* 2 vols. Paris, 1786. 2d ed. 2 vols. Paris, 1788–1791.

Marquis [François Jean] de Chastellux, *Travels in North America, in the Years 1780, 1781, and 1782.* Translated [by J. Kent]. 2 vols. London, 1787; also N.Y., 1827.

Vicomte [François Auguste] de Chateaubriand, *Voyages en Amérique, en France, et en Italie* (1791–1793). 2 vols. Paris, 1828–1829.

Michel Chevalier, *Lettres sur l'Amérique du Nord* (1834–1835). 2 vols. Paris, 1837.

Michel Chevalier, *Society, Manners, and Politics in the United States: being a Series of Letters on North America* (1834–1835). Translated from the third Paris edition. Boston, 1839.

[A Clergyman], *Three Years on the Kansas Border.* N.Y., 1856.

William Cobbett, *A Year's Residence in the United States of America* (1817–1818). 3 pts. N.Y., 1819. — 2d ed. 3 pts., London, 1819.

E. T. Coke, *A Subaltern's Furlough* (1832). London, 1833. Also 2 vols. (in one), N.Y., 1833.

George Combe, *Notes on the United States of North America during a Phrenological Visit in 1838–40.* 2 vols. Phila., 1841.

[James Fenimore Cooper], *Notions of the Americans; picked up by a Travelling Bachelor* (1824–1828). 2 vols. London, 1828; Phila., 1828, 1832, etc.

Thomas Cooper, *Some Information respecting America* (1793–1794). London, 1794.

Elliott Coues, editor, *On the Trail of a Spanish Pioneer: the Diary and Itinerary of Francisco Garcés in his Travels through Sonora, Arizona, and California, 1775–1776.* 2 vols. (American Explorers series.) N.Y., 1900.

Elliott Coues, *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest: the Manuscript Journals of Alexander Henry and David Thompson, 1799–1814.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1897.

St. John de Crèvecœur, *Letters from an American Farmer* (1770–1781). London, 1782.

St. John de Crèvecœur, *Lettres d'un Cultivateur Américain, écrites à W. S. Ecuyer, depuis l'année 1770, jusqu'à 1781.* Translated. 2 vols. Paris, 1784.

D

Jaspar Dankers and Peter Sluyter, *Journal of a Voyage to New York, in 1679–80.* Translated by Henry C. Murphy. (Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, Vol. I.) Brooklyn, 1867.

William Darby, *A Tour from the City of New York to Detroit* (May 2–Sept. 22, 1818). N.Y., 1819.

John Davis, *Travels of Four Years and a Half in the United States, 1798–1802.* London, 1803.

Charles Dickens, *American Notes for General Circulation.* Tauchnitz edition. Leipsic, 1842. — Many reprints.

Gottfried Duden, *Bericht über eine Reise nach den westlichen Staaten Nord-Amerikas und einen mehrjahrigen Aufenthalt am Missouri* (1824–1827). Elberfelt, 1829. — 2d ed. Bonn, 1834.

John M. Duncan, *Travels through Part of the United States and Canada in 1818 and 1819.* 2 vols. Glasgow, 1823.

Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New England and New York* (1796–1815). 4 vols. New Haven, 1821–1822.

E

H. W. E. Eggerling, *Beschreibung der Vereinigten Staaten von Nord-America.* 2d ed. Mannheim, 1833.

F

Emily Faithfull, *Three Visits to America* (1872, 1882, 1884). Edinburgh, 1884.

William Faux, *Memorable Days in America: being a Journal of a Tour to the United States* (1818–1820). London, 1823. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. XI, Cleveland, 1905.

Henry Bradshaw Fearon, *Sketches of America: a Narrative of a Journey of Five Thousand Miles through the Eastern and Western States of America* (1817–1818). London, 1818.

G. W. Featherstonhaugh, *Excursion through the Slave States.* 2 vols. London, 1844. — Also 1 vol., N.Y., 1844.

S. A. Ferrall, *A Ramble of Six Thousand Miles through the United States of America.* London, 1832.

Isaac Fidler, *Observations on Professions, Literature; Manners, and Emigration, in the United States and Canada, made during a Residence there in 1832.* N.Y., 1833.

John Finch, *Travels in the United States of America and Canada.* London, 1833.

Elias Pym Fordham, *Personal Narrative: Travels in Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, Kentucky, and of a Residence in the Illinois Territory, 1817–1818.* Edited by F. A. Ogg. Cleveland, 1906.

Jacob Fowler, *Journal, narrating an Adventure from Arkansas . . . to the Sources of Rio Grande del Norte, 1821–22.* Edited by Elliott Coues. (American Explorers series.) N.Y., 1898.

John Fowler, *Journal of a Tour in the State of New York in 1830.* London, 1831.

Edward A. Freeman, *Some Impressions of the United States* (Oct., 1881, to April, 1882). London, 1883.

John C. Frémont, *Exploring Expedition to the Rocky Mountains, Oregon, and California* (1842–1844). Auburn, 1854. — With this is an account of the Gold Regions of California.

John C. Frémont, *Report of the Exploring Expedition to the Rocky Mountains in the Year 1842, and to Oregon and North California in the Years 1843–44.* Washington, 1845.

John C. Frémont, *Memoirs of my Life; including in the Narrative Five Journeys of Western Exploration, during the Years 1842, 1843–44, 1845–47, 1848–49, 1853–54.* Vol. I. Chicago, 1887.

Julius Froebel, *A Travers l'Amérique* (1849–1855). "Traduction de l'Allemand par Émile Tandel." 3 vols. Brussels and Paris, 1861.

G

C. von Gerstner, *Beschreibung einer Reise die Vereinigten Staaten von Nord-Amerika.* Leipsic, 1842.

Christopher Gist, *Journals* [of tours in Ohio and Kentucky, 1750–1753]. Edited by W. M. Darlington. Cleveland, 1893. — Also in Filson Club, *Publications*, No. 13, Louisville, 1898.

T. H. Gladstone, *The Englishman in Kansas.* N.Y., 1857.

[Anne (MacVicar) Grant], *Memoirs of an American Lady; with Sketches of Manners and Scenery in America, as they existed previous to the Revolution.* 3d ed. 2 vols. (in one). London, 1817.

Francis J. Grund, *The Americans in their Moral, Social, and Political Relations.* 2 vols. London, 1837.

Francis J. Grund, *Aristocracy in America.* 2 vols. London, 1839.

H

Basil Hall, *Forty Etchings, from Sketches made with the Camera Lucida, in North America, in 1827 and 1828.* Edinburgh, 1829.

Basil Hall, *Travels in North America, in the Years 1827 and 1828.* 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1829.

Basil Hall, *Voyages and Travels* (1802–1812). London, 1895.

Judge [James] Hall, *Letters from the West; containing Sketches of Scenery, Manners, and Customs.* London, 1828.

Judge [James] Hall, *Sketches of History, Life, and Manners in the West.* 2 vols. Phila., 1835.

[Thomas Hamilton], *Men and Manners in America* (1832). 2d American ed. 2 vols. Phila., 1833.

Daniel W. Harmon, *Journal of Voyages and Travels in the Interior of North America.* (Trail Makers series.) N.Y., 1903.

Thaddeus M. Harris, *Journal of a Tour into the Territory Northwest of the Alleghany Mountains* (1803). Boston, 1805. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. III, Cleveland, 1904.

N. Hesse, *Das westliche Nordamerika.* Paderborn, 1838.

Adam Hodgson, *Letters from North America, written during a Tour in the United States and Canada* (1819–1821). 2 vols. London, 1824.

C. F. Hoffman, *A Winter in the West.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1835.

Isaac Holmes, *Account of the United States of America, derived from actual Observation during a Residence of four Years.* London, 1823.

John T. Hughes, *Doniphan's Expedition; containing an Account of the Conquest of New Mexico.* Cincinnati, 1848.

J

Henry James, *The American Scene.* N.Y., 1907.

Charles W. Janson, *The Stranger in America.* London, 1807.

John Josselyn, *Account of Two Voyages to New England, made during the Years 1638, 1663.* Boston, 1865.

K

Peter Kalm, *Beschreibung der Reise, die er nach dem nördlichen Amerika machte.* 3 vols. Göttingen, 1744.

Peter Kalm, *Travels into North America* (1748-1749). Translated by J. R. Forster. 3 vols. Vol. I, Warrington, 1770; Vols. II, III, London, 1771.

Edward A. Kendall, *Travels through the Northern Parts of the United States, in the Years 1807 and 1808.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1809.

John Knight, *Journal of the Voyage to seek the North-west Passage, 1606.* In Lancaster's *Voyages to the East Indies.* (Hakluyt Society series), 279–294. London, 1877.

Theodore Dwight, editor, *Journals of Madam Knight* (1704). N.Y., 1825.

L

Édouard René Lefebvre Laboulaye, *Paris en Amérique* (1862). 25th ed. Paris, 1870.

Édouard René Lefebvre Laboulaye, *Paris in America.* Translated by Mary L. Booth. N.Y., 1863.

Charles Larpenteur, *Forty Years a Fur Trader on the Upper Missouri: a Personal Narrative.* Edited by Elliott Coues. 2 vols. (American Explorers series). N.Y., 1898.

C. J. Latrobe, *The Rambler in North America, 1832–1833.* 2 vols. London, 1835; N.Y., 1835.

A. Levasseur, *Lafayette en Amérique en 1824 et 1825.* 2 vols. Paris, 1829. — Translated by J. D. Godman, 2 vols., Phila., 1829.

[Lewis and Clark.] *History of the Expedition under the Command of Captains Lewis and Clark, to the Sources of the Missouri, thence across the Rocky Mountains and down the River Columbia to the Pacific Ocean, performed during the Years 1804–1806.* Edited by Paul Allen. 2 vols. Phila., 1814. — Commonly called the "Biddle edition"; various reprints.

[Lewis and Clark.] *History of the Expedition under the Command of Lewis and Clark to the Sources of the Missouri River*, etc. Edited by Elliott Coues. 4 vols. (paged continuously). N.Y., 1893.

[Lewis and Clark.] *History of the Expedition under the Command of Captains Lewis & Clark to the Sources of the Missouri*, etc. Edited by J. B. McMaster. (Trail Makers series.) 3 vols. N.Y., 1904.

[Lewis and Clark.] *Original Journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition, 1804–1806.* Edited by R. G. Thwaites. 8 vols. N.Y., 1904–1905. — Vol. VIII is an Atlas.

Francis Lieber, *The Stranger in America.* Phila., 1835. — Also 2 vols., London, 1835.

Helen L. Fairchild, editor, *Travels in the Years 1791 and 1792 in Pennsylvania, New York, and Vermont; Journals of John Lincklaen.* N.Y., 1897.

[Stephen H. Long and others], *Account of an Expedition from Pittsburgh to the Rocky Mountains, performed in the Years 1819 and '20, under the Command of Major Stephen H. Long.* Compiled by Edwin James. 2 vols. Phila., 1823. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vols. XIV–XVII, Cleveland, 1905.

Sir Charles Lyell, *Travels in North America* (1841–1842). 2 vols. London, 1845.

M

George A. McCall, *Letters from the Frontiers, written during a Period of Thirty Years' Service in the United States Army.* Phila., 1868.

Alexander Mackay, *The Western World; or, Travels in the United States in 1846–47.* 2 vols. Phila., 1849.

Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal through the Continent of North America to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans, in 1789 and 1793.* 2 vols. (Trail Makers series.) N.Y., 1902.

Captain [Frederick] Marryat, *A Diary in America, with remarks on its Institutions.* 3 vols. London, 1839. — "Part Second," 3 vols., London, 1839.

Harriet Martineau, *Retrospect of Western Travel.* 3 vols. London, 1838. — Also 2 vols., N.Y., 1838.

Harriet Martineau, *Society in America* (1834–1836). 3 vols. London, 1837. — Also 2 vols., N.Y., 1837.

J. W. Massie, *America: the Origin of her Present Conflict . . . illustrated by Incidents of Travel during a tour in the summer of 1863.* London, 1864.

Maximilian, Prince of Wied-Neuwied, *Travels in the Interior of North America.* Translated from the German by H. E. Lloyd, London, 1843. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vols. XXII–XXIV, Cleveland, 1905; with an extra atlas vol.

Colonel John May, *Journal and Letters, relative to Two Journeys to the Ohio Country, in 1788 and '89.* (Ohio Historical and Philosophical Society.) Cincinnati, 1873.

John Melish, *Travels in the United States, in the Years 1806, 1807, and 1809–1811.* 2 vols. Phila., 1812.

François André Michaux, *Voyage à l'Ouest des Monts Alléghanys, dans les états de l'Ohio, du Kentucky et du Tennessee, et Retour à Charleston par les Hautes Carolines* (1802). Paris, 1804.

François André Michaux, *Travels to the Westward of the Allegany Mountains, in the States of the Ohio, Kentucky, and Tennessee, and Return to Charlestown, through the Upper Carolinas* (1802). Translated by B. Lambert. London, 1805. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. III, Cleveland, 1904.

Francis Moore, *A Voyage to Georgia, begun in . . . 1735.* London, 1744.

Benjamin Morrell, *Narrative of Four Voyages to the South Sea, North and South Pacific Ocean,* etc. (1822–1831). N.Y., 1832.

Hugo Münsterberg, *American Traits from the Point of View of a German.* Boston, [copyright, 1901].

Hugo Münsterberg, *Die Amerikaner.* 2 vols. (in one). Berlin, 1904. — Translated as *The Americans* by Edwin B. Holt, N.Y., 1904.

James F. Muirhead, *The Land of Contrasts: a Briton's View of his American Kin.* Boston, 1898.

Achille Murat, *America and the Americans.* Translated from the French [by Henry J. Bradfield]. N.Y., 1849.

Achille Murat, *Lettres sur les États-Unis, à un de ses Amis d'Europe* (1826–1827). Paris, 1830.

Amelia M. Murray, *Letters from the United States, Cuba, and Canada.* 2 vols. (in one). London, 1856. — Also 1 vol., N.Y., 1856.

C. A. Murray, *Travels in North America* (1834–1836). 2 vols. London, 1839; N.Y., 1839.

N

Peter Neilson, *Recollections of a Six Years Residence in the United States of America.* Glasgow, 1830.

T. L. Nichols, *Forty Years of American Life.* 2 vols. London, 1864.

Vincent Nolte, *Fifty Years in Both Hemispheres.* Translated from the German. N.Y., 1854.

O

John Cosens Ogden, *An Excursion into Bethlehem and Nazareth, in Pennsylvania, in the Year 1799.* Phila., 1800.

Frederick Law Olmsted, *Journey in the Seaboard Slave States* (1853), N.Y., 1856 (new edition, 2 vols., 1904); *Journey through Texas,* N.Y., 1857; *Journey in the Back Country,* N.Y., 1860 (new edition, 2 vols., 1907). — These three volumes constitute his series of *Our Slave States;* and upon them is based his *Journeys and Explorations in the Cotton Kingdom,* 2 vols., London and N.Y., 1861.

Max O'Rell [Paul Blouët], *Jonathan and his Continent* (*Rambles through American Society*). Translated by Madame Paul Blouët. N.Y., [1889].

P

A. A. Parker, *Trip to the West and Texas* (1834–1835). 2d ed. Concord, etc., 1836.

Samuel Parker, *Journal of an Exploring Tour beyond the Rocky Mountains.* 5th ed. Auburn, etc., 1846.

Richard Parkinson, *A Tour in America, in 1798, 1799, and 1800.* 2 vols. London, 1805.

Francis Parkman, Jr., *The California and Oregon Trail: being Sketches of Prairie and Rocky Mountain Life* (1846). N.Y., 1849. — Originally published in the *Knickerbocker Magazine,* beginning February, 1847.

J. K. Paulding, *John Bull in America.* N.Y., 1825; London, 1825.

Théodore Pavie, *Souvenirs Atlantiques: Voyage aux États-Unis et au Canada.* 2 vols. Paris, 1833.

Z. M. Pike, *Account of Expeditions to the Sources of the Mississippi, and through the Western parts of Louisiana, during the Years 1805, 1806, 1807; and a Tour through the Interior Parts of New Spain.* Phila., 1810. — Another edition, edited by Elliott Coues, 3 vols. (in four), N.Y., 1895.

John Pope, *A Tour through the Southern and Western Territories of the United States* (1790–1791). Richmond, 1792. — Reprinted, with index, for Charles L. Woodward, N.Y., 1888.

Tyrone Power, *Impressions of America.* 2 vols. Phila., 1836.

Francis and Theresa Pulszky, *White, Red, Black: Sketches of American Society in the United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1853.

R

C. S. Rafinesque, *A Life of Travels and Researches in North America.* Phila., 1836.

Frederick von Raumer, *America, and the American People* (1844). Translated by W. W. Turner. N.Y., 1846.

Andrew Reed and James Matheson, *Narrative of the Visit to the American Churches.* 2 vols. London, 1835. N.Y., 1835.

James Robertson, *A Few Months in America.* London, [1855].

M. l'Abbé Robin, *Nouveau Voyage dans l'Amérique Septentrionale, en l'année 1781.* Paris, 1782.

M. l'Abbé Robin, *New Travels through North-America* (1781). Translated by Philip Freneau. Phila., 1783.

[F. A. F. de] La Rochefoucauld-Liancourt, *Voyage dans les États-Unis d'Amérique, fait en 1795, 1796, et 1797.* 8 vols. Paris, 1799.

[F. A. F. de] La Rochefoucauld-Liancourt, *Travels through the United States of North America, in the Years 1795, 1796, and 1797.* 2 vols. London, 1799.

F. F. de Roos, *Personal Narrative of Travels in the United States and Canada in 1826.* London, 1827.

William H. Russell, *Hesperothen; Notes from the West: a Record of a Ramble in the United States and Canada, in the Spring and Summer of 1881.* 2 vols. London, 1882.

S

E. Schlaeger, *Die sociale und politische Stellung der Deutschen in den Vereinigten Staaten.* Berlin, 1874.

J. D. Schoepp, *Travels in the Confederation, 1783-1784.* Translated and edited by Alfred J. Morrison. 2 vols. Phila., 1911.

Patrick Shirreff, *Tour through North America.* Edinburgh, 1835.

Arthur Singleton, *Letters from the South and West.* Boston, 1824.

James Smith, *Tours into Kentucky and the Northwest Territory* (1783–1797). (*Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly*, XVI, 348–401.) Columbus, 1907.

Francis W. Halsey, editor, *Tour of Four Great Rivers, the Hudson, Mohawk, Susquehanna and Delaware, in 1769; being the Journal of Richard Smith.* N.Y., 1906.

John F. D. Smyth, *A Tour in the United States of America* (1784). 2 vols. London, 1784.

G. W. Steevens, *The Land of the Dollar*. N.Y., 1897.

James Stirling, *Letters from the Slave States*. London, 1857.

James Stuart, *Three Years in North America* (1828–1831). 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1833.

James Stuart, *Refutation of Aspersions on "Stuart's Three Years in North America."* London, 1834.

Robert Sutcliff, *Travels in some Parts of North America, in the Years 1804, 1805, and 1806*. 2d ed. York, 1815.

T

William Tallack, *Friendly Sketches in America*. London, 1861.

Anthony Trollope, *North America* (1861–1862). N.Y., 1862.

Frances M. Trollope, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*. London, 1832.

Thomas Twining, *Travels in America One Hundred Years Ago* (1795–1796). N.Y., 1894.

V

Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound (1792). By Edmond S. Meany. N.Y., 1907. — Contains large excerpts from original documents.

Godfrey T. Vigne, *Six Months in America* (1831–1832). 2 vols. London, 1832. — Also 1 vol., Phila., 1833.

W

Henry Wansey, *Journal of an Excursion to the United States, in the Summer of 1794*. Salisbury, England, 1796.

Charles Dudley Warner, *Studies in the South and West, with Comments on Canada*. N.Y., 1889.

Elkanah Watson, *Memoirs, including Journals of Travels in Europe and America, from 1777 to 1842*. N.Y., 1856.

Adlard Welby, *A Visit to North America and the English Settlements in Illinois* (1819–1820). London, 1821. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. XII, Cleveland, 1905.

Isaac Weld, Jr., *Travels through the States of North America, and the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, during the Years 1795, 1796, and 1797*. London, 1799.

H. G. Wells, *The Future in America*. N.Y., 1906.

George Whitefield, *Journal of a Voyage from London to Savannah* (Dec. 28, 1737, to May 7, 1738). 5th ed. London, 1739.

C. H. Wilson, *The Wanderer in America*. Thirsk, 1823.

John Woods, *Two Years' Residence in the Settlement on the English*

Prairie in the Illinois Country, United States (1820–1822). London, 1822. — Reprinted in R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, Vol. X, Cleveland, 1904.

John Woolman, *Journal*. Phila., 1845; Boston, 1873.

Lady Emmeline Stuart Wortley, *Travels in the United States, etc., during 1849 and 1850*. N.Y., 1851.

Frances Wright, *Views of Society and Manners in America* (1818–1820). London, 1821.

F. P. W. Herzog von Würtemberg, *Reise in Nordamerica während Jahren 1822, 1823, und 1824*. 2 vols. (in one). Mergentheim, 1828.

F. G. Young, editor, *Correspondence and Journals of Captain Nathaniel J. Wyeth, 1831–1836*. (Oregon Historical Society, *Sources of the History of Oregon*, I, Nos. 3–6.) Eugene, Ore., 1899.

Francis Wyse, *America, its Realities and Resources*. 3 vols. London, 1846.

Z

Lorenzo de Zavala, *Viage a los Estados-Unidos del Norte de America*. Paris, 1834.

§ 39. Biographies

Among the most useful brief biographies are the following volumes of the American Statesmen series (Edited by J. T. Morse, Jr., 31 vols., Boston, 1882–1900; Standard Library edition, with general index volume, 32 vols., [1900]. — Second series, Boston, 1905–): Lodge's *Washington* and *Webster*, Morse's *Jefferson*, *John Quincy Adams*, and *Lincoln*, Sumner's *Jackson*, Schurz's *Henry Clay*, Hart's *Salmon P. Chase*, and C. F. Adams's *C. F. Adams*. In the Makers of America series may be mentioned Sumner's *Robert Morris* and Barrett Wendell's *Cotton Mather*. Some of the volumes in the Riverside Biographical series and in the Beacon Biographies are stimulating and useful as introductions to more serious works.

Two new series of more comprehensive reach are now being published, — the American Crisis Biographies and the Great Commanders series. Older series are Sparks's *American Biography*, Van Santvoord's *Lives of the Chief Justices*, and J. S. Jenkins's *Lives of the Governors of New York*.

Good dictionaries of biography are Brown's, and Wilson and Fiske's works (see § 27); and to this list should be added

Alexander Johnston's admirable biographical articles in Lalor's *Cyclopædia* (§ 27).

A few of the more useful biographies are enumerated below. The arrangement is alphabetical by the subjects of the works (not by authors).

A

Charles Francis Adams, Jr., *Charles Francis Adams.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1900.

J. Q. and C. F. Adams, *Life of John Adams.* 2 vols. Phila., 1871.

George Gibbs, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and John Adams.* N.Y., 1820.

John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

Josiah Quincy, *Memoir of . . . John Quincy Adams.* Boston, 1858.

W. H. Seward, *Life and Public Services of John Quincy Adams.* Auburn, 1849.

J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

W. V. Wells, *Life and Public Services of Samuel Adams.* 3 vols. Boston, 1865.

Elizabeth Cary Agassiz, editor, *Louis Agassiz: his Life and Correspondence.* 2 vols. Boston, 1885.

Jules Marcou, *Life, Letters, and Works of Louis Agassiz.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1896.

Henry Hall, *Ethan Allen.* N.Y., 1892.

Seth Ames, editor, *Works of Fisher Ames.* 2 vols. Boston, 1854. — With a biographical sketch by John Thornton Kirkland.

Winthrop Sargent, *Life and Career of Major John André.* Boston, 1861. — New edition, edited by William Abbatt, N.Y., 1902.

A. G. Browne, Jr., *Sketch of the Official Life of J. A. Andrew.* N.Y., 1868.

H. G. Pearson, *Life of John A. Andrew.* 2 vols. Boston, 1904.

Isaac N. Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold.* Chicago, 1880.

Jared Sparks, *Life and Treason of Benedict Arnold.* Boston, 1835.

B

Alvah Hovey, *Memoir of the Rev. Isaac Backus.* Boston, 1858.

M. A. DeWolfe Howe, *Life and Letters of George Bancroft.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1908.

Mary Barney, editor, *Biographical Memoir of the late Commodore Joshua Barney.* Boston, 1832.

W. C. Beecher and Rev. Samuel Scoville, assisted by Mrs. Henry Ward Beecher, *Biography of Rev. Henry Ward Beecher.* N.Y., 1888.

W. M. Meigs, *Life of Thomas Hart Benton.* Phila., 1904.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1887.

Mrs. Napier [Sophia Elizabeth] Higgins, *The Bernards of Abington and Nether Winchendon: a Family History* [Sir Francis Bernard]. 4 vols. N.Y., 1903–1904.

Grace King, *Jean Baptiste le Moyne, Sieur de Bienville.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

C. C. Binney, *Life of Horace Binney, with Selections from his Letters.* Phila., 1903.

William Birney, *James G. Birney and his Times.* N.Y., 1890.

Gail Hamilton [Mary Abigail Dodge], *Biography of James G. Blaine.* Norwich, 1895.

Edward Stanwood, *James Gillespie Blaine.* (American Statesmen, 2d series.) Boston, 1905.

W. V. Byars, *An American Commoner* [R. P. Bland]. Columbia, Mo., 1900.

H. A. Bruce, *Daniel Boone and the Wilderness Road.* N.Y., 1910.

R. G. Thwaites, *Daniel Boone.* N.Y., 1902.

J. J. Boudinot, *Life, Public Services, Addresses, and Letters of Elias Boudinot.* 2 vols. Boston, 1896.

George S. Merriam, *Life and Times of Samuel Bowles.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

A. V. G. Allen, *Life and Letters of Phillips Brooks.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1900.

A. V. G. Allen, *Phillips Brooks, 1835–1893: Memories of his Life, with Extracts from his Letters and Note-Books.* N.Y., 1907.

G. W. Brown, *Reminiscences of old John Brown.* Rockford, Ill., 1880.

W. E. B. Du Bois, *John Brown.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1909].

James Redpath, *Public Life of Capt. John Brown.* Boston, 1860.

F. B. Sanborn, *Life and Letters of John Brown.* Boston, 1885.

O. G. Villard, *John Brown.* Boston, 1910.

A. L. Gale and G. W. Kline, *Bryan the Man.* St. Louis, 1908.

George Ticknor Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1883.

Edward B. de Fonblanque, *Political and Military Episodes derived from the Life and Correspondence of John Burgoyne.* London, 1876.

Matthew L. Davis, *Memoirs of Aaron Burr.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1836–1837.

Isaac Jenkinson, *Aaron Burr: his Personal and Political Relations with Thomas Jefferson and Alexander Hamilton.* Richmond, Ind., 1902.

James Parton, *Life and Times of Aaron Burr.* N.Y., 1858.

Julia L. Butterfield, editor, *A Biographical Memorial of General Daniel Butterfield, including many Addresses and Military Writings.* N.Y., 1904.

C

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Life and Letters of George Cabot.* Boston, 1877.

[Anon.], *Life of John C. Calhoun.* N.Y., 1843.

Mary Bates, *Private Life of J. C. Calhoun.* Charleston, 1852.

Gaillard Hunt, *John C. Calhoun.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1908].

John S. Jenkins, *Life of John Caldwell Calhoun.* Auburn, 1850.

Hermann von Holst, *John C. Calhoun.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

W. H. Browne, *George Calvert and Cecilius Calvert, Barons Baltimore of Baltimore.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

A. G. Stapleton, *Political Life of the Right Honourable George Canning* (1822–1827). 3 vols. London, 1831.

H. W. V. Temperley, *Life of Canning.* London, 1905.

Kate Mason Rowland, *Life of Charles Carroll of Carrollton, 1737–1832, with his Correspondence and Public Papers.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1898.

A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1891.

William Henry Channing, *Memoirs of William Ellery Channing.* 3 vols. Boston, 1848.

A. B. Hart, *Salmon Portland Chase.* (American Statesmen series.) N.Y., 1899.

J. W. Schuckers, *Life and Public Service of Salmon P. Chase.* N.Y., 1874.

R. B. Warden, *Account of the Private Life and Public Services of Salmon Portland Chase.* Cincinnati, 1874.

Daniel Chipman, *Memoir of Thomas Chittenden, the First Governor of Vermont.* Middlebury, Vt., 1849.

S. G. Brown, *Life of Rufus Choate.* Boston, 1870.

Thomas H. Clay, *Henry Clay.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1910]. — Completed by E. P. Oberholtzer.

Calvin Colton, *Life and Times of Henry Clay.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1846.

Calvin Colton, *Last Seven Years of the Life of Henry Clay.* N.Y., 1856.

D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1843.

Joseph M. Rogers, *The True Henry Clay.* Phila., 1904.

Epes Sargent, *Life and Public Services of Henry Clay.* N.Y., 1859.

S. M. Schmucker, *Life and Times of Henry Clay.* Phila., 1860.

Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay.* (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1887.

[James B. Swain], *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1843.

R. W. Gilder, *Grover Cleveland.* N.Y., 1910.

George F. Parker, *Recollections of Grover Cleveland.* N.Y., 1909.

W. W. Campbell, *Life and Writings of De Witt Clinton.* N.Y., 1849.

David Hosack, *Memoir of De Witt Clinton.* 2 pts. N.Y., 1829.

Samuel Boykin, *Memorial Volume of Hon. Howell Cobb.* Phila., 1870.

Edward Smith, *William Cobbett: a Biography.* 2 vols. London, 1878.

Washington Irving, *History of the Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1828.

Clements R. Markham, *Life of Christopher Columbus.* London, 1892.

Justin Winsor, *Christopher Columbus, and how he Received and Imparted the Spirit of Discovery.* Boston, 1891.

A. R. Conkling, *Life and Letters of Roscoe Conkling.* N.Y., 1889.

E. P. Oberholtzer, *Jay Cooke, Financier of the Civil War.* 2 vols. Phila., [1907].

R. W. Raymond, *Peter Cooper.* (Riverside Biographical series.) Boston, [copyright, 1901]

Charles Ross, editor, *Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis Cornwallis.* 3 vols. London, 1859.

Addison Peale Russell, *Thomas Corwin.* Cincinnati, 1882.

J. E. D. Shipp, *Giant Days; or the Life and Times of William H. Crawford.* Americus, Ga., 1909.

John J. Jacob, *Biographical Sketch of the Life of Captain Michael Cresap.* Cincinnati, 1866.

Ann Mary Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden, with Selections from his Correspondence and Speeches.* 2 vols. Phila., 1871.

Benjamin R. Curtis, editor, *Memoir of Benjamin Robbins Curtis, with some of his Professional and Miscellaneous Writings.* 2 vols. Boston, 1879.

Edward Cary, *George William Curtis.* (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1894.

William P. and Julia P. Cutler, *Life, Journals, and Correspondence of Rev. Manasseh Cutler.* 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1888.

D

G. M. Dallas. *Life and Writings of Alexander J. Dallas.* Phila., 1871.

C. F. Adams, *Richard Henry Dana: a Biography.* 2 vols. Boston, 1890.

Frank H. Alfriend, *Life of Jefferson Davis.* Cincinnati, 1868.

Mrs. Varina Jefferson Davis, *Jefferson Davis, Ex-President of the Confederate States: a Memoir.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1890.

W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1907].

Oliver Dyer, *Personal Recollections of Jefferson Davis.* N.Y., 1889.

E. A. Pollard, *Life of Jefferson Davis.* Phila., 1869.

Charles J. Stillé, *Life and Times of John Dickinson, 1732–1808.* (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, Vol. XIII.) Phila., 1891. — Also printed separately.

E. W. Dingley, *Life and Times of Nelson Dingley, Jr.* Kalamazoo, Mich., 1902.

Francis Tiffany, *Life of Dorothea Lynde Dix.* Boston, 1890.

Morgan Dix, *Memoirs of John Adams Dix.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1883.

W. G. Brown, *Stephen Arnold Douglas.* (Riverside Biographical series.) Boston, 1902.

Allen Johnson, *Stephen A. Douglas.* N.Y., 1908.

James W. Sheahan, *Life of Stephen A. Douglas.* N.Y., 1860.

P. B. Wharton, *Voter's Version of the Life and Character of Stephen A. Douglas.* Columbus, O., 1860.

C. W. Chesnutt, *Frederick Douglass.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1899.

Lawrence Kinnaird, *Public Life of Joseph Dudley.* (*Harvard Historical Studies*, Vol. XV.) N.Y., 1911.

Augustine Jones, *Life and Work of Thomas Dudley.* Boston, 1899.

E

A. V. G. Allen, *Life of Jonathan Edwards.* (American Religious Leaders series.) Boston, 1889.

Sereno E. Dwight, *Life of President Edwards.* N.Y., 1830.

William Garrott Brown, *Life of Oliver Ellsworth.* N.Y., 1905.

J. E. Cabot, *Memoir of Ralph Waldo Emerson.* 2 vols. Boston, 1887.

E. W. Emerson, *Emerson in Concord.* Boston, 1889.

Oliver Wendell Holmes, *Ralph Waldo Emerson.* (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1885.

Charles M. Endicott, *Memoir of John Endicott.* Salem, 1847.

F

Loyall Farragut, *Life of David Glasgow Farragut.* N.Y., 1879.

A. T. Mahan, *Admiral Farragut.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1892.

Francis Fessenden, *Life and Public Services of William Pitt Fessenden.* 2 vols. Boston, 1907.

Henry M. Field, *Life of David Dudley Field.* N.Y., 1898.

Lord John Russell, editor, *Memorials and Correspondence of Charles James Fox.* 4 vols. London, 1853–1857.

H. O. Wakeman, *Life of Charles James Fox.* (Statesmen series.) London, 1890.

Thomas Hodgkin, *George Fox.* 2d ed. Boston, 1898.

S. G. Fisher, *The True Benjamin Franklin.* Phila., 1899.

Paul Leicester Ford, *Franklin Bibliography.* Brooklyn, 1889.

Paul Leicester Ford, *The Many-Sided Franklin.* N.Y., 1899.

J. B. McMaster, *Benjamin Franklin as a Man of Letters.* (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1887.

John T. Morse, Jr., *Benjamin Franklin.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1889.

James Parton, *Life and Times of Benjamin Franklin.* 2 vols. Boston, 1867.

Jared Sparks, *Life of Benjamin Franklin.* Boston, 1844.

Lindsay Swift, *Benjamin Franklin.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1910.

R. H. Thurston, *Robert Fulton.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., [copyright, 1891].

G

Henry Adams, *Life of Albert Gallatin.* Phila., 1879.

J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

H. C. Pedder, *Garfield's Place in History.* N.Y., 1882.

W. O. Stoddard, *Life of James A. Garfield.* (Lives of the Presidents series.) N.Y., 1889.

F. J. and W. P. Garrison, *William Lloyd Garrison: the Story of his Life told by his Children.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1885–1889.

A. H. Grimke, *William Lloyd Garrison the Abolitionist.* N.Y., 1891.

Oliver Johnson, *William Lloyd Garrison and his Times.* Boston, 1880.

Goldwin Smith, *The Moral Crusader: a Biographical Essay on William Lloyd Garrison.* N.Y., 1892.

James T. Austin, *Life of Elbridge Gerry.* 2 vols. Boston, 1829.

G. W. Julian, *Life of Joshua R. Giddings.* Chicago, 1892.

Rollo Ogden, *Life and Letters of Edwin Lawrence Godkin.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1907.

George A. Brayton, *A Defence of Samuel Gorton and the Settlers of Shawomet.* (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 17.) Providence, 1883.

Adam Badeau, *Grant in Peace.* Hartford, 1887.

Adam Badeau, *Military History of U. S. Grant.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1868.

C. C. Chesney, *Military Life of General Grant.* (In his *Essays in Modern Military Biography.*) London, 1874.

G. W. Childs, *Recollections of General Grant.* Phila., 1885. — Another edition, 1890.

C. A. Dana and J. H. Wilson, *Life of U. S. Grant.* Springfield, 1868.

Hamlin Garland, *Ulysses S. Grant, his Life and Character.* N.Y., 1898.

J. G. Wilson, *General Grant.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1897.

Owen Wister, *Ulysses S. Grant.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1900.

W. A. Linn, *Horace Greeley.* N.Y., 1903.

Whitelaw Reid, *A Memorial of Horace Greeley.* N.Y., 1873.

F. V. Greene, *General Greene.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.

G. W. Greene, *Life of Nathanael Greene.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1867–1871.

William Johnson, *Sketches of the Life and Correspondence of Nathanael Greene.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1822.

William Salter, *Life of James W. Grimes.* N.Y., 1876.

H

Allan McLane Hamilton, *The Intimate Life of Alexander Hamilton.* N.Y., 1910.

J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1834.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton.* 2 vols. Boston, 1876.

Frederick S. Oliver, *Alexander Hamilton; an Essay on American Union.* "New edition." London, 1907.

James Schouler, *Alexander Hamilton.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1901.

S. M. Schmucker, *Life and Times of Alexander Hamilton.* Phila., 1856.

George Shea, *Life and Epoch of Alexander Hamilton.* Boston, 1877.

W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

Abram English Brown, *John Hancock, His Book.* Boston, 1898.

Francis A. Walker, *General Hancock.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

R. D. W. Connor, *Cornelius Harnett: an Essay in North Carolina History.* Raleigh, 1909.

T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne and his Times.* N.Y., 1909.

William Wirt Henry, *Patrick Henry; Life, Correspondence and Speeches.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1891.

M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1887.

William Wirt, *Sketches of the Life and Character of Patrick Henry.* 2d ed. Phila., 1818.

T. W. Higginson, *Francis Higginson.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

T. W. Higginson, *Life and Times of Stephen Higginson.* Boston, 1907.

G. L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

W. E. Foster, *Stephen Hopkins, a Rhode Island Statesman: a Study in the Political History of the Eighteenth Century.* 2 pts. (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts,* No. 19.) Providence, 1884.

[Anon.], *Life of Sam Houston.* N.Y., 1855.

Henry Bruce, *Life of General Houston.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

W. C. Crane, *Life and Select Literary Remains of Sam Houston.* 2 vols. Phila., 1885.

A. M. Williams, *Sam Houston and the War of Independence in Texas.* Boston, 1893.

Henry A. Brann, *Most Reverend John Hughes.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

Maria Campbell, *Revolutionary Services and Civil Life of General William Hull.* (With this is a *History of the Campaign of 1812,* by James Freeman Clarke.) N.Y., 1848.

G. E. Ellis, *Life of Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, with a Sketch of the Antinomian Controversy.* Boston, 1845.

I

W. M. Meigs, *Life of Charles Jared Ingersoll.* Phila., 1897.

Griffith J. McRee, *Life and Correspondence of James Iredell.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1857–1858.

Charles Dudley Warner, *Washington Irving.* (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1881.

J

J. S. Bassett, *Life of Andrew Jackson.* 2 vols. Garden City, N.Y., 1911.

W. G. Brown, *Andrew Jackson.* (Riverside Biographical series.) Boston, [copyright, 1900].

James Parton, *Life of Andrew Jackson.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1860.

James Parton, *General Jackson.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.

W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson as a Public Man.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

G. F. R. Henderson, *Stonewall Jackson and the American Civil War.* 2 vols. London, 1898.

Carl Hovey, *Stonewall Jackson.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1900.

William Jay, *Life of John Jay.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1833.

George Pellew, *John Jay.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1890.

William Whitelock, *Life and Times of John Jay.* N.Y., 1887.

Cornelis De Witt, *Thomas Jefferson, Étude Historique.* Paris, 1861. — Translated by R. S. H. Church, London, 1862.

Theodore Dwight, *The Character of Thomas Jefferson as exhibited in his own Writings.* Boston, 1839.

John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

James Parton, *Life of Thomas Jefferson.* Boston, 1874.

H. W. Pierson, *Private Life of Thomas Jefferson.* N.Y., 1862.

Henry S. Randall, *Life of Thomas Jefferson.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1858.

Sarah N. Randolph, *Domestic Life of Thomas Jefferson.* N.Y., 1872.

James Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1893.

Hamilton Bullock Tompkins, *Bibliotheca Jeffersonia.* N.Y., 1887.

George Tucker, *Life of Thomas Jefferson.* 2 vols. Phila., 1837.

Thomas E. Watson, *Life and Times of Thomas Jefferson.* N.Y., 1903.

Frank Moore, *Speeches of Andrew Johnson; with a Biographical Introduction.* Boston, 1865.

W. E. Griffis, *Sir William Johnson and the Six Nations.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

William L. Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson.* 2 vols. Albany, 1865.

R. M. Hughes, *General [J. E.] Johnston.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.

Charles H. Lincoln, *Calendar of John Paul Jones Manuscripts in the Library of Congress.* Washington, 1903.

Alexander S. Mackenzie, *Life of Paul Jones.* 2 vols. Boston, 1841.

John H. Sherburne, *Life and Character of the Chevalier John Paul Jones.* Washington, 1825.

K

Friedrich Kapp, *Leben des Amerikanischen Generals Johann Kalb.* Stuttgart, 1862.

Friedrich Kapp, *Life of John Kalb.* N.Y., 1870; also 1884.

William Kent, *Memoirs and Letters of James Kent.* Boston, 1898.

C. R. King, *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1894–1900.

Noah Brooks, *Henry Knox, a Soldier of the Revolution.* N.Y., 1900.

F. S. Drake, *Life and Correspondence of Henry Knox.* Boston, 1873.

L

Charlemagne Tower, Jr., *The Marquis de La Fayette in the American Revolution.* 2 vols. Phila., 1895.

Bayard Tuckerman, *Life of Lafayette.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

Edward Mayes, *Life, Times, and Speeches of Lucius Q. C. Lamar.* Nashville, Tenn., 1896.

Isaac Q. Leake, *Memoir of the Life and Times of General John Lamb.* Albany, 1857.

Hamilton A. Hill, *Memoir of Abbott Lawrence.* Boston, 1883.

William Lawrence, *Life of Amos A. Lawrence.* Boston, 1888.

Richard H. Lee, *Life of Arthur Lee.* 2 vols. Boston, 1829.

Edward Langworthy, *Memoirs of Charles Lee.* Dublin, 1792.

Jared Sparks, *Life of Charles Lee.* Boston, 1846.

Richard Henry Lee, *Memoir of the Life of Richard Henry Lee.* 2 vols. (in one). Phila., 1825.

J. E. Cooke, *Life of Robert E. Lee.* N.Y., 1871.

J. W. Jones, *Personal Reminiscences of Gen. Robert E. Lee.* N.Y., 1875.

Fitzhugh Lee, *General Lee.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

A. L. Long, *Memoirs of Robert E. Lee.* N.Y., 1886.

William P. Trent, *Robert E. Lee.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1899.

Thomas S. Perry, editor, *Life and Letters of Francis Lieber.* Boston, 1882.

I. N. Arnold, *History of Abraham Lincoln and the Overthrow of Slavery.* Chicago, 1866.

Norman Hapgood, *Abraham Lincoln, the Man of the People.* N.Y., 1899.

W. H. Herndon and J. W. Weik, *Herndon's Lincoln, the True Story of*

a Great Life: the History and Personal Recollections of Abraham Lincoln. 3 vols. (paged continuously). Chicago, [copyright, 1889]. — This is the "suppressed edition"; a new edition, revised, was issued in 2 vols., N.Y., 1892.

J. G. Holland, *Life of Abraham Lincoln.* Springfield, 1866.

Charles G. Leland, *Abraham Lincoln.* London, 1879.

John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln.* (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1893.

J. G. Nicolay and John Hay, *Abraham Lincoln: a History.* 10 vols. N.Y., 1890. — Abridged, 1 vol., 1902.

H. J. Raymond, *Life and Public Services of Abraham Lincoln, with his State Papers.* N.Y., 1865.

A. T. Rice, *Reminiscences of Abraham Lincoln by Distinguished Men of his Time.* N.Y., 1886.

Alonzo Rothschild, *Lincoln, Master of Men.* Boston, 1906.

Carl Schurz, *Abraham Lincoln.* Boston, 1891.

C. H. Hunt, *Life of Edward Livingston.* N.Y., 1864.

Edwin B. Livingston, *The Livingstons of Livingston Manor* [Robert R. Livingston]. N.Y., 1910.

Theodore Sedgwick, Jr., *Memoir of the Life of William Livingston.* N.Y., 1833.

G. F. Dawson, *Life and Services of Gen. John A. Logan.* Chicago, 1887.

E. W. Emerson, *Life and Letters of Charles Russell Lowell.* Boston, 1907.

E. E. Hale, Jr., *James Russell Lowell.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1899.

[Thomas Earl?], *Life, Travels, and Opinions of Benjamin Lundy.* Phila., 1847.

J. F. McLaughlin, *Matthew Lyon, the Hampden of Congress: a Biography.* N.Y., 1900.

M

G. S. Hillard, *Life and Campaigns of G. B. McClellan.* Phila., 1865.

P. S. Michie, *General McClellan.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1901.

Rodney Macdonough, *Life of Commodore Thomas Macdonough.* Boston, [copyright, 1909].

B. C. Steiner, *Life and Correspondence of James McHenry.* Cleveland, 1907.

Roberdeau Buchanan, *Life of the Hon. Thomas McKean.* Lancaster, Pa., 1890.

Edward R. Cotten, *Life of Nathaniel Macon.* Baltimore, 1840.

William E. Dodd, *Life of Nathaniel Macon.* Raleigh, 1903.

J. Q. Adams, *Lives of James Madison and James Monroe.* Boston, 1850.

Gaillard Hunt, *Life of James Madison.* N.Y., 1902.

W. C. Rives, *Life and Times of James Madison.* Vols. I–III (to 1797). Boston, 1859–1868. — No more published.

R. G. Thwaites, *Father Marquette.* N.Y., 1902.

Caroline Crane Marsh, *Life and Letters of George Perkins Marsh.* N.Y., 1888.

A. B. Magruder, *John Marshall.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1885.

James Bradley Thayer, *John Marshall.* (Riverside Biographical series.) Boston, 1901.

H. P. Goddard, *Luther Martin, the Federal Bulldog.* Baltimore, 1887.

Kate M. Rowland, *Life of George Mason, 1725–1792.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1892.

George S. Hillard, *Memoir and Correspondence of Jeremiah Mason.* Cambridge, 1873.

Barrett Wendell, *Life of Cotton Mather the Puritan Priest.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

Enoch Pond, *Life of Increase Mather.* Boston, 1847.

Alden Bradford, *Memoir of the Life and Writings of Rev. Jonathan Mayhew.* Boston, 1838.

Richard Meade Bache, *Life of General George Gordon Meade.* Phila., 1897.

I. R. Pennypacker, *General Meade.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1901.

John W. Campbell, *Sketch of R. J. Meigs.* Cincinnati, 1838.

Henry D. Capers, *Life and Times of C. G. Memminger.* Richmond, 1893.

J. Q. Adams, *Lives of James Madison and James Monroe.* Boston, 1850.

D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe in his Relations to the Public Service.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

W. O. Stoddard, *Life of James Monroe.* (Lives of the Presidents series.) N.Y., 1887.

James Graham, *Life of General Daniel Morgan.* N.Y., 1856.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1888.

Jared Sparks, *Life of Gouverneur Morris.* 3 vols. Boston, 1832.

Charles H. Hart, *Robert Morris, the Financier of the American Revolution.* Phila., 1877.

E. P. Oberholtzer, *Robert Morris, Patriot and Financier.* N.Y., 1903.

W. G. Sumner, *The Financier [Robert Morris] and the Finances of the American Revolution.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1891.

W. G. Sumner, *Robert Morris.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

B. F. Morris, *Life of Thomas Morris.* Cincinnati, 1856.

John Trowbridge, *Samuel Finley Breese Morse.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1901.

W. D. Foulke, *Life of Oliver P. Morton.* 2 vols. Indianapolis, 1899.

Oliver W. Holmes, *John Lothrop Motley: a Memoir.* Boston, 1879.

Anna D. Hallowell, *James and Lucretia Mott; Life and Letters.* Boston, 1884.

H. A. Muhlenberg, *Life of Major-General Peter Muhlenberg of the Revolutionary Army.* Phila., 1849.

O

Henry Bruce, *Life of General Oglethorpe.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

Robert Wright, *Memoir of General Oglethorpe.* London, 1867.

Francis Bowen, *Life of James Otis.* (Sparks, *Library of American Biography*, 2d series, Vol. II.) Boston, 1844.

William Tudor, *Life of James Otis.* Boston, 1823.

P

James Cheetham, *Life of Thomas Paine.* N.Y., 1809.

Moncure D. Conway, *Life of Thomas Paine.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1892.

Ellery Sedgwick, *Thomas Paine.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1899.

O. B. Frothingham, *Theodore Parker: a Biography.* Boston, 1874.

John Weiss, *Life and Correspondence of Theodore Parker.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

Charles S. Hall, *Life and Letters of Samuel Holden Parsons.* Binghamton, N.Y., 1905.

Theophilus Parsons, Jr., *Memoir of Chief Justice Parsons.* Boston, 1859.

William J. Buck, *William Penn in America* (1681–1701). Phila., 1888.

Thomas Clarkson, *Memoirs of the Private and Public Life of William Penn.* 2 vols. Phila., 1814.

Thomas Pym Cope, editor, *Passages from the Life and Writings of William Penn.* Phila., 1882.

S. M. Janney, *Life of William Penn.* 2d ed. Phila., 1852.

J. Marsillac, *La Vie de Guillaume Penn.* 2 vols. Paris, 1791.

John Stoughton, *William Penn, the Founder of Pennsylvania.* London, 1882.

William E. Griffis, *Matthew Calbraith Perry.* Boston, 1887.

George L. Austin, *Life and Times of Wendell Phillips.* Boston, 1888.

T. W. Higginson, *Wendell Phillips.* Boston, 1884.

Octavius Pickering and C. W. Upham, *Life of Timothy Pickering.* 4 vols. Boston, 1867–1873.

Nathaniel Hawthorne, *Life of Franklin Pierce.* Boston, 1852.

Henry Wheaton, *Some Account of the Life, Writings, and Speeches of William Pinkney.* Boston, 1826.

[John Almon], *Anecdotes of the Life of the Right Hon. William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.* 7th ed. 3 vols. London, 1810.

Albert von Ruville, *William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.* Translated by H. J. Chaytor and Mary Morison. 3 vols. London, 1907.

Lord Rosebery, *Pitt.* (Twelve English Statesmen series.) London, 1891.

Earl Stanhope, *Life of the Right Honourable William Pitt.* 4 vols. London, 1861–1862.

William Plumer, Jr., *Life of William Plumer.* Boston, 1857.

J. S. Jenkins, *Life of James K. Polk.* Auburn, 1850.

Anson and Fanny Nelson, *Memorials of Sarah Childress Polk.* N.Y., 1892.

J. R. Soley, *Admiral Porter.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1903.

George L. Prentiss, *Memoir of S. S. Prentiss.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1855.

J. D. Shields, *Life and Times of Seargent Smith Prentiss.* Phila., 1884.

George Ticknor, *Life of William Hickling Prescott.* Boston, 1864.

William F. Livingston, *Israel Putnam.* (American Men of Energy series.) N.Y., 1901.

O. W. B. Peabody, *Life of Israel Putnam.* (Sparks, *Library of American Biography*, Vol. VII.) Boston, 1837.

Mary Cone, *Life of Rufus Putnam.* Cleveland, 1886.

Q

Josiah Quincy, *Memoir of . . . Josiah Quincy, Jun.* Boston, 1825.

Edmund Quincy, *Life of Josiah Quincy.* Boston, 1867.

R

Moncure D. Conway, *Omitted Chapters of History disclosed in the Life and Papers of Edmund Randolph.* N.Y., 1888.

Henry Adams, *John Randolph.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

H. A. Garland, *Life of John Randolph.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1850.

Frederick William Thomas, *John Randolph of Roanoke.* Phila., 1853.

Luther Hamilton, *Memoirs, Speeches, and Writings of Robert Rantoul, Jr.* Boston, 1854.

W. T. Read, *Life and Correspondence of George Read.* Phila., 1870.

W. B. Reed, *Life and Correspondence of Joseph Reed.* 2 vols. Phila., 1847.

E. H. Goss, *Life of Colonel Paul Revere.* 2 vols. Boston, 1891.

William Barton, *Memoirs of . . . David Rittenhouse.* Phila., 1813.

F. W. Blackmar, *Life of Charles Robinson, the First State Governor of Kansas.* Topeka, 1902.

George Thomas [Keppel], Earl of Albemarle, *Memoirs of the Marquis of Rockingham and his Contemporaries.* 2 vols. London, 1852.

Jacob A. Riis, *Theodore Roosevelt the Citizen.* N.Y., 1904.

S

B. J. Lossing, *Life and Times of Philip Schuyler.* 2 vols. N.Y., [copyright, 1860–1872].

G. W. Schuyler, *Colonial New York: Philip Schuyler and his Family.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

M. J. Wright, *General Scott.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

O. J. Victor, *Life and Military and Civic Services of Lieut. Gen. Winfield Scott.* N.Y., 1861.

E. E. Beardsley, *Life and Correspondence of the Right Reverend Samuel Seabury.* Boston, 1881.

J. R. Gilmore, *John Sevier as a Commonwealth-Builder.* N.Y., 1887.

N. H. Chamberlain, *Samuel Sewall and the World he Lived in.* Boston, 1897.

Frederic Bancroft, *Life of William H. Seward.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1900.

T. K. Lothrop, *William Henry Seward.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1896.

F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington as Senator and Secretary of State.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1891.

Lord Edmond Fitzmaurice, *Life of William, Earl of Shelburne* (1737–1805). 3 vols. London, 1875–1876.

H. E. Davies, *General Sheridan.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1895.

Theodore E. Burton, *John Sherman.* (American Statesmen, 2d series.) Boston, 1906.

Lewis H. Boutell, *Life of Roger Sherman.* Chicago, 1896.

M. E. Force, *General Sherman.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1899.

Samuel B. Harding, *Life of George R. Smith, Founder of Sedalia, Mo.* Sedalia, 1904.

C. D. Warner, *Captain John Smith.* (American Worthies series.) N.Y., 1881.

O. B. Frothingham, *Gerrit Smith: a Biography.* N.Y., 1878.

H. B. Adams, *Life and Writings of Jared Sparks.* 2 vols. Boston, 1893.

Caleb Stark, *Memoir and Official Correspondence of Gen. John Stark.* Concord, 1860.

George C. Gorham, *Life and Public Services of Edwin M. Stanton.* 2 vols. Boston, 1899.

Henry Wilson and J. S. Black, *A Contribution to History: Edwin M. Stanton.* Easton, Pa., 1871.

Henry Cleveland, *Alexander H. Stephens in Public and Private.* Phila., [copyright, 1866].

R. M. Johnston and W. H. Browne, *Life of Alexander H. Stephens.* Phila., 1878.

Louis Pendleton, *Alexander H. Stephens.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1907].

W. A. Duer, *Life of William Alexander, Earl of Stirling.* (New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. II.) N.Y., 1847.

Friedrich Kapp, *Leben des Amerikanischen Generals Friedrich Wilhelm von Steuben.* Berlin, 1858.

Friedrich Kapp, *Life of Major General Frederick William Von Steuben.* 2 pts. N.Y., 1859.

Hazard Stevens, *Life of Isaac Ingalls Stevens.* 2 vols. Boston, 1900.

E. B. Callender, *Thaddeus Stevens, Commoner.* Boston, 1882.

S. W. McCall, *Thaddeus Stevens.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, [1900].

W. W. Story, *Life and Letters of Joseph Story.* 2 vols. Boston, 1851.

Bayard Tuckerman, *Peter Stuyvesant.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1893.

T. C. Amory, *Life and Writings of James Sullivan.* 2 vols. Boston, 1859.

T. C. Amory, *Military Services and Public Life of Major-General John Sullivan.* Boston, 1868.

Anna L. Dawes, *Charles Sumner.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

A. H. Grimke, *Life of Charles Sumner, the Scholar in Politics.* N.Y., 1892.

George H. Haynes, *Charles Sumner.* (American Crisis Biographies.) Phila., [copyright, 1909].

Edward Lillie Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner.* 4 vols. Boston, 1877–1893.

Moorfield Storey, *Charles Sumner.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1900.

T

Samuel Tyler, *Memoir of Roger B. Taney.* Baltimore, 1872.

O. O. Howard, *General Taylor.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1892.

Henry Coppée, *General Thomas.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.

Donn Piatt, *General George H. Thomas: a Critical Biography.* (The concluding chapters by H. V. Boynton.) Cincinnati, 1893.

T. B. Van Horne, *Life of Major-General George H. Thomas.* N.Y., 1882.

John Bigelow, *Life of Samuel J. Tilden.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1895.

P. A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs; Statesman, Speaker, Soldier, Sage.* N.Y., 1892.

John Hannibal Sheppard, *Life of Samuel Tucker.* Boston, 1868.

L. G. Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers.* 3 vols. Richmond, 1884–1896.

U

Peter S. Michie, *Life and Letters of Emory Upton.* N.Y., 1885.

V

J. L. Vallandigham, *Life of Clement L. Vallandigham.* Baltimore, 1872.

Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren.* (American Statesmen series.) N.Y., 1888.

J. K. Hosmer, *Life of Young Sir Henry Vane.* Boston, 1888.

Henry Cruger Van Schaack, *Life of Peter Van Schaack.* N.Y., 1842.

W

A. G. Riddle, *Life of Benjamin F. Wade.* Cleveland, 1886.

Edward Warren, *Life of John Warren.* Boston, 1874.

Richard Frothingham, *Life and Times of Joseph Warren.* Boston, 1865.

Paul Leicester Ford, *The True George Washington.* Phila., 1896.

Worthington Chauncy Ford, *George Washington.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1900.

E. E. Hale, *The Life of Washington Studied Anew.* N.Y., 1888.

Washington Irving, *Life of George Washington.* 5 vols. N.Y., 1855–1859. — Abridged for school use as *Washington and his Country.* (Classics for Children series.) Boston, 1889.

Bradley T. Johnson, *General Washington.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

Charles Cooper King, *George Washington.* London, 1894.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *George Washington.* (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1889.

John Marshall, *Life of George Washington.* 5 vols. Phila., 1804–1807. — Also an abridged edition in 2 vols., 1832.

Horace E. Scudder, *George Washington: an Historical Biography.* (Riverside Library for Young People.) Boston, 1889.

Elizabeth Eggleston Seelye, *The Story of Washington.* N.Y., 1893.

Jared Sparks, *Life of George Washington.* Boston, 1839.

M. L. Weems, *Life of George Washington, with Curious Anecdotes.* Phila., 1837. — Many editions; the origin of the popular conception of Washington.

C. J. Stillé, *Major-General Anthony Wayne and the Pennsylvania Line in the Continental Army.* Phila., 1893.

George T. Curtis, *Life of Daniel Webster.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1870.

Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences and Anecdotes of Daniel Webster.* Boston, 1877.

H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

Norman Hapgood, *Daniel Webster.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1899.

J. B. McMaster, *Daniel Webster.* N.Y., 1902.

Horace E. Scudder, *Noah Webster.* (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1882.

Thurlow Weed Barnes, *Memoir of Thurlow Weed.* Boston, 1884.

J. H. Ward, *Life and Times of Bishop White.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

Richard Burton, *John Greenleaf Whittier.* (Beacon Biographies.) Boston, 1901.

W. S. Kennedy, *John Greenleaf Whittier, the Poet of Freedom.* (American Reformers series.) N.Y., 1892.

Henry Martyn Dexter, *As to Roger Williams.* Boston, [copyright, 1876].

James D. Knowles, *Memoir of Roger Williams.* Boston, 1834.

O. S. Straus, *Roger Williams: the Pioneer of Religious Liberty.* N.Y., 1894.

J. H. Twichell, *John Winthrop.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

Robert C. Winthrop, *Life and Letters of John Winthrop.* 2d ed. 2 vols. Boston, 1869.

J. P. Kennedy, *Memoirs of William Wirt.* 2 vols. Phila., 1849.

Beckles Willson, *Life and Letters of James Wolfe.* London, 1909.

John S. Jenkins, *Life of Silas Wright.* Auburn, 1847.

Y

John W. Du Bose, *Life and Times of William Lowndes Yancey.* Birmingham, Ala., 1892.

Joseph Hodgson, *The Cradle of the Confederacy; or, The Times of Troup, Quitman, and Yancey.* Mobile, 1876.

CHAPTER VII

SOURCES

§ 40. Periodicals

Much valuable material, both secondary and original, is buried in the sets of American periodicals. Few of them are wholly devoted to historical matters, but many contain occasional articles. Out of the following list of periodicals the most serviceable in a historical library would be the *American Historical Review*, *Atlantic Monthly*, *Century* (especially for the Civil War), *Forum*, *North American Review* (old series to 1878), *Magazine of American History*, *Political Science Quarterly*, and *Scribner's Magazine*.

Until the publication of *Poole's Index to Periodicals*, such matter was almost inaccessible. At present, however, by aid of this work and its successors and of Guthrie's *Readers' Guide*, Jones's *Index to Legal Periodical Literature*, and the *Index to Legal Periodicals* (see § 24), it is easy to assemble material either as a basis of historical knowledge or for topical work. The value of a library is much increased by these publications. There are also special indexes to *Harper's Magazine*, the *North American Review*, and the New York *Nation*.

Of the earlier periodicals the most valuable for its historical material is *Niles' Register* (1811–1849), and of those since 1865 the New York *Nation;* the *North American Review* fills the gap between. The *Magazine of American History*, which was discontinued in 1893, is now replaced by the *American Historical Review* (1895–), which serves as a national clearing house for historical writers and readers. The *Magazine of History* (1905–) is confined more strictly to the American field. A number of magazines covering either state or sectional history are published by historical societies. The *Political Science Quarterly*, the *American Political Science Review*, the *American Journal of International*

Law, and the *Yale Review* have also much historical matter. For a record of current events and criticisms, *Public Opinion* (now combined with the *Literary Digest*) is useful. The illustrated magazines have some historical articles that are frequently gathered into later volumes. The *Forum* and the *North American Review* deal with current political and social questions rather than with historical matters.

The American. Phila., 1881–.

American Antiquarian. Chicago, 1878–.

American Catholic Historical Researches. Pittsburg, 1884–. — The title was slightly different in the earlier numbers.

American Economic Review. Boston, 1911–.

American Historical Review. N.Y., 1895–. — Index to Vols. I–X (1895–1905). N.Y., 1906.

American Law Review. Boston, 1867–.

American Whig Review. 16 vols. N.Y., 1845–1852.

Andover Review. Boston, 1884–1893.

Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science. Phila. 1890–.

Annual Register. London, 1758–.

Appletons' Journal. 15 vols. N.Y., 1869–1876. — New series, 11 vols., 1876–1881.

Atlantic Monthly. Boston, 1857–.

Bangor Historical Magazine. 7 vols. Bangor, 1885–1892. Continued in two more vols. (to 1894) as *Maine Historical Magazine.*

Baptist Quarterly Review. 11 vols. N.Y., 1867–1877.

Bibliotheca Sacra. Andover, 1844–1883; Oberlin, 1884–.

Carey's American Museum. 10 vols. Phila., 1787–1892.

Catholic World. N.Y., 1865–.

Century Magazine. N.Y., 1881–.

Chautauquan. Meadville, 1884–.

Connecticut Quarterly. Hartford, 1895–.

Cosmopolitan. N.Y., 1887–.

De Bow's Commercial Review. 29 vols. New Orleans, 1846–1860.

De Bow's Review. 5 vols. New Orleans, 1860–1864. — "After the War series," 8 vols., 1866–1870.

Democratic Review. 43 vols. N.Y., 1838–1859.

Dial, Chicago, 1880–.

W. H. Egle, editor, *Notes and Queries, Historical and Genealogical, chiefly relating to Interior Pennsylvania.* 5 vols. Harrisburg, 1881–1895. — Reprinted in 4 vols., and continued in five additional volumes to 1900.

Forum. N.Y., 1886–.

Galaxy. 24 vols. N.Y., 1866–1877.

Gentleman's Magazine. London, 1731–. — Index to 1818, 5 vols. London, 1818–1821 (Vols. I, II, are reprinted from the 1789 edition).

Granite Monthly. 9 vols. Concord, N.H., 1878–1886.

Gulf States Historical Magazine. Montgomery, Ala., 1902–.

Harper's New Monthly Magazine. N.Y., 1850–.

Harvard Law Review. Cambridge, 1887–.

Samuel Hazard, editor, *Register of Pennsylvania* (1828–1835). 16 vols. Phila., 1828–1836.

Historical Magazine (Dawson's). 23 vols. Boston, etc., 1857–1875.

Hunt's Merchants' Magazine and Commercial Review. 63 vols. N.Y., 1839–1870. — In 1871, incorporated with the *Commercial and Financial Chronicle.*

International Review. 14 vols. N.Y., 1874–1883.

Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science. Baltimore, 1883–.

Knickerbocker Magazine. 64 vols. N.Y., 1833–1864.

Lippincott's Magazine. Phila., 1868–.

Literary Digest. N.Y., 1890–.

Magazine of American History. N.Y., 1877–1894. — Index, N.Y., 1907.

Magazine of History, with Notes and Queries (William Abbatt's). N.Y., 1905–.

Magazine of New England History. 2 vols. Newport, 1891–1893.

Magazine of Western History. 14 vols. Cleveland, N.Y., 1884–1891.— Continued as the *National Magazine.* Vols. XV–XIX. N.Y., 1891–1894.

Maine Historical and Genealogical Recorder. Portland, 1884–.

William Maxwell, editor, *Virginia Historical Register and Literary Advertiser.* 6 vols. Richmond, 1848–1853.

Methodist Quarterly. N.Y., 1841–.

Narragansett Historical Register. 8 vols. Hamilton, R.I., 1882–1891.

Nation. N.Y., 1865–. — *Analytical Index to the Political Contents* (1865–1882). N.Y., 1882.

National Geographic Magazine. Washington, 1889–.

New England Historical and Genealogical Register. Boston, 1847–.

New England Magazine. 9 vols. Boston, 1831–1835.

New England Magazine. New series. Boston, 1889–. — Began in 1884 as the *Bay State Monthly.*

New Englander. 56 vols. New Haven, etc., 1843–1892.

Newport Historical Magazine. 4 vols. Newport, 1880-1883. — Continued as the *Rhode Island Historical Magazine.* Vols. V–VII. Newport, 1884–1887.

Niles' Weekly Register. 75 vols. Baltimore, 1811–1849 (republished in 36 vols.). — Index to the first 12 vols., Baltimore, 1818.

North American Review. Boston, 1815–1877; N.Y., 1878–. — Index, Cambridge, 1878.

Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly. Columbus, 1887–.

Penn Monthly. 12 vols. Phila., 1870–1882.

Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography. Phila., 1877–. — The official publication of the Pennsylvania Historical Society.

Political Science Quarterly. N.Y., 1886–.

Portfolio (Dennie's). 44 vols. Phila., 1801–1827.

Potter's American Monthly. 14 vols. Phila., 1875–1881.

Presbyterian Quarterly and Princeton Review. 6 vols. N.Y., 1872–1877.

Presbyterian Review. 10 vols. N.Y., 1880–1889.

Princeton Review. 43 vols. Princeton, 1829–1871. — New series, 14 vols. N.Y., 1878–1884. — *New Princeton Review.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1886–1888.

Public Opinion. 40 vols. Washington, 1886–1906. — In 1906 incorporated with the *Literary Digest.*

Putnam's Monthly Historical Magazine. 7 vols. Salem, 1892–1899.

Quarterly Journal of Economics. Boston, 1886–.

Scribner's Monthly. 22 vols. N.Y., 1870–1881. — New series: *Scribner's Magazine.* N.Y., 1887–.

Sewanee Review. Sewanee, Tenn., 1892–.

South Atlantic Quarterly. Durham, N.C., 1902–.

Southern Historical Magazine. Charleston, W. Va., 1892.

Southern Literary Messenger. 29 vols. Richmond, 1835–1859.

Southern Quarterly Review. 27 vols. Charleston, 1842–1856.

Southern Review. 8 vols. Charleston, 1828–1832.

Southern Review. 8 vols. Baltimore, 1867–1870.

Unitarian Review. 36 vols. Boston, 1874–1891.

Universalist Quarterly. 48 vols. Boston, 1844–1891.

Western Law Journal. 10 vols. Cincinnati, 1843–1853.

Yale Review. New Haven, 1892–. — In 1911 it was transformed into a general review.

§ 41. Newspapers

Early newspapers, especially in colonial times, contained very little important news; they are useful to-day principally for the unintentional information furnished by advertisements and items. Newspapers of the present day are hard to handle, because of their bulk and their lack of systematic arrangement. In general such ma-

terial ought to be used rather for illustration and corroboration; it is not safe to make newspapers the sole, or even the principal, dependence for historical narratives. The system of newspaper clippings employed in some schools has the serious drawback of failing to instil discrimination in the selection of material. In J. F. Rhodes, *Historical Essays*, No. iv (N.Y., 1909), is an exposition of the value of newspapers as historical sources.

The following books about American newspapers may be found suggestive: —

Joseph T. Buckingham, *Specimens of Newspaper Literature.* 2 vols Boston, 1850.

Frederic Hudson, *History of Journalism in the United States, from 1690 to 1872.* N.Y., 1873.

Library of Congress, *Check List of American Newspapers in the Library of Congress.* Compiled by A. B. Slauson. Washington, 1901.

William Nelson, *Some Account of American Newspapers.* (In *New Jersey Archives*, 1st series, Vols. XI, XII, XIX.) Paterson, N.J., 1894–1897. — Alphabetical lists, mainly of the eighteenth century, running as yet only through New Hampshire.

S. N. D. North, *History and Present Condition of the Newspaper and Periodical Press in the United States.* (Publications of the Tenth. Census.) Washington, 1884.

Isaiah Thomas, *History of Printing in America.* 2 vols. Worcester, 1810. — 2d ed., 2 vols., Albany, 1874.

L. H. Weeks and E. M. Bacon, *Historical Digest of the Provincial Press* (1689–1783). "Massachusetts series," Vol. I (to 1707). Boston, 1911.

Wisconsin State Historical Society, *Annotated Catalogue of Newspaper Files in the [Society's] Library.* Prepared by E. H. Blair. Madison, 1898. — A new edition is in progress.

A very useful newspaper for historical purposes is *Niles' Register* (see § 40), in which appear significant extracts from a variety of the papers of the day. The *National Intelligencer* is useful to 1861. The *New York Tribune* and *New York Times* represent the two sides from about 1840 to 1865, and from 1876 to 1906 the *Tribune* published an annual index of its contents. The *Nation* in 1865 began its valuable weekly review of politics; and in 1886 *Public Opinion* revived Niles' system of extracts from other papers. Out of the thousands of newspapers in the United States the following brief list includes some of the most service-

able. They are arranged in order of their first appearance, with no indication as to their length of life.

Boston News-Letter, 1704–.
Boston Gazette, 1719–.
New England Courant, Boston, 1724–.
New York Gazette, 1725–.
New England Weekly Journal, Boston, 1727–.
Maryland Gazette, Annapolis, 1727–.
Pennsylvania Gazette, Phila., 1728–.
New York Weekly Journal [Zenger], 1733–.
Boston Weekly Post Boy, 1734–.
Boston Evening Post, 1735–.
Virginia Gazette, Williamsburg, 1736–.
Pennsylvania Journal and Weekly Advertiser, Phila., 1742–.
New York Gazette or Weekly Post Boy, 1743–.
Evening Post, N.Y., 1746–.
Connecticut Gazette, New Haven, 1755–.
New Hampshire Gazette, Portsmouth, 1756–.
Boston Weekly Advertiser, 1757–.
Newport Mercury, 1758–.
South Carolina and American General Gazette, Charleston, 1758–.
Providence Gazette and County Journal, 1762–.
Georgia Gazette, Savannah, 1763–.
New London Gazette, 1763–1773; *Connecticut Gazette*, 1773–.
Connecticut Courant, Hartford, 1764–.
New York Journal, or General Advertiser [Holt], 1766–.
Connecticut Journal and New Haven Post Boy, 1767–.
Massachusetts Spy, Boston, 1770–1775; Worcester, 1775–.
Maryland Journal and Baltimore Advertiser, 1773–.
Essex Journal, Newburyport, 1773–.
Salem Gazette, 1774–.
Independent Chronicle, Boston, 1776–.
Massachusetts Centinel, Boston, 1784–1890; *Columbian Centinel*, 1790–.
Gazette of the United States, N.Y., and Phila., 1789–.
National Gazette, Phila., 1791–.
Boston Daily Advertiser, 1796–.
General Advertiser and Aurora, Phila., 1798–.
National Intelligencer, Washington, 1800–.
New England Palladium, Boston, 1801–.
New York Herald, 1802–.
The Enquirer, Richmond, 1804–.

Genius of Universal Emancipation, Baltimore and Washington, 1821–.
Charleston Mercury, 1822–.
Detroit Free Press, 1831–.
Louisville Courier-Journal, 1831–.
Liberator, Boston, 1831–.
New York Times, 1834–.
St. Louis Republic, 1835–.
Milwaukee Sentinel, 1836–.
New Orleans Picayune, 1837–.
Burlington Hawk-Eye, 1839–.
National Anti-Slavery Standard, N.Y., 1840–.
New York Tribune, 1841–. Annual indexes, 1876–1906.
Indianapolis Sentinel, 1841–.
National Era, Washington, 1847–.
Chicago Tribune, 1847–.
Alta California, San Francisco, 1848–.
St. Paul Pioneer Press, 1849–.
Oregonian, Portland, 1850–.
Missouri Democrat, St. Louis, 1852–.
San Francisco Chronicle, 1865–.
Denver Republican, 1866–.
Atlanta Constitution, 1868–.
Omaha Bee, *1871*–.
Kansas City Star, 1875–.

§ 42. Collections of Public Records and Statutes

The ultimate source of our knowledge of American history is the record made at the time of the events described. In part we have official records, — conscious history; and the founders of the English colonies, especially in New England, were well aware of the value which posterity would place on their accounts of the planting of the New World. Winsor in *Narrative and Critical History* (VIII, 426) enumerates the principal publications, including the colonial records, which are among the most precious of our documents. Those of New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia are published by the respective states; and the two series edited by O'Callaghan, called *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York* and *Documentary History of New York*, are substantially

records of that colony. Side by side with these must be mentioned the historical narratives of Bradford and Winthrop on Massachusetts history, which stand in a class by themselves.

The records of the New England Confederation are reprinted in *Plymouth Colony Records*, and there are extracts in the records of Connecticut. Since 1774 we have continuous Journals for the Congresses of the United States. For the Convention of 1787 there is the *Journal*, as well as Madison's notes on the debates, and considerable fragmentary material; all of which has been collected in Max Farrand, *Records of the Federal Convention*. From 1789 to 1837 we have reprints of contemporary newspaper reports of debates in Congress, and since 18 3 an official stenographic report, the *Congressional Globe* and the *Congressional Record*. There are several elaborate series of public documents published by authority of Congress, the earlier of which were gathered up and republished in the folio *State Papers*. To all these documents there are now official indexes (§ 21). The *Supreme Court Reports* contain the decisions of that court. The ordinances of Congress before 1789 are not printed except in the *Journals;* but since 1789 there is a series of *Statutes at Large* containing the laws and treaties of the United States (§ 44: Federal Statutes).

All the states possess printed sets of documents, but none have published official reports of legislative proceedings other than the Journals. Nor are the town and city transactions in print, except in a few cases. On the other hand, the United States abounds in works of statesmen: those of Franklin, Washington, Hamilton, Jefferson, Madison, and Lincoln have each been published several times. Such works contain state papers and correspondence, and are well adapted for use in schools and colleges. Many public men have also put together their experiences and reminiscences into autobiographies and recollections, — such as John Quincy Adams's *Memoirs*, Franklin's *Autobiography*, Benton's *Thirty Years' View*, Sherman's *Recollections*, etc. (list in § 47).

These various types of sources are all represented, and many titles are printed in the sections next succeeding — which are not intended to be a complete bibliography; but are designed to include the most valuable works which may be found in our large libraries.

The laws of England, the colonies, states, and federal Union are printed in many forms. The principal collections for the period previous to the Revolution are as follows: —

British Statutes

Statutes of the Realm. Printed by command of His Majesty King George III. 11 vols. [London], 1810–1828. — Extends from 1235 to the end of the reign of Queen Anne. Vols. X, XI are indexes.

Danby Pickering, *Statutes at Large, from Magna Charter to . . . 1761.* Continued by Pickering and others to 1807 (46 vols.); continued to 1869 as *Statutes of the United Kingdom* (Vols. 47–109). Cambridge and, later, London, 1762–1869. — A good index up to 1809 in 3 vols., London, 1814.

Statutes at Large, from Magna Charta to . . . 1763. Compiled by Owen Ruffhead. 9 vols. London, 1763–1765. — New edition, revised and continued to 1800, by Charles Runnington, 14 vols. London, 1786–1800. (Vol. X is an index, 1225–1785.) — Continued to 1869 as *Statutes of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland* (with running title *Statutes at Large*). 29 vols. London, 1804–1869; and continued from then as *The Public General Statutes* (since 1888 as *The Public General Acts*). London, 1870–.

The Statutes; Revised Edition (1235–1878). 18 vols. London, 1870–[1885]. — *Second Revised Edition* (1235–1886). 16 vols. London, 1888–1900.

British Colonial Papers

Acts of the Privy Council of England, Colonial Series. Rolls Series. Edited by W. L. Grant and James Munro. Vols. I–IV (1613–1766). Hereford, 1908–1911.

Calendar of [British] State Papers, Colonial Series, America and West Indies. Rolls Series. Vols. I–XIX (1574–1701). London, 1860–1910.

Calendar of Home Office Paper of the Reign of George III (1760–1775). Rolls Series. 4 vols. London, 1878–99. — Among the other volumes in this series which the student of American history will find helpful are the *Domestic Papers*, the *Carew Manuscripts*, etc.

J. K. Laughton, editor, *State Papers relating to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada, 1588.* (Navy Records Society.) 2 vols. [London], 1894.

Commission on Historical Manuscripts

Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts, *Reports*, and other publications. London, 1874–. — The following volumes, among others,

contain matter of use to students of American history: *MSS. of the Marquess of Abergavenny, Lord Braye*, etc. (1192–1809), 1887; *MSS. of the House of Lords* (1678–1704), 8 vols., 1887–1910; *MSS. of the Earl of Dartmouth* (1559–1824), 3 vols., 1887–1896; *MSS. of the Duke of Portland at Welbeck Abbey* (1582–1740), 8 vols., 1891–1907; *MSS. in Various Collections*, Vol. VI (1649–1818), 1909; *MSS. of Mrs. Stopford-Sackville* (1685–1782). 2 vols. 1904–10; *American MSS. in the Royal Institution of Great Britain* (1747–1883). 4 vols., 1904–1909; *MSS. of the Earl of Carlisle* (1200–1820), 1897. — These reports are also published in the *Parliamentary Papers*. A partial "Guide to the Items relating to American History" in the reports of the Commission may be found in American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1898, pp. 611–708 (also published separately).

Colonial Statutes and Charters

Abridgement of the Laws in Force and Use in Her Majesty's Plantations. London, 1704.

Nicholas Trott, *Laws of the British Plantations in America, relating to the Church and the Clergy, Religion and Learning.* London, 1721. — Imperfect, but useful as pointing the way.

John Brown Dillon, *Oddities of Colonial Legislation in America.* Indianapolis, 1879.

François Xavier Martin, *A Collection of the Statutes of the Parliament of England in Force in the State of North Carolina.* Newbern, 1792. — Most of these laws were in force in the other colonies as well.

[John Almon], *Collection of Papers, relative to the Dispute between Great Britain and America, from 1764 to 1775.* London, 1777. — Always cited as *Prior Documents*.

Extracts from the Votes and Proceedings of the American Continental Congress, held at Philadelphia, Sept. 5th, 1774. Phila., 1774.

Charters of the British Colonies in America. London, 1775. — Printed for John Almon.

Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Charlemagne Tower Collection of American Colonial Laws.* Phila., 1890. — An index.

Ben. Perley Poore, compiler, *The Federal and State Constitutions, Colonial Charters, and other Organic Laws of the United States.* (*Senate Misc. Docs.*, 44 Cong. 2 sess. [no number, serial numbers 1730, 1731], also separately.) 2 parts. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1877. — New edition, with practically the same title. Compiled and edited by Francis Newton Thorpe. (*House Docs.*, 59 Cong. 2 sess. No. 357.) 7 vols. Washington, 1909.

§ 43. Colonial, State, and Local Records, Statutes, and Constitutions

The story of the march of civilization in the United States is best gathered from the records of the several states and of the local administrative units within them. The following lists contain the proceedings of important constitutional conventions, and other publications that have been found to be of value by one or another of the compilers of this work. Extended lists of records of constitutional conventions can be found in F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters*, I, pp. xv–xxxv, and also with lists of state statutes and other records in R. R. Bowker, *State Publications* (§ 24). For economic material in state documents consult A. R. Hasse, *Index* (§ 24).

Alabama

William R. Smith, *History and Debates of the Convention of the People of Alabama, begun and held in . . . Montgomery . . . January 7, 1861.* Montgomery, 1861.

Official Journal of the Constitutional Convention of the State of Alabama. (November–December, 1867). Montgomery, 1868.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Constitutional Convention . . . commencing May 21st, 1901. Montgomery, 1901.

John G. Aikin, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Alabama.* Phila., 1833.

Arizona

Minutes of the Constitutional Convention (1910). Phoenix, [1910].

Arkansas

[*Journal of the Convention of the State of Arkansas . . . held in Little Rock . . . March 4, 1861.* Little Rock, 1861.] — No titlepage.

Debates and Proceedings of the Convention . . . assembled at Little Rock, January 7, 1868 . . . to form a Constitution for the State of Arkansas. Little Rock, 1868.

John Steele and James M'Campbell, compilers, *Laws of Arkansas Territory.* Little Rock, 1835.

California

John Ross Browne, *Report of the Debates in the Convention of California on the Formation of the State Constitution* (September–October, 1849). Washington, 1850.

Debates and Proceedings of the Constitutional Convention . . . convened . . . September 28, 1878. 3 vols. Sacramento, 1880.

J. F. Davis, *Index to the Laws of California, 1850–1907.* Sacramento, 1908.

Connecticut

Public Records of the Colony of Connecticut (1636–1776). Compiled by J. H. Trumbull and C. J. Hoadly. 15 vols. Hartford, 1850–1890. — Two additional volumes of "State Records" (Hartford, 1894–1895) contain matter to April, 1780.

Records of the Colony and Plantation of New Haven (1638–1649). Compiled by C. J. Hoadly. Hartford, 1857. — *Records of the Colony or Jurisdiction of New Haven* (1653–1665). Hartford, 1858. (Contains the New Haven code of 1656.) — These two volumes are bound as *New Haven Colonial Records.*

Journal of the Proceedings of the Convention . . . convened at Hartford, August 26, 1818, for the purpose of forming a Constitution of Civil Government for . . . the State of Connecticut. Hartford, 1873. — Reprinted, 1901.

A. C. Bates, *Connecticut Statute Laws: a Bibliographical List of Editions of Connecticut Laws . . . to 1836.* [Hartford], 1900.

The General Laws and Liberties of Conecticut Colonie. Cambridge, 1673. — Reprinted, Hartford, 1865.

Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Colony of Connecticut in New England. New London; editions of 1715 and 1769, with supplements to 1779.

Acts and Laws of the State of Connecticut, in America. New London, 1784, with supplements to 1794.

Acts and Laws of the State of Connecticut in America. Hartford, 1796.

Delaware

Records of the Court of New Castle on Delaware, 1676–1681. Lancaster, 1904. — Reprinted from the Genealogical Society of Pennsylvania, *Collections,* Vols. LXVIII, LXIX.

Minutes of the Council of the Delaware State, from 1776 to 1792. (Historical Society of Delaware, *Papers,* Vol. VI.) Wilmington, 1887.

Laws of the State of Delaware (1700–1797). 2 vols. Newcastle, 1797.

Florida

Journal of the Proceedings of a Convention . . . to form a Constitution for the People of Florida (1838). St. Joseph, 1839.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Convention of the People of Florida,

begun and held at . . . Tallahassee . . . January 3, 1861. Tallahassee, 1861.

Proceedings of the Convention of the People of Florida at Called Sessions (February 26 and April 18, 1861). [Tallahassee, 1861.]

Journal of Proceedings of the Convention . . . held . . . October 25, 1865. Tallahassee, 1865.

John P. Duval, *Compilation of the Public Acts of the Legislative Council of the Territory of Florida, passed prior to 1840.* Tallahassee, 1839.

Leslie A. Thompson, *Manual or Digest of the Statute Law of the State of Florida, of a General and Public Character, in force . . . 1847.* Boston, 1847.

Georgia

Colonial Records of the State of Georgia (1732–1774). Edited by A. D. Candler. 17 vols. Atlanta, 1904–1906. — *Revolutionary Records* (1769–1784). 3 vols. Atlanta, 1908. — *Confederate Records* (1860–1868). 4 vols. Atlanta, 1909–1910.

John Perceval, First Earl of Egmont, *Journal of the Transactions of the Trustees for Establishing the Colony of Georgia in America.* Wormsloe, 1886.

Journal of the Public and Secret Proceedings of the Convention of the People of Georgia, held in Milledgeville and Savannah in 1861. Milledgeville, 1861.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Convention . . . held . . . in October and November, 1865. Milledgeville, 1865.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Constitutional Convention (December, 1867–March, 1868). Augusta, 1868.

C. C. Jones, editor, *Acts passed by the General Assembly of the Colony of Georgia, 1755 to 1774.* Wormsloe, 1881.

R. and G. Watkins, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia.* Phila., 1800. — Contains material of value as to the boundaries of Georgia.

Horatio Marbury and W. H. Crawford, compilers, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia.* Savannah, 1802. — Contains all the laws passed before 1802, and then in force.

Oliver H. Prince, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia.* Milledgeville, 1822. — Contains all laws in force in 1820.

Arthur Foster, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia.* Phila., 1831.

Thomas Gamble, Jr., *History of the City Government of Savannah* (1790–1900). Published with the mayor's *Report*, 1900.

Idaho

Revised Codes of Idaho. Prepared by J. F. MacLane. 2 vols. Boise, 1908.

Illinois

Illinois State Historical Library, *Collections*. Springfield, 1903– . — Embraces "Kaskaskia Records," "Governors' Letter-Books," "Transactions" of the State Historical Society, etc.

Journal of the Convention assembled at Springfield, June 7, 1847, . . . for the purpose of Revising the Constitution of the State. Springfield, 1847.

Proceedings of the Illinois State Convention, 1847. Reported in the *State Register* (published tri-weekly at Springfield), June 12–September 3, 1847.

Journal of the Constitutional Convention . . . convened at Springfield, January 7, 1862. Springfield, 1862.

Public and General Statute Laws of the State of Illinois. Chicago, 1839. — Contains the laws published in the *Revised Statutes* of 1833 (except such as had been repealed), and those passed 1834–1837.

Indiana

Indiana Historical Society, *Publications*. Indianapolis, 1897– . — The "Executive Journal of Indiana Territory, 1800–1816," is in Vol. III, 1900.

Report of the Debates and Proceedings of the Convention for the Revision of the Constitution of the State of Indiana. 2 vols. Indianapolis, 1850.

Revised Laws of Indiana adopted and enacted by the General Assembly at their Eighth Session (1824). Corydon, 1824.

Revised Laws of Indiana . . . adopted and enacted by the General Assembly at their Fifteenth Session (1831). Indianapolis, 1831.

Iowa

Governor Robert Lucas, *Executive Journal of Iowa, 1838–1841.* Edited by B. F. Shambaugh. Iowa City, 1906.

B. F. Shambaugh, editor, *Messages and Proclamations of the Governors of Iowa.* Vols. I–VII (1836–1901). Iowa City, 1903–1905.

B. F. Shambaugh, editor. *Fragments of the Debates of the Iowa Constitutional Conventions of 1844 and 1846.* Iowa City, 1900. — Contains also press comments and speeches.

Debates of the Constitutional Convention of the State of Iowa, assembled at Iowa City . . . January 19, 1857. Reported by W. B. Lord and others. 2 vols. Davenport, 1857.

Kansas

Proceedings of the Territorial Delegate Convention held at Big Springs on the 5–6th of Sept., 1855; also *Proceedings of the State Constitutional Convention held at Topeka . . . Sept. 19–20, 1855.* No titlepages; "Herald of Freedom Print, Lawrence, K. T."

Proceedings and Debates, embracing the Secretary's Journal, of the Kansas Constitutional Convention convened at Wyandot, July 5, 1859. Reported by Ariel E. Draper. Wyandot, 1859.

Statutes of the Territory of Kansas, passed at the First Session of the Legislative Assembly 1855, . . . Acts of Congress organizing said Territory, etc. Shawnee, 1855.

Kentucky

Journal and Proceedings of the Convention of the State of Kentucky. Frankfort, 1849.

R. Sutton, *Report of the Debates and Proceedings of the Convention for the Revision of the Constitution . . . 1849.* Frankfort, 1849.

Official Report of the Proceedings and Debates in the Convention assembled . . . to . . . change the Constitution (1890). 4 vols. Frankfort, 1890.

Journal of the Called Session of the House of Representatives of the Commonwealth of Kentucky (January 17–April 5, 1861). Frankfort, 1861.

Louisiana

[Buckingham Smith, editor], *Coleccion de Varios Documentos para la Historia de la Florida y Tierras Adyacentes.* Vol. I. London, [1857].

Don Alexandre O'Reilly, *Ordonnances* (1769). In French, in Appendix to Gayarré's *Histoire de la Louisiane;* in English, in French's *Historical Collections*, V, 254–288, and in *American State Papers*, folio edition, *Miscellaneous*, I, 363–377. — O'Reilly's "Regulations" of 1770 in regard to granting land are also printed in English in the two last-named sources, and in *American State Papers, Public Lands*, V, 729.

Recopilacion de Leyes de los Reynos de las Indias. 4 vols. Madrid, 1774.

Novisima Recopilacion de las Leyes de Espana. 6 vols. Madrid, 1805.

Joseph M. White, *A New Collection of Laws, Charters . . . of Great Britain, France, and Spain relating to the Concessions of Land.* 2 vols. Phila., 1839. — Contains a mass of papers, difficult of access elsewhere, relating to the early history and institutions of Louisiana.

Proceedings and Debates of the Convention of Louisiana which assembled at the City of New Orleans, January 14, 1844 [1845]. Reported by Robert J. Ker. New Orleans, 1845.

Official Journal of the . . . Constitutional Convention (1898). New Orleans, 1898.

Acts passed at the First Session of the Ninth Legislature of the State of Louisiana (1828). New Orleans, 1829.

Civil Code of the State of Louisiana. [New Orleans], 1825.

Maine

Documentary History of the State of Maine. Maine Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series. 16 vols. Portland, 1869–1910. — Includes the "Baxter Manuscripts" (11 vols.), "Farnham Papers" (2 vols.), "Trelawny Papers," etc.

Debates . . . of the Convention of Delegates assembled at Portland, October 11–29, 1819, for the purpose of forming a Constitution for the State of Maine. Reported by Jeremiah Perley. Portland, 1820.

Laws of the State of Maine (1820–1831). 3 vols. Brunswick and Portland, 1821–1831.

York Deeds (1642–1726). 11 vols. Portland, 1887–1896.

Maryland

Archives of Maryland. Edited by W. H. Browne. Vols. I–XXX. Baltimore, 1883–1910. — In progress.

Votes and Proceedings of the Lower House of Assembly of the Province of Maryland. [Annapolis, 1753–1759.]

Proceedings of the Conventions of the Province of Maryland held at . . . Annapolis in 1774, 1775, and 1776. Baltimore, 1836.

House of Delegates, *Report of the Committee on Federal Relations in regard to the Calling of a Sovereign Convention.* Frederick, Md., 1861.

Debates and Proceedings of the . . . Convention (1851). Annapolis, 1851.

Debates of the Constitutional Convention . . . assembled at . . . Annapolis . . . April 27, 1864. 3 vols. Annapolis, 1864. (The official report.) — Also *Proceedings of the Convention*, Annapolis, 1864.

Proceedings of the State Convention . . . to frame a New Constitution (1867). Annapolis, 1867.

A Compleat Collection of the Laws of Maryland. Annapolis, 1727.

Thomas Bacon, *Laws of Maryland at Large* (1637–1763). Annapolis, 1765. — Contains also the charter in Latin, with an English translation.

Acts of Assembly passed in the Province of Maryland from 1692 to 1715. London, 1723.

William Kilty, editor, *Laws of Maryland* (1692–1799). 2 vols. Annapolis, 1799–1800.

Virgil Maxcy, editor, *Laws of Maryland, with the Charter, the Bill of Rights*, etc. (1704–1809). 3 vols. Baltimore, 1811.

Laws of Maryland made since 1763 (1765–1784). Annapolis, 1787.

James Bisset, *Abridgment and Collection of the Acts of Assembly of the Province of Maryland.* Phila., 1759.

Thomas Herty, *Digest of the Laws of Maryland.* Baltimore, 1799.

Massachusetts

Records of the Colony of New Plymouth in New England (1620–1692). Edited by N. B. Shurtleff and others. 12 vols. Boston, 1855–1861. — Vols. lX, X, contain *Acts of the Commissioners of the United Colonies* (1643–1679); Vol. XI, *Plymouth Colony Laws* (1623–1682).

Records of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England (1628–86). Edited by N. B. Shurtleff. 5 vols. Boston, 1853–54.

Thomas Hutchinson, *Collection of Original Papers relative to the History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay.* Boston, 1769.

Alden Bradford, editor, *Speeches of the Governors of Massachusetts from 1765 to 1775; and the Answers of the House of Representatives, with their Resolutions.* Boston, 1818.

William Lincoln, editor, *Journals of each Provincial Congress of Massachusetts in 1774 and 1775 . . . and other Documents.* Boston, 1838.

Journal of the Convention for Framing a Constitution of Government for the State of Massachusetts Bay (1779–1780). Boston, 1832.

Journal of Debates and Proceedings in the Convention . . . begun . . . November 15, 1820. Boston, 1853.

Official Report of the Debates and Proceedings in the . . . Convention assembled May 4, 1853. 3 vols. Boston, 1853.

W. H. Whitmore, editor, *Bibliographical Sketch of the Laws of the Massachusetts Colony from 1630 to 1686.* Boston, 1890. — Contains in photographic facsimile the "Body of Liberties," which is also reprinted in facsimile in Whitmore's *Colonial Laws of Massachusetts*, Boston, 1889.

Book of the General Lawes and Libertyes concerning the Inhabitants of the Massachusets. Cambridge, 1660. — Reprinted in facsimile, with supplements to 1672, in Whitmore's *Colonial Laws of Massachusetts*, Boston, 1889.

The General Laws and Liberties of the Massachusets Colony: Revised and Reprinted. By Order of the General Court Holden at Boston, May 15th, 1672. Edward Rawson, Secr. Cambridge, 1672. — Reprinted in facsimile, with supplements through 1686, in Whitmore's *Colonial Laws of Massachusetts*, Boston, 1887.

Acts and Resolves, Public and Private, of the Province of the Massachusetts Bay. Vols. I–XVII (1692–1764). Boston, 1869–1910. — Often cited as *Massachusetts Province Laws.*

Acts and Laws passed by the Great and General Court or Assembly of the Colony of the Massachusetts-Bay (1775–1780). Boston, 1780.

Perpetual Laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, from the Commencement of the Constitution, in 1780, to 1789. Boston, 1789.

Acts and Laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts (1780–1797).

Boston, 1781–1796. — Reprinted, 9 vols., Boston, 1890–1896; Supplement (1780–1784), by E. M. Bacon, 1896.

Catalogue of Records and Files in the Office of the Clerk of the Supreme Judicial Court for the County of Suffolk. Boston, 1890.

Suffolk Deeds. Libri I–XIV (1629–97). Boston, 1880–1906.

Reports of the Record Commissioners of the City of Boston. 38 vols. issued, containing records of Boston, Dorchester, Roxbury, the Boston Selectmen's Minutes, etc. Boston, 1876–1908.

Samuel A. Bates, editor, *Records of the Town of Braintree, 1640 to 1793.* Randolph, Mass., 1886.

Muddy River and Brookline Records, 1634–1838. "By the Inhabitants of Brookline in Town Meeting," 1875.

Don Gleason Hill, editor [*Dedham Records.* 9 vols.]. Dedham, 1886–1899. — These volumes, with different titlepages, comprise records of the town and selectmen, and of the church, from 1636 onward.

Henry S. Nourse, *Early Records of Lancaster, 1643–1725.* Lancaster, 1884. — *Military Annals of Lancaster, 1740–1865.* Lancaster, 1889. — Supplement (to both), 1900.

F. B. Hough, *Papers relating to the Island of Nantucket.* Albany, 1856.

Records of the Town of Plymouth (1636–1783). 3 vols. Plymouth, 1889–1903.

W. P. Upham, *Town Records of Salem, 1634–1659.* (Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*, 2d series, Vol. I, pt. i.) Salem, 1869.

Watertown Historical Society, *Watertown Records* (1634–1822). 4 vols. Watertown, 1894–1906.

Mary Frances Peirce, *Town of Weston, Records* (1746–1826). 2 vols. Boston, 1893–1894.

F. P. Rice, editor, *Records of Worcester.* (Worcester Society of Antiquity, *Collections*, Vols. I–XXIV.) Worcester, 1877–1908. — In progress.

Michigan

Journal of the Proceedings of the Convention to form a Constitution for the State of Michigan. Detroit, 1835.

Journal of the Constitutional Convention (1907–1908). 2 vols. Lansing, 1908.

Proceedings and Debates of the Constitutional Convention (1907–1908). 2 vols. Lansing, 1907.

Laws of the Territory of Michigan (1787–1827). Detroit, 1827.

Laws of the Territory of Michigan condensed, arranged, and passed by the Fifth Legislative Council (1833). Detroit, 1833.

Minnesota

Debates and Proceedings of the Convention to form a State Constitution, preparatory to Admission into the Union. Reported by T. F. Andrews. St. Paul, 1858. — These are the debates of the Republicans. The journal and debates of the Democrats were published separately, each at St. Paul, 1857.

Mississippi

Journal of the State Convention, and Ordinances and Resolutions adopted in January [and March], 1861. Jackson, 1861.

Journal of the Proceedings and Debates in the Constitutional Convention of . . . August, 1865. Jackson, 1865.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Constitutional Convention . . . begun . . . August 12, 1890. Jackson, 1890.

Statutes of the Mississippi Territory (1789–1816). Digested [by Edward Turner]. Natchez, 1816.

Revised Code of the Laws of Mississippi (comprising all public acts in force at the end of the year 1823). Natchez, 1824.

Laws of the State of Mississippi (1824–1838). Jackson, 1838.

Missouri

Journal of the Missouri State Convention. St. Louis, 1820 (reprinted, Washington, 1905).

Journal and Proceedings of the Missouri State Convention held at Jefferson City and St. Louis, March, 1861. (Also journals of the conventions held July, 1861, June, 1862, and June, 1863.) 4 vols. (in two). St. Louis, 1861–1863.

Journal of the Missouri State Convention held at . . . St. Louis, January 6–April 10, 1865. St. Louis, 1865.

Henry S. Geyer, *Digest of the Laws of Missouri Territory.* St. Louis, 1818.

Laws of the State of Missouri; revised and digested by Authority of the General Assembly. 2 vols. St. Louis, 1825.

Revised Statutes of the State of Missouri. St. Louis, 1835.

Louis Houck, editor, *The Spanish Régime in Missouri: a Collection of Papers and Documents.* 2 vols. Chicago, 1909.

Nebraska

Official Report of the Debates and Proceedings in the . . . Constitutional Convention assembled . . . June thirteenth, 1871. (Nebraska Historical Society, *Publications*, Vols. XI, XII.) York, Neb., [1906–1907].

Nevada

A. J. Marsh, *Official Report of the Debates and Proceedings in the Constitutional Convention of the State of Nevada, assembled at Carson City, July 4, 1864.* San Francisco, 1866.

New Hampshire

Documents and Records relating to the Province [Town and State] of New Hampshire (1623–1800). Edited by N. Bouton and others. 31 vols. Concord, etc., 1867–1907. — Commonly cited as *New Hampshire Provincial* (or *State*) *Papers*.[1]

Address of the Convention for framing a New Constitution for . . . New Hampshire. Portsmouth, 1781. — Similar addresses were published in 1782 and 1783.

Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Province of New Hampshire in New England; with sundry Acts of Parliament (1696–1771). Portsmouth, 1771.

Acts and Laws of the Colony of New Hampshire (1776–1780). Exeter, 1780.

Concord Town Records, 1732–1820. Concord, 1894.

F. W. Hackett, compiler, *Portsmouth Records, 1645–1656.* Portsmouth, 1886.

New Jersey

Archives of the State of New Jersey. Edited by W. A. Whitehead and others. 1st series, *Documents relating to the Colonial History* (1631–1800), 27 vols.; 2d series, *Documents relating to the Revolutionary History* (1776–1779), 3 vols. Newark, etc., 1880–1906.[2]

George Scot, *Model of the Government of the Province of East New Jersey.* Edinburgh, 1685. — Reprinted in Whitehead's *East Jersey under the Proprietary Governments*, [N.Y.], 1846.

[1] Vols. i–vii, xviii, xix, *Provincial Papers*, 1603–1776.

Vols. viii, xx–xxii, *State Papers*, 1776–1792.

Vols. ix, xi–xiii, *Town Papers*, 1638–1800.

Vol. x, *Miscellaneous Documents* (constitutional conventions, 1788–1792, censuses, and copies of original papers), 1749–1792.

Vol. xxiii, *List of Documents in the Public Record Office relating to New Hampshire*, 1606–1771.

Vols. xxiv–xxix, *Town Charters.*

[2] Vols. i–x, *Miscellaneous Papers* (indexed in a separate volume, 1888).

Vols. xi, xii, xix, xx, xxiv–xxvii, and the 3 vols. of the second series, *Newspaper Extracts*, 1704–1779.

Vols. xiii–xviii, *Journal of the Governor and Council*, 1682–1775.

Vol. xxi, *Calendar of Records in the Office of the Secretary of State*, 1664–1703.

Minutes of the Provincial Congress and the Council of Safety of the State of New Jersey, 1774–1776. Trenton, 1879.

Minutes of the Council of Safety of the State of New Jersey, 1777–1778. Jersey City, 1872.

Journal of the Proceedings of the Convention to form a Constitution for the Government of . . . New Jersey. Trenton, 1844.

Aaron Leaming and Jacob Spicer, *Grants, Concessions, and Original Constitutions of the Province of New-Jersey* (1664–1682). Phila., [1752]. — Reprinted, Somerville, N.J., 1881.

Samuel Allinson, compiler, *Acts of the General Assembly of the Province of New-Jersey, 1702–1776.* Burlington, N.J., 1776.

William Paterson, compiler, *Laws of the State of New Jersey* (1703–1798). New Brunswick, 1800.

Laws of the State of New Jersey (1703–1820). Trenton, 1821.

Peter Wilson, compiler, *Acts of the General Assembly of the State of New-Jersey* (1776–1783). Trenton, 1784.

Josiah Harrison, *Compilation of the Public Laws of the State of New-Jersey, passed since the Revision in . . . 1820.* Camden, 1833.

John Hood, Index . . . of Laws of New Jersey between . . . 1663 and 1903. Camden, 1905.

New Mexico

Proceedings of the Constitutional Convention . . . held . . . October 3rd to November 21st, 1910. Albuquerque, 1910.

New York

Documents relative to the Colonial History of the State of New York. Edited by E. B. O'Callaghan and B. Fernow. 15 vols. Albany, 1856–1887. — Vol. XI, *General Index;* Vol. XV, *State Archives.*

E. B. O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of the State of New York.* 4 vols. Albany, 1849–1851.

E. B. O'Callaghan, *Laws and Ordinances of New Netherland, 1638–1674.* Albany, 1868.

Minutes of the Executive Council of the Province of New-York, [with] Collateral and Illustrative Documents. Edited by V. H. Paltsits. Vols. I–II (1668–1673). Albany, 1910.

Journal of the Legislative Council of the Colony of New-York (1691–1775). 2 vols. Albany, 1861.

Journal of the Votes and Proceedings of the General Assembly of the Colony of New York (1691–1765). 2 vols. N.Y., 1764–1766.

Journals of the Provincial Congress, Provincial Convention, etc., of the State of New York (1775–1777). 2 vols. Albany, 1842. — The journals are also contained in the *Colonial Documents.*

N. H. Carter and W. L. Stone, *Reports of the Proceedings and Debates of the Convention of 1821, assembled for the purpose of Amending the Constitution of the State.* Albany, 1821.

L. H. Clarke, *Report of the Debates and Proceedings of the Convention of the State of New-York, held at . . . Albany . . . August 28, 1821.* N.Y., 1821.

Colonial Laws of New York from the Year 1664 to the Revolution. 5 vols. Albany, 1894–1896.

Acts of Assembly passed in the Province of New York from 1691 to 1718. London, 1719.

Laws of New-York from 1691 to 1773. Vol. I. N.Y., 1774.

Laws of the State of New York (1777–1801). 5 vols. Albany, 1886–1887.

Laws of the State of New-York . . . since the Revolution (1778–1792). 2 vols. N.Y., 1792.

Laws of the State of New-York (1784–1813). Revised by W. P. Van Ness and John Woodworth. 2 vols. Albany, 1813.

Revised Statutes of the State of New-York. 3 vols. Albany, 1829.

Franklin B. Hough, *Constitution of the State of New York, adopted in 1846.* Albany, 1867.

The Convention Manual for the Sixth New York State Constitutional Convention, 1894: "Part 2, Vol. I," *American Constitutions;* "Part 2, Vol. VI," *Annotated Constitution of the State of New York.* 2 vols. Albany, 1894.

Joel Munsell, *Annals of Albany* (1609–1858). 10 vols. Albany, 1850–59.

Records of the Town of East-Hampton, Long Island. 4 vols. Sag-Harbor, 1887–1889.

Berthold Fernow, editor, *Records of New Amsterdam* (1653–1674). 7 vols. N.Y., 1897.

J. Wickham Case, *Southold (L.I.) Town Records.* 2 vols. Printed by order of the towns of Southold and Riverhead. [Copyright, 1882–1884.]

North Carolina

Colonial Records of North Carolina (1662–1776). Edited by W. L. Saunders. Vols. I–X. Raleigh, 1886–1890. — From 1776 to 1790 (Vols. XI–XXVI, Winston, etc., 1895–1906) the series is called *State Records*, and is edited by Walter Clark. It includes three volumes of laws, 1715–1790, indexed (Vols. XXIII–XXV), and the census record of 1790, indexed (Vol. XXVI). A general index to Vols. I–XXV is in preparation.

François-Xavier Martin, *Collection of the Statutes of the Parliament of England in force in the State of North Carolina.* Newbern, 1792.

Journal of the Convention . . . to Amend the Constitution of the State, which assembled in Raleigh, June 4, 1835. Raleigh, 1835.

Ordinances and Resolutions passed by the State Convention of North Carolina (May, 1861–May, 1862). Raleigh, 1862. — Also, in the same volume, journals of the convention.

Ordinances and Resolutions passed by the North-Carolina State Convention, First Session, 1865. Raleigh, 1865. — Also those of the second session, Raleigh, 1866.

North Dakota

Journal of the Constitutional Convention . . . held . . . July 4 to Aug. 17, 1889. Bismarck, 1889.

Official Report of the Proceedings and Debates (1889). Bismarck, 1889.

Northwest Territory

Laws of the Territory . . . North-west of the Ohio River (1788–1795). 3 vols. Philadelphia and Cincinnati, 1792–1796. — These are the laws made by the governor and judges.

Laws of the Territory . . . Northwest of the River Ohio (1798–1801). 4 vols. Cincinnati and Chillicothe, 1798–1802. — Laws passed by the legislature.

Ohio

J. V. Smith, *Report of the Debates and Proceedings of the Convention for the Revision of the Constitution of the State of Ohio, 1850–1851.* 2 vols. Columbus, 1851. — The official copy.

Acts . . . [passed by the] General Assembly (1803–1838). 37 vols. Columbus, 1803–1839.

Laws of Ohio, ordered by the Legislature to be reprinted, 1816. No title-page.

Statutes of the State of Ohio of a General Nature. Columbus, 1841.

Oregon

Journal of the Constitutional Convention of the State of Oregon, held at Salem . . . August 17–November 9, 1857. Salem, 1882.

Pennsylvania

[*Colonial Records*, 1683–1790.] 16 vols. Phila., 1852–1853. — Vols. I–X, *Minutes of the Provincial Council;* Vols. XI–XVI, Minutes of the *Supreme Executive Council.* — General Index, Phila., 1860.

Pennsylvania Archives (1664–). Compiled by Samuel Hazard and others. 6 series, in 91 vols. (to 1907). Phila. and Harrisburg, 1852–1907. — A miscellaneous collection of official papers.

Votes and Proceedings of the House of Representatives of the Province of Pennsylvania (1682–1776). 6 vols. Phila., 1752–1776.

[Michael Hillegas, editor], *Journals of the House of Representatives of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (November 28, 1776, to October 2, 1781). Vol. I. Phila., 1782. — Probably no more published.

Staughton George and others, compilers, *Duke of Yorke's Book of Laws* (1676–1682), and *Charter to William Penn and Laws of the Province of Pennsylvania passed between 1682 and 1700.* Harrisburg, 1879.

Record of the Court at Upland, in Pennsylvania, 1676 to 1681. (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, VII, 1–203.) Phila., 1860.

Statutes at Large of Pennsylvania from 1682 to 1801. Compiled by J. T. Mitchell and Henry Flanders. Vols. II–XIII (1700–1790). Harrisburg, 1896–1908.

A. J. Dallas, compiler, *Laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (1700–1790). "Republished on authority." 2 vols. Phila., 1793–1797.

Mathew Carey and John Bioren, *Laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (1700–1802). 6 vols. Phila., 1803.

Journal of the Convention . . . to propose Amendments to the Constitution (1837). 2 vols. Harrisburg, 1837–1838. — Bound with this is *Minutes of the Committee of the Whole.*

Proceedings and Debates of the Convention (1837). 14 vols. Harrisburg, 1837–1839.

Acts of the General Assembly of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania (1777–81); with an Appendix containing the "Laws now in Force, passed between the 30th Day of September 1775, and the Revolution." Phila., 1782.

J. B. McMaster and F. D. Stone, editors, *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution, 1787–1788.* Phila., 1888.

Rhode Island

Records of the Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations in New England (1636–1792). Complied by J. R. Bartlett. 10 vols. Providence, 1856–1865. — Imperfect; the historian is obliged to go to the original records.

Journal of the Convention to frame a Constitution for the State of Rhode Island, at Newport, September 12, 1842. Providence, 1859.

Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Colony of Rhode-Island and Providence-Plantations in New-England. — Editions printed at Newport by the Widow Franklin in 1745 and 1764, and by Samuel Hall in 1767. All the editions of the Rhode Island laws are imperfect; the student must therefore consult the original "Schedules" to gain a comprehension of the history of Rhode Island.

Early Records of the Town of Portsmouth (1639–1697). Providence, 1901.

Early Records of the Town of Providence. Vols. I–XX. Providence, 1892–1909.

South Carolina

P. C. J. Weston, editor, *Documents connected with the History of South Carolina.* London, 1856.

Journals of the Conventions of the People of South Carolina, held in 1832, 1833, and 1852. Columbia, 1860.

Address of the People of South Carolina, assembled in Convention, to the People of the Slaveholding States. Charleston, 1860.

Declaration of the Immediate Causes which Induce and Justify the Secession of South Carolina from the Federal Union; and the Ordinance of Secession. Charleston, 1860.

Journal of the Convention of the People of South Carolina, held in 1860, 1861, and 1862. Columbia, 1862. — Contains also ordinances, reports, resolutions, etc.

Journal of the Convention . . . held in Columbia . . . September, 1865. Columbia, 1865.

Journal of the Constitutional Convention (1895). Columbia, 1895.

Nicholas Trott, *Laws of the Province of South Carolina before 1734.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1736.

John F. Grimké, compiler, *Public Laws of the State of South-Carolina* (1694–1790). Phila., 1790.

Thomas Cooper and D. J. McCord, *Statutes at Large of South Carolina.* 10 vols. Columbia, 1836–1841.

Benjamin James, *Digest of the Laws of South-Carolina.* Columbia, 1822.

Thomas D. Condy, *Digest of the Laws of the United States and of South Carolina relating to the Militia; also Patrol Laws, Slave Laws, and Judicial Decisions thereon.* Charleston, 1830.

Joseph Brevard, *Alphabetical Digest of the Public Statute Law of South-Carolina.* 3 vols. Charleston, 1814.

Revised Statutes of the State of South Carolina. Columbia, 1873. — An Appendix to some copies gives a list of old acts.

Digest of the Ordinances of the City Council of Charleston . . . 1783–1818. Charleston, 1818. — To this are appended ordinances from 1818 to 1832.

South Dakota

Journal of the Constitutional Convention . . . July, 1889. Sioux Falls, 1889.

Tennessee

Journals of the Proceedings of the Legislative Council of the Territory South of the River Ohio. Knoxville, 1794–1795; reprinted, Nashville, 1852. — The reprint also contains the journals of the House for 1794–1795, of the Senate and House for 1796, and the journal of the Constitutional Convention of 1796.

Journal of the Convention of the State of Tennessee convened for the purpose of Revising and Amending the Constitution thereof. Nashville, 1834.

John Haywood, *Revisal of all the Public Acts of the State of North-Carolina, and of the State of Tennessee, now in force in . . . Tennessee.* 2d ed. Nashville, 1810.

R. L. Caruthers and A. O. P. Nicholson, *Compilation of the Statutes of Tennessee of a General and Permanent Nature.* Nashville, 1836.

John Haywood and R. L. Cobb, *The Statute Laws of the State of Tennessee, of a Public and General Nature, revised and digested.* 2 vols. Knoxville, 1831.

R. J. Meigs and W. F. Cooper, editors, *The Code of Tennessee, enacted by the General Assembly of 1857–1858.* Nashville, 1858.

Texas

Proceedings of the General Convention of Delegates . . . held at . . . San Felipe . . . October, 1832. Brazoria, Texas, 1832 [reprinted, Austin, 1898]. — In the same volume are *Journals of the Consultation held at San Felipe . . . 1835* (Houston, 1838); *Journal of the Proceedings of the General Council . . . held at San Felipe, 1835* (Houston, 1839); and *Journals of the General Convention at Washington, March 1–17, 1836* (Houston, 1838).

Journals of the Convention assembled . . . on the 4th of July, 1845, for the purpose of framing a Constitution. Austin, 1845.

Debates in the Convention (1845). Austin, [1845].

Ordinances and Resolutions of the Convention held in the City of Austin, January 28–February 24, 1861. Austin, 1861.

Reports of the Committee on Public Safety to the Convention of the People of . . . Texas, which assembled at Austin, January 28, 1861. Austin, 1861.

Journal of the Texas State Convention assembled at Austin, Feb. 7, 1866. Austin, 1866.

Laws and Decrees of the State of Coahuila and Texas, in Spanish and English (1824–1835). Translated by J. P. Kimball. Houston, 1839.

Oliver C. Hartley, *Digest of the Laws of Texas.* Phila., 1850.

Utah

Official Report of the Proceedings and Debates of the Convention assembled . . . on the Fourth Day of March, 1895, to adopt a Constitution. 2 vols. Salt Lake City, 1898.

Vermont

Records of the Council of Safety and Governor and Council of the State of Vermont. Edited by E. P. Walton. 8 vols. Montpelier, 1873–1880.

Vermont State Papers; being a Collection of Records and Documents. Compiled by William Slade. Middlebury, 1823.

Journal of the [Constitutional] Convention holden at Montpelier . . . January 6, 1836. St. Albans, 1836.

Laws of the State of Vermont, digested and compiled. 2 vols. Randolph, 1808.

Virginia

Colonial Records of Virginia [1619–1680. Edited by T. S. Wynne and W. S. Gilman.] Richmond, 1874. ("Senate Document, Extra.")

Calendar of Virginia State Papers and other Manuscripts . . . preserved . . . at Richmond (1652–1869). Edited by W. P. Palmer and others. 11 vols. Richmond, 1875–1893.

Records of the Virginia Company of London: the Court Book, from the Manuscript in the Library of Congress. Edited by S. M. Kingsbury. 2 vols. Washington, 1906.

Journals of the House of Burgesses of Virginia (1727–1776). Edited by H. R. McIlwaine and J. P. Kennedy. 8 vols. Richmond, 1905-1910.

Journals of the House of Delegates of Virginia (1776–1790). 4 vols. Richmond, 1828.

Senate Journals (1778–1779, 1785–1790). 2 vols. Richmond, 1827–1828.

Report of the Committee of Revisors appointed by the General Assembly of Virginia in 1776. Richmond, 1784.

Proceedings and Debates of the Virginia State Convention of 1829–1830. Richmond, 1830.

Journal of the Constitutional Convention . . . beginning June 12th 1901. Richmond, 1901.

Report of the Proceedings and Debates (1901). 2 vols. Richmond, 1906.

David L. Pulliam, *The Constitutional Conventions of Virginia from the Foundation of the Commonwealth to the Present Time.* Richmond, 1901.

J. N. Brenaman, *History of Virginia Conventions.* Richmond, 1902. — Appended are the constitutions of 1868 and 1902.

William Waller Hening, *The Statutes-at-Large, being a Collection of all the Laws of Virginia* (1619–1792). 13 vols. Phila. and N.Y., 1823.

Acts of Assembly, now in force, in the Colony of Virginia (1661–1752). Williamsburg, 1752.

Acts of Assembly, now in force, in the Colony of Virginia (1661–1768). Williamsburg, 1769.

Collection of all such Public Acts of the General Assembly, and Ordinances of the Conventions of Virginia, passed since the Year 1768, as are now in force (1769–1783). Richmond, 1785.

Collection of all such Acts of the General Assembly of Virginia, of a Public and Permanent Nature, as are now in force (1776–1794). Richmond, 1794.

John Mercer, *An Exact Abridgment of all the Public Acts of Assembly of Virginia in force and use.* Williamsburg, 1737.

A Collection of all such Acts of the General Assembly of Virginia, of a Public and Permanent Nature, as are now in force. 2 vols. Richmond, 1803–1808. — Supplement, Richmond, 1812. Binder's title, "Revised Code."

Revised Code of the Laws of Virginia. 2 vols. Richmond, 1819. — Supplement, Richmond, 1833.

The Code of Virginia. Richmond, 1849.

Virginia State Library, *A Calendar of Legislative Petitions arranged by Counties* [from the Revolution on]. (Department of Archives and History, *Special Report*, by H. J. Eckenrode.) Richmond, 1908. — Runs only from "Accomac" to "Bedford."

Washington

Remington and Ballinger's Annotated Codes and Statutes of Washington. 2 vols. and index vol. Seattle, 1910.

West Virginia

Journal of Constitutional Convention assembled . . . January 16, 1872. Charleston, 1872.

Wisconsin

Journal of the Convention to form a Constitution for the State of Wisconsin . . . held at Madison . . . 1846. Madison, 1847.

Journal of the Convention to form a Constitution for the State of Wisconsin . . . held at Madison . . . 1847. Madison, 1848.

Revised Statutes of the State of Wisconsin, passed . . . 1858. Chicago, 1858.

Wyoming

Journal and Debates of the Constitutional Convention . . . begun . . . on September 2, 1889. Cheyenne, 1893.

Canada

Report on Canadian Archives. Ottawa, 1872–1908. — Annual reports, since 1883 issued as separate publications; to be found also in the Canada *Sessional Papers.* They contain matter of the greatest value to the student of the history of the United States. An index was published in 1909.

William Kingsford, *History of Canada* (1608–1841). 10 vols. London and Toronto, 1888–1898. — This work contains many important documents relating to colonial history not easily accessible elsewhere.

H. L. Egerton and W. P. Grant, *Canadian Constitutional Development shown by Selected Speeches and Despatches* (1763–1865). London, 1907.

William Houston, *Documents Illustrative of the Canadian Constitution.* Toronto, 1891.

Adam Shortt and A. G. Doughty, editors, *Documents relating to the Constitutional History of Canada, 1759–1791.* Ottawa, 1907. — This is Vol. III of the *Report on Canadian Archives,* 1905; it is also Sessional Paper, No. 18.

Thomas B. Akins, *Selections from the Public Documents of the Province of Nova Scotia.* Halifax, 1869.

Select Digests and Reports of Judicial Decisions

The following authorities contain digests upon decisions rendered before 1789, and also the texts of some decisions.

George Chalmers, *Opinions of Eminent Lawyers on various points of English Jurisprudence, chiefly concerning the Colonies, Fisheries, and Commerce, of Great Britain.* 2 vols. London, 1814.

William Forsyth, *Cases and Opinions on Constitutional Law and various points of English Jurisprudence.* London, 1869. — Contains a few opinions dealing with the thirteen English colonies in America.

Benjamin Vaughan Abbott, *United States Digest . . . from the Earliest Period to the Year 1870.* 15 vols. Boston, 1874–1878. — Vol. XV is a table of cases.

Jesse Root, *Reports of Cases adjudged in the Superior Court [of Connecticut].* 2 vols. Hartford, 1798–1802. — Vol. I contains several cases decided before 1789.

Thomas Harris and John M'Henry, *Maryland Reports* (1658–1799). 4 vols. N.Y., 1809–1818.

W. H. Norris and others, *Digest of the Maryland Reports* (1658–1842). 2 vols. Baltimore, 1847.

Josiah Quincy, Jr., *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Superior Court of Judicature of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, between 1761 and 1772.* Boston, 1865.

George Fred Williams, *Massachusetts Citations: Quincy to 122 Mass.* (1761–1877). Boston, 1878.

E. H. Bennett, Russell Gray, and H. W. Swift, *Massachusetts Digest . . . of Reported Decisions* (1804–1879, with references to earlier cases). 3 vols. Boston, 1881. — Supplements to 1902.

François Xavier Martin, *Notes of a few Decisions in the Superior Courts of North Carolina, and in the Circuit Court of the United States for North Carolina District* (1778–1797; with a translation of Latch's Cases). Newbern, 1797. — Included with other matter in a second edition, Raleigh, 1843.

A. J. Dallas, *Reports of Cases in the Courts of Pennsylvania . . .* [1754–1806], *and in the several Courts of the United States* [1790–1800]. 4 vols. Phila., 1790–1807. — Vol. I is entitled *Reports of Cases ruled and adjudged in the Courts of Pennsylvania, before and since the Revolution.* 2d edition of Vols. I, IV, Phila., 1806, 1835.

Frederick C. Brightly, *Digest of the Decisions of the Courts of Pennsylvania* (1754–1891). 4 vols. Phila., 1877–1891.

Richard Peters, *Admiralty Decisions in the District Court of the United States for the Pennsylvania District.* 2 vols. (in one). Phila., 1807. — Contains Hopkinson's decisions, 1780–1806, and other interesting matter, as, for example, the "Marine Ordinances of Louis XIV."

Thomas Bee, *Reports of Cases adjudged in the District Court of South Carolina, to which is added an Appendix containing Decisions in the Admiralty Court of Pennsylvania.* Phila., 1810. — The Appendix contains many cases decided between 1779 and 1785.

R. T. Barton, editor, *Virginia Colonial Decisions: Reports by Sir John Randolph and by Edward Barradall of Decisions of the Supreme Court of Virginia, 1728–1741.* 2 vols. Boston, 1909.

Thomas Jefferson, *Reports of Cases determined in the General Court of Virginia* (1730–1740, 1768–1772). Charlottesville, 1829.

Daniel Call, *Reports of Cases . . . in the Court of Appeals of Virginia.* 2d ed. 6 vols. Richmond, 1824–1833. — A few early cases will be found scattered through these volumes.

§ 44. United States Records

Under the Constitution each House of Congress is obliged to keep a journal, and also to make a statement of receipts and expenditures. In the course of years many other documents have come to be regularly published. Most of these publications for the current year may be had by applying to the member of Congress from one's district; sometimes back sets may also be secured by gift or purchase. These are among the most valuable sources accessible to students of American history.

The manuscripts of the Journals from 1774 to 1788 are in the State Department at Washington; the new edition now in progress is the first full and accurate publication.

Indexes to the Journals and Debates are enumerated in § 26.

The laws are printed in annual volumes, and they are also to be found in the Appendices to the records of debates. The standard editions, authoritative in the courts, are enumerated below.

Indexes

Early indexes of the Statutes are:

Statutes at Large, VIII. — Contains an index to the laws up to 1845.

Synoptical Index to the Laws and Treaties (1789–1851). Boston, 1852.

F. C. Brightly, *Analytical Digest of the Laws of the United States* (1789–1857), Phila., 1858. — An index in another form.

The indexes to the *Revised Statutes* cover all laws still in force. All these indexes are now nearly superseded by:

M. G. Beaman and others, *Index Analysis of the Federal Statutes (General and Permanent Law), 1789–1873, together with a Table of Repeals and Amendments*. Washington, 1911. — Prepared as a "preliminary volume" to Scott and Beaman, *Index Analysis*, etc. (Washington, 1908), which covers the general and permanent law in the *Revised Statutes* of 1873 and the *Statutes at Large*, 1873–1907.

Journals of Congress

[1774–1788.] *Journals of Congress, containing their Proceedings.* Contemporaneous edition, 13 vols., Phila., 1777–[1789?]; reprint, 13 vols., Phila., 1800–1801. — Another reprint, with additions, as *Journals of the American Congress*, 4 vols., Washington, 1823.

[1774–1789.] *Journals of the Continental Congress.* Edited from the original by W. C. Ford and Gaillard Hunt. Vols. I–XVIII (1774–1780). Washington, 1904– . — In progress.

[1775–1788.] *Secret Journals of the Acts and Proceedings of Congress.* 4 vols. Boston, 1821. — Extracts from the manuscript Journals omitted in preparing the public ones described above.

[1789– .] *Journal of the House of Representatives of the United States.* Annual volumes since 1789. Phila. and Washington. — Also a reprint (1789–1815), 9 vols., Washington, 1826.

[1789– .] *Journal of the Senate of the United States.* Annual volumes since 1789. Phila. and Washington. — Also a reprint (1789–1815), 5 vols., Washington, 1820.

[1789–1901.] *Journal of the Executive Proceedings of the Senate of the United States.* 32 vols. Washington, 1828–1911. — Contains matter omitted from the public journals.

Records of Debates

[1789–1824.] [*Annals of Congress.*] *Annals of the Congress of the United States.* 42 vols. Washington, 1834–1856.

[1825–1837.] [*Congressional Debates.*] *Register of Debates in Congress.* 29 vols. Washington, 1825–1837.

[1833–1873.] *Congressional Globe, containing the Debates and Proceedings.* 108 vols. Washington, 1834–1873.

[1873– .] *Congressional Record, containing the Proceedings and Debates.* Vols. I–XLVII in many parts (to 1911). Washington, 1873– .

Federal Statutes

[1789–1849.] *Laws of the United States of America.* Published by authority. 29 vols. Phila. and Washington, 1796–1849.

[1789– .] *Statutes at Large of the United States of America.* Vols. I–XXXVI (to 1911). Boston and Washington, 1850– . — Includes treaties and the later proclamations.

[1873.] *Revised Statutes of the United States . . . embracing the Statutes . . . general and permanent in their nature, in force on Dec. 1st, 1873.* Washington, 1875. — Also a second edition, with slight corrections, Washington, 1878.

[1874–1901.] *Supplement to the Revised Statutes of the United States, embracing the Statutes, general and permanent in their*

nature, passed after the Revised Statutes. Vol. I, 2d ed., revised and continued (1874–1891), Washington, 1891; Vol. II (1891–1901, in 2 pts.), Washington, 1900–1901.

[1901–1907.] *Compiled Statutes of the United States, 1901.* Edited by John A. Mallory. 3 vols. St. Paul, 1902. — Supplementary volumes, 1903, 1905, 1907.

Congressional Documents

[1789–1838.] *American State Papers: Documents, Legislative and Executive.* Folio, 38 vols. Washington, 1832–1861.

[1789–1801.] [Congressional Documents were published in a variety of forms, as] *Messages, Documents, Reports, Account of the Receipts and Expenditures*, etc.

[1801–1817.] [Congressional Documents were printed, with few exceptions, in uniform size without any general title; the binder's titles are] *Documents, Reports*, and, usually, *State Papers.*

[1817–1849.] *Senate Documents.* — Include substantially what were afterwards called *Senate Executive Documents* and *Reports of Committees.*

[1847– .] *Senate Executive Documents.* — Earlier sets in this period often bear the title *Senate Documents.*

[1847– .] *Senate Miscellaneous Documents.*

[1847– .] *Senate Reports of Committees.*

[1817–1830.] [*House Documents* usually appear under the binder's title] *State Papers.*

[1830–1847.] [The *House Documents* are included among the] *Executive Documents* [and make up nearly or quite the whole of the set so designated].

[1847– .] *House Executive Documents.* — Earlier sets in this series have simply the title *Executive Documents.*

[1847– .] *House Miscellaneous Documents.*

[1819– .] *House Reports of Committees.*

Reports of Judicial Decisions

[1790–1800.] A. J. Dallas, *Reports of Cases in the Courts of the United States, and Pennsylvania*, Vols. II–IV. (See Dallas, in § 43, p. 151.)

[1801–1815.] William Cranch, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court of the United States.* 9 vols. Washington, etc., 1804–1817.

[1816–1827.] Henry Wheaton, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 12 vols. Phila., etc., 1816–1827.

[1828–1842.] Richard Peters, Jr., *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 17 vols. Phila., etc., 1828–1843.

[1843–1861.] Benjamin C. Howard, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 24 vols. Phila., 1843–1861.

[1861–1862.] Jeremiah Sullivan Black, *Reports of Cases argued and determined in the Supreme Court.* 2 vols. Washington, [1862–1863].

[1863–1874.] John W. Wallace, *Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 23 vols. Washington, 1864–1876.

[1875–1882.] William T. Otto, *Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 17 vols. Boston, 1876–1883. (Also bears title "United States Reports, Supreme Court," Vols. 91–107.) — Cited only as "U. S."

[1882–1901.] J. C. Bancroft Davis, *Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court.* 79 vols. N.Y., etc., 1884–1902. (United States Reports, Vols. 108–186.) — Cited only as "U. S."

[1902– .] Charles H. Butler, *Cases adjudged in the Supreme Court.* N.Y., 1903– . (United States Reports, Vol. 187– .) — Cited only as "U. S.'

[1789–1827.] Richard Peters, Jr., *Condensed Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court of the United States.* 6 vols. Phila., 1830–1834.

[1790–1854.] B. R. Curtis, *Reports of Decisions in the Supreme Court of the United States; with Notes and a Digest.* 22 vols. Boston, 1855–1856; 6th ed., 1881. — Condensed reports.

[1855–1862.] Samuel F. Miller, *Reports of Decisions in the Supreme Court of the United States.* 4 vols. Washington, 1874–1875. — Condensed reports, in continuation of Curtis.

[1791– .] *Official Opinions of the Attorneys-General of the United States.* Vols. I–XXVII. (1791–1909.) Washington, 1852–

Digests of Decisions

Legal cases are most approachable through the Digests, which are analytical indexes including not only references to the cases but a condensed statement of the principle set forth in the particular case. There are digests of some state decisions, several separate digests to the decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, and the so-called *Century Digest*, which is an

immense repository of classified references to the published decisions of national and state courts taken together.

Robert Desty, *Constitution of the United States.* San Francisco, 1887. — Arranged in order of the clauses of the Federal Constitution.

H. D. Clarke, *Hand-Book of all the Decisions of the Supreme Court.* Rochester, 1892, with supplements to 1897.

H. G. Danforth, *Digest.* 2 vols. Albany, 1885–1891.

J. K. Kinney, *Digest.* 2 vols. Boston, 1886.

T. J. Michie, *Encyclopedia of United States Supreme Court Reports.* 11 vols. Charlottesville, 1908–1911.

Digest of the United States Supreme Court Reports . . . to the Beginning of the October term, 1907. Vols. I–V. Rochester, 1908– . — In progress.

American Digest, "Century Edition." 50 vols. St. Paul, 1897–1904. — Covers, besides the federal reports, all other reported American cases from the earliest times to 1896; continued to 1906 by the "Decennial Edition," and to the present time by the *American Digest Annotated.*

Federal Reporter Digest. 7 vols. St. Paul, 1900–1908. Digests lower federal court decisions but also includes Vols. 106–210 of the *United States Reports.*

Special Records of a Historical Nature

[1786–1870.] Department of State: Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Documentary History of the Constitution of the United States.* 5 vols. Washington, 1894–1905.

[1783–1789.] *Diplomatic Correspondence of the United States from . . . 1783 . . . to . . . 1789.* 3 vols. Washington, 1837.

[1787–1788.] Jonathan Elliot, *Debates in the several State Conventions on the Adoption of the Federal Constitution, . . . together with the Journal of the Federal Convention* [*and other Papers*]. 2d. ed. 4 vols. Washington, 1836. — *Debates on the Adoption of the Federal Constitution in the Convention held at Philadelphia* (Washington, 1845) is Elliot's edition of Madison's Notes, usually called Vol. V of the *Debates.*

[1774–1776.] Peter Force, *American Archives . . . a Documentary History of . . . the North American Colonies.* 4th series, 6 vols. (March 7, 1774 to Aug. 21, 1776); 5th series, 3 vols. (May 3, 1776 to December 31, 1776). Washington, 1837–1853. — No more published.

[1861–1865.] *Journal of the Congress of the Confederate States of America.* ([*U.S.*] *Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 2 sess. No. 234.) 3 vols. Washington, 1904–1905.

[1778–1902.] C. J. Kappler, *Indian Affairs: Laws and Treaties.* (*Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 2 sess. No. 319.) 2 vols. Washington, 1904.

[1776–1909.] W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, International Acts, Protocols, and Agreements between the United States and other Powers.* 2 vols. (*Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 2 sess. No. 357.) Washington, 1910.

[1776–1906.] J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law as embodied . . . especially in Documents . . . of the United States.* (*House Docs.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess. No. 551.) 7 vols. and index vol. Washington, 1906. — An earlier edition by Francis Wharton (3 vols., Washington, 1886).

[1794–1897.] J. B. Moore, *History and Digest of the International Arbitrations to which the United States has been a Party.* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 53 Cong. 2 sess. No. 212.) 6 vols. Washington, 1898.

[1861–1865.] *Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies in the War of the Rebellion.* Washington, 1894– . — In progress; 23 vols. to 1910.

[1492–1876.] Ben Perley Poore, *Federal and State Constitutions.* (See § 42.)

[1789–1898.] J. D. Richardson, *Compilation of the Messages and Papers of the Presidents.* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 53 Cong. 2 sess. No. 210.) 10 vols. Washington, 1896–1899. — Also published separately.

[1775–1786.] Jared Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence of the American Revolution.* 12 vols. Boston, 1829–1830.

[1492–1907.] F. N. Thorpe, *Federal and State Constitutions.* (See § 42.)

[1860–1865.] *War of the Rebellion: a Compilation of the Official Records of the Union and Confederate Armies.* 129 serial vols. and index vol. Washington, 1880–1901.

[1775–1785.] Francis Wharton, *Revolutionary Diplomatic Correspondence.* 6 vols. Washington, 1889.

§ 45. Publications of Learned Societies

Important collections of historical material of great value are to be found in the proceedings of the historical societies. These are now accessible through A. P. C. Griffin's *Bibliography of American Historical Societies*, published in the *Annual Report* of the American Historical Association for 1905. It contains tables of contents of all the publications of all available societies, up to the date of

publication. There are also indexes to some of the sets of *Proceedings* and *Collections* noted below. Among the more important societies are the following (the national ones standing first, then the local ones arranged alphabetically by states):

General Societies

Academy of Pacific Coast History, *Publications*. University of California, Berkeley, 1910– .

American Antiquarian Society, *Archæologia Americana: Transactions and Collections of the Society*, 7 vols., Worcester, 1820–1885; *Proceedings*, 1843– .

American Historical Association, *Papers*. 5 vols., N.Y., 1886–1891; *Annual Reports*, 1889, etc., Washington, 1890– .

American-Irish Historical Society, *Journal*. Boston, 1898–

American Jewish Historical Society, *Publications*. [Baltimore], 1893.

Archæological Institute of America, *Annual Reports* and *Papers*. Cambridge, 1880– . — Contains many valuable papers on prehistoric America.

Deutscher Pionier-Verein von Philadelphia, *Mitteilungen*. [Phila.], 1906– .

Mississippi Valley Historical Association, *Proceedings* (1907–). Cedar Rapids, Ia., 1909– .

Ohio Valley Historical Association, *Annual Reports*. Columbus, 1908– . — Published also in the *Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly*.

Pennsylvania-German Society, *Proceedings and Addresses*. Lancaster, 1891– .

Prince Society, *Publications*. Albany and Boston, 1865–1910. — Some thirty volumes have been printed under various editorships. They include the *Andros Tracts*, *Champlain's Voyages*, Toppan's *Edward Randolph*, etc.

Scotch-Irish Society of America, *The Scotch-Irish in America: Proceedings of the Scotch-Irish Congress* (1889–1896). 8 vols. Cincinnati, 1889–[1897].

Southern History Association, *Publications*. Washington, 1897–

A

Alabama Historical Society, *Transactions*, Tuscaloosa, 1852, 1855, 1898– ; *Alabama Historical Reporter*, 3 vols., 1879–1885.

Arkansas Historical Association, *Publications*. Fayetteville, 1906– .

C

California Historical Society, *Papers*, and other publications. San Francisco, 1874–1890.

Southern California Historical Society, *Annual Publications*. Los Angeles, 1884– .

State Historical and Natural History Society of Colorado, *Biennial Reports*. Denver, 1905– .

Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections*. Hartford, 1860– .

New Haven Colony Historical Society, *Papers*. New Haven, 1865– .

D

Delaware Historical Society, *Papers*. Wilmington, 1879– .

F

Florida Historical Society, *Quarterly*. Jacksonville, 1908– .

G

Georgia Historical Society, *Collections*, and other publications. Savannah, 1840– .

I

Illinois State Historical Society, *Transactions*. (Illinois State Historical Library, *Publications*, Nos. 4- .) Springfield, Ill., 1900– .— The Historical Library also publishes *Collections*, 1903– , and a quarterly *Journal*, 1908– .

Chicago Historical Society, *Collections*. Chicago, 1882- .

Indiana Historical Society, *Publications*. Indianapolis, 1897– .

Iowa State Historical Society, *Annals*, Iowa City, 1863– ; *Iowa Historical Record*, 18 vols., 1885-1902; *Iowa Journal of History and Politics*, 1903– ; *Messages and Proclamations of the Governors of Iowa*, 7 vols., 1903–1905.

K

Kansas State Historical Society, *Transactions* (1875-). Topeka, 1881- .— With Vol. XI (1910) the title was changed to *Collections*.

[Kentucky] Filson Club, *Publications*. Louisville, 1884– .— Contains matter relating primarily to Kentucky, as Durrett's *Life and Writings of John Filson*, Speed's *Wilderness Road*, Brown's *Political Beginnings of Kentucky*, etc.

L

Louisiana Historical Society, *Publications*. New Orleans, 1895– .

M

Maine Historical Society, *Collections*, etc. Portland, 1831– ; Index to the first series of *Collections*, 1891. — Among its publications are a *Documentary History of Maine*, 1869– ; and *Documents relating to the Territorial History of Maine* (2 vols., 1603–1871, by Mary F. Farnham), 1900–1901.

Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*. Baltimore, 1867– . — Also many other publications, including the *Maryland Historical Magazine*, 1906– .

Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Boston, 1792– ; *Proceedings* (1791–), Boston, 1879– . — The *Collections* were first printed in the *American Apollo*, Boston, 1792; they then appeared in pamphlet form. The early numbers were reprinted from time to time. The *Collections* are divided into series of ten volumes each, the tenth volume containing an index to the whole series. The *Proceedings* are divided into series of twenty volumes each, and an additional volume contains an index to these twenty volumes. Each volume of the *Proceedings* and of the later *Collections* also contains an index of the matter in that volume.

New-England Historic Genealogical Society, *New-England Historical and Genealogical Register*, Boston, 1847– ; *Proceedings*, 1865– ; *Memorial Biographies* (1845–), 1880– . — Each volume of the *Register* contains an index. For Vols. I–L there is also an *Index of Persons*, 3 vols., 1906–1907, and an *Index of Subjects*, 1908.

Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*. Salem, 1859– .

Worcester Society of Antiquity, *Collections* (1875–). Worcester, 1881– .

Pioneer Society of the State of Michigan, *Pioneer Collections* (1874–), Lansing, 1877– ; Index to Vols. I–XXX, 2 vols., 1904–1907. — In 1886 (Vol. VIII) the name of the society was changed to Pioneer and Historical Society; and in 1888 (Vol. X) the title became *Historical Collections*.

Minnesota Historical Society, *Collections*. St. Paul, 1860– . — Vol. I (1872) is a republication of the original parts issued from 1850 to 1856. At the end of Vol. X, pt. ii, there are indexes to the first ten volumes.

Mississippi Historical Society, *Publications*. Oxford, Miss., 1898– .

Missouri Historical Society, *Collections*, etc. St. Louis, 1880– .

State Historical Society of Missouri, *Missouri Historical Review*. Columbia, Mo., 1906– .

Historical Society of Montana, *Contributions*. Helena, Mont., 1876– .

N

Nebraska State Historical Society, *Transactions and Reports*, 5 vols., Lincoln, 1885–1893; *Proceedings and Collections*, 1894– .

Nevada Historical Society, *Biennial Reports*. Carson City, 1909– .

New Hampshire Historical Society, *Collections*, 10 vols., Concord, etc., 1824–1893; *Proceedings*, 1874– .

New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, 7 vols., Newark, 1846–1872; *Proceedings* (1845–), Newark, 1847– . — Among its publications are also two series of *Documents relating to the History of New Jersey* (commonly cited as *New Jersey Archives*), 1880– . Several of these volumes consist of newspaper extracts.

Historical Society of New Mexico, [*Publications*]. Santa Fé, 1881– .

New York Genealogical and Biographical Society, *New York Genealogical and Biographical Record*. N.Y., 1870– . — Issued quarterly.

New York Historical Society, *Collections* (in two series), 9 vols., N.Y., 1811–1859; "Publication Fund Series," 37 vols., 1868–1905.

Albany Institute, *Transactions*. 12 vols. Albany, 1830–1893.

Buffalo Historical Society, *Publications*. Buffalo, 1879– . — Issued irregularly to 1896, and yearly from 1902.

Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, and other publications. Brooklyn, 1867– .

North Carolina Historical Society, *James Sprunt Historical Monographs*. Chapel Hill, 1900– .

Trinity College (N. C.) Historical Society, *Annual Publication of Historical Papers*. Durham, 1897– .

State Historical Society of North Dakota, *Collections*. Bismarck, N.D., 1906– .

O

Ohio State Archæological and Historical Society, *Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly*. Columbus, 1887– . — After March, 1889, the issues in quarterly form were replaced by annual volumes under the general title of *Publications*. In July, 1899, the *Quarterly* was resumed, but the volumes continue to be bound as *Publications*. Vol. XI (1902) contains an index to the first eleven volumes.

Oregon Historical Society, *Quarterly*. Salem, 1900– .

P

Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, 14 vols., Phila., 1826–1895; *Bulletin*, Vol. I, 1848; *Collections*, Vol. I, 1853; *Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*, 1877– .

Wyoming Historical and Geological Society, *Proceedings and Collections*. Wilkes-Barré, Pa., 1858–

R

Rhode Island Historical Society, *Collections*, Providence, 1827– ; *Proceedings*, 1872–1892 (annually); *Publications*, new series, 1893– . After 1892 the *Proceedings* form the first number of each volume of the *Publications*.

S

South Carolina Historical Society, *Collections*, 5 vols., Charleston, 1857–1897; *South Carolina Historical and Genealogical Magazine*, 1900– .

State Historical Society of South Dakota, *South Dakota Historical Collections*. Aberdeen, S.D., 1902–

T

Tennessee Historical Society, *American Historical Magazine and Tennessee Historical Society Quarterly*. Vols. VII–IX. Nashville, 1902–1904.

Texas State Historical Association, *Quarterly*. Austin, 1897–

V

Vermont Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Montpelier, 1860– ; *Collections*, 2 vols., 1870–1871.

Virginia Historical Society, *Virginia Historical Register*, 6 vols., Richmond, 1848–1853; *Virginia Historical Reporter*, 2 vols., 1854–1860; *Collections*, new series, 11 vols., 1882–1892; *Virginia Magazine of History and Biography*, 1893–

W

Washington University State Historical Society, *Washington Historical Quarterly*. Seattle, 1906– .

West Virginia Historical and Antiquarian Society, *West Virginia Historical Magazine, Quarterly*. 5 vols. Charleston, 1901–1905.

Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, *Transactions*.

Madison, 1870– .—The first three numbers of Vol. I are called *Bulletin*. Contains important historical contributions.

State Historical Society of Wisconsin, *Report and Collections*. Madison, 1855– ; Index in Vol. X, 1888.—Reprint edition, 1903– .—With Vol. XI (1888) the name was changed to *Collections*, the Reports thenceforth forming part of the *Proceedings* (1875– ; Index, 1904). The society also publishes a *Bulletin of Information*, 1897–

Canada

Literary and Historical Society of Quebec, *Transactions*, Quebec, 1829– ; *Manuscripts relating to the Early History of Canada: Historical Documents*, 1838–

§ 46. Collected Works of American Statesmen

In this and the following section (§ 47) it has not been thought necessary to repeat the titles of the books on statesmen and worthies of the colonial period which have already been given under § 39. The letters and reports of the men of the earlier time are often to be found in monographs dealing with particular topics, in the proceedings and collections of learned societies, or built into biographies which tell their stories, as the phrase is, in the subject's "own words."

A

John Adams, *Works, with a Life of the Author, Notes, and Illustrations*. Edited by Charles Francis Adams. 10 vols. Boston, 1850–1856.

Samuel Adams, *Writings* (1764–1802). Edited by H. A. Cushing. 4 vols. N.Y., 1904–1908.

Fisher Ames, *Works, with a Selection from his Speeches and Correspondence*. Edited by Seth Ames. 2 vols. Boston, 1854.

B

Joel Barlow, *Political Writings*. N.Y., 1796.

George S. Boutwell, *Speeches and Papers relating to the Rebellion*. Boston, 1867.

William Bradford, *History of Plymouth Plantation*. Edited by Charles Deane. Boston, 1856; reprinted from Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 4th series, Vol. III.—Edited by W. T. Davis (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives of Early American History"), N.Y., 1908.

James Buchanan, *Works*. Edited by J. B. Moore. 12 vols. Phila., 1908–1911.

C

John C. Calhoun, *Correspondence.* (American Historical Association, *Report*, 1899, Vol. II.) Washington, 1900.

John C. Calhoun, *Works.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1853–1855.

Charles Carroll, *Unpublished Letters* (1754–1832). Edited by T. M. Field. (United States Catholic Historical Society, *Monograph Series*, I.) N.Y., 1902.

Rufus Choate, *Works.* 2 vols. Boston, 1862.

Henry Clay, *Works.* Edited by Colton. 6 vols. N.Y., 1863.

Henry Clay, *Works.* Edited by Colton, with introduction by T. B. Reed. 7 vols. N.Y., 1897. — Vol. VII is *A History of Tariff Legislation from 1812 to 1892*, by William McKinley.

Thomas Corwin, *Speeches.* Edited by Isaac Strohm. Dayton, 1859.

George William Curtis, *Orations and Addresses.* Edited by C. E. Norton. 3 vols. N.Y., 1894.

D

Silas Deane, *Deane Papers.* [Edited by Charles Isham.] (New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1886–1890.) 5 vols. N.Y., 1887–1891.

Daniel S. Dickinson, *Speeches, Correspondence,* etc. 2 vols. N.Y., 1867.

John Dickinson, *Political Writings.* 2 vols. Wilmington, 1801. — New edition: *Writings of John Dickinson.* Edited by P. L. Ford. (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, XIV.) Phila., 1895. Half-title, "Life and Writings of John Dickinson, Vol. II," Stillé's life of Dickinson being regarded as Vol. I.

John A. Dix, *Speeches and Occasional Addresses.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

E

Edward Everett, *Orations and Speeches on Various Occasions.* 4 vols. Boston, 1853–1868.

F

Millard Fillmore Papers. Edited by F. H. Severance. (Buffalo Historical Society, *Publications*, Vols. X, XI.) 2 vols. Buffalo, 1907.

[Benjamin Franklin.] *Calendar of . . . [his] Papers in the Library of the American Philosophical Society.* Edited by I. M. Hays. (American Philosophical Society, *Record of the Franklin Bicentennial Celebration*, Vols. II–VI.) 5 vols. Phila., 1908.

List of the Benjamin Franklin Papers in the Library of Congress. Edited by W. C. Ford. Washington, 1905.

Benjamin Franklin's Life and Writings: a Bibliographical Essay on the Stevens' Collection of Books and Manuscripts relating to Doctor Franklin. By Henry Stevens. London, 1881.

Benjamin Franklin, *Works in Philosophy, Politics, and Morals*, etc. Edited by W. T. Franklin. 6 vols. Phila., 1808–1818. — Vol. I bears the title, *Memoirs of the Life and Writings of Benjamin Franklin, written by himself.*

Benjamin Franklin, *Works . . . with Notes and a Life of the Author.* Edited by Jared Sparks. 10 vols. Boston, 1836–1840.

Benjamin Franklin, *Complete Works.* Edited by John Bigelow. 10 vols. N.Y., 1887–1888.

Benjamin Franklin, *Writings.* Edited by A. H. Smyth. 10 vols. N.Y., 1905–1907.

G

James A. Garfield, *Works.* Edited by B. A. Hinsdale. 2 vols. Boston, 1882–1883.

Albert Gallatin, *Writings.* Edited by Henry Adams. 3 vols. Phila., 1879.

Joshua R. Giddings, *Speeches in Congress.* Boston, 1853.

H

Alexander Hamilton, *Works, comprising his Correspondence.* Edited by John C. Hamilton. 7 vols. N.Y., 1850–1851.

Alexander Hamilton, *Works.* Edited by H. C. Lodge. 9 vols. N.Y., 1885–1886.

Thomas Hutchinson, *Diary and Letters.* Edited by P. O. Hutchinson. 2 vols. Boston, 1884–1886.

I

Ralph Izard, *Correspondence, 1774–1804.* Vol. I. N.Y., 1844.

J

Andrew Jackson, *The Statesmanship of . . ., as told in his Writings and Speeches.* Edited by F. N. Thorpe. N.Y., 1909.

John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers.* Edited by H. P. Johnston. 4 vols. N.Y., 1890–1893.

William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery.* Boston, 1853.

[Thomas Jefferson.] *Bibliotheca Jeffersoniana: a List of Books written by or relating to Thomas Jefferson.* Compiled by H. B. Tompkins. N.Y., 1887.

Thomas Jefferson, *Writings . . . being his Autobiography, Correspondence . . . and other Writings. . . .* Edited by H. A. Washington.

9 vols. Washington, 1853–1854. — Often called the "Congress edition."

Thomas Jefferson, *Writings*. Edited by P. L. Ford. 10 vols. N.Y., 1892–1899.

L

Amos Lawrence, *Extracts from . . . [his] Diary and Correspondence*. Edited by W. R. Lawrence. Boston, 1855.

R. H. Lee, *Letters*. Edited by J. C. Ballagh. Vol. I (1762–1778). N.Y., 1911.

William Lee, *Letters, 1766–1783*. Edited by W. C. Ford. 3 vols. Brooklyn, 1891.

Hugh S. Legaré, *Writings*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1846.

William Leggett, *A Collection of Political Writings*. Selected and arranged by Theodore Sedgwick, Jr. 2 vols. N.Y., 1840.

Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*. Edited by John G. Nicolay and John Hay. 2 vols. N.Y., 1894; reprinted, 1902. — New and enlarged ("Biographical") edition, with a general introduction by R. W. Gilder. 12 vols., N.Y., [copyright, 1905].

Abraham Lincoln, *Writings*. Edited by A. B. Lapsley, with an introduction by Theodore Roosevelt. Federal edition. 8 vols. N.Y., 1905–1906.

M

James Madison, *Papers . . . being his Correspondence and Reports of Debates*. Edited by Henry D. Gilpin. 3 vols. Washington, 1840.

James Madison, *Letters and other Writings*. 4 vols. Phila., 1865.

James Madison, *Writings*. Edited by Gaillard Hunt. 9 vols. N.Y., 1900–1910.

John Marshall, *Writings . . . upon the Federal Constitution*. Boston, 1839. — Reprints of important decisions of the Supreme Court.

[James Monroe.] *Calendar of . . . [his] Correspondence*. Department of State, [Washington, 1891].

[James Monroe.] *Papers, listed in Chronological Order from the Original Manuscripts in the Library of Congress*. Compiled by W. C. Ford. Washington, 1904.

James Monroe, *Writings*. Edited by S. M. Hamilton. 7 vols. N.Y., 1898–1903.

John L. Motley, *Correspondence*. Edited by G. W. Curtis. 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

P

Wendell Phillips, *Speeches, Lectures, and Letters*. Boston, 1863.

R

Theodore Roosevelt, *Addresses and Papers.* Edited by W. F. Johnson. N.Y., 1909.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Presidential Addresses and State Papers.* 4 vols. N.Y., [1905].

S

St. Clair Papers. — The Life and Public Services of Arthur St. Clair. Edited by W. H. Smith. 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1882.

John Sergeant, *Select Speeches.* Phila., 1832.

William H. Seward, *Works.* Edited by G. E. Baker. 5 vols. N.Y., 1853–1884. — Vols. IV, V, are "new edition."

John Sherman, *Selected Speeches and Reports.* N.Y., 1879.

Joseph Story, *Miscellaneous Writings.* Edited by W. W. Story. Boston, 1835.

Charles Sumner, *Works.* 15 vols. Boston, 1874–1883.

T

W. H. Taft, *Presidential Addresses and State Papers.* N.Y., 1910– .

Samuel J. Tilden, *Writings and Speeches.* Edited by John Bigelow. 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

V

C. L. Vallandigham, *Record on Abolition, the Union, and Civil Power.* Columbus, 1863.

W

[George Washington.] *Calendar of Washington Manuscripts in the Library of Congress.* Compiled by Herbert Friedenwald. Washington, 1901.

[George Washington.] *Calendar of the Correspondence of George Washington with the Continental Congress.* [Library of Congress, *Washington Papers,* I.] Washington, 1906.

George Washington, *Writings . . . being his Correspondence, Addresses, Messages, and other Papers, Official and Private.* Edited by Jared Sparks. 12 vols. Boston, 1837.

George Washington, *Writings.* Edited by W. C. Ford. 14 vols. N.Y., 1889.

George Washington, *Letters to several of his Friends in the Year 1776.* Printed, 1778; reprinted by W. C. Ford as *The Spurious Letters attributed to Washington,* Brooklyn, 1889.

George Washington, *Letters to Tobias Lear; with an Appendix containing miscellaneous Letters and Documents.* Rochester, 1905.

Washington-Irvine Correspondence (1781–1783). Edited by C. W. Butterfield. Madison, 1882.

Wills of George Washington and his Immediate Ancestors. Edited by W. C. Ford. Brooklyn, 1891.

Letters to Washington and Accompanying Papers (1752–1775). Edited by S. M. Hamilton. 5 vols. Society of the Colonial Dames of America, Boston, 1898–1902.

Correspondence of the American Revolution; being Letters of Eminent Men to George Washington. Edited by Jared Sparks. 4 vols. Boston, 1853.

Daniel Webster, *Letters.* Edited by C. H. Van Tyne. N.Y., 1902.

Daniel Webster, *Works.* [Edited by Edward Everett.] 6 vols. Boston, 1851.

Daniel Webster, *Private Correspondence.* Edited by Fletcher Webster. 2 vols. Boston, 1857.

Noah Webster, *Collection of Essays and Fugitive Writings.* Boston, 1790.

James Wilson, *Works.* Published under direction of Bird Wilson. 3 vols. Phila., 1804.

John Winthrop, *History of New England.* Edited by James Savage. 2 vols. Boston, 1825–1826; new edition, 1853. — Edited by J. K. Hosmer (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives of Early American History"). 2 vols. N.Y., 1908.

John Winthrop, *Life and Letters.* Edited by R. C. Winthrop. 2 vols. Boston, 1864; also 1867.

R. C. Winthrop, *Addresses and Speeches on Various Occasions.* 4 vols. Boston, 1852–1886.

John Witherspoon, *Works.* 4 vols. Phila., 1802.

Levi Woodbury, *Writings . . . Political, Judicial, and Literary.* 3 vols. Boston, 1852.

§ 47. Autobiographies and Reminiscences

The collected writings of statesmen include not only correspondence, but in many cases personal memoranda and occasionally an autobiography. There is also a literature including in part diaries made from day to day, and in part reminiscences put together late in life, and to a considerable degree based upon memory. The value of this material depends upon the

accuracy of the recollections of fallible individuals. In the following works the difficulties and pitfalls of this type of sources are set forth :

E. L. Pierce, *Recollections as a Source of History* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d series, X, 473).

J. P. Quincy, *Limits of Reliable Memory* (*Ibid.*, XIV, 437).

Charles Francis Adams, in *Ibid.*, XIII, 177–197, XVII, 440–448, XVIII, 123–154; revised and restated on pp. 344–413 of his *Studies, Military and Diplomatic*, Boston, 1911.

A

Hannah Adams, *Memoir, written by herself.* Boston, 1832.

John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs; comprising Parts of his Diary from 1795 to 1848.* 12 vols. Phila., 1874–1877.

John Adams and Mrs. Abigail Adams, *Familiar Letters during the Revolution.* N.Y., 1876.

G. Allen, *Reminiscences.* Edited by F. P. Rice. Worcester, 1883.

Mary Clemmer Ames, *Ten Years in Washington.* Hartford, 1873.

B

Thomas Barclay, *Selections from . . . [his] Correspondence.* Edited by G. L. Rives. N.Y., 1894.

Adolphe de Bacourt, *Souvenirs d'un Diplomate: Lettres intimes sur l'Amérique.* Paris, 1882.

Lyman Beecher, *Autobiography, Correspondence*, etc. Edited by Charles Beecher. 2 vols. London, 1863–1865.

[Thomas Hart Benton], *Thirty Years' View, or a History of the Working of the American Government for Thirty Years, from 1820 to 1850.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1854–1856.

John Bernard, *Retrospections of America, 1797–1811.* N.Y., 1887.

Charles Biddle, *Autobiography, 1745–1821.* [Edited by James S. Biddle.] Phila., 1883.

John Bigelow, *Retrospections of an Active Life.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1909.

John Binns, *Recollections of his Life, written by himself.* Phila., 1854.

James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress* (1860–1880). 2 vols. Norwich, Conn., 1884–1886.

Timothy Boardman, *Log-Book . . . kept on Board the Privateer Oliver Cromwell, during a Cruise from New London, Ct., to Charleston, S.C., and Return, in 1778.* Rutland County Historical Society, Albany, 1885.

Jeriah Bonham, *Fifty Years' Recollections* [in Illinois]. Peoria, 1883.

Noah Brooks, *Washington in Lincoln's Time.* N.Y., 1895.

[James Buchanan.] *Mr. Buchanan's Administration on the Eve of the Rebellion.* N.Y., 1866.

J. T. Buckingham, *Specimens of Newspaper Literature with Personal Memoirs.* Boston, 1850.

Aaron Burr, *Private Journal during his Residence of Four Years in Europe.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1838.

Aaron Burr, *Private Journal, reprinted in full from the Original Manuscript in the Library of Mr. William K. Bixby of St. Louis, Mo.* 2 vols. Rochester, N.Y., 1903.

C

F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House with Abraham Lincoln.* N.Y., 1866.

Lucius E. Chittenden, *Personal Reminiscences, 1840 to 1890, including some not hitherto published of Lincoln and the War.* N.Y., 1893.

J. F. H. Claiborne, *Life and Times of Gen. Sam. Dale.* N.Y., 1860.

James Freeman Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days.* N.Y., 1884.

Cassius Marcellus Clay, *Life, Memoirs, Writings, and Speeches.* Vol. I. Cincinnati, 1886.

S. L. Clemens, *Life on the Mississippi.* Boston, 1883. — The earlier *Old Times on the Mississippi* is incorporated in this. Various later editions.

[Levi Coffin.] *Reminiscences of Levi Coffin, the Reputed President of the Underground Railroad.* Cincinnati, 1880.

C. T. Congdon, *Reminiscences of a Journalist.* Boston, 1880.

Jacob Dolson Cox, *Military Reminiscences of the Civil War.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1900.

Samuel Sullivan Cox, *Union — Disunion — Reunion: Three Decades of Federal Legislation, 1855 to 1885.* Providence, 1885.

David Crockett, *Col. Crockett's Exploits and Adventures in Texas.* Phila., 1836.

Samuel Curwen, *Journal and Letters . . . from 1775 to 1784.* Edited by G. A. Ward. N.Y., 1842. — Later editions with some change in title.

James Madison Cutts, *Brief Treatise upon Constitutional and Party Questions, and the History of Political Parties, as received orally from the late Stephen A. Douglas.* N.Y., 1866.

D

C. A. Dana, *Recollections of the Civil War.* N.Y., 1898.

John F. Darby, *Personal Recollections.* St. Louis, 1880.

Reuben Davis, *Recollections of Mississippi and Mississippians.* Boston, 1891.

J. B. Derby, *Political Reminiscences.* Boston, 1835.

Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times . . . written by himself.* Hartford, 1881.

E

Peter Edes, *Diary* (June 19–October 3, 1775). Bangor, 1837. — Reprinted by Samuel L. Boardman in his *Peter Edes, Pioneer Printer in Maine*, 85–109. Bangor, 1901.

F

P. V. Fithian, *Journal and Letters, 1767–1774.* Princeton, 1900.

J. W. Forney, *Anecdotes of Public Men.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1873–1881.

Benjamin Franklin, *Autobiography, edited from his Manuscripts.* Edited by John Bigelow. Phila., 1868. — Also many earlier editions under title of *Life, Memoirs*, etc.

Benjamin Franklin, *Life . . . written by himself.* Edited by John Bigelow. 3 vols. Phila., 1875.

John Charles Frémont, *Memoirs of my Life.* Vol. I. Chicago, 1887. — No more published.

Daniel Lee and John H. Frost, *Ten Years in Oregon.* N.Y., 1844.

G

Alexander Garden, *Anecdotes of the Revolutionary War, with Sketches of Character of Distinguished Persons.* Charleston, 1822; 2d series, 1828. — New edition: *Anecdotes of the American Revolution.* [Edited by T. W. Field.] 3 vols. Brooklyn, 1865.

Caroline Gilman, *Recollections of a New England Bride and of a Southern Matron.* N.Y., 1852.

L. A. Gobright, *Recollection of Men and Things at Washington during a Third of a Century.* Phila., 1869.

S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime, or Men and Things I have Seen.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1856.

E. W. Gould, *Fifty Years on the Mississippi, or Gould's History of River Navigation.* St. Louis, 1889.

Anne McVickar Grant, *Memoirs of an American Lady* [Madame Margarita Schuyler]. London, 1808.

Ulysses S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1886. — New edition, revised, 1895.

Asa Gray, *Letters.* Edited by Jane Loring Gray. 2 vols. Boston, 1893.

Alexander Graydon, *Memoirs of his own Time, with Reminiscences of the Men and Events of the Revolution.* Edited by J. S. Littell. Phila., 1846.

Horace Greeley, *Recollections of a Busy Life.* N.Y., 1868.

Josiah B. Grinnell, *Men and Events of Forty Years* (1850–1890). Boston, [copyright, 1891]. — Relates mainly to events in Iowa.

H

S. C. Hall, *Retrospect of a Long Life.* N.Y., 1883.

James A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences . . . or Men and Events at Home and Abroad.* N.Y., 1869.

Winfield Scott Hancock, *Reminiscences of, by his Wife.* N.Y., 1887.

Col. George Hanger, *Life, Adventures, and Opinions; written by himself.* 2 vols. London, 1801.

Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences and Anecdotes of Daniel Webster.* Boston, 1877.

[William] Heath, *Memoirs, containing Anecdotes, Details of Skirmishes, Battles, and other Military Events during the American War. Written by himself.* Boston, 1798. — New edition, edited by William Abbott, N.Y., 1901.

George F. Hoar, *Autobiography of Seventy Years.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1903.

Philip Hone, *Diary, 1828–1851.* Edited by Bayard Tuckerman. 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

O. O. Howard, *Autobiography.* 2 vols. 1907.

Samuel Gridley Howe, *Letters and Journals.* Edited by Laura E. Richards. 2 vols. Boston, [copyright, 1909]. — Vol. II deals with his life as the "servant of humanity."

J

Thomas Jefferson, *The Anas.* (In his *Writings*, Congress edition, Vol. IX.) Washington, 1854.

Joseph E. Johnston, *Narrative of Military Operations during the Late War between the States.* N.Y., 1874.

Joseph Jones (of Virginia), *Letters, 1777–1787.* [Edited by W. C. Ford.] Washington, 1889.

G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections, 1840–1872.* Chicago, 1884.

K

Friedrich Kapp, *Aus und über Amerika: Thatsachen und Erlebnisse.* Vol. I. Berlin, 1876.

Frances Ann Kemble, *Records of a Girlhood.* N.Y., 1879.

Frances Ann Kemble, *Records of Later Life.* 3 vols. London, 1882.

Amos Kendall, *Autobiography.* Edited by W. Stickney. Boston, 1872.

E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation of Men and Events, Civil and Military.* N.Y., 1885.

L

Richard Lathers, *Reminiscences: Sixty Years of a Busy Life in South Carolina, Massachusetts, and New York.* Edited by A. F. Sanborn. N.Y., 1907.

Lucius P. Little, *Ben Hardin: his Times and Contemporaries.* Louisville, 1887.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, *Final Memorials of.* Edited by Samuel Longfellow. Boston, 1887. — Letters, journals, etc.

J. R. Lowell, *Letters.* Edited by C. E. Norton. 2 vols. N.Y., 1894.

M

George B. McClellan, *McClellan's Own Story.* N.Y., 1887.

A. K. McClure, *Abraham Lincoln and Men of War-Times.* Phila., 1892.

Hugh McCulloch, *Men and Measures of Half a Century: Sketches and Comments.* N.Y., 1888.

William Maclay, *Journal.* Edited by Edgar S. Maclay. N.Y., 1890.

[Dorothy Madison.] *Memoirs and Letters of Dolly Madison, Wife of James Madison.* Boston, 1886.

Edward Deering Mansfield, *Personal Memories, Social, Political, and Literary, 1803–1843.* Cincinnati, 1879.

Charles W. March, *Reminiscences of Congress.* N.Y., 1850.

Christopher Marshall, *Passages from his Diary.* Edited by Wm. Duane, Jr. Vol. I, 1774–1777. Phila., 1839–1849.

Samuel Joseph May, *Memoirs: consisting of Autobiography and Selections from his Diary and Correspondence.* Boston, 1873.

Samuel Joseph May, *Some Recollections of our Anti-Slavery Conflict.* Boston, 1869.

Robert Mayo, *Political Sketches of Eight Years in Washington.* Baltimore, 1839.

Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters.* Edited by Anne C. Morris. 2 vols. N.Y., 1888.

Artemas B. Muzzey, *Reminiscences and Memorials of Men of the Revolution and their Families.* Boston, 1883.

N

Wallis Nash, *Two Years in Oregon.* N.Y., 1882.

P

T. N. Page, *The Old South: Essays, Social and Political.* N.Y., 1892.

J. K. Polk, *Diary.* 4 vols. Chicago, 1910.

Benjamin Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences of Sixty Years in the National Metropolis.* 2 vols. Phila., 1886.

[Lydia Minturn Post], *Personal Recollections of the American Revolution: a Private Journal.* Edited by Sidney Barclay. N.Y., 1859.

William Pynchon, *Diary: a Picture of Salem Life . . . a Century ago.* Edited by F. E. Oliver. Boston, 1890.

Q

Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past from the Leaves of Old Journals.* Boston, 1883.

R

John Randolph, *Letters to a Young Relative.* Phila., 1834.

A. T. Rice, editor, *Reminiscences of Abraham Lincoln, by Distinguished Men of his Time.* N.Y., 1886.

A. G. Riddle, *Recollections of War Times.* N.Y., 1895.

Frederika [Baroness von] Riedesel, *Die Berufs-Reise nach Amerika.* Berlin, 1800.

Frederika [Baroness von] Riedesel, *Letters and Memoirs relating to the War of American Independence, and the Capture of the German Troops at Saratoga.* Translated by Jules Wallenstein. N.Y., 1827.

Frederika [Baroness von] Riedesel, *Letters and Journals relating to the War of the American Revolution, and the Capture of the German Troops at Saratoga.* Translated by William Leete Stone. Albany, 1867.

Major-General [Friederick Adolphus] Riedesel, *Memoirs, and Letters and Journals, during his Residence in America.* Translated from the original German of Max von Eelking by William Leete Stone. 2 vols. Albany, 1868.

Richard Rush, *Memoranda of a Residence at the Court of London* (1817–1819). Phila., 1833.—*Memoranda*, etc. (1819–1825). Phila., 1845.

Lord John Russell, *Recollections and Suggestions.* London, 1875.

S

Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events* (1817–1853). 2 vols. Phila., 1875.

Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences* (1829–1869). 3 vols. N.Y., 1907–1908. — Vol. III contains also a sketch of his political career, 1869–1896, by Frederic Bancroft and W. A. Dunning.

Winfield Scott, *Memoirs*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

Samuel Sewall, *Diary* (1674–1729). 3 vols. (Massachussetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 5th series, Vols. V–VII.) Boston, 1878–1882.

William H. Seward, *Autobiography, from 1801 to 1834, with a Memoir of his Life*. N.Y., 1877.

Andrew Sherburne, *Memoirs*. Utica, 1828.

Philip H. Sheridan, *Personal Memoirs*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1888.

John Sherman, *Recollections of Forty Years in House, Senate, and Cabinet*. N.Y., 1895.

John Sherman and W. T. Sherman, *Letters*. Edited by Rachel Sherman Thorndike. N.Y., 1894.

W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs. By himself*. 2d ed. 2 vols. N.Y., 1886.

W. T. Sherman, *Home Letters*. Edited by M. A. DeWolfe Howe. N.Y., 1909.

Mrs. Samuel H. Smith, *Forty Years of Washington Society, portrayed by Family Letters* (1800–1842). Edited by Gaillard Hunt. London, 1906.

W. H. Sparks, *Memories of 50 Years*. Phila., 1870.

H. B. Stanton, *Random Recollections*. N.Y., 1886.

William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters on Public Characters*. Boston, 1834.

T

James Thacher, *Military Journal during the American Revolutionary War, from 1775 to 1783*. Boston, 1823.— An appendix contains "Biographical Sketches" of several officers.

Ebenezer S. Thomas, *Reminiscences of the last Sixty-five Years, commencing with the Battle of Lexington; also Sketches of his own Life and Times*. 2 vols. Hartford, 1840.

Richard W. Thompson, *Recollections of Sixteen Presidents* (1789–1865). 2 vols. Indianapolis, 1894.

John Trumbull, *Autobiography, Reminiscences, and Letters, from 1756 to 1841*. N.Y., 1841.

V

[Thomas Vernon.] *Diary of Thomas Vernon, a Loyalist banished from Newport by the Rhode Island General Assembly in 1776*. (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 13.) Providence, 1881.

W

George Washington, *Journal of my Journey over the Mountains . . in 1747–8*. Edited by J. M. Toner. Albany, 1892.

George Washington, *Itinerary from June 15, 1775, to December 23, 1783*. Edited by W. S. Baker. Phila., 1892.

Washington after the Revolution, 1784–1799. Edited by W. S. Baker. Phila., 1898. — A "sequel" to the *Itinerary*. Both volumes consist of excerpts from contemporary letters, diaries, etc.

Samuel Blackley Webb, *Correspondence and Journals* (1772–1806). Edited by W. C. Ford. 3 vols. N.Y., 1893–1894.

Thurlow Weed, *Autobiography*. Edited by H. A. Weed. Boston, 1884.

Gideon Welles, *Diary*. Introduction by J. T. Morse, Jr. 3 vols. Boston, 1911.

John Wentworth, *Congressional Reminiscences — Adams, Benton, Clay, Calhoun, and Webster*. (Fergus Historical series, No. 24.) Chicago, 1882.

Henry G. Wheeler, *History of Congress, Biographical and Political*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1848.

Andrew D. White, *Autobiography*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1905.

James Wilkinson, *Memoirs of my own Times*. 3 vols. Phila., 1816.

Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades of the Union*. Phila., 1876.

C. J. Wood, *Reminiscences of the War*. [No place, no date.]

John Woolman, *Journal*. Phila., 1774. — Here first published as Vol. I of *Works*. Various later editions, especially that edited by J. G. Whittier, Boston, 1873.

[David Zeisberger.] *Diary of David Zeisberger, a Moravian Missionary among the Indians of Ohio*. Translated and edited by Eugene F. Bliss. 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1885.

§ 48. Unofficial Collections of Narratives, Documents, and Speeches

Besides the official collections of documents and published records (§ 44) individual editors and compilers and learned societies have made numerous collections of a documentary kind. In the older publications of this kind the texts are usually not carefully compared with the originals, so that the texts vary very much in value.

A

Henry Adams, *Documents relating to New England Federalism, 1800–1815*. Boston, 1877.

H. V. Ames, *State Documents on Federal Relations* (1789–1861). N.Y., 1907. — Issued originally in six parts, 1900–1906.

Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia. (See § 27.)

B

C. E. Boyd, *Cases on American Constitutional Law.* 2d. ed. Chicago, 1907.

C

H. W. Caldwell, *American Territorial Development.* Chicago, 1900.

H. W. Caldwell, *Survey of American History.* Chicago, 1900.

H. W. Caldwell, *Great American Legislators.* Chicago, 1900.

H. W. Caldwell, *American History: Unification, Expansion.* Chicago, 1900. — Reprint of two of the above volumes.

C. W. Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History.* London, 1899.

J. R. Commons and others, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society.* 10 vols. Cleveland, 1910–1911.

T. V. Cooper and H. T. Fenton, *American Politics (Non-Partisan) from the Beginning to Date.* 7 "books" in one vol. Phila., 1882.

E

C. W. Eliot, *American Historical Documents, 1000–1904.* (The Harvard Classics.) N.Y., [1910].

F

Max Farrand, *Records of the Federal Convention of 1787.* 3 vols. New Haven, 1911.

W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction . . . 1865 to the Present Time.* 2 vols. Cleveland, 1906–1907.

Peter Force, *Tracts and other Papers relating principally to the . . . Colonies in North America.* 4 vols. Washington, 1836–1846.

G

Gorges Society, [*Publications*]. 5 vols. Portland, 1884–1893. — Reprints in New England history; no general title.

H

Hakluyt Society, *Works issued by the . . . Society.* London. — The first number was issued in 1847. Since that time more than one hundred volumes have been published under different editorships.

A. B. Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1897–1901.

A. B. Hart, *Source Book of American History.* N.Y., 1899.

A. B. Hart, *Source Readers in American History.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1902–1903. — The texts are modernized.

A. B. Hart and E. Channing, *American History Leaflets.* N.Y., 1892– . — In progress; 36 nos. to 1911.

F. L. Hawks and W. S. Perry, *Documentary History of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, containing numerous documents concerning the Church in Connecticut.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1863–1864.

Ebenezer Hazard, *Historical Collections; consisting of State Papers and other Authentic Documents.* 2 vols. Phila., 1792–1794.

T. W. Higginson, *Book of American Explorers.* Boston, 1877.

Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents, with Contemporary Exposition and Critical Comments drawn from Various Writers.* N.Y., 1901.

J

Alexander Johnston and J. A. Woodburn, *American Orations: Studies in American Political History.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1896–1897.

K

Elizabeth Kendall, *Source-Book of English History.* N.Y., 1900.

M

Emlin McClain, *Selection of Cases on Constitutional Law.* Boston, 1900.

William MacDonald, *Select Charters and other Documents Illustrative of American History, 1606–1775.* N.Y., 1899; also 1904.

William MacDonald, *Select Documents Illustrative of the History of the United States, 1776–1861.* N.Y., 1898.

William MacDonald, *Select Statutes and other Documents Illustrative of the History of the United States, 1861–1898.* N.Y., 1903.

William MacDonald, *Documentary Source Book of American History, 1606–1898.* N.Y., 1908. — A condensation of the other three volumes.

T. H. McKee, *National Conventions and Platforms of all Political Parties, 1789 to 1904.* Baltimore, 1904.

Edward McPherson, *Political History of the United States of America during the Great Rebellion.* 2d ed. Washington, 1865.

Edward McPherson, *Political History of the United States of America during the Period of Reconstruction* [to 1870]. Washington, 1871.

Edward McPherson, *Handbook of Politics.* Washington, 1872–1894. — Biennial volumes, covering 1870–1894.

Edwin D. Mead, *Old South Leaflets, General Series.* 200 nos. Boston, [1888–1909].

Joel Munsell, *Historical Series.* 24 vols. Albany, 1857–1895.

N

Hezekiah Niles, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution in America.* Baltimore, 1822. — Reprinted, N.Y., 1876.

P

E. J. Payne, *Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen.* 2 vols. Oxford, 1893–1900.

William S. Perry, *Historical Collections relating to the American Colonial Church.* 5 vols. Hartford, 1870–1878. (Only 250 copies printed.) — Vol. I contains documents relating to Virginia; Vol. II, Pennsylvania; Vol. III, Massachusetts; Vol. IV, Maryland; Vol. V, Delaware. This publication contains papers drawn from English state papers not elsewhere accessible in print.

H. W. Preston, *Documents Illustrative of American History, 1606–1863.* N.Y., 1886.

Prince Society, *Publications.* (See § 45.)

R

James D. Richardson, *Compilation of the Messages and Papers of the Confederacy, including the Diplomatic Correspondence.* 2 vols. Nashville, 1905.

S

Erastus H. Scott. *The Federalist and other Constitutional Papers.* Chicago, 1894.

E. E. Sparks, *Lincoln-Douglas Debates of 1858.* (Illinois State Historical Library, *Collections*, Vol. III.) Springfield, Ill., 1908.

E. C. Stedman and Ellen M. Hutchinson, editors, *Library of American Literature, from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time.* 11 vols. New York, 1888–1890.

T

F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff.* Cambridge, 1893.

J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law, with Notes.* 2 vols. Cambridge, 1894–1895.

John Wingate Thornton, *The Pulpit of the American Revolution.* Boston, 1860.

W

Edwin Williams, *Statesman's Manual*. Enlarged edition. 4 vols. N.Y., 1854.

§ 49. Manuscript Sources

Mr. Winsor has devoted an important part of the general bibliographical appendix of the *Narrative and Critical History* (Vol. VIII, 413) to a list of the available collections of manuscripts. The State Department in Washington has the original documents of the Continental Congress, the Confederation, and the Federal Convention of 1787, with the manuscripts of the Declaration of Independence, the Articles of Confederation, and the Constitution. It has also the manuscript rolls of statutes and treaties made since 1789, and the valuable parts of the papers of Washington, Madison, Jefferson, Franklin, Monroe, Hamilton, and of the manuscripts collected, but not printed, by Peter Force.

Of the state archives those of Massachusetts may be mentioned as especially rich. The various state historical societies have in many cases valuable collections of family papers. Frequently, however, important sets of manuscripts have been scattered or destroyed for want of an appreciation of their value. The letters, and especially the diaries, of any person who has been in public life have a permanent value, and should be carefully preserved.

In the use of manuscript material great care must be taken to identify each piece, to ascertain its date, and to be sure that it was really written by the person to whom it is ascribed. In some cases there are two manuscript copies of a letter by the same hand, as in the famous letters of Washington, supposed, till the two originals were compared, to have been rewritten by his editor, Sparks. There will often be material discrepancies between the copy of a letter as preserved in a "letter-book" and the letter actually sent.

The following works are serviceable avenues of approach to the enormous mass of archive material which is now being made available:

Public Archives Commission, *Reports*, in American Historical Association, *Annual Reports*, 1900– .

Historical Manuscript Commission, *Reports*, in *Ibid.*, 1896– .

Carnegie Institution: Bureau of Historical Research, *Reports*, as follows, in addition to reports in press or in preparation on American material in Canadian, French, British (1783–1860), and other Spanish Archives, and on territorial papers in the federal archives:

W. H. Allison, *Inventory of Unpublished Materials for American Religious History*. Washington, 1911.

C. M. Andrews and Frances G. Davenport, *Guide to the Manuscript Materials for the History of the United States to 1783, in the British Museum [and other Depositories]*. Washington, 1908.

C. R. Fish, *Guide to the Materials for American History in Roman and other Italian Archives*. Washington, 1911.

L. M. Pérez, *Guide to the Materials for American History in Cuban Archives*. Washington, 1907.

J. A. Robertson, *List of Documents in Spanish Archives . . . of which Transcripts are preserved in American Libraries*. Washington, 1910.

W. R. Shepherd, *Guide to the Materials for the History of the United States in Spanish Archives*. Washington, 1907.

The Library of Congress has issued calendars of its Washington, John Paul Jones, Van Buren, and Revolutionary Naval papers; and the Department of State has published calendars of Jefferson's and Madison's correspondence.

The reports of the British Historical Manuscript Commission (§ 42) contain much material on American History, a partial index to which may be found in American Historical Association, *Report* for 1898, pp. 611–708.

CHAPTER VIII

ILLUSTRATIVE WORKS

§ 50. Illustrative Material

HISTORICAL events and movements are frequently fixed in the memory by the perusal of books which may be inaccurate in themselves, especially as to details, but which nevertheless leave a permanent and reasonably correct impression on the mind of the reader. Thus Keats's famous sonnet, in which he made the conqueror of Mexico discover the Pacific Ocean, could not well be less in accordance with the historical fact; but it enforces the charm of discovery more intensely than the reading of many original letters and reports could do. There are critics, however, who think that when, as in this case, the facts are well known and easily to be discovered, it is the business of the story-teller or verse-maker to know what actually happened sufficiently well to make the historical basis of his story reasonably accurate. A famous American writer once said that the poet was indebted to history for the general facts only, around which he could build up his own imaginative work. Perhaps it is true that the novel-writer or the poet produces the best and truest work when, unhampered by the details of the real story, he aims to create only a general impression which shall be true to the general trend of history. Contrary to what Bradford says, Mrs. Austin carries the *Mayflower's* shallop into a cove in Clark's Island; the plan of the story, the author has said, made it necessary for the boat to be at that particular place at the precise moment, and the spirit of the explorers is not affected by the deviation. Longfellow's *Miles Standish* would be painfully inaccurate and anachronistic as history; but the poet adds a man to our affectionate acquaintance. Just how far it is safe to accept a picture of which the details are not true to the time — whether the "general reader" of Mrs.

Austin's tale or of Longfellow's poem gains a truer and more lasting impression of the spirit of Pilgrim colonization than he would obtain from Doyle, or Bancroft, or still better from Bradford's epic itself — is a question which the authors of the *Guide* do not answer. Certain it is that for all pupils and students of American history such books are useful in connection with accurate textbooks, with other secondary accounts, and especially as adjuncts to a moderate use of the sources which tell the same tales more simply.

In the following lists of novels and poems no attempt is made to separate the works based on sound study from those which may justly be classed with fiction; they are all named as additional and subordinate illustrative material. Nor can the lists claim to be complete; the principle of choice is to give at least examples of those standard authors who have woven out of American history, and to add some books from obscure writers which are known to have given pleasure or to have aroused interest. Other titles may be found in the seven works noted in § 51, especially in the *Chronological Index* issued by the Boston Public Library; the third edition, printed under the editorship of Mr. Whitney, is the more complete; the earlier editions, prepared by Mr. Winsor, are likely to be the more useful. In these publications, novels, poems, and ballads are grouped together under the head of "fiction."

§ 51. Historical Novels

William F. Allen, *Reader's Guide to English History.* Revised edition, Supplement, pp. 48–49. Boston, 1883. — A short list of American historical novels.

Ernest A. Baker, *Descriptive Guide to the Best Fiction.* N.Y., 1903. — "Historical Appendix" at pp. 455–463.

Ernest A. Baker, *History in Fiction.* 2 vols. London, [1907]. — American fiction, II, 1–56.

W. M. Griswold, compiler, *Descriptive List of Novels and Tales dealing with the History of North America.* Cambridge, 1895.

Jonathan Nield, *Guide to the Best Historical Novels and Tales.* 3d ed. N.Y., 1904.

Selden L. Whitcomb, *Chronological Outlines of American Literature.* N.Y., 1894.

[Justin Winsor], *Chronological Index to Historical Fiction.* 2d ed. Boston, 1875. — 3d ed., prepared by James L. Whitney (Boston Public Library, *Bulletin,* X, 298; XI, 42, 131, 234: 1892).

A

L. M. Alcott (1832–1888), *Hospital Sketches* (Civil War).

T. B. Aldrich (1836–1907), *Prudence Palfrey* (life in Portsmouth, N.H.).

J. L. Allen (1848–), *The Choir Invisible* (early Kentucky); *Kentucky Cardinal* (manners about 1850).

J. A. Altsheler (1862–), *Herald of the West* (War of 1812).

Jane Goodwin Austin (1831–1894), *Standish of Standish; Betty Alden; A Nameless Nobleman; Dr. Le Baron and his Daughters; David Alden's Daughter* (all stories of life in the "Old" Colony of New Plymouth); *Dora Darling* (Civil War).

B

Hugh Henry Brackenridge (1748–1816), *Modern Chivalry* (Whiskey Insurrection).

C. Brockden Brown (1771–1810), *Arthur Mervyn.*

Frances Hodgson Burnett (1849–), *Through One Administration.* N.Y., 1886.

Edwin Lassetter Bynner (1842–1893), *Agnes Surriage* (story of New England); *Zachary Phips* (adventures of a Boston lad, especially in connection with Burr's conspiracy); *Penelope's Suitors* (Massachusetts, seventeenth century); *The Begum's Daughter* (Leisler's revolt).

C

G. W. Cable (1844–), *Old Creole Days; The Grandissimes, a Tale of Creole Life; Strange True Stories of Louisiana; Bonaventure, a Prose Pastoral of Acadian Louisiana; The Cavalier* (Civil War from the Confederate point of view).

William Caruthers (1806–1872), *Cavaliers of Virginia* (middle of the seventeenth century); *Knights of the Horseshoe* (early part of the eighteenth century).

Mary H. Catherwood (1847–1902), *Story of Tonty* (La Salle); *Romance of Dollard* (French Canada).

Harriet V. (Foster) Cheney (b. about 1815), *A Peep at the Pilgrims in Sixteen Hundred Thirty-six.*

Lydia Maria Child (1802–1880), *Hobomok* (New Plymouth Colony); *The Rebels, or Boston before the Revolution.*

Winston Churchill (1871–), *Richard Carvel* (Maryland, eighteenth

century); *The Crossing* (Louisiana following the purchase, and Mississippi); *Coniston* (boss system in New Hampshire before Civil War); *The Crisis* (Civil War, Lincoln, Sherman, Grant, etc.); *Mr. Crewe's Career* (politics in New Hampshire).

S. L. Clemens (Mark Twain: 1835–1910), *Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* (Southern Mississippi Valley before the Civil War).

C. C. Coffin (1823–1896), *Winning his Way* (Civil War).

J. E. Cooke (1830–1886), *My Lady Pokahontas; Virginia Comedians; The Youth of Jefferson; Fairfax; Doctor Vandyke* (all tales of life in Virginia in the quarter century preceding the Revolution); *Bonnybel Vane, embracing the History of Henry St. John, Gentleman* (Revolutionary epoch); *Leather Stocking and Silk* (a story of the Valley of Virginia, about 1800); *Justin Harley, a Romance of Old Virginia; Stories of the Old Dominion; Hilt to Hilt; Mohun; Wearing of the Gray* (the last three are stories of the Civil War from a Southern point of view).

J. F. Cooper (1789–1851), *Mercedes of Castile* (Columbus); *Water Witch* (New York after the English conquest); *Satanstoe* (New York country life in the eighteenth century); *The Red Rover* (Newport and the slave trade); *Leather-Stocking Tales* (the Indians in New York and the West); *Lionel Lincoln* (siege of Boston); *The Pilot* (Paul Jones); *The Spy* (Revolutionary epoch); *The Two Admirals* (middle of eighteenth century).

C. E. Craddock. See Murfree.

Stephen Crane (1871–1909), *Wounds in the Rain* (Spanish War).

D

Charles A. Davis (1795–1867), *Letters of J. Downing, Major* (Jackson's administration).

Samuel A. Drake (1798–1875), *A Book of New England Legends and Folk-lore in Prose and Poetry.*

E

Edward Eggleston (1837–1902), *The Circuit Rider*, and *The Hoosier Schoolmaster*, and *The Graysons* (pioneer life in the West).

G. C. Eggleston (1839–1911), *A Man of Honor* (Virginia since the Civil War).

F

P. L. Ford, *Janice Meredith* (Revolution).

Harold Frederic (1857–1898), *In the Valley* (Revolution, Mohawk Valley).

Alice French (Octave Thanet: 1850–), *Expiation* (Arkansas at close of Civil War).

G

Hamlin Garland (1860–), *A Little Norsk* (Western farm life).

Charles É. A. Gayarré (1805–1895), *Aubert Dubayet* (France and the United States, 1780–1797).

Caroline Gilman (1794–1888), *Recollections of a New England Housekeeper* (1835).

A. C. Gordon (1855–), *Gift of the Morning Star* (Shenandoah Valley).

H

E. E. Hale (1822–1909), *The Man without a Country*, and *Philip Nolan's Friends* (Burr's conspiracy); *Mrs. Merriam's Scholars* (the Freedmen); *East and West* (settlement of Ohio).

Thomas C. Haliburton (1797–1865), *The Clockmaker: Sayings and Doings of Samuel Slick of Slickville.*

Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin* (Nantucket life, early nineteenth century).

Francis Bret Harte (1839–1902), *Thankful Blossom; a Story of the Jerseys* (1779).

Nathaniel Hawthorne (1804–1864), *The Maypole of Merrymount; Grandfather's Chair; Legends of New England; Legends of the Province House; Liberty Tree; The Scarlet Letter; Twice Told Tales* (all of them stories of the Massachusetts Bay Colony); *Septimius Felton* (Massachusetts, 1775); *Blithedale Romance* (Brook Farm); *House of the Seven Gables.*

Richard Hildreth (1807–1865), *The Slave, or the Memoirs of Archy Moore.* 2 vols. Boston, 1836.

J. G. Holland (1819–1881), *Bay-Path, a Tale of New England Colonial Life.*

Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809–1894), *Grandmother's Story of the Battle of Bunker Hill; Elsie Venner.*

W. D. Howells (1837–), *A Boy's Town* (Ohio before the Civil War).

I

Washington Irving (1783–1859), *Knickerbocker's History of New York.*

J

Helen Hunt Jackson (1831–1885), *Ramona* (the Indians in later days); *Mercy Philbrick's Choice* (American life).

Mary Johnston (1876–), *Prisoners of Hope; To Have and to Hold; Audrey* (all stories of Old Virginia); *Lewis Rand* (Burr's conspiracy); *The Long Roll* (Stonewall Jackson).

Richard M. Johnston (1822–1898), *Mr. Absalom Billingslea and other Georgia Folks; Georgia Sketches; The Primes and their Neighbors; Old Times in Middle Georgia.*

Sylvester Judd (1813–1853), *Margaret* (New England village life, early nineteenth century).

K

J. P. Kennedy (1795–1870), *Swallow Barn* (life in Virginia about 1800); *Rob of the Bowl* (Maryland in colonial times); *Horseshoe Robinson* (Tories in the South).

Charles King (1844–), *Colonel's Daughter* (army life on the plains).

Grace King (1852–), *Monsieur Motte; Tales of a Time and Place* (stories of Louisiana life).

Charles Kingsley (1819–1875), *Westward Ho! or, The Voyages and Adventures of Sir Amyas Leigh* (West Indies, time of Elizabeth).

Lucy Larcom (1826–1893), *A New England Girlhood.*

Emma Leslie, *Saxby* (Puritans in England and America).

Augustus B. Longstreet (1790–1870), *Georgia Scenes in the First Half-Century of the Republic.*

M

James De Mille (1837–1880), *The Lily and the Cross* (Acadia).

Silas Weir Mitchell (1829–), *In War Times*, and *Roland Blake* (stories of the Civil War); *Hugh Wynne* (Revolutionary times).

John L. Motley (1814–1877), *Merry-Mount, a Romance of the Massachusetts Colony* (early period). 2 vols. (in one).

Mary N. Murfree (C. E. Craddock: 1850–), *Story of Old Fort Loudoun* (Southern frontier, 1758); *Despot of Broomsedge Cove* (Tennessee Mountaineers).

P

Thomas Nelson Page (1853–), *Among the Camps*, and *In Ole Virginia* (Civil War in the South); *Red Rock* (Reconstruction period).

Sir Gilbert Parker (1859–), *Seats of the Mighty* (French and Indian War).

Francis Parkman (1823–1893), *Vassall Morton* (New England life).

James K. Paulding (1779–1860), *Koningsmarke* (Swedes on the Delaware); *The Dutchman's Fireside*, and *Book of St. Nicholas* (New York life); *The Old Continental, or the Price of Liberty; Westward Ho!* (settlement of Kentucky); *The Diverting History of John Bull and Brother Jonathan* (years preceding the war of 1812); *The Lay of the Scottish Fiddle* (British in the Chesapeake).

R

A. G. Riddle (1816–1902), *Bart Ridgeley, a Story of Northern Ohio.*

E. P. Roe (1838–1888), *Near to Nature's Heart* (Washington and Arnold); *An Original Belle; His Sombre Rivals; Miss Lou* (all stories of the Civil War).

S

H. E. Scudder (1838–1902) *Stories and Romances* (some of them relate to American history).

Catherine Maria Sedgwick (1789–1867), *Hope Leslie, or Early Times in the Massachusetts; The Linwoods* (1770); *Clarence; A New England Tale; Redwood.*

W. G. Simms (1806–1870), *The Damsel of Darien* (Balboa and the discovery of the Pacific); *Vasconselos* (De Soto in Florida); *Lily and Totem* (Huguenots in Florida); *Cassique of Kioway* (South Carolina, 1684); *Yemassee* (Indian conspiracy, 1715); *The Partisan; Mellichampe; The Scout; Katharine Walton; The Forayers; The Eutaws* (the last six stories form a connected account of the Revolution in the South from the fall of Charleston to 1782).

Seba Smith (1792–1868), *Life and Letters of Major Jack Downing* (time of Jackson).

Harriet Beecher Stowe (1811–1896), *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, and *Dred*, or, later, *Nina Gordon* (slavery in Kentucky); *Mayflower* (Connecticut life); *The Minister's Wooing* (Newport, early nineteenth century).

T

W. M. Thackeray (1811–1863), *The Virginians* (eighteenth century).

Octave Thanet. See French.

Daniel P. Thompson (1795–1868), *The Green Mountain Boys, a Historical Tale of the Early Settlement of Vermont.* 2 vols.

Mary F. Spear Tiernan (1836–1891), *Homoselle* (Virginia before the Civil War).

Nina Moore Tiffany, *Pilgrims and Puritans; From Colony to Commonwealth; Stories of the Revolutionary Days in Boston.*

A. W. Tourgée (1838–1905), *Hot Plowshares; Figs and Thistles, a Romance of the Western Reserve;* and other stories of Western and Southern life.

J. T. Trowbridge (1827–), *Cudjo's Cave* (Tennessee in the early sixties).

St. George Tucker (1828–1863), *Hansford* (Bacon's Rebellion).

Mark Twain. See Clemens.

W

Lewis Wallace (1827–1905), *The Fair God* (Aztec civilization).

Mary S. Watts (1868–), *Nathan Burke* (Mexican War).

W. A. White (1868–), *The Real Issue*, and *A Certain Rich Man* (Kansas life).

Mary E. Wilkins (1862–), *The Adventures of Ann: Stories of Colonial Times; The Heart's Highway* (Virginia, seventeenth century).

Theodore Winthrop (1828–1861), *John Brent* (Mormons).

Owen Wister (1860–), *The Virginian* (ranch life on the plains).

§ 52. Poems and Ballads

The following poems are especially illustrative of American history.

Joel Barlow (1755–1812), *Vision of Columbus.* — In a later edition called *The Columbiad.*

Thomas Campbell (1777–1844), *Gertrude of Wyoming.*

William Dunlap (1766–1839), *André, a Tragedy in Five Acts.*

Timothy Dwight (1752–1817), *Greenfield Hill* (burning of Fairfield, 1779).

Philip Freneau (1752–1832), *Poems* (illustrating the period 1774–1815).

Francis Hopkinson (1737–1891), *Battle of the Kegs.*

H. W. Longfellow (1807–1882), *Skeleton in Armor* (Northmen); *Courtship of Miles Standish; John Endicott; Giles Corey* (Salem witchcraft); *Evangeline* (Acadia); *Hiawatha; Paul Revere's Ride.*

J. R. Lowell (1819–1891), *Columbus; Biglow Papers; Commemoration Ode.*

Margaret J. Preston (1825–1897), *Colonial Ballads and Sonnets.*

L. H. Sigourney (1791–1865), *Pocahontas.*

E. C. Stedman (1833–1908), *Peter Stuyvesant's New Year's Call; Alice of Monmouth* (the Civil War).

J. G. Whittier (1808–1892), *Cobbler Keezar's Vision; Skipper Ireson's Ride* (early New England); *The Witch of Wenham; The Bridal of Pennacook; Mogg Megone* (New England life); *The Pennsylvania Pilgrim.*

The following collections are especially serviceable.

Frank Cowan, *Southwestern Pennsylvania in Song and Story.* Greensburg, 1878.

S. A. Drake, *A Book of New England Legends and Folk-lore in Prose and Poetry.* Boston, 1884.

E. A. and G. I. Duyckinck, "Ballads of the Old French and Revolu-

tionary Wars," in their *Cyclopædia of American Literature.* Vol. I (see index). N.Y., 1856.

G. C. Eggleston, *American War-Ballads and Lyrics.* 2 vols. N.Y., [1889].

Thomas D. English, *American Ballads.* N.Y., 1880.

William McCarty, *Songs, Odes, and other Poems on National Subjects.* 3 vols. Phila., 1842.

Brander Matthews, *Poems of American Patriotism.* N.Y., 1882.

Frank Moore, *Anecdotes, Poetry, and Incidents of the War, 1860–1865.* N.Y., 1865.

Frank Moore, *The Civil War in Song and Story.* [N.Y.], 1889.

Frank Moore, *Songs and Ballads of the American Revolution.* N.Y., 1856.

Frank Moore, *Songs and Ballads of the Southern People.* N.Y., 1886.

Winthrop Sargent, editor, *The Loyalist Poetry of the Revolution.* Phila., 1857.

W. G. Simms, editor, *War Poetry of the South.* N.Y., 1867.

E. C. Stedman and E. M. Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature.* (See § 48.)

PART III. TEACHING AND READING HISTORY

CHAPTER IX

WORKING LIBRARIES

§ 53. Necessity of Working Libraries

No proper work can be done in history by the use of a single book. The study resembles those scientific subjects, such as botany and physics, in which laboratory practice is an essential part of the instruction from the very beginning. The principle to be observed is that the teacher's part is not to deal out knowledge, but to aid the pupils in getting their knowledge for themselves. Hence, if history is really to be taught at all, in every school there must be some collection of books.

In order to secure the use of a working library, it must be accessible all the school time, and if possible be made available at other hours. A shelf in the schoolroom, where the books stand in view all day, is the most convenient arrangement. Larger collections may need to be kept in a particular room; if a machinery for drawing books out and registering them seems necessary, it should be made as simple as possible. Pupils should be encouraged to carry books home over night. At the same time should be inculcated that reverence for the clean and unsoiled page which is a part of every proper education.

If the books are more than a hundred, some kind of catalogue is almost indispensable, and should be conspicuously placed. Large libraries should of course have a card catalogue, including both authors and subjects; and the making of a school catalogue may be an excellent experience for children.

§ 54. Small Collections

The multiplication of brief but well-written books on American history makes it possible to select a few books which, taken to-

gether, cover the whole field of American history in some systematic fashion. In making up the lists below, care has been taken to include, so far as possible, books which balance each other, either by treating different phases of American history or by taking different sides on the same general question.

Four-Dollar Collection

1	E. Channing, *Students' History* (§ 9)	$1.40
2	A. B. Hart, *Epoch Maps* (§ 33)	.40
3	A. B. Hart, *Source Book of American History* (§ 48)	.60
4	A. C. McLaughlin, *History of the American Nation*, N.Y., 1899	1.40

Ten-Dollar Collection

1–2	J. T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*, 2 vols. (§ 34)	$2.50
3	E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865* (§ 28)	1.50
4–6	*Epochs of American History*, 3 vols. (§ 28)	3.75
7	A. B. Hart, *Epoch Maps* (§ 33)	.40
8–9	E. E. Sparks, *United States*, 2 vols. (§ 28)	3.00

Twenty-five-Dollar Collection

(No books in the $10.00 list are here repeated)

10–16	*American History Series*, 7 vols. (§ 28)	$7.00
17–18	E. Channing, *History of the United States*, 2 vols. (§ 29)	5.00
19–22	A. B. Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, 4 vols. (§ 48)	8.00
23	Higginson and MacDonald, *United States* (§ 28) . . .	2.00
24	Alexander Johnston, *American Politics* (§ 28)	.90
25	Wm. MacDonald, *Documentary Source Book of American History, 1606–1898* (§ 48)	1.00
26	Edward Stanwood, *Presidency* (§ 36).	2.50

Fifty-Dollar Collection

The following volumes which cost about fifteen dollars, may be added to the books enumerated in the ten-dollar and twenty-five-dollar collections:

27	D. R. Dewey, *Financial History of the United States* (§ 36)	$2.00
28–29	H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, 2 vols. (§ 39)	2.50
30	A. B. Hart and E. Channing, *American History Leaflets*, 36 nos. (§ 48)	3.00

31 J. K. Landon, *Constitutional History* (§ 28) 3.00
32 Wm. MacDonald, *Select Charters* (§ 48) 1.25
33 Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents* (§ 48) 1.25
34 Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes* (§ 48) 1.25
35–36 Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, 2 vols. (§ 39) 2.50

One-Hundred-Dollar Collection

In addition to the fifty-dollar list the following works should be added:

37 A good history of your own state (§ 37).
38 E. L. Bogart, *Economic History of the United States* (§ 36).
39 Katharine Coman, *Industrial History of the United States* (§ 36).
40–46 J. B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*, 7 vols. (§ 29).
47–52 J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*, 7 vols. (§ 29).
53–58 James Schouler, *History of the United States*, 6 vols. (§ 29).

§ 55. Small Standard Library

The small collections above described include few sources, and ought to be supplemented by printed records, by biographies containing letters and other original material, and by the works of statesmen, and local and special histories. From the lists of classified books given above (§§ 28–48) many additional titles may be drawn. Among them should be included:

(1) Atlases of American historical geography, and some of the descriptive books and sources (§§ 30–35).

(2) A good supply of textbooks, both school and college (§§ 9, 28).

(3) Additional general histories (§ 29).

(4) Some of the special histories (§ 36).

(5) Local histories of the state and place in which the teacher or reader lives (§ 37).

(6) Biographies of all the Presidents, and also of John Winthrop, Hutchinson, Sam Adams, Patrick Henry, Franklin, Hamilton, John Randolph, Gallatin, Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Benton, Douglas, Seward, Davis, Chase, Sumner, Stevens, Blaine, John Sherman (§ 39).

(7) A few of the reviews containing historical matter, especially the *Nation*, and the *American Historical Review* (§ 40).

(8) If possible some sets of colonial records, which may be obtained at reasonable prices at the second-hand bookstores (§ 43).

(9) A set of the *Annals of Congress*, *Congressional Debates*, *Congressional Globe*, and *Congressional Record* (§ 44).

(10) The *Statutes at Large* (§ 44); sets are expensive. The earlier statutes are also printed in *Annals of Congress*. The statutes should be supplemented by the treaties, either the volume of *Treaties and Conventions of the United States*, which comes down to 1887 only, or Malloy's compilation, which comes down to 1909 (§ 44).

(11) A selection of the printed sources, including the principal collections of documents and narratives, as described in § 42 and § 48, and in the "Small Collections" (§ 54).

A library carefully selected on the basis above indicated should include from 300 to 1000 volumes, and should cost from $450 to $1500. A select list of about 350 works in 450 volumes is printed in A. B. Hart, *Essentials of American History*, Appendices A, B. A similar list is a part of the A. L. A. *8000 Volumes for a Popular Library* (§ 24).

§ 56. Collateral Use of Public Libraries

The large number of public libraries in the United States makes possible careful work in history even in schools which have small or ill-selected libraries. One method is to recommend pupils to draw books which will be useful in connection with their study. For this purpose it is very desirable to coöperate with the librarian in preparing reading lists, including only material in the library, and illustrating the regular lessons. Good descriptive books, travels, and historical novels may thus be indicated, as well as histories and biographies.

Perhaps a better method is for the school to secure the privilege of drawing out a certain number of books, and keeping them for a definite time in the school building as a special reference library. This system has the advantage of keeping together for general use the set of most useful books. Without any such formal privilege being granted, it is easy to arrange that children, holders of cards, shall unite their drawings, so as to make

up a reference set, to be used by the whole class so long as the library regulations permit the books to remain out. In many cases public libraries will purchase sets of books on American history, with special reference to their usefulness for school work. Another advantage of a good public library should be that it can give the pupils an opportunity to learn the use of catalogues, special bibliographies, and other keys to literature (§ 21).

§ 57. Use of Great Libraries

A few favored cities and some universities have the advantage of great public or endowed libraries, containing rich historical literature and preserving extensive sets of printed records, works of public men, and files of periodicals. The most noted of such libraries are the Harvard College; Boston Public; Boston Athenæum; John Carter Brown, at Providence; Yale University; New York Public; Columbia University; Peabody, at Baltimore; Library of Congress; Newberry, at Chicago; University of Chicago; Burton, at Detroit; Wisconsin Historical Society; and Bancroft, at University of California.

The first duty of a student or reader in such a library is to make himself familiar with the catalogue, so that he may, without loss of time, go straight to the authorities on any subject he may be studying. A few hours spent in mastering the intricacies of a printed or card subject catalogue will make the whole of the historical way smooth. Next the student should learn the arrangement and use of special aids such as *Poole's Index* and Fletcher's *A. L. A. Index to General Literature* (§ 21). This familiarity may most easily be gained by following out some specific subject through the various bibliographical aids.

The next duty of the student is to make himself familiar with the general literature of American history. If he have a select set of works on the subject at his disposal, he should go through a considerable number of the books, examining them sufficiently to acquaint himself with their aim and arrangement. Then he should look into the sources, particularly the colonial records and the records of the United States government, so as to understand the principle upon which they are arranged, and the indexes and other means of getting at their contents.

All the work above described is of course only a reconnaissance, intended to prepare the way for a careful study of some part of the material thus examined, in connection with class work or private reading. A great library means not so much that the student is to read an enormous amount, as that he is to learn how to select from the mass the books or parts of books most useful to him; and especially that he may learn how to draw from the sources material for knowledge or the confirmation of knowledge gained elsewhere. Thought, selection, discrimination, are most essential to the right use of great collections.

§ 58. Special Use of Libraries by Students

For large classes, in schools, colleges, and universities, it is difficult to provide enough material to serve for the wants of all at once. Important books may be drawn out when most needed by the class; one copy is often insufficient, and few libraries will buy duplicates to be used freely, and perhaps worn out, by students. Much may be done by private gift to increase the copies of the most valuable books. Sometimes members of classes will give reference books at the end of their course, or classes raise a subscription or assess themselves to provide additional copies.

To provide as well as possible for the largest possible number of students, Justin Winsor, then Librarian of Harvard University, worked out a system of which the success has been proved by the experience of thirty years. Out of the numerous stores of the library each instructor has the right to select such books as seem to him essential for his courses, and to have them assembled on a set of shelves in the reading room, where they are entirely open and accessible, without any formality of drawing out, during the library hours. With this existence of a good working collection behind him, the instructor may safely call for a large amount of parallel reading and special written work.

A further provision of the scheme adds greatly to the effectiveness of the library in cases where the reading room cannot be used after sundown: no book thus reserved can be drawn out by any student during the day; but he has the privilege, before the library closes, to draw a certain number of reserved books

for "over-night use"; such books are returnable at nine o'clock the next morning.

Some instructors have established small working libraries in rooms set apart for the purpose by the college authorities. To each student in the course for which such a library is provided, a key is given in return for the deposit of a small sum of money. The interests of the students and of the library are thus made identical.

CHAPTER X

CLASS EXERCISES[1]

§ 59. Recitations

The classroom is the place where the pupils' general work is to be tested; but, at the outset, teachers ought never to lose sight of the fact that repetition of the words or ideas of a textbook is a test of the memory and not of the mind. The only proper test is that which ascertains how far a pupil is able to use and apply what he knows; and in that process one is certain to find out whether he really knows anything. The recitation is the teacher's opportunity to enforce, explain, illustrate, and amplify the lesson.

The first duty of the teacher is therefore throughout the exercise to point out what is most important in the lesson and what is a minor matter, and thus to break up the notion that every word in the textbook deserves equal attention with every other word. The interest and opinion of the pupil may sometimes be drawn out as to the comparative importance of two events.

The recitation is also the place to bring out cross relations of events, as set forth elsewhere in the textbook or in other books. This work the teacher must guide, but need not carry on alone; pupils may make pertinent suggestions, or the teacher may draw them out by skillful questioning. With such intelligent teaching there will be no need of calling for a repetition of the words of the textbook.

In colleges the ordinary set recitation is an anachronism; students old enough to come to college ought not to need the stimulus of their own discussion. For them the only suitable oral exercise in history is the "quiz" (§ 63) or "conference," or some form of

[1] This subject is treated in greater detail in the *Guide*, 1st ed. (1896), §§ 43–53, where are many illustrations drawn from American history, to set forth the general principles here stated.

written exercise (§§ 87–95). If textbook recitations are necessary, it is a proof that the work done is not college work.

§ 60. Use of Textbooks

What is the advantage of a textbook if it is not to be absorbed by the pupil? In the first place, it is to be the backbone of his knowledge: it should fix in the mind the principal events as a body of facts to be acquired and drilled into the mind.

Most textbooks on American history are well illustrated, and thus serve to bring home to the mind historical places and public men. Suggestive and helpful maps also ought to be used constantly both in and out of the classroom. The best textbooks are further provided with a set of select bibliographies, which will lead pupils to use other books; or they contain lists of questions requiring for answer the use of additional books.

One other use of textbooks is that of the "open textbook recitation," in which, with their books before them and the privilege of turning the leaves back and forth, pupils reply to off-hand questions, including past and even future lessons. This is an exercise likely to train pupils to swift and discriminating use of books.

For college work the textbook has a different purpose. It should be employed not as a basis of class exercises, but as a substitute for what must otherwise be acquired from lectures. The instructor may omit from his lecture the groundwork included in the textbook, assuming that so much knowledge may be taken for granted. The textbook may also, if furnished with suitable bibliographies, serve as a guide to the parallel reading.

§ 61. Chronology and Memorizing

No improved method of teaching can do away with the necessity of memorizing certain data; but here, as elsewhere, there must be caution to select essential things. As permanent and useful possessions in class and in later life, every pupil needs a list of important events, which by their dates are placed in their logical connection; the names of a few of the great characters, with determining dates; and parts of the phraseology of some of

the constitutional documents. A ready use of this material, out of its connection, should be required and enforced at every opportunity, so that it may be firmly fixed in the memory as a permanent acquirement. It should be the multiplication table of history, always at the tongue's end. Drill should be given to fixing a few dates in the mind rather than to suggesting so many that they will have no life or meaning.

The following list is a suggestion of the things best worth remembering as a basis for the study of the history of America

Discovery and Exploration, 1000–1681

1000. (about). The Norse Discoveries. [§ 100.]
1492. Columbus. [§ 101.]
1493. Bull of Demarcation. [§ 101.]
1497. John Cabot. [§ 111.]
1513. Ponce de Leon (Florida). [§ 105.]
1513. Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (Pacific). [§ 102.]
1519–1521. Cortez (Conquest of Mexico). [§ 104.]
1520. Magellan.
1524. Verrazano and Gomez (Atlantic Coast). [§§ 105, 106.]
1528–1536. Cabeza de Vaca (Southern United States). [§ 105.]
1531–1534. The brothers Pizarro (Conquest of Peru.) [§ 104.]
1534–1535. Cartier (Quebec and Montreal). [§ 106.]
1539–1542. De Soto (Southern and Eastern United States). [§ 105.]
1540–1542. Coronado (Southwestern United States). [§ 105.]
1578. Drake (Pacific Coast). [§ 112.]
1583. Gilbert (North Atlantic Coast). [§ 112.]
1584. Amadas and Barlow (North Carolina). [§ 113.]
1609. Hudson (Hudson River for Dutch). [§ 122.]
1610. Hudson (Hudson Bay for England). [§ 122.]
1615. Champlain (Lake Huron). [§ 108.]
1634. Nicolet (Lake Michigan). [§ 109.]
1654. Radisson and Groseilliers (West of Lake Michigan).
1673. Marquette and Joliet (Mississippi, middle course). [§ 109.]
1680. Hennepin (Upper Mississippi). [§ 109.]
1681. La Salle (Mississippi to its mouth). [§ 109.]

Colonial History, 1604–1763

1604. Acadia (De Monts and Champlain). [§ 108.]
1607. Virginia (Jamestown; Captain John Smith). [§ 115.]
1608. Quebec (Champlain). [§ 108.]

1619. Representative government and slavery in Virginia. [§ 115.]
1620. The Council for New England (Gorges). [§ 132.]
1620. Plymouth (Mayflower Compact; William Bradford). [§ 130.]
1630. Great Emigration to Massachusetts (Winthrop). [§ 134.]
1632. Maryland (The Calverts; Baron Baltimore). [§ 118.]
1635. Connecticut (Hooker migration). [§ 138.]
1636. Providence (Roger Williams; religious liberty). [§ 136.]
1638. Rhode Island (Anne Hutchinson). [§ 136.]
1638. New Haven. [§ 139.]
1639. Fundamental Orders of Connecticut. [§ 138.]
1641. Massachusetts "Body of Liberties." [§ 135.]
1643. New England Confederation. [§ 141.]
1649. Maryland Toleration Act. [§ 119.]
1651. Navigation Ordinance. [§ 149.]
1662. Connecticut Charter. [§ 138.]
1663. Rhode Island Charter. [§ 137.]
1663. Carolina Charter. [§ 120.]
1664. English Conquest of New Netherland. [§ 122.]
1665. Second Carolina Charter. [§ 120.]
1665. New Jersey. [§ 124.]
1676. Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia. [§ 116.]
1681. Pennsylvania Charter (Penn; Quakers). [§ 125.]
1686. Andros Government in New England. [§ 145.]
1689. Rebellions in Massachusetts, New York, and Maryland. [§§ 119, 123, 145.]
1691. Province Charter of Massachusetts. [§ 145.]
1699. Louisiana. [§ 110.]
1701. Pennsylvania Charter of Privileges. [§ 126.]
1713. Peace of Utrecht. [§ 147.]
1721. Rebellion in Carolina. [§ 120.]
1732. Georgia Charter. [§ 121.]
1735. Trial of Zenger (Freedom of the press). [§ 123.]
1748. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle. [§ 147.]
1754. French and Indian War. [§ 148.]
1754. Albany Congress. [§§ 148, 158.]
1763. Peace of Paris. [§ 148.]

The American Revolution, 1761–1783

1761. Writs of Assistance. [§ 150.]
1763. Parson's Cause. [§ 150.]
1765. Stamp Act (Henry's Resolves). [§ 150.]

1765. Stamp Act Congress. [§ 150.]
1766. Declaratory Act. [§ 150.]
1767. Townshend Acts. [§ 151.]
1768. Massachusetts Circular Letter. [§ 151.]
1769. Virginia Resolves. [§ 151.]
1772. Burning of the *Gaspee*. [§ 151.]
1773. Committees of Correspondence. [§ 152.]
1773. Destruction of the Tea. [§ 151.]
1774. Boston Port Act, Massachusetts Government Act, etc. [§ 151.]
1774. Quebec Act, etc. [§ 151.]
1774. First Continental Congress. [§ 151.]
1774. Association. [§ 151.]
1775. Battles of Lexington and Concord. [§ 152.]
1775. Second Continental Congress. [§ 153.]
1775. Canadian Campaign.
1776. Declaration of Independence. [§ 153.]
1776. First State Constitution. [§ 159.]
1777. Articles of Confederation submitted. [§ 158.]
1777. Burgoyne's Capitulation. [§ 154.]
1778. French Alliance. [§ 155.]
1780. Thirteenth State Constitution (Massachusetts). [§ 159.]
1781. Ratification of the Articles of Confederation. [§ 158.]
1781. Yorktown Capitulation. [§ 156.]
1781. Five Per Cent Plan. [§ 169.]
1782. Preliminary Articles of Peace. [§ 157.]
1783. Definitive Treaty. [§ 157.]

Development of the Constitution of the United States, 1783–1860

1783. Revenue Amendment proposed. [§ 169.]
1784. Commerce Amendment proposed. [§ 171.]
1786. Annapolis Convention. [§ 173.]
1787. Federal Convention. [§ 173.]
1787. Northwest Ordinance. [§ 167.]
1789. Federal Constitution in effect. [§ 176.]
1791. First Ten Amendments (Bill of rights). [§ 174.]
1794. Jay Treaty. [§ 181.]
1798. Alien and Sedition Acts. [§ 184.]
1798. Virginia and (1799) Kentucky Resolutions. [§ 184.]
1798. Eleventh Amendment (Suits against states). [§ 195.]
1803. Marbury *v.* Madison (Acts of Congress void). [§ 195.]
1803. Annexation of Louisiana. [§ 187.]

1804. Twelfth Amendment (Election of president). [§ 186.]
1805. Lewis and Clark to the Pacific. [§ 187.]
1807. Embargo (National power over commerce). [§ 190.]
1811. Astoria founded at mouth of Columbia. [§ 187.]
1812. War with England. [§ 191.]
1814. Hartford Convention. [§ 192.]
1814. Peace of Ghent. [§ 191.]
1819. Annexation of Florida. [§ 196.]
1819. McCulloch *v.* Maryland (Implied powers). [§ 195.]
1819. Dartmouth College Case (Charter a contract). [§ 195.]
1820. Missouri Compromise (National prohibition of slavery). [§ 197.]
1821. Cohens *v.* Virginia (Appeals to Supreme Court). [§ 195.]
1823. Monroe Doctrine. [§ 198.]
1824. Gibbons *v.* Ogden (State powers over commerce). [§ 195.]
1832. Bank Controversy. [§ 205.]
1832. Nullification Controversy. [§ 206.]
1833. Compromise Tariff. [§ 206.]
1836. Gag Resolutions (Discussion of slavery). [§ 211.]
1842. Ashburton Treaty (Maine). [§ 217.]
1845. Annexation of Texas. [§ 218.]
1846. Mexican War. [§ 219.]
1846. Oregon Treaty. [§ 217.]
1846. Wilmot Proviso. [§ 221.]
1848. Peace of Guadeloupe Hidalgo. [§ 219.]
1850. Compromise on Slavery Questions. [§ 222.]
1854. Kansas-Nebraska Act (Popular sovereignty). [§ 225.]
1857. Dred Scott Case (Slavery restrictions annulled). [§ 228.]
1859. John Brown's Raid. [§ 228.]

Civil War and Industrial Development, 1860–1911

1860. Secession Controversy. [§§ 231–233.]
1861. Civil War. [§§ 234–239.]
1863. Emancipation Proclamation (War powers). [§ 240.]
1863. Gettysburg and Vicksburg. [§ 236.]
1865. Thirteenth Amendment (Slavery forbidden). [§ 240.]
1867. Reconstruction Act (Congress asserts its power). [§ 241.]
1868. Fourteenth Amendment (Citizenship defined). [§ 241.]
1868. Impeachment of President Johnson. [§ 241.]
1870. Fifteenth Amendment (Negro suffrage). [§ 242.]
1870. Ku Klux Klan. [§ 242.]
1871. Legal Tender Cases (Legal tender notes approved). [§ 243.]
1873. Slaughter-House Cases (Citizenship restrained). [§ 242.]

1873. Commercial Panic. [§ 252.]
1877. Disputed Election. [§ 251.]
1883. Civil Service Act (Examinations for service). [§ 254.]
1883. Tariff Act (Commission). [§ 254.]
1884. Juilliard *v.* Greenman (Legal tender notes confirmed). [§ 243.]
1887. Interstate Commerce Act (Legislation on railroads). [§ 256.]
1890. McKinley Tariff. [§ 262.]
1890. Sherman Anti-trust Act. [§ 262.]
1890. Sherman Silver Act. [§ 256.]
1893. Commercial Panic. [§ 262.]
1894. Wilson-Gorman Tariff. [§ 262.]
1895. Venezuela Controversy (Application of Monroe Doctrine). [§ 263.]
1896. Free Silver Campaign. [§ 262.]
1897. Dingley Tariff. [§ 262.]
1898. Spanish War. [§ 265.]
1899. Philippine Insurrection (Dependencies). [§§ 265, 266.]
1900. Gold Standard Act. [§ 271.]
1903. Panama Canal Treaty. [§ 267.]
1904. Northern Securities Case (Merger of railroads). [§ 269.]
1910. Payne-Aldrich Tariff. [§ 271.]
1911. Standard Oil and Tobacco Cases (Regulation of trusts). [§ 269.]

Presidents of the United States, 1789–1911

1789–1797. George Washington (Jay Treaty). [§§ 176–182.]
1797–1801. John Adams (Alien and Sedition Acts). [§§ 183–185.]
1801–1809. Thomas Jefferson (Annexation of Louisiana). [§§ 186–190.]
1809–1817. James Madison (War of 1812). [§§ 190–194.]
1817–1825. James Monroe (Monroe Doctrine). [§§ 194–198.]
1825–1829. John Quincy Adams (Panama Congress). [§ 199.]
1829–1837. Andrew Jackson (Bank and nullification controversies). [§§ 204–208.]
1837–1841. Martin Van Buren (Panic of 1837). [§ 213.]
1841. William Henry Harrison (First death in office). [§ 214.]
1841–1845. John Tyler (Annexation of Texas). [§§ 214, 217, 218.]
1845–1849. James K. Polk (Mexican War.) [§§ 217, 219–221, 224.]
1849–1850. Zachary Taylor (Died in office). [§ 222.]
1850–1853. Millard Fillmore (Compromise of 1850). [§§ 222–224.]
1853–1857. Franklin Pierce (Kansas-Nebraska Act). [§§ 224–227.]

1857–1861. James Buchanan (Lecompton Constitution). [§§ 224, 226, 228–233.]
1861–1865. Abraham Lincoln (Civil War; died in office). [§§ 234–241.]
1865–1869. Andrew Johnson (Reconstruction). [§§ 241–244.]
1869–1877. Ulysses S. Grant (Treaty with England). [§§ 242–244, 249–253.]
1877–1881. Rutherford B. Hayes (Troops withdrawn). [§§ 242, 250–254.]
1881. James A. Garfield (Died in office). [§ 254.]
1881–1885. Chester A. Arthur (Civil service reform). [§ 254.]
1885–1889. Grover Cleveland (Tariff controversy). [§§ 255, 256, 263.]
1889–1893. Benjamin Harrison (McKinley Tariff). [§§ 262, 263.]
1893–1897. Grover Cleveland (Currency and Tariff Bills). [§§ 262–265, 270.]
1897–1901. William McKinley (Spanish War; died in office). [§§ 262, 265–268.]
1901–1909. Theodore Roosevelt (Panama; Conservation; Corporations). [§§ 266–274.]
1909– William H. Taft (Tariff Commission; Conservation; Trusts). [§§ 267–274.]

Admission of States, 1787–1912

I. By original ratification of the Constitution:

1. 1787. Delaware.
2. 1787. Pennsylvania.
3. 1787. New Jersey.
4. 1788. Georgia.
5. 1788. Connecticut.
6. 1788. Massachusetts.
7. 1788. Maryland.
8. 1788. South Carolina.
9. 1788. New Hampshire.
10. 1788. Virginia.
11. 1788. New York.

II. By ratification of the Constitution after it was in effect:

12. 1789. North Carolina.
13. 1790. Rhode Island.

III. By Act of Congress (the date is that of taking effect):

14. 1791. Vermont.
15. 1792. Kentucky.
16. 1796. Tennessee.
17. 1803. Ohio.
18. 1812. Louisiana.
19. 1816. Indiana.
20. 1817. Mississippi.
21. 1818. Illinois.
22. 1819. Alabama.
23. 1820. Maine.
24. 1821. Missouri.
25. 1836. Arkansas.
26. 1837. Michigan.
27. 1845. Florida.

28. 1845. Texas.
29. 1846. Iowa.
30. 1848. Wisconsin.
31. 1850. California.
32. 1858. Minnesota.
33. 1859. Oregon.
34. 1861. Kansas.
35. 1863. West Virginia.
36. 1864. Nevada.
37. 1867. Nebraska.
38. 1876. Colorado.
39. 1889. North Dakota.
40. 1889. South Dakota.
41. 1889. Montana.
42. 1889. Washington.
43. 1890. Idaho.
44. 1890. Wyoming.
45. 1896. Utah.
46. 1907. Oklahoma.
47. 1912. New Mexico.
48. 1912. Arizona.

Population of the United States, 1790–1910

In round numbers, at each decennial census:

1790.	3,900,000.	1840.	17,000,000.	1890.	63,000,000.
1800.	5,300,000.	1850.	23,200,000.	1900.	76,000,000.
1810.	7,200,000.	1860.	31,400,000.	1910.	92,000,000.
1820.	9,600,000.	1870.	38,600,000.		
1830.	12,900,000.	1880.	50,200,000.		

§ 62. Reviews

Many schools waste the most valuable part of the year, the last month or more, in an elaborate review of study already pursued within too narrow limits. A proper system of teaching will secure all the good that there is in this system, without its loss of time and energy. Such a device is thus described by a very efficient secondary teacher: "The pupil is given the entire subject, — for instance, the Homeric Age, the Conquest of Italy by Rome, the Early Norman Kings, the New England Colonies. To recite these 'fluents' is the special glory of the class; the brilliant recitation that holds the interest of all the pupils, although the subject is familiar, is one that is especially prized. After the 'fluent' is finished, it is criticized as to matter and manner; the English, the attitude, and intonation of the reciter all coming under fire, as well as the historical matter."

A second device is thus described: "But a very important part of the work yet remains, — the fixing of the whole indelibly on the mind. This is attempted by what . . . are called 'cards,' *i.e.*, a raking fire of short, sharp questions every morning, to which

a prompt, direct answer is required, or the dread 'next,' 'next,' 'next' is heard. To fail in cards is thought a great disgrace, for they are taken up only when the subject has been most carefully explained, and failure in them is an evidence of unfaithfulness on the part of the pupil."

The essential element in both these systems is that every recitation, properly conducted, may be a review of lessons that have gone before. Besides oral reviews, there are several systems of written questions, which will be described below (§§ 87, 88).

§ 63. The "Quiz"

For sufficiently advanced pupils the recitation may be replaced by a different sort of oral exercise, the "quiz," the object of which is to draw out by discussion the meaning and relations of the day's topic. Here the textbook has place only as one of several authorities that may be quoted. For instance, the whole body of pupils may become a sort of committee of the whole on some moot question, as witchcraft, the Boston Massacre, or nullification. Such a discussion may be made the medium of ethical teaching, of the greater effect because introduced incidentally.

One method of carrying on such a "quiz" is to assign to each member of the class some phase of the general subject, on which he is to make special preparation, so as to contribute to the discussion as often as his special topic bears upon it. Another method is to make each member responsible for a particular book, so that he may state the view of the author on each controversy that comes up, or add details not elsewhere mentioned.

In college the "quiz" may approach the well-known and successful "law-school method" of deducing principles from a study of cases and not of textbooks, the historical student using as his "cases" documents, contemporary narratives, and court decisions in the various convenient small volumes of selected decisions. In small and highly advanced courses it is possible to conduct a "quiz" based partly on texts and partly on personal knowledge. Political and constitutional questions may be discussed in such classes by assigning to each man a state — presumably his own — or an institution, upon which he shall make himself an authority.

§ 64. Physical Geography and Maps

In previous sections (§§ 30–34) have been described the sources and authorities in American historical geography. Without an adequate knowledge of the physical and historical geography of the United States, — the natural "lay of the land," and the process of subdivision by artificial lines, — the historical student is all at sea. All the good histories of the United States, including the textbooks, have some discussion as to the influence of physical conditions on history. For historical purposes the river systems and drainage basins are the proper basis of geographical study. By the phenomena of erosion, which are not too difficult for grammar and even primary schools, are to be explained most of the natural highways which lead from the sea up into the Appalachian range, and thence down the westward slope; and especially the position and interrelation of the St. Lawrence and Mississippi basins. By submergence and tides and wave action are to be explained the harbors which determined the site of colonies and the growth of great cities.

Most of the colonial wars had their theater in or about the passes from the seaboard to Canada, or on the coast. The Revolutionary War and the Civil War are also to be understood only by reference to the topography of the country in which they were fought. The falls in the principal rivers have become the sites of manufacturing towns or the limits of navigation. Chicago and New York, St. Paul and New Orleans, Richmond and Norfolk, mark the head and foot of great water communications. From the earliest study of geography the features of the continent should be treated as having a connection with the settlement of the country, with the development of its industrial life, and with political events.

To understand a map requires training; to the child's mind it is at first a confused set of lines. Map drawing and map making help to teach the pupil to look on a map as representing a surface; but it takes a long time to learn to read the vertical element, even on the best maps. Children should early be accustomed to think of the maps as representing an uneven surface, like that of the surrounding country, or like the little plateaus and channels made

by rain. Clay modeling is an efficient aid to this part of a child's education.

§ 65. Political Geography

Upon the knowledge of physical geography may be based a study of the development of political geography; and every child who studies American history at all ought to have some notion of the successive forms of the political geography of the country. There are some, not very satisfactory, series of historical wall maps. Much may be done, however, in the way of making a set of outline maps on large paper, or a relief map painted on a blackboard. By using colored crayons it is easy in a few minutes to present upon the board any desired general map, on a scale large enough to be seen at a distance of forty feet. Where a larger scale is desired, or the field is out of the limits of the blackboard, sketches may be made on the board, or permanent maps on thick paper.

The first use of the maps is to illustrate the territorial development of the country, by bringing before the eye the successive cessions and purchases. At the same time the perplexing boundary controversies may be made clear: the close connection between annexations and the inner political history of the country is often brought out in startling relief when presented to the eye. Next comes the internal development of the country. Successive maps, dated, say, ten years apart, may show the extent of settlement and the formation of territories and states. Even political affairs may sometimes be strikingly mapped out: thus, a series of maps showing the distribution of the presidential vote by states, or, better, by counties, in each succeeding election will forever fix in the mind the slow growth of sectional parties; and maps of votes on bills by congressional districts are very illuminating. Special maps may be used for a variety of purposes, such as the theater of wars and campaigns, detailed boundary controversies, proposed sites for the national capital, or schemes for internal improvement.

Besides the wall maps, every child should have at constant command a set of small maps or an historical atlas, and should be encouraged to follow every lesson, map in hand. Sites should be learned, not with reference to a particular river or body of water

only, but with some reason for the choice of those spots. Much use may also be made of local geography, especially in the older states. Every child should know the territorial changes that have befallen his own state, and especially his own town. In learning these data the student cannot help noticing that America was first divided among Christian nations, and that then the northern portion was subdivided into colonies, with overlapping and conflicting claims.

One of the easiest ways of teaching geography is to use desk outline maps, filling them in as the subject progresses. A series of such maps will be a little historical atlas, and the making of them is an exercise in geometry as well as in geography. For college courses historical geography should never be relaxed; the more detailed and special a course, the more reason for treating the geography carefully and making it underlie the whole body of instruction.

§ 66. Illustrative Methods

Drawing is a usual subject of school study, and may be connected with history, which is the natural medium for instruction in art as part of a nation's life. The first step is to make the schoolroom attractive with busts and portraits of great men, and other suggestive objects. To such a cheerful collection, children, students, parents, and public-spirited people interested in the school will often contribute; and something may perhaps be had from school funds. Where means are scanty, there are still excellent portraits to be cut from illustrated weeklies or old magazines and arranged in scrapbooks or on the walls. Any real picture of a person or place or scene, well executed, has a value; imaginary scenes are much less satisfactory. Lantern slides of historical scenes and maps are now a frequent and effective means of enforcing historical teaching.

§ 67. Historical Recreations

Many teachers, especially in the lower grades, enliven their class by exercises in what may be called dramatic methods. Among these is the putting of rather vague questions, which the pupils are to search out, as, "When did a stone wall affect the result of

a battle?" or, "Name some defeats which have had the effect of victories." Sometimes lists of such topics are made up, and prizes are given to those who correctly answer the largest number. A favorite method at present, with young children, is to have them impersonate historical characters in various ways, — as individuals in dialogues or in historical plays or pageants.

Historical excursions, common in Germany, are infrequent in this country, though in all the older states there are places of great national interest. If there be no famous hall or tree or house within reach, there are at least the local political deliberative bodies — town meetings or councils, aldermen or legislatures or courts — which are to history what chemical works are to chemistry, or steel works to manual training, — a practical illustration of the study. Wherever there is a museum it should be visited, if it contains something more than mere curiosities.

§ 68. Debates

One of the most suggestive class exercises is to organize the class into a debating society, or to induce the regular debating societies to take up questions that arise in historical study. This method very closely connects itself with the practice and needs of everyday life: all children discuss with each other, state arguments, and try to convince, and must do it all their lives.

The usual method is to appoint one, two, or more persons as principal disputants on each side, and then to let others come in with less formal speeches. It is well to have a member of the class preside, and he should be instructed to enforce rigorously the limits of time, and to make the debate move briskly. But debate as a class exercise should be as free as possible from the machinery of parliamentary law, — points of order, discussion of technicalities, and the like.

It adds much to the directness of a debate if the principal disputants in advance reduce their arguments to the form of briefs, in which the main points are stated in their logical order, with subsidiary points arranged under each head, and with references to authorities wherever possible. Such briefs may be placed on the blackboard, or reproduced by carbons or multiplying processes.

The debate may be criticized by the teacher at the end of the

exercise in the presence of the class, each of the speakers receiving brief notice, including praise as well as blame. Errors and misstatements should be scored, and children should be taught to consider how to make their arguments pointed and convincing.

In some of the universities debate has been organized into regular courses counting toward the degree, with briefs printed in the college papers before each debate. Instructors in elocution, in English, and in history and economics criticize the participants.[1]

§ 69. Oral Reports of Pupils

Some excellent schools find it possible to enliven their exercises by giving the pupils a part. This may be simply the assignment to each of a general subject from which he shall be prepared to make a contribution to the discussion whenever that subject has application (§ 63); or the best of the written reports may be called for, and perhaps a sufficient number combined to fill the hour. In either case caution is necessary: all the pupils must understand that the criticisms of a fellow pupil are those of an immature person who has only a small amount of information; that his abstracts are subject to the faults of one little accustomed to precise use of language; and that quotations, carefully made, carry only the authority of the source from which they are drawn. There is no danger, if pains be taken to teach pupils to discriminate between different classes of writers. One of the main purposes of good teaching is to give to every pupil such a part in the work that neglect is at once apparent. Such a method as has been suggested leads to a feeling of responsibility, both for accurate work and for prompt and skillful performance.

§ 70. Student Lectures

In colleges and universities it is possible to make a broader use of the same principle. In coöperative classes students do most of the work; and they are often able to bring to the study of an assigned topic an amount of time and thought which no instructor

[1] The methods of such a course at Harvard are set forth in a pamphlet, *Harvard Debating: Subjects and Suggestions for Courses in Oral Discussion* (Cambridge, 1896).

could devote to each subject if he worked it out by himself. Of course much of this time is wasted, and oftentimes the results are disappointing. The difficulty in carrying on a systematic course of successive lectures by students, even the ablest, is that no one of them has in mind the dimensions and relations of the whole subject: the lectures are apt to take the form of a lyceum course, — each interesting in itself, but none necessary to the understanding of any other.

§ 71. Seminaries

The term "seminary method," and perhaps the thing itself, has been much abused in the United States. In Germany it has a perfectly distinct meaning, — a system of instruction for the most advanced students, in which the work is entirely original research, the necessary technical preparation for such work, and the examination and comparison of results. In that sense the word is employed also in the score of advanced institutions in the United States which have the three essential elements of the system, — large libraries, trained instructors, and a body of advanced students. "Original work" is not necessarily seminary work, nor is a coöperative class necessarily a seminary. The system is inapplicable in many colleges.

What is sometimes called the "seminary method" in secondary schools is really nothing but the use of sources under competent direction, with combination of the results on some system likely to arouse interest and aid other members of the class. The aim of the seminary student is to exhaust his subject, to examine all the literature bearing on it, to say the last word; but the aim in secondary or grammar schools must be to get as much as possible out of a very limited range of material. So far as methods of research are applicable in schools, they will be considered below (§§ 90–93).

In the true seminary there are two systems in use. The first is to assign to students topics generally unrelated, and, as each student brings his work to a point, to let him occupy the hour of class exercises. The other way is to assign a series of related topics which, with an occasional lecture from the instructor, will make up a systematic and consecutive course. Each of these methods has its advantages: the former consults individual pref-

erence, and allows greater variety of treatment; the latter accustoms students to fit their historical timber into a given space.

§ 72. Classroom Tests

The proper teaching of history requires that pupils should be frequently called upon to show not only that they "know the lesson," but that they know and can apply earlier lessons. Hence informal tests must be devised. Devoting a part of each exercise to a review of the previous lesson has its advantages; but such a review is apt to be a wearisome and perfunctory exercise. It is better to keep pupils alive on all the field already traversed, by compelling them to put their minds upon the whole subject.

One excellent device has been described above (§ 62) under the name of "fluents": pupils are called upon repeatedly to give the whole narrative of some episode or period, as nearly and as fully as they remember it. By going over and over this method they become saturated with the history, and carry it in their minds a long time.

An equally effective plan is that of the so-called "cards" (§ 62): a few minutes of each exercise are given up to the asking of very brief questions, put sharply and quickly, and to be answered immediately and categorically. By writing the questions on a set of cards, and then mixing them, they will come out haphazard, and the answer to one will not suggest the answer to the next.

Geography, is of course, tested by the constant use of wall maps and atlases in class, and by the construction of maps or outlines from memory (§§ 64, 65).

§ 73. Oral Examinations

The old-fashioned oral examination, with the school committee solemnly ranged on the platform and anxious children awaiting their turns, has fallen into disuse. It always gave an undue advantage to the ready, off-hand pupil, and often caught pupils on some unimportant or small part of the subject. The advantage of keeping the wits sharpened, and being ready to use one's knowledge, can be gained by skillful recitations, and especially by the device known as "cards" (§ 62).

For small classes, and especially for advanced students, where there is time to go into detail, the oral examination has important uses; and it is accepted as a proper test (in part, at least) for the degree of Ph.D. The power to marshal a large body of knowledge, and to select the portion which is pertinent to an inquiry, is best tested in this way.

§ 74. Formal Written Tests

Written tests, if properly applied, are undoubtedly more searching and instructive than oral ones. The danger in the lower schools — especially in large systems handling many children — is that examinations come to be an end instead of a means, and in order to get ready for them pupils are diverted from their studies. So far as examinations in history are mere memory tests, they have little value; but the written tests suggested in §§ 87–89 are helpful, especially the "paper," or written application of principles to a question up to that time not considered by the pupil.

School examinations may be so contrived as to be of real assistance to historical training. The questions ought to be such as require comparison and the use of facts acquired at different times and in different connections. The old query, "Who went where with how many men?" is not an unfair satire on ordinary questions.

In colleges the written examination has greater importance, because recitations in history are there antiquated; but the examination is commonly less searching than the "quiz," the "report," or the "paper." Some instructors give frequent hour examinations; others depend upon the mid-year and final tests. In all cases examinations must come in somewhere, in order to compel the student to "take account of stock" and to show what he can do with his whole set of acquirements. Here, also, questions must test the judgment rather than the memory; for the judgment cannot act without material, and, if it be found well trained, it will be because the memory has gathered something valuable upon which the judgment stands.

CHAPTER XI

HISTORICAL READING[1]

§ 75. Necessity of Reading

Classroom work of every kind depends upon the preparation and energy of the teacher; but reaction by the pupils is only to be had if they know something and think about it, and for history the source of knowledge is chiefly reading. Study of a textbook is necessary (§ 60); but from the youngest classes to the most advanced graduate courses reading is essential.

We are bidden to "beware of the man of one book": reading must be not only abundant, but also varied. Of course much that thus goes into the mind will not be retained; the endless detail of history easily slips away. Yet every book leaves a certain impression, though the source of that impression be forgotten; and from much reading results a residuum of fact and conclusion which lasts a long time, and perhaps a lifetime.

For young pupils there must be some selection indicated, with alternatives. For such pupils there is now a considerable literature of legends and stories suited to very young minds. Early acquaintance with the personal and dramatic side of history tends to make it interesting throughout.

Where large classes use one reference library and there is pressure on the books, lists of selected readings are useful. For detailed courses of lectures, students will find advantageous sets of more elaborate references, arranged by topics in the order of the lectures. Three systems — consecutive reading according to the student's judgment, general readings of selected passages on general subjects, and topical readings on special subjects — will be described in the following sections.

[1] A somewhat fuller discussion of this subject, with specific illustrations on the general principles, and an elaborate set of general readings broken up into about twenty-five subjects, will be found in the *Guide*, 1st ed. (1896), §§ 54–64.

§ 76. Consecutive Reading

Some young people early acquire the habit of browsing in books and of miscellaneous reading. Such interest, if directed toward history, may lead to a permanent taste for historical material. For advanced students, who wish to get a view of the literature of the subject and to compare diverging views, the best method is to take the books that seem from inspection most promising, and to read one after the other, making such comparisons as suggest themselves, and widening the field of the lectures. Care should be taken to include some contemporary material; for sometimes a chapter of original material freshens the mind as much as a volume of a secondary work, and leaves a more distinct impression.

Even among children it is well to encourage a habit of looking into books and selecting something that attracts for itself; but a few books well read are to them more important than a large amount of material skimmed.

§ 77. Topical Reading [1]

In Parts IV to VI of this work will be found a series of topics covering, in general, the whole field of American history. These may be used in connection with courses of lectures or lessons (§ 9), or in the preparation of written work. The effort is to digest and classify the more valuable part of the immense literature of the subject. The student's notebook should be so arranged as to bring notes on lectures and material from the topical readings together.

This system of topical reading, more than that just described (§ 76), makes the student acquainted with a variety of books, and is especially convenient in leading direct to the sources.

§ 78. Conference System

The principal obstacle to the establishment of a system of collateral reading, in connection with the proper use of a textbook, lies in the difficulty of properly testing such work. Written

[1] Detailed sets of topical readings in connection with a list of lectures may be found in A. B. Hart, *Manual* (1908), §§ 28–133.

examinations are hard to apply, unless all the members of a class read the same books, as in the method described in § 88. When a college teacher feels the need of a better acquaintance with his class, the "conference system" may be employed. This method consists in giving out references to books, or parts of books, at the beginning of each month or other convenient unit of time. Sometimes all students are required to read in the designated books on one topic, with an option as to other topics; more often, reading on several topics is required; but there is almost always a considerable choice given as to both topics and books. The amount of reading required is stated at so many hundred pages, — an amount which the teacher may regard as a reasonable requirement in addition to the study of the textbooks, map-making exercises, and work in the classroom.

After the students have had a chance to make a substantial beginning in this reading, appointments for conferences are made at only a few hours' notice. At these conferences each student is alone with the instructor or assistant for fifteen minutes, a period sufficiently long to enable a practiced questioner to assess with some degree of accuracy a student's intelligence, power of application, and diligence. There is also time to help the well-meaning though plodding student, or to give an unpleasant five minutes to the lazy or negligent. The instructor may set a student to a specified task to be performed within certain hours, and in this way, by special drill, train a well-meaning student to overcome lack of application or slovenly habits of thinking or reading. The teacher should keep a careful record of these conferences, the number of which may be apportioned according to the student's needs. The bright, hard-working pupil requires slight assistance, and may be left to work out his own salvation; on the other hand, the young person of dormant mind and no habits of work can be held rigidly to account. The method requires a good deal of the instructor's time, but not more than a properly conducted system of written work demands.

§ 79. How to use Books

Many persons who have read widely have little notion how to go to work to find a book on a given subject, or how to reach a

specific point within a book when found. As has been already suggested in the paragraph on the use of libraries (§ 57), the first thing is to learn how to use printed or card catalogues. Some libraries separate the author entries from the subjects; others have but one alphabet, in which appear both authors and topics. The most approved method is the "dictionary catalogue," which breaks the general subject up into small topics, and distributes these in their alphabetical places, with numerous cross references.

In noting the title of a book for which search is to be made, the author's full name, if obtainable, should be set down, then a sufficient extract from the title to identify the book; it is usual to add the place of publication (sometimes the publisher), the edition (if more than one), and the date. These particulars all add to the probability that the right book will be found. Sometimes the necessary particulars are not stated in the catalogue examined, but are obtainable from some other printed catalogue. The title on the outside of the book — "binder's title" — is not taken into account in bibliographical work.

Having secured the book, the next step is to get at its contents. The title page is often so descriptive as to tell at a reading whether anything on the specified topic is to be found within. The preface is, or should be, a guide to the author's purpose and point of view. A good table of contents opens up the work at once; and a single index of persons and subjects, with brief intimations of the particular thing to be found at a particular page, is, like punctuality, "the politeness of kings." If contents and index are both defective, there may be no resource but to turn the leaves in rapid skimming.

In making notes upon books and writing down references, it should be remembered that there is no other proper form of reference than the name of the author, followed by a significant part of the title page title of the book, with the volume, and the page or section, sometimes the chapter. *E.g.* Jefferson Davis [or J. Davis], *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government* [or simply *Confederate Government*], I, 107–212; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, ch. vii. Any briefer labor-saving form will return to plague the user; and general references to back up specific points are more than useless, — they are offensive. A little care taken

with the form of reference while the book is in the hands may save time, trouble, and vexation.

If the book is not likely to be seen again, it is well to take full notes once for all, including any quotations that may be needed. If the book can be had at any time, it will often serve the investigator's purpose to make skeleton notes, with references to be filled out later if necessary. Whenever a quotation is made, it should be carefully protected by quotation marks; it should be literal, so far as it goes, in punctuation, spelling, capitalization, and italicizing; every addition of the note taker should be included in brackets; and omissions should be denoted by ellipses. Less careful methods may cause a confusion of original and quoted matter, or may result in misrepresentation.

§ 80. Secondary and Primary Materials

A book on history is likely to be looked on as a repository of sacred wisdom hardly second to the omniscient "teacher says so." The high school and even the grammar school pupil may, however, be made clearly to apprehend the difference between first-hand, second-hand, and third-hand historical work. As soon as books are regularly studied, the child should be made to understand that some of them contain statements made by persons who were alive at the time the things happened and so had opportunities to know what was going on; that other books are written by persons who have carefully studied the original records; and that still others are compiled from the secondary writers. The ordinary learners, whether school children, high school pupils, or college students, must depend chiefly for their knowledge on good, condensed secondary books, particularly textbooks; but there is no reason why they should not all have the clear notion that every such discussion is in considerable part simply a series of general statements based upon actual occurrences, incidents, and personal traits which the writer of the book has found either in other secondary writers or preferably in sources.

§ 81. Use of Sources

To this distinction between materials much attention has been paid, particularly in the modern discussions of historical method.

The *Report of the Committee of Ten* (§ 11) laid stress on original materials in schools. The New England History Teachers' Association has published a detailed *Report on the Use of Historical Sources in Schools* (§ 22), with specific references to such collections of sources as schools might be expected to possess; and some of the textbooks which print marginal references insert as the narrative proceeds titles of sources cognate to the text.

The use of sources in the lower schools must necessarily be limited, from considerations of time, expense, and difficulty. There are a few series of source readers, among them one compiled by A. B. Hart, and published in four volumes under the titles, I, *Colonial Children;* II, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution;* III. *How our Grandfathers Lived;* and IV, *Romance of the Civil War* (N.Y., 1902–1903). For grammar and high schools there are several source books (§ 48). For high school and older pupils the most convenient sources are collected in the books described above (§ 48).

The point is that it is impossible for the learner to found all or most of his knowledge on sources; even the trained historian, if he could trace the origins of his knowledge, would realize that a good part of it came from other secondary writers. The value of sources in schools is to give life and vitality to the study. The hardest thing in historical teaching is to make young people realize that they are talking about human beings whose hopes, experiences, and degrees of success were very much like those of the present generation. To this end sources are the sharpest and most suggestive material. The record of a New England town meeting, a familiar letter of Thomas Jefferson, an account of Lincoln's Gettysburg speech by one who heard it, makes the reader live in the time about which he is trying to learn something.

Hence the proper use of sources is as collateral reading to enliven detailed and more prosaic textbooks; and as material for oral or written reports. From sources, also, may be drawn the data for the illustrative work suggested in § 66.

CHAPTER XII

LECTURES

§ 82. Talks by Teachers

In school work the lesson must be directed, enlarged, and enforced by the teacher. Here his superior knowledge and ability to group material, and his power of clear statement may come in to supplement the textbooks. If recitations are to be more than repetition, however (§ 59), the teacher's part must not be a mere "pour in" of additional facts. To the old difficulty that teachers talked too little to their pupils in history may succeed an over amount of talk, in which the whole matter is arranged and subdivided so that the pupil has nothing to do but to open his mouth and swallow the lumps of wisdom. Talk must not take the place of quick, sharp question and answer, or of the thought-provoking inquiry as to the causes and effects of the events passing under review.

The teacher may often describe places or scenes to which there is allusion in the text, may bring in parallels from other fields of history, may add illustrations and incidents to give life to the story and cause it to be remembered. He should not often take up the whole time with information or comment. The object of the teacher is always to teach pupils to think about what they read or hear, rather than to force upon them the passive reception of historical matter. In general, lecture methods are out of place in lower grades, and are rarely admissible in secondary schools. The "talk" should be occasional, pointed, and a clear addition to other available material.

§ 83. Formal Lectures

In college work the lecture has an important place, though always in connection with reading and written work. In many

historical fields the material is so little organized that a set of carefully prepared lectures may be the only means of clearing up the subject. In such cases the reading is intended to fill out the details, and to complete the view of important phases. A good general book serves to enforce the connection of the parts of the subject.

Where there is already a body of available literature on a subject, the lecturer hesitates to repeat the outline facts; he likes to throw upon his hearers the responsibility of reading the narrative for themselves. The lecture then serves to bring out principles, to show the relation between the parts of the subject, to indicate causes and effects, and to elucidate motives. So far as a lecture is thrown into a connected narrative form, it should illustrate the course of the history and thus correlate the different books.

In lectures, also, it is possible to use more freedom than in printed work, — to bring in the little incidents which are typical of character or manners, to accentuate evidence on a disputed point. Short, vigorous quotations add life and point to a lecture; but long ones should be avoided, as they destroy interest.

Care should be taken not to talk over the heads of students, and also not to talk to them as children, unacquainted with the ordinary course of American history. Too much pains cannot be taken to bring out the essential things in a period, and to suggest the underlying conditions of the life of the people, which are the basis of history.

§ 84. Student's Note Taking in Lectures

Lectures of value are always so far different from the books on the same subject that the student needs to take notes. The practice trains the mind to grasp principles and to condense them into brief statement. A good notebook cements the parts of the course together, and may be useful to the student in later study or in his own teaching. The notebook should further be so conducted as to leave space for the entry of brief abstracts from the reading. The following suggestions may prove helpful to students and to teachers who wish to put their material together in a permanent and convenient form:

1. Have a regular SYSTEM.

2. If you have worked out a system of YOUR OWN which satisfies you, do not change it.

3. SHORTHAND is not a great convenience, unless the notes are afterwards put into a form which may be read by any one.

4. A system of recognizable ABBREVIATIONS is desirable.

5. Take notes ALL THE TIME during the lecture.

6. A word-for-word reproduction of what you hear is much less valuable to you than your own CONDENSED FORM, embodying the lecturer's ideas.

7. Distinguish in your own mind the HEADS OF THE LECTURE as it proceeds, and paragraph your notes accordingly.

8. Aim to set down the SUBSTANCE OF GENERAL STATEMENTS in your own words, rather than to note a part of each sentence.

9. Practice getting the EXACT WORDS of significant phrases or quotations.

10. If you miss something important, ASK TO HAVE IT REPEATED.

11. If you lose a lecture, FILL UP THE BLANK immediately from the notebook of a fellow student.

12. After each lecture, go over your notes and clearly INDICATE THE HEADS: (*a*) by putting catchwords in the margin; or (*b*) by underlining words.

13. Once a week REVIEW the notes taken since the previous review.

14. Make out a brief TABLE OF CONTENTS, as you go along, referring to pages of your notebook.

A good set of notes should thus be a sort of elaborated syllabus of the course; and, if it include abstracts and quotations from collateral books, it will serve always to recall to the student's mind what he has once heard, read, and pondered. But no self-respecting instructor allows the notes of his lectures alone to be sufficient preparation for examinations, or to become in any way the sole test of diligence and knowledge. No instructor can afford to let his own words go out as the only or final utterance on a question; comparison of views and a filling out of details must be exacted by the required reading and written work (§§ 87–95).

§ 85. Investigator's Note Taking

Every advanced student should devise for himself a system of note taking; and, having once devised a satisfactory method, he should adhere to it at all hazards. The one thing that will seriously impair the usefulness of any system, how good soever it may be in other respects, is the use of a notebook with fixed leaves. Separate sheets, cards, or pieces of paper are indispensable; and only one topic should be noted on one piece of paper. The main desiderata of a good system of note taking are, that it should be (1) self-indexing, (2) portable, (3) always available: doubtless no system fills all these requirements. The following are three methods known to be employed by well-known and successful students of American history:

I. 1. Use a notebook, or, better, loose sheets of note paper of uniform size ruled in three vertical columns: a narrow one next to the outer edge; about one half of the width in a middle column; about one third in an inner column. Let there be a broad horizontal line an inch or more from the top. The sheets to be $10\frac{1}{2} \times 8$ inches.

2. Enter your notes in the middle column; dates and headings (if desired) in the outer column.

3. Enter abstracts, quotations from later readings, queries, and comments in the inner column, each opposite the place in the main notes which it illustrates.

4. Across the top of the page write a running heading in two, three, or four members, summarizing the matter on the page: *e.g.* "Methods — Lectures — Note Taking"; or "France — Diplomacy — X. Y. Z."

5. Begin to write on the right side of the open book or sheets of paper, and begin each distinct general head on a new leaf or half sheet.

6. Each leaf, being thus complete in itself, may at any time be detached and used in another connection; or other leaves may be inserted without disturbing the logical connection.

7. Keep kindred half sheets together in a whole sheet on the outside of which is docketed the general subject.

8. Such sets of material may be combined in a larger set in a cover of different color, which may be docketed with the combined subject.

9. Arrange and rearrange your material thus classified, in analytic form, but never index it.

II. 1. Use loose sheets of paper $3\frac{1}{2} \times 4\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

2. Write on only one side of each sheet.

3. Do not rewrite notes once taken.

4. Attach abstracts or quotations from your later reading to your first piece of paper on that topic with one of the many convenient fasteners made for the purpose, or with a common pin.

5. Across the top of the first page write a running heading.

6. Begin to write near the upper left-hand corner of the sheet.

7. Each leaf or collection of leaves, being thus complete in itself, may at any time be taken from its original place and used in another connection; or other leaves may be introduced without disturbing the arrangement.

These pieces of paper and collections of sheets can either be stood on their lower edges in boxes, or be held together by rubber bands. The notes on a large number of books and on many topics occupy little space, and are easily arranged and rearranged.

III. 1. Take the first piece of paper that comes to hand.

2. Make such notes on it as one desires.

3. Have some recognized mode of arrangement, — chronologically by countries or divisions of countries; or follow the arrangement of some familiar and well-indexed book, which will thus serve as a key.

4. Arrange your notes once a week, according to this system, in large paper envelopes or portfolios and stand them in boxes.

This method requires no special kind of paper, indexes itself, is not cumbersome, and is cheap. Its efficiency depends, however, on the skill with which the classification is made and the persistency with which it is adhered to. Whenever material can be arranged chronologically by topics, this system has been found to work well. It may be added that two of the largest works on American history have been prepared on this scheme.

§ 86. Giving out References

To aid the student in reading, it is a common and useful practice during the lecture to give out references, more or less specific, to the best literature on the topic under discussion. Some lecturers mention books in the course of the lecture; others put the references on the blackboard; others prepare them in multiplying process and distribute them; others arrange them in print, and require the students to provide themselves with sets; others use some published topical outline. There is something to be said for and against each of these systems. On the one hand, too rigid an adherence to a printed outline interferes with a lecturer's proper relations and influence with his class; on the other hand, the copying of long lists of books from the lecturer or the blackboard sacrifices valuable time.

A good method is for the students to have at their desks copies of a printed set of references to which the lecturer may refer when he pleases, — lists giving biographical and other details which show how far an author had had exceptional opportunities to know the truth. Information of this kind adds life to a list of books, and often arouses attention which might otherwise remain dormant. The lecturer should especially point out such authors as disagree with his positions, and should encourage the reading of books written from a point of view other than his own.

In whatever way the system is carried out, the references should be unmistakable, — that is, author and title should be so clearly indicated that no confusion can arise. If part of the references are specific, to volume and pages, much more reading will be done by students. The indispensable habit of searching among books for a point of view to one's mind, the useful dipping into books, the acquaintance with many authors, — these advantages may be gained from the various forms of written work which will now be described.

CHAPTER XIII

WRITTEN WORK[1]

§ 87. Written Reviews

NEITHER the acquirement of facts nor the discussion of their relations is all that is required in teaching history: there must be some reaction by the pupils' minds, and written work has the advantage of training both the historical and the literary sense. The simplest form of such work is to call for a written review, without previous announcement. Each pupil is thus tested, and has the opportunity to think over what he has studied. A list of very short questions will bring out the knowledge of detail; but a better system is to set two or three general questions, from which the child may choose, and to expect him in his answer to show that he can use intelligently what has gone before.

§ 88. Brief Written Recitations

In addition to examinations (see § 74), it is desirable to devise some regular written exercise which will lay more stress on judgment and connection of events and less on detached facts, and which will not call for any other preparation than that of regular daily work. Such exercises should preclude cram, and fit into the ordinary class hours, whether recitations or lectures. Nothing better has been devised than the system of requiring brief written answers to one or two questions especially chosen to test the judgment.

Suitable questions ought to be on some novel phase of a general subject with which the pupil is familiar. In many cases a child's reasoning will be imperfect and his results crude; but one can-

[1] A somewhat fuller treatment of this subject, with specific illustrations of the general principles, may be found in the *Guide*, 1st ed. (1896), §§ 65–72. At § 70 is a detailed account of the "Special Report" system.

not begin too early to expect some thought and comparison. Children, who form judgments about the people among whom they live, may easily be taught that history is a record of people who lived and thought very much as we do now. In high schools the questions may take a broader range, adapted to the age of the pupils.

§ 89. Classroom Papers [1]

The system of requiring written answers to questions in class is especially applicable to college classes. In some such classes there is a regular weekly "paper" on some subject in constitutional practice which has been brought out in the lectures and reading. With large classes it is desirable to give out a special reading list in advance, such as may be found among the topics in Parts IV–VI. Here is an example of a set of such questions actually used by a class after a study of the arguments of Hamilton and Jefferson upon the First National Bank of 1791:

Implied Powers

1. May Congress constitutionally charter a life insurance company?
2. May Congress constitutionally vote money for aid to sufferers from forest fires?
3. May Congress constitutionally grant money in support of state schools?
4. May Congress constitutionally vote pensions to former government clerks?

§ 90. Topical System

Perhaps the most fruitful method for pupils of the grammar school age and above is the "topical," — the assignment of very limited subjects on which pupils are to prepare themselves with special care, using a variety of material. The advantages of such a system are obvious: it breaks up servile adherence to the limited text of a single book; it trains in the use of books, and in the selection of pertinent facts out of a mass of material; it gives practice in bibliographical work, by the search for books and articles which bear on the subject in hand; it leads to the

[1] This system is described in detail in A. B. Hart, *Manual* (1908), §§ 7, 134–164.

comparison of authors, the explanation of discrepancies, the weighing of authorities; it adds life and interest to the class work.

The methods of topical work are described in many places. It requires a library, however small; it needs careful supervision from the teacher; pupils must be warned against the mere copying of extracts or the stringing together of paraphrases, and be taught to analyze their subjects for themselves and to arrange their results in systematic form. It is well to assign separate subjects for each pupil; this prevents collusion, and gives each a sense of the importance of his study. Every piece of work ought to include some reference to sources, if only to a volume of extracts (see § 81). The system is in essence like laboratory methods in botany and physics, and, like such methods, needs to be accompanied by systematic teaching.

§ 91. Subjects for Topics

The success of any scheme of topical study is dependent on a judicious choice of subjects: they must not be too long; they must require substantial work; they must be assigned with due reference to the available material; they must be capable of solution, for it discourages a pupil to find nothing on his subject, however much training he may get from his search.

The first and simplest kind of topical work, where there is a good library, is the bibliographical, — the collection of a body of references on some subject. This gives invaluable training in the use of indexes, tables of contents, library catalogues, of special indexes to periodicals or classes of literature, of cyclopedias, biographical dictionaries, and the like aids. It also fixes the habit of selecting out of a book the small portion which really bears on the subject in hand. The best subjects for such work are biographies of great men; for catalogues usually take more account of names than of matters. Lists of notable men are numerous. In A. B. Hart, *Manual* (1908) is a select alphabetical list (§ 236), and a list classified by states (§ 237). Some of the textbooks contain similar lists.

Another excellent group of subjects is the geographical, — the territorial history of a place, or a map of a colony or region or state, or group of colonies or states, at any given period. Political

data may also be worked out in graphic maps: such would be the distribution of votes on some question in Congress, the distribution of electoral votes, the states that have or have not Australian ballot laws, etc.

Very useful subjects, especially in the lower grades, are little biographies of public men. Such work may be done with a very few books, if no more are available, and may often have a romantic human interest.

The more complete form of topical work in schools will usually be the study of episodes in history. Here the pupil must always be held down to a search for the truth by comparing conflicting accounts; and at the same time he must learn to state his results clearly, methodically, and so as to bring out the important points.

For more advanced students, a variety of topical subjects may be found, — as constitutional discussions, accounts of assemblages, or phases of social institutions, such as the Puritan Church, or the early colleges, or slavery in a colony or a state. The statistics of finance, commerce, and population may be worked out in tables. Biography may be studied by tracing the attitude of some public man on a great question throughout his life. A long list of topics, principally on constitutional, diplomatic, and governmental subjects, will be found in A. B. Hart, *Manual* (1908), §§ 231–299.

Throughout, the wise teacher will try to connect the topics with what may be presumed to interest a particular pupil, — his local history, his family, or his birthplace.

§ 92. Composition in Historical Subjects

Written work is not only a training in history: it may be so used as to build up a good English style. Teachers are often hard put to it to find suitable subjects for compositions on fresh topics, in fields where there is material available for something more than a rude statement of fleeting ideas. From many of the groups of subjects suggested for topical work (§ 91) may be chosen excellent composition subjects; and a requirement that the returns shall be made in good English, and shall be criticized for the style, will make the same paper serve the double purpose of historical training and training in English.

In setting questions, care should always be taken not to put them too high for children to reach, always to direct them to some point, and to be satisfied with moderate evidence of a power to rearrange the results and to state them in an original form. In many schools the teacher of history is also the teacher of composition, and can make the two subjects run parallel.

§ 93. Special Report System

Some account of topical work, drawn from experience, may be useful to other teachers. So far as possible, each pupil or student should have a separate individual topic, to avoid copying and to give point to the work. A vital lesson which may best be taught in topical work is that specific references must accompany every important statement, — author, brief title (from inspection of the title-page), volume, and page or section.

The material for these "reports" should be arranged in a select library, containing secondary books and treatises, sets of colonial records, and a set of United States documents, statutes, Supreme Court decisions, Congressional records, and the like. Students are expected to work for themselves. The attempt is made to connect each man's subject with his own family or local history and interests.

Having finished a series of such reports, students are expected to be at any time ready to find materials on any subject in United States history, to use the government publications, to state results clearly and methodically, and to apply constitutional principles to new problems.

These specific methods apply to advanced students; but they are of a kind suitable for secondary and lower schools. Exactness in stating the subject; care in supervising; aid where the pupil needs it; exhaustion of the material available; care; accuracy; neat form in arranging the results; punctuality in handing in the work, — these are the essentials of such work anywhere, and are attainable in all grades.

§ 94. Essay or Thesis System

In this system, which is used in several courses in history at Harvard University, the attempt is made to combine training in

historical methods of investigation with practice in writing English. Several essays are required from each student. At first sight it might seem to be a matter of considerable difficulty to find suitable subjects for investigation for one hundred and fifty or two hundred students. As a matter of fact, the task is lightened by using the answers of the students to written inquiries as a basis of assignment.

The essays are written under the immediate supervision of an assistant, who has stated hours for conference in the library. For essay purposes the class is divided into sections of about twenty students each. The subjects for one section are given out at one time, and the work of all the students in any one section is due at dates specified in advance, as follows: references, one week from the day the subject is given out; notes, two weeks later; and the essay in its final form, one week after the notes are approved, or about four weeks from the day on which the subjects are assigned. The references are to be found by going to a section in Parts IV–VI, in this *Guide*, and consulting the bibliographies mentioned in the section referred to. The student is expected to look over the books and to tell the assistant which works he intends to use. The assistant endeavors to impress on him the necessity of consulting the original source in each case. The books mentioned under "General" in the section referred to usually contain enough information to enable one to understand the relations of his topic. Often, however, it is necessary to consult the references under "Special"; and sometimes the assistant or the instructor is obliged to explain what is desired, and not infrequently to change the subject by limiting the inquiry to some specific part of the general topic assigned; or, on the other hand, to enlarge its scope on account of lack of materials.

These preliminaries being arranged to the satisfaction of the assistant and the student, the authorities are next examined, extracts, abstracts, and digests prepared, and submitted to the assistant for his approval. He frequently suggests other sources to be looked into, and sometimes requires the work to be done anew in whole or in part. The students receive credit for this work of seeking and note taking, the assistant bearing in mind how much aid has been given to the student. The essay is now

written in the student's own words, and is based entirely on the notes, which form an appendix, and are cited in footnotes to the essay to justify every important statement made. These processes are precisely those on which every historical work must be built. The writing of these essays sharpens the faculties, arouses the student's interest, cultivates his judgment, and shows him how history is written.

§ 95. Monographs

The highest and most difficult kind of written work for students in history is the preparation of monographs, — complete studies of some subject, with the use of all the material in print which bears upon it, and of manuscripts if necessary. This is work to be done only in seminary courses, under the careful guidance of instructors who are specialists in their fields.

Two kinds of subjects are usual in such work, — an extensive study of some brief episode, or a tracing of some line of investigation through a long period of history. The former would resemble a chapter out of a large book, the latter cuts a cross-section through a long succession of events; hence the second type is probably the most helpful to a person who is still a student.

The first step in either case is to clear the ground by making a bibliography of the subject, including all sources and all valuable secondary authorities; the periodical indexes should also be examined for contributions to or discussions on the subject. At the same time some general account, or accounts, should be read, in order to give some idea of the proportions and relations of the parts of the subject.

Next comes the collection of material, a long and laborious process. Notes should be taken on loose sheets, on only one side, and with exact references as one goes along (see § 85). At this stage is the opportunity to compare, weigh, and offset evidence.

Later on, the work must be put into careful written form; well-prepared notes, arranged by topics, will now reward the investigator. The subject must be carefully subdivided and analyzed; material must fall into its proper place, and must be properly subordinated. Exact references to precise footnotes, containing extracts from rare material, must appear at every step. It is an

excellent practice to enrich the text as it is written with quotations from sources, or with occasional characteristic passages out of secondary authorities.

It is well to append the text of rare and important documents, exactly transcribed, and to throw into tabular or other form such facts as cannot easily appear in the body of the work. If the work is printed, an index is an indispensable part of it.

PART IV. COLONIAL HISTORY AND THE REVOLUTION, 1492–1783

CHAPTER XIV

DISCOVERY AND LATIN COLONIZATION, 1492–1783

§ 96. Physiography of North America

Summary. — Physical conformation of North America: characteristics of the Atlantic Slope, of the Great Valleys, of the Pacific Slope; soils, mineral deposits, climate, rainfall; comparison with European lands, especially as to climate and rainfall. — Products: tobacco, Indian corn, cotton, potatoes, wheat, indigo, rice, lumber and naval stores, coal, iron, precious metals, cattle, sheep, hides and furs, etc. — Effects of this environment on men of European origin.

General. — F. J. Turner, in *American Journal of Sociology*, XIII, 661–675, with comment by F. W. Blackmar and others, *ibid.*, 811–819; N. S. Shaler, in Winsor, *America*, IV, pp. i–xxx, especially xx–xxx; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, 1–5; L. Farrand, *Basis of American History*, 1–69; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences in American History*; Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographical Conditions*.

Special. — N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in America*, *and United States;* J. D. Whitney, *United States;* F. Ratzel, *Vereinigten Staaten;* Elisée Reclus, *The Earth and its Inhabitants*, *North America*, III; Jedidiah Morse, *American Universal Geography*, I; B. A. Gould, *Investigations in the Military and Anthropological Statistics of American Soldiers;* J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions of the United States* (National Geographic Monographs, I, No. 3); C. R. Van Hise, *Conservation of National Resources*, 208–211, 268–277.

Sources and Bibliography. — See § 31.

§ 97. Geography of North America, 1492–1775

Summary. — Physiography (see § 96). — Claims of European powers (§§ 101, 105, 106, 108, 112, 147, 157). — Partitions in 1493

(§ 101) and 1632 (§ 108). — Exclusion of the Dutch and the Swedes (§§ 122, 123). — Disputes with the Spaniards. — Exclusion of the French (§§ 147, 148). — Unoccupied territory. — Subdivisions of the English possessions, and intercolonial boundary controversies (§§ 115, 118, 120, 121, 125, 131–133, 137, 138, 140, 146, 149). — Partitions in 1763 (§§ 110, 148, 149) and 1783 (§ 157). — 1776–1783, Claims of the states and cessions (§§ 158, 167). — 1730–1775, Westward movement (§ 162).

General. — The standard histories: Hildreth, *United States*, I, II; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision); A. B. Hart, *The American Nation*, I–VIII; etc.

Special. — Winsor, in his *America*, also his *Columbus*, *Cartier*, and *Mississippi Basin* (all these works are rich in cartography; they are analyzed in the sections noted above); C. R. Beazley, *The Dawn of Modern Geography* (reproduces earliest maps); Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, chs. ii–viii; Joseph Blunt, *Historical Sketch of the Confederacy*, chs. i, ii; John Fiske, *Discovery of America;* C. P. Lucas, *Historical Geography of the British Colonies*, II, Introduction; Hinsdale, *The Right of Discovery*, in Ohio Historical and Archæological Society, *Quarterly*, II, 349–379.

Sources. — The collections of treaties, statutes, decisions, etc., are noted in §§ 34, 43, 44. Some of the more important documents may be found as follows:

Treaties: Extracts of portions of the more important treaties dealing with America are printed in William MacDonald's *Select Charters*. — St. Germain, 1632: *Recueil des Traitez de Paix* (Amsterdam, 1700), III, 328. — Neutrality, 1686: Channing, *United States*, II, 153. — Ryswick, 1697: *Memorials of the English and French Commissaries concerning the Limits of Nova Scotia, or Acadia;* Dumont, *Corps Diplomatique*, VII, 399; G. Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties between Great Britain and other Powers*. Extracts in W. Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 265; David Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario* (ed. 1877), 143. — Utrecht, 1713: Dumont, *Corps Diplomatique*, VIII, 339; Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties*, I, 378. Extracts in Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 3; Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario* (ed. 1877), 158. — Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748: Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties*. Extracts in Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 265. — Peace of Paris, 1763: Martens et Cussy, *Recueil de Traités*, I, 30. The portions relating to boundaries are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5; Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 61. — Royal Proclamation of 1763: *Annual Register*, 1763, pp. 208–213; Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario* (ed. 1873), 192; Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 67; C. W. Alvord, *Genesis of the Proclamation of 1763* (paper read before the Michigan Pioneer and His-

torical Society, Dec. 13, 1907); *Canadian Archives*, 1906, p. 119; *American History Leaflets*, No. 5. — Quebec, Act, 1774: *Statutes at Large of Great Britain* (London, 1776); W. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V, 256; Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 90. — Treaty of Peace, 1782–1783: *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and other Powers* (Washington, 1889; appended to the "Preliminary Articles" in this publication will be found the "Separate Article" as to Florida). For the commissions of the governors of West Florida, see Duane's *Laws of the United States*, I, 450; they are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5.

Charters: *Charters and Constitutions;* H. W. Preston, *Documents Illustrative of American History;* Samuel Lucas, *Charters of the Old English Colonies in America* (London, 1850); *Old South Leaflets.* Most of the important portions of the charters are in MacDonald's *Select Charters;* the geographical portions are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 15. The Maryland charter, in the Latin original, is in *Charters and Constitutions;* English translations are in Bacon's *Laws of Maryland*, and in Scharf's *Maryland.*

Maps: *Epochs of American History, The Colonies*, Nos. 1–4; *Formation of the Union*, Nos. 2, 3 (the same maps are in *Epoch Maps*, Nos. 1–6); Hart, *The American Nation*, I–VIII (the maps are in part by D. M. Matteson); G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era;* W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution;* H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies;* E. Channing, *Students' History of the United States.*

Maps; Facsimiles: Besides the facsimiles given by Winsor in his *America, Mississippi Basin*, and other works, and those contained in the collections of facsimiles and sketches noted below, there are several photographic reproductions of important maps on the scale of the originals. There are also numerous facsimiles illustrative of particular points scattered through the descriptive works. Some of the more important of the collections are mentioned in the following list; they relate for the most part to the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. For reproductions of later maps Winsor's *Mississippi Basin* is the principal storehouse. The titles of single maps and important collections illustrating particular points will be found in the later sections of this *Guide*, especially §§ 100–103, 106, 108, 109, 111, 147, etc.

Theobald Fischer, editor, *Raccolta di Mappamondi e Carte nautiche del XIII al XVI secolo* (Venice, F. Ongania, 1886), and accompanying text; E. F. Jomard, *Les Monuments de la Géographie* (Paris, 1866); J. G. Kohl, *Discovery of Maine* (*Documentary History of Maine*, I); K. Kretschmer, *Die Entdeckung Amerikas* (Berlin, 1892), and Atlas; F. Kunstmann, *Entdeckung Amerikas* (Munich, 1859), and Atlas; J. Lelewel, *Géographie du*

Moyen Age (Brussels, 1852), and Atlas; G. Marcel, *Reproductions de Cartes et de Globes* (Paris, 1893; 17th and 18th centuries, Atlas and text); [Frederick Muller & Co.], *Remarkable Maps of the XV–XVII Centuries reproduced in their original size* (Amsterdam, 1894); A. E. Nordenskiöld, *Fac-simile Atlas to the Early History of Cartography, with Reproductions of the most important Maps printed in the XV and XVI Centuries* (translated from the Swedish original by J. D. Ekelöf and C. R. Markham, Stockholm, 1889); Sophus Ruge, *Die Entwickelung der Kartographie von Amerika bis 1570* (Petermann's *Mitteilungen*, Ergänzungsheft, Nr. 106; the best compact collection of sketches for students; published in 1892 for 8 marks); Vicomte de Santarem, *Atlas composé de Mappemondes, de Portulans, et de Cartes Hydrographiques et Historiques depuis le VI jusqu'au XVII Siècle* (Paris, 1842–1853); H. Stevens, *Historical and Geographical Notes of the Early Discoveries in America* (New Haven, 1869); Vivien de Saint-Martin, *Histoire de la Géographie et des Découvertes Géographiques* (Paris, 1873; Atlas of 13 maps, 1874); E. L. Stevenson, *Maps Illustrating Early Discovery* (New Brunswick, N.J., 1903); A. B. Hulbert, *The Crown Collection of Photographs of American Maps* (Cleveland, 1904; Index, 1909).

Maps; Originals: The collection in the Harvard University Library is the best in America so far as the cartography of the country as a whole is concerned. The collection in the library of the Wisconsin Historical Society is rich in maps of the interior and of the earlier history of the West.

Among the separate maps in the former collection may be mentioned: Sanson, 1656; Delisle, 1689; Coronelli, 1689; Delisle, 1700, 1703, and 1718; Jaillot, 1719; Moll, 1715, 1720; Map drawn for the *Compagnie François Occident*, 1701–1720; D'Anville, 1746, 1755; Bowen, 1747; Evans, 1749; Huske, 1755; Kitchin, 1755 (two copies of this map giving different boundaries); Jeffrey's D'Anville, 1755; de Rouge, 1755; Jeffrey's, 1755; Mitchell, 1755; Covens et Mortier, 1757; Evans, 1758–1771; Palairet, 1759; Jeffrey's, 1762 (?); Kitchin, 1763; Bowen, 1763; Quebec, 1763, after English and French surveys; Bell, 1772; Pownall, 1776; Pownall's D'Anville, 1777; Faden, 1777; Brion de la Tour, 1778, 1779; Maps in Fitzmaurice's *Life of Shelburne*, 3, 170, 294; Delisle, 1782; Wallis, 1783; Faden, 1783; Andrews, 1783; Bowles, 1783; Lothe, 1784; Janvier, 1784.

Many of the most important of the early maps are contained in the several editions of Ptolemy's *Geography*, in De Laet's *Nieuwe Wereldt*, in Montanus's *Nieuwe Weereld*, and in the accounts of the voyages of the Spanish, French, and English seamen, and of the early explorers, as Captain John Smith (see §§ 102–115).

Bibliography. — See §§ 30–34. Winsor's works are in great measure a bibliography of the subject. See also his *Kohl Collection of Early Maps* (Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 19), and his *Bibliography of Ptolemy's Geography* (*ibid.*, No. 18); and see G. Marcel, *Catalogue des Documents Géographiques, exposés à la Section des Cartes et Plans de la Bibliothèque Nationale* (Paris, 1892).

§ 98. Archæology

Summary. — Evidences of the antiquity of man in North America: implements and bones found in the Trenton gravel; other such deposits; other remains of prehistoric man, — the "Lansing man" of Kansas, the Potter Creek caves in California, etc. — Credibility of these evidences. — Paleolithic man, as he is pictured by the archæologists. — Attempts made to connect prehistoric man with the Red Men of North America at the time of the Columbian discovery; Neolithic man, the skrellings, etc.

General. — Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 1–19; H. W. Haynes, in Winsor, *America*, I, ch. vi; G. F. Wright, *The Ice Age;* J. D. Baldwin, *Ancient America;* Nadaillac, *Prehistoric America.*

Special. — Cyrus Thomas, *Introduction to the Study of North American Archæology;* Gerard Fowke, *Stone Art* (Bureau of Ethnology, *13th Annual Report*, 1891–1892, pp. 57–178; W. H. Holmes, *Aboriginal Pottery of the Eastern United States* (Bureau of Ethnology, *20th Annual Report*, 1898–1899); Lucien Carr, *Mounds of the Mississippi Valley*, in *Report* of the Smithsonian Institution for 1891.

Sources. — E. G. Squier and E. H. Davis, *Ancient Monuments of the Mississippi Valley;* A. F. Bandelier, *Final Report of Investigations among the Indians of the Southwestern United States* (1880–1885), Part II (Archæological Institute of America, *Papers*, "American series," IV); the annual reports of the Bureau of Ethnology, especially that for 1890–1891, and those containing the monographs by J. W. Fewkes; C. B. Moore's papers in *Journal* of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia (these relate especially to the southeast; most of them are reprinted separately); F. W. Putnam, *Archæological and Ethnological Collections* (Wheeler's Survey, *Final Reports*, VII). The *American Anthropologist* also contains a large number of papers on archæological subjects.

Bibliography. — Winsor, in his *America*, I, 369–444, and the footnotes to Haynes's chapter; P. B. Watson, *Pre-Columbian Bibliography;* Farrand, *Basis of American History*, 276.

§ 99. The Aborigines

Summary. — The opposing theories of Prescott and others who rely on the "early American chroniclers," and of Lewis H. Morgan and his followers. — The leading points in the latter theory. — Indian ideas as to landholding, inheritance, and communism. — Theories as to the origin of the red race of America. — Social condition of the Indians on the Atlantic seaboard of North America in 1500–1600. — Effects on the Indians of the coming of the Europeans. — Difference in the treatment of the Indian problem by the Spanish, French, and English colonists. — Reaction of these several Indian policies on the colonists of the respective nations.

General. - Farrand, *Basis of American History* (among the maps is an excellent one showing the distribution of the American Indians by linguistic stocks about 1500; also in Bureau of Ethnology, *7th Report*, 1885–1886); Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 21–147.

Special. — F. W. Hodge, editor, *Handbook of American Indians North of Mexico* (Bureau of Ethnology, *Bulletin*, No. 30; also *House Docs.*, 59 Cong. 1 sess. No. 926); *Mexican and Central American Antiquities* (papers by various hands, in Bureau of Ethnology, *Bulletin*, No. 28); A. F. Bandelier's papers (on "Social Organization," "Art of Warfare of the Ancient Mexicans," etc.) in the second volume of *Reports* of the Peabody Museum of Archæology and Ethnology at Harvard University, also those in *Papers* of the Archæological Institute of America, and his *Outline of the Documentary History of the Zuñi Tribe* (*Journal of American Ethnology and Archæology*, III, 1–115); L. H. Morgan, *League of the Iroquois;* H. H. Bancroft, *Native Races of the Pacific Coast*, II, and *History of Mexico*, I.

Sources. — The early Spanish chroniclers (§ 102): especially Oviedo and Herrera; the early explorers, in *Documentos Inéditos;* Bernal Diaz del Castillo, *Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, translated by Lockhart; Sahagun, *Historia General de las Cosas de Nueva España;* Castañeda, *Relacion de la Jornada de Cibola . . . la qual fue el año de 1540*, translated, with other accounts, by G. P. Winship, as *The Coronado Expedition to New Mexico and the Great Plains* (Bureau of Ethnology, *14th Annual Report*, 1892–1893). — The French *mémoires* and early descriptions (§§ 106–110): especially Champlain, *Œuvres;* Cartier, *Narratives;* Laudonnière, *L'Histoire Notable de la Floride* (in English, in Hakluyt's *Principall Navigations*, III); the *Jesuit Relations;* Sagard, *Histoire du Canada*, or his *Grand Voyage du Pays des Hurons;* Lafitau, *Mœurs des Sauvages;*

Charlevoix, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, translated by J. G. Shea; Lescarbot, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France;* Perrot, *Mémoire sur les Mœurs . . . des Sauvages de l'Amérique;* Dumont, *Mémoires Historiques sur la Louisiane*, translated in French's *Historical Collections*, V; Margry, *Mémoires et Documents, pour servir à l'Histoire* (distrusted somewhat by scholars); French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida* (contains many extracts from the foregoing authorities, and many other important documents in English). — The English explorers and colonists (§§ 113–115, 127): especially Hariot's *Narrative*, and Captain John Smith's *True Relation;* the journals of Lewis and Clark's expedition (reprinted by Coues, McMaster, Thwaites, etc.); George Catlin, *Illustrations of the Manners, Customs, and Condition of the North American Indians;* Bartram, *Travels in the Carolinas;* Carver, *Travels through North America;* James Adair, *History of the American Indians;* G. P. Thruston, *Antiquities of Tennessee*; C. C. Jones, *Antiquities of the Southern Indians;* Heckewelder, *Account of the Indian Nations who once inhabited Pennsylvania* (originally published in the American Philosophical Society, *Transactions*, 1819); G. H. Loskiel, *Mission of the United Brethren among the Indians;* Cadwallader Colden, *History of the Five Nations of Canada* (Trail Makers series); Prince Maximilian, *Travels in the Interior of North America* (edited by Thwaites in his *Early Western Travels*, XXII–XXIV); Emma H. Blair, *Indian Tribes of the Upper Mississippi.*

Among the general collections covering the whole field may be mentioned De Bry, *Grands et Petits Voyages;* Purchas, *Pilgrimes;* Hakluyt, *Principall Navigations.* See also H. H. Bancroft, *Native Races*, IV; J. L. Stephens, *Incidents of Travel in Central America*, and *Incidents of Travel in Yucatan;* papers on Yucatan, Honduras, etc., in *Memoirs* of the Peabody Museum of Harvard University; D. Charnay, *Cités et Ruines Américaines* (translated as *Ancient Cities of the New World*); and many articles in *Papers* of the Archæological Institute of America, in *Annual Reports* and *Bulletins* of the Bureau of Ethnology (especially *Bulletin*, No. 30, *Handbook of American Indians*), in *Annual Reports* of the Smithsonian Institution, *Contributions to North American Ethnology*, the *American Anthropologist*, the *Journal of American Folk-Lore*, and among the publications of the American Journal of Natural History of New York, of the Field Columbian Museum of Chicago, and of the Department of Anthropology in the University of California.

Bibliography. — *Handbook of American Indians* (Bureau of Ethnology, *Bulletin*, No. 30), II, 1179–1221; Winsor, *America*, I, chs. iii, v, and the special works therein cited, especially H. H. Bancroft's *Native Races;* Winsor, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1895–1896, p. 327; J. C. Pilling's bibliographies in *Bulletins* of the Bureau

of Ethnology; Farrand, *Basis of American History*, ch. xviii; D. G. Brinton, *Aboriginal American Authors;* E. H. Blair, *Indian Tribes*, II, 301–357; and the footnotes to Bandelier's essays and books noted elsewhere. The general lists in W. I. Thomas's *Source Book for Social Origins*, 859–915, include a few books on North American Indians.

§ 100. Pre-Columbian Discoveries

Summary. — Geographical knowledge of the ancients: theories of Eratosthenes, Strabo, and others. — Idea of the sphericity of the earth during the Middle Ages. — Geographers of the fifteenth century: Toscanelli, Behaim, etc. — Stories of western lands: Atlantis, St. Brandan's Island, Antillia. — Pre-Columbian explorers: Asiatic peoples, the Fusang story, Welsh and Irish legends. — A.D. 1000, The Norse discovery, Leif the Lucky finds a western land. — Later voyages to Vinland. — Evidence on which our knowledge of these voyages rests: monuments, records, sagas. — Credibility of the sagas. — Story of the Zeni brothers. — The French fishermen.

General. — Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 148–218; Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, ch. ii; Channing, *United States*, I, 1–6; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 57.

Special. — A. M. Reeves, *Finding of Wineland the Good;* Torfæus, *Historiæ Vinlandiæ;* M. L. Fernald, *Notes on the Plants of Wineland the Good* (reprinted from *Rhodora*, 1910, No. 134); Rafn, *Antiquitates Americanæ;* Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*, ch. ii (a summary of Rafn's large work); Slafter, *Voyages of the Northmen;* W. H. Tillinghast, "Geographical Knowledge of the Ancients," in Winsor, *America*, I, ch. i; Winsor, "Pre-Columbian Explorations," in his *America*, I, ch. ii; Vining, *An Inglorious Columbus* (gives the different theories as to the Fusang myth); P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique jusqu'à la Mort de Christophe Colomb*, I (*Les Précurseurs de Colomb*); D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, chs. i, iii; Sir Daniel Wilson, *The Lost Atlantis*.

Sources. — Translations of the sagas, with phototypic facsimiles, are in Reeves's *Wineland*. Other translations may be found in the works of Rafn and Slafter, above mentioned, and in J. E. Olson and E. G. Bourne, *The Northmen, Columbus and Cabot* (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives"), 1–84. The important portions are printed from Reeves in *American History Leaflets*, No. 3. See also the *Saga of Olaf Tryggwason*, translated by J. Sephton. For the Zeno story, see Major's edition of

Nicolò Zeno, *Voyages of the Venetian Brothers, Nicolò and Antonio Zeno* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1873).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, I, 76–132; P. B. Watson, *Bibliography of the Pre-Columbian Discoveries of America* (in R. B. Anderson's *America not Discovered by Columbus*, 3d edition, 1883).

§ 101. Columbian Discoveries

Summary. — Birth and early career of Christopher Columbus. — His ideas as to the shape and size of the earth; whence came these ideas? — Attempts to get assistance for a western voyage. — Contract with the Spanish monarchs. — 1492, First voyage and discovery of Cuba, San Domingo, etc. — Theories as to the landfall. — 1493, Second voyage: Columbus as a colonizer. — 1498–1500, Third voyage: mouth of the Orinoco, island of Trinidad. — 1502–1504, Fourth voyage: east coast of Central America, Jamaica. — Character of Columbus, and his place in the world's history. — 1493, The Bull of Demarcation; its later history.

General. — Winsor, *America*, II, 1–23; E. G. Bourne, *Spain in America*, chs. ii–vi; Channing, *United States*, I, 6–25.

Special. — Winsor, *Christopher Columbus;* C. R. Markham, *Columbus;* W. Irving, *Columbus;* Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 335–516; Arthur Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America;* Harrisse, *Christophe Colomb;* Kayserling, *Christopher Columbus;* P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte*, II. On the landfall, see Markham, *Columbus;* Becher, *Landfall;* G. V. Fox, *Attempt to Solve the Problem*, etc. (United States Coast Survey, *Report*, 1880, Appendix xviii); J. B. Murdoch, in *Proceedings* of the United States Naval Institute for 1884.

Sources. — Henry Vignaud, *Toscanelli and Columbus;* J. B. Thacher, *Christopher Columbus* (3 vols., containing much interesting matter not always accurately translated); *Raccolta di Documenti e Studi* (6 pts. in 13 vols., Rome, 1892–1896); letters and journal of Columbus, in Major, *Select Letters of Columbus* (2d edition, Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1870); *Journal of Christopher Columbus* (during his first voyage), translated by C. R. Markham in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1893; Kettell, *Personal Narrative* (gives a translation of the journal); *American History Leaflets*, No. 1 (contains a translation of the letter to Santangel and portions of the journal); Columbus, *Letter to Santangel* (also in French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, 2d series, II, 145–152). See also Olson and Bourne, *The Northmen, Columbus, and Cabot*, 74–418; and the reprints and trans-

lations published by the Boston Public Library, the Lenox Library, and by Quaritch. For the Bull of Pope Alexander, see Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, Appendix; *Catholic Historical Researches*, III, 71; Navarrete, *Coleccion de los Viages*, II; Peschel, *Die Theilung der Erde unter Papst Alexander VI und Julius II*, Appendix; E. G. Bourne, "Historical Introduction" to *The Philippine Islands, 1493–1803* (55 vols., edited by E. H. Blair and J. A. Robertson), I, 19–87.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, II, 46–69, and *Columbus*, chs. i, ii; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 320–333; Channing, *United States*, I, 28–32.

§ 102. Companions and Successors of Columbus

Summary. — 1498–1512, Discovery and exploration along the northern coast of South America: 'Ojeda, Juan de la Cosa, Nicuesa, Bastidas. — 1510, Settlement on the Gulf of Darien. — 1513, Vasco Nuñez de Balboa discovers the Pacific. — Progress of discovery along the west coast: Peru (§ 104), Nicaragua. — 1508, Circumnavigation of Cuba, — 1518, Grijalva discovers Mexico. — 1519, Pineda discovers the mouth of the Mississippi.

General. — C. R. Markham, *Columbus*, 238–247; Bourne, *Spain in America*, chs. iv–xi; Channing, *United States*, I, 33–60.

Special. — W. Irving, *Companions of Columbus;* Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II; A. Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America;* H. H. Bancroft, *Central America*, I, especially ch. ii; J. G. Shea, "Ancient Florida," in Winsor, *America*, II, ch. iv; P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte*, II (*Les Contemporains de Colomb*); Ruge, *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen*.

Sources. — Oviedo, *Historia General* (edition printed by the Real Academia); Herrera, *Historia General* (translated by John Stevens); Peter Martyr, *Decades* (translated by Eden, reprinted by Arber in *The First Three English Books on America*). See also the collections of documents published by the Spanish government, especially *Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos relativos al Descubrimiento, Conquista, y Colonizacion de las Posésiones Españolas en América y Oceanïa* (55 vols., 1864–1900, edited by Pacheco, Cardenas, and others, and often cited from the early editors; vol. 33 is an index; after vol. 42 the title reads "de Ultramar" instead of "de América y Oceanïa"); Navarrete, *Viages Menores* (Vol. III of his *Coleccion de los Viages*), and *Biblioteca Maritima Española;* Bernal Diaz del Castillo, *Historia Verdadera;* Icazbalceta, *Coleccion de Documentos para la Historia de México; Coleccion de Librosque Tratan de América Raros ó Curiosos* (20 vols., 1891–1902); H. Ternaux-Compans, *Voyages*,

Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique.

MAPS. — Juan de la Cosa, 1500: Reproduced in the original size or in facsimile, in whole or in part, in many of the collections noted in § 97, especially Jomard, *Monuments*. Also see reduced sketches following the original in Winsor, *America*, II, 8; Weise, *Discoveries of America;* Humboldt, *Examen Critique*, V, and his essay in Ghillany's *Behaim;* Harrisse, *Découverte . . . de Terre-Neuve*, 18–25. — Cantino, 1502–1504: In Harrisse, *Les Corte-Real* (the American part in colors); the whole map is reproduced in black and white in E. L. Stevenson, *Maps Illustrating Early Discovery*, No. 1. — Ruysch, 1508: Facsimile in Winsor, III, 9, and in Weise; a copy of the original is in Harvard University Library. — For sketches of other early maps, see Winsor, *America*, II, especially pp. 211–230.

Bibliography. — Bourne, *Spain in America*, 328–330; Channing, in Winsor, *America*, II, 204–216; and see the "Essays" and footnotes to the chapters on Mexico and Peru in the same volume.

§ 103. Naming of America

Summary. — Amerigo Vespucci, his voyages to America. — Evidence for and against these voyages. — The phrase "New World" as applied to South America. — Martin Waldseemüller (Hylacomylus); his *Cosmographiæ Introductio*. — 1507, Proposal to name the "New World" America. — Did Amerigo Vespucci approve the design? — 1507–1541, Spreading of the name. — Other theories as to the origin of the word "America."

General. — Bourne, *Spain in America*, ch. vii; Winsor, *Columbus*, 538–555; C. R. Markham, *Columbus*, 344–356; Channing, *United States*, I, 42–46.

Special. — S. H. Gay, in Winsor, *America*, II, ch. ii; Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, ch. vii; Lester, *Life of Vespucius;* Harrisse, *Americus Vespuccius;* Santarem, *Researches respecting Americus Vespucius and his Voyages* (translated from the French by E. V. Childe); R. H. Major, *Life of Prince Henry the Navigator*, and *Discoveries of Prince Henry;* Varnhagen's various works on Vespucci, especially his *Nouvelles Recherches;* Humboldt, *Examen Critique*, IV, V; Winsor, "Notes on Vespucius," in his *America*, II, 153–179; D'Avezac, *Waltzeemüller, ses Ouvrages, et ses Collaborateurs*.

Sources. — Vespucius, *Letters* (describing the four voyages; reprinted with translations by Quaritch, 1893; also C. R. Markham's edition in

Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1894); Waldseemüller, *Cosmographiæ Introductio* (the titlepage and important passages given in facsimile in Winsor, *America*, II, 167, 168, 171); the Spanish chroniclers, especially Herrera and the collections of documents, particularly that by Navarrete. Waldseemüller's map of 1507, containing the word "Amerika," is reproduced in its original size by Fischer and Wieser, *Die älteste Karte mit dem Namen Amerika* (Innsbruck, 1903). The text is printed in both German and English.

Bibliography. — The footnotes to Gay's chapter in Winsor's *America;* Winsor's very full "Notes," *ibid.*, II, 153–179; Bandini, *Vita di Amerigo Vespucci* (Florence, 1898), 104–128; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 330, 331.

§ 104. The Spanish Conquerors

Summary. — 1515–1527, Progress of discovery along the west coast of South America (§ 102); finding of Peru. — The Pizarros and their companions. — 1531–1534, Conquest of Peru; treatment of the natives. — Later careers of the leading men. — 1511, Conquest of Cuba by the Spaniards under Velasquez. — 1517, Córdoba's voyage to Yucatan. — 1518, Grijalva discovers Mexico; Velasquez sends an expedition under Cortez to conquer it. — Hernando Cortez and his companions. — 1519–1521, Conquest of Mexico. — Later history of Nueva España. — The Spanish colonial system.

General. — Bourne, *Spain in America*, 149–158; C. R. Markham, in Winsor, *America*, II, ch. viii (Peru); Winsor, *America*, II, ch. vi (Mexico); Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II.

Special. — W. H. Prescott, *Conquest of Peru*, and *Conquest of Mexico;* A. Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America* (the bulk of this work is also printed in different form as *Life of Pizarro* and *Life of Cortez*); H. H. Bancroft, *Mexico*, I; R. G. Watson, *Spanish and Portuguese South America during the Colonial Period;* Bourne, *Spain in America*, chs. xv–xix (the best brief account in English of the Spanish colonial system).

Sources. — For the conquest of Mexico: The collections of documents noted in § 102, especially Pacheco and Cardenas and Icazbalceta; *Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España* (112 vols., 1842–1895, edited by Navarrete, Salva, and others); Motolinia, *Historia de los Indios de Nueva España;* J. S. Rayon, editor, *Archivo Mexicano;* Lorenzana, *Historia de Nueva España;* Bernal Diaz, *Historia Verdadera;* Gomara, *La Conquista de México;* Sahagun, *Historia de la Conquista de México; Despatches of Cortes*, translated by George Folsom.

For the conquest of Peru: The standard collections; the early chroniclers; and Cieza de Leon, *La Chronica del Peru*, Parts I and II (translated by C. R. Markham and printed in the publications of the Hakluyt Society for 1864 and 1883). See also Garcilasso de la Vega, *Commentarios Reales* (translated in part by Markham for the Hakluyt Society, 1869–1871).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, II, 402–430 (Mexico), 573–578 (Peru); Bourne, *Spain in America*, 335–337.

§ 105. The Spaniards in the United States

Summary. — 1513, Ponce de Leon discovers and names Florida; the exact date. — 1517, Córdoba on the Gulf coast. — 1519, Pineda discovers the Mississippi. — 1520, Gordillo on the Atlantic coast of Florida. — 1524–1525, Gomez, in the service of Spain, on the Atlantic seaboard of the United States; extent of his voyage; arguments for and against its having been made. — 1526, De Ayllon in Chesapeake Bay; site of San Miguel de Guandape. — 1528, Narvaez, with a large force, lands on the Gulf coast of Florida; probable fate of the expedition. — 1528–1536, Wanderings of Cabeza de Vaca and his comrades; their stories of buffaloes and pueblos. — 1520–1540, Progress of discovery and settlement on the west coast of North America. — 1539, Fray Marcos's reconnoissance toward the pueblos. — 1540–1542, Explorations of Coronado; identification of his route. — 1539–1542, Explorations of De Soto; identification of his route. — 1542–1763, The Spaniards in New Mexico and Florida; meaning of these words.

General. — J. G. Shea, in Winsor, *America*, II, 231–254; H. W. Haynes, *ibid.*, 473–498; Parkman, *Pioneers of France*, ch. i (on Florida only); Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 251, and II *passim;* Channing, *United States*, I, 59–85; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 158–174; C. F. Lummis, *Spanish Pioneers.*

Special. — Woodbury Lowery, *Spanish Settlements within the . . . United States;* Barcia, *Ensayo Cronologico . . . de la Florida;* Harrisse, *Discovery of North America;* Barnard Shipp, *De Soto and Florida;* P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Floride Française;* C. C. Jones, *Georgia*, I; W. W. H. Davis, *Spanish Conquest of New Mexico;* Simpson, in Smithsonian Institution, *Report*, 1869; H. H. Bancroft, *New Mexico;* F. W. Blackmar, *Spanish Colonization in the Southwest* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, VIII, No. 4); histories of the southwestern states and territories, of

Kansas, and of Nebraska (§ 37). For the settlement of St. Augustine, see § 107.

Sources. — Oviedo, *Historia General* (ed. 1851), I, 544–577; F. W. Hodge and T. H. Lewis, *Spanish Explorers in the Southern United States* (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives"; the volume includes accounts of Cabeza de Vaca, Coronado, and De Soto); Buckingham Smith, *Journey of Cabeza de Vaca* (especially the edition of 1871); A. F. Bandelier on Cabeza de Vaca and Fray Marcos, in Archæological Institute of America, *Papers*, I, II, IV; also his *Cabeza de Vaca* in the Trail Makers series; E. G. Bourne, *Narratives of De Soto* (Trail Makers series). Castañeda's *Relacion de la Jornada de Cibola, . . . la qual fue el año de 1540* is translated by G. P. Winship, from a Spanish manuscript in the Lenox library, in his *Coronado Expedition* (Bureau of Ethnology, *14th Annual Report*), 470–546; it is reprinted with revision, as Winship's *Journey of Coronado*, in the Trail Makers series. Other original documents relating to Coronado's explorations are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 13, and in Bandelier, *Documentary History of the Zuñi Tribe;* see also the various collections noted in § 104, and the chroniclers (§ 102). Many important documents will also be found in French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida;* the *Historical Magazine*, X; Higginson, *American Explorers;* and *Old South Leaflets*.

Bibliography. — J. G. Shea, in Winsor, *America*, II, 283 (Florida); H. W. Haynes, *ibid.*, 448 (Coronado).

§ 106. Early French Explorers

Summary. — The French fishermen, were they on the American coast before Columbus? — 1524, Verrazano's voyage; arguments for and against its having been made. — Story of Norumbega and other similar tales. — 1534, Jacques Cartier's first voyage: Gulf of St. Lawrence. — 1535, Cartier's second voyage: St. Lawrence River to Montreal. — 1540, Cartier's third voyage and Roberval's expedition.

General. — Bourne, *Spain in America*, 143–148; Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (ed. 1887), 187–228, and *Struggle for a Continent*, 69–82; Doyle, *English in America, Virginia*, I, 82–87; Palfrey, New England, I, 64–67, and *Compendious History*, I, 2.

Special. — Verrazano: Winsor, *Christopher Columbus*, Appendix; George Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 4–9; Brevoort, *Verrazano the Navigator;* H. C. Murphy, *Voyage of Verrazano;* De Costa, *Verrazano the Explorer;* Kohl, *Discovery of Maine.* — Cartier: Winsor, *Cartier to*

Frontenac; De Costa, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 47–62; H. B. Stephens, *Jacques Cartier;* Harrisse, *Discovery of America;* Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 492–500; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, ch. iii.

Sources. — Verrazano: The Verrazano Map, *Magazine of American History*, II, 449; Winsor, *America*, IV, 26; Murphy, *Voyage of Verrazano*, 91. The Verrazano Letter, Murphy, *Verrazano*, 170; *Voyage of John de Verazzano* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1860, Appendix); Higginson, *American Explorers*, 60–69; *Old South Leaflets.* — Cartier: The "Narratives," in Hakluyt's *Principall Navigations*, III, 250 (reprinted in Goldsmid's edition, XIII, 77); Higginson, *American Explorers*, 91–117; H. S. Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages* (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives"), 1–102.

Bibliography. — Verrazano: Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 17–29; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 333; Channing, *United States*, I, 111. — Cartier: De Costa, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 62–68; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 333; Channing, *United States*, I, 112.

§ 107. Huguenot Settlements

Summary. — The Huguenots. — 1555–1560, Attempt to found a colony in Brazil; 1556, Thevet's alleged voyage along the coast of North America; 1562, Ribault's colony on Port Royal Sound. — 1563, Laudonnière builds Fort Caroline; sufferings of the colonists. — 1565, Menendez founds St. Augustine; massacres French colonists and most of the survivors of the shipwreck of Ribault's fleet. — 1567, Dominic de Gourges attacks the Spaniards.

General. — Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (ed. 1887), 27–179, and *Struggle for a Continent*, 10–68; Bourne, *Spain in America*, ch. xii; Channing, *United States*, I, 94–100.

Special. — J. G. Shea, in Winsor, *America*, II, 260–283; Parkman, *Pioneers of France;* Baird, *Huguenot Emigration;* Fairbanks, *St. Augustine;* P. Gaffarel, *Brésil Française*, and *La Floride Française;* W. Lowery, *Spanish Settlements within the . . . United States;* Barcia, *Ensayo Cronologico . . . de la Florida;* Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 511–522.

Sources. — The Brazil colony: Thevet, *Singularitez de la France Antarctique* (1557, new edition by Paul Gaffarel, Paris, 1878); Gaffarel's edition of De Lery, *Histoire d'un Voyage faict en la Terre du Brésil;* Ternaux-Compans, *Voyages.* — The Huguenots: Ruidíaz y Caravia, *La Florida: su Conquista y Colonización;* Hakluyt, *Divers Voyages* (reprinted by the Hakluyt Society, 1850, and the part relating to Florida by French in his *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida*, which

contains many other important documents); Laudonnière, in Basanier's *L'Histoire Notable de la Floride* (in English, in Hakluyt's *Principall Navigations*, Goldsmid's edition, XIII, 407, and in French's *Historical Collections*). Many documents are also reprinted in whole or in part in the *Historical Magazine*, III, and in Higginson's *American Explorers*.

Bibliography. — Brazil: Winsor, *America*, VIII, 391. — Florida: J. G. Shea, *ibid.*, II, 292; Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (ed. 1887), 3–7; Channing, *United States*, I, 112, 113.

§ 108. Champlain and French Colonization in the North

Summary. — 1603, De Monts and his patent. — 1604, Settlements on the Bay of Fundy. — Champlain on the New England coast. — 1608, Champlain founds Quebec. — 1609, Champlain discovers Lake Champlain; 1615, Lake Huron. — 1629, Sir Thomas Kirke captures Quebec. — 1632, Treaty of St. Germain: New France, Acadia, and Canada confirmed to France. — 1632–1633, La Tour and D'Aulnay. — 1613–1713, Progress of the French colonies. — 1713, Treaty of Utrecht: Acadia ceded to England (§ 147). — Boundaries of the French colonies.

General. — E. F. Slafter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 103–122; Channing, *United States*, I, 100–110; Doyle, *Virginia*, 146; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 91, 92.

Special. — Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (ed. 1887), 229–454, and *Struggle for a Continent*, 82–185; Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac;* Slafter's "Memoir" of Champlain, prefixed to his edition of the *Voyages* (3 vols., Prince Society, 1880–1882); Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 528–530; Murdoch, *Nova Scotia;* Hannay, *Acadia;* P. S. Palmer, *Lake Champlain;* O. H. Marshall, *Historical Writings relating to the West;* Kingsford, *Canada*, I; H. P. Biggar, *Early Trading Companies of New France;* Célestin Moreau, *Histoire de l'Acadie Françoise.*

Sources. — Champlain, *Œuvres* (edition of Laverdière, Quebec, 1870, translated in Slafter's *Champlain*). See also portions in W. L. Grant, *Voyages of Champlain* (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives"); E. G. Bourne, *Voyages and Explorations of Champlain* (Trail Makers series); O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of New York*, III; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 269–278; *Collectanea Adamantœa*, XXIII; and see Lescarbot, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France* (partly translated by Erondells in Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, IV, 1605–1645). The De Monts patent is in Williamson, *History of Maine*, I, 651, and Sir William Alexander's is

ibid., 655. There are translations of a few documents in French's *Historical Collections*, 2d series, II.

Bibliography. — Slafter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 130–134; for Acadia, see also C. C. Smith, *ibid.*, 149–158, and the editorial notes on pp. 159–162. See also R. G. Thwaites, *France in America*, 300, 304.

§ 109. French Explorers in the Interior

Summary. — 1634–1635, Nicolet discovers Lake Michigan and a tributary of the Mississippi.—1652–1684, Radisson and Groseilliers. — 1673, Joliet and Marquette discover the Mississippi. — 1680, Hennepin discovers the Falls of St. Anthony. — 1681, La Salle explores the Mississippi to its mouth. — 1684–1687, La Salle's attempt to found a colony on the lower Mississippi; his death. — The Iroquois. — The Canadians and the New Yorkers. — The spirit of French colonization: feudal institutions; the Jesuits and the traders. — The French in the Ohio Valley.

General. — Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, ch. ii, and *Struggle for a Continent*, 186–271; Channing, *United States*, II, 131–142; Thwaites, *France in America*, ch. iv; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 97–122.

Special. — Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac;* E. D. Neill, in Winsor, *America*, IV, ch. v; Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 530–540; Monette, *Valley of the Mississippi;* J. G. Shea, *Exploration of the Mississippi Valley;* Parkman, *La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West* (ed. 1879), *Old Régime in Canada* (ed. 1887), *Frontenac and New France*, and *A Half-Century of Conflict*, I, ch. xiii; Gayarré, *Louisiana;* Scharf, *St. Louis;* Shea's edition of Hennepin's *Louisiana;* Garneau, *Histoire de Canada;* McMullen, *Canada* (ed. 1891), I; Kingsford, *Canada*, I; W. B. Munro, *Seigniorial System in Canada;* George Bryce, *The Canadian People*, and *Remarkable History of the Hudson's Bay Company*, chs. v, vi; Beckles Willson, *The Great Company*, chs. ii–x.

Sources. — Margry, *Mémoires*, etc. (6 vols., containing the original documents); French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, I, IV, and 2d series, II; the more important papers relating to La Salle are translated by J. G. Shea in his *Early Voyages up and down the Mississippi*, and by I. J. Cox, *Journeys of La Salle* (Trail Makers series); Radisson, *Voyages* (Prince Society, *Publications*, 1885); Charlevoix, *Histoire Générale de la Nouvelle France* (translated by Shea as *History and General Description of New France*, in six volumes, to which is prefixed a "Memoir" of the author by the translator); R. G. Thwaites, *Jesuit Relations;* Quebec Historical

and Literary Society, *Publications;* Leclerc, *Premier Etablissement de la Foy dans la Nouvelle France* (translated by Shea as *First Establishment of the Faith in New France*); Shea's edition of Hennepin's *Louisiana.*

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, IV, 190–202; Griffin, in *Magazine of American History*, 1883.

§ 110. Settlement of Louisiana

Summary. — 1684–1687, La Salle's attempt at colonization, his death. — 1699–1701, The French settlement of Louisiana; Iberville and Bienville. — 1712, License to Crozat. — 1717, Illinois joined to Louisiana. — 1717, John Law's Company of the West; the Mississippi Bubble. — 1714 and 1718, The French in Texas. — 1718, New Orleans founded. — The French and the Mississippi Indians. — 1763, Louisiana ceded by France to Spain and England; boundaries of Louisiana and of West Florida. — 1768–1769, The Spaniards take possession of Louisiana; Don Alexandre O'Reilly's "Ordinances." — 1776–1783, Louisiana during the Revolutionary War; Louisiana and Florida after 1783. — Government of Louisiana by the French and the Spaniards. — Population, products, trade, and social condition in 1763 and 1783.

General. — A. McF. Davis, in Winsor, *America*, V, 13–55; Thwaites, *France in America*, chs. v, xviii; Channing, *United States*, II, 527–537.

Special. — Pierre Heinrich, *La Louisiane sous la Compagnie des Indes;* Villiers du Terrage, *Les Dernières Années de la Louisiane Française;* P. J. Hamilton, *Colonial Mobile;* F. X. Martin, *Louisiana;* Gayarré, *Histoire de la Louisiane* (2 vols.), or his *History of Louisiana* (4 vols.); Barbé-Marbois, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, translated as *History of Louisiana* (especially valuable for the later period); Winsor, *Mississippi Basin;* Stoddard, *Sketches of Louisiana;* Monette, *Valley of the Mississippi;* B. M. Norman, *New Orleans;* Maurice Thompson, *Story of Louisiana;* Grace King, *Sieur de Bienville*, and *New Orleans, the Place and the People;* J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi as a Province*, etc.; Pickett, *Alabama and Georgia;* the histories of Texas, Florida, Tennessee, Missouri, Kentucky, Indiana, Ohio, and Illinois (§ 37). For accounts of La Salle's attempted colonization, see § 109.

Sources. — Charlevoix, *Histoire* (translated by J. G. Shea; the portions relating to Louisiana are also in French, *Historical Collections*); La Harpe, *Journal Historique concernant . . . la Louisiane;* Le Page du Pratz, *Histoire de la Louisiane* (reprinted as *History of Louisiana, or of the*

Western Parts of Virginia and Carolina); Dumont, *Mémoires Historiques sur la Louisiane* (translated as *History of Louisiana* in French's *Historical Collections*, V); Vergennes, *Mémoire Historique;* Wait, *State Papers; American State Papers, Public Lands*, V, *Foreign Relations*, IV, and *Miscellaneous*, especially I, 344–356 ("An Account of Louisiana," compiled from documents in the State Department; also printed separately, and in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 105). French's *Historical Collections*, V, contains documents relating to the cession by France to Spain, O'Reilly's "Ordinances" and "Regulations," and many other papers. See also **§ 43, under Louisiana.**

Sketches and facsimiles of many of the important maps will be found in Winsor's *America*, V, 66–86, and in his *Mississippi Basin*. The "Pacte de Famille" is in Martens, *Recueil*, I, 16. The treaty of 1763 is *ibid.*, 104, and in French, *Historical Collections;* the portions as to boundaries are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5. The treaty of 1783 is in Martens, *Recueil*, III, 511, 541, and in *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and other Powers*, 314.

Bibliography. — A. McF. Davis, in Winsor, *America*, V, 63–74; Winsor's "Notes" and his section on "Cartography," *ibid.*, 75–86; Thwaites, *France in America*, 305.

CHAPTER XV

ENGLISH EXPLORERS AND THE SOUTHERN COLONIES, 1497–1760

§ 111. The Cabots

Summary. — 1497, John Cabot discovers North America. — The landfall: Cape Breton Island, Labrador. — Date of the voyage. — Evidence: the Cabot map, the official documents, contemporary letters. — History of the older accounts of the Cabot voyages. — Sebastian Cabot, his later history. — Other Cabot voyages; possible limits of their explorations. — Title by discovery, what rights does it confer? extent of rights, how long do they continue? — 1493, Bull of Alexander. — Titles of England, France, and Spain to North America in 1500, 1550, 1600, 1650, 1700. — Effects of the Cabot voyages on English colonization.

General. — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 1–7; C. R. Markham, *Columbus*, 226–233; Bourne, *Spain in America*, 54–63; Channing, *United States*, I, 33–37; Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 2–15; Doyle, *Virginia*, 23–26, 37–39; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 60–63, and *Compendious History*, I, 2; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 34–36.

Special. — Deane, as above, pp. 7–38; Richard Biddle, *Sebastian Cabot;* G. P. Winship, *Cabot Bibliography* (contains much matter that is not bibliographical); S. E. Dawson, *Voyages of the Cabots;* C. R. Beazley, *John and Sebastian Cabot;* G. E. Weare, *Cabot's Discovery of North America.* As to the date, see also R. H. Major, *True Date of the English Discovery;* Harrisse, *Discovery of America*, and *Jean et Sébastien Cabot* (rewritten with changes as *John Cabot, the Discoverer of North America*); D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, ch. ii; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine.*

Sources. — The Cabot map: *Canadian Archives*, 1897, p. 125; Winsor, *America*, III, 22; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*, 358. Full-sized photographs of the map are in Harvard University Library, in the library

of the American Antiquarian Society, and in several other libraries. The reduced facsimiles give an inadequate idea of the map, especially of the legends. For other facsimiles, see Winsor, *America*, III, 21, note 3. The inscriptions on the map are translated in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1890–1891, pp. 329–339; reprinted in *Canadian Archives*, 1897, pp. 119–125. — Letters from Raimondo de Socino, dated London, 1497, are in Winsor, *America*, III, 53–55. — The most important sources are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 9. See also Olson and Bourne, *The Northmen, Columbus, and Cabot*, 419–430; and *Documents relating to John and Sebastian Cabot*, translated by C. R. Markham in his *Columbus's Journal* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1893), 197–226. There is something in Higginson, *American Explorers*, 55–59.

Bibliography. — Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, ch. i; Winship, *Cabot Bibliography*.

§ 112. The English Seamen

Summary. — English trade and commerce in the first part of the sixteenth century. — Hawkins, father and son. — The English slave-trade. — 1567, The disaster at San Juan d'Ulloa. — Francis Drake, his reprisals. — 1577–1580, Drake's voyage round the world; his exploration on the Pacific coast of the United States. — Drake's anchorage on the California coast. — Maritime awakenings of the English: Hawkins, Drake, Gilbert, Ralegh, etc. — The Spanish colonial policy.

General. — E. E. Hale, in Winsor, *America*, III, ch. ii; L. G. Tyler, *England in America*, 6–21; Channing, *United States*, I, 115–124; Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, ch. iv.

Special. — J. A. Froude, *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*, and *History of England*, XI, 94, 369–403, 441; J. K. Laughton, *State Papers relating to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada* (Navy Records Society, *Publications*, 1894), Introduction (contains some severe strictures on Froude's methods); J. R. Seeley, *Growth of British Policy*, pt. i; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, ch. iv; J. S. Corbett, *Drake and the Tudor Navy*, I; R. Southey, *English Seamen*, edited by David Hannay; W. Stebbing, *Sir Walter Ralegh;* E. Edwards, *Life of Ralegh;* Louise Creighton, *Sir Walter Ralegh* (Historical Biographies series).

Sources. — Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 103–222; G. P. Winship, *Sailors' Narratives of Voyages along the New England Coast;* C. R. Markham, *The Hawkins' Voyages* (Hakluyt Society, *Pub-*

lications, 1878); Thomas Marquarde, *Sir Francis Drake, his Voyage* (*ibid.*, 1849); Fletcher, *The World Encompassed by Sir Francis Drake* (*ibid.*, 1855); George Davidson, *Identification of Sir Francis Drake's Anchorage;* Hakluyt, *Discourse on Western Planting* (reprinted with notes by Leonard Woods and Charles Deane in Maine Historical Society, *Collections*, II); Hakluyt, *Principall Navigations* (the MacLehose edition, Glasgow, 1903, has on the margin the pagination of the edition of 1600).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 78–84, 184–187.

§ 113. The Ralegh Colonies

Summary. — Ralegh, his early career. — 1584, Elizabeth grants Ralegh a charter; its form and significance. — 1584, Amadas and Barlow on the coast of North Carolina; reports as to the resources of the country; the naming of Virginia. — 1585, Ralegh's first colony, under Grenville and Lane. — 1586, The colonists rescued by Francis Drake. — 1586, Grenville leaves fifteen men to keep possession. — 1587, The "lost colony" under John White; his return to England. — 1588, Spanish Armada. — 1590, White again in Virginia. — Reports and conjectures as to the fate of the colonists. — 1588, Hariot's *Narrative* published.

General. — W. W. Henry, in Winsor, *America*, III, 108–115; Doyle, *Virginia*, 56–74; Tyler, *England in America*, 21–33; Channing, *United States*, I, 125–140; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 4; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 80–87.

Special. — Tarbox, *Sir Walter Ralegh* (Prince Society); Hawks, *North Carolina;* Payne, *Elizabethan Seamen*. For other references, see §§ 112, 114.

Sources. — The documents are in Hawks, *North Carolina*, I, and in the Prince Society's volume above noted. The Ralegh patent is in *Charter and Constitutions*. See also Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 223–323; *Archæologia Americana*, IV; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, VIII, 117; Strachey, *History of Travail into Virginia Britannia* (edited by R. H. Major in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1849); Thomas Hariot, *Narrative of the First English Plantation of Virginia* (London, 1588; reprinted with illustrations at Frankfort, 1590, by De Bry, as *A Brief and True Report of Virginia;* facsimiles of the De Bry edition were printed by the Holbein Society, 1888, and by Quaritch, 1893); *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1574–1660, and other volumes of the "Rolls Series"; the

Reports of the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts; Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States;* J. K. Laughton, *State Papers relating to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada.*

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 121–126; Channing, *United States*, I, 141.

§ 114. Genesis of the United States

Summary. — Political and social conditions in England. — The East India Company and Sir Thomas Smythe. — Voyages of Gosnold, 1602, Pring, 1603, Weymouth, 1605. — The Virginia charter of 1606. — Expedition of 1607–1608.

General. — Palfrey, *New England*, I, 70–82, and *Compendious History*, I, 4–7; Channing, *United States*, I, ch. vi; Tyler, *England in America*, 34–59; Fiske, *Old Virginia and her Neighbours*, I, 55–118; Doyle, *Virginia*, 101–126.

Special. — B. F. De Costa, "Norumbega and its English Explorers," in Winsor, *America*, III, 169–183; H. L. Osgood, *American Colonies in the Seventeenth Century*, I, 23–55; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 1–38; P. A. Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*, and *Institutional History of Virginia;* Alexander Brown, *First Republic in America*, 1–71.

Sources. — Gosnold: Brereton's and Archer's narratives, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, VIII, 69; Brereton's is also in Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 325.— Pring: Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, V, VI; Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 341. — Weymouth: Rosier's account, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, VIII, in the Gorges Society's volume for 1887, and in Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 353; the Hakluyt Society's volume of 1849, entitled *Voyages towards the Northwest;* Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, IV; Major's edition of Strachey's *Travail into Virginia.* — See also Winship, *Sailors' Narratives;* and Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States*, I, 1–204. The charter of 1606 is in Brown's *Genesis*, I, 46–63; and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 1, and *Documentary Source Book*, 1.

Bibliography. — De Costa, in Winsor, *America*, III, 184–199; the "Editorial Notes," *ibid.*, 199–218; Tyler, *England in America*, 331; Channing, *United States*, I, notes to ch. vi.

§ 115. The Virginia Colony to 1624

Summary. — Charters of 1609 and 1612. — Limits of Virginia; powers of government conferred on the grantees; rights of the

colonists. — Early years of the colony. — 1611, "Dale's Laws." — 1618–1619, The English Puritans gain control of the London Company. — 1619, Local self-government introduced into Virginia; first representative assembly in America. — 1619, Negro slavery introduced. — 1621, Ordinance of government. — 1622, The massacre. — 1624, Charter annulled. — Character of the government of Virginia during the Puritan supremacy in the Company.

General. — Doyle, *Virginia*, 126–184; Tyler, *England in America*, 60–88; Channing, *United States*, I, 176–225; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 85–100, and *Compendious History*, I, 8–16; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 94–96, 99–126.

Special. — Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 38–98; Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 119–222; Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*, and *Institutional History of Virginia;* Osgood, *American Colonies*, I, 56–97; III, 25–53; Stith, *Virginia;* Burk, *Virginia*, I; Campbell, *Introduction to the History of Virginia*, and *History of Virginia* (the best compendious history of the colony); Beverly, *History and Present State of Virginia* (1705); G. Chalmers, *Annals*.

Sources. — L. G. Tyler, *Narratives of Early Virginia* (in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives"); Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States* (in reality a documentary history of Virginia to 1616); John Smith, *A True Relation of such Occurrences . . . as have happened in Virginia* (London, 1608, reprinted with valuable notes by Charles Deane; also in *Southern Literary Messenger*, February, 1845, in *Library of American Literature*, I, and in *American History Leaflets*, No. 27); John Smith, *General Historie* (both this and the *True Relation* are reprinted in Arber's "Student's Series"); John Smith, *Map of Virginia* (reprinted in Winsor, *America*, III, 166, and in Deane's edition of the *True Relation*). — As to the credibility of Captain John Smith, see Winsor in his *America*, III, 161, and note 4; Deane, in the Introduction to his edition of the *True Relation;* Henry Adams, in *North American Review* for 1867, and in his *Chapters of Erie and other Essays;* C. D. Warner, *Life and Writings of Captain John Smith;* and Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States*. These are unfavorable to Smith: on the other side, see W. W. Henry, in *Potter's American Monthly*, and in Virginia Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1882; and John Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 102–112. — See also Wingfield, *A Discourse of Virginia* (reprinted with notes by Deane in *Archæologia Americana*, IV, 67); Henry Spelman, *Relation of Virginia* (1609); *A True Declaration of the Estate of the Colonie in Virginia, published by the advise and direction of the Councell of Virginia*

(1610, reprinted in Force's *Tracts*, III); Ralph Hamor, *True Discourse of the Present State of Virginia* (1615); *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1574–1660; Force, *Tracts*, I, III; Neill, *Virginia Company*, and *Virginia Vetusta; Proceedings of the Virginia Company, 1619–1624* (compiled by Conway Robinson and printed in Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, VII, VIII). The records of the Assembly of 1619 are in Wynne and Gilman, *Colonial Records of Virginia;* New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series, III, 329; and Hening, *Statutes at Large of Virginia*. The Virginia charters are in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 1–23. "Dale's Laws" are in Force's *Tracts*, III, and in Sabin's edition of Stith's *Virginia*, Appendix iv. The "Orders and Constitutions . . . for the better governing of the Company, anno 1619 and 1620" are in Force's *Tracts*, III. The "Ordinance of 1621" is in Hening's *Statutes*, I, 110, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 34, and *Source Book*, 20.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, ch. v, footnotes and bibliographical essay; also note on Smith's publications, *ibid.*, 211; Susan M. Kingsbury, *Records of the Virginia Company*, II, 11–206.

§ 116. Virginia, 1624–1688

Summary. — 1624–1629, Character of the government under the crown. — 1629–1639, Governor Harvey's administrations; the opposition to him, was it justifiable? — 1642–1652, Governor Berkeley's first administration. — Relations with the Commonwealth. — 1652, Surrender to the commissioners of the Commonwealth. — 1652–1658, Self-government under the Protectorate. — 1658–1677, Berkeley's second administration. — 1671, Report to the Lords of Trade. — 1676–1677, Causes of Bacon's Rebellion; course of the rebellion; social and constitutional changes proposed; results.

General. — R. A. Brock, in Winsor, *America*, III, 146–153; Tyler, *England in America*, 90–117; C. M. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, 202–231; Channing, *United States*, I, 225–236, 495–499; II, 79–91; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 126–135, 209–215, 335–357, 509–566.

Special. — Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 223–318; II, 1–107; Osgood, *American Colonies*, III, 72–154, 197–308; Doyle, *Virginia*, 185–256; and the works (especially Charles Campbell's *History*) mentioned under § 115, except Chalmers. See also Meade, *Old Churches and Families of Virginia;* Slaughter, *Bristol Parish, St. George's Parish*, and *St. Mark's Parish;* Neill, *Virginia Carolorum;* Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*, and *Institutional History of Virginia;* and § 37, under Virginia.

Sources. — The Articles of Surrender to the forces of the Commonwealth are in Hening, *Statutes*, I, 363, and in *Virginia Historical Register*, II, 181. The history of the period 1652–1658 is best studied in Hening's *Statutes*. Documents relating to this subject will be found in *Virginia Historical Register; Southern Literary Messenger;* Force, *Tracts*, II, III; and Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series, I. Berkeley's Report is in Hening, *Statutes*, II, 511, and in *Virginia Historical Register*, III, 6. For Bacon's Rebellion, see Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1866–1867, p. 299, and *Collections*, 4th series, IX, 162; Burk, *Virginia*, II, 247, 250; Force, *Tracts*, I; *Virginia Magazine of History*, passim; *Virginia Historical Register*, III; *Library of American Literature*, I; Kercheval, *History of the Valley of Virginia;* Hening, *Statutes*, II, 341–365, 543; *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1675–1676; *William and Mary Quarterly*, II–XI. — See also the records noted in § 43.

Bibliography. — Brock, in Winsor, *America*, III, 164–166.

§ 117. Provincial Virginia, 1688–1760

Summary. — Character of the period. — 1692, William and Mary College founded. — Commissary Blair. — The "paper towns." — 1710–1722, Spotswood, governor. — 1736, First number of the Virginia *Gazette*. — Settlement of the Shenandoah Valley. — The Dissenters, and their treatment. — Population, extent, commerce, social life, and government in 1760.

General. — Campbell, *Introduction*, 100–117; Winsor, *America*, V, 263–270; Doyle, *Virginia*, 256–274; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 24–40; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 173–182, 208–210, 233–240, 326–329, 414.

Special. — Fiske, *Old Virginia*, II, 108–130, 174–269, 370–400; Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*, and *Institutional History of Virginia;* Howison, *Virginia;* and §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — Hening, *Statutes; Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1689, etc.; Maury, *Memoirs of a Huguenot Family;* Palmer, *Calendar of Virginia State Papers;* Hartwell, Blair, and Chilton, *Present State of Virginia;* Hugh Jones, *Present State of Virginia* (reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 279); Peyton, *History of Augusta County;* W. H. Foote, *Sketches of Virginia; Official Letters of Governor Spotswood*, 1710–1721 (Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, new series, I, II); *Huguenot Papers* (*ibid.*, V); *Virginia Magazine of History.*

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, V, 273–284.

§ 118. Settlement of Maryland

Summary. — George Calvert, his career in England and early interest in American colonization; the Avalon colony; his visit to Virginia, and death. — 1632, Maryland granted to his son, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore. — The Maryland charter; jurisdiction conferred; the bishop of Durham and his diocese; boundaries of the colony; disputes with Virginia and with the Pennsylvania authorities. — 1634, Maryland settled; religious prejudices of the early colonists. — Contentions with Claiborne. — Object of the Calverts in founding a colony. — Land system; development of representative institutions; disputes with the proprietary.

General. — Brantly, in Winsor, *America*, III, 517–543 (gives the Maryland version); Channing, *United States*, I, 241–260; Tyler, *England in America*, 118–139; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 220–250, 258–264; Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 255–308; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 204–215.

Special. — B. C. Steiner, *Beginnings of Maryland* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XXI, Nos. 8–10); Mereness, *Maryland as a Proprietary Province;* Bozman, *Maryland* (to 1660); McSherry, *Maryland;* McMahon, *Maryland;* Neill, *Terra Mariæ*, and *Founders of Maryland;* G. Chalmers, *Annals;* W. H. Browne, *Georgius and Cecilius Calvert.* See also §§ 37, 39, 43.

Sources. — *Calvert Papers* (Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, Nos. 28, 34, 35); *Maryland Archives* (edited by W. H. Browne); *A Relation of Maryland* (London, 1635, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, I, and in *Historical Magazine*, IX); Andrew White, *Relatio Itineris* (reprinted in translation in Force's *Tracts*, IV, and in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. 7, and supplement); Henry Foley, *Records of the English Province of the Society of Jesus*, III, 320–420; Bacon, *Laws of Maryland.* Cecil Calvert's instructions are in W. H. Browne's *Calverts*, 46. A translation of the Avalon charter is in Scharf's *Maryland.* The Maryland charter in the original Latin is in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in Hazard's *Historical Collections*, I, 327; in English, in Bacon's *Laws of Maryland*, in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 53, and *Source Book*, 31, and in Bozman's *Maryland*, II, 9, and Scharf's *Maryland*, I, 53. For a discussion as to the southern boundary, see *Report and Accompanying Documents of the Virginia Commissioners*, 1873.

Bibliography. — Brantly, in Winsor, *America*, III, 553–562; Tyler, *England in America*, 332.

§ 119. Puritans in Maryland

Summary. — The charter and religion. — Was Maryland "a Roman Catholic colony"? — Coming of the Puritans. — 1649, The so-called "Toleration Act"; why and by whom was it passed? — Governor Stone. — 1653–1659, The Commonwealth and Maryland; Claiborne and Bennett. — Maryland and the Quakers. — The "Glorious Revolution" in Maryland. — 1692, Maryland a royal province. — The Protestant Episcopal church established by law. — 1715, The Baltimores restored. — Population, industries, etc.

General. — Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 309–318; II, 131–173; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 250–257, 265; Channing, *United States*, I, 260–268, 499–507; II, 209–213; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 353–367, 564–572; II, 92. See also, among the volumes of Hart's *American Nation*, Tyler, *England in America*, 139–148; and Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, 232–251.

Special. — The histories of Maryland mentioned in § 118. On the Roman Catholic side, see R. H. Clarke in the *Catholic World*, December, 1875 (reprinted, 1876, as *Mr. Gladstone and Maryland Toleration*), and October, 1883; *American Catholic Historical Researches*, V, 173–176; B. T. Johnson, in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. 18. On the other side, see S. F. Streeter, *Maryland Two Hundred Years Ago;* G. L. Davis, *Day-Star of American Freedom;* E. D. Neill, in *Contemporary Review*, September, 1876; B. F. Brown, *Maryland not a Roman Catholic Colony;* Gladstone, *Vaticanism*. See also George Petrie, *Church and State in Maryland* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, X, No. 4).

Sources. — See § 118, especially *Calvert Papers* and *Maryland Archives*. The Act Concerning Religion is in Bacon's *Laws of Maryland*, under the date. Extracts from Attorney-General Northey's opinion as to the religious clause in the Maryland charter, and from the governor's oath and the Act Concerning Religion, are in Channing's *United States*, I, 269, 501; an extract from the last is in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 105, and his *Source Book*, 54. See also *Virginia and Maryland, or the Lord Baltimore's printed Case, uncased and answered*, in Force, *Tracts*, II; letters of the Jesuit Fathers, in Henry Foley, *Records of the English Province of the Society of Jesus*, III, 367–420; John Hammond, *Leah and Rachel*, in Force, *Tracts*, III.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 560, 561, especially the note by the editor on p. 560. For further references as to the religious beliefs

of the early settlers, see Channing, *United States*, I, ch. ix, and pp. 500–509.

§ 120. The Carolinas

Summary. — 1629–1631, Grant to Sir Robert Heath of Carolana. — Early attempts at colonization. — 1663, Grant to Clarendon and associates of Carolina. — 1665, Another charter to the same grantees. — 1669, The Fundamental Constitutions. — Early settlements under these grants. — 1680, Charleston founded. — Character of the proprietary government: society, religion, education, industries. — 1719–1721, Overthrow of the proprietary government. — 1729–1731, Carolina divided and sold to the king. — The royal government. — Population, education, religion, slavery, and society in 1760.

General. — W. J. Rivers, in Winsor, *America*, V, 285–334; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, chs. ix, x; Channing, *United States*, II, 13–25, 341–362; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 25–43, 211–215, 228–233, 267, 276, 285–293, 336–340.

Special. — McCrady, *South Carolina* (1670–1776, 2 vols.); Ashe, *North Carolina*, I; Ravenel, *Charleston, the Place and the People;* W. A. Courtenay, in *Charleston Year Book*, 1883; W. A. Schaper, *Sectionalism in South Carolina* (American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1900, I, 237); Fiske, *Old Virginia*, II, ch. xv; Rivers, *Sketch of the History of South Carolina;* Ramsay, *South Carolina;* Hawks, *North Carolina*, II; Bernheim, *German Settlements in North and South Carolina.* See also §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — Hewatt's *South Carolina and Georgia*, and other documents, in Carroll's *Historical Collections;* the documents printed by Hawks and Rivers in their histories; Weston, *Documents connected with the History of South Carolina; Colonial Records of North Carolina; Charleston Year Books;* Chalmers, *Annals* (the portions relating to South Carolina are reprinted in Carroll's *Historical Collections*, II); *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies.* The "Shaftesbury Papers" are printed at length in South Carolina Historical Society, *Collections*, V. The Carolana patent to Heath is in *Colonial Records of North Carolina*, I, 5. The Carolina charters are in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 120, 148, and *Source Book*, 63, 77. The "Fundamental Constitutions," edition of 1669, is in *Charters and Constitutions;* in Martin, *North Carolina*, I, p. lxxiii; and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 149. See also Yonge's *Narrative of the Proceedings of the People of South*

Carolina in . . . 1719, and Purry's *Description of the Province of South Carolina* (both in Force, *Tracts*, II).

Bibliography. — The footnotes to Rivers's chapter in Winsor, *America*, 285–334, and the editor's essay and notes, *ibid.*, 335–356; E. L. Whitney, *Government in the Colony of South Carolina* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIII, Nos. 1, 2); S. B. Weeks, *Historical Literature of North Carolina* (Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 48).

§ 121. Georgia

Summary. — J. E. Oglethorpe and the English philanthropists. — Reasons, apart from philanthropy, for founding the colony. — 1732, Charter of Georgia: general grant of power; peculiarities of the charter; boundaries under it; boundaries extended in 1763. — 1733, Savannah settled; character of the early colonists. — Military history. — Land system, slavery, government, and religion. — 1752, Charter surrendered to the crown. — 1752–1760, Georgia as a royal province.

General. — C. C. Jones, in Winsor, *America*, V, 357–392; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. xv; Fiske, *Old Virginia*, II, 333–336; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 362–369, 374–385.

Special. — C. C. Jones, *Georgia*, I, and *Dead Towns of Georgia* (Georgia Historical Society, *Collections*, IV); W. B. Stevens, *Georgia;* P. A. Strobel, *The Salzburgers and their Descendants*. Lives of Oglethorpe have been written by T. M. Harris, Robert Wright, Henry Bruce, and others. See also §§ 37, 39, 43.

Sources. — *Colonial Records of Georgia;* Hewatt's *South Carolina and Georgia* (in Carroll, *Historical Collections*, I); McCall, *Georgia*, I; Tailfer and others, *A True and Historical Narrative of the Colony of Georgia* (1741, reprinted with other documents in Force's *Tracts*, I, II). The Georgia charter is in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 235, and *Source Book*, 96. See also *Colonial Acts of Georgia, 1755–1774* (edited by C. C. Jones); Earl of Egmont, *Journal of the Transactions of the Trustees of Georgia* (privately printed, 1886; also 1908, in *Colonial Records of Georgia*, V); Eliza Lucas [Pinckney], *Journal and Letters*.

Bibliography. — C. C. Jones, in Winsor, *America*, V, ch. vi; Greene, *Provincial America*, 339.

CHAPTER XVI

MIDDLE COLONIES, 1609–1760

§ 122. New Netherland

Summary.— Early voyages. — 1609, Henry Hudson and his explorations. — 1614, The United Netherland Company. — 1621, The Dutch West India Company; its objects and government. — 1629, The Charter of Privileges to Patroons. — The Dutch and the Indians. — Internal affairs. — 1647–1664, Governor Stuyvesant; relations with the Swedes and English. — Population, mode of life, industries, etc., in 1664. — Influence of the Dutch on American history.

General. — B. Fernow, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 395–409; Channing, *United States*, I, chs. xvi, xvii; Janvier, *Dutch Founding of New York;* Hildreth, *United States*, I, 136–149, 413–445.

Special. — William Smith, *New-York* (ed. 1814), 1–49; O'Callaghan, *New Netherland* (3 vols., to 1647); Brodhead, *New York* (Vol. I covers the Dutch period); J. H. Innes, *New Amsterdam and its People;* Fiske, *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, I. On the patroonships, see American Historical Association, *Annual Report*, 1896, I, 140. See also the works in §§ 37 and 43, under New York.

Sources. — O'Callaghan, *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York, Documentary History of New York, Calendar of Historical Manuscripts*, and *Laws of New Netherland;* J. F. Jameson, *Narratives of New Netherland* (in his series of "Original Narratives"); G. P. Winship, *Sailors' Narratives;* H. C. Murphy, *Henry Hudson in Holland;* J. M. Read, *Henry Hudson* (abridged and edited by Edmund Goldsmid, in the Clarendon Historical Society's *Reprints*, 1883; many important original documents in the Appendix); Asher, *Henry Hudson* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1860; also New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1st series, I, 61–188); Rev. Father Isaac Jogues, S. J., *Novum Belgium* (1643–1644, reprinted with notes by J. G. Shea). On the later history, see the following translations (most of which also appear in Jameson's

Narratives, above mentioned) in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series: Van der Donck, *Beschrijvinge van Niew Nederlant*, I, 125–242; De Laet, *Nieuwe Wereld* (extracts), I, 281–316; II, 373; De Vries, *Korte Historiael*, III, 1–136; Cornelis Melyn (?), *Breeden-Raedt aende Vereenichde Nederlandsche Provintien*, etc., III, 237–283. See also an extract from Wassenaer's *Historie van Europa*, translated as *Description and First Settlement of New Netherland*, in *Collectanea Adamantœa*, XXVII; Jaspar Dankers and Peter Sluyter, *Journal of a Voyage to New York*, etc. (1679–1680, translated by H. C. Murphy in Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, I; Denton, *Brief Description of New York* (1670, reprinted with notes by Gabriel Furman, 1845); B. Fernow, *Records of New Amsterdam*. — The Charter of Privileges to Patroons is in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 43, and *Source Book*, 27.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, IV, 409–432, 439–442; Ulmann, *Landmark History of New York*, 267–279; New York State Library, *Bulletin*, No. 56, "Bibliography 24," pp. 287–560; New York [City] Public Library, *Bulletin*, IV, V.

§ 123. The English in New York

Summary. — 1664 and 1674, Grants to James, Duke of York. — Governor Nicoll and the Duke of York's Laws. — 1683–1688, Governor Dongan and the Charter of Liberties. — 1689–1691, "Leisler's Rebellion." — 1741, The Negro Plot. — Population, modes of life, trade, management of the Indians, and character of the royal government in 1760.

General. — J. A. Stevens, in Winsor, *America*, III, 385–411; B. Fernow, *ibid.*, V, 189–207; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, chs. v. vi; Channing, *United States*, II, 31–44, 50–60; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 445–447; II, 44–57, 76–78, 87, 91, 130, 138–140, 182–187, 192, 200–201, 226, 246, 315, 357–361, 391, 408.

Special. — William Smith, *New-York* (ed. 1814), 50–282, 393–511; Brodhead, *New York*, II, III (to 1691); Fiske, *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, II; and the works enumerated in §§ 37, 39, 43.

Sources. – The grants to James, Duke of York, are in *Charters and Constitutions;* that of 1664 is also in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 136, and *Source Book*, 75. The "Duke of York's Laws" have been reprinted under that title by the state of Pennsylvania; they are also in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1st series, I, 307–428. On the English conquest, see also *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1661–1668. For Leisler's Rebellion, see the "Leisler Papers," in New York

Historical Society, *Collections*, 1868, p. 241; P. W. Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I, 255; *Letter from a Gentleman of the City of New York* (1698, reprinted in *Collectanea Adamantæa*, XXIII); *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York*, III, 636, etc.; *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies*, 1689–1692; John Miller, *Description of the Province and City of New York in 1695* (reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 209). — For the Negro Plot of 1741, see Daniel Horsmanden, *The New York Conspiracy, or a History of the Negro Plot* (N.Y., 1810); Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I, 211. — For the controversies over the boundaries of New York, see *Report of the Regents of the University on the Boundaries of the State of New York* (Albany, 1874); Daniel J. Pratt, compiler, *Report on the Boundaries* (Albany, 1884, a continuation of the above); *Report of the Commissioners to ascertain and settle the Boundary Line between the States of New York and Connecticut* (Albany, 1861); *Report of the Regents' Boundary Commission upon the New York and Pennsylvania Boundary* (Albany, 1886).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 411–415; V, 240–242; Channing, *United States*, II, 61.

§ 124. New Jersey

Summary. — 1664 and 1674, Grants to Berkeley and Carteret; was the jurisdiction also granted? — 1664, The Nicol colonists. — The "Concessions." — 1665, Settlement under Philip Carteret. — 1672, Insurrection. — Disputes with the governors of New York. — 1673, Berkeley sells his share. — 1675–1701, The Friends in West Jersey; form of government, etc. — 1682–1683, Penn and others acquire East Jersey from the Carteret estate. — 1702, New Jersey a royal province under the same governor as New York. — 1738, Separated from New York. — 1702–1760, Material development.

General. — Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, chs. vii, viii; Channing, *United States*, II, 44–59; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 51–61, 207, 357, 361.

Special. — W. A. Whitehead, in Winsor, *America*, III, 421–449, and Fernow, *ibid.*, V, 217–222; W. A. Whitehead, *East Jersey under the Proprietary Governments*, and *Contributions to East Jersey History*; John Whitehead, *Judicial and Civil History of New Jersey;* Fiske, *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, II, 10–16, 36, 139–147, 239; E. P. Tanner, *The Province of New Jersey* (1664–1738). See other works enumerated under

New Jersey in §§ 37 and 43; the comprehensive histories of Pennsylvania, such as the work of Proud, also contain material relating to New Jersey.

Sources. — Samuel Smith, *History of the Colony of Nova-Cæsaria, or New-Jersey* (1765, reprinted 1877; goes to 1721 only); Leaming and Spicer, *Grants, Concessions*, etc. (1752, reprinted 1881); *New Jersey Archives* (edited by W. A. Whitehead). The grant to Berkeley and Carteret, and the "Concessions," are in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 139, 141. Among separate documents may be noted George Scot, *Model of the Government of East-New-Jersey* (1685, reprinted in New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, I); Gabriel Thomas, *Historical Description of West-New-Jersey* (1698, reprinted 1848). See also § 43.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 449–456.

§ 125. Settlement of Pennsylvania

Summary. — 1623–1664, the Dutch and Swedes on the west side of Delaware bay and river. — 1664–1681, the Swedish-Dutch settlements under the English. — Population in 1664 and 1681. — Influence of the early Swedish colonists on the development of the English colonies. — George Fox; the Friends or Quakers, and their opinions. — William Penn, his early life and conversion; his connection with the colonization of New Jersey. — 1681, The Pennsylvania charter, and the releases of the counties on the Delaware. — Rights of jurisdiction conferred. — The clause as to religion. — Boundary disputes (1) with the proprietaries of Maryland, the agreement of 1732, Mason and Dixon Line; (2) with Connecticut, the Susquehanna controversy; (3) with New York; (4) as to the western boundary of Pennsylvania.

General. — F. D. Stone, in Winsor, *America*, III, 469–495; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, chs. xi, xii; Channing, *United States*, II, ch. iv; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 62–75.

Special. — The Swedes: G. B. Keen, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 443–488; Vincent, *Delaware;* Amandus Johnson, *Swedish Settlements on the Delaware.* — The Friends: Thomas Hodgkin, *George Fox;* S. M. Janney, *History of the Friends.* — William Penn: Janney, *Life of Penn;* Clarkson, *Memoirs of Penn;* Dixon, *Life of Penn* (issued by the Society of Friends); S. G. Fisher, *The True William Penn.* — Macaulay's charges against Penn are contained in his *History of England*, chs. v, vii, viii For a defense of Penn against these charges, see Janney's and

Dixon's biographies of Penn; W. E. Forster, *William Penn and T. B. Macaulay;* Paget, *Inquiry into the Evidence,* etc.; and other works mentioned in Winsor, *America,* III, 506, note 4. For a very hostile view of Penn, see a paper by Dr. Archer in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications,* No. 30; see also the "Calvert Papers," *ibid.,* No. 34. — The history of the southern boundary is traced from a Pennsylvanian point of view in J. D. Graham's *Report on Mason and Dixon Line,* by J. Veech in his essay on *Mason and Dixon's Line,* and by S. G. Fisher, *The Making of Pennsylvania,* ch. xi. For other books on the subject, see Burchard and Matthews, in *Maryland Geological Survey,* VII, 210–403.

Histories of Pennsylvania: Proud, *Pennsylvania;* T. F. Gordon, *Pennsylvania;* W. R. Shepherd, *Proprietary Government in Pennsylvania;* James Bowden, *History of Friends in America,* II; Egle, *Illustrated History of Pennsylvania;* George Smith, *History of Delaware County.* An admirable work is Isaac Sharpless's *Quaker Government in Pennsylvania* (2 vols.; Vol. I is called *A Quaker Experiment in Government*). See also §§ 37, 39, 43.

Sources. — Hazard, *Pennsylvania Archives; Votes of the Assembly; Minutes of the Council; Duke of York's Laws;* Bioren, *Laws of Pennsylvania;* Dallas, *Laws of Pennsylvania.* The charter of Pennsylvania and the "Concessions" are in *Charters and Constitutions;* the charter is in MacDonald, *Select Charters,* 183, and *Source Book,* 80. See also Armstrong's edition of Thomas Budd, *Good Order Established in Pennsylvania and New Jersey* (1685). — For the Swedes, see Keen, in Winsor, *America,* IV, 489–502; Acrelius, *History of New Sweden* (translated by Reynolds, and printed in Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs,* XI); Du Ponceau's translation of Holm's *Description of the Province of New Sweden, now called Pennsylvania;* and *Record of the Court at Upland* (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs,* VII). — For the Friends, see Besse, *Sufferings of the People called Quakers:* and Sewel, *History of the Quakers.* See also § 37, under Delaware and Pennsylvania.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America,* III, 495–516; IV, 488–502; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government,* 349. The authorities on the southern boundary dispute are enumerated in Winsor, *America,* III, 513-515.

§ 126. Pennsylvania and Delaware, 1685–1760

Summary. — 1692–1694, The government of Pennsylvania administered by the crown. — 1694, Penn restored. — 1681–1700, Early frames of government and constitutional history of Pennsylvania. — 1701, The Charter of Privileges, its leading pro-

visions, and its history. — Contest with the proprietaries as to taxation. — 1685–1760, Constitutional history of Delaware.

General. — Fernow, in Winsor, *America*, V, 208–217; Channing, *United States*, II, 117–122, 313–340; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 171, 172, 183, 186, 205–207, 242–245, 260, 320, 321, 342–345.

Special. — The works noted in §§ 37, 125; biographies and works of Franklin noted in §§ 39, 46; W. J. Buck, *William Penn in America;* Shepherd, *Proprietary Government in Pennsylvania;* Sharpless, *Quaker Government in Pennsylvania.* For the contest with the Connecticut grantees, see *The Susquehannah Title Stated and Examined* (Catskill, 1796); the histories of Wyoming and Luzerne County noted in § 37; and the comprehensive histories of Pennsylvania, § 37. Interesting material on the general subject of the Pennsylvania land system will be found in W. J. Buck, *The Indian Walk;* S. W. Pennypacker, *Hendrich Pennebecker, Surveyor of Lands for the Penns;* and in the works noted in §§ 37, 46.

Sources. — The frames of government and the charter of 1701 are in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 192, 199, 217, 224. See also the collections of laws and documents mentioned in § 43; the *Penn and Logan Correspondence* (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, IX, X); *A True and Impartial State of the Province of Pennsylvania* (Phila., 1759); William Smith, *A Brief State of the Province of Pennsylvania;* Cross, *Answer to a Brief State;* Gabriel Thomas, *Account of the Province and Country of Pennsylvania* (1698, reprinted in 1848; also in *Library of American Literature*, II, 210).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, V, 242–249.

CHAPTER XVII

NEW ENGLAND, 1607–1760

§ 127. New England before 1620

Summary. — Identification of the places described in the sagas. — The story of Norumbega. — 1602–1614, English, Dutch, and French explorers. — 1607, The Popham colony, its influence on the history of America. — 1614, Captain John Smith's voyage along the coast; his map.

General. — Tyler, *England in America*, 40–41; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 51–100, and *Compendious History*, I, 4–7, 16; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 14–23; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 1–30; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 90.

Special. — B. F. DeCosta, in Winsor, *America*, III, 169–184; Winsor, *ibid.*, 209. For the Dutch voyages, see § 122; for the French explorations, §§ 106, 108; for the early English explorers, §§ 112, 114. References to the voyages of the Northmen are noted in § 100. See also the comprehensive histories of the New England states noted in § 37.

Sources. — *A Voyage to Sagadahoc* (1607–1608) and other documents (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1880–1881, p. 82; Burrage, *Early English and French Voyages*, 395); *Relation of a Voyage into New England* (1607, reprinted by the Gorges Society, with other material, as *The Sagadahoc Colony*, Portland, Me., 1892). For Smith's voyage, see his *Description of New-England:* in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, VI, 95; Force, *Tracts*, II; Arber, *English Scholar's Library*, XVI, 175–232; and Deane's edition of Smith's *New England's Trials*.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 209–211, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 50, note 2.

§ 128. The English Puritans

Summary. — The Reformation in England. — Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity as amended by subsequent acts. — The Church of England of Elizabeth and Whitgift. — The English Roman

Catholics. — The Puritan Non-Conformists and Separatists. — Episcopacy, Presbyterianism, Congregationalism, and the Independents. — Religious persecutions under James I and Charles I. — Emigrations to the Netherlands and to America. — The Puritans as political reformers. — Church and State in 1600. — Religious tolerance and intolerance in Christendom in the first half of the seventeenth century.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 23–34; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 101–132; Channing, *United States*, I, ch. x; Tyler, *England in America*, 152–155; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 98–140, 191–196; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 153.

Special. — Morton Dexter, *The England and Holland of the Pilgrims;* Curteis, *Dissent in its Relation to the Church of England* (Bampton Lectures for 1871); G. E. Ellis, *Puritan Age and Rule*, and his chapter on "The Religious Element in New England," in Winsor, *America*, III; D. Mountfield, *The Church and Puritans;* Douglas Campbell, *The Puritan in Holland, England, and America;* S. R. Gardiner, *History of England from the Accession of James I*, I, 146–159; II, 487; IV, 142–160; Marsden, *The Early Puritans;* J. R. Green, *History of the English People*, II; Buckle, *Civilization;* John Brown, *The Pilgrim Fathers of New England.*

Sources. — Masson, *John Milton;* H. M. Dexter, *Congregationalism as seen in its Literature;* W. Walker, *The Creeds and Platforms of Congregationalism;* A. F. Mitchell, *The Westminster Assembly; The Westminster Confession of Faith;* C. A. Briggs, *American Presbyterianism;* Schaff, *Creeds of Christendom;* B. Brook, *History of Religious Liberty;* T. Fuller, *Church History;* D. Neal, *History of the Puritans;* Strype's lives of Whitgift and Grindal; McCrie, *John Knox;* Calvin, *Institutes;* F. Makower, *Constitutional History of the Church of England.*

Bibliography. — Ellis, in Winsor, *America*, III, 244–256; H. M. Dexter, *Congregationalism as seen in its Literature*, appendix.

§ 129. The Pilgrims

Summary. — The English Separatists at Gainsborough, Austerfield, and Scrooby; the pilgrimage to the Netherlands. — 1608–1620, The Leyden congregation: John Robinson, William Brewster, William Bradford; Bradford's *Plimoth Plantation* as an historical authority; comparison with Winthrop's *Journal* and Smith's *True Relation.* — Life at Leyden. — Another removal determined on. — Reasons for the second removal. — 1620, Agree-

ments with the Virginia Company and with the Merchants Adventurers of London. — Negotiations with the English government.

General. — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 264–269; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 34–47; Tyler, *England in America*, 155–162; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 141–174; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Hildreth, *United States*, I, 150–160.

Special. — Palfrey, *New England*, I, 147–174; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 31–72; S. R. Gardiner, *England since James I*, IV, ch. xxxvi; John Brown, *The Pilgrim Fathers of New England;* Morton Dexter, *Story of the Pilgrims;* W. E. Griffis, *The Pilgrims in their Three Homes;* Arber, *Story of the Pilgrim Fathers.*

Sources. — *Mourt's Relation* (H. M. Dexter's edition); William Bradford, *History of Plimoth Plantation* (many editions; for the history of the manuscript itself, see Winsor, in his *America*, III, 286, and in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1881–1882, p. 106); Bradford, *Letter-Book* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 1st series, III, 127); Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers;* Morton, *New England's Memorial* (Congregational Board's edition).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 283–288.

§ 130. Plymouth, 1620–1629

Summary. — 1620, Voyage of the *Mayflower*. — The Mayflower Compact. — Composition of the colony. — Plymouth settled. — 1621, Treaty with Massasoit, and subsequent relations with the Indians. — 1621 and 1622, Patents from the Council for New England. — Relations with the London merchants, with the Dutch, and with the other early colonists in the neighborhood. — Experience with communism, form of government, etc.

General. — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 269–278; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 47–81; H. L. Osgood, *American Colonies*, I, 109–118; Channing, *United States*, I, 302–317; Tyler, *England in America*, ch. x; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 174–189; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 176–232; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 72–148; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 160–174.

Special. — Bradford, *Plymouth Plantation* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 4th series, III), 68–266; Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers*, and *Chronicles of Massachusetts; Mourt's Relation* (H. M. Dexter's edition); Morton, *New England's Memorial;* F. Baylies, *Historical Memoir of the Colony of New Plymouth;* J. Thacher, *Town of*

Plymouth; W. S. Russell, *Guide to Plymouth*, and *Pilgrim Memorials;* J. A. Goodwin, *The Pilgrim Republic.*

Sources. — Bradford, *Plimoth Plantation; Mourt's Relation* (Dexter's edition). Vol. XI of *Plymouth Colony Records* contains the laws passed in 1623–1682. The Compact is in Bradford, in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 33. For the patents of 1621 and 1622, see Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 4th series, II, 156. Portions of many important documents are in *Library of American Literature*, I.

Bibliography. — Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 289–294.

§ 131. New Plymouth Colony, 1629–1691

Summary. — 1630, Patent to Bradford and associates; assigned to the freemen of New Plymouth in 1640–1641. — Relations with the merchants. — Growth of the colony. — Meaning of the name New Plymouth. — 1643, Joins the Confederation of New England. — Development of institutions. — Mode of life, education, and religion in the colony. — 1643–1691, Later history of the colony. — 1691, United with Massachusetts. — Was the union advantageous to Plymouth? — Population and material resources in 1691.

General. — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 279–283; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 72, 73, 222; II, 17, 102, 107, 114, 143, 188, 189, 246, 271, 290; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Palfrey, *New England*, III, 331–344, 539–547, 596–599, and *Compendious History*, I, 141–147; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 174, 175.

Special Works, Sources, and Bibliography, as above, with the exception of Bradford, which stops at 1647, and with the addition of Brigham's *Laws of New Plymouth Colony.* The patent to Bradford and the Articles of Confederation are in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 51, 94. See also *Records of the Town of Plymouth.*

§ 132. The Council for New England

Summary. — 1606, The Plymouth Company and its colonies. — 1620, The Grand Council for New England, and its charter. — Aims of the new corporation; Sir Ferdinando Gorges. — Grants made by the Council: especially 1622, to Robert Gorges; 1628 and 1629, to the Plymouth colonists; 1628, to the Massachusetts Company; 1629, to Captain John Mason (New Hampshire);

1629, to Gorges (Maine). — 1635, The great division. — 1635, Surrender of the patent to the crown.

General. — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 295–310; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 14–28, 67, 105, 123–155, 285–290, 452–460, 510; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 76–78, 87, 144, 206, 322, 323; Tyler, *England in America*, 152, 164, 167–169, 184–185, 207, 274–277.

Special. - Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, App. B; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*, I, chs. vii, viii; Osgood, *American Colonies*, I, 98–137; S. F. Haven, on the "History of Grants under the Council for New England," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Lowell Lectures*, 152; J. P. Baxter, *Sir Ferdinando Gorges and his Province of Maine* (3 vols., Prince Society, *Publications*, 1890; contains, besides a memoir, Gorges's *Briefe Relation*, *Briefe Narration*, etc.).

Sources. — The charter of the Council is in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 23. Some of the grants made by it are also printed by MacDonald. The "Records of the Council for New England," 1622–1623, 1631–1638, are in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, April, 1867, pp. 59–131.

Bibliography. — Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 340–342.

§ 133. Early Massachusetts, 1620–1628

Summary. — 1622, Weston's attempt at Wessagusset. — 1623, Robert Gorges's colony. — Wollaston and Morton at Merry Mount. — 1622–1623, The Dorchester Fishing Company. — 1623, Settlement at Cape Ann. — 1626, First Settlement at Naumkeag. — Other settlements: Blaxton, Maverick, etc. — 1628, Grant of Massachusetts from the Council for New England.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 74–90; C. F. Adams, in Winsor's *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 63–86; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 149–173; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 199, 222, 232, 233, 283–290; Tyler, *England in America*, 166–171, 174–175, 184–185; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 189–191, 199; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Hildreth, *United States*, I, 176–183.

Special. — C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*, I, 1–208, and "Old Planters," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1878, p. 194; C. W. Upham, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Lowell Lectures*, 231–239; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 87–98; R. C. Winthrop, *Life and Letters of John Winthrop;* Osgood, *American Colonies*, I, 128–131. On this and later history, see also S. A.

Drake, *The Making of New England*. See also §§ 37, 43, under Massachusetts.

Sources. — Francis Higginson's journal, entitled *A True Relation of the Last Voyage to New-England*, and his *New-England's Plantation* (1629, 1630; both reprinted in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, and extracts in T. W. Higginson's *American Explorers*); John White, *The Planter's Plea* (1630, reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, II, and in part in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*). The grant from the Council is not extant, but it is recited in the subsequent charter, which is conveniently seen in *Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 3.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 342–347, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 87–98, notes.

§ 134. The Massachusetts Bay Company

Summary. — 1629, The Royal Charter: how obtained; boundaries; powers of jurisdiction conferred; peculiar features of this charter; probable intentions of the parties to the grant. — Aims and purposes of the Massachusetts colonists: why did the majority of them come to America? — 1629, Aug. 26, The Agreement at Cambridge, England. — London's Plantation in New England. — John Endicott and Francis Higginson. — John Winthrop, his early life and service to Massachusetts; his *History of New England*. — 1630, The Great Emigration; settlement of Boston and the neighboring towns.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 90–102; Tyler, *England in America*, ch. xi; Channing, *United States*, I, 322–340; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 193–219; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 288–329; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 174–195.

Special. — Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 99–139; R. C. Winthrop, *Life and Letters of John Winthrop*, II; G. E. Ellis, *Puritan Age and Rule;* C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, I, ch. xiv; Alice M. Earle, *Margaret Winthrop*.

Sources. — John Winthrop, *History of New England* (edited by James Savage, 1853, and by J. K. Hosmer in Jameson's series of "Original Narratives," 1908), R. C. Winthrop, *Life and Letters of John Winthrop;* John White, *The Planter's Plea* (1630, reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, II); Edward Johnson, *Wonder-Working Providence* (edited by W. F. Poole, 1867, and by J. F. Jameson in his series of "Original Narratives," 1910); Thomas Morton, *New English Canaan* (edited by C. F. Adams in Prince Society, *Publications*, 1883); Roger Clap, *Memoirs* (reprinted with many other

valuable documents in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, and separately by the Dorchester Society of Antiquity); Dudley's *Letter to the Countess of Lincoln* (in Young's *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, Force's *Tracts*, II, and Farmer and Moore's *Historical Collections of New Hampshire*, IV); Samuel Maverick, *Description of New England* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1884–1885, p. 231); Wood, *New-England's Prospect* (Prince Society, *Publications*, 1865; extracts in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*). The Cambridge Agreement is in many places: John Winthrop's *Life and Letters*, I; Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts;* etc. The charter is widely printed: in *Charters and Constitutions*, MacDonald's *Select Charters* and *Source Book*, etc.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 346–348, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 99–139, notes; Tyler, *England in America*, 334.

§ 135. Development of Massachusetts, 1630–1650

Summary. — Form of government established under the charter; the magistrates and their power. — Rise of representative government; the franchise. — The land system; corporate rights. — Church and State; church government, synods. — Economic conditions. — Local government, its origin and form; town meeting, selectmen, and other officers. — Education and social conditions.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 102–112; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. x; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 113–134, 271–300; Channing, *United States*, I, 340–355.

Special. — On the topics treated in this section, see Osgood, *American Colonies*, I. — Representation: W. B. Weeden, *Quality the Prevailing Element in Representation* (American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1894, p. 339); G. H. Haynes, *Representation and Suffrage in Massachusetts, 1620–1691* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XII, Nos. 8, 9); C. F. Bishop, *History of Elections in the American Colonies* (Columbia University, *Studies in History*, etc., III, No. 1); Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. i.

On the origin of the New England town system: Melville Egleston, *Land System of New England* (reprinted in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 11, 12); papers by C. F. Adams and others on "The Genesis of the Massachusetts Town," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1891–1892, p. 172; Channing, *Town and County Government;* G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History;* Hannis Taylor, *De-*

velopment of the English Constitution; Bryce, *American Commonwealth;* W. F. Allen, *Essays* ("The Town and Parish"); W. B. Weeden, *Economic and Social History;* Buck, *Ecclesiastical Law;* Felt, *Ecclesiastical History;* Emory Washburn, *Judicial History;* C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, II; H. B. Adams, *Germanic Origin of New England Towns;* Joel Parker, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1866–1867, p. 14; P. E. Aldrich, *Origin of New England Towns* (reprinted from American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1884); C. M. Andrews, *River Towns of Connecticut.* On the early church organization, see G. L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker;* and on the general question of ecclesiastical system and its influence on the state, see M. Louise Greene, *Development of Religious Liberty in Connecticut*, P. E. Lauer, *Church and State in New England* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, X, Nos. 2, 3), and H. M. Dexter, *Congregationalism as seen in its Literature*, 413–464. See also §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — *Records of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay* (1628–1686, 5 vols. in 6, edited by N. B. Shurtleff; commonly cited as *Massachusetts Colony Records*). The "Body of Liberties," 1641, is in W. H. Whitmore's *Bibliographical Sketch of the Laws of the Massachusetts Colony;* in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, VIII, 216; and, with the comparison with Magna Charta drawn up by Winthrop and others, forms *American History Leaflet*, No. 25. These works, with Whitmore's reprints of the compiled laws of 1660 and 1672 (which also include the "Body of Liberties"), give a complete view of the legislation under the old charter. See also John Cotton, *An Abstract of the Lawes of New England* (reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, III); records of Boston, Dorchester, Charlestown, and Roxbury, in *Reports* of the Boston Record Commissioners; *Watertown Records*, and Bond's *History of Watertown;* John Winthrop, *New England*, and his *Life and Letters*, II, especially the documents in the Appendix; Lechford, *Plain Dealing* (edited by J. H. Trumbull) and his *Note-Book* (American Antiquarian Society, *Archæologia Americana*, VII); John Child, *New England's Jonas cast up at London* (reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, IV, and separately with notes by W. T. R. Marvin); Nathaniel Ward, *Simple Cobbler of Agawam* (reprinted with notes by D. Pulsifer); Increase Mather, *Remarkable Providences* (1684); Josselyn, *Two Voyages to New England* (1628 and 1663); C. E. Banks's edition of *A True Relation concerning the Estate of New-England* (1634); William Wood, *New England's Prospect* (1634); S. A. Green, *Records of Groton;* Nourse, *Early Records of Lancaster*; D. G. Hill, *Dedham Records;* S. A. Bates, *Records of Braintree.*

Bibliography. — The footnotes to the books noted under the heading "Special" in this section will give the leading sources.

§ 136. Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1636–1640

Summary. — 1633–1636, Roger Williams; his sojourn at Boston, Plymouth, and Salem; his ideas as to the validity of royal grants of land; his contention as to veils, as to the oath of fidelity, as to the proposed increase of Salem's land, etc. — Why was Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts? — 1636, Providence founded. — 1633–1638, Anne Hutchinson and her religious views. — The Antinomians. — The Synod at Cambridge. — Vane and Winthrop. — 1637–1638, Trial and banishment of the Antinomians. — Effects of the thrusting out of Williams and the Antinomians on the mental development of Massachusetts; how far is it just to hold the Puritans responsible? — 1638–1639, Founding of the Rhode Island towns. — Constitutional history of Providence Plantations and of Rhode Island.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 113–140, 181–190, 236–246; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 148–168, 195–213, 339–351; Channing, *United States*, I, 362–377; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* G. W. Greene, *Short History of Rhode Island;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 235–266, 317, 340.

Special. — C. S. Brigham, in Edward Field's *Rhode Island*, I, chs. ii–iv; H. M. Dexter, *As to Roger Williams;* J. L. Diman, editor, *John Cotton's Answer to Roger Williams* (Narragansett Club, *Publications*, II); G. E. Ellis, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Lowell Lectures*, 75; also his *Puritan Age and Rule;* Arnold, *Rhode Island;* Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I; Hosmer, *Sir Henry Vane;* Palfrey, *New England*, I, 406–510; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, I; his *Massachusetts, its Historians* (with a review by W. F. Poole in the *Dial*, February, 1894); and his Introduction to his edition of Welde's *Short Story* (Prince Society, *Publications*, 1894); Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts;* Williston Walker, *Creeds and Platforms of Congregationalism;* Peter Oliver, *Puritan Commonwealth;* T. M. Merriman, *Pilgrims, Puritans, and Roger Williams.* See also §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — Winthrop, *New England;* Hutchinson, *Massachusetts.* Accounts of Anne Hutchinson's trial are in Hutchinson, II, Appendix, and Chandler, *American Criminal Trials.* See also T. Welde, *A Short Story of the Rise . . . of the Antinomians* (Prince Society, *Publications*, 1894); and *Early Records of the Town of Providence.*

Bibliography. — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 376–380;

C. S. Brigham, *Bibliography of Rhode Island History* (reprinted from Field's *Rhode Island*, III, 653–681); Channing, *United States*, I, 381.

§ 137. Rhode Island to 1665

Summary. — Samuel Gorton and his struggle with Massachusetts. — 1643, Incorporation of Providence Plantations. — Form of first government. — 1663, The Rhode Island charter. — Peculiar features of Rhode Island institutions. — The "Rhode Island spirit."

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 236–244, 267–273, 308–319; II, 127–130; Greene, *Short History of Rhode Island*, 18–54; Channing, *United States*, I, 382–398; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Hildreth, *United States*, I, 289–291, 304, 305, 322, 323, 394–398, 405, 456, 457; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. ix; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 381–391; II, 48–54.

Special. — Arnold, *Rhode Island*, I; Richman, *Rhode Island* (Commonwealth series); Brayton, *Defence of Gorton;* Palfrey, *New England*, II; D. H. Greene, *East Greenwich;* Staples, *Annals of Providence;* H. C. Dorr, *Proprietors of Providence* (Rhode Island Historical Society, *Collections*, IX); Knowles, *Memoir of Roger Williams*. On the franchise in Rhode Island, see Rider, *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, new series, No. 1. See also, on the general topic, §§ 37, 39, 43, 46.

Sources. — *Colonial Records of Rhode Island;* Gorton's *Simplicities Defence* (in Force, *Tracts*, IV); Edward Winslow's *Hypocrisy Unmasked* (the portions relating to Gorton are reprinted, with valuable explanatory matter, in *New England Historical and Genealogical Register*, IV, 212). The "Incorporation of Providence Plantations," 1643, and the charter of 1663, are in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 91, 125.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 368–384; Channing, *United States*, I, 412.

§ 138. Connecticut, 1638–1662

Summary. — The Dutch and the Pilgrims on the Connecticut River. — Lords Brook, and Say and Sele. — 1635, Saybrook founded. — 1635–1636, Emigration from Massachusetts; motives of the emigrants. — Early constitutional history. — 1638–1639, The "Fundamental Orders." — 1637, The Pequod War. — 1662, The Connecticut charter, and form of government established under it. — Extent of the Connecticut grant.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 149–178, 223, 286, 287; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 170–193, 233–236, 395–398; II, 39–48; Channing, *United States*, I, 398–407; Hildreth, *United States*, 1, 216, 229, 230, 237–241, 247–252, 286, 371, 456; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 204–234.

Special. — Trumbull, *Connecticut* (ed. 1898); G. L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker;* Barber, *Historical Collections;* Caulkins, *Norwich;* Hollister, *Connecticut;* Larned, *Windham County;* B. C. Steiner, *Guilford and Madison;* Bowen, *Boundary Disputes of Connecticut;* C. M. Andrews, *River Towns of Connecticut* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, VII, Nos. 7–9). See also §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — Winthrop, *New England;* Hutchinson, *Massachusetts; Massachusetts Colony Records; Colonial Records of Connecticut;* Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections*, especially I–III, VI. The "Fundamental Orders" and the charter are in *Charters and Constitutions*, and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 60, 116. For the Pequod War, see Mason, *Pequot War* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series, VIII, 120); and Underhill, *Newes from America* (*ibid.*, 3d series, VI, 1).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 368–375; Channing, *United States*, I, 412.

§ 139. New Haven Colony, 1638–1662

Summary. — John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, their aims and purposes in emigrating to New England. — 1638, New Haven founded; title to the soil. — 1639, The "Fundamental Articles." — 1643, Form of government of New Haven town and of the "Plantations in Combination therewith." — Material development of the colony. — 1662, New Haven included in Connecticut.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 190–200; II, 116–125; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 260–262, 286, 460; Channing, *United States*, I, 407–411; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England;* Palfrey, *New England*, I, 528–534, and *Compendious History*, I, 225–233, 398, 399, II, 39, 42.

Special. — Atwater, *New Haven Colony;* Lambert, *Colony of New Haven;* Levermore, *New Haven;* Trumbull, *Connecticut* (ed. 1898); Leonard Bacon, *Historical Discourses;* New Haven Colony Historical Society, *Papers*. See also histories of Connecticut enumerated in § 37.

Sources. — *New Haven Colonial Records*. The "Fundamental Articles" and the "Form of Government" are in the *Colonial Records*, 1638–1649, pp. 11, 112; and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 67, 101, and *Source Book*. On the so-called "blue laws," see Hinman, *Blue Laws of*

New Haven Colony; New Haven Colonial Records, 1653–1665, p. 561; and J. H. Trumbull's edition of *The True Blue-Laws and False Blue-Laws invented by the Rev. Samuel Peters*. There is a sketch of Davenport by Dexter in New Haven Colony Historical Society, *Papers*, II, 205.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 371; Channing, *United States*, I, 413.

§ 140. Northern Settlements, 1620–1660

Summary. — Grants from the Council for New England. — Early settlements on the Piscataqua. — Founding of Exeter and Hampton. — Settlements in Maine. — Relations of these various settlements to Massachusetts.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 201–219; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 516–527, and *Compendious History*, I, 214–224; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 200, 201, 265, 271; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*.

Special. — Belknap, *New Hampshire;* Williamson, *Maine;* George Folsom, *Saco and Biddeford;* Willis, *Portland;* E. Ballard, editor, *Memorial Volume of the Popham Celebration*. See also histories of Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont noted in §§ 37, 43.

Sources. — *Provincial and Town Papers of New Hampshire;* Farmer and Moore, *Historical Collections of New Hampshire;* the *Collections* of the historical societies of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Massachusetts (see § 45; the *Collections* of the Maine Society include the *Documentary History of Maine*); *York Deeds*, I; J. S. Jenness, *Transcripts of Original Documents relating to New Hampshire;* and the publications of the Gorges Society. See also § 43, under Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 363–368; Williamson, *Bibliography of Maine;* and a list of books published by the Dover (N.H.) Public Library in 1903.

§ 141. The New England Confederation

Summary. — Formation of the Confederation. — 1643, Articles of Confederation. — Administration of the Confederation. — Relations with Rhode Island, with the Indians, and with the Dutch and French. — Dispute between Massachusetts and Connecticut. — Later history to 1684.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 220–319; II, 155; Channing, *United States*, I, 414–436; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 285–334, 360–412, 448–506.

Special. — Palfrey, *New England*, I, II; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, chs. i, ii; C. C. Smith, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, ch. vii; J. Q. Adams, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 3d series, IX, 187; Hubbard, *New England* (*ibid.*, 2d series, V–VI), ch. lii; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. xi.

Sources. — Winthrop, *New England;* Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*. The Records of the Commissioners are in *Plymouth Colony Records*, IX, X, and extracts in *Colonial Records of Connecticut*, III. The Articles of Confederation are in *Plymouth Colony Records*, IX; *New Haven Colonial Records*, 1653–1665; Bradford's *Plimoth Plantation;* Brigham's *Plymouth Laws;* MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 94; and, with brief extracts from Winthrop, Bradford, and the records, in *American History Leaflets*, No. 7.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 354, 373, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 299; Channing, *United States*, I, 437.

§ 142. The Quakers

Summary. — A comparison of the ideas of the Puritans and the Quakers. — 1656, The first Quakers arrive at Boston. — 1656–1659, Advice of the Commissioners of the United Colonies. — Legislation in regard to the Quakers in Massachusetts, New Plymouth, Connecticut, Maryland, and Virginia. — 1659–1660, Four Quakers executed in Massachusetts. — 1661, Laws against them modified. — Treatment of the Quakers in England and in the other colonies.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 98–114; Palfrey, *New England*, II, 461–484, and *Compendious History* II, 1–20; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 380, 399, 400–408, 472, 473.

Special. — Hallowell, *Quaker Invasion of Massachusetts;* Joel Parker, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Lowell Lectures*, 355; G. E. Ellis, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts;* C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes;* Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. xiii; James Bowden, *Friends in America*.

Sources. — *Massachusetts Colony Records; Plymouth Colony Records;* laws of Plymouth and Massachusetts (see § 43); *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies;* Chandler, *American Criminal Trials;* Bishop, *New England Judged;* Besse, *Sufferings of the Quakers;* Sewel, *History of the Friends;* John Rous, *New England a Degenerate Plant;* Janney, *History of the Friends;* Gough, *Quakers;* Mather, *Magnalia*, Pt. II, ch.

iv; Paine's edition of *A Call from Death to Life*. The Quakers' petition is reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, I, 401.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 358, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 187.

§ 143. King Philip's War

Summary. — Causes of the war. — 1675, The war begun. — 1676, Aug., Death of Philip. — 1675–1678, Continuation of the conflict against the Eastern Indians. — Results of the war for Massachusetts and New Plymouth.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 153–188; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*, ch. v; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 476–491.

Special. — G. W. Ellis and J. E. Morris, *King Philip's War;* G. M. Bodge, *Soldiers in King Philip's War;* Palfrey, *New England*, III, chs. iv, v; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, chs. xv, xvi; E. E. Hale, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, ch. ix.

Sources. — Hubbard, *Narrative of the Troubles with the Indians;* Drake's edition of Increase Mather's *Brief History;* H. M. Dexter's edition of Church's *Entertaining Passages*, I; Fisher's translation of *Report of a French Protestant Refugee in Boston*, 1689.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 360–362, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 327.

§ 144. Overthrow of the Massachusetts Charter

Summary. — Early attempts to annul the charter. — Relations of the colony to England during the Puritan rebellion. — Relations with the government of the Restoration. — The Regicides in New England. — 1664, Royal Commissioners in New England. — 1676, Edward Randolph. — 1684, The charter vacated.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 190–228; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, 44–56, 69–73, 256–264; Channing, *United States*, II, 65–69, 74–80, 155–167; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 489, 502–504.

Special. — Charles Deane, in Winsor's *Memorial History of Boston*, I, ch. x; Palfrey, *New England*, III, chs. iii, vii, viii, ix; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. ii; Everett Kimball, *Public Career of Joseph Dudley* (Harvard Historical Studies, XV); Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, chs. xii, xiv, xvii.

Sources. — Documents in Hutchinson's *Collection of Papers; Massachusetts Colony Records*, IV; *Calendar of State Papers, America and West Indies;* R. N. Toppan, *Edward Randolph* (Prince Society, *Publications*,

1898–1909). Randolph's *Report* of 1676 is reprinted in Perry's *Historical Collections of the American Church*, III (*Massachusetts*).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 362, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 352.

§ 145. The Tyranny of Andros

Summary. — 1685, Joseph Dudley appointed president. — 1686, Dec., Andros governor-general of the Dominion of New England. — His powers, instructions, and policy with regard to land titles, the assessment and collection of taxes, and local government. — Andros in Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New York. — 1688, Andros's government extended to include New York. — 1689, The "Revolution" in New England; Andros deposed. — The provisional government. — 1691, The Province Charter.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 230–276; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, 264–287; Channing, *United States*, II, 167–185; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 105–122, 142–144.

Special. — Palfrey, *New England*, III, chs. xii, xiii, xiv; W. H. Whitmore, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, II, ch. i, and in Introduction to the *Andros Tracts;* Kimball, *Joseph Dudley;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. xviii; Waters, *Ipswich;* J. R. Brodhead, *Address before the New York Historical Society*, 1844.

Sources. — Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, I, ch. iii; the *Andros Tracts* (Prince Society, *Publications*, 1868–1874), especially Edward Rawson and Samuel Sewall, *The Revolution in New England Justified, and the People there Vindicated* (1691; also reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, IV, 9); Byfield, *Account of the Late Revolution* (1689, reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, IV, and *Library of American Literature*, II, 723); "S. E.," *Further Quæries upon the Present State of the New-English Affairs* (1690?), and "A. B.," *Account of the Late Revolutions in New-England* (1689), both reprinted in *Andros Tracts*, I, 193–208, II, 189–201. The "Dudley Records" and the "Andros Records" are printed in the *Proceedings* of the Massachusetts Historical Society (1899–1900, p. 226) and of the American Antiquarian Society (1900, p. 463) respectively.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, III, 362; Channing, *United States*, II, 186.

§ 146. Provincial New England

Summary. — 1700–1760, Contests between the royal governors and the House of Representatives in Massachusetts. — Financial schemes: paper money and land banks. — Influence of the royal

officials on social and political life. — Religion, the witchcraft delusion, education, and literature.

General. — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 298–311; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America;* Channing, *United States*, II, 283–294; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 249, 250, 293–302, 345, 348, 350–354, 379–381; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 363–372, 381–384, 393–396, 401–405; Winsor, in his *America*, V, 99–144; W. F. Poole, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, II, ch. vi.

Special. — Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, II, 12–66, 121–448; III, 1–82; Palfrey, *New England*, II, and *Compendious History*, III, 152–469, IV, 1–284; Kimball, *Joseph Dudley;* Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts;* Baird, *Huguenot Emigration;* Lowell, *Among my Books* ("New England Two Centuries Ago," and "Witchcraft"); Weeden, *Economic and Social History;* Anderson, *Colonial Church;* Charles Chauncy, *Letter from a Gentleman in Boston . . . concerning the State of Religion in New England* (1742, reprinted by the Clarendon Historical Society, 1883); Barry, *Massachusetts*, II, chs. i–iii; Haliburton, *Rule and Misrule of the English in America.* — Paper Money and Banking: Winsor, *America*, V, 170, where the sources are enumerated; Andrew McF. Davis, *Currency and Banking*, II, 130–313; Felt, *Massachusetts Currency;* Potter and Rider, *Paper Money of Rhode Island* (reprinted in *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 8). See also § 37. — Witchcraft: Upham, *Lecture on Salem Witchcraft;* J. S. Pike, *The New Puritan;* Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, II, 12–66; Palfrey, *New England;* Wendell, *Cotton Mather*, and a paper in Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*, XXIX; G. L. Kittredge's "Notes on Witchcraft," in American Antiquarian Society *Proceedings*, 1907, p. 148, are invaluable.

Sources. — Witchcraft: Woodward, *Records of the Salem Witchcraft*, Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I, 67; Upham, *Salem Witchcraft;* Cotton Mather, *Wonders of the Invisible World* (reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 114); Calef, *More Wonders of the Invisible World* (*ibid.*, 167); Sewall's *Diary.* — For other topics, see Winsor, *America*, V, ch. ii; Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, 338–346; Greene, *Provincial America*, 326–337; and the records of the New England states in § 43.

Bibliography. — Footnotes in Winsor, *America*, V, 99–144; also 156–188. On the witchcraft delusion, see notes in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, II, ch. vi; and American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1895, p. 351.

CHAPTER XVIII

EXPULSION OF THE FRENCH, 1689–1763

§ 147. Conflict with France on the Seaboard

Summary. — Employment of Indians by the French. — 1690, Seizure of Port Royal by the English; restored to France in 1697. — 1710, Port Royal again captured. — 1713, Acadia ceded to England by Treaty of Utrecht. — 1745, Louisburg captured by the New Englanders; 1748, restored to France. — 1713–1754, Relations of the Acadians to the English. — 1755 The Acadians removed. — 1758, Louisburg taken. — England supreme on the seaboard.

General. — C. C. Smith, in Winsor, *America*, V, 407, 408; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 182, 193, 258–262, 265, 276, 317, 330–332, 394–400; Channing, *United States*, II, 537–550, 574–580; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, ch. ii; W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, chs. iii–v.

Special. — Parkman, *Frontenac and New France*. 208–285, 335–387 *Half-Century of Conflict*, and *Montcalm and Wolfe;* McMullen, *Canada*, I; Kingsford, *Canada*, II–IV; Belknap, *New Hampshire;* Hannay, *Acadia;* Drake, *History of the Five Years' French and Indian War* (1744–1749). — On the capture of Louisburg (1745), see Parkman, *Half-Century*, II, 78–161. — On the removal of the Acadians (1755), see Winsor, *America*, V, 452; Parkman, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, I, 234; Hannay, *Acadia*, 383; P. H. Smith, *Acadia, a Lost Chapter;* Parkman and P. H. Smith, in *Harper's Magazine*, November, 1884, p. 877, and the *Nation*, October 30, 1884, p. 374, and January 22, 1885, p. 73. See also Edouard Richard, *Acadia, Missing Links of a Lost Chapter in American History.*

Sources. — Louisburg, 1745: *Pepperrell Papers* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 6th series, X); *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg* (translated with notes by G. M. Wrong, in *University of Toronto Studies* [*in*] *History*, 2d series, I); James Gibson, *Journal of the*

Siege (reprinted in Johnson's *Life of Gibson*); *An Accurate Journal* (attested by Pepperrell). — LOUISBURG, 1758: *A Journal extracted from Amherst's and Boscawen's Letters to Pitt;* see also Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts, *Ninth Report* (1883).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, V, ch. vii, footnotes, and pp. 420–482.

§ 148. Struggle for the Possession of the Great Valleys

Summary. — Claims of France and England to the interior. — 1749–1753, France seizes the upper Ohio Valley. — 1754, Washington's surrender at Fort Necessity. — 1754, Albany Congress (§ 158). — 1755, Braddock's defeat; other disasters. — 1756, War declared (the "Seven Years' War" in Europe). — 1756–1757, French successes. — 1757, William Pitt, war minister. — 1758, Capture of Forts Du Quesne and Frontenac, and Louisburg. — 1759, Capture of Ticonderoga, Niagara, and Quebec. — 1760, Conquest of Canada completed. — 1763, Peace of Paris.

General. — Winsor, *America*, V, ch. viii; Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, ch. v; Channing, *United States*, II, ch. xix; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 433–496; Hart, *Formation of the Union*, ch. ii; Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, chs. vi-ix.

Special. — W. [C. H.] Wood, *The Fight for Canada;* J. S. Corbett, *England in the Seven Years' War* (2 vols.); A. G. Doughty and G. W. Parmelee, *Siege of Quebec and Battle of the Plains of Abraham* (6 vols.); Parkman, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, chs. v–vii, ix; Lodge, *Washington;* Hinsdale, *Old Northwest;* Kingsford, *Canada*, III, IV; R. Wright, *Life of Wolfe;* W. L. Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson;* W. E. Griffis, *Sir William Johnson and the Six Nations.* See also histories of the original states, noted in § 37.

Sources. — Celoron de Bienville, *Journal of an Expedition down the Allegheny and Ohio Rivers, 1749*, in [*American*] *Catholic Historical Researches*, II, III; Washington's *Journal* and *Works;* Pouchot, *Memoir upon the Late War, 1755–1760* (edited by Hough); Winthrop Sargent's edition of the *History of an Expedition against Fort Du Quesne in 1755.* Documents relating to this expedition are in *Magazine of American History*, VIII, and *Virginia Historical Register*, V; see also *Official Records of Robert Dinwiddie, 1751–1758* (Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, new series, III, IV). — For the war in the St. Lawrence Valley, see *Canadian Archives*, Montcalm's *Journal* and Knox's *Journal*, G. S. Kimball's

Correspondence of William Pitt . . . with Colonial Governors (2 vols.), *Reports* of the Royal Record Commission, etc. — For the Albany Plan of Union, see Stephen Hopkins, *True Representation* (reprinted in *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 9); *American History Leaflets*, No. 14. See also § 158.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, V, 560–622.

CHAPTER XIX

THE REVOLUTION, 1760–1783

§ 149. The Colonies in 1760

Summary. — The underlying causes of the Revolution: geographical, social, political, constitutional, economic, religious. — Population of the colonies. — Material resources; agriculture. — Foreign trade. — Manufactures. — Rise of the legal profession. — Growth of political parties. — Constitutional relations with Great Britain.

General. — Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. i; Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, chs. viii, ix; E. Eggleston's papers in the *Century Magazine*, 1883–1885; H. E. Scudder, editor, *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago* (Sans Souci series).

Special. — Lodge, *English Colonies*, chs. ii, iv, vi, viii, x, xiii, xv, xvii, xxii; Winsor, in his *America*, V; Channing, *United States*, II, chs. xiii–xvii; S. G. Fisher, *Struggle for American Independence*, I, chs. i–iii; Parton, introductory portions of his lives of Franklin and Jefferson; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, II, chs. v–xiv; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, chs. i–iv; G. E. Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, chs. i–iii.

For English views of the relations of the colonies to England, see Seeley, *Expansion of England;* W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century* (American edition), ch. xii; Lord Mahon, *England*, ch. xliii; and the histories of England by Massey (Whig), Adolphus (Tory), Bright, and S. R. Gardiner. See also T. E. May (Lord Farnborough), *Constitutional History*, ch. xvii; Sir G. C. Lewis, *Government of Dependencies*, chs. v, vi; Merivale, *Colonization*.

Sources.[1] — Population: *A Century of Population Growth, 1790–1900* (prepared by W. S. Rossiter under direction of S. N. D. North, 1909),

[1] In this and succeeding sections of Part IV (§§ 149–159) it has been found desirable to enumerate under the head of Sources many books which are not contemporary writings, but are, nevertheless, almost indispensable in the absence of better material.

3–15; F. B. Dexter, *Estimates of Population* (American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1887).

THE COLONIES IN GENERAL (see Part V, §§ 161–165): Burke, *European Settlements in America* (in his *Works* and also separately); Huske, *Present State of North America;* Douglass, *Summary of the British Settlements;* Warden, *Statistical, Political, and Historical Account;* Pownall, *Memorial to the Sovereigns of Europe on the Present State of Affairs between the Old and the New World;* M. C. Tyler, *History of American Literature;* Thomas, *History of Printing;* W. H. Brewer, *Agricultural Progress* (in *Harper's Magazine*, May, 1875, p. 880); McCulloch, *A Dictionary, Geographical, Statistical,* etc.; Adam Anderson, *Historical and Statistical Deduction of the Origin of Commerce;* MacPherson, *Annals of Commerce;* Beer, *Commercial Policy of England toward the American Colonies;* Bernard, *Letters on the Trade and Government of America;* J. L. Bishop, *History of American Manufactures;* Swank, *History of the Manufacture of Iron;* Adam Smith, *Wealth of Nations;* Cunningham, *Growth of English Industry and Commerce in Modern Times;* Gee, *Trade and Navigation of Great Britain;* Channing, *The Navigation Laws* (American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1889); *American History Leaflets*, No. 19; C. F. Bishop, *History of Elections in the American Colonies* (Columbia University, *Studies in History*, etc., III, No. 1); Howell, *State Trials,* XVII; Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I, 151.

On topics dealing with ECCLESIASTICAL MATTERS, see J. S. M. Anderson, *Colonial Church;* Perry, *Protestant Episcopal Church*, and *Papers relating to the History of the Church;* A. L. Cross, *The Anglican Episcopate and the American Colonies* (Harvard Historical Studies, IX); C. A. Briggs, *American Presbyterianism;* [F. Makemie], *Narrative of . . . Imprisonment of Two Presbyterian Ministers . . . . at the City of New York* (1707, reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, IV); Backus, *History of the Baptists;* R. A. Guild, *Chaplain Smith and the Baptists;* Baird, *Huguenot Emigration to America;* G. D. Bernheim, *History of the German Settlements and of the Lutheran Church in North and South Carolina; American Catholic Historical Researches;* I. A. Cornelison, *Religion and Civil Government in the United States;* I. D. Rupp, *Religious Denominations;* John Brown, *British Churches*, II; Benedict, *History of the Baptists;* J. G. Shea, *The Catholic Church in the United States*, I, II; Hodge, *Constitutional History of the Presbyterian Church;* the American Church History series; and several papers in the Johns Hopkins University *Studies.*

For the DAILY LIFE OF THE PEOPLE, see Maury, *Huguenot Family in Virginia;* Franklin's "Autobiography," in any edition of his *Works;* Alexander Graydon, *Memoirs of a Life chiefly passed in Pennsylvania* (1752–1818); John Adams's "Diary," in his *Works;* Elkanah Watson,

Memoirs; Burnaby, *Travels through the Middle Colonies* (1759–1760); Kalm, *Travels in North America* (1748); Rochefoucauld, *Travels through the United States* (1795); Robin, *New Travels through North America* (1781); Chastellux, *Travels* (1780–1782); Brissot, *New Travels in the United States of America* (1788); Smyth, *A Tour in the United States* (1784); Claude Blanchard, *Journal* (1780–1783); Martha J. Lamb, *The Homes of America.* See also §§ 38, 47.

For the separate colonies, see the following works, and others enumerated in §§ 37, 38, 43, 46–48: —

New England: Weeden, *Economic and Social History*, chs. xii–xvii; Felt, *Customs of New England;* Drake, *Nooks and Corners of the New England Coast.*

New Hampshire: *Provincial Papers;* Belknap, *New Hampshire;* E. D. Sanborn, *New Hampshire;* Bouton, *Rambles about Concord;* Brewster, *Rambles about Portsmouth.*

Vermont: *State and Provincial Papers;* Vermont Historical Society, *Collections;* Williams, *Vermont.*

Massachusetts: *Acts and Resolves of the Province of Massachusetts Bay;* Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings* (see index volumes), and *Collections* (index in the tenth volume of each series); Barry, *Massachusetts*, II; Washburn, *Judicial History of Massachusetts;* Josiah Bartlett, *Medical Science in Massachusetts* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series, I, 105); C. A. Duniway, *Development of Freedom of the Press in Massachusetts* (Harvard Historical Studies, XII); Upham, *Salem Witchcraft*, Introduction; Nason, *Life of Frankland;* Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston;* S. A. Drake, *Old Landmarks of Boston;* Judd, *Hadley;* Sheldon, *Deerfield;* Waters, *Ipswich.* — The social conditions may be further studied in the town records, especially in *Weston Town Records* (1746–1826), and in *Reports* of the Boston Record Commissioners (Nos. 14, 16, 17, 19, contain Boston *Town Records* and *Selectmen's Minutes*, 1742–1763).

Rhode Island: *Acts and Laws of Rhode Island; Colonial Records;* publications of the Rhode Island Historical Society; C. S. Brigham, *History of Rhode Island* (in Field's *Rhode Island*, I, 3–392); Arnold, *Rhode Island;* Staples, *Annals of Providence; Newport Historical Magazine;* D. H. Greene, *East Greenwich;* F. Denison, *Westerly and its Witnesses;* W. E. Foster, *Stephen Hopkins.*

Connecticut: Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections;* New Haven Historical Society, *Papers;* Hinman, *Antiquities of Connecticut;* Hollister, *History of Connecticut;* Barber, *Historical Collections of Connecticut;* Caulkins, *New London*, and *Norwich;* Steiner, *Guilford and Madison;* M. L. Greene, *Development of Religious Liberty in Connecticut.*

New York: *Acts of the Assembly of New York; Documents relative to the Colonial History;* New York Historical Society, *Collections;* William Smith, *New York;* Thomas Jones, *New York during the Revolution; Ecclesiastical Records of New York*, IV, V; Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs;* Wood, *Long Island;* Furman, *Antiquities of Long Island*, and *History of Brooklyn;* Thompson, *Long Island;* Mandeville, *Flushing;* Innes, *New Amsterdam;* Valentine, *New York [City]*; Wilson, *Memorial History of New York [City]*; Denton, *Account of New York [City]*; Munsell, *Annals of Albany; Account of a Journey to Niagara and Quebec* (1765); *A Brief Narrative of the Case and Tryal of John Peter Zenger* (N.Y., 1738; reprinted, with bibliographies, by L. Rutherfurd, *John Peter Zenger*, 1904).

New Jersey: Allinson, *Laws of New Jersey; New Jersey Archives;* Barber, *Historical Collections of New Jersey;* Elmer, *Constitutional Government of New Jersey;* Murray, *Notes . . . concerning Elizabethtown;* Hatfield, *History of Elizabeth;* Mellick, *Story of an Old Farm;* Wickes, *History of Medicine in New Jersey.*

Pennsylvania: *Charters and Acts of the Province of Pennsylvania;* Mitchell and Flanders, editors, *Statutes at Large of Pennsylvania, 1682–1801;* Hazard, *Pennsylvania Archives*, and *Colonial Records;* Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Collections; Pennsylvania Magazine of History; Penn and Logan Correspondence* (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, IX, X); Proud, *Pennsylvania;* Sharpless, *Quaker Government;* Egle, *Pennsylvania;* George Smith, *Delaware County;* Crumrine, *Washington County;* Scharf, *Philadelphia;* Watson, *Annals of Philadelphia; Life and Works of Benjamin Franklin;* Michaux, *Travels;* T. H. Montgomery, *History of the University of Pennsylvania.*

Maryland: Bacon, *Laws of Maryland; Archives of Maryland;* Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications;* histories of Maryland, by Scharf (Vol. II), McMahon, McSherry, Browne, and Mereness; Neill, *Terra Mariæ;* Johnston, *Cecil County;* Jacob, *Life of Cresap;* Griffith, *Annals of Baltimore;* Ridgely, *Annals of Annapolis;* Lowdermilk, *Cumberland;* Eddis, *Letters from America; Correspondence of Governor Sharpe* (1753–1761, *Maryland Archives*, VI, IX); T. C. Gambrall, *Church Life in Colonial Maryland.*

Virginia: Hening, *Laws of Virginia;* Campbell, *Virginia;* Beverly, *Virginia;* Burk, *Virginia*, III; Jefferson, *Notes on Virginia;* Meade, *Old Churches and Families of Virginia;* Foote, *Sketches of Virginia;* Semple, *Baptists in Virginia;* Kercheval, *Valley of Virginia;* Peyton, *Augusta County;* Maury, *Huguenot Family;* R. A. Brock, *Huguenot Emigration to Virginia* (Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, new series, V); Hartwell, Blair, and Chilton, *Present State of Virginia;* Hugh Jones, *Present State of Virginia;* Dinwiddie's papers (Virginia Historical

Society, *Collections*, new series, III, IV); Ingle, *Local Institutions of Virginia;* Channing, *Town and County Government.* See also biographies and writings of Washington, Jefferson, Henry, Mason, and Madison.

North Carolina: *Colonial Records;* Iredell, *Laws of North Carolina;* Ashe, *North Carolina;* Williamson, *North Carolina;* Wheeler, *Historical Sketches of North Carolina;* John Lawson, *Description of North Carolina;* Bernheim, *German Settlements in North and South Carolina.*

South Carolina: Grimké, *Laws of South Carolina;* Cooper, *Laws of South Carolina* (contains the statutes at large arranged topically); McCrady, *South Carolina* (1670–1776); Ramsay, *South Carolina;* Logan, *Upper Country of South Carolina;* Mills, *Statistics of South Carolina;* Glen (governor of the colony), *Answers to the Lords of Trade* (1749?, in P. C. J. Weston's *Documents connected with the History of South Carolina*); Glen, *Description of South Carolina* (in Carroll's *Historical Collections*, II, which also contains contemporary accounts by Purry, Milligan, Archdale, etc.). See also the *Charleston Year Books*, especially the volume for 1883.

Georgia: Historical Society, *Collections;* histories of the colony by C. C. Jones, McCall, and Stevens; George White, *Historical Collections of Georgia* (with statistics appended); Lee, *Savannah;* Strobel, *The Salzburgers;* Miller, *Bench and Bar;* Moore, *Voyage to Georgia.*

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, V (the index, under the names of the several colonies, indicates the portions of the volume devoted to bibliography); Lodge, *English Colonies* (footnotes to the chapters cited at the head of this section); Perkins, *Check-List of American Local History.* Convenient lists are appended to the several volumes in the American Church History series and in Hart's *American Nation.*

§ 150. Passive Resistance, 1761–1766

Summary. — 1761, Writs of Assistance. — 1763, Parson's Cause. — 1763, Pontiac's conspiracy. — 1764, Revision of the trade laws. — 1765, Stamp Act passed. — Was it constitutional? — Reception in the colonies. — 1765, Stamp Act Congress, its importance as a precedent. — Condition of political parties in England. — The first Rockingham ministry. — 1766, The act repealed. — The Declaratory Act.

General. — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, ch. v; Lecky, *England*, ch. xii; Mellen Chamberlain, in Winsor, *America*, VI, 1–34; Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. ii; Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution* chs. iv–ix.

Special. — On the Section as a Whole: S. G. Fisher, *The Struggle for American Independence*, I, chs. iv–viii; Fiske, *American Revolution*, I, 1–26; C. H. Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 1–17; Mahon, *England*, chs. xliii–xlv (omitting portions relating to America in general and to English politics); Ramsay, *American Revolution;* Grahame, *United States*, IV; Gordon, *American Revolution;* Holmes, *Annals;* Mercy Warren, *Rise . . . of the Revolution*, I, 1–34; Pitkin, *Political History of the United States;* Kingsford, *Canada*, V.

Writs of Assistance: Horace Gray, in Appendix I (especially p. 540) to Quincy's *Reports of Massachusetts Bay*, 1761–1772, and *ibid.*, p. 51; Weeden, *Economic and Social History*, II, ch. xviii; Tudor, *James Otis;* Minot, *Massachusetts*, II; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; *American History Leaflets*, No. 33. MacDonald prints a writ in his *Select Charters*, 258, and *Source Book*, 106.

The Parson's Cause: Lives of Patrick Henry, by William Wirt, M. C. Tyler, and W. W. Henry, especially Henry's work, Vol. I; Campbell, *Virginia*, 507; Hening, *Laws of Virginia;* Burk, *Virginia;* Maury, *Huguenot Family*, 418–424.

The Stamp Act: Mahon, *England*, chs. xliii, xlv; histories of England by Massey and Adolphus; *Rockingham Papers; Grenville Papers*, II; *Correspondence of William Pitt, Earl of Chatham; Bedford Correspondence;* Almon's *Papers;* Walpole, *Letters;* Edmund Burke, *Works;* Campbell, *Lives of the Lord Chancellors*, and *Lives of the Lord Chief Justices* (Camden and Mansfield); *Parliamentary History;* Rogers, *Protests of the Lords;* Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne;* Wells, *Samuel Adams;* Hosmer, *Samuel Adams;* lives of Otis, Hutchinson, John Adams, and Henry, especially W. W. Henry's *Patrick Henry*, I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; P. O. Hutchinson, *Governor Hutchinson*, I. Franklin's examination is in his *Works*. For the Stamp Act Congress, see *Account of the Proceedings of the Congress held in New York in 1765* (reprinted in Niles, *Principles and Acts*, and elsewhere); the resolutions are in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 313, and *Source Book*, 137.

Sources. — Statements of the American Theory: James Otis's speech on Writs of Assistance, in Quincy's *Reports*, as above; Tudor, *James Otis;* Minot, *Massachusetts*, and see S. A. Green, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1890–1891, p. 190; James Otis, *Vindication of the Massachusetts House of Representatives*, and *Rights of the British Colonies Asserted and Proved* (1764); Stephen Hopkins, *Rights of the Colonies Examined* (1765); Richard Bland, *Enquiry into the Rights of the British Colonies* (1769); S. Adams, or Otis, or both (?), *An Appeal to the World, or A Vindication of the Town of Boston* (1769); John Dickinson, *Letters of a Farmer in Pennsylvania* (1767–1768); *Instructions of the Town*

of Boston, adopted May, 1764 (usually ascribed to S. Adams); Patrick Henry, *Virginia Resolutions against the Stamp Act* (1765; in Henry's *Henry* and many other places); *Resolves of the Stamp Act Congress* (October, 1765); *Resolves of the Massachusetts House of Representatives* (October, 1765); *Virginia Resolves* (1769); Jefferson, *Summary View* (1774, reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 11); Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts State Papers*. See also J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, 1–47; Brinton Coxe, *Essay on Judicial Power and Unconstitutional Legislation;* Charles Borgeaud, *Rise of Modern Democracy in Old and New England;* Frederick Pollock, *History of the Science of Politics* (reprinted, in several editions, from the *Fortnightly Review*, August, 1882–January, 1883); Sir G. C. Lewis, *Government of Dependencies*, and *Methods of Observation in Politics;* C. E. Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution of the United States;* M. C. Tyler, *Literary History of the American Revolution*, I, chs. i–vi; *Hansard's Parliamentary History*, xv, xvi; *Annual Register for 1775*.

These writers frequently refer to the earlier English writers on the theory of government, especially to John Locke, *Two Treatises on Civil Government*, Book II; Richard Hooker, *Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity*, Books I, VI; Algernon Sidney, *Discourses on Government;* James Harrington, *The Commonwealth of Oceana;* Blackstone, *Commentaries;* Coke, *Institutes*. See also Hobbes, *Philosophical Rudiments concerning Government and Society*, and *The Leviathan;* Machiavelli, *Discourses on the First Decade of Livy;* Filmer, *Patriarcha;* King James, *Works;* the "Agreement of the People," the "Instrument of Government," and the "Petition and Advice," in S. R. Gardiner, *Documents of the Puritan Revolution*, and in *Old South Leaflets*. A more radical form of the "Agreement of the People" is in Borgeaud, *Democracy*, and Gardiner, *Great Civil War*, III. Appendix. Chapter ix of the latter volume contains a detailed narrative of the formation of the Agreement, and a comparison of some of its leading features with American constitutions.

The French work which produced most influence on the formation of opinion at this early period (1760–1776) is Montesquieu's *Esprit des Lois* (numerous translations under the title *Spirit of Laws*, especially that by Nugent).

The Stamp Act (5 George III, ch. xii) is in many places, among others in *American History Leaflets*, No. 21, and in MacDonald's *Select Charters*, 281. The copy in Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution*, II, 672, is imperfect.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, ch. i, footnotes and "Editorial Notes"; also his *Hand-Book of the American Revolution;* Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, ch. xix.

§ 151. Active Resistance, 1767–1774

Summary. — 1767, The Chatham-Grafton ministry. — The Townshend Acts: (1) laying duties on certain imported commodities, (2) reorganizing the colonial customs service, (3) providing for the quartering of troops, (4) instituting courts of admiralty. — 1768, Seizure of the sloop *Liberty*. — 1769, Virginia Resolves. — 1770, "Boston Massacre." — 1771, Partial repeal of the act levying customs duties. — 1772, Burning of the *Gaspee*. — Commission of Inquiry. — 1773, Virginia Resolves. — 1773, Destruction of the tea at Boston. — 1774, Four acts of Parliament: (1) Boston Port Act, (2) Massachusetts Government Act, (3) Impartial Administration of Justice Act, (4) Quebec Act. — 1774, First Continental Congress. — The American Association, its importance from a constitutional point of view.

General. — Lecky, *England*, ch. xii; Mellen Chamberlain, in Winsor, *America*, VI, ch. i; Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. ii; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 537–579; III, 25–56; Kingsford, *Canada*, V; Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, chs. x–xvii.

Special. — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, chs. vi–viii; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 17–24; Trevelyan, *American Revolution*, Part I, chs. ii-vii; Mahon, *England*, chs. xlvi–l (omitting portions dealing with English politics); Massey, *England;* Adolphus, *England;* Barry, *Massachusetts;* Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*.

The history of this time must be studied in the biographies and writings of the leading men (see §§ 37, 46–48). In the following paragraphs the most important of these works for the student of this period are brought together:

John Adams: *Life and Works* (10 vols.), edited by C. F. Adams (the Life by the editor forms Vol. I; the Diary and Autobiography are in Vols. II, III). Biography by J. T. Morse, Jr., in American Statesmen series. See also *Familiar Letters of John Adams and his Wife during the Revolution* and *Letters of Mrs. Adams*, both edited by C. F. Adams.

Samuel Adams: *Writings* (4 vols.), edited by H. A. Cushing; *Life and Public Services* (3 vols.), by W. V. Wells. Biography by J. K. Hosmer, in American Statesmen series.

John Dickinson: *Political Writings*, edited by P. L. Ford; *Life and Times*, by J. A. Stillé.

Benjamin Franklin: *Works* (10 vols.), edited by Jared Sparks; also (10 vols.) by John Bigelow, and (10 vols.) by A. H. Smyth; *Life and*

Writings (6 vols., arranged topically), edited by W. T. Franklin, — a very useful edition for the student; *Life of Benjamin Franklin written by himself* (3 vols.), edited by John Bigelow. Biography by P. L. Ford (*The Many-Sided Franklin*); and by J. T. Morse, Jr., in American Statesmen series.

Alexander Hamilton: *Works* (7 vols.), edited by J. C. Hamilton, and (9 vols.) by H. C. Lodge. Biography by J. T. Morse, Jr. (2 vols.); and by H. C. Lodge in American Statesmen series.

Patrick Henry: *Life and Speeches* (3 vols.), by W. W. Henry. See also biographies by William Wirt and M. C. Tyler, the latter in American Statesmen series.

Stephen Hopkins: *Life* (2 parts), by W. E. Foster, forming No. 19 of *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*.

John Jay: Biographies by William Jay (2 vols.) and George Pellew, the latter in American Statesmen series.

Thomas Jefferson: *Writings* (9 vols.), edited by H. A. Washington, and (10 vols.) by P. L. Ford (Vols. I–III cover the Revolutionary period). Biographies by Randall (3 vols.), Tucker (2 vols.), Parton, and J. T. Morse, the last in American Statesmen series.

R. H. Lee, *Letters* (2 vols.), edited by J. C. Ballagh. Biography by R. H. Lee, Jr. (2 vols. in one).

George Mason: *Life* (2 vols.), by K. M. Rowland.

James Otis: *Life*, by William Tudor.

Timothy Pickering: *Life* (4 vols.), by O. Pickering and C. W. Upham.

Josiah Quincy, Jr.: *Life*, by Josiah Quincy.

George Washington: *Writings* (12 vols.), edited by Jared Sparks and (14 vols.) by W. C. Ford; *Correspondence of the Revolution, being Letters to Washington* (4 vols.), edited by Sparks. Biographies by John Marshall (5 vols.), Irving (5 vols.), Sparks (forming the first volume of his edition of the *Writings*), Lodge, in American Statesmen series (2 vols)., and W. C. Ford (2 vols., exceedingly valuable).

Biographies of less prominent persons are in Sparks, *American Biography;* John Sanderson, *Signers of the Declaration of Independence;* Elizabeth F. Ellet, *Women of the American Revolution;* C. C. Jones, Jr., *Biographical Sketches of the Delegates of Georgia to the Continental Congress;* Thomas Wyatt, *Memoirs of the Generals, Commodores . . . during the Wars of the Revolution and of 1812.* The *Southern Literary Messenger* contains many collections of letters and other material on this period.

For critical estimates of some of the leading men, see Theodore Parker, *Historic Americans*. Mason L. Weems's biographies of Washington and Franklin are interesting as showing the origin of many of the stories connected with these men.

Sources. — Townshend Acts, 1767: Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 204; the leading histories of England, as above, under "Special"; *Parliamentary History*, XVI; Cavendish's *Debates*, 1768–1770. The acts technically known as 7 George III, chs. 41, 46, etc., are in *Statutes at Large*, VIII. See also *Scots' Magazine*, XXX; *Gentleman's Magazine*, XXXVIII; *Annual Register; Grenville Papers; Chatham Correspondence;* Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne;* Albemarle, *Life of Rockingham;* Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox;* Edmund Burke, *Works*, and *Two Speeches on Conciliation with America;* Almon, *Prior Documents;* Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts State Papers; Boston Town Records;* biographies of Otis, the Adamses, etc.; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 5th series, IX. For a notice of Townshend, see *Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th ed., XXVII.

Seizure of the Sloop Liberty, 1768: John Adams, *Works*, III; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; and the works mentioned under "Special."

Virginia Resolves, 1769: Frothingham, *Republic*, 233; W. W. Henry, *Life of Patrick Henry*, I; the biographies and writings of the Virginia statesmen, and the standard histories of Virginia. The Resolves are in Frothingham, *Republic*, 236, note; and in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 334.

"Boston Massacre," 1770: Frothingham, *Life of Warren*, and *Rise of the Republic;* John Adams, *Works;* Kidder, *Boston Massacre;* Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*, I; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston.* An account from the American point of view is entitled *A Short Narrative of the Horrid Massacre in Boston* (Boston, 1770). Joseph Warren's oration on March 6, 1775, is reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, III, 256. See also the standard works, as above.

The Gaspee, 1772: Staples, *Documentary History of the Destruction of the Gaspee;* J. R. Bartlett, *History of the Destruction*, etc. (most of the material found in this volume is also in *Rhode Island Colonial Records*, VII); Rhode Island Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1890–1891; Arnold, *Rhode Island*, II; Parton, *Life of Jefferson;* Lossing, *Field-Book of the Revolution*, II.

Virginia Resolves, 1773: Frothingham, *Republic*, 279; Staples, *Destruction of the Gaspee;* G. W. Greene, *Nathanael Greene*, I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; Wells, *Samuel Adams;* lives of Jefferson by Parton and Randall, and either edition of the works of Jefferson. The Resolves are in Frothingham, *Republic*, 280; *Journals of the House of Burgesses of Virginia*, 1773–1776, p. 28; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 336, and *Source Book.*

Tea Act, 1773: Frothingham, *Republic*, 296, and *Life of Warren;*

Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1864–1865, p. 324, and *Collections*, 4th series, III; works of Franklin; R. H. Lee, *Life of Arthur Lee; Parliamentary History*, XVII; Donne, *Correspondence of George III; Annual Register;* the standard histories. Professor Max Farrand's article in the *American Historical Review*, III, 266, is especially valuable.

Acts of 1774: Frothingham, *Republic*, 344; Mahon's and Lecky's histories; *Parliamentary History*, XVII; *Protests of the Lords;* Donne, *Correspondence of George III;* Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox.* The acts are printed in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 337–355, and *Source Book*, 150–162.

Quebec Act, 1774: Victor Coffin, *The Quebec Act* (and see *Yale Review*, August, 1895); Kingsford, *Canada*, V, ch. vii (the act itself is at p. 256); Cavendish, *Debates on the Canada Bill in 1774* (London, 1839); Lecky, *England;* and the writings of the leading American statesmen of the time. See also Burke's *Works*.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, ch. i, footnotes and "Editorial Notes"; also his *Hand-Book of the American Revolution*; Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, ch. xix.

§ 152. Revolution Precipitated, 1772–1776

Summary. — 1772–1773, Committees of correspondence. — 1773, The "Hutchinson Letters." — 1774–1175, Affairs in Massachusetts. — 1775, Apr. 19, Lexington and Concord. — 1775, May, Capture of Ticonderoga. — 1775, June 17, Bunker Hill. — 1775, June, Congress assumes control of the army before Boston and appoints Washington commander-in-chief. — Apr., 1775 to Mar., 1776, Siege of Boston. — 1775–1776, Invasion of Canada. — 1776, Clinton's attack on Charleston, S.C.

General. — Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, ch. x; Winsor, *America*, VI, ch. ii; Lecky, *England*, ch. xii; Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, chs. xiv, xvii, xviii.

Special. — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, chs. ix, x; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. ii, iii, and pp. 77–78; Trevelyan, *American Revolution*, Part I, chs. viii–xi, and Part II, chs. i–iii; Mahon, *England*, chs. li–liii; and the other standard works mentioned in § 150, especially those of Grahame, Gordon, and Ramsay; Moore, *Diary of the American Revolution;* Thomas Jones, *New York in the Revolution* (gives the views of an American loyalist; valuable notes by the editor, E. F. DeLancey); Niles, *Principles and Acts* (contains a mass of information); Kingsford, *Canada*, V, VI. See also §§ 37–39, 46, 47.

MILITARY HISTORIES covering the whole field: J. W. Fortescue, *History of the British Army*, III; Lossing, *Field-Book of the Revolution* (2 vols., arranged topically with no regard to sequence of events); Dawson, *Battles of the United States* (2 vols.; gives many important documents); Carrington, *Battles of the American Revolution* (a good compendious account from a military point of view); Beatson, *Naval and Military Memoirs of Great Britain;* C. O. Paullin, *The Navy of the American Revolution;* Stedman, *History of the American War.*

Sources. — THE HUTCHINSON LETTERS: *Copy of Letters sent to Great Britain by Thomas Hutchinson*, etc. (reprinted in *Franklin before the Privy Council*, Phila., 1859); Franklin's statement of the matter is in his *Works* (Sparks's edition, IV). See also P. O. Hutchinson, *Diary and Letters of Thomas Hutchinson;* Hosmer, *Life of Hutchinson;* biographies of Franklin; and the standard histories, both American and English.

LEXINGTON AND CONCORD, 1775: The official account compiled for the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts is in *Journals of the Provincial Congresses*, 661–694. See also Force, *American Archives*, 4th series, II, where several English accounts are also given; Ellen Chase, *Beginnings of the American Revolution*, II, III; Frothingham, *Siege of Boston;* Hudson, *History of Lexington;* Phinney, *Battle of Lexington;* Shattuck, *History of Concord.* S. A. Drake's *Historic Fields of Middlesex* is useful in the identification of localities.

SIEGE OF BOSTON, 1775–1776: Frothingham, *Siege of Boston*, and *Life of Joseph Warren; Centennial Celebration*, printed by the city of Boston; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston;* Barry, *Massachusetts*, III; Paige, *History of Cambridge;* Drake, *History of Roxbury;* Washington's *Writings;* biographies of Washington, Nathanael Greene, William Heath, John Warren, George Read, Joseph Reed, John Knox; Thacher, *Military Journal;* Force, *American Archives*, 4th series, V, VI.

BUNKER HILL, 1775: Frothingham, *Siege of Boston*, *Life of Warren*, and *Battle-Field of Bunker Hill;* the *Historical Magazine* (edited by H. B. Dawson), June, 1868; Thacher, *Military Journal;* Barry, *Massachusetts;* Caleb Stark, *Memoir of General Stark;* C. F. Adams, in *American Historical Review*, I, 401; Daniel Putnam, *Account of the Battle of Bunker Hill . . . with a Letter to Major-General Dearborn repelling his unprovoked Attack on . . . Israel Putnam;* Humphreys, *Life of Putnam;* G. E. Ellis, *Sketches of Bunker Hill Battle;* Force, *American Archives*, 4th series, IV; Fonblanque, *Life of Burgoyne;* the standard histories, especially Gordon's and Mahon's; and the military histories, especially Dawson's *Battles of the United States.*

TICONDEROGA, 1775: Barry, *Massachusetts;* Holland, *Western Massachusetts;* J. E. A. Smith, *History of Pittsfield;* Thomas Jones, *New York*

in the Revolutionary War; Lossing, *Life of Schuyler;* Hollister, *Connecticut;* Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections*, I; Dawson, *Battles of the United States;* Ethan Allen, *Narrative of . . . [his] Captivity;* I. N. Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold.*

Invasion of Canada, 1775–1776: C. P. Lucas, *History of Canada, 1763–1812;* John Codman, *Arnold's Expedition to Quebec;* Justin H. Smith, *Arnold's March from Cambridge to Quebec;* I. N. Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold;* Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan;* Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution* (for Arnold's letters to Washington); Parton, *Life of Aaron Burr;* J. J. Henry, *Accurate Account*, etc.; Meigs's *Journal* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 2d series, II, 227), and Wild's *Journal* (*Proceedings*, 2d series, II, 267). See also the standard works, as above, especially Ramsay, Lossing, and Dawson; Lossing, *Life of Schuyler;* Hollister, *Connecticut;* Force, *American Archives*, 4th series, III.

Attack on Charleston, 1776: McCrady, *South Carolina, 1775–1780;* Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution;* Moultrie, *Memoirs;* Ramsay, *Revolution of South Carolina;* Gibbes, *Documentary History;* John Drayton, *Memoirs;* Clinton, *Observations on Stedman's History.* See also the standard works as above, especially Dawson, Lossing, Jones, and Adolphus.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, and *Hand-Book of the American Revolution;* Frothingham, *Siege of Boston*, footnotes; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 344, 345, 352; Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, ch. xix.

§ 153. The Declaration of Independence, 1774–1776

Summary. — The Continental Congresses, their powers and constitutional positions. — 1775–1776, Growth of the desire for separation. — 1775 to June, 1776, Organization of state governments. — 1776, May, Virginia Resolves. — June, R. H. Lee's resolutions. — July 2, Resolution declaring the United Colonies independent. — July 4, Adoption of the great Declaration. — July 5, The Declaration published; Aug. 2, signed. — Constitutional position of the Declaration. — Political theories set forth therein.

General. — Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, ch. xi; Lecky, *England*, ch. xiv; Higginson, in *Scribner's Magazine*, July, 1876; Fiske, *American Revolution.*

Special. — H. Friedenwald, *The Declaration of Independence, an Interpretation and an Analysis;* J. H. Hazelton, *The Declaration of Independence, its History;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. iv, v; Trevelyan, *American Revolution*, Part II, chs. iv, v; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic;* G. T. Curtis, *History of the Constitution;* Story, *Commentaries on the Constitution;* Tucker, *United States;* Pitkin, *United States;* George Chalmers, *Introduction to the History of the Revolt* (especially the introduction by Sparks); G. W. Greene, *Historical View;* the standard histories, especially Gordon's; and the biographies and writings of Jefferson, R. H. Lee, the Adamses, Franklin, Dickinson, and other leading men.

Sources. — *Journals of Congress* and *Secret Journals of Congress* (both sets printed by authority of the Congresses and containing less information than the titles indicate); John Adams, *Works;* Force, *American Archives.* Lee's Resolutions are given in facsimile in Force, *Archives*, 4th series, VI. The original draft of the Declaration of Independence is printed in facsimile in the Congress edition of Jefferson's *Writings*, I, 19, and in Ford's edition, II, 42. The Declaration as adopted may be found in facsimile in the *Declaration of Independence* issued by the city of Boston in 1876; and in Force, *Archives*, 5th series, I. Various texts are given by Ford in his edition of Jefferson's *Writings*, I, 30, and II, 42. For the facts as to the signing of the Declaration, see Mellen Chamberlain, *Authentication of the Declaration of Independence* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1884–1885, p. 273, also printed separately), and Winsor, *America*, VI, 262–269. See also Thomas Paine, *Common Sense;* and the diary of Richard Smith, in *American Historical Review*, I, 288.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, 100, 101, and "Editorial Notes" to chapter iii; also his *Hand-Book of the Revolution;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 340–342.

§ 154. The War in the Middle States and in the West

Summary. — 1776, July, Strength of the combatants. — The Hessians. — 1776, Aug.–Dec., The campaign from Long Island to the Delaware. — Dec. 26, Surprise at Trenton. — Importance of this battle. — 1777, Burgoyne's campaign. — The Saratoga convention. — Howe's campaign in Pennsylvania. — 1778, Monmouth. — 1778–1781, Other campaigns in the North. — 1780, Treason of Benedict Arnold. — West: 1777–1781, Iroquois raids on New York frontier; 1777, St. Leger's expedition; Aug. 3, battle

of Oriskany; 1778, July, Wyoming; 1779, Sullivan's expedition. — 1774, Dunmore's War (§ 162); 1776–1783, Indian war in Kentucky and upper Ohio Valley. — 1778–1779, Clark's conquest of the Northwest; 1781, Spanish expedition to St. Joseph. — 1776–1783, war with Cherokees; 1780, Oct. 7, King's Mountain (§ 156). (See §§ 162, 168.)

General. — Lecky, *England*, ch. xiv; General Cullom, in Winsor, *America*, VI, 275–314, and F. D. Stone, *ibid.*, 367–403; J. W. Fortescue, *History of the British Army*, III.

Special. — Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. vi–viii, x, xiii, xv; Trevelyan, *American Revolution*, Part II, chs. vi–xii; Mahon, *England;* Carrington, *Battles;* Kingsford, *Canada*, VI; J. W. Wallace, *Colonel William Bradford;* T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, I, ch. xi, and II; J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, chs. vii–xii; Max Farrand, *West and the Principles of the Revolution* (*Yale Review*, XVII, 44); C. A. Hanna, *Scotch-Irish*, I, ch. i; A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, ch. xi; H. A. Bruce, *Daniel Boone and the Wilderness Road*, chs. x–xiii; and the standard histories.

Sources. — On the war as a whole, see the following volumes issued by the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts: *American Manuscripts in the Royal Institution* (4 vols.; these are the "Headquarters Papers" of the successive British commanders-in-chief); *Abergavenny Manuscripts* (correspondence of John Robinson); *Stopford-Sackville Manuscripts* (correspondence of Lord George Germain; Vol. II contains the papers relating to America); *Various Collections*, VI (correspondence of William Knox, under-secretary for the colonies).

The Hessians: E. J. Lowell, *The Hessians in the Revolution;* G. W. Greene, *German Element in the War;* Fonblanque, *Life of Burgoyne;* Baroness Riedesel, *Letters and Memoirs relating to the War.*

Long Island to the Delaware, 1776: H. P. Johnston, *Campaign of 1776 around New York* (Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, III; pt. ii, documents), and *Battle of Harlem Heights;* biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Joseph Reed, Franklin, John Adams; T. W. Field, *Battle of Long Island* (Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, II); C. F. Adams, in *American Historical Review*, I, 650; Amory, *General Sullivan;* General Heath, *Memoirs;* Parton, *Life of Aaron Burr;* Thomas Jones, *New York in the Revolution;* Dunlap, *New York;* Force, *American Archives*, 5th series; Stiles, *Brooklyn;* General Howe, *Narrative of . . . his Conduct.*

Trenton and Princeton: W. S. Stryker, *Battles of Trenton and Princeton; Pennsylvania Magazine of History*, VII, 45; Massachusetts

Historical Society, *Collections*, 5th series, IV, 32; biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Sullivan, and Knox; Lowell, *Hessians;* Raum, *History of Trenton;* Haven, *Annals of Trenton;* Hageman, *History of Princeton.*

Burgoyne's Campaign, 1777: C. P. Lucas, *History of Canada, 1763–1812;* Fonblanque, *Burgoyne;* Burgoyne, *State of the Expedition;* W. L. Stone, *Campaign of Burgoyne;* J. M. Hadden, *Journal and Orderly Books, 1776–1778;* I. N. Arnold, *Life of Arnold;* Lossing, *Life of Schuyler;* C. Neilson, *Account of Burgoyne's Campaign;* Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan;* Thacher, *Military Journal;* Lowell, *Hessians;* Baroness Riedesel, *Memoirs;* the military histories, especially Dawson, *Battles.* For St. Leger's campaign, see especially W. L. Stone, *Life of Brant,* and *Campaign of Burgoyne;* and E. H. Roberts, *Battle of Oriskany.*

For the battle of Bennington, see especially H. D. Foster and T. W. Streeter, *Stark's Independent Command at Bennington* (reprinted from New York Historical Association, *Proceedings*, 1905); W. L. Stone, *Campaign of Burgoyne;* J. E. A. Smith, *History of Pittsfield;* Holland, *Western Massachusetts;* Chipman, *Life of Seth Warner;* Vermont Historical Society, *Collections;* Caleb Stark, *Memoir of John Stark; New Hampshire State Papers;* Coburn, *Centennial of the Battle of Bennington.*

For the Convention, see especially "Note by General Cullom," in Winsor, *America*, VI, 317; Charles Deane, in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1877; Mahon, *England*, VI.

Howe's Campaign, 1777: *Pennsylvania Magazine of History;* Scharf and Wescott, *Philadelphia;* Egle, *Pennsylvania;* Lewis, *Chester County;* George Smith, *Delaware County;* Lafayette, *Memoirs;* General James Wilkinson, *Memoirs;* Muhlenberg, *Life of Muhlenberg;* Amory, *General Sullivan;* Ross, *Life of Cornwallis;* C. F. Adams, "Strategy of the Campaign of 1777," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1910–1911; the standard histories and military histories, especially Gordon and Dawson; Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution;* biographies and writings of Washington (especially that by Marshall), Greene, Knox, Wayne, and Pickering; Lowell, *Hessians; Pennsylvania Archives.*

The Monmouth Campaign, 1778: Dawson, *Battles*, and the other special works; Alexander Hamilton, *Works* (any edition); Kapp, *Life of Steuben;* biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Lafayette, Morgan, Pickering, Knox, and Wayne; Bean, *Washington and Valley Forge;* Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution;* Simcoe, *Queen's Rangers;* Almon, *Remembrancer.*

For Charles Lee, see especially *Proceedings of the Court Martial held at Brunswick;* G. H. Moore, *Treason of Charles Lee;* Langworthy,

Memoirs of Lee; papers of Lee, in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1871–1874; Sparks, *Life of Lee;* Marshall, *Life of Washington;* Hamilton, *Works*.

Arnold's Treason, 1780: Dawson, *Papers concerning the Capture of André; Proceedings of a Board, September 29, 1780* (reprints in Sargent's *André* and Boynton's *West Point*); I. N. Arnold, *Life of Arnold;* Lossing, *Two Spies;* Dawson, *Trial of J. H. Smith;* J. H. Smith, *Authentic Narrative;* Chandler, *American Criminal Trials;* Sparks, *Life and Treason of Arnold;* Parton, *Life of Burr;* G. W. Greene, *Nathanael Greene;* Thomas Jones, *New York in the Revolution;* Sargent, *Life of André;* Leake, *Life of General Lamb;* B. Tallmadge, *Memoir;* Lafayette, *Memoirs;* Marbois, *Complot d'Arnold et de Sir Henry Clinton;* Rush, *Washington in Domestic Life;* Baker's edition of Halleck's *International Law;* histories of England by Adolphus and Mahon; *English Historical Review*, January, 1890. The best concise account is by Winsor, in his *America*, VI, 447–468.

West. — New York: F. W. Halsey, *Old New York Frontier*, pts. iv–vii; W. L. Stone, *Joseph Brant;* W. W. Campbell, *Tryon County;* D. Weller, *Centennial Celebration of General Sullivan's Campaign;* G. S. Conover, *Journals of Sullivan's Expedition*.

Wyoming: Pearce, *Annals of Luzerne County;* Miner, *Wyoming;* Chapman, *Wyoming;* W. L. Stone, *Poetry and History of Wyoming;* Peck, *Wyoming;* Hoyt, *Luzerne Seventeen Townships*.

Kentucky and Ohio Valley: L. S. Shimmell, *Border Warfare in Pennsylvania;* Wallace Notestein, *Western Indians in Revolution* (*Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly*, XVI, 269); J. A. James, *Indian Diplomacy* (Wisconsin Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1909, p. 125); C. W. Butterfield, *The Girtys*, chs. v–xxi; R. T. Durrett, *Bryant's Station;* Thwaites and Kellogg, *Revolution on the Upper Ohio*.

Clark's Conquest: R. G. Thwaites, *How Clark won the Northwest*, No. 1; W. H. English, *Conquest of Northwest*, chs. i–xviii; J. A. James, *Some Problems of the Northwest* (*Turner Essays*, 57), and *George Rogers Clark and Detroit* (Mississippi Valley Historical Association, *Proceedings*, III, 291); Illinois State Historical Library, *Collections*, I, 171–464, and Vols. II, V (Cahokia and Kaskaskia records, especially the introductions by C. W. Alvord); Alvord, *Conquest of St. Joseph* (*Missouri Historical Review*, II, 195), and *Submission of Vincennes* (*American Historical Review*, XIV, 544).

Cherokees: J. G. M. Ramsey, *Tennessee*, ch. iii; John Drayton, *Memoirs*, chs. ix, xvii; *North Carolina Records*, X, XI.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, and *Hand-Book of the Revolution* (use index in each case); Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 346–350.

§ 155. The French Alliance

Summary. — 1775, Silas Deane in France; Deane and Beaumarchais. — 1776, Franklin, Arthur Lee, and Deane appointed commissioners. — Franklin's career in France. — Effect of Burgoyne's surrender. — 1778, The treaties: (1) eventual alliance, (2) commerce. — 1778, Lord North's conciliatory propositions. — Results of the alliance. — 1778, D'Estaing at Newport.

General. — E. J. Lowell, in Winsor, *America*, VII, 24–72; Parton, *Life of Franklin;* G. W. Greene, *Historical View.*

Special. — J. B. Perkins, *France in the American Revolution;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. xii, xiii; Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States;* Trescot, *Diplomacy of the American Revolution;* E. E. Hale, *Franklin in France.*

Sources. — On the negotiations with France, see especially Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence of the Revolution;* Wharton, *Digest of International Law*, and *Revolutionary Diplomatic Correspondence;* Force, *American Archives; Secret Journals of Congress;* Charles Isham on Silas Deane, in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1886, and in American Historical Association, *Papers*, III, 40; *Papers in . . . the Case of Silas Deane* (Seventy-Six Society, Phila., 1855); Stillé, *Beaumarchais and the Lost Million;* Lomenie, *Beaumarchais;* biographies and writings of Franklin; R. H. Lee, *Life of Arthur Lee;* W. Jay, *Life of John Jay;* John Adams, *Works;* Lafayette, *Memoirs;* Circourt, *Historical Conclusions* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1876–1877, p. 16), and *Action Commune de la France et de l'Amérique;* Doniol, *Participation de la France à l'Établissement des États-Unis d'Amérique;* J. Durand, *Documents on the American Revolution.*

The TREATIES are in *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and other Powers; Secret Journals;* etc.

For the ATTEMPTS AT CONCILIATION and the condition of English politics, 1776–1779, see especially the standard English histories (§ 149); *Parliamentary History;* Rogers, *Protests of the Lords; Annual Register;* Donne, *Correspondence of George III and Lord North; Chatham Correspondence;* Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne;* Albemarle, *Memoirs of Rockingham; Bedford Papers; Grenville Papers;* Russell, *Memoirs of C. J. Fox;* Morley, *Life of Edmund Burke;* Burke, *Works;* Horace Walpole, *Journals*, and *Memoirs of George III;* Jesse, *George Selwyn; Auckland Correspondence;* P. O. Hutchinson, *Thomas Hutchinson;* Campbell, *Lord Chancellors* (Camden, Loughborough, and Thurlow), and *Lord Chief*

Justices (Mansfield); Sir G. C. Lewis, *Administrations of Great Britain;* Earle, *Prime Ministers;* D. Adams, *English Party Leaders.*

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. i, footnotes and "Critical Essay"; also his *Hand-Book of the Revolution;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 353, 354.

§ 156. The War in the Southern Department

Summary. — 1778, Seizure of Savannah by the British. — 1779, D'Estaing and Lincoln attempt its recovery. — 1780, Charleston captured by Clinton. — The British occupy South Carolina and Georgia. — 1780, Aug., Battle of Camden. — 1780, Oct., King's Mountain. — 1781, Greene's campaign from Cowpens to Guilford. — His later campaigns. — Lafayette and Cornwallis in Virginia. — 1780–1781, Rochambeau at Newport. — 1781, Aug.-Oct., The Yorktown campaign. — Naval conflict off the capes of the Chesapeake.

General. — Lecky, *England*, ch. xiv; Winsor, *America*, VI, 469–507; G. W. Greene, *Nathanael Greene*, III, ch. ii (a summary of the earlier campaigns); Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. v, vi, and *Thomas Jefferson;* J. W. Fortescue, *History of the British Army*, III; Simms, *Francis Marion;* G. W. Greene, *Historical View.*

Special. — Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. xvi, xvii; Ramsay, *American Revolution*, and the other standard works enumerated in §§ 150–152, especially Dawson, *Battles*, and Stedman, *American War;* H. P. Johnston, *Yorktown Campaign;* Lowell, *Hessians.*

Sources. — The War to September, 1781: McCrady, *South Carolina* (1775–1783); Ramsay, *Revolution of South Carolina from a British Province to an Independent State;* Moultrie, *Memoirs of the American Revolution;* McCall's, Jones's, and Stevens's histories of Georgia; Tarleton, *Campaigns of 1780 and 1781;* Mackenzie, *Strictures on Tarleton's History;* Hough, *Siege of Savannah;* Almon, *Remembrancer;* Bowen, *Life of Lincoln;* Hough, *Siege of Charleston; Charleston Year Books;* Kapp, *Life of John Kalb;* O. H. Williams, *Narrative of the Campaign of 1780* (in W. Johnson's *Nathanael Greene*, I, Appendix B); J. A. Stevens, in *Magazine of American History*, V, and H. P. Johnston, *ibid.*, VIII; McRee, *Life of Iredell.* There are many articles on these southern campaigns in the *Southern Literary Messenger* and in the *University of North Carolina Magazine.*

Greene's Campaigns, 1781–1783: G. W. Greene, *Nathanael Greene*, III; W. Johnson, *Nathanael Greene;* Ashe, *North Carolina;* Henry Lee,

Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department; Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan;* Horry, *Life of Francis Marion;* Gibbes, *Documentary History;* Armstrong, *Life of Anthony Wayne;* Tarleton, *Campaigns;* Hamilton, *Grenadier Guards;* Almon, *Remembrancer;* Draper, *King's Mountain;* McSherry, *Maryland;* Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution.*

The Yorktown Campaign, 1781: Washington's *Writings* (either edition); biographies of Washington, especially that by Marshall; Girardin, *Continuation of Burk's Virginia* (written under Jeffersonian auspices); *Calendar of Virginia State Papers;* Rochambeau, *Memoirs;* Lafayette, *Memoirs;* Ross, *Correspondence of Cornwallis;* Tarleton, *Campaigns;* Kapp, *Steuben;* Almon, *Remembrancer; Magazine of American History*, VII; B. F. Stevens, compiler, *Clinton-Cornwallis Controversy;* J. S. Corbett, *Signals and Instructions* (Navy Records Society, *Publications*, XXXV), 53–59, 260.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, 507–555, and *Hand-Book of the Revolution;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 350, 351.

§ 157. The Treaty of Peace

Summary. — Policy of France and Spain during the American war. — English politics. — 1782, The second Rockingham ministry; Shelburne and Fox. — 1782, Negotiations opened at Paris; Oswald and Franklin. — Jay's suspicions of France; were they well founded? — The points in dispute. — 1782, Nov. 30, The preliminary articles. — The "Separate Article." — 1783, Sept. 3, Definitive treaty signed at Paris. — Provisions as to boundaries, debts, fisheries, and loyalists.

General. — Lecky, *England*, ch. xv (especially American edition, IV, 255–288); Parton, *Franklin;* E. E. Hale, *Franklin in France;* Higginson and MacDonald, *United States*, ch. xii; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. xvii; McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. i-ii.

Special. — The general works on American diplomatic history enumerated under § 155; John Jay, in Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. ii; John Jay, *Peace Negotiations of 1782 and 1783;* Wharton, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, I, "Preliminary Index," under Franklin, Jay, Marbois, etc.; biographies of Franklin, by Ford, Bigelow, Sparks, and Parton; of John Jay, by William Jay and George Pellew; of John Adams, by C. F. Adams and J. T. Morse; of Shelburne, by Fitzmaurice; and of C. J. Fox, by Russell; Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy;* J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy.*

Sources. — The Instructions to the American Commissioners, dated June 15, 1781, are in Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, X; Wharton, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, IV, 471, 503, 504, 523, and see index at end of Vol. VI, under Instructions, Peace Commissioners, etc. See especially the above, and works of Franklin, John Adams (Vols. I, VII, VIII), and John Jay; *Secret Journals of Congress; Parliamentary History; Annual Register.* The treaties are in *Treaties and Conventions*, and numerous other places.

State of Political Parties in England, 1782: The works on English political history enumerated under § 155; Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox;* J. Wright, editor, *Speeches of the Right Honourable Charles James Fox;* Stanhope (Mahon), *Life of William Pitt;* Rosebery, *William Pitt* (Twelve English Statesmen series); Buckingham, *Courts and Cabinets.* See especially Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne*, III; and Mahon, *England*, ch. lxvi.

The Loyalists: G. E. Ellis, in Winsor, *America*, VII, 185; Van Tyne, *Loyalists in the American Revolution;* A. C. Flick, *Loyalism in New York* (Columbia University, *Studies in History*, etc., XIV, No. 1); Sabine, *American Loyalists* (issued in a revised edition as *Biographical Sketches of Adherents to the British Crown*); A. E. Ryerson, *Loyalists of America and their Times;* G. A. Ward, editor, *Journal . . . of Samuel Curwen, 1775–1784;* P. O. Hutchinson, *Thomas Hutchinson;* Thomas Jones, *New York in the Revolution; Laws of the State of New York in force against the Loyalists* (London, 1786); Joseph Galloway, *Candid Examination; Cool Thoughts on the Consequences to Great Britain of American Independence* (1780, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, III, 126); A. W. H. Eaton, *History of Kings County, Nova Scotia;* histories of Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, etc.; and the standard histories, American and English.

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VII, 165–184; Flick, *Loyalism in New York*, 273–281; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 338–340, 354.

§ 158. Formation of the Confederation, 1775–1783

Summary. — Early colonial federations: 1638–1640, The Connecticut towns (§ 138), the New Haven towns (§ 130), the Rhode Island towns (§ 136). — 1647, Government established in Rhode Island under "The Incorporation of Providence Plantations" of 1643 (§ 137). — 1643, United Colonies of New England and Articles of Confederation (§ 141). — 1684–1756, Colonial congresses and plans of union. — 1765, Stamp Act Congress. — 1760–1776,

Growth of the union sentiment. — 1775–1781, Articles of Confederation: 1775, Franklin's draft; 1776, Dickinson's draft; 1777, Articles as agreed to by Congress. — 1776–1777, Growth of a particularist sentiment. — Claims of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia to western lands, and their value. — Effect of these claims on non-claimant states. — Maryland's opposition to the ratification of the Articles of Confederation. — Land cessions. — 1781, The Articles ratified by all the states. — Their place in the constitutional history of the United States. — Form of government under the Articles. — Early attempts to amend. — 1776–1783, Finances of the Revolution.

General. — G. W. Greene, *Historical View;* John Fiske, *Critical Period;* Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. xi.

Special. — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, ch. xii; C. H. Lincoln, *The Revolutionary Movement in Pennsylvania, 1760–1776;* H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence upon the Land Cessions;* Pitkin, *United States;* Tucker, *United States;* Curtis, *History of the Constitution;* Story, *Commentaries;* McMaster, *United States*, I; George Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, I; L. C. Hatch, *Administration of the American Revolutionary Army* (Harvard Historical Studies, X).

Sources. — Colonial Congresses and Plans of Union: *American History Leaflets*, No. 14; Frothingham, *Republic*, Appendix; F. D. Stone, *Plans for . . . Union, 1643–1776* (in Carson, *Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution*, II, 439–503); *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York* (using the general index in Vol. XI); S. Hopkins, *A True Representation of the Plan formed at Albany in 1754* (reprinted in *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 9); W. E. Foster, *Life of Stephen Hopkins*, I, 155; biographies and works of Franklin; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III. See also § 148.

Articles of Confederation: *Secret Journals of Congress*, I, 283, 290, 387; *Journals of Congress*, 1776–1777; works of John Adams; biographies and works of Franklin, Dickinson, Madison, and Hamilton. The Articles are in *Charters and Constitutions*, in *American History Leaflets*, No. 20, and many other places.

Land Cessions: The claims of the several states to western lands, and the cessions can be best studied in the official publications: *Charters and Constitutions; American History Leaflets*, Nos. 16, 22 (contains extracts from the charters, etc.); Hening, *Statutes at Large of Virginia*, and the collections of other states (see § 43); *Journals of Congress; Secret Journals of Congress;* Winsor, *America*, VII, Appendix I ("Territorial

Acquisitions and Divisions"); Donaldson, *Public Domain* (to be used with great caution); Shosuke Sato, *Land Question;* H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence.* Duane's collection of the *Laws of the United States* contains many things not printed elsewhere. See also biographies and writings of Madison, Henry, Jefferson, Mason, Washington, Manasseh Cutler, Pickering, St. Clair; histories of the several states (§ 37), especially of Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Connecticut; J. P. Hale, *Trans-Allegheny Pioneers;* Roosevelt, *Winning of the West;* Garrett, *South Carolina Land Cession.* Gannett's *Boundaries of the United States*, forming *Bulletin*, No. 13, of the Geological Survey, contains matter relating more especially to state boundaries.

Finances of the Revolution: *Journals of Congress; Secret Journals of Congress;* Force, *American Archives;* Bayley, *National Loans of the United States;* A. S. Bolles, *Financial History of the United States, 1774–1789;* Henry Phillips, *Paper Currency of the Revolution*, and *Continental Paper Money;* W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances;* Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris.*

Bibliography. — Plans of Union: Winsor, *America*, V, 611; W. E. Foster, *Life of Stephen Hopkins*, II, Appendix G. — Articles of Confederation: Winsor, *America*, VI, 274, 654; VII, ch. iii, footnotes; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 343. — Land Cessions: Winsor, *America*, VII, Appendix I; Sato, *Land Question*, 27; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 348. — Finances: Winsor, *America*, VII, 81, and *Hand-Book of the Revolution*, 242. — General: Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. xviii.

§ 159. The State Constitutions, 1775–1781

Summary. — 1775, The colonial governments. — 1776, Advice of Congress. — 1776–1777, Formation of the early state constitutions, especially those of New Hampshire, Virginia, South Carolina, Delaware, Pennsylvania, and (1780) Massachusetts. — Modes of formation and ratification; history of the ideas of constitutional conventions and popular ratification. — Leading principles set forth in these constitutions. — Theory of compact. — Rights of man. — Relations of Congress to the states. — Were the states sovereign? — Is the Union older than the states? — Later state constitutions.

General. — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 441–444. 447–451, 481, 482, 491–493, 561–568; Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. ii; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, chs. ix, xi; Hildreth, *United States*, III, 69–76, 89–95,

113–118, 126–131, 135, 161, 183–185, 374–395; McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. iii.

Special. — Curtis, *History of the Constitution*, I, 117; Von Holst, *Constitutional Law;* Hitchcock, *State Constitutions;* Horace Davis, *American Constitutions;* P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics;* Tucker, *Lectures on Constitutional Law;* J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions;* Charles Borgeaud, *Premiers Constitutions de la Democratie Américaine;* also his *Adoption and Amendment of Constitutions* and *Rise of Modern Democracy;* J. F. Jameson, *Introduction to the Study of the Constitutional and Political History of the States* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, No. 5); W. C. Morey, *Genesis of a Written Constitution* and *The First State Constitutions* (in American Academy of Political Science, *Annals*, 1891, 1893); A. W. Small, *Beginnings of American Nationality;* J. H. Dougherty, *Constitutions of New York* (*Political Science Quarterly*, III, 489).

Sources. — *Charters and Constitutions* (for the constitutions); *Journals of Congress; Secret Journals of Congress;* Force, *American Archives;* J. B. Thayer, *Cases in Constitutional Law;* standard histories of the several states (including Vermont). The principal sources of information in regard to the formation of the several constitutions are as follows: —

New Hampshire: Belknap, *New Hampshire;* Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 5th series, II, III ("Belknap Papers"); *Address of the Convention for Framing a New Constitution for the State* (Portsmouth, 1781).

Massachusetts: Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts* (especially valuable for the account of the proposed constitution of 1778, a copy of which is printed in the Appendix); *Journal of the Convention* [of 1779–1780]; *Report of a Constitution . . . to be laid before the Convention . . . 1779;* John Adams, *Works*, IV, IX, and *Defence of the Constitutions of the United States;* Theophilus Parsons, *Essex Result* (appended to the *Memoir* of Parsons prepared by his son); Charles Deane, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1860–1862, p. 88.

New York: Dunlap, *New York; Debates in the New York Conventions;* biographies of John Jay and Gouverneur Morris; Thomas Jones, *New York in the Revolution;* J. H. Dougherty, *Constitutions of New York* (*Political Science Quarterly*, III, 489).

New Jersey: *Journal of the Convention;* Elmer, *History of the Constitution adopted in 1776.*

Pennsylvania: *Proceedings relative to the Conventions;* C. H. Lincoln, *The Revolutionary Movement in Pennsylvania, 1760–1776; Pennsylvania Magazine of History*, III, IV; biographies and works of Franklin and Joseph Reed.

VIRGINIA: Rowland, *Life of George Mason;* biographies and writings of Jefferson, Henry, and Madison; Hening, *Statutes;* Braxton, *Address* (in Force, *American Archives*, 4th series, VI).

VERMONT: William Slade, compiler, *Vermont State Papers* (contains the journal of the Council of Safety, the early journals of the General Assembly, the first constitution, and the laws from 1779 to 1786); E. P. Walton, editor, *Records of the Governor and Council of Vermont* (8 vols., 1778–1835; Vol. I contains also the records of the General Conventions, 1775–1777, and of the Council of Safety, 1777–1778).

Bibliography. — Winsor, *America*, VI, 272; W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 21; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 342.

PART V

UNITED STATES HISTORY, 1781–1865

CHAPTER XX

GENESIS OF THE UNION, 1607–1775

§ 160. Political Geography of the United States, 1775–1911

Summary. — 1775, English colonies in North America; colonies adherent to the Revolution. — 1778–1779, Rogers Clark's invasion of the Northwest. — Boundaries by the Treaty of 1783: disputes under the treaties. — Annexations: 1803, Louisiana; 1792–1846, Oregon; 1810–1819, Florida; 1845, Texas; 1848, California; 1853, Gadsden Purchase; 1867, Alaska; 1898, Hawaii, Guam, Philippines, Porto Rico; 1898–1899, Pacific Islands; 1903, Canal Zone. — Boundary disputes, especially: 1783–1795, Southern; 1803–1819, Louisiana; 1803–1819, West Florida; 1783–1842, Maine; 1805–1871, Oregon; 1867–1903, Alaska. — Subdivision into states and territories. — Present map. — Possible annexations: Canada; Cuba; Panama; Mexico; San Domingo.

General. — (See §§ 97, 157, 167, 180, 187, 198, 217–219, 224, 244, 265.) — A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, I, ch. i; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Area, Boundaries; the standard histories, *passim*, especially Hildreth, Bancroft, McMaster, Schouler, the *American Nation*, H. Adams (§ 29).

Special. — Geographical authorities enumerated in §§ 30–35; H. Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States* (3d ed.); Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions;* A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences;* J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions;* A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, ch. ii; H. A. Bruce, *Romance of American Expansion;* O. P. Austin, *Steps in the Expansion of our Territory;* J. Morse, *American Universal Geography;* J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 527–562; J. B. Moore,

Digest of International Law, passim; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, chs. vii–xi.

Historical Maps (see § 33): E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865;* A. B. Hart (ed.), *American Nation*, VIII–XXVI, and *Epoch Maps*, Nos. 6–14 (same maps in *Epochs of American History*, II, III); W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, especially, p. 198; T. MacCoun, *Historical Geography;* Scribner's *Statistical Atlas;* E. M. Avery, *History.* Many histories insert historical maps, especially Winsor, Parkman, McMaster, and H. Adams.

Sources. — Travels and contemporary descriptions (§§ 38, 162). Texts of boundary and cession treaties, in W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements.* Text of acts creating and admitting states, in *Statutes at Large.* Claims and negotiations, in *American State Papers, Foreign;* appendices to *Annals of Congress;* later papers, in *Executive Documents*, especially *Diplomatic Correspondence* or *Foreign Affairs;* many reprints in T. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, and in *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 6, 16, 22, 32.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 527–562 *passim;* A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, 369–370, and *Manual*, §§ 55–86 *passim;* P. L. Phillips, *List of Maps of America in Library of Congress*, and *List of Geographical Atlases;* H. Gannett, *Mother Maps of the United States;* for lists of maps in library catalogues, see § 25.

§ 161. People of the United States, 1607–1911

Summary. — Race elements: aborigines (§ 99); predominance of Anglo-Saxons; Germans; Dutch; Scotch and Scotch-Irish; French; miscellaneous; Negroes. — Foreign-born: number; children of foreign-born. — Immigration: numbers; causes; principal races; distribution. — Population: numbers; distribution. — Legal term, "People of the United States." — Occupations. — Proportions by age and sex. — Character: energy; resourcefulness; fairness; love of "big things"; contempt for expert opinion.

General. — (See §§ 149, 186, 200–203, 230, 258.) — J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (4th ed. 1910), especially II, pts. iv, vi; E. Channing, *United States*, II, ch. xiv; J. D. Whitney, *United States*, pt. vi; H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, especially chs. ii, xviii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, ch. i; N. S. Shaler, *United States*, especially chs. x–xv; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, X, pt. ii; Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, ch. i; A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, ch. iii; A. M. Low, *American People*, chs. i–v; Hugo Münsterberg, *Americans*, ch. viii; A.

de Tocqueville, *Democracy*, passim; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. xiv; J. A. Doyle, *English Colonies*, V, ch. vii; *Epochs of American History*, I, chs. v, viii, x, II, ch. i, III, ch. i; E. Eggleston, articles in the *Century*, III–VIII *passim;* McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Foreign Race Elements, Population.

Special. — Race Elements: J. R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants;* A. Carlier, *République Américaine*, I, livre v; Friedrich Ratzel, *Vereinigten Staaten*, II; C. A. Hanna, *Scotch-Irish;* A. B. Faust, *German Element;* G. T. Flom, *Norwegian Immigration;* K. C. Babcock, *Scandinavian Element* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 300); E. G. Balch, *Our Slavic Fellow Citizens;* C. S. Bernheimer, *Russian Jew in America;* Eliot Lord, *Italian in America;* L. J. Fosdick, *French Blood;* A. B. Hart, *Southern South;* T. N. Page, *Negro;* B. T. Washington, *Story of the Negro;* E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. i. — Immigration: Richmond Mayo-Smith, *Emigration and Immigration;* P. F. Hall, *Immigration.* — Population: C. D. Wright, *Practical Sociology*, chs. ii, iv, vii, viii; F. B. Dexter, *Estimates of Population of the American Colonies; Twelfth Census*, I (Population); *Century of Population Growth.* — Distribution: Maps showing density of population at decennial periods, in *Twelfth Census, Statistical Atlas;* Scribner's *Statistical Atlas;* N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in America.*

Constitutional "People of the United States": H. von Holst, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 9, 15; T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Limitations* (7th ed.), 56–58; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 90–95; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, § 20; H. C. Black, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 10–13. (See § 175.)

Sources. — Travels and descriptions of the country (see § 38). Publications of the United States Census Bureau, especially *Twelfth Census, Population* (with maps), and *Supplementary Analysis;* Bureau of the Census, *Bulletin*, No. 109 (population, 1910); *Statistical Abstract of the United States* (tables on immigration).

Bibliography. — P. F. Hall, *Immigration*, 369–374; C. D. Wright, *Practical Sociology*, §§ 9, 23, 60, 66; W. E. B. Du Bois, *Select Bibliography of the Negro American;* A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Immigration*, and *List of References on the Negro Question;* Bowker and Iles, *Reader's Guide*, 81–85; *Epochs of American History*, I, §§ 39, 74, 90, II, § 1, III, § 1; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 98.

§ 162. The English in the West, 1730–1775

Summary. — French in the Great Lake basin (§ 109); in Louisiana (§ 110). — English exploration and fur trade in the later

seventeenth century. — 1660–1700, Characteristics of the colonial frontier: military defense; economic life; social life; missions. — Frontier builders: Alexander Spotswood; William Burnet; Robert Dinwiddie; Sir William Johnson. — 1709–1760, Advance of settlement: German, in Mohawk Valley, in the Great Valley, in the Shenandoah Valley, and in the Piedmont; Scotch-Irish, in Pennsylvania, in the Piedmont, and in West Virginia; New England settlements on the Delaware, in Wyoming Valley, and in the South. — The "West" about 1760. — 1763, Pontiac conspiracy (§ 150). — Contests of the interior with the coast in New England, in Pennsylvania, in Virginia, in the Carolinas; issues of land systems, local government, legislative apportionment, currency, taxation, established church; 1771, War of the Regulation; May 16, battle of the Alamance. — Land companies: 1760, Delaware; 1755, Susquehanna; 1766, Lyman's; 1748, Ohio Company; 1749, Loyal Land Company; 1763, Mississippi Company. — Explorations: 1749–1750, Dr. Walker's; 1751, Gist's. — Struggle for the Ohio (§ 148): 1755, Braddock's road; Forbes's road; military land bounties. — British western policy: Proclamation of 1763; Indian line; 1768, Treaty of Fort Stanwix. — 1766–1775, Plans for western colonies; Vandalia. — 1768–1775, Settlement of eastern Tennessee; Robertson; Sevier. — 1769–1773, Boone, the "long hunters" and surveys in Kentucky; 1774–1775, Transylvania Company; Henderson. — 1775, Kentucky stations. — 1763–1774, Illinois country. — 1774, Quebec Act; its significance. — 1774, Dunmore's War. — French and Spanish settlements at the opening of the Revolution (§§ 110, 187). — The West in the Revolution, and later settlements (§§ 154, 168).

General. — (See §§ 109, 110, 117, 123, 125, 148, 154, 168, 187.) — E. Channing, *United States*, II, chs. xiv, xv; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, I (Sagamore ed., I, II, chs. i, ii); J. Winsor, *Mississippi Basin*, chs. i, vi, viii, ix, xii–xiv, xvi, and *Westward Movement*, chs. i–vii; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. xiv; G. E. Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, ch. xiii; C. H. Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. xv; E. M. Avery, *History*, V, ch. x; J. Fiske, *Old Virginia*, II, ch. xvii; Lois K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, chs. iv, v; F. J. Turner, *The Old West* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1908, 184); A. B. Hulbert, *Braddock's Road*, and *Old Glade Road*, and *Boone's Wilderness Road*

(*Historic Highways*, IV–VI); F. W. Halsey, *Tour of Four Great Rivers*, pt. i.

Special. — Local Geography: Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, chs. iii, iv; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, ch. iii; J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions*, 76–80; Bailey Willis, *Northern Appalachians;* C. W. Hayes, *Southern Appalachians;* W. M. Davis, *Rivers and Valleys of Pennsylvania* (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, I, 183); C. B. Trego, *Geography of Pennsylvania;* G. T. Surface, *Studies in the Geography of Virginia.*

Exploration and Advance of Cis-Appalachian Settlements: A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, chs. vii, viii, x; Lucy F. Bittinger, *Germans in Colonial Times*, and *German Religious Life in Colonial Times;* C. A. Hanna, *Scotch-Irish*, II, 25–57, chs. iv, v, and *Wilderness Trail;* C. K. Bolton, *Scotch-Irish Pioneers*, chs. xiv, xv; F. W. Halsey, *Old New York Frontier*, pts. i–iii; J. B. Simms, *Frontiersmen of New York*, I; J. V. H. Clark, *Onondaga*, II, ch. xvi (Oswego); W. L. Stone, *Sir William Johnson;* W. E. Griffis, *Sir William Johnson;* S. H. Cobb, *Palatines*, ch. vii; Chas. Miner, *Wyoming*, letters v–xiii; I. D. Rupp, *Lancaster County*, and *Northumberland [and other] Counties;* J. S. Walton, *Conrad Weiser;* C. A. Hanna, *Wilderness Trail; Report of the Commission to locate the Frontier Forts of Pennsylvania;* H. C. Bell, *Leitersburg District* (Md.); W. M. Darlington, *Gist's Journals*, Introduction; W. M. Thornton, *Spottswood's Expedition* (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, VII, 265); C. F. Kemper, *Early Westward Movement of Virginia*, notes (*Va. Mag. of Hist.*, XII, 337, XIII, 1, 113, 281, 351); R. B. Semple, *Baptists in Virginia*, chs. i–iii, v; J. W. Wayland, *German Element of the Shenandoah Valley;* Samuel Kercheval, *Valley of Virginia;* L. P. Summers, *Southwest Virginia*, chs. iii–vi; W. H. Foote, *Sketches of North Carolina*, especially chs. iv, ix, x, xiii; J. H. Clewell, *Wachovia*, chs. i–x; E. McCrady, *South Carolina*, II, chs. xvi, xvii; J. H. Logan, *Upper Country of South Carolina*, chs. vii–xx; J. B. O. Landrum, *Upper South Carolina*, chs. iii–vi; Alex. Gregg, *Old Cheraws*, chs. ii–v.

Trans-Appalachian Exploration and Settlement: Boyd Crumrine, *Washington County* (Pa.); V. A. Lewis, *West Virginia*, and *Battle of Point Pleasant;* R. G. Thwaites, *Daniel Boone*, chs. i–ix; H. A. Bruce, *Daniel Boone*, chs. i–ix; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, chs. i–vi; G. W. Ranck, *Boonesborough;* Thos. Speed, *Wilderness Road;* Jas. Phelan, *Tennessee*, chs. i–iii; J. G. M. Ramsey, *Tennessee*, 49–122; J. W. Caldwell, *Constitutional History of Tennessee*, ch. i; A. V. Goodpasture, *Watauga Association* (*Am. Hist. Mag.*, III, 105); C. W. Alvord, *Cahokia Records*, Introd., and *Kaskaskia Records*, Introd. (Ill. Hist. Library, *Collections*, II, V); J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi*, ch. xiii (Lyman's

colony); T. Dwight, *Travels*, I, 306–316 (Lyman's colony); G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), II, 478-483 (Sparks's note on the Ohio Company).

British Policy and Indian Relations: C. E. Carter, *Great Britain and the Illinois Country;* B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, ch. viii; C. W. Alvord, *Genesis of the Proclamation of 1763* (*Mich. Pioneer Collections*, XXXVI, 20), and *British Ministry and the Treaty of Fort Stanwix* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1908, 165); Max Farrand, *Indian Boundary Line* (*Am. Hist. Review*, X, 782); Victor Coffin, *Quebec and the American Revolution*, ch. v; G. H. Alden, *New Governments West of the Alleghanies;* F. J. Turner, *Western State-Making in the Revolutionary Era* (*Am. Hist. Review*, I, 70).

Contest of the Interior with the Coast: Max Farrand, *West and the Principles of the Revolution* (*Yale Review*, XVII, 44); W. R. Smith, *Sectionalism in Pennsylvania* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXIV, 208); C. H. Lincoln, *Revolutionary Movement in Pennsylvania;* C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, chs. i, ii; J. S. Bassett, *Regulators in North Carolina* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1894, 141); M. de L. Haywood, *Tryon in North Carolina;* W. K. Boyd, *Antecedents of the North Carolina Convention of 1835* (*South Atlantic Quart.*, IX, 83, 161); S. B. Weeks, *Church and State in North Carolina;* W. A. Schafer, *Sectionalism in South Carolina*, pts. i, ii (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1900, I, 245); W. E. Dodd, *Statesmen of the Old South*, 18–77. (See §§ 172, 174, 182.)

Maps: E. M. Avery, *History*, III, 351 (Spotswood's route), 354 (Piedmont and Valley), V, 174 (proposed colonies), 183 (Dunmore's War), 285 (Indian relations), VI, 410 (settlement line in 1745); E. Channing, *United States*, II, end (settlements, 1760); G. E. Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, 4 (West in 1765), 224 (Indian line), 230 (proposed colonies); C. H. Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 270 (West in 1775); Max Farrand, in *Am. Hist. Review*, X, 784 (Indian line); G. H. Alden, *New Governments*, 9, 13, 32, 53 (proposed colonies); F. J. Turner, in *Am. Hist. Review*, I, 72 (proposed colonies); A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, 264 (German settlements).

Sources. — Travels and Descriptions: Edward Bland, *Discovery of New Brittaine;* John Lederer, *Discoveries;* [Batts], *Journal from Virginia beyond the Apailachian Mountains* (*Am. Anthropologist*, n.s., IX, 45, and *N. Y. Colon. Docs.*, III, 193); Ann Maury, *Memoirs of a Huguenot Family*, 281–292 (journal of Spotswood's expedition); J. S. Bassett, *Writings of Colonel William Byrd; Moravian Diaries of Travels through Virginia* (*Va. Mag. of Hist.*, XI, 113, 225, 370, XII. 55, 134, 271); A. G. Spangenberg, *Diary* (*N. C. Colon. Records*, V, 6); John Heckewelder, *Narrative*, 1–136; Wm. Bartram, *Travels;* F. W. Halsey, *Four Great Rivers*, pt. ii

(journals of Rich. Smith in 1769); J. F. D. Smyth, *Tour in the United States*, I; Jos. Doddridge, *Notes on the Settlement and Indian Wars; American Husbandry*, I, ch. xviii; J. S. Johnston, *First Explorations of Kentucky* (journals of Walker and Gist); W. M. Darlington, *Christopher Gist's Journals;* R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, I (Weiser, Croghan, Post, Morris); A. S. Withers, *Chronicles of Border Warfare* (Thwaites ed.), chs. i–vii; Felix Walker, *Autobiography of a Southern Congressman* (*Jour. of Am. Hist.*, I, 50); *Olden Time.*

Documents: Colonial records (§ 43), especially *New York Colonial Documents*, VII, VIII; *Pennsylvania Colonial Records*, III–X, and *Archives*, 1st ser., I–IV; *North Carolina Colonial Records*, IV, IX (VII, Regulators). Colonial laws, especially on frontier counties, as follows: *Colonial Laws of New York*, V, 319; *Statutes at Large of Pennsylvania, 1682–1801*, IV, 131, V, 71, 88, 133, 141, VIII, 47, 143, 314; *Laws of Maryland* (ed. 1811), I, 227; W. W. Hening, *Statutes of Virginia*, IV, 450, V, 78, VI, 252, 376, 381, VII, 148, 311, 419, VIII, 205, 395, 597, 600; *North Carolina State Records*, XXIII, 119, 164, 204, 248, 249, 342, 343, 383, 390, 589, 819, 823, 827, 844; C. E. Kemper, *Early Westward Movement of Virginia*, text (*Va. Mag. of Hist.*, XII, 337, XIII, 1, 113, 281, 351); C. F. James, *Documentary History of Religious Liberty in Virginia*, chs. i–iii; Alex. Spotswood, *Official Letters* (Va. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, n.s., I, II); Robert Dinwiddie, *Official Records* (*ibid.*, III, IV); E. B. O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of New York*, I, 441–506 (Oswego), II, 543–1007 (papers of Sir Wm. Johnson, especially 767–1004); R. E. Day, *Calendar of the Sir William Johnson Manuscripts.*

Land Companies: *William and Mary College Quarterly*, I, 165; Kate Rowland, *George Mason* (index, under "Companies"); *Documents relating to the Mississippi Land Company* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 311); C. E. Carter, *Illinois Country*, 165–171; A. B. Hulbert, *Washington's "Tour of the Ohio"* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Publications*, XVII, 431, especially 436, 451); Mann Butler, *Kentucky* (2d ed.), 475–477; *Lee Papers*, IV, 214 (N. Y. Hist. Soc., *Publication Fund Series*, VII); *Susquehannah Title stated and examined; Pennsylvania Archives*, 1st ser., II, IV (index, under "Susquehanna Company" and "Wyoming"), 2d ser., XVIII, and *Colonial Records*, IX, X (index, under "Susquehanna Company" and "Wyoming"); *Connecticut Colonial Records*, XIII, 427, XIV (index, under "Susquehanna"); *Trumbull Papers* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, 5th ser., IX, index, under "Susquehanna"); Rowena Buell, *Memoirs of Rufus Putnam*, 36–54; A. Haswell, *Memoir of Captain Matthew Philips; Advantages of a Settlement upon the Ohio;* B. Franklin (?), *Considerations on the Agreement with Thomas Walpole; Expediency of securing our American Colonies by settling the Country adjoining the*

Mississippi; Plain Facts; B. Franklin, *Works* (Bigelow ed., index, under "Ohio" and "Walpole's Grant"), and *Life and Writings* (Smyth ed., index, under "Walpole's Grant" and "Settlement on the Ohio"); G. Washington, *Writings* (Ford ed.), II, 272, 285, 328, 339, 353, 405, 412, 451, 459, III, 128; *Tour of the Ohio*, in Ford, II, 285, in Hulbert (above), and in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 41; *Letters to Washington*, IV (index, under "Walpole's Grant"); C. W. Butterfield, *Washington-Crawford Correspondence concerning Western Lands*, 1–59, 84–103; *American Archives*, 4th ser., IV; G. W. Ranck, *Boonesborough*, App.

British Policy and Indian Relations: Texts and documents on the Proclamation of 1763 and the Quebec Act are in *Annual Register*, 1763, 208]–[213; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 55; *American History Leaflets*, No. 5; Canadian Archives, *Documents relating to the Constitutional History*, 93–123, 374–409; Wm. Houston, *Documents Illustrative of the Canadian Constitution*, 90; [English] *Statutes at Large* (1786), VIII, 405; *Hansard's Parliamentary History*, XVII, 1357–1407; Wm. Hunt, *Justice and Policy of Late Act for Quebec.* Treaties and documents on the Indian line are in *New York Colonial Documents*, VII, 280–324, 634–641, 657–666, 725–730, VIII, 19–34, 110–244; *Pennsylvania Archives*, 1st ser., IV, 182–192, 281, 313–331, and *Colonial Records*, IX, 552–555; *Virginia Magazine of History*, IX, 360–364, X, 226–240, 354–364, XIII, 20–36; *North Carolina Colonial Records*, VII, 468–471, 536–538, 851–855; E. B. O'Callaghan, *Documentary History* (above); L. P. Summers, *Southwest Virginia*, 85–92, 97–102, 110–114. Documents on Dunmore's War are in *American Archives*, 4th ser., I; Thwaites and Kellogg, *Dunmore's War.*

Bibliography. — E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, 335; G. E. Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, 338; C. H. Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, 348–350; A. B. Faust, *German Element*, II, 479–562; L. K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, 137, 138; J. Winsor, *America*, VI, notes to ch. ix; C. E. Carter, *Illinois Country*, 185–199; C. A. Hanna, *Scotch-Irish*, II, 531–551; J. W. Wayland, *German Element*, App. P; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to the Germans;* notes to the references above, especially to Alvord's *Proclamation* and *Fort Stanwix Treaty*, and Turner's *Old West;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 70, 72.

§ 163. English Political Institutions to 1775

Summary. — Conventional view of separation into three departments. — Actual government: monarchy, parliament; judges. — Underlying rights of Englishmen: no arbitrary arrest; speedy trial; jury; no taxation except by vote of parliament. — Represen-

tative institutions: two houses; parliamentary privilege; voting taxes; examining accounts; impeachment. — Local self-government: county system; select vestry; parish meeting; relations with central government. — Colonies: charters; control by crown. — Legislation by parliament: commercial system and navigation acts. — Social: ruling classes; material for colonization.

General. — (See also Part IV, especially §§ 112, 132, 149–152). — G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), II, 70–85, 238–251; W. E. H. Lecky, *England* (American ed.), III, 5–13; T. E. May, *Constitutional History of England*, passim; E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. ii; G. E. Howard, *Preliminaries of the Revolution*, chs. ii, iii; Jesse Macy, *English Constitution*, chs. xxx–xxxix; D. J. Medley, *English Constitutional History*, especially §§ 8–10, 16, 33–39, 45–46, 63–66; J. R. Seeley, *Expansion of England*, 62–72; S. R. Gardiner, *Students' History of England*, pt. viii; E. P. Cheney, *European Background*, chs. xi–xvi; R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 1–32; T. W. Higginson and E. Channing, *English History for American Readers;* John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, ch. i; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 1–7; E. G. Scott, *Development of Constitutional Liberty*, ch. i.

Special. — Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (1765), bk. i, chs. i–x; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 146–188; Emile Boutmy, *English Constitution*, pts. ii, iii; Hannis Taylor, *English Constitution*, I, 588–616; T. P. Taswell-Langmead, *English Constitutional History*, chs. xvi, xvii; Montesquieu, *Esprit des Lois*, livre xi, chs. i–vi; R. Gneist, *English Parliament*, ch. vi; E. A. Freeman, *English Constitution*, ch. iii; J. L. De Lolme, *English Constitution* (1784), II; Mary T. Blauvelt, *Development of Cabinet Government in England;* J. B. Thayer, *Cases in Constitutional Law*, I, 1–47; W. R. Anson, *Law and Custom of the Constitution*, I, chs. ii, iii, II, ch. i, § 4, ch. iii, § 3; R. C. Hurd, *Habeas Corpus*, 65–95; G. L. Beer, *Commercial Policy of England toward the American Colonies*, and *British Colonial Policy, 1754–1765*; C. M. Andrews, *British Committees, Commissions, and Councils of Trade and Plantations, 1622–1675* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XXVI; Louise P. Kellogg, *American Colonial Charter* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1903, I, 185); E. Channing, *Navigation Laws* (Am. Antiq. Soc., *Proceedings*, n.s., VI, 160); C. E. Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution*, chs. iii, iv, vii; S. G. Fisher, *Evolution of the Constitution*, ch. iv.

Sources.— The Great Constitutional Documents, printed in Taswell-Langmead, *English Constitutional History;* in G. W. Prothero,

Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents; and in S. R. Gardiner, *Constitutional Documents;* many of them also in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 5, 6, 23–28, 58–64, 100; and in Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, chs. i–x. — ENGLISH LAWS, to 1715, in *Statutes of the Realm* (large folio, very rare); since 1715, see § 43; extracts from the Navigation Acts and the Stamp Act, in *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 19, 21. — COLONIAL CHARTERS (see §§ 43, 164).

Bibliography. — Footnotes to the general and special works mentioned above; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 294–301; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, 328–329; W. F. Allen, *History Topics*, 80–92; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 11–13; E. P. Cheyney, *European Background*, 327–331.

§ 164. Colonial Political Institutions

Summary. — Roots in English institutions. — Three types of colonial government: charter; proprietary; provincial. — Governments: governors; councils; assemblies; courts. — Local government: town; parish; county; mixed systems. — Free institutions: personal freedom; jury trial; self-taxation; suffrage; privileges and immunities of Englishmen (§ 163). — Effect of new conditions on old constitutions.

General. — (See §§ 116, 117, 123, 126, 134, 141, 146, 149.) — W. E. H. Lecky, *England* (American ed.), II, 1–23; R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 13–28; Crane and Moses, *Politics*, chs. viii, ix; C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theory*, ch. i; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), chs. i–iii; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, chs. ii–v; J. A. Doyle, *English Colonies*, V, ch. ii; C. E. Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution*, chs. i, iv; Woodrow Wilson, *The State*, §§ 832–861; Wm. Rawle, *View of the Constitution*, Introd.; E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. i; B. A. Hinsdale, *American Government*, ch. ii.

Special. — COLONIAL GOVERNMENT: H. L. Osgood, *American Colonies in the Seventeenth Century;* E. B. Greene, *Provincial Governor;* N. D. Mereness, *Maryland as a Proprietary Province;* C. L. Raper, *North Carolina;* W. R. Smith, *South Carolina as a Royal Province;* P. A. Bruce, *Institutional History of Virginia*, II, pt. v; E. I. Miller, *Legislature of the Province of Virginia;* E. P. Tanner, *Province of New Jersey;* W. H. Fry, *New Hampshire as a Royal Province;* W. R. Shepherd, *Proprietary Government in Pennsylvania;* J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 152–178; Hannis Taylor, *English Constitution*, I, Introd.; C. Borgeaud, *Rise of Modern Democracy;* A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy*, I, chs. iv, v; A. E. McKinley,

Suffrage Franchise in the English Colonies; C. F. Bishop, *Elections in the American Colonies;* W. C. Morey, *Genesis of a Written Constitution*, and *First State Constitutions*, and *Sources of American Federalism* (Am. Acad. of Polit. and Soc. Sci., *Annals*, I, 529, IV, 201, VI, 197); J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. ii; Wm. Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy*, ch. i; C. A. Duniway, *Freedom of the Press in Massachusetts*, chs. i–vii; A. H. Carpenter, *Habeas Corpus in the Colonies*, and *Naturalization in England and the Colonies* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VIII, 18, IX, 288); E. E. Proper, *Colonial Immigration Laws*. Several monographs in the Johns Hopkins University *Studies*, as follows: P. E. Lauer, *Church and State in New England* (X, Nos. 2, 3); G. Petrie, *Church and State in Maryland* (X, No. 4); J. S. Bassett, *Constitutional Beginnings in North Carolina* (XII, No. 3); G. H. Haynes, *Representative and Free Government in Massachusetts* (XII, Nos. 8–10); E. L. Whitney, *Government of the Colony of South Carolina* (XIII, Nos. 1, 2); T. F. Moran, *Bicameral System* (XIII, No. 5); F. L. Riley, *Colonial Origins of New England Senates* (XIV, No. 3); J. A. C. Chandler, *Representation in Virginia* (XIV, Nos. 6, 7), ch. ii; O. P. Chitwood, *Justice in Colonial Virginia* (XXIII, Nos. 7, 8).

Local Government: G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History;* P. A. Bruce, *Institutional History of Virginia*, I, pt. i, chs. vi–ix, pt. iii, chs. i–xvi; A. B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, Nos. 6, 7, and *Puritan Politics* (N. Eng. Soc. of Orange, *Quarter Century*); Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: E. Channing, *Town and County Government* (II, No. 10); Edward Ingle, *Parish Institutions of Maryland* (I, No. 6), and *Virginia Local Institutions* (III, Nos. 2, 3); John Johnson, *Old Maryland Manors* (I, No. 7); L. W. Wilhelm, *Local Institutions of Maryland* (III, Nos. 5–7); Irving Elting, *Dutch Village Communities* (IV, No. 1); W. E. Foster, *Town Government in Rhode Island* (IV, Nos. 2, 3); C. M. Andrews, *River Towns of Connecticut* (VII, Nos. 8–10).

Sources. — Records of the colonies (see § 43), especially Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Maryland, and North Carolina. Transactions of learned societies, especially Massachusetts Historical Society, New York Historical Society, Rhode Island Historical Society (see § 45). — Charters and other documents, in F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters;* Wm. MacDonald, *Select Charters;* H. W. Preston, *Documents Illustrative of American History;* Geo. Chalmers, *Opinions*. Extracts on conditions, in A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, pt. iii; C. A. Beard, *Readings in American Government*, ch. i.

Bibliography. — G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, I, 495–497, and notes; E. B. Greene, *Provincial Governor*, App. C, and *Provincial America*, 329–331; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 73.

§ 165. Colonial Social Institutions and Slavery

Summary. — Race elements: numbers; classes of society. — Intellectual life: education; literature; the press. — Religious life: churches; theology. — Industries: agriculture; commerce; fisheries; manufactures. — Recreations: social gatherings; amusements; fights. — Slavery: whence derived; Indian slave trade; white indentured servants; character of slavery by sections; manumission; sale; fugitives; insurrections.

General. — (See Part IV, especially §§ 117, 119, 123, 125, 128, 129, 142, 146, 149, 159; Part V, §§ 170, 180.) — SOCIAL: H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, chs. ii, iv, vi, viii, x, xiii, xv, xvii, xxii; E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, chs. xvi–xviii; J. A. Doyle, *English Colonies*, V, chs. iii–vi; E. Channing, *United States*, II, chs. xiii, xv–xvii; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. ii; Katherine Coman, *Industrial History*, ch. iii; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, pt. i; A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy*, chs. ii, iii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, ch. i; Edward Eggleston, *Household History of the United States*, chs. xvi–xix; Alice M. Earle, *Sabbath in Puritan New England*, and *Home Life in Colonial Days*, and other works; Edward Field, *Colonial Tavern;* H. E. Scudder, *Men and Manners in America a Hundred Years Ago.* — SLAVERY: Wm. Chambers, *American Slavery*, 17–32; Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, chs. i–vi; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 86–108.

Special. — ECONOMIC: W. B. Weeden, *New England*, II, chs. xii, xv, xxi; P. A. Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*, and *Institutional History of Virginia;* Meyer Jacobstein, *Tobacco Industry*, ch. i. — LITERATURE AND EDUCATION: M. C. Tyler, *American Literature;* Barrett Wendell, *Literary History of America*, bks. i, ii, chs. i–vi; E. E. Brown, *Making of our Middle Schools*, chs. iii–ix; E. G. Dexter, *History of Education*, 1–72, 223–268; R. G. Boone, *Education*, pt. i. — ECCLESIASTICAL: L. W. Bacon, *American Christianity*, chs. v–xii; Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: S. B. Weeks, *Religious Development in North Carolina*, and *Church and State in North Carolina* (X, Nos. 5, 6, and XI, 5, 6); A. C. Applegarth, *Quakers in Pennsylvania* (X, Nos. 8, 9); Eleanor L. Lord, *Industrial Experiments in the British Colonies* (Extra Vol. XVII).

SLAVERY: J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, §§ 180–230; Wm. Poole, *Antislavery Opinions before 1800;* G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, I, chs. xii–xxv; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave-Trade*, chs. ii–iv; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, ch. i; Mary S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, chs. i–iii; S. M. Janney, *Religious Society of Friends*, III, chs. vii,

ix, xi; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, ch. ix; E. V. Morgan, *Slavery in New York* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, V, 337); Edward Needles, *Historical Memoir of the Pennsylvania Society;* [W. C. Ford], *Washington as an Employer and Importer of Labor;* Chas. Deane, *Letters and Documents relating to Slavery in Massachusetts;* G. H. Moore, *Slavery in Massachusetts*, chs. i–vii. Monographs in the Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: B. C. Steiner, *Slavery in Connecticut* (XI, Nos. 9, 10), pp. 7–23; J. C. Ballagh, *White Servitude in Virginia* (XIII, Nos. 6, 7); J. R. Brackett, *Negro in Maryland* (Extra Vol. VI); E. I. McCormac, *White Servitude in Maryland* (XXII, Nos. 3, 4); J. S. Bassett, *Servitude in the Colony of North Carolina* (XIV, Nos. 4, 5); H. S. Cooley, *Slavery in New Jersey* (XIV, Nos. 9, 10); S. B. Weeks, *Southern Quakers and Slavery* (Extra Vol. XV), ch. ix.

Sources. — Life in the Colonies: Samuel Sewall, *Diary and Letter-Book;* P. V. Fithian, *Journal and Letters;* B. Franklin, *Autobiography;* Eliza Lucas, *Journal and Letters;* extracts in A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, pt. iv. — Slavery: Colonial statutes on slavery in the various colonial collections (see § 43); extracts in M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. A, and W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, App. A; John Woolman, *Journal* (ed. by J. G. Whittier); Benjamin Fay, *Treatise on Slave-Keeping;* Samuel Sewall, *Joseph Sold by his Brethren; Diary of John Harrower* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VI, 65: white servitude).

Bibliography. — E. B. Greene, *Provincial America*, 331–337; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 764–765; footnotes to H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies;* R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, §§ 17, 39, 74, 90; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 74; E. G. Dexter, *History of Education*, 10, 22, 55, 72, 303–306; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. E; M. S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, 199–231; W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, App. D; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 93, 103.

CHAPTER XXI

CONFEDERATION AND CONSTITUTION, 1781–1788

§ 166. Government of the Confederation, 1781–1788

Summary.— The states: constitutional government (§§ 159, 172); relations with the Union (§§ 167, 169, 171). — Congress: places of meeting; length of service; procedure; president. — Executive department: board system; superintendents of finance and foreign affairs; boards resumed. — Courts: arbitration; piracies and felonies; Court of Appeals in Cases of Capture. — Inefficiency of the system: lack of attendance; nine states' rule; insufficient powers; too much concentration in Congress.

General. — (See §§ 141, 150–153, 158, 167, 169–173.) — H. von Holst, *History*, I, 26–46; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, 35–48; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 1–23 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 1–28); J. Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. iii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, ch. ii; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. iii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 1–18, 67–78; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 684; J. Kent, *Commentaries*, I, 201–219; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 243–252, 265–271; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, ch. xv; J. Schouler, *History*, I, ch. i, § 1; E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, ch. iv; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. vi, and *Alexander Hamilton*, I, ch. iv; J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams*, ch. xxii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, ch. iii; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 65–71, 102–106; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. iii; O. W. B. Peabody, *John Sullivan*, ch. ix; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3280, 3289–3296.

Special. — G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, chs. vi, xii (*History of the Constitution*, I, 142–151, 260–274); J. F. Jameson, *Essays in Constitutional History*, Nos. i, iii; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, II, ch. xxxvi; H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court*, I, chs. iii–vii; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices* I, (Rutledge) ch. xii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, I, chs. xxii–xxvii; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles on Articles of Confederation, Confederation.

Sources. — *Journals of* [*Continental*] *Congress* (2d ed.), VII–XIII; *Secret Journals of Congress*, IV; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), I, (Lodge ed.), I, 203–315; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), VIII, IX; J. Madison, *Papers*, I, II, especially notes of debates in I, 187–467, II, 581–614, and *Writings* (Hunt ed.), I, II; J. Elliot, *Debates*, I; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 245–385; J. Adams, *Defence of the Constitutions*. For lives and writings of other contemporary public men, see §§ 39, 46, 47.

Bibliography. — A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. xix; Boston Public Library, *Bulletins*, X, 156–166; Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletin*, No. I (catalogue of the papers of Congress); footnotes to Curtis, Bancroft, and McMaster; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 215–236 *passim*.

§ 167. Territorial Questions under the Confederation, 1781–1789

Summary. — 1783, Exterior boundaries (§§ 157, 171): controversies with England and Spain; question of frontier posts. — Acquisitions of territory: Northwest cessions by New York (1781), Virginia (1784), Massachusetts (1784), Connecticut (1786, 1800); Southwest cessions by South Carolina (1787), North Carolina (1790), and Georgia (1802). — Administration: resolution of 1780; Jefferson's ordinance of 1784; question of slavery (§ 170); Grayson's ordinance of 1785 (§ 168). — Northwest ordinance of 1787: authors; occasion; slavery clause (§ 170). — Western settlements (§ 168); proposed new states (§ 172).

General. — (See §§ 158, 159, 168, 180, 193.) — R. Hildreth, *History*, III, chs. xliv, xlvi, xlviii; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 14–16, 81, 96, 104, 115–118, 125–135, 165, 166, 277–291 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 16–18, 83, 154–159, 168–183, 291–299, II, 98–118, 225–227); G. T. Curtis, *History of the Constitution*, I, 124–141, 291–311 (*Constitutional History*, I, chs. v, xiv); A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. vii, viii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. vi; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 398–408; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, III, ch. vi (Sagamore ed., V, ch. i); J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, 198–200, 257–270, 280–290; J. Story, *Commentaries*, 227, 228; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. v; H. Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States* (3d ed.), 30–36; S. F. Miller, *Constitution*, 55–58.

Special. — Land Cessions: P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, chs. i, ii; Jos. Blunt, *Historical Sketch*, ch. iii; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influ-*

ence upon Land Cessions; T. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, 82–87; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, chs. ix–xiv; J. C. Welling, *State Rights Conflict over the Public Lands* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, III, 411); Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, I, chs. ix, x; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, II, ch. xxx; R. R. Howison, *Virginia*, II, ch. v; Shosuke Sato, *Land Question*, 22–70; J. C. Scharf, *Maryland*, II, ch. xxvii.

Northwest Ordinance: J. A. Barrett, *Evolution of the Ordinance of 1787;* W. P. Cutler, *Ordinance of 1787;* C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. ii, v, viii, xv; E. Coles, *History of the Ordinance;* J. M. Merriam, *Legislative History of the Ordinance* (Am. Antiq. Soc., *Proceedings*, n.s., V, 303); W. F. Poole and G. B. Loring, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, III, 287–294, 300–308; J. P. Dunn, *Indiana*, 177–218; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, chs. xv, xvi; Shosuke Sato, *Land Question*, 88-120; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence*, 44–54; Max Farrand, *Legislation for Territories*, 3–12.

Maps: A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 108 (state claims), 116 (ordinance of 1784); E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 388 (state claims), 406 (Seven Ranges); W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 196 (state claims).

Sources. — Acts of Cession and Ordinances of Congress: Bioren and Duane, *Land Laws of the United States*, I; *Journals of Congress*, and *Secret Journals;* T. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, 60–81; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 16, 22, 32; F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters; Old South Leaflets*, No. 13; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 4; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xvi. — Contemporary Discussions: J. Madison, *Papers*, I, and *Writings* (Hunt ed.), I, II; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), VIII, IX; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Ford ed.), IV; Cutlers, *Manasseh Cutler*, I; "Connecticut Farmer," *Remarks on a Pamphlet;* Thos. Paine, *Public Good;* W. H. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, I, ch. i; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, I, II, Apps.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 528–539; G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, I, 141, 410; J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, 117; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 329–331; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 473–476; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence*, 45; P. G. Thompson, *Bibliography of Ohio*, No. 933; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 72, 173; footnotes to Bancroft, Curtis, McMaster, etc., and also to special authorities.

§ 168. Settlement of the West and Land Policy, 1775–1789

Summary. — Settlements in 1775 (§ 162). — The West in the Revolution (§ 154). — 1780, Settlement of Middle Tennessee. —

Colonial land systems. — 1781–1802, Land claims and cessions (§§ 158, 167); 1785, Land Ordinance. — 1786, Massachusetts-New York preëmption line; settlement of western New York; the Genesee country; large company speculations, Robert Morris, Phelps and Gorham. — Pennsylvania-Virginia boundary; preemption and donation lands in Pennsylvania. — Virginia military lands; Clark's grant, Illinois County. — Progress of settlement in Kentucky and eastern Tennessee; Spanish intrigue (§ 171); State of Franklin (§ 172). — 1787–1789, Land sales in the Northwest: Ohio Company, Scioto Company; Symmes Purchase; Pennsylvania triangle; Western Reserve (§ 193); 1788, settlement of Marietta and Cincinnati. — Yazoo companies (§ 193). — Progress of settlement after 1789 (§ 193).

General. — (See §§ 160, 162, 167.) — T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, I, chs. xi, xii, II, III, chs. i, ii, v, vi (Sagamore ed., II, chs. iii–viii, III, IV, chs. i, ii, V, ch. i); J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, chs. viii–xvi; C. H. Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. xv; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 503–519, III, 89–116; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, ch. iii, and *Expansion*, chs. viii, ix; H. A. Bruce, *Daniel Boone*, chs. x–xvii; R. G. Thwaites, *Daniel Boone*, chs. x–xiii; L. K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, 147–177; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 123–131, 156–162; A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, ch. xii.

Special. — F. J. Turner, *Significance of the Frontier* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1893, 197). — GEOGRAPHY: Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, ch. v (see § 162). — EASTERN SETTLEMENTS: F. W. Halsey, *Old New York Frontier*, pts. iv–viii; O. Turner, *Holland Purchase*, pts. iv, v, and *Phelps and Gorham's Purchase;* J. H. Hotchkin, *Western New York*, chs. i–viii; T. C. Amory, *James Sullivan*, I, ch. viii; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances*, II, ch. xxxiii; E. P. Oberholtzer, *Robert Morris*, ch. ix; Daniel Agnew, *Pennsylvania North of the Ohio*; Thos. Sergeant, *View of the Land Laws of Pennsylvania; Report of the Commission to Locate the Frontier Forts of Pennsylvania*, II; Boyd Crumrine, *Washington County* (Pa.). — SOUTHWESTERN SETTLEMENTS: L. P. Summers, *Southwest Virginia*, chs. vii, viii; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, ch. vii; Jas. Phelan, *Tennessee*, chs. iv–xvi; J. G. M. Ramsey, *Tennessee*, 122–522; A. W. Putnam, *Middle Tennessee*, chs. i–xviii; J. W. Caldwell, *Constitutional History of Tennessee*, ch. ii; S. B. Weeks, *Joseph Martin* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1893, 407). — NORTHWESTERN SETTLEMENTS: E. C. Dawes, *Beginning of the Ohio Company* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Publications*, IV, 1); *Scioto Company and its Purchases* (*ibid.*, III, 107);

C. T. Greve, *Cincinnati*, I, chs. viii–xiv; C. W. Alvord, *Cahokia Records*, Introd., and *Kaskaskia Records*, Introd. (Ill. Hist. Library, *Collections*, II, V), and *County of Illinois;* A. C. Boggess, *Settlement of Illinois*, chs. i, ii; C. E. Boyd, *County of Illinois* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IV, 623). — Land Policy: P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, ch. iii; Amelia C. Ford, *Colonial Precedents of our National Land System;* K. C. Colgrove, *Congress and the Pioneers from 1789 to 1820* (*Iowa Journal of Hist. and Politics*, VIII, 7). — Maps: E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 187, 192 (Indian operations), 230 (King's Mountain), 410 (settlements to 1787); A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 134 (the West).

Sources. — Settlements: Wm. Cooper, *Guide in the Wilderness;* H. L. Fairchild, *Travels; Journals of John Lincklaen;* E. B. O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of New York*, II, 667–670, 688, 1103–1188; *Report of Special Committee to Investigate Indian Problems of New York*, 105–134 (Mass.-N.Y. agreement); *Pennsylvania Archives*, 1st ser., V–XI, 3d ser., III, 485–504 (Pa.-Va. boundary); *Olden Time;* A. S. Withers, *Chronicles of Border Warfare* (Thwaites ed.), chs. viii–xvi; A. B. Hulbert, *Washington and the West;* C. W. Butterfield, *Washington-Crawford Letters*, 59–83; North Carolina, *State Records;* Gilbert Imlay, *Topographical Description; Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 16, 40; C. W. Alvord, *Cahokia Records*, and *Kaskaskia Records;* Cutlers, *Manasseh Cutler*, I, chs. iv–xii; Pickering and Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, I, 457–460, 504–513, 546–549; Rowena Buell, *Memoirs of Rufus Putnam*, 100–110, 215–232; John May, *Journal and Letters;* C. S. Hall, *Samuel Holden Parsons*, chs. xxv–xxviii; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. v. — Land Policy: *American State Papers, Public Lands*, I; W. W. Hening, *Virginia Statutes*, IX, 355, X, 35–65, 542; North Carolina, *State Records*, XXIV, 43–48.

Bibliography. — L. K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, 170, 194, 195; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 527–536; F. W. Halsey, *Old New York Frontier*, 403–411; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 329–331; P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, 391–394; A. C. Ford, *Colonial Precedents*, 147–157.

§ 169. Finances of the Confederation, 1781–1788

Summary. — System: boards (§ 166); 1781–1784, Morris's administration; 1781, May 26, Bank of North America. — Currency: paper money; 1784, Jefferson's plan of coinage; ordinance of 1786. — Resources: post-office; requisitions; failure of the system. — Loans: outstanding in 1783; foreign; Dutch; domestic; depreciation. — Expenditures: half pay; 1783, March 17,

Newburg addresses; running expenses. — Financial amendments (§ 173): 1781, five-per-cent scheme; 1783, revenue scheme; 1786, revenue scheme revived.

General. — (See §§ 155, 157, 172, 177.) — A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. iv, ix, x; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, chs. xlv, xlvi; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, ch. ii; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, ch. viii, and *American Currency*, 43–57; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, I, chs. xvi, xvii; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, 99–108, (rev. ed.) 86–94; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 86–97; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 253–258; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. v; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 34–49, (rev. ed.) 33–47.

Special. — C. J. Bullock, *Finances from 1775 to 1789;* W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances*, I, chs. xiii–xv, II, chs. i–xxv; E. P. Oberholtzer, *Robert Morris*, 60–222; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, chs. vii–x (*History of the Constitution*, I, 155–248); J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, chs. ii–iv; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, I, chs. xi, xiii, xv; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 24–30, 59–86, 192 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 21–45, 76–113, 263); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. vi, vii; J. Elliot, *Funding System*, 59–61, 91, 92; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, ch. xxiv; A. B. Hepburn, *Coinage and Currency*, ch. i, and App., 453–456; Wm. Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy*, chs. ii, iii.

Sources. — *American State Papers*, *Finance*, I; *Journals of Congress*, VII–XIII; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), I; J. Madison, *Papers*, I, and *Writings* (Hunt ed.), I, II; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Ford ed.), III, especially 446–457; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), VIII, IX; Samuel Osgood and John Bacon, in Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1st ser., V, 465–485.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 235, 236, and *Reader's Handbook*, 242–244, 274; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 13; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 326–328, 331–333; C. J. Bullock, *Finances from 1775 to 1789*, 266–273; footnotes to Curtis, Bancroft, and to the special authorities above.

§ 170. Slavery Questions under the Confederation, 1774–1787

Summary. — National questions: slaves as prizes; fugitives; Indian treaties; clause in Northwest Ordinance (§ 167). — Taxation: 1776, debate; 1777, unsettled by the Articles. — Negro troops. — Slave trade: "Association" of 1774; Jefferson's draft

of 1776: state prohibitions. — Territorial: 1784, Jefferson's proposition; 1785, King's proposition; 1787, Northwest Ordinance (§ 167). — Emancipation movement: societies; southern sentiment; European sentiment. — Emancipation accomplished: 1777, Vermont; 1780, Massachusetts and Pennsylvania; 1783, New Hampshire; 1784, Rhode Island and Connecticut; 1799, New York; 1804, New Jersey.

General. — (See §§ 165, 180, 197.) — H. von Holst, *History*, I, 273–301; J. F. Jameson, *Essays in Constitutional History*, No. 5; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 119–122; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. iii, iv; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, ch. xi; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 116–118 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 192); J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xiv, xvii; W. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, chs. vii–xi; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. viii; Geo. Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 179–195; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, 390–395, 509, IV, 174–177.

Special. — J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), § 1916; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. vi, xv; W. F. Poole, *Antislavery Opinions before 1800;* S. M. Janney, *Society of Friends*, III, ch. xv; Mary S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery;* W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, ch. v; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, I, chs. xxvi–xxxi; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, ch. xviii; Shosuke Sato, *Land Question*, 88–99; G. H. Moore, *Slavery in Massachusetts*, chs. viii–x; B. C. Steiner, *Slavery in Connecticut*, 24–45; H. S. Cooley, *Slavery in New Jersey;* Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 13, 14.

Sources. — Ordinances of Congress, in *Journals of Congress;* state statutes, in collections enumerated in § 43; early state constitutions, in F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters;* Geo. Livermore, *Historical Research respecting the Opinions of the Founders of the Republic.*

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 325, 326; Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, 90–97; J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), § 1916; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. E; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 62, 63; W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, App. D; M. S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, 199–231.

§ 171. Foreign and Commercial Relations of the Confederation, 1783–1789

Summary. — Great Britain: Western posts; negroes; loyalists; debts; navigation laws; West Indian trade; discriminations; Adams's mission. — Spain: boundary; Mississippi navi-

gation; negotiations of 1786; threats of the West. — France: 1778, treaties (§ 155); 1788, consular convention. — Minor treaties. — Status of states: irregular action; interstate obstacles; 1784, commerce amendment (§ 173); 1785, Monroe's proposition.

General. — (See §§ 155, 157, 181.) — NARRATIVES: J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, chs. iii, iv; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, ch. xlvi; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. v, vi; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 18–35; J. W. Foster, *Century of Diplomacy*, 88–101; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 259–264; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 113–119; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. v. — BIOGRAPHIES: Wm. Whitelock, *John Jay*, ch. xiv; Geo. Pellew, *John Jay*, ch. ix; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, ch. ix, and *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. vii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. vii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, I, ch. xxv; M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry*, ch. xvii.

Special. — NARRATIVES: G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 27–166 *passim* (*History of the Constitution*, I, 33–227 *passim*); F. A. Ogg, *Opening of the Mississippi*, 400–441; H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, 1–48; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, III, chs. ii, iii (Sagamore ed., IV, chs. ii, iii); J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, chs. xiii, xv, xvi; W. R. Shepherd, *Wilkinson and the Beginning of the Spanish Conspiracy* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IX, 490); G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, chs. xi, xiii; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. iv. — DIPLOMATIC: T. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, II, ch. vi; W. C. Fisher, *American Trade Regulations before 1789* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, III, 467); J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, passim. — ECONOMIC: W. B. Weeden, *New England*, II, chs. xxii, xxiii. — BIOGRAPHIES: Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, I, (Jay) ch. xiii; Wm. Jay, *John Jay*, I, 183–254; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, chs. xxi–xxiv, xxvi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, chs. xi, xii; C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, ch. viii; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, chs. viii–xi; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. ix; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, chs. xxxiii, xxxiv.

Sources. — Instructions and ordinances of Congress, in *Journals of Congress* and *Secret Journals; Diplomatic Correspondence, 1783–1789;* W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*, I, 487, 490, II, 1233, 1244, 1477; J. Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 167–224; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), I, (Lodge ed.), I, 203–315; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), I, 338–607, II, (Ford ed.), III, IV; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, (Hunt ed.), II, and *Papers*, I; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), VIII, IX (especially IX, 501–510); J. Adams, *Works*, III, 353–406 (diary, 1783–1787), VIII (correspondence); *Letters of Phineas Bond* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1896,

I, 513); *Letters of Stephen Higginson* (*ibid.*, 711–765); B. Franklin, *Works* (Bigelow ed.), VII–IX; J. Monroe, *Writings*, I; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. iii, iv, ix, x; *Papers bearing on Wilkinson's Relations with Spain* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IX, 748); G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, Apps. to I, II; Noah Webster, *Sketches of American Policy;* Pelatiah Webster, *Dissertation on the Political Union* (reprint in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 186).

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 199–236 *passim;* A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 328, 329; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 71, 72, 174.

§ 172. States under the Confederation, 1781–1788

Summary. — Early constitutions (§ 159). — Constitutional struggles: Pennsylvania "Constitutionalists"; amendments; courts overruling statutes. — Interstate relations: stay acts; tender acts; tariff acts. — Relations with Congress (§ 166). — Social and religious conditions. — Internal finance: paper money; resistance in Pennsylvania, Vermont, Massachusetts (Shays Rebellion). — Settlement of boundaries: Connecticut-Pennsylvania; Massachusetts-New York (§ 168); Pennsylvania-Virginia (§ 168); South Carolina-Georgia. — Proposed separations: Western Pennsylvania; Kentucky; Vermont; Franklin (§ 168).

General. — (See §§ 166–168.) — NARRATIVES: J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, 55–71, 76–87, 144–153, 163–186; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 128–167; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, 406–410, 464–481; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 1–102, 155–164, 210–216, 281–355, 400–406; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 154–176 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 210–241); G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, ch. xii; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 385–397. — BIOGRAPHIES: W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, I, 465–478, chs. xviii–xx, II, ch. xxv; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. ix; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, ch. v; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, ch. iii, and *Charles Carroll*, II, ch. iii; C. J. Stillé, *John Dickinson*, 223–252; W. V. Wells, *Samuel Adams*, III, ch. lix; T. C. Amory, *James Sullivan*, I, ch. ix; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, III, chs. xli, xlii, xliv; Wm. Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, letters i–iv.

Special. — A. S. Bolles, *Pennsylvania*, 70–116; F. B. Lee, *New Jersey*, II, ch. xxiii; *Memorial History of the City of New York*, III, ch. i; S. G. Arnold, *Rhode Island*, II, 489–539; Hiland Hall, *Vermont*, chs. xxi–xxxix;

Jeremy Belknap, *New Hampshire*, II, chs. xxvi, xxvii. — BOUNDARIES: Henry Gannett, *Boundaries* (3d ed.); S. G. Fisher, *Making of Pennsylvania*, 292–317, 349–354; Chas. Miner, *Wyoming*, letters xxii–xxviii; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, II, chs. vii–ix, xii. — NEW STATE MOVEMENTS: G. H. Alden, *New States West of the Alleghanies*, and *State of Franklin* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VIII, 271); F. J. Turner, *Western State-Making* (*ibid.*, I, 70, 251); T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, III, chs. iv, v (Sagamore ed., IV, chs. iv, v); J. W. Caldwell, *Constitutional History of Tennessee*, ch. iii; J. G. M. Ramsey, *Tennessee*, ch. iv; E. D. Warfield, *Kentucky's Struggle for Autonomy* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, IV, 349). — MAPS: E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 402; F. J. Turner and G. H. Alden (above). — ECONOMIC CONDITIONS: Henry Phillips, Jr., *Paper Currency*, I; C. J. Bullock, *Financial History of Massachusetts*, ch. ii, and *Monetary History*, 184–204, 260–273; F. G. Bates, *Rhode Island and the Union*, chs. iii, iv; Wm. Findley, *Insurrection in Pennsylvania*, chs. i, ii. — SHAYS REBELLION: J. P. Warren, *Confederation and the Shays Rebellion* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 42); A. M. Davis, *Shays Rebellion* (Am. Antiq. Soc., *Proceedings*, n.s., XXI, 57); J. S. Barry, *Massachusetts*, III, ch. vi; A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party in Massachusetts*, ch. iii, Apps. A–D; S. B. Harding, *Ratification in Massachusetts*, ch. i. — STATE GOVERNMENTAL CONDITIONS: W. P. Trent, *Constitution-Making in the Churches* (in J. F. Jameson, *Essays in Constitutional History*, 186), and *Case of Josiah Phillips* (*Am. Hist. Review*, I, 444); Brinton Coxe, *Judicial Power and Unconstitutional Legislation*, chs. xxiii–xxviii; J. M. Varnum, *Trevett against Weeden;* Austin Scott, *Holmes vs. Walton* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IV, 456); C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 31–51; W. W. Henry and C. J. Stillé, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, II, 23, III, 205, 455.

Sources. — DOCUMENTS: F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters;* E. B. O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of New York*, IV, 531–1034 (Vermont); published state documents and records (§ 43), especially Rhode Island, *Colonial Records*, X; Vermont, *Governor and Council*, II, III; Pennsylvania, *Colonial Records*, XI–XIII (Virginia boundary), and *Archives*, 1st ser., VIII–X, 2d ser., XVIII (Wyoming); North Carolina, *State Records*, XXII, 637–731 (Franklin); Jas. Duane, *Territorial Rights of New York* (N.Y. Hist. Soc., *Publication Fund Series*, III, 1); *Collection of Evidence concerning New Hampshire Grants* (*ibid.*, I, 281); *Constitution of the State of Franklin* (*Am. Hist. Mag.*, Oct., 1904). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), IX, (Ford ed.), X, 340–507, XI, 1–135 (see Contents); J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), 66–284 (see Contents), (Hunt ed.), II, 30–333 (see Contents); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. v, viii; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 261–

377; G. J. McRee, *James Iredell*, II, chs. xvii–xix; Brissot de Warville, *New Travels*. — SHAYS REBELLION: G. R. Minot, *Insurrection in Massachusetts; Documents relating to Shays Rebellion* (*Am. Hist. Review*, II, 693); *Bowdoin Papers* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, 7th ser., VI), 108–187; Fisher Ames, *Works*, II, 91–97; John Noble, *Notes on the Shays Rebellion* (Am. Antiq. Soc., *Proceedings*, n.s., XV, 200).

Bibliography. — (See §§ 164–171.) — A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. xix, especially 331, 332; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 471–473; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, 351–356.

§ 173. The Federal Convention of 1787

Summary. — Proposed amendments of the Confederation: 1781, five per cent (§ 169); 1783, revenue (§ 169); 1784, commerce (§ 171); 1785–1786, minor schemes. — Call: 1785, Massachusetts proposition; 1786, Annapolis Convention; 1787, Feb. 21, call by Congress. — Choice of delegates: principal members. — Convention: place; 1787, May 25, organizes; plans submitted; May 30 to June 13, first general debate; June 19 to July 26, second general debate; Aug. 7 to Sept. 8, debate on detail; Sept. 12 to 15, committee on style; Sept. 17, signatures. — Difficulties: authority; sources; first compromise (representation in Congress); second compromise (slave representation); third compromise (slave trade).

General. — (See §§ 158, 166–176.) — NARRATIVES: R. Hildreth, *History*, III, ch. xlvii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, 234–256; *History of the Constitution*, I, 347–379; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, ch. viii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 82–104; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 86–103; J. Schouler, *History*, I, ch. i, § ii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 60–76; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, ch. xx; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 685; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), 76–110; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, chs. ii, iii; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. iv; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Federal Convention.

BIOGRAPHIES: J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, ch. vi, and *Benjamin Franklin*, ch. xv; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances*, II, ch. xxviii; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, chs. iv, v; Wm. Jay, *John Jay*, I, 254–270; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, ch. i; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, chs. iv–viii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. x–xiv; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 116–170; T. Roosevelt, *Gouver-*

neur Morris, ch. vi; Geo. Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 179–195, 252–262; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, ch. xxxv.

Constitutional Treatises: J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions;* John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, ch. ii; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, lects. i, ii; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Laws*, §§ 79–81; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 80, 81; J. W. Burgess, *Political Science*, I, 98–108.

Special. — A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. xi–xvi; W. M. Meigs, *Growth of the Constitution;* S. G. Fisher, *Evolution of the Constitution;* J. A. Kasson, *Evolution of the Constitution*, chs. iv–ix; H. L. Carson, *One Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution;* J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 272–276; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, III, chs. xlv–xlviii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. xi–xiv; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, chs. xv–xxxii (*History of the Constitution*, I, 328–488, II, 1–488); W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, chs. xxv–xxxii; J. H. Robinson, *Original and Derived Features of the Constitution* (Am. Acad. of Polit. and Soc. Sci., *Annals*, I, 203); G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 177–276, 292–367 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 242–278, II, 1–97, 119–222); J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, ch. iv, and *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution*, ch. viii; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, chs. v, vi; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, ch. i; C. E. Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution*, chs. ii–iv, vi; Max Farrand, *Compromises of the Constitution* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1903, I, 73); H. S. Maine, *Popular Government*, No. iv; Chas. Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, ch. ii; E. G. Bourne, *Use of History made by the Framers* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Reports*, 1896, I, 223).

Sources. — Max Farrand, *Records of the Federal Convention* (includes all the available records and much supplementary material); *Journal of the Convention*, in several editions, also in J. Elliot, *Debates* (2d ed.), I, 120–318, official reprint in *Documentary History of the Constitution*, I. — Notes by Members: Madison's notes, in *Documentary History of the Constitution*, III, also in *Madison Papers*, II, 685–1242, and in *Writings* (Hunt ed.), III, IV (also issued separately as *Journal of the Debates*); Yates's notes, in J. Elliot, *Debates* (2d ed.), I, 389–479; King's notes, in C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, 587–621; notes and papers of Wm. Pierce, Charles Pinckney, Wm. Paterson, A. Hamilton, and Jas. McHenry, in *American Historical Review*, III, 310, VIII, 509, IX, 310, X, 97, XI, 595. — Contemporary Writings: *Documentary History of the Constitution*, IV, 1–291, V, 401–466; J. Madison, *Letters and other Writings*, I, 278–342 *passim;* G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), IX, 219–265, 510–558; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), I, 393–456, (Lodge ed.), I, 319–409; J. Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 221–259; B. Franklin, *Works* (Bigelow ed.), IX, 395–484; T. Jefferson,

Writings (Washington ed.), I, 78–82; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, II, App. — TEXT OF THE CONSTITUTION: original engrossed copy, in Department of State; verbatim reprints from the MS., in *Documentary History of the Constitution*, II, 3–18, and in *American History Leaflets*, No. 8.

Bibliography. — P. L. Ford, *Bibliography and Reference List of the Constitution* (also in *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, 381–441); J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 226, 256–263; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. xix; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 29; *Documentary History of the Constitution*, V, 571–603; J. F. Jameson, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, I, 89–160; A. R. Hasse, *Books relating to Political Rights* (N. Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 103–111); W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 13–21; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, 351–356; Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletins* (calendars of Jefferson and Madison Papers); A. B. Hart, *Introduction to Federal Government*, §§ 38, 469, and *Manual*, §§ 30, 136.

§ 174. Ratification of the Constitution, 1787–1790

Summary. — Action of Congress: Sept. 18, 1787, Constitution transmitted. — Popular feeling: objections; arguments in favor; arguments against; Federalists organize; Anti-Federalists organize; the "Fœderalist." — Stages of ratification: (1) calling conventions; (2) choosing delegates; (3) debates in conventions; (4) acts of ratification. — Progress of ratification: 1787, Dec. 7, to 1788, Jan. 9, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut (five states); 1788, Feb. 7 to June 21, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire (nine states); June 26, Virginia (tenth); July 26, New York (eleventh); 1789, Nov. 21, North Carolina (twelfth); 1790, May 29, Rhode Island (thirteenth). — Proposed amendments: 1787–1789, proposed by states; 1789, submitted by Congress.

General. — (See §§ 158, 173, 175, 176.) — NARRATIVES: E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. i; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, chs. xvii, xviii; J. Schouler, *History*, I, ch. i, § iii; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), ch. vii; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, ch. ii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 105–121, 170–174, and *Men who Made the Nation*, 172–180; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 76–98; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, ch. xlviii; S. F. Miller, *Constitution*, lect. i; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, lect. iii; J. A. Kasson, *Evolution of the Constitution*, ch. x; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*,

ch. iv; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Bills of Rights. — BIOGRAPHIES: M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry*, chs. xviii, xix; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, ch. ix; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, 238–275; Geo. Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, I, 37–50, 195–198, 262–264.

Special. — NARRATIVES: G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, chs. xxxii–xxxvi (*History of the Constitution*, II, 491–604); G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 371–462 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 225–350); C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theories*, 100–122; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, ch. v; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 277–279; Chas. Borgeaud, *Adoption and Amendment of Constitutions*, 15–20, 131–136, 175–191; J. Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. vii; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 74–156; J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions;* J. F. Jameson, *Essays in Constitutional History*, No. 2; O. G. Libby, *Geographical Distribution of the Vote.* — BIOGRAPHIES: J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, III, chs. xlix–liv; C. J. Stillé, *John Dickinson*, ch. vii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. xv–xvii; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, chs. xxxiii–xxxvi; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, chs. xxxvi–xxxix; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, chs. vi–viii; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, 24–33; W. V. Wells, *Samuel Adams*, III, 248–282; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, chs. ii, iii. — PARTICULAR STATES: J. Elliot, *Debates*, II–IV; A. W. Clason, *Seven Conventions;* J. B. McMaster and F. D. Stone, *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution;* J. B. Walker, *New Hampshire Convention;* D. K. Peirce and C. Hale, *Debates in the Convention of Massachusetts* (1856); S. B. Harding, *Ratification by Massachusetts;* A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party in Massachusetts*, ch. iv, Apps. E, F; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 53–60; H. B. Grigsby, *Virginia Federal Convention* (Va. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, n. s., IX, X); G. H. Hollister, *Connecticut*, II, ch. xix; J. D. Hammond, *Political Parties in New York*, I, ch. i; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, 29–36; B. C. Steiner, *Maryland's Adoption of the Federal Constitution* (*Am. Hist. Review*, V, 22, 207); C. L. Raper, *Why North Carolina Refused to Ratify* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, I, 99); H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 1–4 (R. I.); F. G. Bates, *Rhode Island and the Union*, chs. v, vi; W. R. Staples, *Rhode Island in the Continental Congress*, 584–692. — MAPS: O. G. Libby, *Geographical Distribution of the Vote;* A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 278, 300.

Sources. — TEXT OF RATIFICATION ORDINANCES: originals, in Department of State; official reprint, in *Documentary History of the Constitution*, II; unofficial reprints, in J. Elliot, *Debates*, I, 319–339; *Niles' Weekly Register*, XLIII, Sup., p. 44; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, App. C, No. 2; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional*

Law, §§ 85, 86. — DEBATES AND WRITINGS: see special authorities above, and *Federalist* (eds., with introds., by Dawson, Ford, Hamilton, Lodge, Scott, G. Smith); P. L. Ford, *Essays*, and *Pamphlets; Documentary History of the Constitution*, IV, 291–828, V, 1–246; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), IX, 265–492; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, 342–411, (Hunt ed.), V, 1–254, and *Papers*, II, 615–682; *Federal Constitution in Virginia* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d ser., XVIII, 450); J. Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 260, 362; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), I, 428–491, (Lodge ed.), I, 413–535; J. Monroe, *Writings*, I, 175–192, 307–399; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, II, App.; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 432–600; *Correspondence of Moustier with Montmorin* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VIII, 709, IX, 86); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, 259–267, 311–338; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, Apps. A, C; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, I; *Niles' Weekly Register*, XLIII, Sup.; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xi; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 39 (Hamilton), 53 (Madison); *Old South Leaflets*, No. 99.

Bibliography. — P. L. Ford, *Bibliography and Reference List*, and *Pamphlets*, 381–441; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 257–260; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. xix; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 79; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 59 (lect. 9); E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 476–478, VII, 429–431; J. F. Jameson, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, I, 161–167; A. R. Hasse, *Books relating to Political Rights* (N.Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 111–123); J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 278, 279.

§ 175. Theories of the Constitution

Summary. — Theories of origin: is the Union older than the states? (§§ 153, 158, 159); were the states sovereign under the Confederation? (§§ 159, 166); did the states surrender sovereignty in ratification? (§ 174). — Theories of ratification: (1) by states; (2) by the people in independent communities; (3) by the people in each of the states; (4) by the people of the United States; (5) by general assent; (6) by the people in their constitution-making capacity. — Theories of federal relations: (1) a league; (2) a compact; (3) an instrument of government; (4) an indissoluble league of indestructible states. — Theories of dissolution: (1) interposition (§ 184); (2) nullification (§ 206); (3) secession (§ 231); (4) revolution (§§ 235, 236). — Theories of reconstruction (§ 241). — Imperialism (§ 266).

General. — (See §§ 173, 174, 176, 178, 184, 192, 206, 231, 241, 266.) — T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, ch. ii, and *Constitutional Limitations*, ch. ii; H. von Holst, *History*, I, 47–63, and *Constitutional Law*, §§ 1–5; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, ch. vi; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, chs. i, ii; A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, chs. vi, viii; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, ch. iii; J. A. Woodburn, *American Republic*, 54–93; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, chs. iii–ix, and *American Constitutional System*, chs. ii, iv, vi, vii; H. C. Black, *American Constitutional Law* (2d ed.), ch. ii; B. B. Munford, *Virginia's Attitude toward Secession*, chs. i, xlii; F. J. Stimson, *Law of Federal and State Constitutions*, bk. i, ch. x, bk. ii, ch. iii, and *American Constitution;* C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theories*, ch. vii, and *Theory of Sovereignty*, ch. ix; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xv; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 441–451 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 321–335); J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), I, chs. ii–iv; Émile Boutmy, *Studies in Constitutional Law*, pt. ii; J. W. Burgess, *Political Science*, I, 49–89, 98–108, 142–154, II, 17–21; Jas. Bayard, *Brief Exposition of the Constitution*, 159–165; Henry Baldwin, *General View*, passim; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 90–153; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession*, chs. ii, iii; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 93–95; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Constitutional Law, Construction, Prohibitions, State Sovereignty, United States as a Federal State; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 442–448.

Special. — J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 306–372, 463; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, lects. iv–vii; J. C. Hurd, *Theory of our National Existence*, ch. iv; J. Q. Adams, *Jubilee of the Constitution*, 1–70, 116–120; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. ii; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, colloquies iii–ix; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 41–69, 159–270. — "State" Theory of Ratification: P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 137–156; J. R. Tucker, *Constitution*, §§ 139–166, 171; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 86*a*, 102–114, 134; Henry Baldwin, *General View*, 18–26. — "People" Theory: *Federalist* (Dawson ed.), No. 38; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 479, 1849; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 81–86; H. von Holst, *Constitutional Law*, § 4. — League and Compact Theories: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 321–330, 349–372; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 59–69, 561–571; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 116–120, 477–485; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 134–140; A. C. McLaughlin, *Social Compact* (*Am. Hist. Review*, V, 467). — Instrument of Government Theory: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 339, 340; J. Kent, *Commentaries*, I, 201; A. H. Stephens, *War between*

the States, I, 17–21; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, 285, 286. — STATE SOVEREIGNTY THEORY: P. C. Centz (pseud.) *Republic of Republics*, 325–339; St. George Tucker, *Blackstone's Commentaries*, App., note D; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 116–147, 465–496, II, 21–24; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 141–156; J. C. Hurd, *Theory of our National Existence*, 116–141; Henry Baldwin, *General View*. — NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY THEORY: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 350–363, 380–383; J. A. Jameson, *National Sovereignty* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, V, 193); D. H. Chamberlain, in Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d ser., XVI, 151, XX, 477.

Sources. — Illustrative cases, in J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, I, especially ch. iii; J. Marshall, *Writings*, passim; lists of cases, in A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 136, 138, 141, 149, 151, 156, 160, 199, 200. — Discussions, in J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, 262–309; D. Webster, in *Works*, III, 270–347, 464–505, in J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 496–509, 516–519, and in Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 248; R. Y. Hayne, in J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 509–516; extracts in *American History Leaflets*, No. 30, *Old South Leaflets*, No. 106 (Calhoun), and P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 524–527.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 261–266; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, § 15; A. C. McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, 336; A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List of Books on the Constitution;* A. H. Hasse, *Books on Political Rights* (N.Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 123–131); A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 30 (lect. 5), 34 (lect. 19), 36 (lect. 26), 40 (lect. 44), 48 (lect. 65), 98 (lect. 6), 136, 138, 141, 149, 151, 156, 160, 200.

CHAPTER XXII

ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT, 1789–1801

§ 176. Organization of the Three Departments of Government, 1789–1793

Summary. — Precedents: English (§ 163); colonial governments (§ 164); state governments (§ 159); Continental Congress (§ 153); Confederation (§ 166); writers on political theory. — Preliminaries: 1788, expiration of the Confederation; 1788–1789, first national elections; place of meeting. — Legislative department: 1789, April 1, 6, the two houses organized; June 1, first statute; question of instructions; salaries; relations with the president; relations with the cabinet; speaker; committees; leaders. — Executive department: 1789, April 30, inauguration of Washington; novelty of the office; question of title; ceremonies; salary; appointments; question of removal of officers; 1792, April 5, first veto; 1796, question of submitting papers. — Executive heads: practice of the confederation; creation of heads of departments; the cabinet; questions of patronage; opinions and discussions — Judiciary department: previous federal courts (§ 166); 1789, Sept. 24, judiciary act; supreme court; inferior courts; attorney general; appointments of judges; salaries; question of appeal jurisdiction; extra-judicial opinions; 1791, first decision; 1793, Chisholm *v.* Georgia.

General. — (See §§ 186, 203, 204, 239.) — H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 41–81; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 525–568; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. i; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, ch. vii, and *Men who Made the Nation*, ch. vi; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 98–108, 116–126; E. W. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. ii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, chs. iii–vi; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, chs. i, ii,

iv, vi; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. x, and *History* (rev. ed.), I, 84–144; G. Bancroft, *History* (last rev.), VI, 463–474 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 351–367); W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 177–202, 238–264; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, chs. iv–vii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, ch. vii, and *John Adams*, ch. x; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, I, chs. xv, xvi; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xviii; J. Q. Adams, *Jubilee of the Constitution;* McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Cabinet, Committee System, Congress, Congressional Government, Courts (Federal), Executive and Congress, Executive and Judiciary, Judiciary and Congress, President.

Special. — Detailed Accounts: F. F. Stephens, *Transitional Period;* H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, chs. xiv, xv; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III, chs. xxxvii, xxxviii; Wm. Whitelock, *John Jay*, chs. xv–xvii; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, IV, chs. lvi–lviii; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, II, ch. vii, III, chs. i, ii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, ch. iv; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, ch. xix; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, chs. iii, iv. — Legislative Department: Samuel Oppenheim, *Early Congressional Debates and Reporters;* J. W. Moore, *American Congress*, chs. viii–x; A. L. Lowell, *Essays on Government*, No. 1; Mary P. Follett, *Speaker;* Clara H. Kerr, *United States Senate;* P. S. Reinsch, *American Legislatures*, chs. i–iii. — Executive Department: lives of Washington, Hamilton, Jefferson, Edmund Randolph, Knox (see § 39); R. W. Griswold, *Republican Court;* J. M. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, ch. iv; M. L. Hinsdale, *President's Cabinet*, 1–27, 283–328; H. B. Learned, *President's Cabinet;* J. F. Jameson, *Essays in Constitutional History*, No. 3; J. B. McMaster, *With the Fathers*, 150–181 (inauguration); Gaillard Hunt, *Office-Seeking* (*Am. Hist. Review*, I, 270); Lucy W. Salmon, *Appointing Power of the President*, chs. i–iii (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, I); C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, ch. i. — Judiciary Department: Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, I, (Jay) ch. xiv, (Rutledge) chs. xv, xvi; Geo. Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices* (Jay); H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court*, I, chs. xi, xii; E. P. Wheeler, *Supreme Court;* Wm. Jay, *John Jay*, I, ch. viii; W. W. Willoughby, *Supreme Court;* S. E. Baldwin, *American Judiciary*, ch. ix. — Maps: J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 4 (U.S., 1790), 168 (settlement).

Sources. — Debates (House): *Annals of Congress*, I–III; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I; J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 343–443; Thos. Lloyd, *Congressional Register of Debates of the House* (1789–1790); Wm. Maclay, *Journal* (early Senate); J. Adams, *Works* (diary), III, 407–414. — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, I–III, Apps., *American State Papers, Miscellaneous*, I; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 42–59, 64–70, 81–87, 103–110. — Contemporary Writ-

INGS: G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), X, XII, (Ford ed.), XI, XII; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), III, (Ford ed.), V; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Lodge ed.), II; J. Marshall, *George Washington*, V. ch. iii; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, 416–501, (Hunt ed.), V, 248–436; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I, and *Speeches in Congress;* C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. xix, xx; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, 363–434; J. Jay, *Correspondence*, III, 363–489; B. C. Steiner, *James McHenry*, chs. viii–x; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 77, 79, 81.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 299–309, 323–333; indexes to the *Journals of Congress*, 1789–1805 (see § 26); E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 431–433; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. xx; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 23, 31, 37, 42; H. H. B. Meyer, *List of Works relative to the Supreme Court;* A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 69, and *Manual*, §§ 31, 32 (lects. 10–12), 137, 212; M. L. Hinsdale, *President's Cabinet*, 329–339.

§ 177. Organization of a Financial System, 1789–1791

Summary. — Financial situation in 1789 (§§ 169, 171, 172): revenue; expenditure; loans; deficit; currency; lost credit. — Revenue: 1789, July 4, first tariff act; question of protection; system of collection; tonnage duties; proceeds of lands and post-office; amount of revenue; 1790–1800, slight increases in tariff. — Debt: 1790, Jan. 14, Hamilton's report on public credit; question of funding; foreign debt; domestic debt; original holders; funding system. — Assumption of state debts: reasons for; 1790, March and April, Congress uncertain; question of site of national seat of government; July, Jefferson's compromise; violent protests; amounts assumed. — Expenditure: ordinary expenses; interest; military and naval. — Bank of the United States: Bank of North America (§ 169); 1790, Dec. 14, Hamilton's report; draft of a bill; 1791, Feb., question of constitutionality (§ 178); cabinet opinions; Feb. 21, act approved; successful operation of the bank; 1811, expires by limitation; 1816, revived (§ 194). — Financial progress (§§ 182, 185, 186, 194).

General. — H. von Holst, *History*, I, 80–107; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 542–561, 568–593, II, 25–41, 57–82; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, chs. i–v, vii; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 96–117, 144–156, 173–180; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. ii; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. iii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, ch. vii; D. R. Dewey, *Financial*

History, chs. iv, v; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 146–168, 174–183, 217–219; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, ch. xvii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. xix–xxii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. xix, xx.

Special. — Detailed Accounts: J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, chs. vii, ix, xii, II, ch. i; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, chs. v, vi; H. Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, book ii; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, chs. ii, iii, vii, x, xiii; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, IV, V; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, chs. xiii–xvi; H. C. Adams, *Taxation*, 5–45; J. W. Kearny, *American Finances*, chs. i, ii. — Tariff: Edward Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation* (*Cong. Docs.*, Serial No. 1512), pp. iii–xxxi; Wm. Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy*, ch. iv; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, I, chs. iii, iv; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances*, II, chs. xxxi, xxxii. — Debt: Jon. Elliot, *Funding System*, 3–410; H. C. Adams, *Public Debts*, pt. ii, chs. iii, v, pt. iii, ch. ii. — Bank: Holdsworth and Dewey, *First and Second Banks*, 9–72, 126–144; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 35–41; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 55–61, and *Alexander Hamilton*, chs. x, xi; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currencies*, ch. xv; Clarke and Hall, *Bank of the United States*, ch. ii; Horace White, *Money and Banking*, book iii, ch. vi.

Sources. — Debates: *Annals of Congress*, I–III; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I; Thos. Lloyd, *Congressional Register;* Wm. Maclay, *Journal.* — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, II, III, Apps.; *American State Papers*, *Finance*, I, *Post Office*, I, *Claims*, I, *Commerce*, I; A. Hamilton, *Works* (see below). — Collections of Documents: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 4–7; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 6, 8–11; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 76, 78, 80, 82; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 7–48; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 3–24, 269–277. — Contemporary Writings: A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), III, IV, VI, 632–651, (Lodge ed.), II, III; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, III (*Sketch of the Finances*); Wm. Maclay, *Journal*, chs. ii, v–xi, xiv; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, 464–574, (Hunt ed.), V, 339–461, VI, 1–44 *n.*; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), III (letters), VII (official papers), IX (Anas), (Ford ed.), V, 150–320; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), X, XII, (Ford ed.), XI, XIII; J. Marshall, *George Washington*, V, chs. iii–v.

Bibliography. — P. L. Ford, *Bibliotheca Hamiltoniana;* J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 308, 328; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to Banks;* D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 33, 42; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 433–434; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 32 (lects. 13, 14); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331.

§ 178. Doctrine of Implied Powers, 1789–1911

Summary. — Before 1789: under the Continental Congress, all implied (§ 153); under the Confederation, none implied (§§ 158, 166). — The Constitution (§§ 173–175): general clauses; "necessary and proper" clause; "general welfare" clause. — Bank question: 1791, Feb., question of constitutionality; discussion: opinions of the cabinet. — Doctrines of powers of Congress: "implied powers"; "resulting powers"; "sovereignty of Congress." — Applications: 1789, protection (§ 177); 1791, bank (§ 177); 1798, alien and sedition acts (§ 184); 1803, annexation of Louisiana (§ 187); 1807, embargo (§ 190); 1816, bank and internal improvements (§ 194); 1846–1854, territorial slavery (§§ 197, 221, 222, 225); 1861, secession and war (§§ 231, 236, 240); 1863–1883, legal tenders (§§ 237, 243); 1890, trusts (§ 269); labor, including child labor (§ 270); aid to the distressed.

General. — T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, ch. iv, § 15; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xviii; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 29–41, and *American Constitutional System*, 140–150; H. C. Black, *American Constitutional Law*, § 105; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, ch. xii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxi; A. V. Dicey, *Law of the Constitution*, lect. iii; John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, 537–561; J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), I, chs. xxxiii–xxxv; W. A. Duer, *Constitutional Jurisprudence*, 309–401; Jas. Bayard, *Brief Exposition of the Constitution*, 39–44.

Special. — Constitutional Discussions: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 430, 497–506, 637–660, 907–930, 1236–1279, 1329; J. Kent, *Commentaries*, I, lect. xii; J. R. Tucker, *Constitution*, §§ 179–183, 222–234, 248, 249, 294; S. F. Miller, *Constitution*, notes to lect. ii; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 259–269; C. S. Patterson, *United States and the States*, ch. ii; G. Bancroft, *Plea for the Constitution*; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Concurrent Powers, Constitutional Law, Construction and Interpretation, Implied Powers, Judiciary and Congress.

Sources. — Notable Cases (see also A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 138): — Anderson *v.* Dunn (1821): 6 *Wheaton*, 204; 5 *Curtis*, 61; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 603. — M'Culloch *v.* Maryland (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 316; 4 *Curtis*, 415; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 271; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 160. — Martin *v.* Hunter's Lessee (1816): 1 *Wheaton*, 304; 3 *Curtis*, 562; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 123; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 525. — Gibbons *v.*

Ogden (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 1; 6 *Curtis*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1799; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 287. — Legal Tender cases (1871): 12 *Wallace*, 457; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2237. — United States *v.* Fisher (1804): 2 *Cranch*, 358; 1 *Curtis*, 496. — Osborn *v.* Bank (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 738; 6 *Curtis*, 251; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1346*n.*; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 315. — Logan *v.* United States (1892): 144 *United States*, 263; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 343. — *In re* Neagle (1890): 135 *United States*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 335. — Juilliard *v.* Greenman (1884): 110 *United States*, 421; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2255. — Kansas *v.* Colorado (1907): 206 *United States*, 46. (See also § 195.) — CONTEMPORARY DISCUSSIONS: A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), IV, 103–138, (Lodge ed.), III, 179–227; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), VII, 555–561, (Ford ed.), V, 284; J. Marshall, *Writings* (especially 164–178, 295–307, 313, 314), and *George Washington*, V, ch. iv; J. Madison, *Writings* (Hunt ed.), IX, 411–431 *n.*; Clarke and Hall, *Bank of the United States*, 85–114.

Bibliography. — Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, § 116; notes to the commentaries, especially Story; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 38 (lect. 29), 138.

§ 179. Political Parties, 1789–1793

Summary. — Origin of parties: colonial (§ 164); pre-revolutionary; revolutionary patriots and tories (§ 152); 1783–1788, factions in Congress (§ 166); 1787–1789, Federalists and Anti-Federalists (§ 174); state parties. — 1788–1789, First national elections; 1789–1792, genesis of parties in Congress; in the cabinet; on financial measures (§ 169). — 1793, Republican and Federal parties formed; leaders; Jefferson and Hamilton; 1792, second election of Washington; effect of the French Revolution (§ 181); "Democrats"; "British party"; "monarchical faction"; "corrupt treasury squadron" (§ 182).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 47–58, 85–88; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. iii; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. xi; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, ch. ii; H. J. Ford, *American Politics*, chs. vi, vii; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 67–77; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), X, 235; Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, ch. ii; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 39–46, 287–301, 331–373, 389–409; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 180–196, 216–237, and *Thomas Jefferson*, chs. x, xi; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, ch. v, and *Alexander Hamilton*, 80–83, 136–152, (rev. ed.) 79–82, 134–150; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, ch. xviii; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, chs. ix, xii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, chs. viii–x; J. T.

Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, ch. iv; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 223–237; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. xxii, xxiv; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, ch. xii; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. i–iii; J. Parton, *Thomas Jefferson*, chs. xliv, xlvi–xlviii; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Democratic-Republican Party, Federalist Party.

Special. — Party Histories: M. Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, chs. i, ii, iv; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, chs. v, vi; M. Ostrogorski, *Democracy and Political Parties*, II, 3–13; C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theories*, 122–175; A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party in Massachusetts*, ch. v; A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy*, I, chs. x–xiii; A. D. Morse, *Democratic Party* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, VI, 593). — Detailed Accounts: J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, II, ch. i; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, ch. xv, II, chs. i–iii; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, chs. i–iv; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, chs. ix–xv; M. L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, I, ch. xvi, II, chs. ii, iii; S. F. Forman, *Political Activities of Freneau*, ch. iii; G. D. Luetscher, *Early Political Machinery;* U. B. Phillips, *South Carolina Federalists* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XIV, 529, 731); C. D. Hazen, *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution.*

Sources. — Debates: *Annals of Congress*, I–III; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I. — Contemporary Writings: A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.) IV, V, VII ("An American Catullus"), (Lodge ed.), VI, VIII; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), III, especially 359–365, IX, 87–185, (Ford ed.), I, 154–272 (Anas), V, 328–507, VI; J. Adams, *Works*, VI ("Discourses on Davila"), XII; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), X, and especially Apps. to XII, XIII, XVI, (Ford ed.), XII, XIII; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, 535–654, (Hunt ed.), VI, 46 *n.*–123; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 387–428; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. xxiii, xxiv; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, IV, chs. lx, lxxi–lxxvi, especially 525; *South Carolina Federalist Correspondence* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XIV, 776); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xiii.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 294–335; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 310; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to Political Parties;* E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 434–435; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 32 (lect. 16), 139; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, 233, 234; A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party*, 189–205.

§ 180. Territorial and Slavery Questions, 1789–1802

Summary. — New states and territories (§ 193); questions under the Confederation (§§ 167, 168). — Land questions: 1790, North

Carolina cession; 1795, Yazoo grants (§ 193); 1800, Western Reserve ceded; 1802, Georgia cession. — Slavery under the Confederation (§ 170). — Slavery question revived: 1789, question of a tax on the trade; 1790, memorials; 1793, fugitive slave act; 1794, regulation of the trade. — 1793, The cotton gin. — Seat of government: 1790, site fixed by compromise (§ 177); selected by Washington; 1800, first occupied; laws of the District of Columbia. — Progress of territorial questions (§§ 187, 193, 197). — Progress of slavery questions (§§ 197, 209).

General. — J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, chs. xii, xiii; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 109–115; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), 207–222; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 156–163, 198–201, 214–216, 287; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 15–22, 284–286, 476–489, III, ch. xvi; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 174–206, 225–240, 267–272, 326–330, 384–387, 622–644; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 159–171, (rev. ed.) 152–163; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xvi; St. George Tucker, *Blackstone's Commentaries*, II, note E.

Special. — SLAVERY: Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, chs. xix, xxii; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, ch. x; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 16–35; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, I, ch. xxxi, II, ch. i; M. S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, §§ 93–123, 149–157, 171–173, 177–204; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia;* W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, ch. vii; F. V. Emerson, *Geographical Influences in the Distribution of Slavery* (Am. Geog. Soc. *Bulletin*, XLIII, 13, 106, 170). For slavery in the states, see § 170. — LANDS: P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, 66–101, 162–168, 179–210, 263–272, 319–369; J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, ch. xvii. — MAPS: J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 184 (emancipation).

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, I–XI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I, II. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, I–XI, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 94, 100, 102; Thos. Donaldson, *Public Domain; American State Papers, Public Lands*, I, *Miscellaneous*, I; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 7; *American History Leaflets*, No. 22. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: *Correspondence of Eli Whitney* (*Am. Hist. Review*, III, 90); Jedidiah Morse, *American Geography;* John Pope, *Tour;* La Rochefoucauld, *Travels*. For other travels, see § 38.

Bibliography. — J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), § 1916, note 1; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. E; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 307–310; M. S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, 199–231; Mary Tremain,

Slavery in the District of Columbia, 98–100; W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, App. D; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 31 (lect. 48), 32 (lect. 15).

§ 181. Foreign and Indian Relations, 1789–1798

Summary. — France: 1778, treaties (§ 155); 1788, consular convention (§ 171); 1789, revolution; 1793, neutrality declared; Genet episode; capture of American vessels; 1794, Monroe episode; 1796, Monroe's recall; Pinckney episode. — Spain: 1786, Mississippi question (§ 171); 1789, Yazoo grants (§ 193); Indian intrigues; 1795, Oct. 27, treaty of the Escurial. — England: 1789, outstanding questions under the treaty of 1783 (§ 171); 1790, Nootka Sound; 1792, discovery of the Columbia River (§ 187); 1793, outbreak of war with France; 1794, aggressions on neutral trade; impressments; war threatened; Nov. 19, Jay's treaty; 1795, Jay's treaty opposed; "Dispatch No. 10"; 1796, treaty accepted by the House; posts surrendered; 1797, Blount conspiracy; 1798, negotiations on claims and boundaries. — Barbary powers: treaties of tribute (§ 186). — Indians: western settlements (§§ 168, 193); British and Spanish influence; 1789, Jan. 9, Fort Harmar treaty; 1790, Aug. 7, Creek treaty; Miami expedition; 1791, St. Clair's defeat; 1793–1794, Wayne's campaign; 1795, Aug. 3, Greenville treaty; 1792–1793, defeat of the Cherokees; 1795, Georgia's protest. — Later controversies (§§ 183, 187, 189–191).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 593–604, II, 43–47, 67–72, 89–144, 165–188, 212–289, III, 118; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, chs. iv–vi, viii; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. viii; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, chs. v–viii; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 132–147, 224–249, 281–287, 304–306, 310–312, 377–384, 411–446, 451–497, 516–522, 539–615, 622–624, 643; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 165–173, 208–215, 233, ch. iii; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 81–103 (rev. ed., 83–105), ch. iv, and *Alexander Hamilton*, 153–180, 188–194, (rev. ed.) 151–177, 185–191; Geo. Pellew, *John Jay*, ch. x; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, chs. xviii, xix; H. Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 151–189; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, chs. vii–x; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxiii; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 211–222; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. vii; J. Parton, *Thomas Jefferson*, chs. xlv, xlvi, xlix, l.

Special. — NARRATIVES: W. H. Trescot, *Diplomatic History under Washington and Adams*, chs. ii–iv; Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, I, chs. vi,

vii; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, chs. iv, v, viii–xii; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 136–176; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, 61–73; J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy*, 34–57, and *Arbitrations*, I, chs. ix, x, II, ch. xix, V, 4399–4420; A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party in Massachusetts*, chs. vi-ix, Apps. G–J. — West: J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, chs. xvii, xix–xxv; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, III, chs. vii, viii, IV, chs. i, ii, iv (Sagamore ed., V, chs. ii–v, VI, ch. ii); F. A. Ogg, *Opening of the Mississippi*, 441–459, and *Jay's Treaty and Slavery Interests* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, I, 275); I. J. Cox, *Indian as a Diplomatic Factor* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Quart.*, XVIII, 542); A. C. McLaughlin, *Western Posts and British Debts* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1894, 413). — Great Britain: Montagu Burrows, *Foreign Policy of Great Britain*, ch. viii; A. T. Mahan, *Sea Power and War of 1812*, I, 42–99; W. R. Manning, *Nootka Sound Controversy* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1904, 279). — France: F. J. Turner, *Genet's Projected Attack on Louisiana* (*Am. Hist. Review*, III, 650), and *Policy of France towards the Mississippi Valley* (*ibid.*, X, 249), and *Diplomatic Contest for the Mississippi Valley* (*Atlantic Monthly*, XCIII, 676, 807); C. D. Hazen, *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution*. — Spain: W. S. Robertson, *Francisco de Miranda*, ch. v (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I, 266); B. W. Bond, Jr., *Monroe's Mission to France;* G. L. Rives, *Spain and United States* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IV, 62); H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, 48–75; F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, ch. ii; F. L. Riley, *Transition from Spanish Rule* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, III, 261), and *Spanish Policy in Mississippi* (*ibid.*, I, 50; also Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1897, 175); B. W. Bond, *Monroe's Efforts to secure Free Navigation* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, IX, 255).

Biographies: G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, chs. xvii–xxi; Wm. Whitelock, *John Jay*, chs. xviii–xx; Wm. Jay, *John Jay*, I, chs. viii–x, II, 197–281; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, II, chs. iii, v; C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, ch. ix; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, chs. v–vii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. iii-vi; M. D. Conway, *Edmund Randolph*, chs. xxi–xxxv; M. L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, I, ch. xviii.

Maps: J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 58 (frontier), 70 (Ga. and Span. claims); E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 96 (western grants and Indian relations).

Sources. — Debates: *Annals of Congress*, I–VI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I. — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, I–VI, Apps.; *American State Papers*, *Foreign*, I, *Indian*, I, *Military*, I; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 59–62, 70, 72, 76–82, 89–98, 113, 118–122, 125–127, 137–141, 145–148, 152–158, 167, 176–

180, 182, 185, 189, 193–196, 199–204, 210; *Correspondence of French Ministers* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1903, [II), 43–968]; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements;* C. J. Kappler, *Indian Affairs, Laws and Treaties*, II, 18–50. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 13, 14; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*. III, §§ 92–97; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 43, 783, 821, 826, 827, 883, 1295; Mathew Carey, *American Remembrancer*.

CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), X–XII, (Ford ed.), XII, XIII; B. C. Steiner, *James McHenry*, ch. xi; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I, II, and *Speeches in Congress;* G. Morris, *Diary and Letters*, I, chs. xxiii–xxvi, II, chs. xxvii–xxx; J. Jay, *Correspondence*, IV; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), IV, especially 355–406, V, VII ("Pacificus" and "Camillus"), (Lodge ed.), IV; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), III, IV, IX, (Ford ed.), I, 179–272 (Anas), V, 198–515, VI, VII, 1–84; J. Monroe, *Writings*, I, 250–303, II, III, 1–94, 383–457 (View), VII, 277–298, and *View of the Conduct of the Executive;* J. Trumbull, *Autobiography*, chs. xii–xiv; Wm. Cobbett, *Porcupine's Works*, II; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, chs. xxiv–xxxi, II, chs. ii–xi; J. Marshall, *George Washington*, V, 272–342, 373, chs. vi–viii; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), I, 493–654 ("Helvidius," 607), II, 1–105, IV, 485–505, (Hunt ed.), VI, 125–302 ("Helvidius," 151); J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, II, III; Edmund Randolph, *Vindication; Letters of Phineas Bond* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, 1896, I, 595, 659, and 1897, 454); *Letters of Stephen Higginson* (*ibid.*, 1896, 765–797); *Correspondence of Clark and Genet* (*ibid.*, 930); *Mangourit Correspondence* (*ibid.*, 1897, 569); W. H. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, II; *Documents on the Blount Conspiracy* (*Am. Hist. Review*, X, 574); G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 160–210.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 417, 446–453, 467–471, 514–517; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 305, 306; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 33, 34 (lect. 17), 73, 74 (lects. 26–31), 175, 176; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 160, 161; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 152–167; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 113, 114; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 435–439.

§ 182. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1792–1797

Summary. — Commerce: registry of shipping; bounties; coasting trade; lighthouses; entry and clearance; oriental trade; consuls. — Business: coinage; copyright; patents; report on manufactures; establishment of textile manufactures; state corporations; toll roads; post-office. — Criticism of the

Treasury: funding; 1793, Giles resolutions; 1795, Jan. 31, Hamilton retires; Albert Gallatin. — Whiskey Rebellion: 1791, March 3, first excise; 1792, May 8, revision; violence; May 2, act for summoning militia; 1794, July, armed outbreak; Aug. 7, president's proclamation; Oct., military expedition; 1795, Feb. 28, second act for summoning militia; treason trials; pardons; Washington on "self-constituted societies"; later taxation troubles (§ 185).

General. — J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 181, 197–204, 232–237, 274, 287, 290–295, 301–303; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 42, 43, 58–63, 189–206; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 373–376, 498–516, 523–531; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. vii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, ch. x; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. ix; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, ch. vi; J. T. Moore, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, chs. x, xi, II, chs. ii, iv; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, 110–128, (rev. ed.) 112–130; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 49–57, 69–99, (rev. ed.) 48–53, 67–96; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, chs. xi–xiii; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 132–156; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 122–130, 169–171; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 44–46, 51.

Special. — H. Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 86–150; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, V, chs. lxxxi, lxxxiii, lxxxvii, xcviii, cvi, VI, chs. cvii, cviii, cx–cxii; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III, 447–461. — COMMERCE: Clive Day, *Commerce*, ch. xiv; W. L. Marvin, *American Merchant Marine*, chs. iv–vi; W. W. Bates, *American Navigation*, chs. iv–x, xxiii; D. A. Wells, *Our Merchant Marine*, ch. iv. — MANUFACTURES: J. D. Goss, *Tariff Administration*, ch. ii; J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, ch. i; *Patent Centennial Celebration*, 43–49, 145–148; F. C. Howe, *Internal Revenue System*, ch. i; G. S. White, *Samuel Slater*, chs. i–iv. — CURRENCY: A. B. Hepburn, *Coinage and Currency*, ch. ii, App. 463–470; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, ch. ii. — WHISKEY REBELLION: H. M. Brackenridge, *Western Insurrection;* N. B. Craig, *Exposure of Misstatements;* W. H. Egle, *Pennsylvania*, ch. xiv; Townsend Ward, *Insurrection of 1794* (Pa. Hist. Soc., *Memoirs*, VI, 117).

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, III–VI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, I. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 24–50, 474–489; *American State Papers, Finance*, I, *Miscellaneous*, I; *Annals of Congress*, III–VI, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 124, 158–172, 179–181. — Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 12, 15; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 1–107. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS:

A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), III, IV, especially 575–604, V, especially 1–55, (Lodge ed.), II, III, V, 471–524, VI, 3–68; G. Washington, *Writings* (Sparks ed.), X–XII; J. Marshall, *George Washington*, V, 287–293, 342–352, 360–366, 373–387, 550–554, 574–612; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I, 1–12, III, 1–206; *Pennsylvania Archives*, 2d ser., IV; Wm. Findley, *Insurrection in Western Pennsylvania;* H. H. Brackenridge, *Insurrection in Western Pennsylvania;* F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 102–184; G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 29–48, 149–159.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 330; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 308, 311; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 439; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 130; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 32 (lect. 14), 34 (lect. 18), 140; *List of References on Whisky Insurrection* (Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, *Monthly Bulletin*, July, 1906, 344–352).

§ 183. Breach with France, 1797–1800

Summary. — Previous relations (§ 181). — Change of administration: 1796, Washington's farewell address; election of John Adams; trouble with the cabinet. — X. Y. Z. episode; 1796, French grievances (§ 181); Pinckney not received (§ 181); 1797, demand for a bribe; 1798, June 21, Adams on the crisis. — War with France: 1798, July 9, authorization to capture French vessels; 1798-1799, naval battles; captures by privateers. — 1798, The Miranda project. — Internal troubles: question of Hamilton's command; 1798, July 14, direct tax. — Peace: 1799, French overtures; 1800, Sept. 30, convention negotiated; "French spoliation claims." — Effect on Adams (§ 185). — Subsequent relations (§§ 187, 189, 190, 204, 238, 244).

General. — J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 265–287, (rev. ed.) 261–283, and *Thomas Jefferson*, 173–193, (rev. ed.) 154–171; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, chs. ix, xiv–xvi; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. ix; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 219–221, 229–236, 250–254; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 143–152; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 171–216; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 685–704, V, chs. x, xi, xiii, xiv; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 209–416, 429–476; J. Schouler, *History*, I, ch. iv; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. iv; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, ch. vi, and *Alexander Hamilton*, 194–221, (rev. ed.) 191–218; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 134–144, 152–162, (rev. ed.) 130–139, 147–157; W. G. Brown, *Oliver Ellsworth*, 264–320; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. i–iii.

Special. — C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, ch. x; H. A. Garland, *John*

Randolph, I, chs. xviii–xxiii; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, chs. xiii–xv, II, chs. i–vi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. vi–x; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II, (Marshall) ch. viii; A. E. Morse, *Federalist Party in Massachusetts*, chs. x, xi, Apps. K–O; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, VI, chs. cxxxii–cxxxv, VII, chs. cxxxvi–cxlvii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, chs. v–viii; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, chs. viii–xii. — DIPLOMACY: J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 176–184, 226–228; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4421–4433; W. H. Trescot, *Diplomatic History under Washington and Adams*, ch. iii; W. S. Robertson, *Francisco de Miranda*, ch. vii (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I, 309). — NAVAL: G. W. Allen, *Naval War with France;* D. D. Porter, *Commodore David Porter*, chs. ii, iii; E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy*, I, 155–213; J. R. Spears, *Our Navy*, I, ch. xii; G. R. Clark, *United States Navy*, ch. iii.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, VII–X; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *American State Papers, Foreign*, II, *Military*, I, *Naval*, I, *Commerce*, I; *Annals of Congress*, IX, X, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 213–224, 228–258, 264, 266–286, 288, 306; *Correspondence of the French Ministers* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1903, II), 968–1098. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: Ames and McMaster, *X. Y. Z. Letters;* National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 50–57, 282; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xviii; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 16; *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 4, 103; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, V, 593–613.

CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Adams, *Works* VIII, 520–691, IX, 3–311; J. Marshall, *George Washington*, V, ch. ix; G. Washington, *Works* (Sparks ed.), XI, XII, (Ford ed.), XIII, XIV; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), VI; B. C. Steiner, *James McHenry*, chs. xii–xiv; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 106–169, (Hunt ed.), VI, 296–330 *n.*; J. Monroe, *Writings*, III, 98–168, 249–253; Lewis Goldsmith, *Exposition of the Conduct of France toward America;* C. R. King, *Rufus King*, II, chs. xii–xxxiv, III, chs. i–xxviii, Apps. ii, iii; *Letters of Stephen Higginson* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1896, I, 797–835); T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV, (Ford ed.), I, 272–288 (Anas), VII, 89–376; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, chs. ix–xi; W. C. Ford, *Some Letters of Elbridge Gerry*, 9–20.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 332–337, 417, 418, 475, 518, 519; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 440–442; G. W. Allen, *Naval War with France*, 283–290; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 306; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 179, 180; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 34 (lect. 18), 74 (lects. 32, 33).

§ 184. Alien and Sedition Acts, and Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 1798–1800

Summary. — The states previous to 1798 (§§ 159, 172, 180). — The statutes: 1798, June 18, naturalization act; June 25, alien act; June 27, bank fraud act; July 6, alien enemies act; July 14, sedition act. — Principles involved: status of aliens; status of the bank; freedom of speech and the press; common-law jurisdiction; federal criminal law; truth a defense; personal liberty; the president's powers; rightful powers of the states. — State resolutions: 1798, Nov. 19, first Kentucky resolutions; 1798, Dec. 21, Virginia resolutions; 1799, Nov. 22, second Kentucky resolutions; 1799, replies of other states; 1800, Madison's report. — Principles involved: powers of Congress; implied powers; supremacy of the Constitution; arbiter in disputes; "interposition"; "nullification"; ultimate use of force. — Cases under the acts: no aliens expelled; 1798–1800, Cooper, Callender, Lyon, and other sedition cases. — 1800–1801, Expiration of the acts. — Subsequent controversies (§§ 192, 195, 206, 232, 241, 242).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 389–403, 417–427, 464–474, 495; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 404–438; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, chs. xvii, xviii; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. x; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 222–229, 236–250; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. xiii; H. J. Ford, *American Politics*, ch. viii; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 66–78; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, ch. xii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, ch. xv; H. Adams, *John Randolph*, ch. ii; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 185–192; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 451–454.

Special. — NARRATIVES: H. von Holst, *History*, I, ch. iv; E. D. Warfield, *Kentucky Resolutions;* F. M. Anderson, *Contemporary Opinion of Resolutions* (*Am. Hist. Review*, V, 45, 225); F. T. Hill, *Decisive Battles of the Law*, ch. i (Callender); J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 158, 1288, 1289, 1885, 1886; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, ch. x, App. A; R. R. Howison, *Virginia*, II, ch. vi; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession*, ch. iv. — BIOGRAPHIES: J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, VII, chs. cxlvii, cxlviii; H. Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 189–228; G. J. McRee, *James Iredell*, II, 551–571; J. F. McLaughlin, *Matthew Lyon*, chs. v, vi; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. ii, iii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. ix, x; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. xxvi, xxvii.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, VIII, IX; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, IX, App. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: *American History Leaflets*, No. 15; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 17–23; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 15–26; J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 528–582; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3316–3323. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IX, especially 464, 496, (Ford ed.), VII, 244–389; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 142–156, IV, 506–555, (Hunt ed.), VI, 320–406 (see § 206); A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), VI; A. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 131 (Nicholas); F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 322–344, 659–721.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 319–334; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1288, 1289, 1886; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 34 (lect. 19), 141; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 442, 443; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 309; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 201, 202.

§ 185. Fall of the Federalists, 1799–1801

Summary. — Earlier party relations (§§ 179, 183, 184). — Unpopularity: French war; taxes; 1799, Robbins's case; 1799, Fries's insurrection; 1800, judiciary act; 1801, judicial appointments. — Internal quarrels: 1799, cabinet breaks up; 1800, Hamilton's attack on Adams; Oliver Wolcott. — Election of 1800: Adams and Jefferson candidates; May, New York Republican; Hamilton's intrigues; no electoral choice. — Election of 1801: Burr and Jefferson; deadlock; Feb. 17, Jefferson elected. — Subsequent history of the Federalists (§§ 187, 188, 192, 196).

General. — J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 287–330, (rev. ed.) 283–325, and *Thomas Jefferson*, 193–208, (rev. ed.) 171–185; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, ch. xix; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. xiv; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 254–263; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 158–163; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 489–537; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 456–514; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, ch. xvi; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 160–175, (rev. ed.) 154–169; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. v; F. W. Dallinger, *Nominations for Elective Office*, § 6; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, ch. xxvi.

Special. — NARRATIVES: F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 7–48; Geo. Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, II, chs. vi, vii; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, ch. ix; A. D. Morse, *Party Revolution of 1800* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1894, 531); Max Farrand, *Judi-*

ciary Act (*Am. Hist. Review*, V, 682); J. C. Welling on Connecticut Federalism in *Addresses and Lectures*, ch. ix. — BIOGRAPHIES: C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, ch. x; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, II, ch. vii; J. F. McLaughlin, *Matthew Lyon*, ch. vii; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, ch. iii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. xi, xii; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II, (Ellsworth) chs. xii–xiv, (Marshall) chs. ix, x; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, VII, chs. cxlix–clvii; Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, ch. viii; Wm. Whitelock, *John Jay*, ch. xxii. — MAPS: J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 168, 176, 290.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, IX, X; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers, Foreign*, II, *Finance*, I, *Naval*, I; *Annals of Congress*, X, App.; J. R. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 286, 303; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Adams, *Works*, VIII, IX; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV, (Ford ed.), VII, 376–501; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), V, VII (especially "Public Conduct of John Adams"); J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 157–172, (Hunt ed.), VI, 406–419; J. Monroe, *Writings*, III, 219, 244–261; B. C. Steiner, *James McHenry*, chs. xv, xvi; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, chs. v–viii; M. L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, II, chs. iv, v; DeWitt Clinton, *Vindication of Thomas Jefferson*; J. Jay, *Correspondence*, IV; F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 392–648; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, 115–361; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 102–105; Wm. Linn, *Serious Considerations;* R. H. and J. A. Bayard, *Documents relating to the Presidential Election of 1801*.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 335–337; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 443, 444; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 34 (lect. 20).

CHAPTER XXIII

FOREIGN COMPLICATIONS, 1801–1815

§ 186. Thomas Jefferson and his Party, 1801–1805

Summary. — Jefferson's history: early life; 1775–1776, in the Continental Congress (§ 153); 1776–1779, reformer in Virginia; 1779–1781, governor of Virginia; 1783–1784, in Congress (§ 167); 1784–1790, as a diplomat (§ 171); 1790–1793, secretary of state (§§ 176–182); 1797–1801, vice-president. — Personality: education; intellectual interests; reserve; confidence in human nature. — Jefferson's principles: "Republican simplicity"; reduction of expenses; reduction of the debt; opposition to coercion; faith in popular government; reduction of national functions; conciliation of the Federalists. — Civil service: cabinet; Gallatin; "midnight appointments" disavowed; removals; Goodrich-Bishop episode; principle of equalization. — Contest with the judges: 1802, March 8, judiciary act repealed; 1803, case of Marbury *v.* Madison; 1804, Judge Pickering impeached; 1805, impeachment of Judge Chase fails; Jefferson's judicial appointments. — Foreign policy: question of withdrawing ministers; 1802, Aug. 11, Spanish convention; 1801–1805, Tripolitan war; gunboat system. — Broad spirit: Jefferson on internal improvements; education and colonization; effect of a surplus. — Federalist opposition: on Louisiana (§ 187); 1804, reëlection of Jefferson; intrigue for separation. — Subsequent public career (§§ 187–190).

General. — J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 25–37, 57–68, and *Thomas Jefferson*, chs. xiii, xv; H. von Holst, *History*, I, ch. v; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 583–620, III, 146–215, and *With the Fathers*, 71–86; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, chs. i–iii, ix; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 263–283, and *Men who Made the Nation*, 218–241; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 163–180, 185; *Encyclopædia Britannica*

(11th ed.), VIII, 2; H. J. Ford, *American Politics*, chs. x, xi; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, chs. xvi, xvii, xx; H. Adams, *John Randolph*, chs. iii, v–vii; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, chs. xvi–xviii; J. Schouler, *History*, II, ch. v; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 176–200, 289–299, (rev. ed.) 170–193, 279–289; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, chs. xii, xiii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxviii; W. E. Dodd, *Nathaniel Macon*, chs. xii, xiii.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, I, chs. i–xii, II, chs. vii, ix–xviii, III, chs. i–ix, and *Albert Gallatin*, book iii. — Jefferson and his Friends: H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, chs. xxvii–xxxi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. xii, xiii, III, chs. i–iii; Cornélis De Witt, *Jefferson and the American Democracy;* G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. iv, v; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, chs. ix, x; Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, ch. ii; Wm. Plumer, Jr., *William Plumer*, chs. vii, viii; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, ch. v. — Political Organization: J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, VII, chs. clviii–clxvii; E. P. Powell, *Nullification and Secession*, ch. iii; H. C. Hockett, *Federalism and the West* (*Turner Essays*, 113); D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 54–57; H. C. Adams, *Taxation;* J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 205–220; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. vi; C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theories*, ch. iv; M. Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, ch. vi; C. A. O'Neil, *American Electoral System*, chs. ix, x. — Civil Service: Gaillard Hunt, *Office-Seeking* (*Am. Hist. Review*, III, 270); J. M. Merriam on removals, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, II, 47–52; Lucy M. Salmon, *Appointing Power of the President* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, I, No. 5), 33–42; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, ch. ii. — Barbary Wars: G. W. Allen, *Navy and Barbary Corsairs;* C. O. Paullin, *John Rodgers*, chs. v–vii; E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy*, I, 214–302; J. R. Spears, *Our Navy*, I, chs. xiii–xv; G. R. Clark, *United States Navy*, chs. iv, v. — Maps: E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 6 (North America, 1800), 38 (Barbary States).

Sources. — Debates: *Annals of Congress*, XI–XV; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II, III. — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, II; *Annals of Congress*, XI–XIV, Apps.; *American State Papers*, *Finance*, II; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 321–332, 342–346, 364, 365, 368, 370–372, 378–382, 386, 391–394, 410, 419–421; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 49–59; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 56–71, 283–288. — Contemporary Writings: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV, VII (inaugural addresses and messages), (Ford ed.), I, 272–314 (Anas), VIII, 1–188; J. Monroe, *Writings*, III, 261–302; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I; H. Adams, *New England Federalism;* H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, 317–350; M. L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, II, chs. v–xvii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, IV,

chs. xxiii, xxvii, xxviii; A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), VI (correspondence), VII ("Examination of Jefferson's Message"); *Letters of Nathaniel Macon* (*James Sprunt Hist. Monographs*, No. 3); *Macon Correspondence* (*John P. Branch Hist. Papers*, III), 33–39; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 106–108, 110; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 104; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, II, 76–370, IV, 261–373. — Personal and Reminiscence: S. N. Randolph, *Domestic Life of Thomas Jefferson;* T. Dwight, *Character of Thomas Jefferson;* S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections*, I, letters, 9, 10, 17, 19; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, 115–361; Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters*, II, chs. xli–xlv; Gaillard Hunt, *Forty Years of Washington Society*, 5–57, 65–81, 383–412. — Travels: John Bradbury, *Travels;* John Davis, *Travels;* Isaac Weld, *Travels;* T. Dwight, *Travels;* Rich. Parkinson, *Tour of America.* For other travels, see § 38. — Statistical: Adam Seybert, *Statistical Annals;* Timothy Pitkin, *Statistical View.*

Bibliography. — H. B. Tompkins, *Bibliotheca Jeffersoniana;* E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 447, 448, 451; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, ch. xxi; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 300–307, 337, 338, 418; G. W. Allen, *Navy and Barbary Corsairs*, 305–311; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 36 (lects. 21, 24), 74 (lect. 37), 142; R. H. Johnston, *Bibliography of Thomas Jefferson* (in Lipscomb's ed. of Jefferson's *Writings*, XX).

§ 187. Annexation of Louisiana, West Florida, and Oregon, 1800–1812

Summary. — Previous territorial history (§§ 110, 157, 171, 181): 1512–1541, Spanish claims; 1699, French settlement; 1712, Crozat's grant; 1762, west side to Spain; 1763, east side to England; 1800, Oct., transfer to France. — American negotiations: 1802, Oct., "deposit" withdrawn; 1803, Monroe sent out; Napoleon's offer of the whole. — The treaty: 1803, April 10, treaty dated; Oct. 9, ratified; boundaries; payment; claims; expediency; objection of New England (§ 186). — Constitutional questions: implied powers (§ 178); Federalist partnership theory; Jefferson's amendment. — Boundary questions: West Florida; Texas; northern; western; later adjustments (§ 196). — Organization: 1803, Dec. 20, the territory transferred; 1804, territory of Orleans; 1805, representative territorial government; 1812, state of Louisiana. — West Florida question: French refuse a definition; difficulties with Spain; 1808, revolution; 1810, western part annexed;

1812, remainder annexed; 1814, Mobile occupied. — Oregon question: 1792, discovery of Columbia River (§ 181); 1803–1806, Lewis and Clark's expedition; 1811, Astoria founded; 1812, taken by the British. — Later boundary adjustment (§ 217). — Later exploration and settlement (§§ 215, 216).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 620–633; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 448, 478–498, 506, 536, 546, 568–576, VI, 143–148, 223–228; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), II, 40–59, 81–83, 111–114, 132, 147; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, chs. iv–vii, xi; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, chs. xviii, xix; A. B. Hart, *Foundations of Foreign Policy*, §§ 15, 46, 62–67; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XVII, 62; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 283–295; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 180–187; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. xiv; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 74–93, (rev. ed.) 77–96; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxix; H. Adams, *John Randolph*, ch. iv; F. S. Dellenbaugh, *Breaking the Wilderness*, chs. viii–xi.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, I, chs. xiii–xvii, II, chs. v–vii, ix, III, chs. i, v–vii, V, ch. xv, and *Albert Gallatin*, book iii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, ch. ii; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, ch. vi; Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, ch. ix; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 185; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, 73–127; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4433–4446; E. C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, ch. vi; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1277–1283, 1317–1321; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xxii, and *American Constitutional System*, ch. xi; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, IV, chs. vi, vii; F. A. Ogg, *Opening of the Mississippi*, chs. x–xiv; J. K. Hosmer, *Louisiana Purchase;* W. M. Sloane, *World Aspects of Louisiana Purchase* (*Am. Hist. Review*, IX, 507); C. F. Robertson, *Louisiana Purchase* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, I, 253); W. Monette, *Valley of the Mississippi;* Henry Gannett, *Boundaries* (3d ed.), 19–22; I. J. Cox, *Exploration of Louisiana Frontier* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1904, 151), and *Early Explorations of Louisiana*, and *Louisiana-Texas Frontier* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, X, 1). — Florida Question: H. E. Chambers, *West Florida;* H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, chs. iii–v; F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, 42–116. — Oregon Question: H. H. Bancroft, *Northwest Coast;* F. J. Teggart, *Notes Supplementary to Lewis and Clark* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1908, I, 183); R. G. Thwaites, *Journals of Lewis and Clark*, I, Introd.; histories of Arkansas, Louisiana, Missouri, Oregon, Washington (see § 37). — Maps: E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 70, 94, 142; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 348; W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 198.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XII, XIII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II, III. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *American State Papers, Foreign*, II, *Public Lands*, I; *Annals of Congress*, XII, App.; J. R. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 346–351, 357–360, 367–372, 384, 389, 398, 408, 480, 484, 488; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements;* Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 24; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, I, § 101, V, pp. 613–615; Thos. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, 89–105. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV, VIII (inaugural addresses and messages), (Ford ed.), VIII, 144, 172, 188–319; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 177–220 *passim*, 447, 488, (Hunt ed.), VI, 448–464, VII, 1–156; J. Monroe, *Writings*, IV, 2–52, 499–509; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I *passim; Documentary History of the Constitution*, V, 260–288; F. de Barbé-Marbois, *Louisiane*, and *Louisiana Cession;* J. A. Robertson, *Louisiana;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 111–115, 123; *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 105, 128. — EXPLORATION: Elliott Coues, *Expedition of Lewis and Clark*, and *Expeditions of Zebulon Montgomery Pike;* R. G. Thwaites, *Journals of Lewis and Clark; Papers of Zebulon M. Pike* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XIII, 798); *Documents relating to the Purchase and Exploration of Louisiana.*

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 546-562; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 279–282; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 448–451; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 262–264, (rev. ed.) 270–272; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 36 (lect. 22), 74 (lects. 34–36), 76 (lect. 43), 153, 178, 218, 219; J. A. Robertson, *Louisiana*, I, 19–26.

§ 188. The Burr Conspiracy, 1803–1807

Summary. — Burr: previous history (§ 179); 1801, vice-president (§ 185); 1804, read out of the party; candidate in New York; murder of Hamilton. — Plans: 1805, trip to the west; intrigues in Washington. — The expedition: 1806, Dec., descent of the Ohio; in Kentucky; connection with Jackson and Clay; Wilkinson at New Orleans; Pike's expedition (§ 187); Jefferson's proclamation; 1807, Jan., Burr captured. — Treason trial: 1806, Dec., arrest of Bollman and Swartwout; *habeas corpus* denied; 1807, Jan., Jefferson asks suspension of *habeas corpus;* 1807, Feb., Bollman and Swartwout released; Oct., Burr's trial; definition of legal proof of treason; Jefferson's part in the trial; Burr released; Burr's later life. — Effect on the Federalists (§ 192).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, ch. xv; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 517–529, 594–627, 668–674; J. Schouler, *History*, II (rev. ed.), 67–74, 133–139; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, ch. xii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. xvi; A. B. Magruder, *John Marshall*, ch. xi; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, ch. i; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, I, ch. iv; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 237–271, (rev. ed.) 234–268.

Special. — Narratives: W. F. McCaleb, *Aaron Burr Conspiracy;* H. Adams, *United States*, II, chs. viii–xvii, III, chs. x–xiv, xix; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, ch. xii; F. T. Hill, *Decisive Battles of the Law*, ch. ii. — Biographies: H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, chs. iv, v; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. ix, x; J. C. Hamilton, *Alexander Hamilton*, VII, chs. clxvii, clxviii; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, ch. xvii; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II, (Marshall) ch. xi; W. H. Safford, *Harman Blennerhassett;* J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, I, chs. xxviii–xxx, and *Aaron Burr*, chs. xviii–xxvi. — Maps: E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 160.

Sources. — Official Documents: *American State Papers, Miscellaneous*, I; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 404–407, 412–418, 429, 435–437; *Annals of Congress*, XVI, XVII, Apps.; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 33–111. — Collections of Documents: W. H. Safford, *Blennerhassett Papers;* Wm. Wirt, *Two Principal Arguments in the Trial of A. Burr;* T. Carpenter, *Trial of Aaron Burr;* Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 25; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, IV, 384–441. — Contemporary Writings: M. L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, II, chs. xviii, xix; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV, V, (Ford ed.), I, 318–321, VIII, 481–504, IX, 1–67, 141–144; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 393–401; Wm. Coleman, *Facts and Documents relative to the Death of General Hamilton;* A. Hamilton, *Works* (Hamilton ed.), VI, VII, 851–853; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, IV, ch. xxv; Jas. Wilkinson, *Memoirs*, II, chs. viii, ix.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 220, 338–340; W. F. McCaleb, *Aaron Burr Conspiracy*, Preface; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 282; H. B. Tompkins, *Burr Bibliography*.

§ 189. Neutral Trade, 1789–1807

Summary. — Previous difficulties (§§ 181, 183). — Four limitations on neutral trade, viz., "blockade," "contraband," "free ships and free goods"; "rule of 1756." — Early difficulties: 1793, English and French aggression (§ 181); 1794, Jay treaty (§ 181); 1800–1802, King's negotiations; 1800, 1803, treaties with France (§§ 183, 187); value of the neutral trade; impressments. — Com-

plaints against the United States: harboring deserters; false papers; continuous voyages; coasting. — Aggressions renewed; 1803, war between England and France; partisan decisions of English admiralty courts; 1807, Jay treaty expires. — British Orders in Council and French Decrees: Napoleon's "continental system"; 1805, Trafalgar; 1806, May 16, British blockade order; Nov. 21, Berlin Decree; 1807, Jan., March, both sides prohibit coasting trade; Nov. 11, general blockade order; Dec. 17, Milan Decree. — Jefferson's policy: 1803–1807, "gunboat system" (§ 186); 1806, April 18, conditional non-importation act; 1806, Monroe-Pinkney treaty with England; 1807, treaty withheld; 1807, June, Leopard-Chesapeake affair; negotiations for West Florida (§ 187). — Damage done to the United States: number of impressments; English captures; French captures. — Subsequent difficulties (§ 190).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, 215–278; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, chs. xiii-xv; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, ch. xxi; F. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 101–107; Clive Day, *Commerce*, ch. xlvii; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 546–548, 562–594, 645–665, 674–686; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), II, 108–176; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. vii.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, III, chs. xv–xviii, IV, chs. i–vi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, chs. iv, v; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. viii–x; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, ch. iii; Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, I, ch. x; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4447–4451; Montagu Burrows, *Foreign Policy of Great Britain*, chs. ix–xi; A. T. Mahan, *Sea Power and War of 1812*, I, 99–182, and *Sea Power and French Revolution*, II, chs. xvii, xviii; E. B. Elliott, *Doctrine of Continuous Voyages*, and L. H. Woolsey, *Early Cases on Doctrine* (*Am. Journal of Internat. Law*, I, 61, IV, 823); G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, 239–260.

Sources. — Debates: *Annals of Congress*, XIV–XVI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, II, III. — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers*, *Foreign*, II, III, especially 147–151, 262–294 (orders and decrees), *Commerce*, I; *Annals of Congress*, XV, XVI, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 361, 383–385, 388–390, 395, 402–404, 422–430; *Embargo Laws* (1809). — Collections of Documents: Tench Coxe, *Examination of the Conduct of Great Britain;* Theo. Dwight, *Hartford Convention*, 44–86; Mathew Carey, *Olive Branch;* J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 317, 318, 828, 1179, 1180, 1195–1200, 1270,

1336. — Contemporary Writings: T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), IV (see index), (Ford ed.), I, 307–339 (Anas), VIII, 319–504, IX, 1–167; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 189–410, (Hunt ed.), VI, 423–448, VII, 79–469; J. Monroe, *Writings*, IV, 52–495, V, 1–22; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, III, chs. xxix–xxxv, IV, chs. i–x, xiv, xvii, xxix, xxxi; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, 117–247; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I; Jas. Stephen, *War in Disguise;* Basil Hall, *Voyages and Travels*, ch. xi; G. L. Rives, *Correspondence of Thomas Barclay*, chs. iv, v; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 116–120.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 457, 519, 520; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 283–285; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 791–796; E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 451, 452; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 152–167; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 35, 36 (lect. 23), 74 (lect. 38), 177, 179; J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, 235; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 264–267, (rev. ed.) 272–275.

§ 190. The Embargo and Non-Intercourse, 1807–1811

Summary. — Previous difficulties (§§ 181, 183, 189). — Embargo act: 1807, Dec., Jefferson's recommendation; Dec. 22, act passed; 1808, supplementary acts; question of constitutionality; 1808, presidential election. — Enforcement: evasions by New England shipowners; overland trade; collisions with troops; treason trials; 1809, Jan., Giles's enforcement acts. — Repeal of the embargo: ruinous effects; 1809, Henry's mission; question of New England loyalty; 1809, Feb. 3, repeal act. — Non-intercourse: 1809, Feb. 26, first act; March 4, Madison becomes president; April 19, Erskine agreement (disavowed by England); June 10, intercourse with England renewed (soon withdrawn); 1810, March 23, French decree of Rambouillet, Aug. 5, of Trianon, and 1811, April 28, of St. Cloud; May 1, "Macon Bill No. 2"; unsuccessful missions of Jackson and Rose; 1811, March 2, non-intercourse renewed. — Pinkney mission to England: question whether the French decrees were withdrawn; 1811, Feb., Pinkney demands passports; July, Foster's mission to Washington.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, chs. xix, xx; H. von Holst, *History*, I, 200–224; E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, chs. xvi–xx; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, chs. i–iii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 301–312, and *Men who Made the Nation*, 243–254; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 187–210; R. Hildreth, *History*, chs.

xx–xxiii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, chs. xvii, xviii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 37–57; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), II, 176–353; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, ch. iv.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, IV, chs. vii–xx, V, chs. i–xix, and *Albert Gallatin*, 355–443; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 516, 1064, 1075, 1289–1292; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4451–4456; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. vi–ix; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. x–xiii; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxx; W. E. Dodd, *Nathaniel Macon*, chs. xiv, xv; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, chs. vi–viii; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, chs. xxxiii, xxxiv; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, chs. iv, v; A. T. Mahan, *Sea Power and War of 1812*, I, 182–259; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. vii; C. O. Paullin, *John Rodgers*, ch. ix.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XVII–XXII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, III, IV. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers*, *Foreign*, III (especially 296, 297, 302, 364, 384, 392, 432), *Commerce*, I; *Annals of Congress*, XVIII–XXII, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 433, 444–447, 450–456, 459, 466–476, 481–487, 491–496. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 27, 28; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 26–44; M. Carey, *Olive Branch*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Wm. Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, letters li-lix; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), V, VIII (inaugural addresses and messages), (Ford ed.), IX, 167–327; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I, 491–535; G. L. Rives, *Correspondence of Thomas Barclay*, ch. vi; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I, II, 198 (Trianon decree); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, V, chs. iii–xiii, App. i; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 410–523, (Hunt ed.), VIII, 1–172; J. Monroe, *Writings*, V, 22–201, 353–364; *Secret Reports of John Howe* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVII, 70, 332); W. W. Story, *Joseph Story*, I, ch. vi; *Letters of John Taylor* (*John P. Branch. Hist. Papers*, II, 290–339); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 121, 122.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 340–342, 520–522; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 26–43 *passim;* Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 176, 177; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 36 (lect. 23), 74 (lect. 39); see bibliography of § 189.

§ 191. The War of 1812, 1812–1815

Summary. — Causes: neutral trade (§ 189); impressments (§ 189); supposed intrigues with Indians; 1811, Indian war; party advantage; hope of conquest of Canada; "young republicans"; Henry Clay. — 1812, June 23, British "Orders" withdrawn;

war continues on impressments. — Strength of parties: population; military strength; naval strength; unity (§ 192); finances; theater of war. — Land war: 1812, Aug. 16, Detroit taken; Aug.–Nov., fiasco at Niagara; Dec., Astoria, Oregon, taken; 1813, Sept. 10, success on Lake Erie; Oct. 5, Thames River; invasion of Canada fails; 1814, July, Brown at Niagara; Sept. 11, Plattsburg; Aug. 24, Washington burned; July–Sept., Eastern Maine taken; 1815, Jan. 8, New Orleans. — War at sea: 1812, capture of Guerrière, Macedonian, Java; 1813, capture of Peacock, Argus, Boxer; Chesapeake taken; Essex in the Pacific; blockade; prowess of the privateers. — Peace: 1812, Russian mediation; 1813, commissioners sent; 1814, meeting at Ghent; conquered territory; navigation of the Mississippi and St. Lawrence; Indians; impressment question not pressed; Dec. 24, treaty signed. — Later diplomacy (§§ 194, 198, 199, 212, 217, 224).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, chs. xxi, xxiii, IV, chs. xxiv–xxvii, xxix; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, chs. v, vi; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, ch. iii; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, chs. iv–viii, x, xi; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, ch. x; Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, ch. viii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 315–335; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 210–229; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, chs. xxiv–xxix; J. Schouler, *History*, II, ch. viii, § ii, ch. ix; Wm. Kingsford, *Canada*, VIII; F. B. Tracy, *Canada*, II, chs. xxxix–xli, III, 773–778; Geo. Bryce, *Canadian People*, ch. viii, § v; C. P. Lucas, *Canadian War; Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), I, 847; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, chs. xix, xx; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 212–224, 238–245, 260–274, 312–337, (rev. ed.) 205–218, 230–237, 252–264, 301–325; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 68–101, (rev. ed.) 68–100; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, ch. iii; W. E. Dodd, *Nathaniel Macon*, ch. xvi; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, I, II; D. B. Read, *Sir Isaac Brock*.

Special. — Detailed Accounts: H. Adams, *United States*, VI, chs. vi–xvii, VII, VIII, IX, chs. i–iii, and *Albert Gallatin*, 443–555; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, chs. xxxi, xxxii, xxxiv; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. vi; J. Q. Adams, *James Madison;* J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, I, chs. vi–xiii; John Armstrong, *War of 1812*. — Military History: B. J Lossing, *Empire State*, chs. xxvii–xxxi, and *Pictorial Field Book of the War of 1812;* P. M. Davis, *Authentic History of the Late War;* C. J. Ingersoll, *Second War;* Wm. James, *Full and Correct Account of the Military Occurrences*. — Naval History: A. T. Mahan, *Sea Power and War*

of 1812; T. Roosevelt, *Naval War of 1812;* E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy* (2d ed.), I, 305–658, and *American Privateers*, pt. ii; J. R. Spears, *Our Navy*, II, III, chs. i–xiv; G. R. Clark, *United States Navy*, chs. vi–xii; F. S. Hill, *Historic Ships;* Geo. Coggeshall, *American Privateers;* Wm. James, *Naval History of Great Britain*, VI, and *Full and Correct Account of the Naval Occurrences*; C. O. Paullin, *John Rodgers*, chs. x, xi; Gomer Williams, *Liverpool Privateers*, ch. vi; I. N. Hollis, *Frigate Constitution.* — FINANCES: D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 59–64; F. C. Howe, *Internal Revenue System*, ch. ii; H. C. Adams, *Public Debts*, pt. ii, ch. i, and *Taxation;* J. W. Kearny, *American Finances*, ch. iii. — PEACE: Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, II, chs. i, ii; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, ch. xi; Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. iii, iv; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, ch. v; J. C. Hildt, *United States and Russia*, chs. iii, iv. — MAPS: K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 6, 88, 136, 276; H. Adams, *United States*, VI–VIII *passim;* W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 200.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXIII–XXVIII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, IV, V. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II, III; *American State Papers, Foreign*, III, *Finance*, II, *Commerce*, I, *Military*, I, *Naval*, I; *Annals of Congress*, XXIV–XXVIII, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 499–505, 512–554, 558–561; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*, I, 612; John Brannan, *Official Letters during the War.* — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 62–80; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 71–95, 491; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 29–31; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 319–320, 829, 1167, 1217, 1219; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 124–128; T. H. Palmer, *Historical Register; Niles' Weekly Register*, I–VIII. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, II, III (on the Peace); A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), VI, (Ford ed.), IX, 337–513; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), II, 523, 612, III, 373–426, (Hunt ed.), VIII, 173–334; J. Monroe, *Writings*, V, 205–328, 364–377, VII, 96–112; D. B. Tompkins, *Public Papers, Military;* G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 234–400; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, ch. iv, IV, ch. i; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, I; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 205 (Clay); E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, II; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, V, 1–7; M. Carey, *Olive Branch;* Gaillard Hunt, *Forty Years of Washington Society*, 89–126; *Macon Correspondence* (*John P. Branch Hist. Papers*, III, 49–65).

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 420–437, 457–459, 485, 486, 521–524; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 309–332; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 797–799; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*,

§ 53; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 167–172; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 106, and *Manual*, §§ 36 (lect. 25), 74 (lects. 40, 41).

§ 192. Opposition to the War, 1811–1815

Summary. — Party opposition (§§ 179, 185, 190): John Randolph (§ 187); Federalists; New England; peace Republicans; election of 1812; DeWitt Clinton bolts. — Militia question: 1812, detachment refused; service out of the United States forbidden; dispute as to who decides the exigency. — Trade: New England trade favored; West India trade cut off; blockade; overland trade from North to South; dealings with the enemy. — Hartford convention: 1814, Oct., called by Massachusetts; delegates; Dec. 15, assembles; 1815, Jan. 5, "Report" of the convention; demand to retain federal taxes. — Collapse on news of the peace (§ 191).

General. — H. von Holst, *History*, I, 235–272; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, 467–477, 544–554; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. ix; J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, ch. xxviii; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 45–64, (rev. ed.) 44–62; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), II, 461–476; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 308–317; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. viii.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, VI, chs. vii, xviii–xx, VII, chs. viii–xi; Gaillard Hunt, *James Madison*, ch. xxxiii; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, ch. xviii; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, chs. xxxv–xxxvii; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, chs. ix–xiv; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, ch. vi; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, chs. x–xiii; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, chs. iv–vi; J. S. Barry, *Massachusetts*, III, ch. ix; G. H. Hollister, *Connecticut*, II, ch. xxi. For other histories of New England states, see § 37.

Sources. — Official Documents: *Annals of Congress*, XXIV, XXV, XXVIII, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 516, II, 226–230. — Collections of Documents: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 54–88; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 32; *Niles' Weekly Register*, II–VIII; Theo. Dwight, *Hartford Convention*; H. Adams, *Documents relating to New England Federalism;* M. Carey, *Olive Branch; American History Leaflets*, No. 35. — Contemporary Writings: J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, 273–333; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, V, chs. xiv–xxv, Apps. ii–iv; B. C. Steiner, *James McHenry*, ch. xix; Wm. Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, letters lx–lxx; S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections*, I, letters

xxvii–xxx, II, letter xxxi; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 164 (Randolph), 180 (Quincy).

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 320–322, 343, 522; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 54–86 *passim;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 36 (lect. 26).

§ 193. Settlement of the West, 1789–1820

Summary. — Frontier in 1790 (§ 168). — Influence of Indian wars and foreign relations (§ 181); 1795, Greenville treaty; 1796, Cleaveland and Western Reserve; Virginia Military Tract. — Yazoo lands. — Indian cessions under Jefferson; Louisiana Purchase (§ 187); Missouri settlements; Burr conspiracy (§ 188). — Western settlements and frontier in 1810. — Influence of steam navigation and extinction of Indian title after War of 1812. — Western settlements and frontier in 1820. — Stages of pioneer society; pioneer ideals. — Pioneer agriculture; rise of a trans-Alleghany agricultural surplus; effects: Ohio and Mississippi river trade; demand for internal improvements (§§ 194, 199); home-market tariff argument. — Influence of Ohio Valley settlements. — Public lands (§§ 194, 208). — Admission of states: 1791, March 4, Vermont; 1792, June 1, Kentucky; 1796, June 1, Tennessee; 1803, Ohio; 1812, April 30, Louisiana (§ 187); 1816, Dec. 11, Indiana; 1817, Dec. 10, Mississippi; 1818, Dec. 3, Illinois; 1819, Dec. 14, Alabama (22d). — Territories formed: 1789, Aug. 7, Northwest confirmed; 1790, May 26, South of the Ohio; 1798, April 7, Mississippi; 1800, May 7, Indiana; 1804, May 26, Orleans (§ 187); 1805, Jan. 11, Michigan; March 3, Louisiana; 1809, Feb. 3, Illinois; 1812, June 4, Missouri; 1817, March 3, Alabama; 1819, March 2, Arkansas (§ 197). — Later frontier history and settlements (§§ 215, 216). — Later states and territories (§ 203).

General. — J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), I, 108–113, 163, 164, 240–246, 330, 471, II, 48, 84, 85, 221, 270–280, 506, 507; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 33–35, 144–158, 479–482, 572–582, III, 116–142, 459–486, IV, 381–403; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. xv; F. J. Turner, *New West*, chs. v–vii; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, IV, chs. iii, v (Sagamore ed., VI, chs. i, iii), and *Thomas H. Benton*, chs. i, ii; J. Winsor, *Westward Movement*, chs. xviii, xxii; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, 295–328, 368–392; Lois K. Mathews, *Expansion of New Eng-*

land, 178–224; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, 313–320, 597–610, 617–641, 666–673; A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, chs. xiii, xiv; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 157–168; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, chs. i, iv; D. G. McCarty, *Territorial Governors of the Old Northwest*, chs. iv–ix; K. W. Colgrove, *Congress and Pioneers of the West* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, VIII, 3).

Special. — Geography (§ 162): Jed. Morse, *Universal Geography* (ed. 1802), 566–579, 719–727; J. M. Peck, *New Guide to the West;* Jas. Hall, *Statistics of the West;* Tim. Flint, *Geography and History of the Western States;* Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, ch. ix; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, ch. v; J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions*, 82–84; G. D. Hubbard, *Case of Geographic Influence* (Am. Geog. Soc., *Bulletin*, XXXVI, 145); H. H. Barrows, *Geography of the Middle Illinois Valley*.

Special Regions: R. E. Chaddock, *Ohio before 1850;* F. P. Goodwin, *Growth of Ohio*, and *Development of the Miami Country* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Pubs.*, XVIII, 484); Harvey Rice, *Pioneers of Western Reserve;* Alfred Mathews, *Ohio and her Western Reserve;* Henry Howe, *Historical Collections of Ohio;* D. M. Massie, *Nathaniel Massie* (Va. Milit. Tract); W. H. Smith, *Indiana*, I, chs. vi, viii–xi; J. S. Stickney, *Pioneer Indianapolis;* J. B. Dillon, *Indiana;* H. J. Webster, *Harrison's Administration of Indiana Territory;* A. C. Boggess, *Settlement of Illinois;* Thos. Ford, *Illinois*, ch. i; N. W. Edwards, *Illinois;* John Reynolds, *Pioneer History of Illinois*, chs. vi–ix; T. M. Cooley, *Michigan*, chs. viii, x; R. G. Thwaites, *Wisconsin*, ch. viii; Jonas Viles, *Missouri before 1804* (*Mo. Hist. Review*, V, 189); E. M. Violette, *Early Settlements in Missouri* (*ibid.*, I, 38); Louis Houck, *Missouri;* J. W. Caldwell, *Constitutional History of Tennessee*, ch. iv; A. J. Pickett, *Alabama*, II, chs. xxvii, xxviii, xli–xliii; W. G. Brown, *Alabama*, chs. x–xvi; Jos. Hodgson, *Cradle of the Confederacy*, ch. i; J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi*. For other state histories and historical society publications, see §§ 37, 45.

Land and Transportation: P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, chs. iv–xiv; T. Donaldson, *Public Domain;* S. Sato, *Land Question*, 141–150; C. F. Emerick, *Credit System and Public Domain* (Vanderbilt Hist. Soc., *Pubs.*, No. 3); C. H. Haskins, *Yazoo Land Companies* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, V, 393); Margaret C. Klingelsmith, *James Wilson and Yazoo Frauds* (*U. of Pa. Law Review*, LVI, 1); U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), 29–38; W. F. Gephart, *Transportation and Industrial Development*, chs. ii–vi, viii; J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi*, 537–545; J. W. Monette, *Progress of Navigation* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, VII, 479); J. P. Bretz, *Postal Extension into the West* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1909, 143); A. B. Hulbert,

Historic Highways, VIII–XII; R. G. Thwaites, *How Clark won the Northwest*, No. 2.

Governments and Indians: H. Gannett, *Boundaries* (3d ed.); Max Farrand, *Legislation for Organized Territories*, 14–37; G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, chs. iv, x; F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutional History of the American People*, I, chs. viii, ix; Annie H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1906, I, 235), chs. i–iv.

Pioneer Farming: C. L. Flint, *Hundred Years' Progress* (Commissioner of Agriculture, *Report*, 1872); Isaac Lippincott, *Pioneer Industry* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, XVIII, 269); *American Pioneer*, II, 442; Tim. Pitkin, *Statistical View*, ch. iv; Wm. Kingdom, Jr., *America and the British Colonies*, 1–83; G. M. Tucker, *American Agricultural Periodicals*.

Pioneer Life and Ideals: F. J. Turner, *Pioneer Ideals* (Indiana Univ., *Bulletin*, VIII, 6); H. Adams, *United States*, I, 52–59, 156–184; Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, 1–18; F. M. Davenport, *Primitive Traits in Religious Revivals;* Ed. Eggleston, *Circuit Rider* (fiction); Meredith Nicholson, *The Hoosiers;* W. Speer, *Great Revival of 1800;* W. P. Strickland, *Francis Asbury;* Robt. Davidson, *Presbyterian Church in Kentucky;* J. E. Cutler, *Lynch Law*, 76–89; A. B. Hart, *Southern South*, ch. iii; W. G. Frost, *Our Contemporary Ancestors* (*Atlantic*, LXXXIII, 311); S. T. Wilson, *Southern Mountaineer;* Ida M. Tarbell, *Abraham Lincoln*, chs. i–v.

Maps: E. M. Avery, *History*, VII, 264 (U. S. before La. Purchase); J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 58 (frontier); E. Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, 258 (Indian cessions); F. J. Turner, *New West*, 310 (Indian cessions); W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 202, 203 (states and territories); *Twelfth Census*, *Statistical Atlas*, plates 2–5 (settlement); L. K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, 174, 178, 182, 206 (settlements); Bureau of Ethnology, *18th Annual Report* (Indian cessions).

Sources. — Travels (§ 38): S. S. Forman, *Narrative of a Journey;* Jas. Smith, *Tours into Kentucky* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Pubs.*, XVI, 348); Brissot de Warville, *New Travels*, I, letters xviii, xxvi, xliv; Francis Baily, *Journals of a Tour;* R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, III (Michaux, Harris), IV (Cuming), V (Bradbury), VIII (Buttrick, Evans), IX (Flint), X (Hulme, Flower, Woods), XI, XII (Faux, Welby); T. Dwight, *Travels*.

Reminiscences: H. St. John de Crèvecœur, *American Farmer*, letters ii, xii; *American Husbandry;* David Zeisberger, *Diary;* Thurlow Weed, *Autobiography*, ch. ii; W. C. Howells, *Recollections;* J. M. Peck, *Forty Years of Pioneer Life;* Morris Birkbeck, *Letters from Illinois;* E. B. Washburne, *Edwards Papers;* W. H. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, II; T. M. Owen, *John Owen's Journal of Removal to Alabama* (1818); *Autobiography*

of Gideon Lincecum (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, VIII, 443); Mary J. Welsh, *Recollections of Pioneer Life in Mississippi* (*ibid.*, IV, 343); E. S. Tipple, *Heart of Asbury's Journal;* Peter Cartwright, *Autobiography;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 137, III, ch. xxi; U. B. Phillips in J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, II, 165–299; E. D. Mansfield, *Personal Memories*, chs. i–iii.

Documents: F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters; Organic Acts for the Territories; American State Papers, Public Lands*, I–III, *Indian*, I, II; *Indian Affairs, Laws and Treaties*, II; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, II *passim* (see index under Indian, Lands, Territories, and states and territories by name); T. H. Benton on effect of Jackson's campaigns, in *Congressional Globe*, 25 Cong. 3 sess. App., 52, 53. For references to Congressional debates, see K. W. Colgrove, *Congress and Pioneers* (above).

Bibliography. — J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 172–181; J. S. Bassett, *Federalist System*, 309, 310; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 336, 341–344; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 329 (travel); L. K. Mathews, *Expansion of New England*, 194, 195, 219, 220; A. H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation*, 413–438; J. P. Treat, *National Land System*, 391–394; A. C. Boggess, *Settlement of Illinois*, 213–256.

CHAPTER XXIV

REORGANIZATION, 1815–1829

§ 194. Financial and Commercial Organization, 1816–1820

Summary. — Condition of the country: territory; finances; state banking; roads; shipping; foreign trade; manufactures; parties dissolving; Supreme Court emancipated; the West (§ 193); national spirit. — The United States Bank: 1811, Feb. 20, recharter lost (§ 177); 1814, Dallas's bill; Calhoun's bill; 1815, Jan. 30, Madison's veto; 1816, April 10, bank chartered; 1817, specie payment restored; 1819, commercial crisis; later history (§ 205). — The tariff: early bills (§§ 171, 177); 1812, July 1, tariff rates doubled; manufactures spring up; 1815, deluge of British goods; Dec. 5, Madison's recommendation; 1816, April 27, protective tariff act; 1818, April 20, iron act; 1820, May 4, tariff bill fails; later history (§ 199). — Internal improvements: 1806, March 29, Cumberland Road authorized; 1811, begun; 1818, open to the Ohio; 1807, Coast Survey; 1807–1812, steam navigation; 1808, Gallatin's report; 1817, March 3, Madison's veto of the Bonus bill; 1817–1818, House claims the constitutional power; 1822, May 4, Monroe's veto; later history (§ 199). — Clay: American system; speakership. — Public lands: credit system of 1800; amount of sales; unpaid installments; relief bills; 1820, April 24, cash system adopted (§ 199); effect on the West (§ 193). — Foreign commerce: 1815, Algerine war; 1816, peace; 1815, July 3, commercial convention with England; 1818, Oct. 20, fishery convention; question of West India trade; retaliatory legislation; later relations (§§ 198, 199, 212, 217, 224).

General. — H. von Holst, *History*, I, ch. x, and *John C. Calhoun*, ch. ii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, chs. xxx, xxxi; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, chs. xii–xiv; F. J. Turner, *New West*, ch. xiii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 295–301, 312–315, 345–357, 365, 401–411; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, ch. xxx; J. Schouler, *History*, II, ch. ix, § ii, III,

ch. x, § i; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, 387–401, 432–471, 487–498; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 164–203; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 120, 121, 131–141, 172; J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy*, 105–119; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 126–146; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. i–xiv; W. E. Dodd, *Nathaniel Macon*, 291–310; T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne*, 106–113; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, 87–105; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, ch. vii.

Special. — H. Adams, *United States*, IX, chs. iv–x; N. M. Butler, *Influence of the War of 1812;* E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 56, 84, 85; M. P. Follett, *Speaker*, §§ 41–46. — FINANCE: D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, ch. vii; J. W. Kearny, *American Finances*, ch. iv; E. M. Roberts, *Government Revenue*. — TARIFF: Ed. Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation* (*Cong. Docs.*, Serial No. 1512), pp. xxxi–xli; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 17–67; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, I, chs. v, vi; J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, 117–298; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, ch. vi. — BANK: Holdsworth and Dewey, *First and Second Banks*, 72–125, 147–247, 267–295, 308–311; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 41–62; R. C. H. Catterall, *Second Bank*, chs. i–iv; Horace White, *Money and Banking*, bk. iii, ch. vii; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currencies*, chs. xvi–xix; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 61–94. — INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS: J. S. Young, *Cumberland Road;* A. B. Hulbert, *Cumberland Road;* P. J. Treat, *National Land System*, 101–161, 169–178, 210–262, 272–285. — FOREIGN RELATIONS: Chas. Isham, *Fishery Question;* J. B. Henderson, Jr., *American Diplomatic Questions*, 451–497; G. W. Allen, *Navy and Barbary Corsairs*, chs. xvi, xvii; J. R. Spears, *Our Navy*, III, ch. xvi; E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy* (2d ed.), II, 3–22. — MAPS: K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 238 (vote on tariff).

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXIX–XXXVI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, V, VI. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, III; *American State Papers*, *Finance*, III, *Commerce*, II, *Naval*, I, *Public Lands*, II, III; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 554, 562–569, 573–580, 583, 584, II, 11–20, 27, 39, 59–61, 98–103, 106–109, 142–186, 190–192, 501–504; *Annals of Congress*, XXIX–XXXVI, Apps. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 52–54, 89–92; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 79–107; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 95–112, 288–312; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 33; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 164, 830–832; Clarke and Hall, *Bank of the United States*, chs. iii–vi; *Niles' Weekly Register*, I–X. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, III; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, ch. xix, IV, ch. ii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, I,

690, II; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), III, 1–56, (Hunt ed.), VIII, 335–407; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, V, ch. xxvii, App. vi; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, I; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 17–56. — Economic Conditions: Adam Seybert, *Statistical Annals;* John Bristed, *Resources of the United States;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 130–132, 234; [W. N. Blane], *Excursion through the United States*; Wm. Cobbett, *Year's Residence in the United States.*

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 278; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 323; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 65; New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, XII, 348–350; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to the Banks;* A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Unions*, § 118, and *Manual*, §§ 37, 38 (lects. 27, 28), 75, 76 (lects. 42, 45), 143, 180, 181.

§ 195. The Great Constitutional Decisions, 1792–1824

Summary. — The Supreme Court: under Washington and Adams (§ 176); under Jefferson (§ 186); federalization of the new judges. — Declaring acts of Congress void: 1780–1788, early state decisions (§ 172); 1792, Hayburn's case; 1794, Yale Todd case; 1803, Marbury *v.* Madison. — Limiting the states: 1793, Chisholm *v.* Georgia (suit against a state); 1794, eleventh amendment forbids such suits; 1809, United States *v.* Judge Peters (inferior authority of states); 1810, Fletcher *v.* Peck (Yazoo land case); 1816, Martin *v.* Hunter's Lessee (state act unconstitutional); 1819, Sturges *v.* Crowninshield and Dartmouth College case (impairment of contracts); 1821, Cohens *v.* Virginia (appeals from state courts sustained); 1827, Brown *v.* Maryland (foreign commerce); 1832, Worcester *v.* Georgia (jurisdiction over Indians: § 208). — Implied powers of Congress asserted (§ 178): 1796, Hylton *v.* United States (carriage tax); 1819, M'Culloch *v.* Maryland (bank); 1820, Houston *v.* Moore (militia); 1821, Anderson *v.* Dunn (judicial authority of Congress); 1824, Gibbons *v.* Ogden (commerce); 1824, Osborn *v.* Bank of the United States (bank); 1827, Martin *v.* Mott (militia). — Later cases (§§ 204, 228, 239, 241–243, 250, 262, 266, 269).

General. — H. W. Rogers, *Constitutional History*, lects. i, ii; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. xviii; A. B. Magruder, *John Marshall*, ch. x; J. B. Thayer, *John Marshall;* J. T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, ch. xviii; Geo. Pellew, *John Jay*, ch. x; H. C. Lodge,

Daniel Webster, ch. iii; M. Van Buren, *Political Parties*, ch. vi; W. W. Willoughby, *Supreme Court;* J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), chs. xiii, xiv; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, ch. vi; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Courts and Unconstitutional Legislation; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 463–466.

Special. — Biographies of Justices: Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, I, (Jay) ch. xiv, (Rutledge) chs. xv, xvi, II, (Ellsworth) ch. xi, (Marshall) ch. xi; Geo. van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 3–520; H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court*, I, chs. xii–xiv, II; G. J. McRee, *James Iredell*, II, chs. xxvi–xxix; J. F. Dillon, *John Marshall;* W. E. Dodd, *Marshall and Virginia* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XII, 776); W. W. Story, *Joseph Story*, I, chs. vii–xv.— Discussions in Treatises: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1033–1044, 1259–1281, 1374–1397, 1685–1688; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, chs. xii, xiv, xxv–xxvii, xxix; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 1–28, 45, 46, 62–64, 278, 303, 304, 332, 488–500, 577–587, 600–621, 760–766, and *American Constitutional System*, 34–54; H. C. Black, *American Constitutional Law*, §§ 30–49, 55, 90, 102–105, 159, 269–284; C. G. Haines, *Conflict over Judicial Powers*, chs. ii–iv; John Taylor, *Construction construed;* Thos. Sergeant, *Constitutional Law*, chs. i–xi; U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), 24–28 (Chisholm *v.* Ga.). — Biographies of Contemporaries: J. P. Kennedy, *William Wirt*, II, chs. v, ix, xv; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, ch. viii; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, ch. xxiv; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, ch. vii.

Sources. — Contemporary Writings: D. Webster, *Works*, V, 462–501, VI; G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 59–146; Randolph-Macon College, *John P. Branch Historical Papers*, I, 325–373, II, 78–183; J. Madison, *Writings* (Hunt ed.), VIII, 447–453, IX, 55–68; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Ford ed.), X, 140–143, 188, 189. — Documents: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 7–15, 45–52, 93; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xix. — Cases: Most of these decisions can also be found in the collections of C. E. Boyd, Emlin McClain, and J. P. Hall, and in Marshall's decisions (edited by J. P. Cotton and by J. M. Dillon). — Hayburn's case (1792): 2 *Dallas*, 409. — Chisholm *v.* Georgia (1793): 2 *Dallas*, 419; 1 *Curtis*, 16. — Yale Todd case (1794), note to 13 *Howard*, 52. — Marbury *v.* Madison (1803): 1 *Cranch*, 137; 1 *Curtis*, 368; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 107–114; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 1–28. — United States *v.* Judge Peters (1809): 5 *Cranch*, 115; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 119–125. — Fletcher *v.* Peck (1810): 6 *Cranch*, 87; 2 *Curtis*, 328; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 114–123; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 126–141. — Martin *v.* Hunter's Lessee (1816): 1 *Wheaton*, 304; 3 *Curtis*, 562; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 123–132; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 525–555. — Sturges *v.* Crowninshield (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 122;

4 *Curtis*, 362; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 147–159. — Dartmouth College *v.* Woodward (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 518; 4 *Curtis*, 463; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 188–210. — M'Culloch *v.* Maryland (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 316; 4 *Curtis*, 415; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 271–285, 1340–1346; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 160–187. — Cohens *v.* Virginia (1821): 6 *Wheaton*, 264; 5 *Curtis*, 82; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 285–292; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 221–261. — Anderson *v.* Dunn (1821): 6 *Wheaton*, 204; 5 *Curtis*, 61; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 603–610. — Gibbons *v.* Ogden (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 1; 6 *Curtis*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1799–1819; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 287–314. — Osborn *v.* Bank (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 738; 6 *Curtis*, 251; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 315–342. — Martin *v.* Mott (1827): 12 *Wheaton*, 19; 7 *Curtis*, 10; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2290–2294; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 611–623.

Bibliography. — A. R. Hasse, *Books on Political Rights* (N. Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 131, 132); H. H. B. Meyer, *List of Works relating to the Supreme Court;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 38 (lect. 29), 138, 144, 217; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 68, 83, 141, 144, 155, 167.

§ 196. Era of Good Feeling in Politics, 1817–1825

Summary. — Previous political conditions (§§ 186, 192, 194). — Monroe's presidency: election of 1816; cabinet; civil service; opposition of Clay; disappearance of Federalists; 1820, unopposed reëlection; 1820, May 15, four years' tenure act. — East Florida question: 1810, 1812, annexation of West Florida (§ 187); 1814, Jackson in Pensacola; 1816, Seminole war; 1818, Jackson in St. Marks and Pensacola; Arbuthnot affair; Rhea letter; Jackson exonerated. — Negotiations with Spain: 1802, unratified convention; West Florida (§ 187); East Florida; Texas. — Treaty with Spain: 1819, Feb. 22, treaty signed; line to the Pacific; Oregon question (§ 217); Floridas ceded; 1821, Feb. 22, ratification; Jackson governor of Florida. — Further relations with Spain (§§ 198, 224, 244, 265).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, chs. xxxii–xxxviii; K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, chs. xv–xviii; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 1–133, 189–270; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. xii; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 358–365; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 234–261; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, ch. vi, App. iii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 102–164, (rev. ed.) 101–163; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, ch. xxxi; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I.

146–171; H. von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, ch. iii; H. Adams, *John Randolph*, ch. xi; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, ch. iii; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, 93–128; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, I, ch. lvii, II, 391–642.

Special. — BIOGRAPHIES: Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. v, vi; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, ch. vi; G. Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, chs. xvi–xxi; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, chs. xxii–xxv; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, I, chs. xiv–xvi. — FOREIGN RELATIONS: Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, I, ch. ix, II, chs. i–viii; F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, 116–147; H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, chs. vi–xi; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 249–264; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, ch. v; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4487–4500, 4519–4524. — EXECUTIVE: C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, 52–70; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. ix, x. — MAPS: K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 272 (treaty with Spain) 276 (Jackson in Fla.); F. J. Turner, *New West*, 6 (U. S., 1821), 70 (settlement).

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXXI–XLII; *Register of Debates*, I; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, VI. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, III, IV; *American State Papers, Foreign*, IV, V, *Military*, I, *Miscellaneous*, II; *Annals of Congress*, XXXII, XXXIV, XXXVI, XXXVII, Apps.; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*, II, 1651–1658; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, I, 505–510, II, 4–10, 13, 23–25, 31–33, 39–43, 54–58, 69–72, 75, 86–94, 103–105, 113. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: *Niles' Weekly Register*, XII–XXVII; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 129; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 34, 42; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 102, 215, 216, 884; H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, Apps. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Monroe, *Writings*, V, 341–352, VI, VII, 1–59, 173, 209–236; Luis de Onis, *Memoir;* J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IV–VI, and *James Monroe;* H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, ch. xii, IV, ch. ii; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), VII; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, V, VI, 349–445, and *Correspondence* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1899, II), 136–201, 251–295, 314, 343; S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections*, II, letter lv; Gaillard Hunt, *Forty Years of Washington Society*, 128–162; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxxi, §§ 143, 144.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 344, 438; H. B. Fuller, *Purchase of Florida*, App. F; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 38 (lects. 34, 36), 78 (lect. 47); J. F. Jameson, App. to D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*.

§ 197. The Missouri Compromise

Summary. — Questions before 1800 (§ 180). — Slavery since 1800: 1803, slavery in Louisiana; 1807, March 2, slave trade pro-

hibited; 1814, clause in treaty of Ghent; 1815, slaves carried away by the British; 1818, movement for new fugitive act; 1819, March 3, act for returning slaves; 1820, May 15, piracy act. — Antislavery: southern and middle state societies; American Convention; propaganda; press; churches; slave insurrections; cotton. — Colonization: 1816, American Society; 1819, government aid; 1820, Liberia; failure. — First Missouri debate: 1805–1818, status of Missouri Territory; 1818, March, Missouri applies for admission; 1819, Feb., Tallmadge amendment; deadlock; March 2, Arkansas territorial act. — Second Missouri debate: 1819, Dec. 30, House Maine bill; 1820, Feb. 1, Senate couples with Missouri; March 1, House votes for free Missouri; March 3, great compromise; cabinet discussion; March 15, enabling act approved. — Third Missouri debate: 1820, state constitution; Dec., House refuses to accept it; 1821, Feb. 10, Clay compromise submitted; March 2, enacted. — Questions raised: character of slavery; sectional predominance; constitutionality of restriction; expediency; danger to the Union; 1836, extension of Missouri boundary; unchallenged operation till 1854 (§ 225).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, ch. xxxix; J. Schouler, *History* (rev. ed.), II, 62–66, 142–147, 259–270, III, 133–189; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 498–506, 627–644, VI, 613–686; F. J. Turner, *New West*, chs. ix, x; H. von Holst, *History*, I, 324–381; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xi; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, 200–221; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 366–382; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, ch. viii; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, ch. v; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, chs. i, ii; W. H. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, ch. ix; W. E. Dodd, *Nathaniel Macon*, 310–330; T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne*, 98–105, 202–210; J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, I, chs. xvii, xix; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, ch. i; B. B. Munford, *Virginia's Attitude toward Slavery*, chs. x, xi, xiii, xiv; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, chs. xvii, xviii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 120–124, (rev. ed.) 119–123; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, ch. iv.

Special. — Alice D. Adams, *Neglected Period of Anti-Slavery;* Mary S. Locke, *Anti-Slavery*, §§ 158–167, 174–176; J. A. Woodburn, *Historical Significance of Missouri Compromise* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1893, 249); F. H. Hodder, *Side Lights on the Missouri Compromise* (*ibid.*, 1909, 151); N. D. Harris, *Negro Servitude in Illinois*, chs. i–v; John Taylor, *Construction Construed*, § 15; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, collo-

quy 15; J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), §§ 1318–1321, 1917; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, chs. xi–xiii; Wm. Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 11–124; J. H. T. McPherson, *Liberia;* state histories of Maine and Missouri (see § 37).

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXXVI, XXXVII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, VI; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, III. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, III; *Annals of Congress*, XXXVI, XXXVII, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 63–65, 95. — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 26, 34–41; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 193–213; *Niles' Weekly Register;* American Convention, *Minutes;* American Colonization Society, *Reports*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, V, VI, XII (see index); H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, chs. x, xiii; T. Jefferson, *Writings* (Washington ed.), VII, (Ford ed.), IX, 151–192; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), III, 121–239, (Hunt ed.), VIII, 425, 439, IX, 1–26; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, VI, ch. xv, App. iv; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 135, 136; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), II, 33 (King), 63 (Pinkney).

Bibliography. — J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), § 1917; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 325; A. D. Adams, *Neglected Period of Anti-Slavery*, App. D; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 344, 345; New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VI, 265–269 (Colonization Soc.); A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 38 (lects. 31, 32).

§ 198. The Monroe Doctrine

Summary. — The Spanish colonies: previous status (§§ 171, 181, 196); 1806, Miranda; 1806, British attack on La Plata; 1809, first revolts; 1814, Bourbons restored; 1817, San Martin crosses the Andes; 1818, second series of revolts; Clay's interest; commercial interest; 1822, American recognition. — "European system": tradition of noninterference in Europe by the United States; 1815, Holy Alliance; 1818, Congress of Aix la Chapelle; 1822, Nov., Congress of Verona. — "Intervention": 1820, Bourbons in Naples; 1821, revolt of Greece; 1823, French in Spain; Spain asks for aid against the colonies; Oct. 16, Russian dispatch on political system; 1823, Spain asks for a congress; Aug., Sept., Canning's proposition for a joint declaration; Oct. 9, pacific declaration of Polignac. — "Colonization": 1790, Nootka Sound convention (§ 171); 1821, Russia's ukase on the Northwest coast and sea; 1823, July 17, J. Q. Adams's protest. — Preparation of a message: Adams and Monroe; cabinet discussion; effect of previous

recognition. — 1823, Dec. 2, Monroe's message: new states; recognition; status; ambition of France; colonization; intervention; political system. — Effects on Europe: intervention abandoned; European recognition; 1824, April 17, American boundary treaty with Russia; 1825, Feb. 28, English boundary treaty with Russia. — Later applications: 1826, Panama Congress (§ 199); 1845, Oregon (§ 217); 1850, the Isthmus (§ 224); 1854, Cuba (§ 224); 1865, Mexico (§§ 238, 244); 1881, Peru (§ 244); 1895, Venezuela (§ 263); 1903, the Canal (§ 267); collection of debts (§ 267).

General. — D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, ch. vii; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 277–293; J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, ch. xli; F. J. Turner, *New West*, ch. xii; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XVIII, 738; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, ch. vii, VIII, ch. v (Spanish colonies); Theo. Lyman, *Diplomacy*, II, chs. ix–xiv; F. L. Paxson, *Independence of South American Republics;* A. C. Coolidge, *United States as a World Power*, ch. v; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 438–451; J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy*, ch. vi; R. H. Dana, *Wheaton's International Law*, notes to §§ 67, 76; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 174, 175.

Special. — G. F. Tucker, *Monroe Doctrine*, chs. i, ii; J. B. Henderson, Jr., *American Diplomatic Questions*, 289–342; W. F. Reddaway, *Monroe Doctrine;* F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, chs. viii–x; J. H. Latané, *United States and Spanish America*, 9–103; W. S. Robertson, *Francisco de Miranda* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I, 309), chs. viii–xiv, and *Spanish-American Diplomacy* (*Turner Essays*, 231); A. B. Hart, *Foundations of Foreign Policy*, ch. vii, and *Monroe Doctrine* (U. S. Naval Institute, *Proceedings*, XXXII, 753); J. B. McMaster, *With the Fathers*, 1–54; J. C. Hildt, *United States and Russia*, chs. vii, ix; H. W. V. Temperley, *George Canning*, chs. viii–x, and *Latin American Policy of Canning* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 779); *Interoceanic Canal and the Monroe Doctrine.* — Maps: K. C. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, 286 (Latin-Am. states); F. J. Turner, *New West*, 208 (Russian claims).

Sources. — Official Documents: *American State Papers, Foreign*, IV, V; *Annals of Congress*, XXXII, XXXIX, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 13, 14, 43, 44, 58, 59, 77, 88, 89, 105, 116–118, 192, 193, 209, 217–219, 260; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements.* — Collections of Documents: *American History Leaflets*, No. 4; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 28–36, 61; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 43; *Niles' Weekly Register*, XIV–XXV; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 142, 145–147; Mabel Hill,

Liberty Documents, ch. xx. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IV–VI (see index); J. Monroe, *Writings*, VI, 31, 92–102, 151, 207–215, 304–444; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, IV, ch. xxxii, App., 577–586; W. C. Ford *J. Q. Adams and Monroe Doctrine* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VII, 676, VIII, 28, and in Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d ser., XV, 373); Rich. Rush, *Residence at the Court of London;* D. Webster, *Works*, III; [Palacio], *Outline of the Revolution in Spanish America.*

Bibliography. — D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe* (rev. ed.), 277–294; Dana's *Wheaton*, note 36; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 351; W. S. Robertson, *Miranda*, 491–511; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 524, 525; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 38 (lects. 30, 33), 77, 78, 145, 182, 183; F. L. Paxson, *Independence*, 253–264; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of References on Recognition.*

§ 199. Administration of John Quincy Adams

Summary. — Previous personal history (§§ 186, 191, 196, 198). — 1824: Presidential election: candidates; personal followings; no electoral choice. — Election of 1825: Feb. 9, Adams chosen by the House over Jackson; charges of a "corrupt bargain." — Adams's presidency: personal character; cabinet; civil service opposition in Congress; Jackson's opposition. — Panama Congress (§ 198): 1825, invitation; 1825, Dec. 26, special envoys nominated; 1826, opposition in the House; June, the Congress fails. — Internal improvements: previous attempts (§ 194); Adams's policy; 1824, April 30, survey act; 1825, subscription to canal stock; extension of Cumberland Road (§ 194); harbors; later developments (§ 191). — Indian question: previous status (§§ 181, 191, 193); 1821–1825, policy and cessions; 1825, Feb. 12, fraudulent treaty of Indian Springs; July, conflict of authority between the United States and Georgia; 1826, Jan. 24, new Indian treaty; 1827, Georgia defies the United States; Adams obliged to yield; 1829, Jackson sides with Georgia (§ 208). — Tariff: previous status (§ 194); 1824, May 22, revised act; 1827, Jan., Mallary's woolens bill; July 30, Harrisburg convention; 1828, tariff bill; southern opposition; "tariff of abominations"; May 20, act passes. — Foreign policy: commercial treaties; controversy over West Indian trade; 1824, March 13, draft slave-trade convention; spoliation claims; boundaries (§ 217).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, chs. xlii, xliv, xlvi, li, lii, and *Daniel Webster*, 112–151; F. J. Turner, *New West*, chs. xiv–xix; H. von

Holst, *History*, I, 421–458, II, 1–10, and *John C. Calhoun*, ch. iii; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 293–450; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 411–425, and *Men who Made the Nation*, ch. viii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, III, 266–291; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, I, chs. xvii, xviii; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, chs. i–viii; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 88–113; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, chs. ix–xi; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, chs. vi, vii; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, 128–154; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 129–171, (rev. ed.) 125–166; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. iv, v; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 164–225, (rev. ed.) 163–224; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. iii.

Special. — Biographies: Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, ch. vii; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. vii–x; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, chs. x–xiv, and *James Buchanan*, I, chs. ii–v; C. H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, ch. xiv; H. A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, chs. xxvii, xxix. — Executive: E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xi; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, ch. iii; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, 70–78. — Foreign Relations: G. F. Tucker, *Monroe Doctrine*, ch. iii; F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, ch. xi; J. B. Henderson, Jr., *American Diplomatic Questions*, 342–359; Freeman Snow, *Treaties and Topics*, 294–312. — Economic Questions: D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 78, 79; G. W. Ward, *Chesapeake and Ohio Canal Project;* F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 68–108; C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, ch. iii; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, I, chs. vii, viii; Ed. Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. xli–lxviii. — Indians: U. B. Phillips *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), 39–73; Annie H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation* (*ibid.*, 1906, I), chs. v–vii. — Maps: F. J. Turner, *New West*, 232 (vote on survey bill), 242 (vote on tariff), 260 (presidential election).

Sources. — Debates: *Register of Debates*, I–V; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, VIII, IX. — Official Documents: *Statutes at Large*, IV; *American State Papers*, especially *Foreign*, VI (Panama), *Finance*, V (tariff of 1828), *Indian*, II; *Register of Debates*, I–V, Apps.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 216, 234–237, 255, 256, 280–283, 292–431; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*. — Collections of Documents: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 113–152; International American Conference (1890), *Report of Committees*, IV, 19–201 (Panama); *Niles' Weekly Register*, XXV–XXXV. — Contemporary Writings: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VI, VII; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. xvii–xxxvii; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, chs. xiv–xviii, IV, chs. iii–v; J. C. Calhoun, *Correspondence*, 202–268; Jas. Buchanan, *Works*, I, 217–220, 237, 260–271; H. Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 586–634; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 252–385 (Clay and Web-

ster); E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, IV; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Daniel Webster*, 89–141; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I; A. Gallatin, *Writings*, II; D. Webster, *Works*, III, and *Private Correspondence*, I 345–457. — REMINISCENCES: B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, chs. i–v; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 188–301; Gaillard Hunt, *Forty Years of Washington Society*, 162–213, 238–281; Basil Hall, *Travels*.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 346–348, 503, 525; F. J. Turner, *New West*, ch. xx; H. Ames, *State Documents*, 113–131 *passim;* A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 130, and *Manual*, § 39 (lect. 36), 78 (lect. 50).

CHAPTER XXV

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829–1837

§ 200. Development of American Society, 1820–1860

Summary. — People: population at each census; westward and interstate movement, lines of transportation; immigration, amount, causes, races, social condition, distribution, crime; distribution of population, rural, old states, frontier (§ 193), villages, towns, county seats, railroad towns; cities, development, new centers, government (§ 203), conveniences and safety (§ 203). — Intellectual organization: learned societies; historical societies; national scientific institutions; lyceums; libraries; publishing houses. — Education: public, common schools, Horace Mann, high schools, normals, state universities, land grants; private schools and academies; endowed colleges and universities; professional and technical schools; beginning of coeducation. — Literature: New England school; New York school; Southern writers; Western writers; historians, novelists, essayists, poets; periodicals, literary, commercial and political; newspapers, metropolitan, editors, price, telegraph, country papers, postal facilities (§ 201). — Social life: foreign observers, American critics; prosperity and expansion; immigration and democracy; culture; fashions; societies, benevolent, social, secret orders; amusements, art, music, theater, out-of-door life, watering places; health, life insurance. — Religion: sects; national organization; Unitarian movement; Catholics; immigrant sects; split on slavery; church building; church music; pulpit oratory; revivals; status of clergy. — Charity and reform: intemperance, Maine law; dueling; women's rights; philanthropic movement; organizations; hospitals; imprisonment for debt; care of insane and defectives, Dorothea Dix; public charity; punishment, solitary and industrial systems; reform schools. — Slavery (§ 209). — Later development (§§ 239, 250, 258).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, 552–555, V, chs. xlvii–xlix, VI, 79–101, 421–429, VII, 73–99, 134–162, 185–208, 221–227; H. Adams, *History*, IV, chs. viii–x; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 16–31, 40, 106–110; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, ch. i; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, chs. i, ii, and *National Ideals*, chs. iii, x–xii; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 263–279; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, I, 393–397, II, 1–14, 26, 181, 234–236, and *Expansion*, 290–309, 402–428; J. Schouler, *History*, III, ch. xiii, § ii; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 59–113; *South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 595–655, VII, chs. i, xiii, xiv, xx–xxii, VIII, pp. xi–xlvii, X, pt. ii, ch. ii; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, chs. i–iii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*, I, chs. i–iii; J. Bryce, *Predictions of Hamilton and De Tocqueville*. — HISTORIES OF CITIES (§ 37): especially, J. Winsor, *Boston*, III, IV; J. G. Wilson, *New York*, III, IV; Scharf and Westcott, *Philadelphia*, I, chs. xxiv, xxv, II, III; C. T. Greve, *Cincinnati*, I, chs. xxx–xxxv, xxxvii–xlii; A. T. Andreas, *Chicago*, I; J. T. Scharf, *St. Louis*. — STATE HISTORIES (§ 37): especially, E. H. Roberts, *New York*, II, chs. xxxi, xxxiv; T. M. Cooley, *Michigan*, chs. xii, xvi.

Special. — PEOPLE (§§ 161, 258): Census Bureau, *Century of Population Growth;* H. Gannett, *Building of a Nation*, 51–77; A. F. Weber, *Growth of Cities*, 20–40; J. R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants*, 63–68; J. P. Sanderson, *Republican Landmarks*, chs. ii–x; A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, 435–511; J. F. Maguire, *Irish in America*, chs. x–xxiv; Stephen Byrne, *Irish Emigration;* R. B. Anderson, *Norwegian Immigration, 1821–1840;* G. T. Flom, *Norwegian Immigration to 1848;* W. V. Pooley, *Settlement of Illinois*, chs. i, iii, xi, xv.

INTELLECTUAL ORGANIZATION: G. B. Goode, *Smithsonian Institution*, and *National Scientific and Educational Institutions* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1889, 53, and *Papers*, IV, 95); Carnegie Institution, *Handbook of Learned Societies;* C. M. Blackford, *Smithsonian Institution* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXXXIX, 93, also in *Senate Docs.*, 60 Cong., 2 sess., No. 717); F. W. True, *United States National Museum* (U. S. Nat. Mus., *Report*, 1896, 287); Harriet K. Smith, *Lowell Institute;* Edward Edwards, *Free Town Libraries*, bk. iii, chs. i–v; Bureau of Education, *Public Libraries*, I, especially ch. xxxviii; A. A. Wright, *Who's Who in the Lyceum*, 15–28; Concord Lyceum, *Proceedings of the Fiftieth Anniversary.*

EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS: R. G. Boone, *Education in the United States*, pt. iii; F. T. Carlton, *Economic Influences upon Educational Progress;* E. E. Brown, *Making of our Middle Schools*, chs. xi–xv; G. H. Martin, *Massachusetts Public School System*, lects.

iii–v; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, ch. ix; H. B. Adams, ed., *Contributions to American Educational History* (monographs on education or higher education in twenty-eight of the states); A. D. Mayo, *Common Schools* (1830–1860: in Commissioner of Education, *Reports*, 1895–1901 *passim*); Mary L. Hinsdale, *Legislative History of Public School System in Ohio* (*ibid.*, 1900–1901, I, ch. ii); S. B. Weeks, *Beginning of Common Schools System in the South* (*ibid.*, 1896–1897, II, ch. xxix); F. H. Swift, *Public Permanent Common School Funds.* — PHASES OF EDUCATION: M. A. Newell, *Normal Schools* (Commissioner of Education, *Reports*, 1898–1899, II, ch. xlviii); G. W. A. Luckey, *Professional Training of Secondary Teachers*, ch. ii; J. P. Gordy, *Rise and Growth of the Normal School Idea;* C. F. Thwing, *Higher Education*, chs. x–xv; E. E. Brown, *Origin of State Universities;* L. F. Snow, *College Curriculum*, chs. iv, v; H. D. Sheldon, *Student Life and Customs*, ch. iv; J. A. Burns, *Catholic School System*, chs. vii–ix; Jos. Schafer, *Land Grants for Education;* G. W. Knight, *Land Grants for Education in Northwest Territory* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, I, 79); F. W. Blackmar, *Federal and State Aid to Higher Education.* — EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS AND LEADERS: B. A. Hinsdale, *Horace Mann;* Ezra Brainerd, *Emma Willard;* L. W. Spring, *Mark Hopkins;* W. S. Monroe, *Henry Barnard;* Cornelius Van Santvoord, *Eliphalet Nott;* J. O. Murray, *Francis Wayland;* Beth B. Gilchrist, *Mary Lyon;* Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, chs. xvii, xviii; A. P. Peabody, *Harvard Reminiscences*, and *Harvard Graduates;* histories of colleges, especially G. G. Bush, *Higher Education in Massachusetts* (Harvard); B. C. Steiner, *Higher Education in Connecticut* (Yale); Calvin Durfee, *Williams College*, chs. x–xv; J. S. Patton, *Jefferson and University of Virginia;* J. H. Fairchild, *Oberlin;* Andrew Ten Brook, *American State Universities* (Michigan), chs. iv–xi; T. F. Harrington, *Harvard Medical School*, chs. xvii–xxvii; Jos. Carson, *Medical Department of University of Pennsylvania*, chs. xii–xvii; Chas. Warren, *Harvard Law School*, chs. xv–xl.

LITERATURE: Barrett Wendell, *Literary History of America*, bks. iii–v; C. F. Richardson, *American Literature*, I, 211–528, II, chs. ii–xi; W. P. Trent, *American Literature*, pts. iii, iv; John Nichol, *American Literature*, chs. iv–x; E. C. Stedman, *Poets of America;* M. A. D. W. Howe, *American Bookmen;* W. B. Cairns, *American Literature from 1815 to 1833* (periodicals); *Semi-Centenary of the North American Review* (*N. Am. Review*, C, 315); *Fifty Years of Harper's Magazine* (*Harper's*, C, 947); A. H. Smyth, *Philadelphia Magazines*, 86–239; E. R. Rogers, *Four Southern Magazines;*

B. B. Minor, *Southern Literary Messenger;* W. H. Venable, *Early Periodical Literature of Ohio Valley* (also in *Mag. of Western Hist.*, VIII, IX *passim*); H. E. Fleming, *Magazines of a Market Metropolis* (Chicago), ch. i; S. N. D. North, *History of the Newspaper and Periodical Press* (*Tenth Census*, VIII); Frederic Hudson, *Journalism;* C. H. Levermore, *Rise of Metropolitan Journalism* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VI, 446). — Biographies of Washington Irving, J. F. Cooper, W. C. Bryant, E. A. Poe, R. W. Emerson, H. W. Longfellow, J. G. Whittier, Margaret Fuller, O. W. Holmes, J. R. Lowell, H. D. Thoreau, Geo. Ticknor, Nathaniel Hawthorne, Bayard Taylor, W. G. Simms, G. Bancroft, W. H. Prescott, Jared Sparks, J. L. Motley, Francis Parkman; W. A. Linn, *Horace Greeley*, chs. i–vii; Jas. Parton, *Horace Greeley* (1872 ed.), chs. i–xxvi; Augustus Maverick, *Henry J. Raymond*, chs. iii–xvi; J. H. Wilson, *Charles A. Dana*, chs. iv, vi–x; G. S. Merriam, *Samuel Bowles*, chs. iv–xxv; J. C. Pray, *James Gordon Bennett.*

Religious Movement: *American Church History Series;* G. W. Cooke, *Unitarianism in America*, chs. v–vii; J. G. Shea, *Catholic Church*, III, IV; J. H. Trumbull, *Historical Notes* (overthrow of establishment in Conn.); S. J. Baird, *New School;* W. H. Channing, *William Ellery Channing;* H. A. Brann, *John Hughes;* G. F. Wright, *Charles Grandison Finney;* M. A. D. W. Howe, *Alonzo Potter;* Lyman Abbott, *Henry Ward Beecher*, chs. i–vi; *Heralds of a Liberal Faith*, II; D. L. Leonard, *Missionary Annals;* E. M. Bliss, *Missions.*

Social Life: H. T. Tuckerman, *America and her Commentators;* J. G. Brooks, *As Others See Us;* Samuel Isham, *American Painting*, chs. vi–xv; Lorado Taft, *American Sculpture*, chs. i–xi; L. C. Elson, *American Music;* J. N. Ireland, *Records of the New York Stage;* Lawrence Barrett, *Edwin Forrest;* A. B. Clarke, *Elder and Younger Booth;* Wm. Winter, *The Jeffersons;* Clara E. Clement, *Charlotte Cushman;* Auguste Carlier, *Marriage in the United States;* S. W. Abbott, *Public Hygiene*, passim; W. S. Nichols, *Insurance Blue Book, Centennial Issue*, chs. iii, viii, ix.

Charity and Reform: A. F. Fehlandt, *Century of Drink Reform*, chs. i–iii; J. G. Wooley and W. E. Johnson, *Temperance Progress*, chs. iv–viii; D. E. Clark, *Liquor Legislation in Iowa* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, V, 193, VI, 551); Susan B. Anthony, *Woman Suffrage*, I; F. B. Sanborn, *Public Charities of Massachusetts during the Century;* John Cummings, *Poor Laws of Massachusetts and New York*, 34–52, 91–113; E. W. Capen, *Poor Laws of Connecticut*, chs. iii, iv; National Conference of Charities and Correction, *Reports* (indexed to 1908 by a special *Guide*); W. W. Barr, *Mental Defectives,*

61–71; Holmer Folks, *Care of Destitute Children*, chs. ii, iii; N. I. Bowditch, *Massachusetts General Hospital* (ed. 1872); T. G. Morton, *Pennsylvania Hospital;* D. H. Agnew, *Philadelphia Almshouse and Philadelphia Hospital;* Morrill Wyman, *McLean Asylum for the Insane* (also in *Boston Med. and Surg. Journal*, Dec. 12, 1877); E. E. Allen, *Education of Defectives* (N. M. Butler, *Education in U. S.*, No. 15); E. A. Fay, *American Schools for the Deaf;* E. C. Wines, *State of Prisons and of Child Saving Institutions*, 22–27, 80, 81; F. H. Wines, *Punishment and Reformation*, 141–161; David Dyer, *Albany Penitentiary;* E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, ch. xxxi; E. M. Gallaudet, *Thomas Hopkins Gallaudet;* Maud Howe, *Laura Bridgman;* Francis Tiffany, *Dorothea Lynde Dix;* Lewis Tappan, *Arthur Tappan*, chs. v–viii.

Maps: *Twelfth Census*, *Statistical Atlas*, plates 5–9, 14, 16–23, 42, 57–59; *American Nation*, XIV–XIX *passim;* J. B. McMaster, *History*, *passim.*

Sources. — General: Contemporary newspapers and periodicals (§§ 40, 41), especially *Niles' Weekly Register*, *North American Review*, *National Intelligencer*, and *New York Tribune.* Travels (§ 38), especially those of Ampère, Bremer, Buckingham, Chambers, Chevalier, Cooper, Dickens, Finch, Basil Hall, Kemble, Lyell, Martineau, Murat, Stuart, Mrs. Trollope. A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America;* Hugh McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, chs. i–xiii. State and city documents (§ 43) to be reached in the case of states through A. R. Hasse, *Index*, and R. R. Bowker, *State Publications* (§ 24).

People: *Census* (1820–1860); Friedrich Kapp, *Immigration and the Commissioners of Emigration* (1870); Jesse Chickering, *Immigration into the United States* (1848); E. E. Hale, *Letters on Irish Emigration* (1852); Franz von Löher, *Geschichte und Zustände der Deutschen in Amerika* (1855); *German Emigration* (*N. Am. Review*, LXXXII, 248); annual reports on immigration (1820–1860, in *Congressional Documents*); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 33 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 58, 73; 35 Cong., 1 sess., No. 26; *Statutes at Large*, III, 488, IX, 220, X, 715; Bureau of Statistics, *Arrivals of Alien Passengers and Immigrants, 1820–1892;* Wm. Cobbett, *Emigrant's Guide* (1829); *Annual Reports of the Commissioners of Emigration of New York from 1847 to 1860;* W. J. Bromwell, *History of Immigration* (1856).

Intellectual Organization: W. J. Rhees, *Smithsonian Institution, Documents*, I, 5–627; *National Institute* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XXXV, 531); E. P. Peabody, *Public Benefactions, Policy of State Endowments* (*ibid.*, XXXVI, 659); C. C. Jewett, *Notices of Public Libraries* (also in *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 31 Cong.

1 sess., No. 120); Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences*, II, 157–159 (lyceums); *Old South Leaflets*, No. 139 (lyceums). Publications of historical and other societies can be reached through A. P. C. Griffin, *Bibliography of Historical Societies* (§ 24), and Carnegie Institution, *Handbook;* reports on public libraries in publications of city governments (§ 43).

Education: Horace Mann, *Life and Works* (extracts in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 109, 144); C. S. Randall, *Common School System of New York* (1851); Noah Porter, *American Colleges and the American Public; Quarterly Register of the American Educational Society* (1827–1843); *American Journal of Education* (Barnard's, 1855–1860; a general index has been issued); Henry Barnard, *Normal Schools;* Francis Lieber, *Life and Letters*, chs. vi–xii; reports on public schools and state universities, in state and local documents (§ 43). For federal grants for education see *Cong. Docs.*, 15 Cong., 2 sess., No. 97; *Sen. Docs.*, 16 Cong., 2 sess., No. 85; 22 Cong., 1 sess., No. 142; *House Reports*, 21 Cong., 1 sess., No. 312; 35 Cong., 1 sess., No. 261; *House Exec. Docs.*, 25 Cong., 2 sess., No. 136; 33 Cong., 1 sess., No. 52; *House Misc. Docs.*, 30 Cong., 2 sess., No. 18; *American State Papers, Public Lands; Statutes at Large*, acts admitting states and forming territories.

Literature: *Passages from the Correspondence of Rufus W. Griswold;* S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections*, II, letters xlv–liv; O. W. Holmes, *The New Portfolio* (*Atlantic*, LV, 105); Horace Greeley, *Recollections*, chs. xi, xii, xvi–xviii, xxxi; Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature*, V–VIII; writings, letters, and diaries of authors named under " Special."

Social Life: G. W. Curtis, *Editor's Easy Chair* (*Harper's Mag.*, III–XXI), and *Lotus Eating*, and *Potiphar Papers;* C. A. Bristed, *Upper Ten Thousand;* N. P. Willis, *Hurry-Graphs;* A. B. Longstreet, *Georgia Scenes;* J. G. Baldwin, *Flush Times in Alabama;* W. H. Venable, *A Buckeye Boyhood;* E. D. Mansfield, *Personal Memories;* W. D. Howells, *A Boy's Town;* Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past;* Lucy Larcom, *New England Girlhood;* G. F. Hoar, *A Boy Sixty Years Ago*, and *Autobiography*, I, chs. iv, vi, vii; Lucian Minor, *Virginian in New England* (*Atlantic*, XXVI, 162, 333, 482, 739, XXVII, 673); John Trumbull, *Autobiography*, chs. xix–xxi; Jos. Jefferson, *Autobiography*, chs. i–viii; *Godey's Lady's Book;* T. R. Jencks, *Life Insurance* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, VIII, 109, 227); A. B. Johnson, *Life Insurance and Savings Banks* (*ibid.*, XXV, 670).

Religious Movement: *Life and Letters of Horace Bushnell;*

W. E. Channing, *Works;* Lyman Beecher, *Autobiography;* C. G. Finney, *Memoirs;* Peter Cartwright, *Autobiography;* Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 486–490, 495–506 (rights of Catholics); *Documents relating to the Ursuline Convent;* Mrs. L. G. Whitney, *Burning of the Convent;* J. H. Lee, *American Party* (anti-Catholic riots in Philadelphia); American Home Missionary Society, *Reports* (1827–); American Board for Foreign Missions, *Annual Reports* (1810–); *Home Missionary* (1828–).

Charity and Reform: Neal Dow, *Maine Law* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XXX, 703); National Temperance Convention, *Proceedings*, state and local conventions; *Documentary History of the Maine Law;* Catharine E. Beecher, *True Remedy for Wrongs of Woman;* Elizabeth C. Stanton, *Address to the Legislature of New York* (1854); Horace Bushnell, *Women's Suffrage* (opposed); G. W. Curtis, *Works*, I, 179–213 (favors suffrage); National Woman's Rights Conventions, *Proceedings* (1850–); Pliny Earle, *Bloomingdale Asylum for the Insane; American Journal of Insanity* (1844–); Perkins Institute for the Blind, *Annual Reports* (1833–); S. G. Howe, *Letters and Journals*, II; C. G. Haines, *Report on the Penitentiary System* (1821); E. C. Wines and T. W. Dwight, *Report on Prisons and Reformatories* (1867); Georgiana B. Kirby, *Years of Experience*, ch. x; Horace Greeley, *Hints toward Reforms*, and *Recollections*, ch. xiii, pp. 571–618; *Joseph Tuckerman and the Elevation of the Poor; Old South Leaflets*, No. 148 (Miss Dix's memorial); C. F. Daniels, *Imprisonment for Debt* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, IV, 538); state and local reports (§ 43).

Bibliography. — F. J. Turner, *New West*, 334–336, 341–344; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 322, 323; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 329–334; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 308, 322, 323; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 331–357; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 830–834; *South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 606, 619, 624, 637; E. C. Lunt, *Key to the Census* (Am. Statis. Assoc., *Publications*, n. s., I, 63); A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Immigration;* Boston Public Library, *Bibliography of Higher Education of Women*, and *Supplement* (*Bibls. of Special Subjects*, Nos. 8, 9); F. W. Ashley, in H. B. Adams, *Public Libraries*, 239; E. E. Brown, *Middle Schools*, App. C.; W. S. Monroe, *Bibliography of Education*, 12–20; H. D. Sheldon, *Student Life*, 324–351; Barrett Wendell, *Literary History*, 533–554; Samuel Isham, *American Paintings*, 565–568; Lorado Taft, *American Sculpture*, 539–542; L. C. Elson, *American Music*, 366, 367; *American Church History Series* (one or more bibliographies in each vol.); E. M. Bliss,

Missions, 313–318; Harvard University, *Guide to Reading in Social Ethics;* N. M. Butler, *Education* (1900 ed.), II, 811–815 (defectives).

§ 201. Development of Industry and Transportation, 1820–1860

Summary. — Agriculture: westward movement, abandoned farms; methods, pioneer (§ 193), rotation of crops, fertilization; crops, wheat, corn, hay, tobacco, cotton; hog products; stock raising, cattle drives, horses, sheep and wool, improved breeds; new products; vegetables and fruits; farm machinery, McCormick; influence of transportation; influence of farming class; labor (§ 202); special Southern conditions (§ 209). — Mining: coal; iron ore, beginning of Lake Superior ore; copper; lead; gold (§§ 216, 222); other minerals; quarries; beginning of petroleum industry; methods of mining; labor (§ 202); improved machinery. — Lumbering: supply, destructive clearings, diminution in Northeast, Great Lakes pineries, Southern naval stores, interior hardwood, Pacific coast forests; demand, wooden cities, prairie farmers. — Manufacturing conditions: earlier (§§ 182, 194); effect of tariff (§§ 177, 194, 199, 200, 229); factory system; fall-line water power. — Fabrics: cotton and woolen; local market for farm products; improvements in machinery, inventions, dyes; localities, New England, Middle States, attempts in the South, beginning in the West. — Metal and machinery: Pennyslvania iron and steel; anthracite, coke, and bituminous smelting; Ohio plants; small Southern output; railroad supplies, engines and locomotives, rails. — Wood and lumber: building materials, furniture, implements, power planers. — Fisheries: Canadian coast (§§ 194), 224); Grand Banks; Great Lakes; whale. — Foreign commerce: extent, statistics by periods; character of exports and imports. — Shipping: ship-building, sailing ships, clippers; trade with Orient; Atlantic ocean steamers, liners, Collins; Pacific steamers; subsidy; facilities, harbors, safety, lighthouses, coast survey. — Coastwise trade: American monopoly; ferries; packets; steamers; coal trade; California; Isthmian transit (§ 224). — Internal improvements: federal policy (§§ 194, 199, 208, 220); improvement of rivers; state policy and results. — River and lake trade: Great Lakes; Mississippi River and tributaries; river rafts

and forges; river steamboat life. — Canals: development, Erie, other Middle States systems, Southern, Western; passenger and freight service; decay. — Roads: National (§§ 194, 199); state and local; corporate tollroads and bridges; upkeep, condition and improvements in making; stage travel. — Rise of railroads: state activity in internal improvements; rivalry for western trade; political significance, Calhoun's plans; 1836, Nashville convention; system in 1840; 1840–1850, progress of building; sectional rivalry; eastern capital in western enterprises; 1845, Memphis convention; 1847, Chicago convention; 1850, map of the railway system; 1850–1860, extension of trunk lines; transappalachian construction; Mississippi Valley lines; opening the prairies; 1850, beginning of land grants; agitation for a Pacific railway (§ 246); 1860, map of transportation systems. — Railroad service: crude beginnings; improvements in equipment, rails, engines, coaches; use of coal; heating; express and sleeping cars; speed; safety; variety of gauges; freight service; rates; labor (§ 202); control; influence on road, canal, and river trade; and development of cities. — Transportation in cities: pavements; omnibuses; horse-cars; franchises and corruption. — Movement of intelligence: postoffice, development, legislation on routes, railroad mail, postage, newspaper mail; telegraph, beginning, development, companies, monopoly, first Atlantic cable; pony express (§ 246). — Currency and banking (§§ 194, 205, 207, 213, 214, 220). — Later development (§§ 245, 246, 248, 253, 259–261, 264, 273).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, ch. xliv, VI, 86–95, VII, 99–134; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 3–27; F. J. Turner. *New West*, 10–16, 31–40, 96–106, 224–228, 288–298; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. iii, and *National Ideals*, ch. xiii, xvi; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. v, pp. 185–189; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 7–10, 70–84, 218–225, 233, 234, and *Expansion*, chs. xxi–xxiii; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 687–696; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 163–193, V, 40–592; Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, 246–273, 337–390; John MacGregor, *Progress of America*, II; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, §§ 143–154, 173–190, 202–211; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 207–268; C. M. Depew, *One Hundred Years of American Commerce; Eighty Years' Progress;* Clive Day, *History of Commerce*, chs. xlviii–l; W. C. Webster, *General History of*

Commerce, 355–387; J. L. Ringwalt, *Development of Transportation Systems*, 9–173; W. F. Gephart, *Transportation and Industrial Development in the Middle West*, chs. v–xiv; chapters in state histories (§ 37).

Special. — AGRICULTURE: L. H. Bailey, *Cyclopedia of American Agriculture*, especially IV, 50–64, 363–409; W. V. Pooley, *Settlement of Illinois*, ch. xiv; W. C. Edgar, *Story of a Grain of Wheat*, ch. vii; J. G. Thompson, *Wheat Growing Industry in Wisconsin*, 13–56; B. H. Hibbard, *Agriculture in Dane County, Wisconsin;* M. B. Hammond, *Cotton Industry*, 67–119, 243–257; Meyer Jacobstein, *Tobacco Industry*, ch. ii; C. W. Wright, *Wool Growing and the Tariff*, chs. iii–v; D. E. Salmon, *Sheep Industry*, pt. i; H. N. Casson, *Cyrus Hall McCormick;* G. M. Tucker, *American Agricultural Periodicals*. — MINING: W. J. Nicolls, *Story of American Coals*, chs. iv, xvii–xx, xxiii; A. S. Hewitt, *Century of Mining;* R. G. Thwaites, *Early Lead Mining* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, XIII, 271); S. F. Peckham, *Petroleum* (*Tenth Census*, X), 5–12; J. D. Weeks, *Coke* (*ibid.*), 22–27; gold mining (§§ 216, 222). — LUMBERING: J. E. Defebaugh, *Lumber Industry*, I, chs. xxvi, xxx, xxxi, II *passim;* W. F. Fox, *Lumber Industry in New York* (Bureau of Forestry, *Bulletin*, No. 34); L. D. Watkins, *Destruction of Forests* (Mich. Pioneer and Hist. Soc., *Collections*, XXVIII, 148); G. W. Hotchkiss, *Lumber and Forest Industry of the Northwest*, passim. — MANUFACTURING: J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, 256–821; C. D. Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, chs. x, xi, and *Factory System* (*Tenth Census*, II); W. C. Wyckoff, *Silk Manufacture* (*ibid.*), 14–19; J. D. Weeks, *Manufacture of Glass* (*ibid.*), 77–99; G. F. Swain, *Water-Power* (*ibid.*, XVI), pp. xviii–xxvii; J. R. Smith, *Story of Iron and Steel*, 41–56; J. M. Swank, *Iron in all Ages* (2d ed.), chs. xvii–xxxvi, xli–xliv, xlviii; Benjamin Butterworth, *Growth of Industrial Art* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 52 Cong., 2 sess., Vol. 30). — FISHERIES: Raymond McFarland, *New England Fisheries*, chs. ix, x; Lorenzo Sabine, *Report on the Principal Fisheries* (*Senate Exec. Docs.*, 32 Cong., 2 sess., No. 22), 325–388; G. B. Goode, *Fisheries and Fishing Industries*, Section V *passim;* Alex. Starbuck, *American Whale Fishery*, 95–167, 230–580; W. S. Tower, *American Whale Fishery*, chs. iv–viii.

FOREIGN COMMERCE: N. S. Shaler, *United States*, I, 538–558; A. H. Clark, *Clipper Ship Era;* W. W. Bates, *American Marine*, chs. vii, viii, and *American Navigation*, chs. xv–xviii, xxi; W. L. Marvin, *American Merchant Marine*, chs. viii–xiii; J. R. Spears, *American Merchant Marine*, chs. ix, xi–xv; W. P. Sterns, *Foreign Trade, 1820 to 1840*

(*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, VIII, 34, 452); Royal Meeker, *Shipping Subsidies*, 150–157; G. H. Preble, *Steam Navigation*, 32–223; T. C. Purdy, *Steam Navigation* (*Tenth Census*, IV), ch. i; Henry Hall, *Ship-Building Industry* (*ibid.*, VIII), 1–95, 144–159, 166, 167, 174–178, 196, 242–249; C. H. Davis, *United States Coast Survey* (*N. Am. Review*, XC, 429); A. B. Johnson, *Modern Light House Service*, ch. iii; A. C. Sutcliffe, *Robert Fulton and the Clermont.*

Coastwise and Internal Trade: *Reports on Internal Commerce* (*House Exec. Docs.*, 49 Cong., 2 sess., XVII, 50 Cong., 1 sess., XX, 51 Cong., 1 sess., XXIII, 2 sess., XXIV); contain much historical matter of value); E. G. Bourne, *Surplus Revenue*, chs. vi–xii; G. S. Callender, *Early Transportation and Banking Enterprises* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XVII, 112); A. B. Hulbert, *Great American Canals;* T. C. Purdy, *Canals* (*Tenth Census*, IV); E. H. Roberts, *New York*, II, ch. xxx; David Hosack, *De Witt Clinton*, 82–120, 207–504; N. E. Whitford, *Canal System of New York;* A. L. Bishop, *State Works of Pennsylvania* (Conn. Acad. of Arts and Sci., *Transactions*, XIII, 149); Lois K. Mathews, *Erie Canal and Settlement of the West* (Buffalo Hist. Soc., *Publications*, XIV, 187); C. P. McClelland and C. C. Huntington, *Ohio Canals;* G. W. Ward, *Chesapeake and Ohio Canal Project;* C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 110–127, 174–185, 239–243; C. C. Weaver, *Internal Improvements in North Carolina;* W. E. Martin, *Internal Improvements in Alabama;* C. N. Morris, *Internal Improvements in Ohio* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, III, 351); E. J. Benton, *Wabash Trade Route*, chs. ii, iii; Margaret Duden, *Internal Improvements in Indiana* (*Ind. Quart. Mag. of Hist.*, V, 160); C. M. Thompson, *Administration of Thomas Ford* (Ill. State Hist. Library, *Collections*, VII), chs. iv, v; J. W. Putnam, *Illinois and Michigan Canal* (*Jour. of Polit. Econ.*, XVII, 272, 337, 413); John Moses, *Illinois*, chs. xxvii–xxxiv *passim;* Hannah E. Keith, *Internal Improvements in Michigan* (Mich. Polit. Sci. Assoc., *Publications*, IV, No. 1); T. M. Cooley, *Michigan*, ch. xiv; O. G. Libby, *Lead and Shot Trade* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, XIII, 293); Jacob Van der Zee, *Roads and Highways of Territorial Iowa* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, III, 175); D. L. Buckman, *Old Steamboat Days on the Hudson River;* J. W. Monette, *Navigation and Commerce on the Mississippi* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, VII, 479); J. C. Mills, *Our Inland Seas*, chs. vi–xii; Charles Moore, *Saint Marys Falls Canal*, 91–137.

Railroads: E. R. Johnson, *American Railway Transportation*, 13–27, 34–49, 215–217, 308–312, 349–353; H. S. Haines, *Problems in Railway Regulation*, ch. ii; H. V. Poor, *Sketch of Internal Improve-*

ments (*Poor's Railroad Manual*, 1881, p. i); C. F. Adams, *Railroads*, 36–79; A. E. Shuman, *Railroads* (*Tenth Census*, IV), 295–374; J. E. Watkins, *American Rail and Track* (Nat. Museum, *Report*, 1889), 651–679; M. M. Kirkman, *Motive Power, the Locomotive*, ch. i, and *Building and Repairing Railways*, ch. i, and *Cars*, ch. i; *History of the Baldwin Locomotive Works*, 7–57; W. B. Wilson, *Pennsylvania Railroad Company*, I, chs. i–iii; Milton Reizenstein, *Baltimore and Ohio Railroad;* H. G. Pearson, *An American Railroad Builder* (J. M. Forbes), chs. i–iii; E. H. Mott, *Between the Ocean and the Lakes: the Story of Erie*, chs. i–xii, pp. 295–436; W. K. Ackerman, *Illinois-Central Railroad*, 5–91, and *Early Illinois Railroads;* F. A. Cleveland and F. W. Powell, *Railroad Promotion;* L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, I, bks. i, ii, II, chs. i–v; J. B. Sanborn, *Congressional Grants of Land in Aid of Railways*, chs. i–iv; B. H. Meyer, *Early Railroad Legislation in Wisconsin* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, XIV, 206); U. B. Phillips, *Transportation in the Eastern Cotton Belt*, and *An American State-Owned Railroad* (*Yale Review*, XV, 259), and *Transportation in the Ante-Bellum South* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XIX, 434); T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne*, 114–124, 383–533. — TRANSPORTATION IN CITIES: F. W. Speirs, *Street Railway System of Philadelphia*, ch. i; Frank G. Johnson, *Nicholson Pavement and Pavements Generally* (1867); histories of cities, especially those listed in § 200. — TRANSPORTATION OF INTELLIGENCE: *History of Railway Mail Service* (*Senate Exec. Docs.*, 48 Cong., 2 sess., No. 40), 5–60, 128–141; G. G. Tunell, *Railway Mail Service : an Historical Sketch* (also in H. R. Hatfield, *Lectures on Commerce*, 57); Alex. Jones, *Electric Telegraph;* J. D. Reid, *Telegraph in America;* S. I. Prime, *S. F. B. Morse;* John Trowbridge, *Morse;* E. L. Morse, *Dot-and-Dash Alphabet* (*Century*, LXXXIII, 695); W. B. Taylor, *Henry's Contribution to the Electro-Magnetic Telegraph;* H. M. Field, *Atlantic Telegraph*, chs. i–xii.

MAPS: Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 219, 224, 251 (roads, canals, and railroads); F. J. Turner, *New West*, 226 (highways and waterways, 1830); Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 4 (canals, 1830); G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 4 (trade routes, 1840–1850); T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 62 (railroads, 1860); F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 8 (manufactures, 1860).

Sources. — GENERAL: Valuable contemporary articles on phases of this section are in almost every number of *Hunt's Merchants' Magazine*, I–XLIII (1839–1860); *De Bow's Review*, I–XXIX (1846–1860); De Bow's *Industrial Resources; Niles' Weekly Register*,

XVII–LXXVI (1820–1849); *Hazard's United States Commercial and Statistical Register* (1839–1842). State documents through Bowker's *State Publications*, and Hasse's *Index* (§ 24); some of the most important documents are listed below. Gazetteers (§ 35) of the period are useful. Travels (§ 38 and particularly § 200), a few additional titles below: Michel Chevalier, *Society in the United States*, letters vii, xi, xii, xx, xxi, xxiii, xxiv; F. J. Grund, *The Americans*, chs. viii–x; G. T. Poussin, *United States*, pt. ii, chs. xviii–xx; reprints in A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxv.

Agriculture: Commissioner of Patents, *Annual Reports* (on agriculture, 1837–1861; general index by Dept. of Agriculture); *Eighth Census* (1860), *Agriculture*, especially Introd.; periodicals listed in G. M. Tucker, *American Agricultural Periodicals*, especially *American Agriculturist* (1842– , long edited by Orange Judd), *Prairie Farmer* (1840–), *The Cultivator* (Albany, 1834–); Jas. Caird, *Prairie Farmer* (1859); J. H. Klippart, *Wheat Plant* (1859); Chas. Fox, *American Text Book of Agriculture* (1857); J. J. Thomas, *American Fruit Culturist* (*c.* 1855); observations of travelers, especially Patrick Shirreff, *Tour through North America* (1838); J. F. W. Johnston, *Notes on North America* (1851). — Mining: Caleb Cushing, *Anthracite Coal Trade* (*N. Am. Review*, XLII, 241); Committee of Senate of Pennsylvania, *Report upon the Coal Trade* (1834); Foster and Whitney, *Report on Lake Superior Copper Lands* (*House Exec. Docs.*, 31 Cong., 1 sess., No. 69), chs. iv, vii (1850); J. D. Whitney, *Metallic Wealth of the United States* (1854); R. C. Taylor, *Statistics of Coal* (2d ed., 1855); J. H. A. Bone, *Petroleum and Petroleum Wells* (1865). — Manufacturing: *Eighth Census*, *Manufactures*, especially Introd.; Nathan Appleton, *Correspondence with J. A. Lowell*, and *Introduction of the Power Loom;* H. A. Miles, *Lowell as it was and as it is* (1845); C. E. Potter, *Manchester*, ch. xxiii; Commissioner of Patents, *Annual Reports* (1837–); patent laws in *Statutes at Large*, V, 117, 191, 543.

Foreign Commerce: *Commerce and Navigation* (annual reports, 1821–); Coast Survey, *Annual Reports* (1834–); Chief of Engineers, *Annual Reports* (1826–) in reports of Secretary of War; *Statutes at Large*, IV, 570, V, 640 (coast survey), 304, 626, X, 61 (steamboat inspection), 119 (lighthouse board), 597 (life saving); *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 49 Cong., 2 sess., No. 91 (laws relating to river and harbor improvements); *Report on Light Houses* (*Senate Exec. Docs.*, 32 Cong., 1 sess., No. 28: 1851); Lighthouse Board, *Annual Reports* (1852–); J. R. McCulloch, *Dictionary of Commerce* (various eds. from 1832 to 1856, contains much contem-

porary information); J. S. Homans, *Foreign Commerce* (1820–1856, statistics); T. Pitkins, *Statistical View* (1835 ed.); Boston Board of Trade, *Annual Reports* (1854–); New York Chamber of Commerce, *Charter, with a History* (1855), and *Annual Reports*, (1858–); R. H. Dana, *Two Years before the Mast;* J. M. Forbes, *Letters and Recollections*, I, chs. iii–vi; R. B. Forbes, *Personal Reminiscences* (2d ed.); F. T. Bullen, *Men of the Merchant Service* (1900); A. B. Lubbock, *Round the Horn* (1902).

Coastwise and Internal Trade: Geo. Armroyd, *View of the whole Internal Navigation* (1830); H. S. Tanner, *Canals and Railroads* (1840); Michel Chevalier, *Voies de Communication;* W. W. Campbell, *De Witt Clinton*, 21–204; C. Z. Lincoln, *Messages from the Governors of New York*, II–V (see general index under Canal, Erie Canal, Highways, Railroads, Roads); New York Canal Commissioners, *Annual Reports* (1816–); Buffalo Historical Society, *Publications*, XIII, XIV (various material on Erie Canal); Pennsylvania Board of Canal Commissioners, *Annual Reports* (1825–1859); James Hall, *Statistics of the West* (1836), and *The West, its Commerce and Navigation* (1848); Ohio Canal Commission, *Annual Reports* (1822–1837); Ohio Board of Public Works, *Annual Reports* (1836–); *Illinois Governors' Letter Books* (1818–1853, Ill. State Hist. Library, *Collections*, IV, VII; see indexes under Canal, Internal Improvements, Railroads); Thomas Ford, *Illinois*, especially chs. vi, xii; E. W. Gould, *Fifty Years on the Mississippi;* Mark Twain, *Life on the Mississippi;* G. B. Merrick, *Old Times on the Upper Mississippi; Senate Docs.*, 31 Cong., special sess., No. 4 (explosions and protection of passengers); W. W. Gillespie, *Manual of Road Making* (1847–1850); W. Kingsford, *Plank Roads* (1851).

Railroads: Dionysius Lardner, *Railroad Economy*, ch. xvi (1850); J. B. Jervis, *Railroad Property* (1860); W. H. Brown, *First Locomotives in America;* G. T. Poussin, *Chemins de Fer Américains* (1836); Douglas Galton, *Report on the Railways of the United States* (*Parl. Papers*, 1857, 1 sess., XVI, [2181], 1857–1858, LI, [2399]); W. P. Smith, *Book of the Great Railway Celebrations of 1857* (line between Baltimore and St. Louis); Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 338–351; E. B. Grant, *Boston Railways* (1856); New York State Engineer, *Annual Reports* (1849–1854, 1857–); New York Railroad Commissioners, *Annual Reports* (1855, 1856); annual reports of railroad companies, especially Pennsylvania Railroad, (1847–), and Baltimore and Ohio (1827–); J. C. Calhoun, *Correspondence*, 346, 349–355, 362–367, 381, 385, 411–419, 701, 704–706, 1060–1063, and *Works*, V, 246–311; *De Bow's Review*, I,

10–21 (Memphis convention); *Niles' Weekly Register*, LXIX, 196, 212–214 (Memphis convention); Robt. Fergus, *Chicago River and Harbor Convention* (1847); A. L. Stimson, *Express Companies* (2d ed., 1858); Alex. Eaton, *Street or Horse-Power Railways* (1859). — MOVEMENT OF INTELLIGENCE: Postmaster-General, *Annual Reports* (1823–); *Post Office Laws and Regulations* (various eds., 1832–1859); J. Holbrook, *Ten Years Among the Mail Bags* (1855); Thos. Rainey, *Ocean Steam Navigation and the Ocean Post* (1858); *House Exec. Docs.*, 25 Cong., 2 Sess., No. 15 (telegraph beginnings), 27 Cong., 2 sess., No. 161, and 30 Cong., 1 sess., No. 35 (foreign mail); *House Reports*, 25 Cong., 2 sess., No. 753, and 27 Cong., 3 sess., No. 17 (telegraphs); 51 Cong., 1 sess., No. 1210, pp. xviii–xxxvi (mail subsidies); *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 35 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 227, 245, and *Senate Reports*, 35 Cong., 1 sess., No. 313 (telegraph monopoly).

Bibliography. — F. J. Turner, *New West*, 346–351; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 322, 323; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 317–319; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 193, 194, V *passim;* J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 825–829; Harvard University, *List of References in History 17*, 48–58, and *Economics 6*, 55–63; C. W. Wright, *Wool Growing*, 329–334; Raymond McFarland, *New England Fisheries*, ch. xx; W. S. Tower, *American Whale Fishery*, App. ii; New Bedford Public Library, *Collection of Books illustrating the Whale Fishery;* A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Merchant Marine Subsidies*, and *List of Books relating to Railroads;* A. L. Bishop, *State Works of Pennsylvania*, 289–292; Boston Public Library, *Bulletin*, XIII, No. 4 (roads); Cleveland and Powell, *Railroad Promotion*, ch. xviii.

§ 202. Development of Labor and Occupations, 1820–1860

Summary. — Labor: sources, native and immigrant; conditions, hours, wages, relations with employers, apprentices, child labor, woman labor, legislation; beginning of organization, Locofoco movement (§ 213); strikes; application of labor, farms, mines, manufacturing (factory and domestic systems), fisheries, transportation, sailors, skilled labor, clerks, domestic service, army and navy; opportunity to rise; social conditions (§ 200). — Social communities: relation to democracy, to immigration, to intellectual unrest; types, Shakers, Brook Farm, Hopedale, Fourierism and

Phalanxes, New Harmony, Zoar, Amana, Mormons, Icaria, Oneida; effect. — Occupations: cityward drift; freedom of choice; professions, clergy (§ 200), professors and teachers (§ 200), lawyers, doctors, artists, musicians, scientific men, engineers, literary men (§ 200); status of professional men, social consideration; foreign and domestic training (§ 200). — Commercial organization: individuals, firms, corporations; banks; railroads; insurance; credit; bankruptcy; panics (§§ 213, 229), capitalists, Astor, Girard. — Commercial methods: wholesale trade; middlemen; retail trade, A. T. Stewart; payment in kind, barter, one price; country stores and politics; irregular currency; purchases in Eastern cities. — Later development (§§ 250, 253, 256, 269, 270).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, chs. xliii, VI, 100–107, 249, 250, 454–458, VII, 142–145, 208–221; E. E. Sparks, *Expansion*, 376–401, 410–417; A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, ch. xiii; F. T. Carlton, *Organized Labor*, ch. iii; R. T. Ely, *Labor Movement*, 7–60; C. D. Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, 202–205, 215–244, 264–269.

Special. — Labor: G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. xiv; J. R. Commons, *Labor Organizations and Labor Politics* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XXI, 323), and *Horace Greeley and Working Class Origins of Republican Party* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXIV, 468), and *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, V, VII, Introds.; F. T. Carlton, *Workingmen's Party of New York City, 1829–1831* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXII, 401); G. E. McNeil, *Labor Movement*, ch. iv; A. M. Simons, *Social Forces in American History*, ch. xvii; Evans Woollen, *Labor Troubles, 1834–1837* (*Yale Review*, I, 87); Commissioner of Labor, *Strikes and Lockouts* (*16th Annual Report*), 724–739; J. M. Motley, *Apprenticeship*, chs. i–iii; Edith Abbott, *Women in Industry*, chs. iv–xii, App. A, and *Wages of Unskilled Labor, 1850–1900* (*Jour. of Polit. Econ.*, XIII, 321); Lucy M. Salmon, *Domestic Service*, ch. iv. — Communities: Morris Hillquit, *Socialism in the United States*, pts. i, ii, ch. i; W. A. Hinds, *American Communities* (2d rev.); Chas. Nordhoff, *Communistic Societies;* F. A. Bushee, *Communistic Societies* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XX, 625); F. T. Carlton, *Humanitarianism* (*Internat. Jour. of Ethics*, XVII, 48), and *An American Utopia* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XXIV, 428); Anna White, *Shakerism*, chs. i–ix; C. E. Robinson, *Shakers;* J. P. MacLean, *Society of Shakers* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Pubs.*, IX, 32); Lindsay Swift, *Brook Farm;* J. A. Bole, *Harmony*

Society; G. B. Lockwood, *New Harmony Movement;* Frank Podmore, *Robert Owen;* Wm. Bailie, *Josiah Warren;* E. O. Randall, *Zoar Society* (*Ohio Arch. and Hist. Pubs.*, VIII, 1); D. G. McCarty, *Early Social and Religious Experiments in Iowa* (*Iowa Hist. Record*, XVIII, 407); Bertha M. H. Shambaugh, *Amana;* C. F. Noe, *Amana Society* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, II, 162); W. V. Pooley, *Settlement of Illinois*, chs. xii, xiii; I .W. Riley, *Founder of Mormonism;* W. A. Linn, *Mormons*, bks. i–iv; M. A. Mikkelsen, *Bishop Hill Colony;* M. E. McIntosh, *Coöperative Communities in Wisconsin* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1903, p. 99); S. M. Pedrick, *Wisconsin Phalanx at Ceresco* (*ibid.*, 1902, p. 190); Albert Shaw, *Icaria.* — Occupations: *South in the Building of the Nation*, VII, ch. xvi; Freeman Hunt, *American Merchants;* W. O. Stoddard, *Men of Business;* J. A. Scoville, *Old Merchants of New York City;* J. D. McCabe, *Great Fortunes;* Charles Warren, *American Bar;* W. D. Lewis, *Great American Lawyers*, II–VI; S. D. Gross, *Eminent American Physicians and Surgeons.* For educators and clergy see the titles listed in § 200, and F. O. Vaille and H. A. Clark, *Harvard Book*, I; Henry Barnard, *Educational Biography;* W. B. Sprague, *Annals of the American Pulpit.* The histories of cities listed in § 200 contain chapters on development during this period of the various occupations and professions. —Commercial Organization: F. E. Horack, *Corporate Regulation in Iowa* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, II, 381, 485); Gustavus Myers, *Great American Fortunes*, I, II; Anna Youngman, *Economic Causes of Great American Fortunes*, chs. i, ii; J. C. Brown, *Merchant Banking.*

Sources. — Many of the titles in "Sources" of §§ 200, 201 are applicable here. — J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, III–VIII; periodicals (§ 40), especially *Bankers' Magazine* (1846–), *Hunt's Merchants' Magazine* (1839–1870), *Journal of Commerce* (1827–). — Labor: Nathan Appleton, *Labor in United States and Europe* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XI, 217: 1844); G. T. Poussin, *United States*, pt. ii, ch. xxi; W. E. Channing, *Lectures on the Elevation of the Labouring Portion* (reviewed in *Democratic Review*, VII, 529, VIII, 51), and *Labor Associations;* Henry Barnard, *Education and Labor* (*Conn. Common School Journal*, IV, 141; also as a report of the Conn. Board of Commissioners of Common Schools, 1842, laws on child labor and education); Wm. Scoresby, *American Factories and their Female Operatives* (1845); Harriet H. Robinson, *Loom and Spindle;* Catherine E. Beecher, *Domestic Economy*, ch. xviii. Most of the books of travel listed in § 200, especially Martineau, treat of conditions of

labor, professions, and occupations. — COMMUNITIES: Thos. Skidmore, *Rights of Man to Property* (1829); A. G. Mace, *Aletheia* (Shaker doctrine); *Brief Exposition of Principles of Shakers;* J. T. Codman, *Brook Farm;* Amelia E. Russell, *Home Life of Brook Farm;* G. W. Curtis, *Early Letters to J. S. Dwight;* Georgiana B. Kirby, *Years of Experience*, chs. v–ix (Brook Farm); Adin Ballou, *Hopedale Community;* Horace Greeley, *Recollections*, chs. xix, xx, and *Reforms and Reformers;* Parke Godwin, *Doctrines of Charles Fourier;* Robert Owen, *Life, written by himself; Book of Mormon; History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints*, I, II (issued by the Reorganized Church, Lamoni, Iowa, 1897; a somewhat different version by the Utah Mormons, I–V, Salt Lake City, 1905–1909); *Millennial Star* (1840–). — OCCUPATIONS: R. W. Pomeroy, *The Young Merchant* (1841); *American Merchant* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, II, 502: 1839); G. W. Burnap, *Social Influence of Trade* (*ibid.*, IV, 415: 1841); Amos Lawrence, *Diary and Correspondence.* — COMMERCIAL ORGANIZATION: Theophilus Parsons, *Law of Business* (1857 ed.); B. F. Foster, *Merchant's Manual* (1838); S. H. Terry, *Retailer's Manual* (1869); R. G. Hazard, *Railroad Corporations and the Public* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XXI, 622: 1849); A. B. Johnson, *Private Corporations* (*ibid.*, XXIII, 626: 1850); B. V. Abbott, *General Digest of the Law of Corporations*, 1869).

Bibliography. — Most of the titles in the Bibliography of § 201 are applicable here. — Helen Marot, *Handbook of Labor Literature;* A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List of Books on Labor;* Edith Abbott, *Women in Industry*, App. F; New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 550–559 (Shakers), XIII, 183–239 (Mormons); J. P. MacLean, *Bibliography of Shaker Literature;* Lindsay Swift, *Brook Farm*, 283–292; I. W. Riley, *Founder of Mormonism*, 430–446; J. R. Commons, *Documentary History*, X, 131–145 (newspapers and other sources on industrial society).

§ 203. Development of Government and Administration, 1820–1860

Summary. — (See §§ 150–153, 158, 159, 163, 164, 166, 172–175, 178, 184, 192, 195, 206, 231.) — Political conceptions: individualism; democracy; equality; free speech; freedom of labor; perfectibility of mankind; separation of powers; checks and balances; balance of sections; religious toleration; general educa-

tion; peace; manifest destiny. — Popular government: citizenship, expatriation, naturalization, ease of movement from state to state; suffrage and office-holding, exclusions reduced, manhood suffrage, votes of aliens; parties, two normal, third parties, local parties, factions, political committees, national issues; nomination methods, primaries, caucuses, mass meetings, tours of candidates; elections, viva voce, written ballot, disturbances, count, contests. — Federal government: increase in federal powers; enlargement of presidency; activity of Congress; courts and legislation, power over state statutes, national statutes; state rights (§§ 175, 184, 192, 206, 231); strict and loose construction (§§ 178, 195); proposed constitutional amendments; civil service (§§ 176, 186, 204). —New territories (§ 193): 1836, April 20, Wisconsin Territory; 1838, June 12, Iowa Territory; 1848, Aug. 14, Oregon Territory (§ 221); 1849, Mar. 3, Minnesota Territory; 1850, Sept. 9, Utah Territory (§ 222); 1850, Dec. 13, New Mexico Territory (§ 222); 1853, Mar. 2, Washington Territory; 1854, May 30, Nebraska and Kansas territories (§ 225). — New states (§ 193): 1820, Mar. 15, Maine, 23d (§ 197); 1821, Aug. 10, Missouri, 24th (§ 197); 1836, June 15, Arkansas, 25th; 1837, Jan. 26, Michigan, 26th; 1845, Mar. 3, Florida, 27th; 1845, Dec. 29, Texas, 28th (§ 218); 1846, Dec. 28, Iowa, 29th; 1848, May 29, Wisconsin, 30th; 1850, Sept. 9, California, 31st (§ 222); 1858, May 11, Minnesota, 32d; 1859, Feb. 14, Oregon, 33d. — State governments: controversies over boundaries; constitutions, amendments, democratization; legislatures, character, influence of speakers, crude laws, corruption, lobby; administration, character and powers of governors, unrelated lesser officials, boards, state civil service; courts, elected judiciaries, decisions and reports, procedure, appeals to federal courts; interstate comity, extradition, fugitive slaves (§§ 212, 223), privileges and immunities of citizens of other states, private international law; territorial governments. — State finances: taxes; loans; public works (§ 201); repudiation (§ 213). — Local government: cities, charters, administration by councils, powers of mayors, internal divisions, police, water, fire protection, sewers, gas, subsidies for transportation (§ 201), mobs and riots; town government; county government; mixed systems. — Later development (§§ 241, 242, 249, 254, 255, 266, 272).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, ch. l, VII, 162–185; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 41–44; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, chs. xiv, xv; A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, chs. v–ix; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, I, II, especially I, chs. xxvii, II, ch. ix; C. A. Beard, *Readings in American Government*, chs. v–vii; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government* (numerous articles on federal, state, local, and municipal government); R. L. Ashley, *American Federal State*, chs. vii, viii.

Special. — Political Conceptions: C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theory*, chs. v–vii; F. J. Stimson, *Law of the Federal and State Constitutions*, bk. i; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, ch. xxi; J. B. McMaster, *Acquisition of Political, Social and Industrial Rights*, 61–123; H. J. Ford, *Rise and Growth of American Politics*, chs. xvi, xvii. — Popular Government: M. Ostrogorski, *Democracy and Party System*, chs. i–iii; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, chs. i–vi, xii; Chas. McCarthy, *Anti-Masonic Party* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, I, 365); F. Byrdsall, *Loco-Foco Party;* H. J. Desmond, *Know-Nothing Party;* F. W. Dallinger, *Nominations for Elective Office*, ch. i; J. A. C. Chandler, *Suffrage in Virginia*, chs. ii–v, and *Representation in Virginia*, chs. iii–vi; F. G. Franklin, *Naturalization*, chs. vii–xiv; E. C. Griffith, *Gerrymander.*

Federal: L. G. Tyler, *Parties and Patronage;* H. V. Ames, *Proposed Amendments;* T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional History of the United States*, lect. iii. — States: State histories (§ 37), especially E. H. Roberts, *New York*, II, ch. xxxii; T. M. Cooley, *Michigan*, ch. xi; R. G. Thwaites, *Wisconsin*, chs. x–xii; W. W. Folwell, *Minnesota*, chs. vi, vii; J. Schouler, *Constitutional Studies*, pt. iii; J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions;* Chas. Borgeaud, *Adoption and Amendment of Constitutions*, 146–191; Henry Hitchcock, *American State Constitutions;* C. S. Lobingier, *People's Law*, chs. xiii–xviii (referendum); W. F. Dodd, *Revision and Amendment of State Constitutions*, especially ch. ii, and *Government of the District of Columbia*, ch. ii; R. H. Whitten, *Public Administration in Massachusetts*, chs. i–vii *passim;* A. M. Mowry, *Dorr War;* J. D. Hammond, *Political History of New York*, II, ch. xxvii; J. W. Harry, *Maryland Constitution of 1851*; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 93–96, 137–174, 251–272; B. H. Wise, *Henry A. Wise*, ch. x; Jesse Macy, *Institutional Beginnings of a Western State;* J. A. James, *Constitution and Admission of Iowa;* B. F. Shambaugh, *History of the Constitutions of Iowa;* S. T. Spear, *Law of Extradition*, pt. ii; Max Farrand, *Legislation for the Government of Organized Territories;*

Chas. Meyerholz, *Federal Supervision over the Territories;* R. C. Hurd. *Personal Liberty,* bk.. iii (extradition). — Local Government: Local histories (§ 37), especially the city histories listed in § 200; F. J. Goodnow, *City Government,* ch. iii, and *Municipal Problems,* ch. i; J. A. Fairlie, *Municipal Administration,* 77–92; G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History,* chs. iv, x; D. E. Spencer, *Local Government in Wisconsin;* J. M. Bugbee, *City Government of Boston,* 17–30; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy,* ch. xvi; Gustavus Myers, *Tammany Hall,* chs. vii–xxi; D. D. Durand, *Finance of New York City,* chs. iii, iv; T. P. Thomas, *City Government of Baltimore,* ch. ii; S. E. Sparling, *Municipal History of Chicago,* chs. i–v; L. M. Larson, *Financial and Administrative History of Milwaukee,* chs. i–iii.

Sources. — Contemporary constitutional treatises, especially John Taylor, *Construction Construed* (1820), and *New Views of the Constitution* (1823); Thos. Sergeant, *Constitutional Law* (1822); Wm. Rawle, *Constitution* (1825); J. Kent, *Commentaries* (1826–1830); J. Story, *Commentaries* (1833), and *Conflict of Laws* (3d ed., 1846); A. P. Upshur, *Brief Inquiry into our Federal Government* (1840, a review of Story); Jas. Bayard, *Exposition* (1833); W. A. Duer, *Outlines of Constitutional Jurisprudence* (1833), and *Lectures on Constitutional Jurisprudence* (2d ed., 1856); Henry Baldwin, *General View* (1837); Timothy Walker, *Introduction to American Law* (1837); H. St. G. Tucker, *Lectures on Constitutional Law* (1843); E. F. Smith, *Commentaries* (1848); Theo. Sedgwick, *Treatise* (1857). A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America;* G. T. Poussin, *Principe Démocratique qui régit l'Union Américaine;* Achille Murat, *Principes du Gouvernement Républicain;* Francis Lieber, *On Civil Liberty,* especially ch. xxii; N. W. Senior, *Historical and Political Essays,* I, 18–34, 93–98; L. J. Jennings, *Eighty Years of Republican Government;* Jas. Spence, *American Union,* ch. ii; *Harper's Magazine,* VIII, 125–128 (political corruption); F. C. Brightly, *Cases on the Law of Elections.* Travels (§ 38), especially Chevalier, Grund, Martineau, and Raumer. Periodicals (§ 40), especially *Niles' Weekly Register.* Contemporary discussions in legal periodicals can be reached through Jones's *Index to Legal Periodical Literature,* I. State constitutions in F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutions and Charters* (poorly edited). Constitutional conventions (list of documents in Thorpe, I, pp. xv–xxxv). Other state documents (§ 43) can be reached through Bowker's *State Publication,* and Hasse's *Index* (§ 24), especially C. Z. Lincoln, *Messages from the Governors of New York,* II–V; E. B. Greene, [*Illinois*] *Governors' Letter Books* (Ill. State Hist. Library, *Collections,* IV, VII); B. F. Shambaugh, *Messages of the*

Governors of Iowa, I, II, and *Executive Journal of Iowa, 1834–1841*, and *Documentary Material relating to Iowa*, I, 76–260, II. *Statutes at Large*, III, 545, IX, 56, XI, 166 (enabling acts); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, VI, chs. xxiv, xxv (N. Y. convention of 1821); T. P. Kettell, *Debts and Finances of the States* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XVII–XXXIX *passim*); *Organic Acts for the Territories* (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong., 1 sess., No. 148), 50–136. City documents (§ 43); G. B. Butler, *Sewerage for Cities* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XII, 53).

Bibliography. — J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 302–319; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Political Parties;* F. G. Franklin, *Naturalization*, 301–305; R. C. Brooks, *Bibliography of Municipal Administration* (*Municipal Affairs*, I); McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government* (select bibliographies at the end of many articles).

§ 204. Andrew Jackson and his Policy

Summary.—Life: 1767, Mar. 15, birth; 1790–1804, offices; 1797–1798, U. S. senator; 1804–1814, Indian fighter; 1815, Jan. 8, New Orleans (§ 191); 1818, Seminole War (§ 196); 1824–1825, defeated for presidency (§ 199); 1828, elected. — Character: self-confidence; belligerency; insubordination; uprightness; hatred of opponents; "task of reform"; "retrenchment"; sense of danger from corporations; public spirit. — Friends: Lewis; Van Buren; Benton; Kendall; Blair; cabinet, "kitchen cabinet"; Eaton episode; popularity, Eastern journey. — Enemies: Clay, Adams, Calhoun, Webster, coalition. — Civil service: inaugural, "task of reform," condition of the service (§§ 186, 199); changes, dismissals, appointments, number of changes. — Foreign policy: French spoliation claims; countervailing policy; Maine and Oregon boundaries (§ 217); Texas (§ 218); Isthmian canal (§ 224). — Judiciary: previous status (§ 195); 1831, Peck impeachment; 1832, Worcester *v.* Georgia; new appointments, 1834, Taney, chief justice; 1837, Briscoe *v.* Kentucky. — Parties: Jackson men; "Democratic"; "Whig"; "Anti-Masonic."

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, 513–536, VI, ch. lvii; J. Schouler, *History*, III, ch. xiii, § 1; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, chs. ii–iv, xii, xiv, xviii; E. E. Sparks, *Men who Made the Nation*, ch. ix; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 1–21; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 11–31, and *John C. Calhoun*, ch. v;

H. J. Ford, *American Politics*, chs. xiii–xv; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, ch. iv; Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, ch. iii; E. M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, chs. vi, vii; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, ch. vii; Josiah Quincy, *J. Q. Adams*, chs. viii, ix; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 73–82, 141–146, 183, 254–258; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. iv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, chs. v, vi; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Anti-Masonic Party, Democratic Party, Jackson, Spoils System, Whig Party.

Special. — J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, I, chs. i–iii, v, II, chs. xix–xxii, xxiv, xxv, xxx, xxxii; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. vii, viii, xv, xvi; W. G. Brown, *Andrew Jackson;* C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 1–9, 113–158, 246–267, 328–341; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, chs. xii, xiii; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, chs. xv–xvii, and *James Buchanan*, I, chs. v, vi, ix, xii; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, chs. vii–x; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xii; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, ch. iv; Chas. McCarthy, *Anti-Masonic Party* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, I, 365); Lucy M. Salmon, *Appointing Power* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, I), ch. v; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, chs. iv, v, viii; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson;* A. D. Morse, *Political Influence of Andrew Jackson* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, I, 153); J. D. Hammond, *Political Parties in New York*, II; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, V, 4456–4485 (claims). — Maps: Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 4, 258.

Sources. — Debates: *Register of Debates*, VI–XIII; *Congressional Globe*, I–III (1833–1837); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X–XIII. — Documents: *Statutes at Large*, IV, V; *Register of Debates*, Apps. to VI–XIII; *Congressional Documents* (1829–1837); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 265–276, 436–438, 444, 447–449, 455, 459, 506, 518, 519, 548, III, 3–5, 20–22, 100–107, 129–145, 152–160, 178–185, 188–222, 292–308. — Contemporary Writings: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, especially VIII, IX; J. A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*, chs. iv–viii; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, chs. xxxviii–lxviii; D. Webster, *Works*, IV, 148, 179; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Daniel Webster*, 141–205; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III, V, and *Correspondence*, 271–273, 290–294, 793–816; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, II, IV, chs. vii–xi; M. Van Buren, *Political Parties*, ch. vii; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, chs. x–xiv; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, chs. vi, vii, x–xiii; C. A. Davis, *Letters of Major Jack Downing;* Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 352–375; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 158, 160; Michel Chevalier, *Society in the*

United States, letter xvi; *Calendar of the Papers of Martin Van Buren*, 94–280.

Bibliography. — Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, ch. xix; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, I, Introd.; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 287–289, 348–351; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, 387–392, (rev. ed.) 461–468; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 39, 40 (lects. 38, 39), 80 (lect. 51), 147, 213; J. M. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 181–204; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 84.

§ 205. Jackson's War on the Bank, 1829–1832

Summary. — Status of the bank: previous history (§ 194); President Biddle; amount of government deposits; relations to Treasury; branches. — Jackson's prejudice: 1829, June, Portsmouth Branch affair; Hill's influence; Ingham's correspondence; Dec., Jackson's attack. — Recharter controversy: 1829–1830, report; 1832, Jan., petition of the bank; July 2, recharter bill passes. — Jackson's veto: 1832, July 10, message; question of constitutionality; expediency; soundness; race-horse drafts; management. — Election of 1832: 1831, Dec., Clay nominated; 1832, May, first national convention (Jackson); bank an issue; Nov., Jackson reëlected. — Doctrine of a popular mandate.

General. — J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xiii, § 3; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, chs. vii, xi; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 393–403; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 41–52; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 31–52; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 167–193; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 183–224, 271–275; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. vi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. vii; Samuel Tyler, *Roger B. Taney*, I, ch. iii.

Special. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 86, 87; Holdsworth and Dewey, *First and Second Banks*, 248–265, 296–307; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 62–70; R. C. H. Catterall, *Second Bank*, chs. iv–xi, xvi–xix; Horace White, *Money and Banking*, bk. iii, ch. viii; W. L. Royall, *Andrew Jackson and the Bank;* W. M. Gouge, *Paper Money and Banking* (2d ed.), chs. xiv–xxiv; T. A. Goddard, *General History of Banks*, 98–181; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, chs. xxvii, xxviii; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, ch. xviii, and *James Buchanan*, I, chs. x, xi; W. G. Sumner,

Andrew Jackson, chs. xi–xiii; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I ch. xiii; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, ch. i; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, chs. xxix–xxxi; C. H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, ch. xvi; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xiii; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 55–59; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, § 767; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1374–1399. — MAPS: Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 130.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, VI–IX; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X, XI. — DOCUMENTS: *Register of Debates*, Apps. to VI, VIII, IX; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 46, 50–52, 54; *Niles' Weekly Register*, XXXV–XLIV *passim; Congressional Documents*, especially *House Reports*, 22 Cong., 1 sess., No. 460; *House Exec. Docs.*, 23 Cong., 1 sess., No. 523; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 462, 528, 529, 576–591, 599; Clarke and Hall, *United States Bank*, ch. vi; *American History Leaflets*, No. 24. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. xl, xli, lxvi–lxviii; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. vii, viii, VI, 94–105; D. Webster, *Works*, III, 391–447; J. A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*, chs. vi–viii; M. Van Buren, *Political Parties*, 311–362.

Bibliography. — New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, XII, 351–356; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to the Banks of the United States;* R. C. H. Catterall, *Second Bank*, 513–526; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 40 (lect. 43); Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 324; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 348–351; footnotes to Von Holst.

§ 206. Tariff and Nullification, 1828–1833

Summary. — Previous status: tariff of 1824 (§ 199). — Early threats of nullification (§§ 171, 184, 199); 1825–1828, South Carolina protests. — Nullification stated: 1828, tariff act (§ 199); 1828, Calhoun's "Exposition"; Madison's opposition; 1828, 1829, act declared unconstitutional by Georgia and South Carolina. — Nullification developed: 1830, Jan., Webster-Hayne debate; April 13, Jackson's Union toast; May, breach with Calhoun. — 1831, July, "Address" of South Carolina legislature. — Tariff of 1832: June, Gallatin's memorial; debates; July 14, act passed. — Nullification accomplished: 1832, Oct., convention summoned in South Carolina; Nov. 24, Ordinance of Nullification; "Exposition" and "Address"; Dec., Calhoun resigns vice presidency. — Coercion: 1832, Dec. 11, Jackson's proclamation; Dec. 20, South

Carolina statutes: military preparation; 1833, Jan. 6, nullification message; Jan., Feb., force bill; Webster-Calhoun debate. — Compromise of 1833: Feb. 12, Clay's proposition; March 2, force act passed and compromise tariff passed; March 16, Nullification Ordinance repealed. — Later development: fate of the tariff (§§ 214, 220); secession (§ 232).

General. — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, ch. xiv; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, ch. viii; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, 139–149, (rev. ed.) 142–153; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 246–254; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. v; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xiii, § iii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, chs. liv, lviii; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, chs. v, vi, ix; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 21–38; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 158–161, 193–214; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. x; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, ch. xix; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed), 183–198; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, ch. iv, and *Men who made the Nation*, ch. x; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. vi; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Nullification; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, II, 66–71, IV, 454–456.

Special. — H. von Holst, *History*, I, ch. xii, and *John C. Calhoun*, ch. iv; Gaillard Hunt, *John C. Calhoun*, 60–197; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, chs. vi, vii; J. B. McMaster, *Daniel Webster*, 151–225; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession;* D. F. Houston, *Critical Study of Nullification;* U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), 117–138; T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne*, 32–45, 93–98, 230–377; W. P. Trent, *Southern Statesmen*, 153–193 (Calhoun); G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, chs. xvi–xix, and *James Buchanan*, I, ch. ix; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. x, xiii; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, ch. xxvi; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, chs. vi–xii; M. J. Wright, *General Scott*, ch. iv; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 202–218; C. H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, ch. xvi; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, chs. xxxii–xxxiv; A. H. Stephens, *War Between the States*, I, colloquies, vii–x; J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, 298–381; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, ch. viii; Edward Young, *Customs Tariff Legislation*, pp. lxviii–lxxxviii; J. D. Goss, *Tariff Administration*, ch. iii; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, I, chs. ix, x; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 68–112. — Maps: Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 130.

Sources. — Official Debates and Documents: *Register of*

Debates, VI–IX (especially IX, pt. ii, App.); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XI, XII; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 449, 450, 523–525, 597–599, 610–632, 640–656; *Niles' Weekly Register*, XXXV–XLIV *passim; Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 22 Cong., 2 sess., I; General Court of Massachusetts, *State Papers on Nullification.* — COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 233 (Hayne), 248 (Webster), 303 (Calhoun); H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 152–189; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 44, 45, 47–49, 53, 55, 56; *American History Leaflets*, No. 30; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, §§ 159, 161; A. Gallatin, *Memorial*, also in F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 108–213; P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics* App. F. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, VI, and *Correspondence*, 219–223, 269–328; *Calhoun by his Political Friends* (Southern Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, VII), 164–169, 269–285; D. Webster, *Works*, III, 248–355, 448–505, and *Private Correspondence*, I, 483–535; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. viii, ix, V, 640–680, VI, 5–140; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. xlvi, lxix, lxxviii; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 85–125; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, I, II; J. Madison, *Writings* (Congress ed.), III, 635–664, IV, 3–425, (Hunt ed.), IX, 314–607 *passim*, and *Private Correspondence; Letters on Nullification* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VI, 736, VII, 92); B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, chs. vii–ix.

Bibliography. — D. F. Houston, *Nullification*, App. G; A. R. Hasse, *Books on Political Rights* (N. Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 132–136); H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 133–189 *passim;* D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 77; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 325, 326; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 40 (lects. 42, 44), 148, 149; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, I, 436, 437; footnotes to Von Holst.

§ 207. Removal of the Deposits, 1833–1837

Summary. — Status: 1816, clause in the Bank Act (§ 194); 1832, bank recharter vetoed (§ 205); House resolution affirming safety. — Removal accomplished: 1833, controversy over draft on France; July, plan for deposit in state banks; Sept. 18, "paper read to the cabinet"; Sept. 23, Secretary Duane removed; Sept. 26, Secretary Taney gives the order. — The issue: question of a contract; secretary's discretion; presidential responsibility. —

Controversy with the Senate: 1833, Dec. 3, Jackson's defense; Dec. 10, 26, Clay's resolution of censure; 1834, March 28, modified resolution passed; April 15, Jackson's protest; May 12, Senate's counter protest; 1837, Jan. 16, expunging resolutions. — Fate of the bank: 1836, charter expires; Pennsylvania charter; 1837, 1839, failure (§ 213). — Currency questions: state banks; government deposits in pet banks; 1834, June 28, 16 to 1 ratio act; "hard money"; locofoco faction (§ 213); 1836, July 11, "Specie Circular."

General. — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, chs. xv, xviii; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, ch. ix; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xiv, § i; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, ch. lix; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, ch. xiii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 52–62; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 215–244, 317, 328; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 225–245, 258–264; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. vi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. vii.

Special. — W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. xiii, xiv; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, ch. xxix; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, chs. xx–xxiii, and *James Buchanan*, I, chs. xii, xiii; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 52–79; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, chs. iii–v; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, chs. xxxvi–xxxix; Samuel Tyler, *Roger B. Taney*, 191–249; R. C. H. Catterall, *Second Bank*, chs. xii–xv; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 70–84; A. B. Hepburn, *Coinage and Currency*, ch. iii, App., 479–486; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, ch. iv; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 88–90; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currencies*, ch. xxi.

Sources. — Debates: *Register of Debates*, X–XIII; *Congressional Globe*, I–IV; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XII, XIII. — Documents: *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 23 Cong., 1 sess., V; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 600, III, 5–19, 30–32, 36, 39–48, 69–94, 108–112, 163–168, 246–253, 282–288, 301–306; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 108–110, 116–118; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 314–323, 630, 631; *American History Leaflets*, No. 24; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), I, 320 (Benton); *Niles' Weekly Register*, XLVI–L; *Register of Debates*, Apps. to X–XIII. — Contemporary Writings: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IX; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. xcii–cxi; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III, and *Correspondence*, 329–349, 368; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. ix, x, VI, 145–203, 264–278; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*,

II; D. Webster, *Works*, III, 506–551, IV, 3–147, 200, 235, 297–300; Wm. Leggett, *Political Writings*, I *passim*, II, 181; Jas. Buchanan, *Works*, III, 114–126; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, ch. xiv; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 162.

Bibliography. — A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 40 (lect. 43); Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 289–329 *passim;* see also bibliography of § 205.

§ 208. Territorial Questions and Surplus Revenue, 1829–1841

Summary. — Indians: Creek conflict (§ 199); 1826–1829, Cherokee conflict; 1830, Dec., Tassel's case; 1831, March, Cherokee Nation *v.* Georgia; 1832, Worcester *v.* Georgia (§ 204); 1832, Black Hawk war; 1834, Indian Territory created; 1835, removal; Seminole war begins. — Internal improvements: previous status (§ 199); 1830, May 27, Jackson's Maysville Road veto; east and west; 1831–1832, increased expenditure. — Territorial boundaries: 1836, Arkansas admitted (§ 203); 1836, Texas (§ 218). — Public lands: previous status (§ 194); 1820–1831, normal sales; 1830, Foot resolution (§ 206); 1832–1836, speculative sales; connection with wild-cat banks; 1836, specie circular (§ 207); 1834–1841, land grants; 1837, panic (§ 213); 1841, Sept. 4, preëmption act. — Surplus: of 1806 (§ 186); of 1819 (§ 194); of 1836–1837; connection with the tariff (§ 206). — Distribution: Clay's policy; Calhoun's attitude; 1833, pocket veto of Clay's act; 1836, June 23, "deposit act"; 1837, Calhoun's bill; payment of three installments; effects of financial crisis (§ 213); fate of remaining "deposit."

General. — T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. vii; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 164–182; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, ch. xxiv; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xiv, § ii; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 161–166, 244–246, 250–256, 260–265, 292–306; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, chs. lv, lxii, lxiii; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, chs. viii, x, xv, xvi; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, chs. ii, iii, v; M. J. Wright, *General Scott*, 50–59, chs. v–vii; O. O. Howard, *General Taylor*, ch. v.

Special. — J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, chs. xxiii, xxxi; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, chs. ix, xiv; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 177–194; J. W. Kearny, *American Finances*, ch. iv; E. G. Bourne,

Surplus Revenue of 1837; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 115–131; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 91–94; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. xiii; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), I, chs. xix, xx; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 137–142; E. R. Johnson, *River and Harbor Bills* (Am. Acad. of Polit. and Soc. Sci., *Annals*, II, 782); E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 83–94; Shosuke Sato, *Land Question*, 148–165; F. E. Stevens, *Black Hawk War;* U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), 73–86; Annie H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation* (*ibid.*, 1906, I), ch. viii; C. C. Royce, *Cherokee Nation* (Bureau of Am. Ethnology, *Fifth Report*), 229–298; K. W. Colgrove, *Attitude of Congress toward the Pioneers, 1820–1850* (*Iowa Jour. of History and Politics*, IX, 196). — MAPS: Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 178, 182.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, VI, XIV (1829–1837); *Congressional Globe*, I–IX (1833–1841); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X–XIV. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, IV, V, VII; *American State Papers, Indian*, II, *Public Lands*, VI–VIII; *Congressional Documents;* J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 451, 452, 457–459, 478, 483–494, 508–523, 536–541, 565, 596, 597, 600–604, 638, III, 27–29, 32, 55–69, 107, 108, 113, 118–123, 160–163, 171–173, 239–246, 253, 254, 260, 391, 392, 496–502, 616–618; *Niles' Weekly Register; Register of Debates*, Apps. to VI–XIV; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 110–116; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 496–508; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 15–17. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. xliv, li, lxx, lxxi, xc, cxxii–cxxviii, cxxxvi–cxliii, cxlvi, cliv–clxi; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III, V, and *Correspondence*, 349–362; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, VI; D. Webster, *Works*, IV, 238–258; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII–X; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II; Michel Chevalier, *Society in the United States*, letters iii–vi, viii, xiii, xiv.

Bibliography. — A. H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation*, 413–438; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 85; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 323, 328; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 322; E. G. Bourne, *Surplus Revenue*, 151–161; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 39 (lects. 40, 41, 45); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331.

CHAPTER XXVI

SLAVERY AND TEXAS, 1830–1848

§ 209. Negro Slavery from 1830 to 1860

Summary. — The master race: slaveholders, large, small; non-slaveholders, independent farmers, poor whites, immigrants; social and political leadership. — The Negro: races; conditions, physical, intellectual, religious; character; associations; race admixture. — Free Negroes: status in the North; status in the South; political and social discriminations. — Slave life: appearance; clothing; houses; food; cost of maintenance; families; recreations; old age; sickness and death; education; slave codes. — Slaves at work: variety of employment; hiring out; supervision; tasks; punishments; privileges; degree of efficiency. — Sale: private; auction; hardships; reënslavement for jail fees; market value; dealers. — Freedom: laws regulating manumission; by will; buying freedom; free papers. — Fugitives (§§ 212, 223). — Trade (§ 212). — Insurrections: colonial (§ 165); 1800, Gabriel's; 1822, Denmark Vesey's; 1831, Nat Turner's; 1859, John Brown (§ 228); fear of insurrections.

General. — Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 76–89; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*, chs. ii–vi; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. xv; B. T. Washington, *Story of the Negro*, I, chs. viii–x; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, ch. xix; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 234–243; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, ch. xiv; G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, ch. xii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VII, 228–248; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xvi, xxv; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, ch. i; Adam Gurowski, *America and Europe*, ch. v; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, ch. iv; Friedrich Kapp, *Sklavenfrage in den Vereinigten Staaten;* Jas. Spence, *American Union*, ch. iv; J. F. Scharf, *Maryland*, III, ch. xli; T. D. Jervey, *Robert Y. Hayne*, 130–137; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of*

American Government, article Slavery as a Labor System. See also §§ 230, 240.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, ch. iv; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 198–210, 226–240, V, 73–85, 108–143, 152–274, 398–404; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, chs. iv–ix; M. B. Hammond, *Cotton Industry*, bk. i, chs. i–iii; U. B. Phillips, *Economic Cost of Slaveholding* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XX, 257), and *Southern Black Belt* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 798), and *Economics of the Plantation* (*S. Atlantic Quart.*, II, 231), and *Plantation as a Civilizing Factor* (*Sewanee Review*, XII, 257); W. G. Brown, *Lower South*, 3–82; B. T. Washington, *Frederick Douglass*, chs. i–iii; Samuel Seabury, *American Slavery Justified;* Wm. Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 7–206, 371–395; Wm. Goodell, *American Slave Code;* R. Hildreth, *Despotism in America;* T. R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Law of Negro Slavery*, I; B. B. Munford, *Virginia's Attitude*, chs. xix–xxv; Henry Sherman, *Slavery in the United States;* J. R. Brackett, *Negro in Maryland*, chs. iii-v; J. C. Ballagh, *Slavery in Virginia;* J. S. Bassett, *Slavery in the State of North Carolina;* A. T. Bledsoe, *Essay on Liberty and Slavery;* Wm. Chambers, *American Slavery and Colour*, 115–181, App. I; Albert Barnes, *Scriptural Views of Slavery;* G. B. Cheever, *Guilt of Slavery;* Lydia M. Child, *Oasis;* Augustus Cochin, *Results of Slavery;* Geo. Fitzhugh, *Cannibals All;* D. R. Goodwin, *Southern Slavery in its Present Aspects;* J. H. Hopkins, *Views of Slavery;* L. R. Marsh, *Writings and Speeches of Alvan Stewart;* Samuel Nott, *Slavery and the Remedy;* W. S. Drewry, *Southampton Insurrection;* T. W. Higginson, *Travellers and Outlaws*, 185–326; Joshua Coffin, *Some of the Principal Slave Insurrections.* — MAPS: W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 204 (slavery and products).

Sources. — A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxvi, IV, ch. iv. — SOUTHERN VIEW: U. B. Philips in J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, I, II; H. R. Helper, *Impending Crisis;* F. L. Riley, *Diary of a Mississippi Planter* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, X, 305); T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, ch. xxxii; Susan D. Smedes, *Memorials of a Southern Planter* (Dabney); J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II–VI; Wm. Harper and others, *Pro-Slavery Argument.* — NORTHERN VIEW: F. L. Olmsted, *Journey in the Seaboard Slave States*, and *Texas Journey*, and *Back Country* (extracts from the above three books republished as *Cotton Kingdom*); Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, pt. i; Frances A. Kemble, *Journal of a Residence on a Georgia Plantation;* Wm. Birney, *James G. Birney*, chs. i–xi; Nehemiah Adams, *South Side View of Slavery;*

F. C. Adams, *Uncle Tom at Home;* W. L. Garrison, *Selections from Writings and Speeches;* Jas. Stuart, *Three Years in North America*, II, chs. iii–ix; Mrs. K. E. R. Pickard, *Kidnapped and the Ransomed* (Peter Still); Solomon Northup, *Twelve Years a Slave;* E. H. Botume, *First Days among the Contrabands.*

Bibliography. — W. E. B. DuBois, *Select Bibliography of Negro American; The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 240, V, 80–404 *passim;* J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, footnotes to ch. iv; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xxii, and *Manual*, § 42 (lects. 46, 47); Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. E; J. C. Ballagh, *Slavery in Virginia*, 149–154; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 85; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 40, 41.

§ 210. The Abolition Movement, 1830–1850

Summary. — Argument for slavery: scripture; ancient precedents; inferiority of the Negro; good of the Negro; good of the whites; basis of democracy; economic advantages; impossibility of freedom. — Argument against slavery: unproductive; unchristian; limited to agriculture; exhausted lands; against improvements; degrading; demoralizing to the masters; inhuman; contrary to rights of man; encourages political oligarchies; sectional. — Rise of abolitionists: colonial (§ 165); before 1808 (§ 180); after 1808 (§ 197); 1816, American Colonization Society (§ 197). — Foreign movement: 1830, 1837, British abolition; 1848, French abolition. — Eastern movement: Benjamin Lundy; 1831, Wm. Lloyd Garrison, *Liberator;* 1837, Wendell Phillips; Gerrit Smith; J. G. Whittier; 1845, Theodore Parker; J. R. Lowell. — Western movement: societies; 1826, Western Reserve College; 1832, Lane Seminary; 1833, Oberlin College; S. P. Chase; early fugitive cases. — Southern abolitionists: 1834, James G. Birney; Grimké sisters; C. M. Clay. — Organization: 1832, state and local societies; English agitators; George Thompson; 1833, American Anti-Slavery Society; 1840, separation of national society; 1840, American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society; 1840, "Liberty Party." — Northern opposition: 1831–1834, negro schools destroyed; 1834–1838, riots, especially 1835, Garrison mob, 1837, Lovejoy, 1838, Pennsylvania Hall; public meetings. — Southern sentiment: legislation; demands on the North for restrictions;

slave codes; disappearance of anti-slavery sentiment; pro-slavery propaganda.

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 38–75; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. ix–xi; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xvii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, 231–253; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 89–96; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, ch. v; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, ch. vi; G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, chs. iv–vii; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XI, 477; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 397–404.

Special. — H. von Holst, *History*, II, 80–120, 219–235; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, chs. x, xii–xvii, and *Salmon Portland Chase*, 28–71, 83–94; T. C. Smith, *Liberty and Free-Soil Parties*, chs. ii–v; C. E. Merriam, *American Political Theories*, ch. vi; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 185–202; B. B. Munford, *Virginia's Attitude*, chs. viii, ix, xv–xvii, xxx, xxxi; N. D. Harris, *Negro Servitude in Illinois*, 68–156; J. E. Cutler, *Lynch-Law*, ch. iv; B. T. Washington, *Frederick Douglass*, chs. iv–viii; C. W. Chesnutt, *Frederick Douglass;* T. R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Law of Negro Slavery*, and *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, chs. xv, xvii; R. Toombs, in A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 636–647; Wm. Birney, *James G. Birney*, chs. xii–xviii; G. W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, chs. i–iii; Lewis Tappan, *Arthur Tappan*, chs. viii–xx; Oliver Johnson, *William Lloyd Garrison;* Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery;* Augustus Cochin, *Results of Emancipation;* J. W. Massie, *America;* H. A. Herbert, *Abolition Crusade;* John Weiss, *Theodore Parker*, II, ch. xviii; O. B. Frothingham, *Theodore Parker*, and *Gerrit Smith;* W. W. Story, *Joseph Story*, I, ch. xi.

Sources. — Documents: *Liberator; Anti-Slavery Standard; Emancipator; Annual Reports* of the American Anti-Slavery Society, American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, and the state societies; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 63; T. W. Owen, *Alabama Protest Against Abolitionism* (*Gulf State Hist. Mag.*, II, 26). — Contemporary Writings: Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison;* Catherine H. Birney, *Grimké Sisters;* J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; F. B. Sanborn, *John Brown*, chs. i–vi; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II; *Diary and Correspondence of Salmon P. Chase* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, II), 107–116, 459–467; J. C. Calhoun, *Correspondence*, 665–673, 1045–1049, 1167–1169, 1177–1179; J. R. Giddings, *Speeches in Congress;* Lydia M. Child, *Isaac T. Hopper;* Anna D. Hallowell, *James and Lucretia Mott;* Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), II, 102 (Phillips); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch.

xxviii; *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 78, 79, 81. — REMINISCENCES: B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, ch. xv; Geo. Thompson, *Prison Life and Reflections;* Levi Coffin, *Reminiscences;* J. F. Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days;* S. J. May, *Recollections of Our Anti-Slavery Conflict;* Parker Pillsbury, *Acts of the Anti-Slavery Apostles;* C. M. Clay, *Life written by himself*, I, chs. i–iv.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 325, and *Boston*, III, 395; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xxii, and *Manual*, §§ 41, 42 (lect. 48), 150; Samuel May, Jr., *Catalogue of Anti-Slavery Publications;* Library of Cornell University, *Bulletins*, I, 229–231.

§ 211. Public Controversy as to Slavery, 1835–1844

Summary. — Abolition movement (§ 210). — Anti-slavery men in Congress: Miner, Slade, J. Q. Adams, Giddings. — District of Columbia: status of slavery; 1801–1825, movements for emancipation; fugitives (§ 212); sales for jail fees (§ 209); interstate trade (§ 212); focus for attack. — Question of the mails: "incendiary publications"; 1835, Aug., Postmaster-General Kendall's letter; 1836, Calhoun's bill; "freedom of the press."— Abolition petitions: earlier objections (§ 180); 1820–1830, on District of Columbia; J. Q. Adams's attitude; 1836, Calhoun's proposition; Buchanan's compromise. — "Gag resolutions" in the House: 1836, May, Pinckney's (1st); 1837, Jan., Hawes's (2d); 1837, Dec., Patton's (3d); 1838, Dec., Atherton's (4th); 1840, Jan., Johnson's (5th); 1844, repeal. — Attempted censures: 1837, Feb., John Quincy Adams; 1842, Jan., Adams; 1842, March, Giddings.

General. — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, chs. xvii, xxi; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, chs. lxi, lxvii, and *Daniel Webster*, ch. xi; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xviii; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xiv, § ii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, 253–257; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 96–100; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 267–282, 313–316, 373–391, 410–418; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, I, 570–582; Gaillard Hunt, *John C. Calhoun*, 229–238; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, ch. xvii; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. viii; Wm. Whiting, *War Powers*, ch. viii; Alex. Harris, *Political Conflict in America*, chs. v–vii; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 404–410.

Special. — H. von Holst, *History*, II, 120–146; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia;* Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-*

Slavery, chs. x–xviii, xxii–xxxvi, and *Views of American Constitutional Law;* Wm. Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 217, 369, 397–400; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 392, 450, 452; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, ch. xxii, and *James Buchanan*, I, ch. xiii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, ch. iii; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. xii–xiv; Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. ix–xii; B. H. Wise, *Henry A. Wise*, ch. iv; Adam Gurowski, *Slavery in History;* Chas. Elliot, *Sinfulness of American Slavery;* E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, ch. xxx.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, XII–XIV (1835–1837); *Congressional Globe*, especially II–XII (1835–1844), XXI (1849–1850), LIV–LVI (1860–1861); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIII–XVI (1835–1850). — DOCUMENTS: *Register of Debates*, Apps. to XII–XIV; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, III, 175; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 214–223; newspapers of the day (§ 41), especially *Niles' Weekly Register*, XLIII–LXVI, *National Era*, *New York Tribune*, *Liberator*, *Richmond Whig*, *Charleston Mercury*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. cxxix–cxxxi, II, chs. xxxiii, xxxvi, xxxvii; W. Van Buren, *Political Parties;* J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II–VI, and *Correspondence*, 357, 361, 368, 386–391, 423, 424, 444; D. Webster, *Works*, IV, 230; J. Buchanan, *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, ch. i; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, VI, 355–375, 595–600; Jos. Hodgson, *Cradle of the Confederacy*, chs. ix, x; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 180, 181, 184; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), II, 115 (Adams).

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 322–324; J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), §§ 1915–1923; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 42 (lect. 49); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 181–204.

§ 212. International and Interstate Status of Slavery, 1830–1850

Summary. — National government involved: District of Columbia (§ 211); territories (§§ 221, 222, 225, 228); fugitives; extradition; domestic trade; rights of colored citizens; foreign relations. — Fugitives (§ 209): usual methods; advertisements; return in slave states; northward flights; "underground railroad," early "personal liberty" bills. — Important cases: 1837, Matilda; 1840, Van Zandt; 1842, Prigg; 1842, Latimer; 1847, Kennedy. — Interstate extradition: 1835, Williams; 1837, Maine·

Georgia; 1839, New York-Virginia; 1859, Kentucky *v.* Dennison. — Free negroes: 1822, 1835, South Carolina negro seaman acts; 1844, Hoar's mission; question of temporary sojourn; question of transit of slaves over free states (§ 228). — Foreign relations: Hayti; Liberia (§ 197); negroes carried away by troops (§ 191); fugitives to Mexico and Canada; slave-trade regulations; 1841, Quintuple treaty; 1842, Ashburton treaty on joint cruising (§ 217). — Slave vessel cases: 1830, Comet; 1834, Encomium and Enterprise; 1839, L'Amistad; 1840, British indemnity; 1841, Creole.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, VII, 248–270; Emlin McClain, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xxxiii; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, ch. x; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 101–107; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xiii; Lawrence's *Wheaton*, note 42.

Special. — H. von Holst, *History*, II, 312–329; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xix, and *Salmon Portland Chase*, 71–83; *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 217–226, 410–413, V, 124–129; Frederic Bancroft, *William H. Seward*, I, 101–107; J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, chs. ii, vii–xiii; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, II, ch. xxiv; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, 408–412; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquy xiv; Wm. Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 207–363; G. W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, chs. iv–vi; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, ch. ii; W. H. Collins, *Domestic Slave Trade;* W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad;* W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave Trade*, chs. ix–xi; H. C. Carey, *Slave Trade.* — Maps: A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 126, 230 (trade and underground routes); W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad*, 113 (routes); W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 206 (trade and underground routes).

Sources. — Debates: *Register of Debates*, XII–XIV (1835–1837); *Congressional Globe* (especially 1835–1837, 1841–1843, 1847–1850, 1859–1860). — Documents: *Register of Debates*, Apps. to XII–XIV; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 208, 310; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 27 Cong., 3 sess., I; *House Exec. Docs.*, 27 Cong., 2 sess., II, No. 116, V, No. 242; 28 Cong., 1 sess., IV, No. 83; *Senate Reports*, 35 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 36; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 204, 243–247, 250, IV, 232; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 69; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 232–240; *Niles' Weekly Register;* contemporary newspapers (§ 41); *Opinions of the Attorneys-General*, I, 659, II, 426. —

Contemporary Writings: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII–X; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. xlix, xcviii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, III–V; D. Webster, *Works*, VI, 290, 303–318, 391–405; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, II, 400–413; Wm. Still, *Underground Railroad;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 179, 183; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 140.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 494; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 232, 233, 237–239; W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave Trade*, App. C; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. D; W. H. Collins, *Domestic Slave Trade*, 140–154; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 42 (lect. 50), § 80 (lect. 52); *The South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 129.

§ 213. Van Buren's Administration, 1837–1841

Summary. — Election of 1836: no Whig nomination; Jackson's influence; Van Buren elected. — Parties: Whig opposition; Locofocos; Conservatives; 1839, Nov., New Jersey contested elections. — Foreign policy: 1836, question of Texas (§ 218); 1837, Caroline affair; 1838–1839, Aroostook War (§ 217); 1841, McLeod incident. — Finances: 1837, panic; 1837, Oct. 2, "deposit act" suspended (§ 208); 1839, second crisis; 1840, July 4, Independent Treasury established; 1841, Aug. 13, repealed; 1846, reëstablished (§ 220). — Slavery questions (§§ 210–212). — State finances: internal improvements (§ 201); repudiations. — Sectional contest for the west: railroad plans (§ 201); land politics (§ 201). — Labor and politics (§ 202).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, chs. lxiv–lxvi, lxviii; Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, ch. xvii; A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, ch. xx; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 62–72, 82–85; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 289–291, 342–373, 392–410, 430–442; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. viii; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, chs. xix, xx; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, 244–261; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. xiv, xv; H. von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, ch. vii; W. M. Meigs, *Thomas Hart Benton*, 264–271; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, chs. ix, x; F. Bancroft, *William H. Seward*, I, 111–116; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, 722–730.

Special. — E. M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, chs. viii–x; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 146–177, 194–217; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, ch. xv; J. C. Dent, *Last Forty Years of Canada*, I, ch. viii; G. S. Callender, *Economic History*, ch. xi; Katharine Coman, *Industrial*

History (rev. ed.), 227–231; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 96–101, 104, and *State Banking before the Civil War;* J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 84–87; David Kinley, *Independent Treasury*, 16–30; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 131–161; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currency*, chs. xxii–xxv; *Financial Revulsions of 1837 and 1857* (*Bankers' Magazine*, XII, 390); *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), III, 346; W. A. Scott, *Repudiation of State Debts*, 33–50; G. T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, chs. xiii–xv; W. L. MacKenzie, *Martin Van Buren;* Gustavus Myers, *Tammany Hall*, chs. xii–xiv; J. D. Hammond, *Political Parties in New York*, II, chs. xl, xli; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, II, ch. ii; B. A. Konkle, *Thomas Williams*, I, chs. viii, ix; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, 131–142; O. E. Tiffany, *United States and Canadian Rebellion of 1837* (Buffalo Hist. Soc., *Publications*, VIII, 1). — MAPS: A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 8 (settlement, 1840), 52 (U. S., 1840), 300 (presidential election); G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 4 (N. America, 1840).

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 25 Cong., 26 Cong.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIII, XIV; *Statutes at Large*, V; *Congressional Documents* (Indexes, § 26); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, III, 313–624; *Niles' Weekly Register*, LI–LVIII; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 118–131; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 117–127, 323–327, 633; contemporary newspapers (§ 41). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; M. Van Buren, *Political Parties*, ch. ix; *Calendar of the Papers of Martin Van Buren;* T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. i–lix; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, III, and *Correspondence*, 371–462; *Calhoun by his Political Friends*, Southern Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, VII, 285–291, 353, 354; Nancy N. Scott, *Memoir of Hugh Lawson White*, chs. xiii–xvii; Wm. Leggett, *Political Writings;* H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. x, xi, VI, 279–436; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II; D. Webster, *Works*, V, 3–54; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 126–182, 425–453; J. Buchanan, *Works*, III, 127–130, 252–258, 324, 337, IV, 116–123; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, chs. xiv–xvi; J. A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*, ch. viii; F. Byrdsall, *Loco-Foco Party;* Horace Greeley, *Recollections*, ch. xvi.

Bibliography. — New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, XII, 356–361 (money and banking); D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 95; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 44 (lect. 51); J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 352, 353; O. E. Tiffany, *United States and Canadian Rebellion*, 115–118.

§ 214. The Whigs and Tyler, 1840–1844

Summary. — Election of 1840: Van Buren; Harrison; "Tippecanoe and Tyler too" campaign; Harrison elected. — 1841, President Harrison: cabinet; policy foreshadowed; April 4, death. — 1841, Tyler's breach with the Whigs: Clay's schemes; Aug. 17, subtreasury repeal (§ 213); Aug. 16, "Fiscal Bank" veto; Sept. 9, "Fiscal Corporation" veto; resignation of the cabinet; Webster remains. — Tyler's policy: cabinet changes; 1843, May 8, Webster retires; "corporal's guard." — Tariff of 1842: 1833–1841, effect of the Compromise of 1833 (§ 206); lack of revenue; 1841, Sept. 11, temporary tariff; 1842, June 29, first tariff veto; Aug. 9, second veto; Aug. 20, tariff act passed; effect (§ 220). — Slavery questions (§§ 210–212). — Foreign affairs (§ 217). — State questions: 1842, Dorr rebellion in Rhode Island; 1839–1846, anti-rent agitation in New York.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, VI, chs. lxix, lxx, VII, chs. lxxi, lxxii, and *Daniel Webster*, 253–263, 276; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, chs. iii, iv, xii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 85–100; C. H. Peck, *Jacksonian Epoch*, 410–430, 442–472; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, ch. xi; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, 262–287; G. T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, ch. xvi.

Special. — H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, chs. viii–xii; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, I. ch. xx, II, chs. i–vi, III, 84–114; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, chs. xxii, xxiii; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, II, chs. xxvi, xxvii; H. von Holst, *History*, II, chs. v, vi; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, chs. xvi, xvii; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xvi, and *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. xi; Ed. Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. lxxxviii–xcii (*Cong. Docs.*, Serial No. 1512); H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, chs. xiv–xvi; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 102, 103; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 87–90; David Kinley, *Independent Treasury*, 30–35; M. Ostrogorski, *Democracy and Political Parties*, II, 71–79; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, 142–157; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 78, 79, 729, 730, and *American Constitutional System*, ch. vi; J. S. Jenkins, *Silas Wright*, 179–226; A. M. Mowry, *Dorr War;* Dan King, *Thomas W. Dorr;* E. R. Potter, *Considerations on Questions on Rhode Island;* E. P. Cheyney, *Anti-Rent Agitation in New York;* Jay Gould, *Delaware County*. — Maps: A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 300 (presidential election).

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 26–28 Congs.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIV, XV; *Statutes at Large*, V; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 27 Cong., 1 sess.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, IV, 5–72, 80–89, 99, 102–111, 152–154, 180–193, 199–209, 220–227, 233, 255, 264–268, 283–307, 330–333, 346–348; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 131–143; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 127–134; *Niles' Weekly Register*, LVIII–LXIII; Luther *v.* Borden (7 *Howard*, 1); J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, § 217 (Caroline). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: D. Webster, *Works*, II, VI, 247–269, and *Private Correspondence*, II, 76–117, 140–152, 170–189; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, ch. xi, VI, 406–561; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II, 384–436, 482–562; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, III, IV, and *Correspondence*, 448–514, 816–829, 844; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. lviii–cxxxiv; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, X, XI; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 212–353; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, I, chs. xii–xvii; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, chs. xvii–xxiii; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, chs. v, vi; Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences of Webster*, 160–163.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 353–355; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, ch. xxi; New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, XII, 361, 362 (money and banking); A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 44 (lect. 51); A. M. Mowry, *Dorr War*, App. F.

§ 215. Exploration of the Far West to 1850

Summary. — Geographic provinces: prairies and the Great Plains; Rocky Mountains; Columbia Plateau ("Inland Empire"); Colorado Plateau; Interior Basin (the Desert); Pacific Coast. — Western Indians. — Exploration by sea (§§ 105, 112, 187): 1542–1543, Cabrillo and Ferrelo; 1579, Drake; 1602–1603, Vizcaino and Aguilar; 1741, Bering; 1769, Perez; 1778, Cook; 1792, Gray, the *Columbia;* 1792, Vancouver. — Exploration by land: French and the Sea of the West (§ 109); 1714, Saint Denis; 1724, Bourgmont; 1740, Mallet brothers; 1731–1743, Vérendrye family. — Spanish forts and missions in California: 1769, Portolá and Father Junípero Serra; 1776, foundation of the presidio and mission of San Francisco. — American explorations: 1803–1806, Lewis and Clark (§ 187); 1806–1807, Pike (§ 187); 1811–1812, the Astorians (§ 187); 1820, Long; Hudson's Bay Company in the

Oregon country; Rocky Mountain fur traders; 1823–1824, Ashley's men; 1826–1829, Jedediah Smith; 1842–1846, Frémont.

General. — J. Winsor, *Mississippi Basin*, 30–32, 193–217; F. Parkman, *Half Century of Conflict*, I, ch. xv, II, ch. xvi; Livingston Farrand, *Basis of American History*, chs. iv, viii, ix, xii; F. J. Turner, *New West*, ch. viii; Jos. Schafer, *Pacific Northwest*, chs. i–viii, and *Acquisition of Oregon, Discovery* (Univ. of Oregon, *Bulletin*, n. s., VI); E. S. Meany, *Washington*, chs. i–xiv; Caleb Cushing, *Nautical Discovery* (*N. Am. Review*, XLVIII, 109), and *Discovery beyond the Rocky Mountains* (*ibid.*, L, 75); G. R. Hebard, *Pathbreakers;* Randall Parrish, *Great Plains*, pt. i; F. W. Hodge, *Handbook of American Indians;* R. I. Dodge, *Our Wild Indians;* A. C. Laut, *Story of the Trapper*, chs. i–viii, and *Conquest of the Great Northwest*, I, ch. xx, II; Geo. Bryce, *Hudson's Bay Company*, chs. xxxix, xl; C. M. Harvey, *Fur Traders* (*Atlantic*, CIII, 297, 523).

Special. — Geography: J. W. Powell, *Physiographic Regions*, 85–100; Ellen C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, chs. x, xi; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, chs. viii–x; N. S. Shaler, *United States*, I, ch. iii; Isaiah Bowman, *Forest Physiography*, chs. ix–xxiii; R. T. Hill, *Physical Geography of the Texas Region* (*Topog. Atlas of U. S.*); W. D. Johnson, *High Plains* (U. S. Geolog. Survey, *Report*, XXI, pt. iv); W. E. Smythe, *Conquest of Arid America;* T. M. Prudden, *On the Great American Plateau;* J. C. Van Dyke, *The Desert;* W. H. Hall, *Physical Data and Statistics of California;* A. G. McAdie, *Climatology of California;* D. S. Jordan, *California and Californians;* Josiah Royce, *Race Questions*, No. 4; P. T. Tyson, *Geology and Natural Resources of California;* J. D. Whitney, *Geology of California* (*N. Am. Review*, LXXV, 277); W. T. Hornaday, *Bison* (Smithsonian Inst., *Report*, 1887, II, 367). — Explorers: R. C. Clark, *Beginnings of Texas* (Univ. of Texas, *Bulletin*, No. 98); Warren Upham, *Explorations of Vérendrye* (Miss. Valley Hist. Assoc., *Proceedings*, I, 43); H. H. Bancroft, *California*, I, chs. iii, vi, and *Northwest Coast*, and *Nevada*, ch. ii, and *Colorado*, ch. ii, and *Utah*, ch. ii; H. M. Chittenden, *American Fur Trade*, and *Early Steamboat Navigation on the Missouri;* Washington Irving, *Captain Bonneville*, and *Astoria;* I. B. Richman, *California*, chs. i–vi. — Maps: F. J. Turner, *New West*, 114; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 18, 36, 230; W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 210; Bond and Beathrong, *Map showing Routes of Principal Explorers* (General Land Office); I. B. Richman, *Cali-*

fornia passim. Most of the accounts of exploration contain valuable maps.

Sources. — Journals of Vérendrye, in *Report of Canadian Archives*, 1889, 1–29, and in Pierre Margry, *Découvertes*, VI, ch. xvi; *Portolá Expedition* (Acad. of Pacific Coast Hist., *Publications*, I, 15–159, II, 1–119, 161–327); R. G. Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, XIV–XXX, especially XIV–XVII (Long); Elliott Coues, *New Light on the Greater Northwest*, and *Forty Years a Fur Trader* (Larpenteur); T. H. Benton and others on the fur trade, in *Annals of Congress*, XXXVIII, 416–424, XLI, 450–461; *House Exec. Docs.*, 19 Cong., 1 sess., No. 117 (Atkinson's Missouri River expedition, 1825); 24 Cong., 1 sess., No. 181 (Dodge's Rocky Mountain expedition, 1835); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., No. 438 (Abert's Arkansas River expedition, 1845); F. Parkman, *Oregon Trail;* J. C. Frémont, *Memoirs*, and reports of explorations, in *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 28 Cong., 2 Sess., No. 174; W. H. Emory, *Notes on a Military Reconnoissance to San Diego* (1846); J. H. Simpson, *Explorations across the Great Basin* (1859); P. St. G. Cooke, *Scenes and Adventures in the Army;* R. B. Marcy, *Thirty Years of Army Life on the Border;* Jas. Hildreth, *Dragoon Campaigns to the Rocky Mountains* (1833); Samuel Parker, *Journal of an Exploring Tour* (1835); Eugene Duflot de Mofras, *Exploration de l'Oregon, des Californies, et de la Mer Vermeille* (1840–1842).

Bibliography. — Harvard University, *List of References in History 17*, 67–75; F. J. Turner, *New West*, 337; Livingston Farrand, *Basis of American History*, 279–286; F. W. Hodge, *Handbook of American Indians*, II, 1179–1221; H. H. Bancroft, *California*, I, and *Nevada*, ch. ii, notes, and *Northwest Coast*, I, pp. xvii–xxxiii; I. B. Richman, *California*, 361–425; Adelaide R. Hasse, *Reports of Explorations printed in Documents of the Government;* W .T. Davenport, *Bibliography of Hall J. Kelley* (Oregon Hist. Soc., *Quarterly*, VIII, 375). See also the " Bibliography " of § 216.

§ 216. Trade and Settlement in the Far West to 1850

Summary. — The Rocky Mountain fur trade (§ 215). — The Santa Fé trail. — Texas: the Spanish settlements; French claims (§§ 110, 187); 1819, 1828, boundary treaties; American invasions 1800, Nolan, 1806, Burr's project (§ 188), 1812, Gutierrez and Magee, 1819, Long; the *empresarios*, 1821, Stephen Austin; colonization laws of 1824, 1825, 1830; 1826–1827, Fredonian War;

Mexican revolutions; 1829, slavery abolished in Mexico, relation of the decree to Texas; 1836, Texan war, Goliad, siege of Alamo, March 2, declaration of independence, April 21, battle of San Jacinto; effect in the United States (§ 218). — Oregon: 1834–1836, Wyeth and missionaries, Lee, Whitman; 1842, Whitman's ride, controversy over "saving Oregon"; question of the occupation of Oregon (§ 217), 1838–1843, Linn's territorial bills; 1842–1843, overland migrations. — Utah: 1823, Joseph Smith and the Mormons in Palmyra, N.Y., 1830, in Kirtland, Ohio, 1831–1846, in Missouri, Illinois, Wisconsin, and Michigan (§ 202); 1839, Nauvoo; 1843, "revelation" on polygamy; 1844, killing of Smith, succession of Brigham Young (§ 202); 1846–1847, migration to Great Salt Lake; 1846–1848, Mormons in the Mexican War; 1848, cession of Utah (§ 219); 1849, State of Deseret; the church and irrigation. — California (§§ 219, 221, 222): Spanish and Mexican régime, missions, land grants, ranches, Yankee trade, remoteness of central government; 1841, Bidwell, and the first immigrant train; diplomatic relations, 1842, temporary seizure of Monterey, 1846, Frémont and the Bear Flag republic; 1846–1848, conquest and cession (§ 219); 1848, discovery of gold; 1849, rush to California; effect of California gold; mining camp traits. — Significance of American colonization of the Pacific Coast.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, 3–13, VI, 250–260, VII, 216–220, 422–429, 585–609; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, 250–253, 445–447, 510, 528–535, V, 130–142; F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, chs. i–vii; C. M. Harvey, *Santa Fé Trail* (*Atlantic*, CIV, 775), and *Salt Lake Trail* (*ibid.*, CVI, 112); Henry Inman, *Old Santa Fé Trail;* K. W. Colgrove, *Congress and the Pioneers, 1820–1850* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, IX, 196); G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 23–34, and *Texas*, chs. vi–xviii; A. M. Williams, *Sam Houston*, chs. v–xi; S. B. Elliott, *Sam Houston;* Joseph Schafer, *Pacific Northwest*, chs. x–xv; F. T. Holman, *Dr. John McLoughlin;* W. A. Linn, *Mormons*, bks. V, VI, chs. i–ix; E. H. Anderson, *Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints*, 100–128; Josiah Royce, *California*, and *Provincialism* (*Putnam's Mag.*, VII, 232); H. C. Merwin, *Bret Harte*, chs. v–xii.

Special. — Annie H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1906, I), chs. v–viii. — Texas: D. G. Wooten, *Texas*, I, pt. i, chs. vii–xxix (Yoakum), pt. ii, chs. i–xiii; H. H.

Bancroft, *North Mexican States and Texas*, I, ch. xxii, II, chs. ii–x, and *Mexico*, V, ch. vii; H. E. Bolton, *Spanish in East Texas* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, IX, 67); W. F. McCaleb, *Gutierrez-Magee Expedition* (*ibid.*, IV, 218); I. J. Cox, *Louisiana-Texas Frontier* (*ibid.*, X, 1); E. E. Hale, *Real Philip Nolan* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, IV, 281); L. G. Bugbee, *Difficulties of a Texas Empresario* (Southern Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, III, 95), and *Slavery in Early Texas* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XIII, 389, 648); E. C. Barker, *Finances of the Texas Revolution* (*ibid.*, XIX, 612), and *African Slave Trade in Texas* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, VI, 145); Ethel Z. Rather, *De Witt's Colony* (also in *ibid.*, VIII, 95); A. B. Faust, *German Element*, I, 490–501; articles illustrative of military history in Texas Historical Association, *Quarterly*, IV, 237, VII, 249, IX, 227. — OREGON: H. H. Bancroft, *Oregon*, I, II, chs. i–iii; H. S. Lyman, *Oregon*, I, II, chs. i–iii; Joseph Schafer, *Oregon Pioneers* (*Turner Essays*, 35); W. I. Marshall, *Acquisition of Oregon;* E. G. Bourne, *Essays in Historical Criticism*, 3–109; Myron Eells, *Marcus Whitman;* W. A. Mowry, *Marcus Whitman;* John Minto, *Antecedents of Pioneers* (Oregon Hist. Soc., *Quarterly*, V, 38); F. G. Young, *Oregon Trail* (*ibid.*, I, 339); J. H. Gilbert, *Trade and Currency in Early Oregon*, chs. i–iii. — UTAH (for Mormons before 1846 see § 202): H. H. Bancroft, *Utah*, chs. viii–xvii; S. M. Smucker, *Mormons*, chs. viii–xii; O. F. Whitney, *Utah*, I, chs. xv–xxii; C. H. Brough, *Irrigation in Utah*, chs. i, ii. — CALIFORNIA: H. H. Bancroft, *California*, I–V, VI, chs. i–xi, xiv–xvi; T. H. Hittell, *California*, I, II; J. S. Hittell, *San Francisco*, chs. i–iv; I. B. Richman, *California*, chs. vii xvi; Zephyrin Engelhardt, *Missions and Missionaries in California;* J. S. Hildrup, *Missions of California;* R. W. Kelsey, *United States Consulate in California;* Bernard Moses, *Establishment of Municipal Government in San Francisco;* J. T. Davis, *Historical Sketch of Mining Law;* C. H. Shinn, *Mining Camp;* W. S. Jevons, *Investigations in Currency and Finance*, ch. ii; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, chs. v, viii; Michel Chevalier, *On the Probable Fall in the Value of Gold.* — MAPS: *Twelfth Census, Statistical Atlas*, plates 5–8 (extent of settlement); J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, 12 (Texas grants); Bureau of Ethnology, *18th Annual Report*, II (Indian cessions); I. B. Richman, *California*, pocket maps. See also the "Maps" of §§ 215, 217, 218.

Sources. — Josiah Gregg, *Commerce of the Prairies* (also in Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, XIX, XX). — TEXAS: *Concerning Philip Nolan* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, VII, 308); *Journal of Stephen F. Austin* (*ibid.*, VII, 286); reminiscences of pioneers

(*ibid.*, VI, 113, 204, 236, 311, VII, 29); H. S. Foote, *Texas and the Texans;* Wm. Kennedy, *Texas*, bks. i, ii. — OREGON: Alex. Ross, *First Settlers on the Oregon* (also in Thwaites, *Early Western Travels*, VII); N. J. Wyeth, *Correspondence and Journals*, and *Memoir* (*House Reports*, 25 Cong., 3 sess., No. 101, App. I); H. M. Chittenden and A. T. Richardson, *Father Pierre-Jean de Smet;* H. H. Spalding, *Early Labors of Missionaries* (*Senate Exec. Docs.*, 41 Cong., 3 sess., No. 37); Daniel Lee and J. H. Frost, *Ten Years in Oregon;* J. Applegate, *Day with the Cow Column* (Oregon Hist. Soc., *Quarterly*, I, 371); O. Johnson and W. H. Winter, *Route across the Rocky Mountains* (also in part in *ibid.*, VII, 62); M. Crawford, *Journal;* P. H. Burnett, *Recollections*, chs. iii–v. For a list of contemporary narratives, see Oregon Historical Society, *Quarterly*, VII, 329. — UTAH: *House Misc. Docs.*, 31 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 18, 43, and *House Reports*, No. 219 (Deseret); Brigham Young and others, in *Journal of Discourses; Millennial Star; Deseret News* (1850–). See the mass of material cited in H. H. Bancroft, *Utah.* — CALIFORNIA: R. H. Dana, *Two Years before the Mast;* John Bidwell and others, in the *Century*, XLI, XLII *passim;* Walter Colton, *Three Years in California;* L. W. Hastings, *Emigrant's Guide;* J. E. Ware, *Emigrant's Guide;* T. A. Barry and B. A. Patten, *Men and Memories of San Francisco* (1850); J. T. Brooks, *Four Months among the Gold Finders;* Wm. Downie, *Hunting for Gold;* P. H. Burnett, *Recollections*, chs. vi–ix; Édouard Auger, *Voyage en Californie.* For lists of miners' narratives see Harvard University, *List of References in History 17*, 84, and H. H. Bancroft, *California*, I, 59, 60.

Bibliography. — G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 338–340; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 206–213; F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, 387–392; Harvard University, *List of References in History 17*, 76–84; A. H. Abel, *Indian Consolidation*, 413–438; H. H. Bancroft, notes *passim*, and *North Mexican States*, I, pp. xix–xlviii, *Oregon*, I, pp. xix–xxxix, *Utah*, pp. xxi–xlvii, *California*, I, pp. xxv–lxxxviii, ch. ii; C. W. Raines, *Bibliography of Texas;* C. W. Smith, *Check List relating to the Pacific Northwest;* K. B. Judson, *Pacific Northwest;* New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, XIII, 183 (Mormons); I. B. Richman, *California*, 426–500.

§ 217. Northeastern and Northwestern Boundaries, 1783–1846

Summary. — Northern boundary: 1783, in the treaty (§ 157), "Northwest angle," "St. Croix," "Source of St. Croix," "Highlands," "Source of Connecticut," "Forty-fifth Parallel"; 1794, in the Jay treaty (§ 181); 1798, St. Croix established; 1803, draft boundary treaty; 1814, boundary in the treaty (§ 191); 1818, boundary west of the Lake of the Woods; 1822, lower lake boundary completed; 1827–1831, arbitration by the King of the Netherlands; 1831, decision ignored; 1838–1839, hostile attitude on the border. — Ashburton treaty: 1842, special British mission; Webster negotiations, Nov. 10, treaty proclaimed; boundaries; slave-trade; extradition; impressment; "battle of the maps." — Oregon controversy: claims to Oregon (§ 187); exploration and settlement (§§ 215, 216); 1818, joint occupation; 1819, Spanish claims extinguished; 1824, Russian claims extinguished; 1827, joint occupation continued; 1842, question in Ashburton negotiation; 1843, Linn's bill (§ 216); 1844, "fifty-four-forty or fight" (§ 218); 1845, arbitration declined; 1846, June 15, treaty signed; connection with Mexican war (§ 219).

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, 18–27, 463–483, VI, 429–434, 513–518, VII, 271–304, 407–420; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, chs. v, xi; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, 180–195; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 510, 511, 550–562; H. von Holst *History*, III, chs. ii, vi; Henry Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States* (3d ed.), 9–19; J. S. Reeves, *American Diplomacy under Tyler and Polk*, chs. i, ii, viii–x; H. C. Lodge, *Webster*, ch. viii; W. M. Meigs, *T. H. Benton*, ch. xvi; T. Roosevelt, *Benton*, ch. xii.

Special. — NORTHEASTERN: J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, chs. i–vi; W. F. Ganong, *Boundaries of New Brunswick*, 241–361; A. Gallatin, *Northeastern Boundary;* P. Preble, *Decisions of the King of the Netherlands;* G. T. Curtis, *Webster*, II, chs. xxviii, xxix, xxxii, and *James Buchanan*, I, ch. xx; G. L. Tyler, *Tylers*, II, 201–243; J. C. Dent, *Last Forty Years of Canada*, I, ch. x; Sir Francis Hincks, *Boundaries formerly in Dispute;* Israel Washburn, *Northern Boundary;* histories of Maine (§ 37). — NORTHWESTERN: H. H. Bancroft, *Northwest Coast*, II, chs. xv–xvii, and *Oregon*, I, ch. xiv; Robt. Greenhow, *Oregon and California;* Wyndham Robertson, *Oregon*,

Right and Title; W. H. Gray, *Oregon;* Travers Twiss, *Oregon Territory;* Thos. Falconer, *Oregon Question;* Wm. Sturgis, *Oregon Question;* Jos. Schafer, *British Attitude* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 273); E. G. Bourne, *Aspects before 1840* (Oregon Hist. Soc., *Quarterly*, VI, 255); J. R. Wilson, *Oregon Question* (*ibid.*, I, 111); J. R. Robertson, *Genesis in Oregon* (*ibid.*, I, 1); Marie M. Bradley, *Political Beginnings* (*ibid.*, IX, 42); R. L. Schuyler, *Polk and the Oregon Compromise* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXVI, 443); histories of Oregon (§ 37). — MAPS: A. Gallatin, *Northeastern Boundary;* W. F. Ganong, *Boundaries of New Brunswick* passim; *Senate Docs.*, 25 Cong., 2 sess., VI, No. 502; Henry Gannett, *Boundaries* (3d ed.), 10–18; E. M. Avery, *History*, VI, 350, 351; W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 206; *Parliamentary Papers*, 1843, LXI, [451]; *Dominion Atlas*, plates 28, 42, 48, 50; *Epoch Maps*, No. 11; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 72; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, VI; *Mitchell's Map* (1755); reprints in J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 172–183.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, 1817–1823; *Register of Debates*, IV, V (1827–1829); *Congressional Globe*, especially 26, 27, 29 Congs.: T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV. — DOCUMENTS: Apps. to *Annals of Congress*, and *Register of Debates;* J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, II, 251, 262, 443, 547, 559, 593, III, 347–370, 374, 397, 398, 405–428, 431–459, 470–475, 516–527, 530, 568–571, 574–578, 594–600, 603–609, IV, 72–78, 87–103, 112–150, 162–177, 194–197, 215–220, 229–232, 257–259, 337–339, 362–364, 381, 392–398, 426, 427, 449, 457; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions and Agreements*, I, 593–659; Massachusetts, *Documents relating to the Northeastern Boundary;* extracts in Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 70, 74; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 190–192; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, II, pp. 930–941, V, §§ 834, 835. — CONGRESSIONAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, VIII; *Northeastern Treaties and Controversies;* reprints in *Niles' Weekly Register*, LXIV–LXVI; *Senate Docs.*, 20 Cong., 1 sess., No. 171; 25 Cong., 2 sess., Nos. 319, 502; 26 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 107, 174, 382; 26 Cong., 2 sess., No. 173; 27 Cong., 2 sess., Nos. 84, 97; 27 Cong., 3 sess., No. 1, pp. 34–145; 29 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 274, 489,; 44 Cong., 1 sess., No. 41; *House Exec. Docs.*, 17 Cong., 1 sess., No. 112; 19 Cong., 1 sess., No. 65; 20 Cong., 1 sess., No. 199; 26 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 189, 223, 245; 27 Cong., 3 sess., No. 31; 29 Cong., 1 sess., No. 105; *House Reports*, 25 Cong., 3 sess., No. 101; 27 Cong., 3 sess., No. 157; *American State Papers, Foreign*, I, 91–99, III, 89, 97, 162, 700–734, VI, 643, 676. — ENGLISH DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Parliamentary Debates*, especially 3d ser., LXVI–LXVIII; *Remarks upon the*

Disputed Points (1838); *Parliamentary Papers*, 1837–1838, XXXIX, A, B; 1840, XXXII, [257]; 1845, LII, [664], [200]. — SPECIAL ON THE NORTHWESTERN BOUNDARY QUESTION: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 35 Cong., 1 sess., No. 29; *House Exec. Docs.*, 42 Cong., 3 sess., V; *Parliamentary Debates*, 3d ser., LXXIX–LXXXVII; *Parliamentary Papers*, 1846, LII, [695], [722]; 1873, LXXIV, [c. 690]–[c. 696], [c. 735]. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. K. Polk, *Diary*, I; M. A. D. W. Howe, *G. Bancraft*, I, 267–273, 279–286; J. Buchanan, *Works*, VI (see Contents); D. Webster, *Works*, II, 141–154, V, 60–150, VI, 270–390, and *Private Correspondence*, II, 102, 113, 119–164, 171, 179, 190–192, 213–230; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Webster*, 215, 227–330, 361; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. ci–civ, cxliii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, V, and *Correspondence*, 653–698, 1035, 1059, 1065–1083; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, ch. vii; Rufus Choate, *Works*, II, 125–172.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 172–182, 525, 555, 562; A. R. Hasse, *North-Eastern Boundary, References* (N. Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, IV, 391); G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 343; C. W. Smith, *Check-list of Books on Pacific Northwest;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 44 (lect. 52), 76 (lect. 43), 80 (lects. 54, 56), 184; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 206–213; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 335, 356; *Magazine of Western History*, II, 423; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 81; see indexes to public documents (§ 26).

§ 218. Annexation of Texas, 1836–1846

Summary. — Territorial history: French claim; Spanish claim; Mexican boundary; northern boundary; effect of Louisiana cession (§ 187); 1819, treaty with Spain (§ 196); 1825–1829, attempts to purchase; 1828, confirmatory treaty with Mexico. — Settlement and independence (§ 216); Texas asks admission into the Union; 1837, Texas recognized. — Agitation for annexation: reasons; 1838, resolutions; 1842, Oct., temporary occupation of Monterey; 1843, Mar., Adams's address of warning. — Annexation treaty: 1843, Oct., proposed to Texas; 1844, promise of military aid; Feb. 28, explosion on *Princeton;* Mar. 29, Calhoun secretary of state; Pakenham correspondence on England's position; Apr. 12, treaty signed; June 8, treaty rejected; June 10, Benton's bill. — Election of 1844: Tyler's hopes; Liberty party;

Oregon question (§ 217); annexation question; Clay committed; Van Buren set aside. — Annexation resolution: 1844, Dec., Tyler plan; 1845, Mar. 1, joint resolution passes; Mar. 3, Tyler offers annexation; British attitude; discussion in Texas; Dec. 3, annexation act. — Effect on Mexico (§ 219).

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 75–87; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, V, 540–555, VI, 260–270, 458–463, VII, 304–406; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, II, chs. vi, vii; T. C. Smith, *Liberty and Free Soil Parties*, ch. vi; J. S. Reeves, *American Diplomacy under Tyler and Polk*, chs. iii–vii; E. G. Bourne, *Essays in Historical Criticism*, 227–242; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, 160–180; J. Schouler, *History*, II, ch. xvii, § ii; R. S. Ripley, *War with Mexico*, I, ch. i; C. H, Ambler, *Virginia and the Presidential Succession* (*Turner Essays*, 165); Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, ch. xiii; G. T. Curtis, *Webster*, I, ch. xxiv, II, chs. xxx–xxxii; Gaillard Hunt, *John C. Calhoun*, ch. xvii; E. M. Shepard, *Van Buren*, ch. xi; J. S. Bassett, *Andrew Jackson*, II, 734–743; W. M. Meigs, *Benton*, ch. xviii; T. Roosevelt, *Benton*, ch. xiii; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, ch. xi; A. C. McLaughlin, *Cass*, ch. vii; G. W. Julian, *Giddings*, chs. vi, vii.

Special. — J. H. Smith, *Annexation of Texas;* G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, chs. i. ii, vi–x, and *Texas*, chs. xix–xxi; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 513–714, and *John C. Calhoun*, ch. viii; H. H. Bancroft, *Texas*, chs. i, xii–xiv; Henderson Yoakum, *Texas*, chs. xxx–xxxvi; E. D. Adams, *British Interests in Texas;* E. C. Barker, *Jackson and Texas* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XII, 788); C. E. Lester, *Houston and His Republic;* Henry Bruce, *Houston;* A. M. Williams, *Houston*, chs. xii, xiii; Wm. Jay, *Review of the Mexican War*, chs. i–xvi; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, II, 250–364, III, 115–162; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, chs. xxiv, xxv; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), II, chs. xviii, xix, III, chs. i, ii; Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, chs. xiii, xiv; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, I, chs. xvii, xix; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xxiii; Ethel Z. Rather, *Recognition of Texas* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, XIII, 155); J. L. Worley, *England and Texas* (*ibid.*, IX, 1); I. J. Cox, *Southwest Boundary of Texas* (*ibid.*, VI, 81), and *Significance of Louisiana-Texas Frontier* (Miss. Valley Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, III, 198); Z. T. Fulmore, *Annexation and Mexican War* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, V, 28); T. M. Marshall, *Southwestern Boundary* (*ibid.*, XIV, 277). — Maps: Wm. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, 214; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 104, 282.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, XII–XIV (1835–1837); *Congressional Globe*, 27, 28 Congs. (1841–1845); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIV, XV; contemporary newspapers (§ 41). — DOCUMENTS: *Register of Debates*, App. to XIV, 176–250; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.* and *House Exec. Docs.*, 24 Cong., 2 sess., 28 Cong., 1 sess., 29 Cong., 1 sess., No. 2; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, III, 234–238, 254, 265–269, 274–276, 281, IV, 79, 177, 260–262, 307–313, 316–327, 340–345, 353–356, 379–383, 386–388; G. P. Garrison, *Diplomatic Correspondence of Texas* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, II, 1908, II); *Secret Journals of the Senate of Texas, 1836–1845* (Texas Library and Hist. Com., *Biennial Reports*, I); Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 71; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 224–232; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 10, 62, 103; *Niles' Weekly Register*, especially LXV–LXIX. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, XI, XII; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, chs. cxliv, cxlv, II, chs. xxiv, cxxxv–cxlii, cxlviii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, V, and *Correspondence*, 497–660, 829–1032; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. xi, xii; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 355–421; J. Buchanan, *Works*, VI, 1–4, 59–74, 118–124, 127, 130, 152, 159, 165, VIII, 240–242; J. R. Lowell, *Anti-Slavery Papers*, I, 3–34; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, ch. xxiv; Wm. Kennedy, *Texas*, bk. iii; *Letters of Pillow to Polk, 1844* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 832); M. A. D. W. Howe, *George Bancroft*, I, 248–258; *Van Buren-Bancroft Correspondence* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, XLII, 391–441); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxix.

Bibliography. — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 550–552; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, ch. xxi; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 344; C. W. Raines, *Bibliography of Texas;* J. H. Smith, *Annexation*, 471–476; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 40 (lect. 45), 43, 44 (lect. 53), 79, 80 (lects. 53, 55).

§ 219. The Mexican War, 1846–1848

Summary. — Causes: 1826–1844, claims; 1836–1844, encouragement to Texas; 1845, annexation of Texas (§ 218); 1846, Texan boundaries; 1846, designs on California; extension of slave-territory. — Outbreak: 1845, July, Taylor's advance to Corpus Christi; Sept. to Dec., Slidell mission; 1846, Jan., Taylor ordered forward; Mar., Slidell not recognized; Polk determines on war; Oregon question settled (§ 217); April 24, attack on

Taylor; May 11, Polk's war message; May 13, war declared. — Campaigns: 1846–1847, Taylor's northern campaign; 1846, New Mexico taken; 1846–1847, California taken; Mar. to Aug., Scott's central campaign; Aug. 27, City of Mexico taken. — Treaty of peace: 1846, Mar., "two million bill"; 1847, Trist in Mexico; 1848, Feb. 2, treaty of Guadeloupe Hidalgo (Texas, New Mexico, California, indemnity to Mexico). — Boundary troubles; 1853, Gadsden purchase.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, VII, 423–472, 506–525; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, chs. xiii–xv; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 129–151; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 314–323; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, II, ch. xxvi; J. S. Reeves, *Diplomacy under Tyler and Polk*, chs. xi–xiii; R. C. Winthrop, Jr., *R. C. Winthrop*, 44–64; Carl Schurz, *Clay*, II, ch. xxv; H. von Holst, *Calhoun*, ch. ix; W. M. Meigs, *Benton*, 358–368.

Special. — Wm. Jay, *Mexican War;* H. von Holst, *History*, III, chs. iii–xii; R. S. Ripley, *War with Mexico;* H. O. Ladd, *War with Mexico;* C. H. Owen, *Justice of the Mexican War;* J. Schouler, *History*, IV, 518–550, V, ch. xviii, §§ ii, iii; H. H. Bancroft, *Mexico*, V; T. H. Hittell, *California*, II, 435–468; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), III, ch. iii; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, I, chs. xx–xxii; M. J. Wright, *General Scott*, chs. viii–xii; O. O. Howard, *General Taylor*, chs. vi–xx; J. R. Spears, *Our Navy*, III, ch. xviii; E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy* (2d ed.), II, 72–118; E. D. Adams, *English Interest in California* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XIV, 744). — Maps: G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 244; R. S. Ripley, *War with Mexico* passim.

Sources. — Debates: *Congressional Globe*, 29, 30 Congs.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV, XVI; contemporary newspapers (§ 41). — Documents: *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., VII, Nos. 337, 368, VIII, Nos. 388, 392, 395, 439; 29 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 107; 30 Cong., 1 sess., VII, Nos. 52, 60; *House Exec. Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., VI, No. 196; 29 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 19; 30 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 8, VIII, No. 69; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, III, 278, 377–379, IV, 197, 227, 388–392, 410, 427, 437–443, 448, 456, 459, 470–496, 506, 513–517, 523–549, 565, 570–575, 587–593, 627, 672, 687; W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions and Agreements*, I, 1082–1125; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 72, 73, 76, 84; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 21, 857, 858; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 132. —

Contemporary Writings: J. K. Polk, *Diary* (see index); J. Buchanan, *Works*, VI, VII, VIII, 1–30, 365–368 (see Contents); J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, and *Correspondence*, 671–757, 960, 1067–1069, 1083–1085; D. Webster, *Works*, V, 151, 253–301; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, III, ch. xxxii; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. cxlix, clxi; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; Zachary Taylor, *Letters from the Battle-Fields;* John Sedgwick, *Correspondence*, I; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*, I, chs. iii–xiii; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, I, chs. xix–xxii; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, ch. xxv.

Bibliography. — G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 341–343; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 44 (lect. 54), 80 (lects. 57, 58), 152, 185, 218; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 204–206.

§ 220. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1845–1849

Summary. — Conditions in 1845 (§§ 208, 214): revenue; currency; banks; tariff; shipping; waterways (§ 201); public lands; commercial prosperity. — Treasury: 1846, Aug. 6, Independent Treasury (§ 213) revived. — Tariff: 1845, Dec. 3, Walker's report; specific and ad valorem duties; question of revenue; 1846, July 31, act passed; Aug. 6, warehouse act. — Internal improvements: earlier status (§ 208); 1837–1845, poverty of the Treasury; land grants for canals; 1841–1845, Tyler's vetoes; 1846–1847, Polk's vetoes; 1847, Dec. 21, House resolutions affirming the right; state internal improvements (§ 201). — State finances (§ 203): taxation; debts, repudiations (§ 213); accounts; state-owned banks, state-chartered banks.

General. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 107–112; J. Schouler, *History*, IV, 418–420, 515–518, V, 81, 120–123; H. von Holst, *History*, II, 529–535, III, 277–280. See § 184.

Special. — H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), III, ch. xi; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, I, ch. xix; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, I, 161–169; J. J. Knox, *United States Notes*, chs. vi, vii; J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, 381–482; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, 38–82; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 112–154; J. D. Goss, *Tariff Administration*, 47–56; Edward Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. xciii–cvi; W. M. Grosvenor, *Does Protection Protect?* David Kinley, *Independent Treasury*; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xxvii.

Sources. — Debates and Documents: *Congressional Globe*, 29, 30 Congs.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV, XVI; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., II, Nos. 2, 6, III, No. 5, VIII, No. 437, IX, No. 444; 29 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 2, III, No. 105; *House Exec. Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., No. 5; 29 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 25; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, IV, 330–333, 378, 402–410, 451, 460–469, 496–504, 551–558, 610–626, 646–650, 653–670; *Niles' Weekly Register*, LXIX, 233; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 214 (Walker's report); *De Bow's Review*, I–VI; *Hunt's Merchants' Magazine*, XII–XX; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 134–148, 508; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 75; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. ii. — Contemporary Writings: J. K. Polk, *Diary* (see Index); J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, and *Correspondence*, 673, 700–708, 1049–1051, 1081, 1085–1087; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; D. Webster, *Works*, V, 161–252; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Webster*, 332–342; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, chs. xv, xvi; B. R. Curtis, *Works*, II, 93.

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 106; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 359.

CHAPTER XXVII

THE SLAVERY CRISIS, 1846–1860

§ 221. Territorial Crisis, 1846–1849

Summary. — Wilmot proviso: 1846, Aug. 8, fails in Senate; 1847, Feb. 13, added to the "three-million bill"; advocated by Northern legislatures; 1847, Dec., Robert C. Winthrop chosen Speaker; 1848, Feb. 28, proviso tabled by the House. — Abolition activity; 1839, Giddings in the House (§ 211); 1847, John P. Hale in the Senate; 1848, resolution against slave trade in the District of Columbia; 1849, Abraham Lincoln's emancipation bill; fugitive-slave cases (§ 223). — Election of 1848: "Barnburner" split in New York; May, Cass nominated; June, Taylor nominated; Aug., Van Buren nominated by Free Soilers; Nov., Taylor chosen. — 1848–1849, Theories of control of the territories: (1) complete power of Congress; (2) "popular sovereignty"; (3) application of the constitution; (4) decision by the Supreme Court; (5) compromise line. — Specific questions: Oregon, New Mexico, California, Texan claims; 1848, Aug. 14, Oregon organized as a free territory; deadlock between Taylor and Southern Whigs.

General. — J. B. McMaster, *History*, VII, chs. lxxxi, lxxxiii, lxxxv; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, chs. xvi, xvii, xix; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 143–155; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 122–141; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, ch. iii; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, ch. iv; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xiv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Cass*, ch. viii; W. M. Meigs, *Benton*, 369–384; T. Roosevelt, *Benton*, ch. xiv; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 94–112; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, 156–170; W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, 104–113; C. F. Adams, *C. F. Adams*, chs. iv–vi; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, I, chs. xiv–xvi; Johnston and Browne, *A. H. Stephens*, chs. xxi, xxii; R. C. Winthrop, Jr., *R. C. Winthrop*, 65–93; G. H. Haynes, *Sumner*, 103–120; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*,

ch. vii; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xviii; Geo. Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, ch. vi; G. W. Julian, *Giddings*, 206–270; N. D. Harris, *Negro Servitude in Illinois*, 156–176.

Special. — H. von Holst, *History*, III, chs. xi–xiv; Carl Schurz, *Clay*, II, ch. xxv; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. xviii, § iii; G. T. Curtis, *Webster*, II, chs. xxxiii–xxxv; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, ch. vii; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, ch. vi; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, ch. xxix; T. C. Smith, *Liberty and Free Soil Parties*, ch. vii; Mary P. Follett, *Speaker*, §§ 34, 51; C. E. Magoon, *Law of Civil Government in Territory Subject to Military Occupation*, 121–171; D. Y. Thomas, *Military Government*, bk. ii; C. E. Persinger, *Bargain of 1844 and Wilmot Proviso* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVII, 455). — MAPS: G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 282 (election, 1848).

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 29, 30 Congs.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XVI; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 29 Cong., 1 sess., III, No. 25; *House Exec. Docs.*, 30 Cong., 1 sess., VIII, No. 70; 30 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 1; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, IV, 558, 559, 584, 594–600, 606–610, 634–642; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 241–252; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 15–18. — CONTEMPORARY NEWSPAPERS: especially *National Era* (Washington), *New York Tribune*, *New York Times*, *New York Evening Post*, *Boston Whig*, *Liberator*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. K. Polk, *Diary*, II–IV (see Index); J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, 303–541, and *Correspondence*, 709–763, 1036–1197; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Daniel Webster*, 351–373; *Diary and Correspondence of Salmon P. Chase* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, II), 116–188, 467–475; *Millard Fillmore Papers*, II, 276–286; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. clxvi–clxxxiii; A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), I, 112, 118, 122, 131–149, (Biog. ed.), II, 3, 16, 17, 26, 49–100, (Fed. ed.), II, 60, 66, 83–124, VII, 377; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, ch. xxxiii; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquy xiv; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, I, chs. xxi, xxiv–xxviii; Wm. Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 491–551; J. R. Lowell, *Anti-Slavery Papers*, I, 52–223, II, 3–57, and *Biglow Papers; Calendar of the Papers of Martin Van Bureau*, 559–611.

Bibliography. — H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 241–250 *passim*; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 181–204; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 86; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 44 (lect. 55), 153, 178, 219; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 99. See § 222.

§ 222. Compromise of 1850

Summary. — The administration: 1849, Mar. 5, President Taylor; 1850, July 10, President Fillmore; influence of Seward, Clay, Webster, Calhoun. — New anti-slavery forces in Congress: 1849, Chase, Seward; 1851, Sumner, Wade. — California organizes itself: 1848, discovery of gold (§ 216); 1849, Sept., constitutional convention (anti-slavery); Dec., provisional state government. — The issue: demands of the South; demands of the North; attempt to settle by separate bills (§ 221). — Compromise proposed: 1849–1850, speakership contest; 1850, Jan. 29, Clay's plan and speech; Mar. 4, Calhoun's speech; Mar. 7, Webster's speech; Mar. 11, Seward's speech; Mar. 13, Jefferson Davis's demand; Mar. 26, Chase's speech; Feb. 4, the House yields; May 8, the "Omnibus Bill"; Taylor holds out. — Compromise accepted: 1850, July 9, death of Taylor; (1) Aug. 9, Texas bill; (2) Aug. 15, New Mexico bill; (3) Sept. 7, California bill; (4) Sept. 9, Utah bill; (5) Sept. 12, fugitive-slave bill; (6) Sept. 14, District of Columbia slave-trade bill. — Compromise discussed: Southern friends; Northern friends; "Cotton Whigs" and "Conscience Whigs"; "question of sentiment" and "question of principle"; "higher law." — Question of danger to the Union: Calhoun's attitude; Southern legislatures; 1850, Nashville convention; threats in the debate; Northern apprehensions; Union sentiment prevails.

General. — G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, ch. xx; E. E., Sparks, *United States*, II, 156–172; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, 8–11; 152–160, 251–260; Geo. Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, chs. vii, viii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxiii; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), VI, 813; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xv; H. von Holst, *Calhoun*, ch. ix; A. C. McLaughlin, *Cass*, ch. ix; W. G. Brown, *Douglas*, ch. iii; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, 176–198; W. M. Meigs, *Benton*, ch. xx; T. H. Clay, *Henry Clay*, 339–375; W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, 113–121, and *Statesmen of the Old South*, 157–191; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 112–131; Johnston and Browne, *A. H. Stephens*, chs. xxiii, xxiv; R. C. Winthrop, Jr., *R. C. Winthrop*, 96–142.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, ch. ii; J. C. Hurd, *Law of*

Freedom and Bondage, I, ch. xvi; H. von Holst, *History*, III, chs. xv, xvi; J. Schouler, *History*, V, chs. xix, xx, § i; G. T. Curtis, *Webster*, II, chs. xxxvi, xxxvii; H. C. Lodge, *Webster*, ch. ix; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, chs. xiii–xv; Carl Schurz, *Clay*, II, ch. xvi; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, chs. ix, x; C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia* 244–250; H. H. Bancroft, *California*, VI, chs. xii, xiii; T. H. Hittell, *California*, II, chs. viii, xi, xiv; R. D. Hunt, *Genesis of California's First Constitution;* Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 29–32. — MAPS: A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 126; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 328; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 6.

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 31 Cong., 1 sess.; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XVI; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 31 Cong., 1 Sess., IX, No. 18, XIII, Nos. 55, 56, 60, XIV, Nos. 67, 74, 76; *Senate, Misc. Docs.*, 31 Cong., 1 sess. (resolutions of state legislatures, etc.); *Senate Reports*, 31 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 123; *House Exec. Docs.*, 31 Cong., 1 sess., III, No. 5, V, No. 17, VII, No. 39; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V 4–6, 18, 26–30, 48, 49, 67–73, 92–95, 107; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 78–83; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 253–279. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, chs. clxxxiv–cxcvii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, 542–577, and *Correspondence*, 764–787, 1197–1212; *Diary and Correspondence of Salmon P. Chase*, 188–220; *Millard Fillmore Papers*, II, 321–324; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquies xv, xvi; H. Clay, *Works* (Colton ed.), IV, chs. xiii, xiv, VI, 601–634; J. Buchanan, *Works*, VIII, 369–404; D. Webster, *Works*, V, 302–438, and *Private Correspondence*, II, 353–406, 424, 430–434, 473; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Daniel Webster*, 374–434, 445; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, chs. ii, iii; G. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. xiii; J. S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 1–120; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), II, 123 (Calhoun), 161 (Webster), 202 (Clay); E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation*, ch. xiii; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, chs. xxxiv, xxxv; C. Sumner, *Speeches*, III; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 19–22; Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences of Webster;* J. R. Lowell, *Anti-Slavery Papers*, II, 58–203; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, chs. xxvii–xxx; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*, I, chs. xiv, xv; G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*, chs. iv, v.

Bibliography. — G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 345; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, footnotes to ch. ii; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 253–278 *passim;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 44 (lect. 56); Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 379. See § 221.

§ 223. Fugitive Slaves and Anti-Slavery Propaganda, 1850–1860

Summary. — Legal status of runaway slaves: causes (§ 209; in slave states (§ 212); in free states (§ 212); in territories (§ 221); in foreign countries (§ 212). — National action: act of 1793 (§ 180); negotiations of 1826 (§ 212); act of 1850 (§ 222); question of constitutionality; decisions of the Supreme Court. — Personal liberty acts: early state statutes; 1842, Prigg decision (§ 212); statutes to 1850; statutes from 1850 to 1854; statutes after 1854; application; Southern complaints. — "Underground Railroad": southern termini; colored agents; white agents; crossing to Canada; number aided; prosecutions; defiance of law; purchase of fugitives. — Famous cases: before 1850 (§ 212); 1850, Hamlet; 1851, Shadrach rescue, Sims, Christiana (Castner Hanway trial), Jerry McHenry rescue; 1854, Burns; 1855, Passmore Williamson; 1856, Garner; 1858, Oberlin-Wellington rescue; 1858, John Brown in Kansas (§ 226). — 1855–1859, Wisconsin decision (Ableman *v.* Booth); 1861, "Contrabands" (§ 240). — Anti-slavery literature: *Liberator; National Era; Uncle Tom's Cabin;* poets; J. R. Lowell's satires. — Societies: American Colonization Society (§ 197); Garrison's society (§ 210); other societies; conventions. — Political action: pledging candidates; third parties; balance of power in Congress; 1849–1852, Free Democrats.

General. — H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xvi; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, ch. x, and *Men who made the Nation*, ch. xi; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 44–53; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. xx; H. von Holst, *History*, IV, 9–12, 20–28, 236–246, V, 61–70; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, ch. vi; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 22–25, 196, 206, 280–285; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 163–171; B. T. Washington, *Frederick Douglass*, 157–182.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 207–213, 222–226, 363–365, 378, 498–506, II, 73–78, 360–367; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, chs. iii–vi; W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad;* T. R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Law of Slavery*, chs. vii–xi; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XI, 288; Wm. Still, *Underground Railroad*, John Weiss, *Theodore Parker*, II, chs. xix, xx; S. G. Howe, *Refugees*

from Slavery in Canada; W. U. Hensel, *Christiana Riots;* A. J. Wilcox, *Powers of the Federal Government over Slavery;* W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, § 104, and *American Constitutional System*, 157–164; J. R. Tucker, *Constitution*, § 309; Joel Parker, *Personal Liberty Laws;* J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage;* R. C. Hurd, *Personal Liberty and Habeas Corpus*, 598–637; C. F. Adams, *Richard Henry Dana*, I, chs. x, xiv, xv; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, chs. x, xi; J. W. Schuckers, *Chase*, chs. ix, xv, xxi; R. B. Warden, *Chase*, chs. xx, xxi; J. B. Winslow, *Story of a Great Court* (Booth Case), 67–82, 118–121, 263–268; H. A. Herbert, *Abolition Crusade*, chs. vii, viii; U. B. Phillips, in *The South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 398–422. — See biographies of anti-slavery men in §§ 39, 210. — Maps: A. B. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 230; W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad*, 113.

Sources. — Debates and Documents: *Congressional Globe*, 31 Cong., 2 sess., especially App. pp. 292–326, 32 Cong., 33 Cong., 1 sess., 1472, 1513–1518, 1552–1559; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 286–288, 303–305; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 101–106, 109, 137–139; contemporary newspapers, especially the *Liberator*. — Contemporary Writings: Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, pt. ii, ch. vii; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, ch. xv; J. S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 241–260; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 533, II, 345–367; Ben. Drew, *Refugee;* Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, I, ch. xxv; *Millard Fillmore Papers*, I, 333–337, 362, II, 301–304, 312–314; S. J. May, *Recollections of the Anti-Slavery Conflict;* Levi Coffin, *Reminiscences;* C. E. Stevens, *Anthony Burns;* Parker Pillsbury, *Acts of the Anti-Slavery Apostles;* W. G. Eliot, *Archer Alexander;* Chas. Stearns, *Henry Box Brown;* W. G. Hawkins, *Lunsford Lane;* Solomon Northup, *Twelve Years a Slave;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. v; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations*, II, 219, 268. — Cases (see also § 212): Prigg *v.* Pennsylvania (1842), 16 *Peters*, 539; Ableman *v.* Booth (1859), 21 *Howard*, 506; Kentucky *v.* Dennison (1861), 24 *Howard*, 66; J. J. Robins, *Trial of Castner Hanway* (1851); *History of the Trial of Castner Hanway.* — See §§ 187, 188.

Bibliography. — M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, footnotes and App. E; W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad*, App. D; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 323; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 46 (lect. 57); Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 139, 140; footnotes to Rhodes.

§ 224. American Diplomacy, 1844–1860

Summary. — Cuba: 1807, Jefferson suggests annexation; 1814–1822, revolt of the Spanish colonies (§ 198); 1826, Panama Congress (§ 199); 1849–1851, filibustering expeditions; 1850, Taylor's proclamation; 1854, *Black Warrior* episode; 1854, Oct. 18, Ostend Manifesto; effect of Kansas-Nebraska bill (§ 225); 1859, purchase debate. — Latin America: earlier relations (§§ 198, 199); 1846, Dec. 12, Isthmian treaty with New Granada; 1848, Yucatan episode; 1849, Hise's and Squier's draft treaties; 1850, Apr. 19, Clayton-Bulwer treaty; 1851–1860, controversy with England; 1851, intervention in Hayti; 1851, Panama Railroad begun; 1857, Walker in Nicaragua; 1857–1860, Buchanan's Mexican policy; 1858, Paraguay incident; later relations (§§ 244, 257, 263, 267). — Canada: early fishery questions (§§ 157, 194); renewal of controversy; 1854, June 5, reciprocity treaty; later controversies (§§ 244, 263). — Orient: 1844, July 3, Chinese treaty; 1854, proposed annexation of Hawaii; 1854, Perry in Japan; Mar. 31, treaty; 1858, June 18, Chinese treaty; 1858, July 29, Japanese treaty; attitude during Arrow War; 1860, Japanese embassy; later relations (§ 268). — European relations: 1849, Mann in Hungary; 1850, Huelsemann episode; 1851, Kossuth's visit; 1853, Koszta incident; 1853, court-dress circular; 1854–1856, neutrality during Crimean War; 1856, Declaration of Paris; 1857, Apr. 17, Sound dues treaty; later relations (§§ 238, 244, 263, 267).

General. — G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, ch. xviii; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. vi; J. B. McMaster, *History*, VII, ch. lxxxiv; J. Schouler, *History*, V, 174–177, 214–219, 229–238, 251–255, 296–300, 309–316, 339–342, 364–366, 416–419, 452–454; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 199–206, 216–222, 231–243, 294–296, 393–396, 416–419, II, 1–44, 120, 186–188, 289, 351–354; H. von Holst, *History*, IV, ch. ii, V, chs. i, x, VI, 151–165, 330–348; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, 324–356, 454–460, and *American Diplomacy in the Orient*, chs. ii–vii; A. B. Hart, *Foundations of American Foreign Policy*, §§ 10, 18, 30–38; J. B. Moore, *Diplomacy*, 119–130; J. B. Henderson, *American Diplomatic Questions*, 65–137, 359–379, 385–389, 502–511; G. F. Tucker, *Monroe Doctrine*, chs. iv–vi; J. H. Latané, *United States and Spanish Amer-*

ica, 103–136, 176–198; J. F. Roche, *By-ways of War;* G. T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, ch. xxii, II, chs. iv–vii, x, and *Daniel Webster*, II, 533–565; Frederic Bancroft, *Seward*, I, chs. xvii, xxii; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, 199–219; Pierce Butler, *Judah P. Benjamin*, 179–190.

Special. — J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, chs. xii, xiii, II, chs. xxviii, xxx, xxxii, xxxiii, xxxvi, V, chs. H–J; Marquis Barral de Montferrat, *De Monroe à Roosevelt*, 43–85, 102–116; Hector Petin, *États Unis et la Doctrine de Monroe*, 104–108, 115–130, 238–262. — MAPS: T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 246; *Documents relating to Central America*, at end; L. M. Keasbey, *Nicaragua Canal* passim.

Sources. — The sources, both official and private, are too voluminous to cite, a few of the most significant are as follows: — DOCUMENTS: J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, III, 272, IV, 211–213, 358, 398, 511–513, 555, 581, V *passim;* diplomatic correspondence on various subjects accompanying the president's annual message is in *Senate Exec. Docs.* of each session, 31 Cong. to 36 Cong., usually No. 1; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 41 (pp. 113, 114), 50, 51, 65, 72 (pp. 218–235), 75 (p. 246), 108, 118–120, 131 (pp. 640–645), 134 (pp. 659–664), 164 (pp. 783–791), 165, 218, 224, 336–340, 343 (pp. 24–26), 344 (pp. 34–37), 345–348, 351–356, 368 (pp. 254–258), 490, 491, 550 (pp. 70–73), 639 (pp. 492–499), 640 (pp. 530–535), 643, 686 (pp. 763–769), 797, 798, 837, 845–847, 860, 882 (pp. 845, 846), 905, 906, 941, 942, 1023, 1024, 1168, 1221, 1300 (pp. 921–928); text of treaties in *Statutes at Large* and W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements* (see countries by name); Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 77, 89; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 2, 4, 34; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 151. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: of Buchanan, Fillmore, Calhoun, Polk (Diary), G. M. Dallas, *Letters*.

Bibliography. — A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 46 (lect. 58), 79, 80 (lects. 59–65), 186, 187, 191, 192, and *Foundation of Foreign Policy*, ch. viii; J. B. Moore, *Digest*, as above, notes; G. P. Garrison, *Westward Extension*, 344; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 315–317; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe* (rev. ed.), 284–287; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books relating to Cuba*, and *Select List on Reciprocity with Canada*, and *List relating to Hawaii;* H. A. Morrison, *List of Books relating to Interoceanic Canal;* I. D. Travis, *Clayton-Bulwer Treaty*, 309–312.

§ 225. Kansas-Nebraska Act, 1854

Summary. — Western territory: 1820, left without organization (§ 197); 1845, "Indian Country"; 1836, corner added to Mis-

souri; 1845–1853, bills for organizing as a territory. —"Popular Sovereignty": 1847–1848, suggested by Leake, Dickinson, and Cass (§ 221); 1850, not stated in the Compromise (§ 222); 1854, Douglas's new version. — Nebraska bill: 1853, Dec., House report; 1853–1854, three forms of Douglas's bill; 1854, Pierce's attitude; Jan. 16, Dixon amendment; Jan. 19, "Appeal of the Independent Democrats"; Mar. 2, Chase's amendment; Mar. 3, bill passes Senate; May 20, passes House; compromise of 1820 repealed, or "superseded," or "inoperative." — Issues: power of Congress over territorial slavery; question of indirect repeal in 1850; demands of the South; extent of "squatter sovereignty"; principle of non-intervention. — Effects: annexation of Cuba killed (§ 224); Republican party formed (§ 227); Kansas struggle (§ 226); Douglas's career (§ 229); contest accelerated (§ 230).

General. — Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, chs. xix–xxi; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xvii; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. viii; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 141–159; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxiv; L. W. Spring, *Kansas*, chs. i, ii; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 26–31; W. G. Brown, *Douglas;* A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 131–148; Moorfield Storey, *Sumner*, ch. vii; W. M. Meigs, *Benton*, 409–414, 425–430; T. Roosevelt, *Benton*, ch. xv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Cass*, 287–293, (rev. ed.) 293–300; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, ch. xviii; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, ch. vii.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, ch. v; H. von Holst, *History*, IV, chs. vi–viii; J. Schouler, *History*, V, 279–293; P. O. Ray, *Repeal of the Missouri Compromise;* Friedrich Kapp, *Geschichte der Sklaverei*, ch. xii; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, chs. viii, xi, and *Genesis of Popular Sovereignty* (*Iowa Journal of History and Politics*, III, 3); Reverdy Johnson, *Remarks on Popular Sovereignty*. — See also histories of Kansas, Nebraska, and Colorado (§ 37), and other biographies of Douglas, Chase, Seward, Hale, Sumner (§ 39). — Maps: T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 106.

Sources. — Debates and Documents: *Congressional Globe*, 33 Cong., 1 sess. (see indexes on pp. xxi, lvii, App. p. vi); *Senate Reports*, 33 Cong., 1 sess. No. 15; *House Reports*, 33 Cong., 1 sess., No. 80; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 85–88; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 280–286; *American History Leaflets*, No. 2; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), III, 3 (Chase), 32 (Everett), 50 (Douglas); H. Greeley, *Slavery Extension*, 71–88. —

CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 188–190, 201–238; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 625–636 (Toombs), II, 241–257, and in *Am. Hist. Review*, VIII, 91; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, III, ch. xxxviii; *Diary and Correspondence of Chase*, 254–263; Garrisons, *Garrison*, III, ch. xiv; J. M. Cutts, *Treatise on Party Questions*, 84–101, 123; J. W. Schuckers, *Chase*, 140–147; Theo. Parker, *Speeches*, 297; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 80.

Bibliography. — H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 280–285 *passim;* J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 181–204; P. O. Ray, *Repeal of the Missouri Compromise*, App. F; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 46 (lect. 58), 154; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 166–168; footnotes to Von Holst and Rhodes.

§ 226. The Kansas Struggle, 1854–1861

Summary. — Status of the territories: Kansas west of Missouri; scanty population; interest of Missouri; Indians (§ 216). — Northern emigration: 1854–1855, Massachusetts and New England Emigrant Aid societies; 1854, Aug., Lawrence founded; John Brown. — Southern emigration: "Border Ruffians"; pro-slavery towns founded; instances of slaves; 1856, Buford's Company. — Territorial government: 1854, Oct., Gov. Reeder (1); 1855, Mar., fraudulent election for legislature; July, Shawnee legislature, slave code; 1855, July, Gov. Shannon (2); 1856, Gov. Geary (3); 1857, Nov., Gov. Walker (4); 1858, Gov. Denver (5). — Free state movement: 1855, Nov., Topeka Convention; 1856, Mar., state officers; July 4, legislature dispersed by troops. — Civil war: 1855, "Wakarusa War"; 1856, May, sack of Lawrence; John Brown's fights; Pottowatomie massacre; Aug., "treaty of Lawrence"; 1859, Brown's aid to fugitives (§ 223). — Lecompton Constitution: 1855–1857, Republican majority in the House (§ 227); 1857, Buchanan president; instructions to Gov. Walker; Nov., Lecompton Convention; Dec., popular vote for "constitution with slavery"; 1858, Douglas refuses to vote for it; Apr., "English Bill"; Aug., Kansas refuses; Aug.-Oct., Lincoln-Douglas debate (§ 212). — Admission as a free state: 1859, July, Wyandotte Convention; 1861, Jan. 29, state admitted.

General. — T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, chs. ix, xi, xv, xvi; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 200–205; Jesse Macy, *Political*

Parties, chs. xiv, xvi, xvii; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 224–251; J. E. Cairns, *Slave Power*, 195–201; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XV, 658; Friedrich Kapp, *Geschichte der Sklaverei*, ch. xiii; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, I, chs. xxii–xxvi, II, ch. 1; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, II, 197–210; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, 398–410, 424–428, 436–454; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, chs. ix, x; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, chs. xiii, xv; F. W. Blackmar, *Charles Robinson*, chs. iii–vii, xii.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, 78–87, 98–107, 121–134, 150–168, 189–220, 215–220, 229, 237–240, 271–301; H. von Holst, *History*, V, chs. iii, v, vi, viii, VI, chs. ii, iv, v; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. xxi, § ii, ch. xxii, § i; L. W. Spring, *Kansas*, chs. iii–xii; F. H. Hodder, *English Bill* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1906, I, 201); W. H. Isely, *Sharps Rifle Episode* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XII, 546); W. L. Fleming, *Buford Expedition to Kansas* (*ibid.*, VI, 38); O. G. Villard, *John Brown*, chs. iii–vii; Jas. Redpath, *John Brown*, 75–228; J. N. Holloway, *Kansas;* Eli Thayer, *Kansas Crusade;* J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions*, §§ 211–216; D. W. Wilder, *Annals of Kansas;* J. H. Gihon, *Geary and Kansas;* Kansas Historical Society, *Collections* (see § 45); state histories of Kansas (§ 37). — Maps: T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 126.

Sources. — Debates and Documents: *Congressional Globe*, 33 Cong., 2 sess., 34 Cong., 35 Cong. (see indexes under Kansas); *House Exec. Docs.*, 34 and 35 Congs.; *House Reports*, 34 and 35 Congs. (see indexes), especially 34 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 200 (special committee); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 34 and 35 Congs. (see indexes); *Senate Reports*, 34 and 35 Congs. (see indexes); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 340–350, 352–360, 390, 398–407, 431–433, 450–454, 471–481, 497–503, 646, 647; Kansas Historical Society, *Collections*, especially I, 193–233, III, 205–337, IV, 385–745, V, 163–633; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 90, 92; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 289–293, 299–303. — Contemporary Writings: J. Buchanan, *Works*, X, 105–325 (see Contents), and *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, 28–56; F. W. Blackmar, *Charles Robinson*, App. B; *Some Papers of Franklin Pierce* (*Am. Hist. Review*, X, 124–127, 350–359); C. Sumner, *Works*, IV; Wm. Phillips, *Conquest of Kansas;* A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquy xvii; F. B. Sanborn, *John Brown*, chs. vii–xi; Sarah T. L. Robinson, *Kansas;* T. H. Gladstone, *Englishman in Kansas;* John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. v; F. B. Sanborn, *Recollections*, I, 48–133; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 36–40; contemporary newspapers (§ 41), especially *New York Tribune.*

Bibliography. — T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. xxi; Kansas Historical Society, *Collections*, VI, 385–418; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 289–291; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 46 (lect. 59); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 206–213; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, 413; footnotes to Von Holst, Rhodes, and Smith.

§ 227. Rise of the Republican Party, 1852–1858

Summary. — Breaking up of the Whigs: 1850–1852, "Finality Resolutions"; 1852, Scott's candidacy; Free Democrats (§ 223); 1852, Nov., Pierce elected president; Free-soil vote reduced. — The Know-Nothings: 1835–1844, "American Republican" movement; 1852, Native American organization; anti-foreign principles; anti-Catholic principles; 1854–1855, great successes; 1855, June, split on slavery; 1856–1860, slow absorption. — Republican party formed: elements of membership; 1854, May 23, Anti-Nebraska conference; Jan.–Nov., organization; July, first use of the name; state successes; 1855, Dec., Anti-Nebraska majority in the House; 1856, Feb., Banks chosen speaker; investigation of Kansas (§ 226). — Election of 1856: Know-Nothings divided; nomination of Fillmore; May 22, assault on Charles Sumner; June, Buchanan nominated by Democrats; Frémont nominated by the Republicans; Aug., congressional deadlock over Kansas; Nov., Buchanan elected. — Later policy of Republican party: 1857, on Dred Scott decision (§ 228); on Lecompton Constitution (§ 226); gains in election of 1858; 1859, Speaker Pennington (§ 229); success in 1860 (§ 229).

General. — E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. xix, xx; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, chs. ii–iv, viii, x, xii, and *Liberty and Free Soil Parties*, chs. xiv–xix; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 145–165, 170–174; G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, chs. xi, xiv; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xvii–xxi; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, ch. iv; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, chs. ix–xiii; U. B. Phillips, *Southern Whigs* (*Turner Essays*, 203); *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXIII, 177; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, 291–311, 363–397, 410–424, 428–431; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, ch. viii; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 149–163; W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, ch. viii; B. H. Wise, *H. A. Wise*, ch. xii; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, ch. xii; Moorfield Storey, *Sumner*, chs. vi, viii; G. H. Haynes, *Sumner*, 124–

220; Louis Pendleton, *A. H. Stephens*, chs. vi, vii; R. C. Winthrop, Jr., *R. C. Winthrop*, 142–194; G. W. Julian, *Giddings*, ch. xi.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 206–208, 243–278, II, chs. vii, viii; H. von Holst, *History*, IV, chs. iii, iv, V, chs. i, ii, iv, vii, ix; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. xxi, § ii, ch. xxii, § i; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, I, chs. xviii–xxi; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, II, chs. vi, viii–xi; H. Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, chs. xxxi, xxxii, xxxv, xxxviii; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, II, chs. xiii–xvii; J. B. McMaster, *With the Fathers*, 87–106; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, chs. xi, xiii, xv; A. D. Morse, *Republican Party* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, VII, 522); Francis Curtis, *Republican Party*, I, chs. vi–ix; John Weiss, *Theodore Parker*, II, chs. xxi, xxii; L. D. Scisco, *Political Nativism in New York;* H. J. Desmond, *Know-Nothing Party;* L. F. Schmeckebier, *Know-Nothing Party in Maryland;* Wm. Birney, *J. G. Birney*, chs. xxviii, xxix; A. G. Riddle, *B. F. Wade*, chs. vii, viii; H. D. Capers, *C. G. Memminger*, 194–229. — MAPS: T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 132, 158.

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 34, 35 Congs. (indexes, especially under names of J. P. Hale, B. F. Wade, John Sherman, Chas. Sumner, W. H. Seward, etc.); H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 293, 294; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 202, 222, 397. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, chs. xxxix, xl; J. Buchanan, *Works*, VIII, 426–500, IX, 457, 485, X, 8–100 (see Contents), XI, 494–510; C. H. Van Tyne, *Letters of Daniel Webster*, 475–542; *Diary and Correspondence of Salmon P. Chase*, 220–252, 264; A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), I, 178–226, (Biog. ed.), II, 187–312, (Fed. ed.), II, 176–286, VII, 381–387; Wm. Salter, *J. W. Grimes*, 52–92; Garrisons, *Garrison*, III, chs. xvi–xviii; J. S. Pike, *First Blows*, 260–420; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. xiii; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), III, 88 (Sumner), 121 (Brooks); A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquy, xvii; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, II, chs. vi–x; *Millard Fillmore Papers*, II, 19–22, 324–368 *passim;* W. S. Rand, *Southern Rights and Union Congress* (*Hunt's Merchants' Mag.*, XXXV, 309); Edward Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, ch. xx; C. Sumner, *Works*, III, IV; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, chs. xxxvi–xliv; W. H. Seward, *Works*, IV, 223–288; R. B. Warden, *Chase*, chs. xxiii, xxiv; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 35; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 83.

Bibliography. — A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Works relating to Political Parties;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 46 (lect. 60); T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, 314, and *Liberty and Free Soil Parties*, App. A; L. D

Scisco, *Political Nativism*, 255–259; footnotes to Von Holst and Rhodes.

§ 228. Dred Scott Decision and John Brown's Raid, 1857–1859

Summary. — Status of the Supreme Court: early decisions (§ 195); changes under Jackson (§ 204); 1842–1856, decisions on slavery (§§ 212, 223); desire to settle the controversy; 1857, Mar. 4, Buchanan's announcement. — The Dred Scott case: 1834–1838, Scott taken to Illinois and the Indian country; 1838, returned to Missouri; 1847–1853, Scott's three suits against his owner; backing of the Blair family; 1856, suit before the Supreme Court; 1857, Mar. 10, decision. — Principles of the Dred Scott decision: application of state law; negro citizenship denied; residence in free territory not decisive; power of Congress denied; Missouri Compromise disallowed; restrictions by territorial legislatures denied. — Effect of the decision: popular sovereignty denied (§ 225); Douglas ignored (§ 229); 1858, Lincoln's disavowal (§ 229); 1862, decision ignored by Congress (§ 240).—John Brown's raid: John Brown in Kansas (§ 226); his character; early plans for inciting a slave insurrection; support in New England; 1857–1858, plans for a raid; 1859, Oct., capture of Harper's Ferry; Oct.–Dec., trial and execution; Republican disavowals; effect on the South.

General. — T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. xiv; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, ch. v; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, 266–278; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History* (rev. ed.), 239–245; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 210–217; G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, ch. xviii; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xviii, xx; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, 227; E. D. Fite, *Presidential Election of 1860*, ch. i.

Special. — Dred Scott Case: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, 242–277; H. von Holst, *History*, VI, ch. i; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 127–129, 156–161; F. T. Hill, *Decisive Battles of the Law* ch. iv; E. S. Corwin, *Dred Scott Decision* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVII, 52); Samuel Tyler, *Roger B. Taney*, 359–438; T. H. Benton, *Historical and Legal Examination;* S. A. Foot, *Case of Dred Scott;* Gray and Lowell, *Case of Dred Scott;* Joel Parker, *Personal Liberty Laws and Slavery in the Territories;* J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom*

and Bondage, §§ 489–539; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, chs. iv, v; H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court*, II, ch. xv; C. G. Haines, *Conflict over Judicial Powers*, 145–162; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, ch. xxxix; M. Van Buren, *Political Parties*, ch. viii. — JOHN BROWN: O. G. Villard, *John Brown;* Jas. Redpath, *John Brown*, 229–407; W. E. B. Du Bois, *John Brown;* H. von Holst, *History*, VI, ch. i, and *John Brown;* Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, ch. viii; F. T. Hill, *Decisive Battles of the Law*, ch. iii; M. J. Wright, *Trial* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, IV, 439); B. T. Washington, *Frederick Douglass*, 182–194; B. H. Wise, *Henry A. Wise*, ch. xiv; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, 384–416; H. D. Capers, *C. G. Memminger*, 238–282. — MAPS: F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 80.

Sources. — TEXT OF THE DECISION: 19 *Howard*, 399, and 2 *Miller*, 1; extracts in *American History Leaflets*, No. 23; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 91; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 480. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 1 sess., (see indexes, "Harper's Ferry"); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 2; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 431, 553–555; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 295–298, 306–310. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), I, 226–235, (Biog. ed.), II, 315–339, (Fed. ed.), II, 287–307; F. B. Sanborn, *John Brown*, chs. xii–xvii, and *Recollections*, I, chs. v–ix; Jas. Redpath, *Echoes of Harper's Ferry;* J. S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 420–480; Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, pt. ii, chs. viii–x; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, ch. xix; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, ch. iii; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), III, 129 (Benjamin), 154 (Lincoln); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 41–43, 47, 48; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxi; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 84.

Bibliography. — H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 295, 306, 307; W. E. B. Du Bois, *John Brown*, 397–400; O. G. Villard, *John Brown*, 687–709; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 350; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 177; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 46 (lects. 61, 62); footnotes to Rhodes and Von Holst.

§ 229. Presidential Election of 1860

Summary. — Parties in 1857 and 1858 (§ 227): Buchanan's presidency; 1857, new tariff; commercial panic; question of homesteads; of Pacific railroads (§ 246); revival of the slave-trade threatened; Kansas question (§ 226); 1858, Mormon War; 1859–

1860, Southern commercial conventions. — Lincoln-Douglas debate: Douglas against the Lecompton Constitution (§ 226); Lincoln Republican candidate for the senatorship; 1858, June 16, "House divided" speech; joint debates; Aug. 27, Douglas's "Freeport doctrine"; Douglas successful; 1858, Seward's "Irrepressible conflict" speech. — Congress: 1859–1860, parties; Douglas out of favor; speakership contest; Helper's "Impending Crisis"; "Covode investigation." — Nominations of 1860: Feb. 2, Jefferson Davis's resolutions in the Senate on state rights and slavery; April 23–May 3, Charleston Convention; May 10, Constitutional Unionists nominate Bell (1); May 16, Republican convention; hopes of Seward, Cameron, and Chase; May 17, Lincoln (2) nominated; May 24, Davis's resolutions voted on; June 22, Baltimore convention nominates Douglas (3); June 28, Seceders' convention nominates Breckinridge (4). — Campaign issues: spoils of office; tariff; Kansas (§ 226); territorial slavery (§§ 221, 225, 228); abolition; disunion (§ 231). — The result: Nov. 6, Lincoln elected; Nov. 20, South Carolina secedes (§ 232).

General. — H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, ch. xxi; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, chs. xvii, xviii; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, chs. vi–vii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, I, chs. i, iii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 174–189; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 218–246, and *Men who made the Nation*, ch. xii; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, ch. iv; George Lunt *Origin of the Late War*, chs. xiv, xv; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, ch. xi; W. G. Brown, *Douglas*, ch. v; W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, 163–191; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, ch. vii; W. A. Linn, *Horace Greeley*, 170–183.

Special. — Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, chs. x–xvi; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, ch. vi; Ida M. Tarbell, *Lincoln*, I, chs. xviii–xx; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, I, 432–436, 454–465, chs. xxiii, xxiv; Jeremiah Lynch, *A Senator of the Fifties* (Broderick); Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, chs. xvi–xviii; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, II, chs. xii, xiii; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, chs. x, xi; H. von Holst, *History*, VI, chs. iii, vi, vii, VII, chs. ii–vi; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxx; Edward Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. cvi–cxxi; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xxi, and *Tariff Controversies*, II, 83–108; J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties* ch. vii; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, chs. xviii–xxi; U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), ch. vii; D. Y. Thomas,

Southern Non-Slaveholders (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXVI, 222); C. H. Ambler, *Sectionalism in Virginia*, 308–338; F. T. Hill, *Lincoln-Douglas Debates* (*Century*, LV, 3); E. D. Fite, *Presidential Election of 1860;* D. W. Bartlett, *Presidential Candidates in 1860;* W. E. Dodd, *Fight for the Northwest* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 774); lives of Bell, Breckinridge, Chase, Douglas, Lincoln, Seward, etc. (§ 39). — MORMON WAR: A. W. Linn, *Mormons*, 458–516; H. H. Bancroft, *Utah*, chs. xviii, xix; O. F. Whitney, *Utah*, I, chs. xxviii–xxxi; W. P. Johnston, *Albert Sidney Johnston*, chs. xiii–xv; E. W. Tullidge, *Salt Lake City*, chs. xv–xxv. — MAPS: F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 132; W. E. Dodd, *Fight for the Northwest*, 788.

Sources. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess. (see index under Davis, Douglas, Wade, Seward, Hale, etc.); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 433, 434, 437–460, 487, 493–495, 503–506, 527–529, 555–558, 593–596, 608–625, 648; *Congressional Documents* on Mormon War, *House Exec. Docs.*, 32 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 25, 33; 35 Cong., 1 sess., No. 138; 36 Cong., 1 sess., No. 78; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 35 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 11 (pp. 21–39), 67; 2 sess., II, No. 1, pp. 28–223; 36 Cong., 1 sess., No. 32; E. E. Sparks, *Lincoln-Douglas Debates;* National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 151–161. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Lincoln, *Works* (including Douglas debates) (2 vol. ed.), I, 235–653, (Biog. ed.), II, 357–366, III–V, VI, 1–67, XI, 105–115, (Fed. ed.), III, IV, V, 3–193, VII, 389–398; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 44–46, ch. viii; *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 85, 107; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, III, ch. xliii; W. H. Seward, *Works*, IV, 289–430, 679–691, Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), III, 168 (Lincoln), 184 (Douglas), 195 (Seward); J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. i, chs. vi, vii; J. Buchanan, *Works*, X, 327–464 (see Contents), and *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, chs. iii, xii, xiii; *Diary and Correspondence* of *Chase*, 275–290, 477–483; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. viii; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, II, chs. xi, xii; J. S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 480–526; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquy xviii; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, ch. iv; Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences*, II, 83–104, 161–207; crisis of 1857, in *Hunt's Merchants' Magazine*, XXXVII, XXXVIII *passim*, XL, 19.

Bibliography. — A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 46 (lect. 63); A. P. C. Griffin, *Works on Political Parties;* New York City Public Library, *List of Works relating to the Mormons* (*Bulletin*, XIII, 183); footnotes to Von Holst, Rhodes, Schouler, etc. See references in § 227.

CHAPTER XXVIII

THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD

§ 230. The Sections Compared, 1861

Summary. — (See §§ 193, 200–203, 209, 216). — Geography: areas of free states, border states, and seceding states; status of territories; of Pacific states. — States (§ 203): 15 slave-holding, 18 free; Kansas (34th) (§ 226). — Military conditions: distances; coast line; Appalachian range; inside lines; hills; forested areas; the South on the defensive. — Economic comparison (§ 201): agriculture; manufactures; mines; commerce; wealth; means of communication. — Social comparison (§ 200): population, Northern, border states, Confederacy; negroes and whites; cities; education; intelligence. — Military comparison: number of troops Northern and Southern; Confederates from loyal states; Northern troops from seceding states; regular army; military administration; military aptitude; officers; the Northern and Southern volunteer; military supplies; military preparation; use of negroes. — Expectation of foreign aid: "King Cotton"; sympathy of England and France; tariff question; effect of the blockade (§§ 235, 238). — Slavery the chief cause of difference (§§ 209–212, 221, 222, 225, 228, 229).

General. — NORTHERN ACCOUNTS: J. C. Ropes, *Civil War*, I, chs. vii, viii; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. v; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, ch. ii; J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. i; Katharine Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 232–285; E. C. Semple, *American History and its Geographic Conditions*, ch. xiv; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, ch. vii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and the Constitution*, I, ch. ii; Jas. Redpath, *Echoes from Harper's Ferry*, App.; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, ch. xiv; A. B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, No. xi. — SOUTHERN ACCOUNTS: J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 301–311, 471–483, II, 705–717; E. A.

Pollard, *Lost Cause*, 49–53; W. G. Brown, *Lower South*, 83–112; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, chs. i, iv, xii; W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, 207–214; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 159–163, 338–348, 382, 383, 500–509, 544–546, V, 656–667. — FOREIGN ACCOUNTS: Jas. Spence, *American Union*, 248–314; John Formby, *American Civil War*, ch. v.

Special. — NORTHERN ACCOUNTS: H. von Holst, *History*, VII, chs. vii, viii; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, III, chs. i, ii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xxvi, xxix, II, chs. xxxix, xli–xlv, III, ch. xcv; T. S. Goodwin, *Natural History of Secession;* R. Hildreth, *Despotism in America;* Century Co., *Battles and Leaders*, I, 74–98; Fred. Phisterer, *Statistical Record;* G. W. Williams, *Negro Troops;* T. L. Livermore, *Numbers and Losses*, 1–77. — SOUTHERN ACCOUNTS: J. D. B. De Bow, *Industrial Resources of the Southern and Western States;* R. L. Dabney, *Defence of Virginia*, ch. viii; Jas. Williams, *South Vindicated*, and *Rise and Fall of the Model Republic;* see also personal narratives in §§ 235, 236. — FOREIGN ACCOUNTS: Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 6, 16–29, 76–106, 172–217, 257–316; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, ch. iii; Adam Gurowski, *America and Europe;* J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power;* A. E. de Gasparin, *Uprising of a Great People;* F. Laboulaye, *Separation.* — MAPS: F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 8, 20, 60; J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, 4.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess. *passim*, especially 624 (Winslow), 721 (Slidell), 134 (Lane), 12, 72 (Wigfall), 1467 (Breckinridge), 943 (De Jarnette). — DOCUMENTS: *Eighth Census, Population; Tenth Census, Compendium*, I, 4, 333; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., II (army in 1860), III (navy in 1860); VIII (importation by districts); 37 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 1, 19, 85 (Sec of War, July 1, 1861), No. 2 (Sec. of the Treasury); *House Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., II (finances in 1860), IX, No. 53 militia), X, No. 77 (banks); 37 Cong., 1 sess., No. 1 (treasury), No. 14 (Indians and negroes); *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., No. 2 (militia); *House Reports*, 37 Cong., 1 sess., No. 1 (volunteers); *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861 *passim*, especially 26 (army), 490 (navy); 1863, 268, 361 (draft). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, II, ch. xxv; F. L. Olmsted, *Cotton Kingdom* (or *Seaboard Slave States*, and *Back Country*, and *Texas Journey*); H. R. Helper, *Impending Crisis;* G. M. Weston, *Progress of Slavery;* "Barbarossa," *Lost Principle* (slave-trade); Augustin Cochin, *Results of Slavery*.

Bibliography. — E. C. Lunt, *Key to the Census* (Amer. Statis.

Assoc., *Publications*, n.s., I, Nos. 2, 3); F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 351; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, § 87; *South in the Building of the Nation*, V, 667.

§ 231. Theory of Secession

Summary. — Effect of status of the states before 1789 (§§ 153, 158, 159, 166, 172). — Effect of ratifications of the Constitution (§§ 174, 175): revocable or irrevocable; "supreme law"; "more perfect union"; reserved rights. — Threats of secession: 1795, *Connecticut Courant;* 1798, Virginia and Kentucky (§ 184); 1803, 1811, 1814, New England (§ 192); 1832, sentiment in South Carolina (§ 206); 1833, differentiation from nullification; 1850, threats in the Compromise debate (§ 222); 1856, meeting of the governors at Raleigh; 1860, threats in the presidential election (§ 229). — Enunciations of secession: 1798–1799, Virginia and Kentucky doctrine (§ 184); 1803, Tucker's Blackstone; 1811, Jan. 14, Josiah Quincy's speech; 1825, Rawle's "View of the Constitution"; 1832, South Carolina resolutions (§ 206); 1845, William Lloyd Garrison's doctrine (§ 210); 1850, Calhoun's speech (§ 222); 1860, Feb 2, Jefferson Davis's resolutions (§ 229). — Questions as to the doctrine in 1860: constitutionality; expediency; probable effectiveness; legal effect of ordinances of secession (§ 232).

General. — Brief Legal Discussions (chiefly adverse): T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, ch. ii; J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), §§ 178, 207–215, 311–322, 467–481, 915–922; R. H. Dana, *Wheaton's International Law*, note 32; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 25–42, 120 *a;* G. S. Boutwell, *Constitution*, §§ 58–71; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, index, under title "State Rights"; John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, 84–91, 111–175, 210; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, I, ch. iv; O. F. Bump, *Notes on Constitutional Decisions*, 327–333; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, §§ 41–65; C. G. Tiedeman, *Unwritten Constitution*, ch. ix; John King, *Commentaries on the Constitution*, ch. xii; J. R. Tucker, *Constitution*, §§ 171, 288–290. — Brief Narrative Discussions: J. C. Ropes, *Civil War*, I, 12–16; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, chs. i, iii; W. W. Willoughby, *American Constitutional System*, 61–70; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*,

ch. v; Louis Pendleton, *Alexander H. Stephens*, ch. xi; M. M. Granger, *Washington vs. Jefferson;* Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 280–297, 326–363; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xxvii, xxviii; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, II, ch. xix; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, ch. i; Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 113–116; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. vi; Chas. Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, ch. viii; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, articles Secession Controversy, State Sovereignty, United States as a Federal State.

Special. — Doctrine Defended: J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. i, especially 70–77, 157–168, 185–192; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 17–49, 408–418, 441–452, 459–539, II, 5–15, 26–34, 261–271; J. L. M. Curry, *Legal Justification* (*Confederate Military History*, I, 1); W. W. Handlin, *American Politics;* C. S. Farrar, *The War, Its Causes and Consequences;* A. P. Upshur, *Nature of the Federal Government; South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 466–468, 472–486, 499, 500; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, ch. i; A. T. Bledsoe, *Is Davis a Traitor?* J. W. Du Bose, *William L. Yancey*, chs. viii–xxi; C. F. Adams, *Constitutional Ethics of Secession* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d ser., XVII, 99). — Adverse to the Doctrine: J. C. Hurd, *Theory of our National Existence*, and *The Union-State;* Wm. Whiting, *War Powers under the Constitution;* T. S. Goodwin, *Natural History of Secession;* Henry Baldwin, *General View;* C. S. Patterson, *United States and the States*, chs. i, xii; Joel Parker, *Constitutional Law;* C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession;* S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution.*

Sources. — Debates: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess.; 37 Cong., 1 sess., 2 sess. (especially debate on Davis resolutions, Feb., May, 1860); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. ix. — Documents: Lincoln's inaugural address and message of July 4, 1861, in *Works*, and in Richardson, *Messages; Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., No. 1; *American History Leaflets*, No. 18. — Buchanan's Doctrine: his message of Dec. 3, 1860, in Richardson, *Messages*, V, 626; *Mr. Buchanan's Administration.* — Southern Documents: Ordinances of Secession and accompanying documents (§ 232); Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers*, I, i, VI, 54, 190, X, 433. — Supreme Court Cases: Texas *v.* White, 7 *Wallace*, 700, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 302; White *v.* Hart, 13 *Wallace*, 646, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 259; Sprott *v.* United States, 20 *Wallace*, 419; Keith *v.* Clark, 92 *United States*, 461.

Bibliography. — Robert Desty, *Federal Constitution* (2d ed.), 116–118, 272, 273; A. R. Hasse, *Books on Political Rights* (N. Y.

City Public Library, *Bulletin*, VIII, 132–136); Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 310, 311, 363, 364; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 48 (lect. 65), 156; see references in §§ 175, 232.

§ 232. Process of Secession, 1860–1861

Summary. — Previous threats (§ 231). — Causes of secession: conventional views; ambition; desire for independence; political supremacy; self-government; slavery. — Grievances of the South: general discontent; unfriendliness; wrong interpretation of the Constitution; apprehension from Lincoln's election; opposition to slavery. — Movement in South Carolina: 1860, Oct. 5, Governor Gist's letter; Nov. 5, legislature called; Nov. 6, election day; Nov. 7, resignation of federal officials; Nov. 12, act for calling a convention; Dec. 17–20, Secession Convention; Dec. 20, Secession Ordinance; Dec. 24, accompanying appeals; effect on the Union. — Secession of the other cotton states: movement; Nov. 14, Stephens's Union speech; 1861, Jan. 5, resolutions of secession congressmen; Jan. 9, Mississippi; Jan. 10, Florida; Jan. 10, Alabama; Jan. 11, Georgia; Jan. 26, Louisiana; Jan. 28, Texas (7th state). — Feb. 4–18, Southern Confederacy formed (§ 235).

General. — T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, chs. xix, xx; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, chs. iv, ix; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xxii, xxvi; Geo. Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, chs. xvi, xvii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, I, ch. iv; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 189–200; J. Schouler, *History*, V, 469–491; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3405–3416; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 696–708; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. vi; Jas. Spence, *American Union*, chs. iii, v, vi; Mountague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 40–53; W. P. Trent, *Southern Statesman*, 197–253 (Stevens, Toombs); Pierce Butler, *Judah P. Benjamin*, 202–224; A. C. McLaughlin, *Cass*, ch. x; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, ch. vii.

Special. — Northern Views: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 115–125, 192–214, 272–280; H. von Holst, *History*, VII, chs. vii, viii; J. C. Ropes, *Civil War*, I, chs. ii–iv; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, ch. viii; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, II, chs. xvii–xxv, III, chs. i, iii–xiii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xxxi, xxxiii; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, ch. li, III, ch. i; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*,

I, ch. xi; J. R. Lowell, *Political Essays*, 45–74, 118–152; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders*, I, 26–49, 99–110. — SOUTHERN VIEWS: Mrs. Davis, *Jefferson Davis*, I, ch. xlv, II, ch. i; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, chs. xiii–xx; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, chs. ii–v; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, ch. xiv; Horatio King, *Turning on the Light;* U. B. Phillips, *Georgia and State Rights* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1901, II), ch. viii; Alfred Roman, *General Beauregard*, I, chs. i, ii; A. L. Long, *Robert E. Lee*, ch. v; R. L. Dabney, *Stonewall Jackson*, 125–196; J. W. Du Bose, *William L. Yancey*, chs. xxiii, xxiv. — BIOGRAPHIES OF CONTEMPORARIES: especially lives of Lincoln, Seward, Chase, Buchanan, Jefferson Davis, Stephens, Toombs, Cobb, Tyler (§ 39). — STATE HISTORIES: of the seceding states (§ 37), and also J. T. Scharf, *Maryland*, III, ch. xlii; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, ch. xv; Lucien Carr, *Missouri*, ch. xiii.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess. *passim;* Robt. Toombs, in A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 109–126; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), III, pt. vi. — DOCUMENTS: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 1 (message of Dec. 3, 1860), IV, No. 5 (message of Jan. 3, 1861); 38 Cong., 1 sess., 1, No. 3 (resignations); *House Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., VI, No. 26 (message of Jan. 9, 1861), IX, No. 61 (message of Feb. 8, 1861), No. 72 (Dix's report); 37 Cong., 3 sess., III, No. 1, p. 532; *House Reports*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., 1, No. 50, II, Nos. 79, 87, 88, 91; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 310–320; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 94; *American History Leaflets*, No. 12; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861 (see index under "Confederate States" and each seceding state, also 594–600, 666 (message of Dec. 3); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 1st ser., I *passim* (secession and Fort Sumter), 4th ser., I *passim* (messages and papers of seceding states); Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I, pt. ii, 1–28; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 1–47, 389–400; Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers*, XIV, 359, XVI, 319. — PROCEEDINGS OF SECESSION CONVENTIONS (§ 43): especially *Journal of the Convention of the People of South Carolina.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Buchanan, *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, chs. iv–vi, ix–xi; W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, I, 172–204; *Correspondence of T. R. R. Cobb* (Southern Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, XI, 156, 312); Morgan Dix, *John A. Dix*, I, 333–388; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. ix; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation*, chs. xvii–xix; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. i, chs. vii, ix, x, pt. ii, pt. iii, chs. i–vii; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, colloquies xi, xii, II, colloquies xix, xxi; A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. x.

Bibliography. — H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 310, 317; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, ch. xx; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 48 (lects. 64, 67), 157; footnotes to Rhodes.

§ 233. Coercion and Compromise, 1860–1861

Summary. — Possible policies of the North: (1) "let the erring sisters go in peace"; (2) resistance; (3) compromise; temper of the North. — Buchanan's attitude: 1860, Oct. 29, "General Scott's Views"; Nov. 20, opinion of Attorney-General Black; Dec. 3, Buchanan's message; Dec. 9, "Memorandum" of South Carolina members; Dec. 11, instructions to Major Anderson; Dec. 15, resignation of Secretary Cass. — First period of compromise: precedents (§§ 197, 206, 222); border states; Republicans; Dec. 6–Jan. 14, House Committee of, 33; Dec. 14, Southern address; Dec. 20–28, Senate Committee of 33; Davis's ultimatum; Seward's ultimatum; compromise defeated by Lincoln's influence. — First Sumter episode: Dec. 20, secession of South Carolina (§232); Dec. 22–26, state commission to Buchanan; Dec. 26, Anderson in Sumter; Dec. 27–29, cabinet crisis, Floyd resigns; Dec. 29, Buchanan yields to Black; Dec. 31, decision to hold Sumter; Jan. 9, *Star of the West* fired upon; Jan. 14–Feb. 6, correspondence with South Carolina commission. — Second period of compromise: Jan. 14, Crittenden compromise defeated; Feb. 7, Vallandigham's plan; Feb. 4–27, peace conference; March 2, Corwin amendment; why did compromise fail? — Question of coercion: apathy of Congress; probable effect on border states; on "Union men" in the South. — Principles of coercion: (1) protection of national property; (2) arrest of criminals; (3) "execution of the laws"; (4) "suppressing insurrection"; (5) rebellion; (6) "war on a state."

General. — J. C. Ropes, *Civil War*, I, 10–60; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, chs. xi–xvi; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, ch. x; W. W. Willoughby, *American Constitutional System*, 70–78; Jesse Macy, *Political Parties*, ch. xxii; Geo. Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, chs. xvi–xix; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xxiii–xxv; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. xxii, § ii; J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), § 1922; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. iv; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, ch. xii; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, 442–461.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 125–192, 215–272, 280–291, 305–316; H. von Holst, *History*, VII, ch. xi; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, chs. xxvi–xxix, xxxiii; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, chs. ii–viii; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, chs. xii, xiii; W. U. Hensel, in J. Buchanan, *Works*, XII, 267–285; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, II, chs. xxvi–xxviii, III, chs. i, x–xv; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, ch. vii; F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, chs. li–liv; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, ch. xxv; G. C. Gorham, *Stanton*, I, chs. xii–xxiv; G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, II, chs. xxi, xxii; see other lives of Lincoln, Seward, Chase, Crittenden, Toombs, Jefferson Davis (§ 39).

Sources. — Official Records: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess. *passim*, especially 1114 (Crittenden plan), 794 (Vallandigham's), 1254 (Peace Conference), 690 (Kellog's), 283, 379 (Clark's); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., IV, No. 2 (message of Feb. 19); *Senate Reports*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., No. 288 (Committee of 13); *House Misc. Docs.*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., (resolutions of legislatures and public meetings); *House Reports*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 31 (Committee of 33), II, Nos. 87, 88 (coercion); *Opinions of Attorneys-General*, IX, 522–526 (Black). — Collections of Documents: *American Annual Encylopædia*, 1861, 166–225 (Congress), 562–568 (Peace Conference), 575 (personal liberty laws); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 4th ser., I *passim* (messages and letters); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, V, 626–639, 655–664, 669; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 48–91; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I, pt. ii, 35, 36; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 93, 95, 96; Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers*, XII, 60; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, II, 2274–2420; L. E. Chittenden, *Report of the Conference Convention; Official Journal of the Conference Convention;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 63–65, 67–69; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 158. — Contemporary Writings: J. Buchanan, *Works*, XI (see Contents), and *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, chs. vii, viii; *Sherman Letters*, 79–104; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. i, ch. viii, pt. iii, chs. viii–xi; W. H. Trescot, *Narrative concerning Negotiations between South Carolina and Buchanan* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XIII, 528); Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, II, chs. xiii–xvii; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, IV, ch. xliv; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, ch. xix; W. H. Seward, *Works*, IV, 223–692.

Bibliography. — F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, ch. xx; H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, 313–315; B. P. Poore, *Catalogue of Government Publications*, 783–791; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 47, 48 (lects. 66, 68); footnotes to Rhodes and Von Holst.

§ 234. Abraham Lincoln and the Outbreak of War, 1860–1861

Summary. — Lincoln's life: 1809, birth; 1847–1849, in Congress (§ 221); 1854–1856, attitude on Kansas; 1858, Douglas debate (§ 229); 1860, Feb. 27, Cooper Union speech; 1860, Nov. 6, elected President; characteristics. — Interregnum: Dec., opposes compromise (§ 233); Dec. 22, letter to Stephens; influence on Greeley and Seward; Feb. 11–23, journey to Washington and addresses. — Status of the country: secessions (§ 232); Southern Confederacy (§ 235); the forts (§ 233); uncertainty of public feeling. — Fort Sumter crisis: Mar. 4, inaugural address; Mar. 5, cabinet nominated; Mar. 12, commission of the C. S. A.; Mar. 13–22, Campbell's intervention; Mar. 15, first cabinet advice; Mar. 29, second cabinet advice, Lincoln decides to reinforce; Apr. 1, Seward's suggestion of foreign war; Apr. 6, notice to South Carolina; Apr. 12, attack on Fort Sumter; Apr. 13, the fort surrenders. — Outbreak of war: Apr. 15, call for volunteers; Apr. 19, Sixth Massachusetts in Baltimore; Apr. 19, 27, blockade proclamations. — Border secessions: Apr. 17, Virginia; May 6, Arkansas; May 7, Tennessee; May 20, North Carolina (11th state); Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri retained; status of East Tennesse, West Virginia, and the eastern shore of Virginia.

General. — Northern Views: H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xxvi–xxx; J. Schouler, *History*, V, 497–511, VI, 1–50; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, chs. xvii–xix; J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, chs. ii, iii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, I, chs. v–vii; W. W. Willoughby, *American Constitutional System*, 78–85; Geo. Lunt, *Origin of the War*, chs. xx, xxi; J. R. Lowell, *Political Essays*, 75–91; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 708–720; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, chs. xiii–xv; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 202–215; Allen Johnson, *Douglas*, 461–489.

Special. — Northern Views: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 300–415; J. C. Ropes, *Civil War*, I, chs. v, vi; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders*, I, 1–73; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, chs. xxxiv–xxxviii; J. G. Nicolay, *Outbreak of the Rebellion;* G. T. Curtis, *Buchanan*, II, chs. xxiv–xxvii; Thos. Speed, *Union Cause in Kentucky*. — Biogra-

PHIES OF LINCOLN (§ 39): especially, J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, ch. viii, 220–302; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, ch. xxix, III, chs. xvi–xxvi, IV, chs. i–iv; Ida M. Tarbell, *Abraham Lincoln;* I, ch. xxi, II, 1–52; H. J. Raymond, *Administration of Lincoln;* A. K. McClure, *Lincoln*, 44–97; Norman Hapgood, *Lincoln*, chs. i–x; also Arnold, Herndon, Holland, Lamon. — SOUTHERN VIEWS: E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, chs. v, vi; B. B. Munford, *Virginia's Attitude toward Slavery*, pts. iii, iv; biographies of Jefferson Davis, Stephens, Toombs, Yancey, Lee (§ 39). — BIOGRAPHIES OF NORTHERN STATESMEN (§ 39): especially Chase, Crittenden, Douglas, Scott, Seward, Stanton, B. F. Wade; also F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, chs. xxviii, xxix; W. D. Foulke, *Oliver P. Morton*, I, chs. x, xi; H. G. Pearson, *John A. Andrew*, I, chs. iv, v; T. W. Barnes, *Thurlow Weed*, 291–348. — FOREIGN VIEWS: Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 107–171; A. E. de Gasparin, *Uprising of a Great People;* H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, chs. ii, iii; Goldwin Smith, *United States*, 233–253; Mountague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 65–105. — MAPS: F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 244; *War of the Rebellion, Atlas.*

Sources. — DEBATES AND SPEECHES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong., 2 sess., 37 Cong., 1 sess., 2 sess.; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), IV, 164 (Lincoln). — DOCUMENTS: *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 1 sess., No. 20; *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess. (state resolutions); *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 225–250 (Congress), 315–323 (forts), 416–420 (Lincoln), 601–612 (inaugural and message of July 4, 1861); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 1st ser., I, 190–317 (Fort Sumter), 474–488 (North Carolina), 4th ser., I *passim;* *Naval Records*, I, 3–11, IV, 3–143, 219–313; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 5–31, 44; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 18, 26; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 1, 2, 27; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 105–150; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I, pt. ii, 36–73; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3417–3420. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), I, 653–695, II, 1–44, (Biog. ed.), VI, 68–265, XI, 116–119, (Fed. ed.), V, 194–297; Gideon Welles, *Diary*, I, ch. i; R. B. Warden, *Chase*, chs. xxv, xxvi; *Diary and Correspondence of Salmon P. Chase*, 290–296, 483–498; L. E. Chittenden, *Recollections of Lincoln*, chs. xlii–xlvi; J. Buchanan, *Works*, XI (see Contents); A. G. Riddle, *Recollections*, chs. ii–vii; J. M. Forbes, *Letters and Recollections*, I, ch. viii; Thurlow Weed, *Autobiography*, 602–620; Hugh McCullough, *Men and Measures*, ch. xiv; H. Greeley, *Recollections*, chs. xlix–lii; *Sherman Letters*, 104–124; E. D. Keyes,

Fifty Years' Observation, chs. xvii–xxi; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, chs. x, xi; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, ch. v; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquies xviii, xx; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, pt. iii, chs, xi–xiii, pt. iv, chs. i–v, Apps. G–I, L; S. W. Crawford, *Genesis of the Civil War;* Abner Doubleday, *Reminiscences of Fort Sumter;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 66, 70–74, 96, 97, 101.

Bibliography. — Andrew Boyd, *Memorial Lincoln Bibliography;* L. Sabin, *Dictionary of Books relating to America*, title Lincoln; G. T. Richie, *List of Lincolniana;* A. Lincoln, *Works* (Biog. ed.), XI, 143–376 (Fish's bibliography); J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion;* F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, 351; J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, 330; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 48 (lect. 69), 158; N. Eng. Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Historical Sources in Schools*, §§ 88; footnotes to secondary writers cited above.

§ 235. The Southern Confederacy, 1861–1865

Summary. — Formation: 1798–1860, suggestions; 1836, "The Partisan Leader"; 1861, Jan. 7, call by Alabama; Feb. 4, Congress at Montgomery; Feb. 8, provisional Constitution; Feb. 18, Davis inaugurated president; Mar. 11, permanent Constitution submitted; 1862, Feb. 18, permanent Constitution in force. — The Constitution: modeled on the federal Constitution; "delegated powers"; cabinet ministers in Congress; no protective tariffs or national internal improvements; veto of appropriation items; two thirds vote for export tax and new states. — Slavery in the Constitution: word "slaves"; slave trade prohibited: right of transit acknowledged; territorial slavery acknowledged; 1861, Mar. 21, Vice-President Stephens's "corner-stone" speech. — Administration of the Confederacy: cabinet ministers; civil officials; Davis's predominance; rivalry of Stephens; secret sessions; no Supreme Court. — Finances: loans; foreign loans; paper money; requisition; taxes. — Conscription: successive acts; difficulty with Georgia. — Foreign relations (§ 238). — Relations with federal government: pirates and traitors; prisoners of war; border intercourse; attempts at peace negotiations. — Difficulties: lack of manufactures; deficient transportation; exhaustion of the country; effect of the blockade. — Legal status: a government *de facto;* acts legally void; effect of Fourteenth Amendment (§§ 241, 242).

General. — Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 117–123, and *American People*, IV, 269–312; F. E. Chadwick, *Causes of the Civil War*, ch. xv; J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. xvi; J. Schouler, *History*, VI, ch. i, § iii, ch. iii, § i; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, ch. xix; W. G. Brown, *Lower South*, No. 3; Louis Pendleton, *Alexander H. Stephens*, chs. xii–xvi; W. P. Trent, *Southern Statesmen*, 257–293 (Davis); S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. xv; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), VI, 899; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, ch. ix; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 487–498, 627, 628, V, 146–151, 209–212, 332–334, 365–367, 422–426, 453–457, 478–482, 494–497, 668, 677; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia of American Government*, article Confederate States.

Special. — Northern Views: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 291–296, 320–325, 543–552, V, chs. xxviii, xxix; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, ch. xxxii, II, ch. xlii, III, 447–461, 480–497, 620–625; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, III, chs. xii, xiii, IV, chs. ix–xiii, V–X *passim; American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 121–165, 278, 279, 1862, 235–255, 1863, 203–219, 1864, 193–203, 1865, 187–202; *Magazine of American History*, II, 259, XVI, 387. — Southern Views: J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 229–246, 258–281, 339, 340, 484–520, II, 1–17, 343–350, 608–624, 667–705; W. L. Fleming, *Civil War and Reconstruction in Alabama*, pts. i, ii; J. L. M. Curry, *Government of the Confederate States;* E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause* passim, especially chs. v, vii, x. — Biographies: W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, chs. xiii–xxi; Mrs. Davis, *Davis*, II; F. H. Alfriend, *Davis*, chs. viii–xxi; E. A. Pollard, *Davis* (unreliable); Henry Cleveland, *A. H. Stephens*, 170–200, 713–804; Johnston and Browne, *Stephens*, 383–487; Alfred Roman, *General Beauregard*, II, ch. l; J. W. Jones, *R. E. Lee*, chs. v–viii; J. W. Du Bose, *W. L. Yancey*, chs. xxv–xxvii; H. D. Capers, *C. G. Memminger*, 300–370. — Military Affairs (see § 236). — Finances: J. C. Schwab, *Confederate States;* E. A. Smith, *Confederate Treasury* (Southern Hist. Assoc., *Publications*, V, 1, 99, 188; *Banker's Magazine*, XXIV, 934–941, 1089–1095; Horace White, *Money and Banking* (3d. ed.), ch. iv.

Sources. — Provisional and Permanent Constitutions: in *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 627–631; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 640–675; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 714–735; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 98–104; *British and Foreign State Papers*, LI, 672, 879; P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics*, 497–508; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 97. — Messages and Documents: J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 237, 260–269, and *Messages and Papers of the Confederacy*, I;

Journal of the Congress of the Confederate States; D. A. Freeman, *Calendar of Confederate Papers; War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 4th ser.; *Echoes from the South; American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 121–165 (legislation), 278 (diplomacy), 612–624 (messages); 1862, 12–15 (army), 256–274 (Congress), 599–604 (navy), 732–738 (messages); 1863, 16 (army), 226–233 (Congress), 659 (navy), 782–799 (messages); 1864, 30 (army), 206–219 (Congress) 556 (navy), 691–698 (messages), 707 (navy), 710–714 (peace negotiations); 1865, 717–719 (messages), 1861–1865 *passim*, under heads "Army," "Confederate States," "Congress, Confederate," and the seceded states by name; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 400–403, 417–622 *passim;* (United States) *House Exec. Docs.*, 39 Cong., 1 sess., XII, No. 3 (state laws); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 1st ser., 2d ser. (prisoners of war), 4th ser. (Confederate); Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I–XI, and Sup. I *passim;* Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers*, I, 23, II, 56, 104, V, 288, VI, 353, VII, 99, 127, 333, 353, IX, 542, X, 137, 154, 560; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, App. C; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 22, 38, 66; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), IV, 32 (Davis), 39 (Stephens). — STATUTES: *Confederate States of America, Statutes at Large of the Provisional Government*, and *Public Laws*, and *Private Laws*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Davis (see above under "Special"); A. H. Stephens, *War between the States* passim; J. H. Reagan, *Memoirs*, chs. ix–xvi; G. C. Eggleston, *Rebel's Recollections;* J. B. Jones, *Rebel War Clerk's Diary;* "A Lady of Virginia," *Diary of a Southern Refugee;* J. S. Wise, *End of an Era;* Mary B. Chesnut, *Diary from Dixie;* Mrs. Burton Harrison, *Recollections* (*Scribner's Magazine*, XLIX, 315, 456, 556, 727); Mrs. R. A. Pryor, *Reminiscences of Peace and War*, chs. ix–xxvi; J. L. Peyton, *American Crisis*, I, chs. i–v; J. H. Gilmer, *Southern Politics*, and *Confederate States vs. Gilmer;* F. S. Daniel, *Richmond Examiner during the War;* R. L. Dabney, *Defence of Virginia and the South;* Heros von Borcke, *Confederate War for Independence;* C. Girard, *États Confédérés d'Amérique.*

Bibliography. — J. C. Schwab, *Confederate States*, App. ii; L. Sabin, *Dictionary of American Bibliography*, title Confederate States; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 498, 499, V, 151, 426, 457, 482, 497, 677; H. A. Morrison, *Bibliography of Official Publications* (Bibl. Soc. of Am., *Proceedings*, III, 92); J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion;* J. O. Sumner, in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Papers*, IV, 332; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 50 (lect. 72), 82 (lect. 70); footnotes to Rhodes.

§ 236. Military Events of the Civil War, 1861–1865

Summary. — Preparations: regular army; regular navy; resignations of officers; military stores; fortifications; theater of war (§ 230); effect of Fort Sumter episode (§ 234). — Eastern campaigns: 1861, July 21, Bull Run; 1862, May–July, Peninsula campaign; Aug. 24, second Bull Run; Sept. 16, 17, Antietam; Dec. 13, Fredericksburg; 1863, May 3–5, Chancellorsville; July 1–3, Gettysburg; 1864, May 5–9, Wilderness; May–June, Grant's Virginia campaign; June, investment of Petersburg and Richmond; Aug.–Nov., Sheridan's Valley campaigns. — Western campaigns: 1861, Missouri eld; Nov. 7, Belmont; 1862, Feb. 6–16, Forts Henry and Donelson; Apr. 6, 7, Pittsburg Landing; Oct. 8, Perryville; Dec. 31, Stone River; 1863, July 4, Vicksburg surrenders; Sept. 19, 20, Chickamauga; Nov. 23–25, Chattanooga; 1864, May–July, Sherman's Georgia campaign; Sept. 2, Atlanta; Nov.–Dec., "March to the sea"; Dec. 15, 16, Nashville. — Naval warfare: 1861–1865, blockade; 1862, Mar. 9, 10, *Merrimac* and *Monitor;* Apr. 23, New Orleans; 1863, July, Mississippi opened; 1864, June 19, *Kearsarge* and *Alabama;* Aug. 4–22, Mobile. — Finale: 1865, Jan.–Apr., Sherman's northward march; Apr. 2, 3, Richmond abandoned; Apr. 9, Lee surrenders at Appomattox; Apr. 26, Johnston surrenders; dissolution of Southern organization; 1865–1866, disbandment of Northern armies.

General. — J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, chs. iv–xiii, xv–xix, and *Outcome of the Civil War*, chs. ii, iii, v–vii, x–xii, xvii; J. Schouler, *History*, VI; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, chs. xiv–xvii; Woodrow Wilson, *American People*, IV, 210–268; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), I, 818; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, I, chs. viii–xi, II; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, chs. xv–xvii, xxiii–xxv; Goldwin Smith, *United States*, 241–294; E. Channing, *United States, 1765–1865*, 258–300; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, chs. ix, x; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3420–3560; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, chs. x, xi, II *passim;* G. C. Gorham, *Stanton*, pts. iv–viii.

Special. — Single Volume Histories: T. A. Dodge, *Bird's Eye View of our Civil War;* Rossiter Johnson, *War of Secession;* Wood and Edmonds, *Civil War in the United States;* John Formby, *American Civil War.* — Extended Histories: J. C. Ropes, *Story*

of the Civil War (2 vols. out, to be completed by W. R. Livermore); Comte de Paris, *Civil War* (4 vols.); J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III–V; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xxix, xxx, xxxiii, xxxv–xxxviii, II, chs. i–ix, xiii–xx, xxiii–xxix, xxxi–xxxv; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, IV–X *passim;* H. C. Fletcher, *American War* (3 vols.); Century Co., *Battles and Leaders* (4 vols.); G. C. Eggleston, *Confederate War* (2 vols.); Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers* (1876–1909); *Confederate Military History* (12 vols.); J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, chs. xl, xlvi–lix, III, chs. lxv–lxxxiii, lxxxviii–xciv; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 352–483, II, 18–157, 194–265, 311–342, 351–366, 382–449, 504–704; Asa Mahan, *Critical History of the American War;* Harpers, *Pictorial History of the Great Rebellion;* E. A. Pollard, *Southern History of the War* (4 vols.), and *Lost Cause*, chs. vii–xliii. — MILITARY MAPS: T. A. Dodge, *Bird's Eye View of the Civil War* (sketches): J. C. Ropes, *Civil War;* Comte de Paris, *Atlas to the History of the Civil War; War of the Rebellion, Official Records, Atlas* (official and very elaborate); J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, and *Outcome of the Civil War;* J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III–V; W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 208. Most of the military histories and biographies contain maps of greater or less value.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37, 38 Congs. *passim.* — CONGRESSIONAL INVESTIGATION: *Report on the Conduct of the War* (3 vols., 1863), being *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong., 3 sess., No. 108; *Report on the Conduct of the War* (3 vols., 1865), being *Senate Reports*, 38 Cong., 2 sess., No. 142; *Supplemental Report on the Conduct of the War* (2 vols., 1866). — REPORTS OF THE SECRETARIES OF WAR AND OF THE NAVY: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., II–V (1861); 38 Cong., special session of Mar., 1863; 38 Cong., 2 sess. *passim; House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 3 sess., IV–VIII (1862); 38 Cong., 1 sess., IV, V, VII, IX, XIII, XV (1863); 38 Cong., 2 sess., VI, VII, XII–XIV (1864); 39 Cong., 1 sess., III, V, XII–XVI (1865). — DOCUMENTS: J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 40, 99–102, 104, 110–113, 116, 119, 124, 153, 159, 175, 231, 234, 236, 238, 239, 242, 283; *Senate Reports*, 38 Cong., 1 sess. *passim;* 38 Cong., 2 sess. *passim; House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., I, V, VII, IX, X; 37 Cong., 3 sess., IV; *House Misc. Docs.*, 38 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 39; *House Reports*, 38 Cong., 1 sess., I, Nos. 65, 67; 38 Cong., 2 sess.; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861 to 1866, under titles "Army," "Army Operations," "Navy," "Navy Operations," "Prisoners," and names of engagements; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 417–602 *passim;* Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I–XI, and Sup. I; G. B. McClellan, *Report on the Army of the Potomac;*

U. S. Grant, *Report of July 2, 1865* (in *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1865, 719–742); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 1st ser. (serial Nos. 1–111); *Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies* (in progress, 24 vols. pub. by 1911). — WORKS OF COMMANDERS: A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), II, (Biog. ed.), VI, 265–361, VII–XI (Fed. ed.), V, 297–471, VII, VIII *passim;* Gideon Welles, *Diary*, I, II; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs;* W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, I, 176–405, II, 1–380, and *Sherman Letters*, 125–145, and *Home Letters*, chs. vii–x; P. H. Sheridan, *Personal Memoirs;* G. B. McClellan, *McClellan's Own Story;* J. D. Cox, *Military Reminiscences;* J. M. Schofield, *Forty-Six Years in the Army*, chs. iii–xviii; O. O. Howard, *Autobiography*, chs. viii–xlv; Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences*, II, chs. vii, viii, III, chs. i, ii, iv; A. E. Burnside, *Burnside Expedition;* J. E. Johnston, *Narrative of Military Operations;* G. H. Gordon, *War Diary;* J. B. Hood, *Advance and Retreat;* Jas. Longstreet, *Manassas to Appomattox;* E. P. Alexander, *Military Memoirs;* Rich. Taylor, *Destruction and Reconstruction*, chs. ii–xiv; J. S. Mosby, *War Reminiscences.* — NARRATIVES OF PARTICIPANTS: C. A. Dana, *Recollections of the Civil War;* T. W. Higginson, *Army Life in a Black Regiment;* P. R. de Trobriand, *Four Years with the Army of the Potomac;* E. D. Townsend, *Anecdotes of the Civil War;* Carlton McCarthy, *Detailed Minutiæ of a Soldier's Life;* D. D. Porter, *Incidents and Anecdotes of the Civil War;* G. H. Perkins, *Letters*, 57–161 (navy); F. A. Haskell, *Gettysburg;* G. A. Townsend, *Campaigns of a Non-Combatant;* J. H. Browne, *Four Years in Secessia;* W. B. Hazen, *Narrative of Military Service;* G. C. Eggleston, *Rebel's Recollections;* Frank Wilkeson, *Recollections of a Private Soldier;* John Wilkinson, *Narrative of a Blockade-Runner;* A. C. Hobart (A. Roberts), *Never Caught;* T. E. Taylor, *Running the Blockade;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, chs. xviii–xx, xxii. — FOREIGN OBSERVERS: W. H. Russell, *My Diary North and South;* S. P. Day, *Down South;* Edward Dicey, *Six Months in the Federal States;* A. J. Fremantle, *Three Months in the Southern States.* — ILLUSTRATIVE MATERIAL: Pictures in *Harper's Weekly* (many republished in *Harper's Pictorial History of the War*), and in *Frank Leslie's Weekly;* R. G. White, *Poetry of the Civil War;* W. L. Fagan, *Southern War Songs;* G. H. Boker, *Poems of the War* (see §§ 51, 52). — PERIODICALS: The immense periodical literature can be reached through the indexes enumerated in § 24. Of the newspapers (§ 41) the most useful are the *New York Tribune, Times, World, Evening Post, Springfield Republican, Boston Advertiser, Chicago Tribune, Cincinnati Commercial.*

Bibliography. — J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. xxi, and *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. xviii; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 811–815; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 49, 50 (lects. 73, 77); B. P. Poore, *Catalogue of Government Publications*, 790–842; F. Leypoldt, *American Catalogue*, see Subject Entries under "United States, History, Civil War"; J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion;* J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 213–260; G. R. Clark, *United States Navy*, 484, 485; library catalogues enumerated in § 25; footnotes to works in "Special," especially Rhodes.

§ 237. Financial Measures of the Civil War, 1861–1865

Summary. — Earlier financial conditions (§§ 220, 229). — Financial status in 1861: outgo; taxes; debt; estimates. — Financial administration: 1861, Mar. 5, Secretary Chase; 1864, July 4, Secretary Fessenden; finance committees; vast problems. — Taxes: import duties raised; gold duties; internal revenue acts; stamp duties; direct tax; miscellaneous taxes; income tax; proceeds of the taxes. — Legal tenders: Chase's policy; legal tender acts; amount issued; 1862–1879, gold speculation (§ 243); 1870–1871, 1884, Supreme Court decisions (§ 243). — Loans: "seven-thirties," "six-forties," "five-twenties"; amount of principal; proceeds; gold interest; actual interest; transfer of greenbacks. — National banks: old state banks (§ 220); 1863, Feb. 25, 1864, June 3, National Bank acts; number of banks; services to the government; circulation; exclusion of state bank notes. — Expenditures: military; civil; Pacific railroads (§ 246); methods, accounts; state accounts. — Post-war finances (§ 243).

General. — J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, ch. lxiii, III, chs. lxxxiv–lxxxvi; J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. i; J. Schouler, *History*, VI, 152–157, 282–287; Horace White, *Money and Banking* (3d. ed.), chs. iii, xiv; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 189–211; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, ch. vi; T. E. Burton, *John Sherman*, 87–141; S. W. McCall, *Thaddeus Stevens*, 136–181, 204–209; Francis Fessenden, *William Pitt Fessenden*, I, chs. iv–vi.

Special. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, chs. xii, xiii; J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 91–102, 132–137, 220–269, 287–294, and *United States Notes*, chs. ix–xi; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 464, 559–578, IV, 237–243, 427, 428, 509, V, 188; Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, VI, chs. xi, xii, IX, ch. iv; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, 215–252, 274–289; E. P. Oberholtzer, *Jay Cooke*, I, chs. iv–xii; Comte

de Paris, *Civil War*, II, 654–706, III, 403–450; H. C. Adams, *Public Debts*, pt. ii; A. M. Davis, *Origin of the National Banking System;* G. Bancroft, *Plea for the Constitution;* C. J. Stillé, *How a Free People Conduct a Long War;* J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, ch. xviii, xix, xxii; Ed. Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. cxxi–cxlii; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 155–170; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. xiii; F. C. Howe, *Internal Revenue System*, chs. iii–vii; W. C. Mitchell, *Greenbacks*.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., 39 Cong., 1 sess. *passim*. — FINANCE REPORTS: *Senate Exec. Docs*., 37 Cong., 2 sess., No. 2 (1861); 37 Cong., 3 sess., No. 1 (1862); *House Exec. Docs*., 38 Cong., 1 sess., VI, No. 3 (1863), VII, No. 8, and XV, No. 84 (receipts and expenditures), VII, No. 4, and IX, No. 36 (treasurer's reports); 38 Cong., 2 sess., VII (1864), VII, XIII, No. 73; 39 Cong., 1 sess., VI, XII, No. 74 (1865). — DOCUMENTS: *Senate Exec. Docs*., 38 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 35 (direct taxes), No. 52 (debt), No. 50 (banks); *Senate Misc. Docs*., 39 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 100, 112, 117; *Senate Reports*, 51 Cong., 2 sess., No. 2130 (import duties); *House Exec. Docs*., 37 Cong., 2 sess., I, III, Nos. 36, 44, IX, No. 122; 37 Cong., 3 sess., V, No. 25 (banks); 38 Cong., 1 sess., XIII, No. 66 (Jay Cooke); 38 Cong., 2 sess., VIII, No. 16 (cotton); 39 Cong., 1 sess., VII, No. 26 (deposits), XII, No. 95, (rebel cotton loan); 48 Cong., 2 sess., XVII, No. 4, Table E (proceeds of taxes); *House Misc. Docs*., 38 Cong., 1 sess., III, No. 28; *House Reports*, 38 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 140; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 47, 87, 92, 129, 130, 149, 183, 246–248; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 295–314; 1862, 452–474 (finances); 1863, 290–304 (National Bank act), 394–412 (finances); 1864, 371–377 (finances), 219–352 *passim* (Congress); 1865, 205–301 *passim* (Congress), 335–350 (finances); Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion* 358–374. — STATUTES: *Statutes at Large*, XII, XIII; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 155–199; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 161–191, 327–364, 518–525, 634–648; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 3, 4, 10, 14, 16, 19, 25, 29, 30, 33, 37, 39; Apps. to *Congressional Globe*, 37, 38 Congs. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Hugh McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, chs. xv–xvii; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, chs. xii, xiii, and *Selected Speeches;* R. B. Warden, *Chase*, chs. xxvi–xlii *passim;* J. W. Schuckers, *Chase*, chs. xxx, xxxvii–xxxix; *Diary and Correspondence of Chase*, 312–364 *passim* (on trade w'th the enemy); L. E. Chittenden, *Recollections of Lincoln*, chs. xxxiii, xxxiv; C. Sumner, *Works*, VI, 319, VII, 84–109, 148, 166, VIII, 419, 471, IX, 26, 229, 336.

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 116, 126; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 50 (lect. 75); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 319–331; W. C. Mitchell, *Greenbacks*, chapter bibliographies; Bowker and Iles, *Reader's Guide*, 35–43, 66–72; indexes to public documents (§ 26).

§ 238. International Complications of the War, 1861–1865

Summary. — Earlier foreign affairs (§ 224). — Administration of foreign affairs: Secretary Seward; Senator Sumner; controversies with Navy Department; foreign representatives; Lincoln. — Blockade: rival suggestion of closing the ports; 1861, Apr. 19, 27, Lincoln's proclamations; blockade-runners (§ 235); captures (§ 236); effect on foreign cotton-spinning. — Recognition of belligerency: international precedents; 1861, May 13, English neutrality proclamation; other foreign neutrality proclamations; no recognitions of independence of Confederacy; 1863, Dec. 3, the Pope's letter to Davis. — Trent affair: 1861, Nov. 8, seizure of Slidell and Mason by Wilkes; Dec. 23, English ultimatum presented; Dec. 25, cabinet agrees to surrender Mason and Slidell. — Alabama question: 1861, May 13, Minister C. F. Adams in London; Confederate sympathies of the governing class and English colonies; Union sympathies of the working class; 1862, Feb. 8 to Mar. 22, Adams's protests against the Oreto (Florida); June 23 to July 29, Adams's protests against the "290" (Alabama); 1863, the Japan (Georgia); 1864, the Sea King (Shenandoah); depredations of the cruisers (§§ 235, 236); effect on American merchant marine; Alabama claims (§ 244); question of indirect damages. — Captures of English vessels: blockade-runners (§ 235); "continuous voyages"; Stephen Hart, Springbok, and Peterhoff cases. — Mexico: 1861, English, French, and Spanish convention; 1862, French invasion; 1863, Sept. 20, Seward's protest; 1864, Apr. 4, House resolution on monarchical governments; Maximilian's empire; 1865–1867, Napoleon III compelled to withdraw (§ 244).

General. — J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, I, ch. xii; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, chs. xvi–xx; Moorfield Storey, *Sumner*, chs. xiii, xv; Pierce Butler, *Judah P. Benjamin*, chs. x–xii; J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. xx, and *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. x; J. Schouler,

History, VI, ch. i, §§ vi, xiii, ch. ii, § vi; *Cambridge Modern History*, XII, ch. ii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, II, ch. xxxiii; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, ch. x; J. M. Callahan, *Diplomatic History of the Southern Confederacy;* J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, ch. xiv; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, chs. xiii, xiv; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 525–543.

Special. — Narratives: Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, IV, ch. xv, V, ch. ii, VI, chs. ii, iv, VII, ch. xiv, VIII, ch. x; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 417–435, 519–543, IV, 76–95, ch. xxii, V, 205–211; F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, I, chs. lx, lxi, lxv–lxvii, II, chs. i–xi, xx, xxiii, xxv, xxviii, xxiv, xxxiv; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, chs. xxx–xxxiii, xxxv, xxxvi, xxxviii; C. F. Adams, *C. F. Adams*, 144–357, and *Studies Military and Diplomatic*, Nos. 9, 10; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, IV, chs. xliv–xlviii; P. A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs*, ch. xxi; Mountague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain;* J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, chs. lx–lxii, III, ch. lxxxiv; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 245–284, 367–381; T. W. Barnes, *Thurlow Weed*, 348–417; Virginia Mason, *James M. Mason*, chs. viii–xx; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders*, IV, 595–614 (Confederate cruisers); Goldwin Smith, *England and the War of the Secession* (*Atlantic*, LXXXIX, 303); T. L. Harris, *Trent Affair;* John Bigelow, *France and the Confederate Navy;* Caleb Huse, *Supplies for the Confederate Army;* J. W. Headley, *Confederate Operations in Canada and New York;* J. D. Bulloch, *Secret Service;* Arthur Sinclair, *Two Years in the Alabama;* C. E. Hunt, *The Shenandoah;* Raphael Semmes, *Service Afloat;* J. R. Soley, *Blockade and the Cruisers; American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 70 (blockade), 693 (Trent); 1862, 193 (blockade), 738 (mediation), 741 (slave trade). — Discussions: Henry Wheaton, *International Law* (Boyd ed.), §§ 412–537, and Apps.; C. C. Beaman, *National and Private Alabama Claims;* T. D. Woolsey, *International Law*, §§ 163–203; Travers Twiss, *Law of Nations in Time of War*, chs. vi, x–xii; J. N. Pomeroy, *International Law*, ch. vii; Wilson and Tucker, *International Law*, pt. v.

Sources. — Diplomatic Correspondence: *Papers Relating to Foreign Affairs*, years 1861, 1862, 1863 (2 vols.), 1864 (4 vols.), reprints from *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., I (1861); 37 Cong., 3 sess., I (1862); *House Exec. Docs.*, 38 Cong., 1 sess., I, II (1863); 38 Cong., 2 sess., I–IV (1864); 39 Cong., 1 sess., I (1865); *British and Foreign State Papers*, LV; *Staatsarchiv*, I–V (see contents). — Other Official Documents: J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 14, 15, 81, 246, and *Messages and Papers of the Confederacy*, II;

House Exec. Docs., 37 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 46 (Trent), VIII No. 104 (privateers), VIII, No. 100 (Mexico); 37 Cong., 3 sess., V, No. 23, and VI, No. 54 (Mexico); 38 Cong., 1 sess., VII, No. 10 (diplomatic system); XV, No. 92 (Mexico); 39 Cong., 1 sess., VII, No. 36 (Shenandoah); *House Reports*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 122 (reciprocity); 39 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 100 (neutral relations); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., IV, Nos. 8, 14, 18 (Trent), V, No. 57 (suppression of slave trade); 37 Cong., 3 sess., No. 27 (contraband), Nos. 49, 50, (English workingmen); 38 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 30 (monarchical governments), No. 47 (Mexico), No. 54 (foreign enlistments); 38 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 2 (aid by British subjects), No. 33 (Mexico); 39 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 5 (Mexico); *Case of the United States before the (Geneva) Tribunal of Arbitration.* — COLLECTIONS: Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, No. 34; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 150–153, 338–356; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, Sup. I *passim;* J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, § 860, chs. xxvi–xxviii, especially §§ 1256–1262, 1265, 1271, 1310, 1330; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 258–277 (correspondence), 70 (blockade), 252 (cotton), 462 (Mexico), 584–593 (privateering), 624–627 (neutrality proclamations); 1862, 378–393 (correspondence); 1863, 340–345 (correspondence), 636 (Mexico); 1864, 360–366 (correspondence); 1865, 335–350 (finances); Southern Hist. Soc., *Papers*, VII, 99, 333; Pitt Cobbett, *Leading Cases and Opinions in International Law.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: W. H. Seward, *Works*, V; John Bigelow, *Retrospections*, I, chs. xi–xv, II; M. D. Conway, *Autobiography*, I, ch. xxvi; John Bright, *Speeches on the American Question;* Gideon Welles, *Lincoln and Seward*, and *Diary*, I, II; C. G. Loring and E. W. Field, *Correspondence on the Present Relations between Great Britain and the United States;* S. A. Goddard, *Letters on the Rebellion;* J. L. Peyton, *American Crisis*, II, chs. i–v; C. Sumner, *Works*, VI, 153–243, 474–487, VII–IX *passim;* Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences*, II, 273–326; J. M. Forbes, *Letters and Recollections*, II, chs. xiv, xv; *The Index* (Confederate review pub. at London); *Letters of Richard Cobden to Charles Sumner, 1862–1865* (*Am. Hist. Review*, II, 306); C. F. Adams, *Trent Affair* (with documents, Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, XLV, 3); Brooks Adams, *Seizure of the Laird Rams* (*ibid.*, 243).

Bibliography. — J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*, 311; *Cambridge Modern History*, XII, 852; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 543; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 50 (lect. 74), 81, 82, 188, 189; indexes to public documents (§ 26); footnotes to Rhodes and to treatises on international law, cited above.

§ 239. National Administration and Northern People during the War, 1861–1865

Summary. — Administration: President (§ 234); cabinet; Secretary Stanton; civil service; war governors; generals. — Raising troops: regulars; volunteers; guerillas; spies; terms; reënlistment; officers' commissions; recruiting; bounties; drafts; 1863, draft riots. — Supplies: arms; commissariat; medical and hospital; clothing; "shoddy"; contracts; accessibility to Europe. — Volunteer aid: Christian Commission; Sanitary Commission; fairs. — Parties: Republicans; Union Party; War Democrats; Peace Democrats; unfavorable elections of 1862; Republican opposition to Lincoln; cabinet changes. — New states: 1863, June 19, West Virginia (35th); 1864, Oct. 31, Nevada (36th). — Arbitrary government: 1861, Apr. 27, Lincoln suspends *habeas corpus;* May 25, Merryman case; Aug. 6, indemnity act; 1863, Mar. 3, act authorizing suspensions; arbitrary confinements; 1863, May, Vallandigham tried by a military tribunal; Vallandigham sent south; provost marshalships in Northern states; 1864, Milligan case. — Popular sentiment: commercial prosperity; excitement of the war; sacrifices of soldiers; sacrifices of those who stayed at home; the women. — Lincoln: popularity; influence on Congress; 1863, Nov. 19, Gettysburg speech; 1864, June, renominated; Nov. 8, reëlected; 1865, Mar. 4, second inauguration and address; Apr. 14, assassinated; fame.

General. — Alex. Johnston, *American Politics*, ch. xx; Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 104–116; J. Schouler, *History*, V, ch. i, §§ viii, xiv, ch. ii, §§ i, ii, v, viii, xi; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 572–580; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, II, ch. xxviii; Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, 89–99; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, chs. xxxii, xxxiv, II, chs. xxi, xxx; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, chs. xvii, xx, xxi, xxiii; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Lincoln*, II *passim;* Norman Hapgood, *Lincoln*, chs. xi–xvii; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, ch. xii; W. A. Linn, *Horace Greeley*, 187–213; S. W. McCall, *Thaddeus Stevens*, 182–204; T. W. Barnes, *Thurlow Weed*, 418–448; G. S. Boutwell, *Constitution*, §§ 243–261, 413–426; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 662–668, 703–710; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, 244–266.

Special. — Narratives: J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*,

chs. i, iv, xiv, xv; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 438, 553–558, IV, 163–170, 221–255, 320–332, 408–418, 456–487, 507–539, V, ch. xxvii; W. A. Dunning, *Civil War and Reconstruction*, 1–62: Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, IV, chs. vi–viii, VI, chs. xv, xvi, VII, chs. ii, xii, xiii, VIII, chs. i, ii; Ida M. Tarbell, *Lincoln*, II; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, chs. xxxiv, xxxvii; E. D. Fite, *Social and Industrial Conditions in the North;* W. B. Weeden, *War Government;* G. C. Gorham, *Stanton*, I, chs. xxxvi, II, chs. lxxi, lxxv–lxxvii, lxxx–lxxxii, lxxxiv, lxxxvii; W. D. Foulke, *Oliver P. Morton*, I, chs. xii–xxxi; G. H. Pearson, *John A. Andrew*, I, chs. vi–viii, II; J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 1–17, 343–350, 450–503; F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, II; D. S. Alexander, *Political History of New York*, III, chs. i–ix; J. A. Woodburn, *Thaddeus Stevens and the Civil War* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1906, I, 213); C. R. Fish, *Civil Service and Patronage*, 169–173; D. M. Dewitt, *Assassination of Abraham Lincoln;* Ethel A. Hurn, *Wisconsin Women in the War.* — Habeas Corpus and Martial Law: Joel Parker, *Constitutional Law*, and *Habeas Corpus and Martial Law*, and *Three Powers of Government;* Wm. Whiting, *War Powers under the Constitution;* R. C. Hurd, *Treatise on Habeas Corpus;* L. G. Tyler, *Suspension of Habeas Corpus* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, III, 454); Samuel Tyler, *Roger B. Taney*, ch. vi; J. A Marshall, *American Bastile;* Horace Binney, *Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus;* W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 732–738; J. R. Tucker, *Constitution*, §§ 315–319.

Sources. — President's Messages: J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 17–19, 24, 25, 36–39, 44–58, 77–79, 88, 89, 98, 99, 102–109, 113–116, 120–122, 125, 163–174, 204, 219–222, 226–241, 252–256, 271, 276, 284–297, 306–308; *Congressional Globe*, 37 and 38 Congs., *Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861 to 1865 (under "Public Documents"); A. Lincoln, *Complete Works;* contemporary newspapers; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 18, 26. — Debates: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong. — Documents: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., V, Nos. 42, 50, 51; *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 38 Cong., 1 sess., III, No. 71 (draft riots); *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 5, 6, 16, 17 (*habeas corpus*); 38 Cong., 1 sess., V, No. 1 (provost marshal general); 38 Cong., 2 sess., XIII, No. 56 (election), No. 59 (peace); 39 Cong., 1 sess., IV, No. 1 (provost marshal general); *House Reports*, 39 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 93 (Fry); *House Misc. Docs.*, 39 Cong., 1 sess., III, No. 70; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 328 (press), 354 (*habeas corpus*), 439 (martial law); 1862, 275–376 (Congress), 508–515 (*habeas corpus*), 726–732 (message of Dec., 1862); 1863, 233–258 (debates on *habeas corpus*), 268–328 (debates), 469–491 (*habeas*

torpus), 606 (martial law), 811–818 (riots), 831–842 (general); 1864, 219–352 (Congress), 389–394 (press), 421–425 (*habeas corpus*), 778–801 (general); 1865, 205–301 (Congress), 414–421 (*habeas corpus*); *Official Opinions of Attorneys-General*, X, XI *passim;* Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 5, 7–9, 12, 22, 26, 31, 32, 36, 40, 43; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 153–195 (*habeas corpus*), 261–338, 374–389 (general), 403–417 (conventions of 1864), 617–622; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I–XI, and Sup. *passim.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. xv; A. Lincoln, *Works* (2 vol. ed.), II, 44–676, (Biog. ed.), VI, 266–361, VII–XI, (Fed. ed.), V, 299–471, VI, VII; Gideon Welles, *Diary*, I, II; J. Buchanan, *Works*, XI (see Contents); Wm. Salter, *James W. Grimes*, 139–276; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, II, ch. xviii; Alex. Johnston, *American Orations* (Woodburn ed.), IV, 82 (Vallandigham), 123 (Lincoln); C. L. Vallandigham, *Record on Abolition, The Union, and the Civil War;* W. H. Seward, *Works*, V (diary); C. Sumner, *Works*, V–IX *passim;* H. W. Davis, *Speeches and Addresses; Some Papers of Franklin Pierce* (*Am. Hist. Review*, X, 367–370); G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*, chs. ix–xi; A. G. Riddle, *Recollections;* Noah Brooks, *Washington in Lincoln's Time;* F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House;* J. M. Forbes, *Letters and Recollections*, I, chs. ix–xiii, II, xvi–xviii; Katharine Wormeley, *Other Side of War;* C. J. Stillé, *United States Sanitary Commission;* Lemuel Morse, *Annals of the Christian Commission;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, chs. xiii, xv. — HUMORISTS: R. G. White, *New Gospel of Peace* (2d ser.); R. H. Newell, *Orpheus C. Kerr Papers;* C. F. Browne, *Artemus Ward, His Book*, and *His Travels;* D. R. Locke, *Petroleum V. Nasby;* J. R. Lowell, *Biglow Papers* (2d ser.).

Bibliography. — J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. xviii; W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 26; Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, § 95; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 50 (lect. 71), 159; see references under § 234.

§ 240. Abolition of Slavery, 1861–1865

Summary. — Status in 1861: free states; border slave states; territories; District of Columbia; government posts; fugitive slaves. — Public opinion: 1861, Feb. 11, House unanimous resolution; 1861, Mar. 2, Corwin amendment (§ 233); 1861, July 22, House on the purpose of the war. — Question of fugitives and

slaves of combatants: 1861, May, Butler's "contrabands of war"; Aug. 6, first confiscation act; 1862, Mar. 13, return by officers forbidden; July 2, second confiscation act; 1864, June 28, act of 1850 repealed. — District of Columbia: 1862, Apr. 26, compensated emancipation act. — Territories: June 19, prohibition act. — Negro troops: 1861, Dec., Cameron's message; 1862, Hunter's regiment; July 17, act authorizing enlistments; 1862–1864, enlistments; service. — Slave trade: 1862, June 7, treaty with England; 1864, July 7, domestic trade forbidden. — Emancipation proclamations: 1861–1862, pressure on Lincoln; influence of the border states; 1861, Aug. 30, Frémont's order; 1862, May 9, Hunter's order; 1862, Aug. 19, Lincoln's letter on saving the Union; Sept. 22, preliminary proclamation; 1863, Jan. 1, final proclamation; legal effect; political effect; effect abroad. — Proposed colonization: Lincoln's plans; Chiriqui; Hayti; failure. — State emancipations: Lincoln's schemes of compensation; 1862, Apr. 10, joint resolution; 1862–1863, border states refuse; 1862, Mar. 21, West Virginia abolishes; 1863, June 24, Missouri emancipates; 1864, Oct. 13, Maryland abolishes; 1865, Dec., abolition in Kentucky and Delaware by Thirteenth Amendment. — Thirteenth Amendment: Lincoln's influence; 1864, Apr. 8, passes Senate; 1864, June 15, fails in the House; in campaign of 1864; 1865, Jan. 31, passes the House; Dec. 18, declared in force.

General. — J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. xiv, and *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. viii; J. Schouler, *History*, VI, 214–232, 276–279, 400–407, 528–531; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 580–602; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 267–277; G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, chs. xxvi, xxvii; J. W. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, II, chs. xvi, xviii, xx; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, II, chs. xi, xii, xxii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, ch. lxiv; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, chs. xx, xxi; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1862, 786–796; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 109–119; Wm. Whiting, *War Powers*, chs. iii, viii; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, ch. x; Moorfield Storey, *Sumner*, chs. xii, xiv; S. W. McCall, *Thaddeus Stevens*, ch. xii; G. C. Gorham, *Stanton*, II, 73–79, 86–90; H. G. Pearson, *John A. Andrew*, II, ch. x.

Special. — Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, IV, chs. xxii, xxiv, V, ch. xii, VI, chs. vi, viii, xvii, xix, xx, VIII, chs. xvi, xx, X,

ch. iv; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, IV, chs. xlviii–l; Garrisons, *Garrison*, IV, chs. i–vi; I. N. Arnold, *Lincoln and the Overthrow of Slavery;* J. Story, *Commentaries* (4th ed.), §§ 1923–1927; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 269–271, 466–476, 630–636, IV, 60, 65–76, 157–171, 212–219, 228, 332–336, 421–426, 472–475, 532–536, V, 47–50, 71, 82, 535–537; A. J. Wilcox, *Powers of the Federal Government over Slavery;* J. Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 158–193, 460–476; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, ch. iv; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, chs. xiv–xviii; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 85–105, App. C; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia*, 92–98; B. T. Washington, *Frederick Douglass*, ch. xii; C. F. Adams, *J. Q. Adams and Emancipation through Martial Law* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 2d ser., XV, 436); biographies of Lincoln (see §§ 39, 234), Chase, Sumner, Ben Wade, Thaddeus Stevens, W. L. Garrison, Seward (§ 39). — MAPS: J. K. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, 214.

Sources. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., 39 Cong., 1 sess.; daily newspapers, especially *New York Tribune*, *Times*, *Herald*, *Boston Advertiser*, *Chicago Tribune* (see § 41). — DOCUMENTS: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., V, No. 42, VI, No. 68; 39 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 55; *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., No. 12; 38 Cong., 1 sess., Nos. 8, 17, 24, 25; 38 Cong., 2 sess., I, No. 137; *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., V, No. 69 (emancipation), X, Nos. 133 143 (black troops); 38 Cong., 1 sess., IX, No. 42 (District of Columbia); 38 Cong., 2 sess., VIII, No. 38 (troops); *House Reports*, 37 Cong., 2 sess., III, No. 58, IV, Nos. 120, 148; 38 Cong., 1 sess., I, No. 2; 38 Cong., 2 sess., No. 9; *House Misc. Docs.*, 38 Cong., 2 sess. (state resolutions). — *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 641–645 (slaves); 1862, 720–726 (Lincoln's plans), 752–759 (slaves), 736 (emancipation proclamation); 1863, 268 (negro troops), 304–321 (emancipation in states), 425–431 (freedmen), 831–835 (Lincoln on emancipation); 1864, 219–353 *passim* (Congress), 387; 1865, 205–217 (Thirteenth Amendment), 370–378 (freedmen); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 53, 54, 68, 73, 84–87, 91–98, 117, 127, 133–142, 157–159, 167, 177, 188, 232, 252; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 6, 11, 15, 17, 18, 20, 24, 28, 38, 45, 48; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxii; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, II, 941–948; Ed. McPherson, *Rebellion*, 195–261; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, V–XI, and Sup. I *passim*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Lincoln, *Works*, especially (Biog. ed.), VI, 350, 353, 357–361, VII, 21–23, 112–115, 119–128, 132–134, 146, 167, 170–173, 270–277, 280–286, 289, VIII, 1–9, 15, 28–33, 36–44, 155–164, 181–183, 329

IX, 292–295, X, 30, 65–68, 352, XI, 1–3; C. Sumner, *Works*, VI–IX *passim;* John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. xiv; *Diary and Correspondence of Chase*, 45–49, 54, 87–93, 311, 319, 347, 352, 361, 365, 377–379, 399, 502, 511, 512; A. G. Riddle, *Reminiscences*, 129–163; G. S. Boutwell, *Speeches and Papers;* Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, chs. xi, xii; S. A. Goddard, *Letters on the American Rebellion;* Noah Brooks, *Washington in Lincoln's Time*, ch. vi; A. K. McClure, *Lincoln and Men of War Times*, 88–104; F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House;* Elizabeth H. Botume, *First Days among the Contrabands;* A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. xxi.

Bibliography. — M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, App. E; indexes to public documents (§ 26); J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 50 (lect. 76), 159; footnotes to Rhodes.

PART VI. RECENT UNITED STATES HISTORY, 1865–1910

CHAPTER XXIX

RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT 1865–1872

§ 241. Presidential and Congressional Reconstruction, 1863–1868

Summary. — Southern economic and social conditions: devastation of war; large planters; small planters; poor whites; freed negroes. — Ante-bellum political areas (§ 229); "black belt." — Northern interests in reconstruction: tariff; transportation; banking and currency; finance; idealistic attitude toward freedmen; relation to Southern loyalists. — Theories of status of seceded states: unimpaired rights (Democrats); state suicide (Summer); conquered provinces (Stevens); forfeited rights (Congress). — 1862, Lincoln's appointment of military governors for Tennessee, North Carolina, Arkansas, and Louisiana. — 1863, Dec. 8, Lincoln's proclamation; 1864, July 8, proclamation on pocket veto of Wade-Davis bill; 1865, March 3, Freedmen's Bureau act; April 9, Lee's capitulation; April 15, Lincoln's assassination (§ 239); May 29, Johnson's proclamation. — New Southern constitutions; Dec. 18, ratification of Thirteenth amendment; black codes. — 1865, Dec., Thaddeus Stevens and the Joint Committee of Fifteen; 1866, Feb. 19, veto of bill to strengthen Freedmen's Bureau; Feb. 22, Johnson's speech; April 9, Civil Rights act; June 16, submission of Fourteenth amendment; July 16, supplementary Freedmen's Bureau act. — Struggle between President and Congress: the general of the army; 1866, March 1, admission of Nebraska; March 2, Tenure of Office act; March 2, 23, acts to provide military governments for the seceded states; extra sessions;

impeachment of the President; 1868, May 16, acquittal. — Powerlessness of the Supreme Court: 1866–1867, leading cases; 1868, March 27, action of Congress in the McCardle case; 1869, April 12, Texas *v.* White. — 1868, June 22, 25, Restoration of Alabama, Arkansas, North Carolina, South Carolina, Florida, Louisiana, and Georgia (temporarily). — Campaign of 1868: Nov. 3, election of Grant.

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, IV, 484–487, V, 47–57, 132–138, 516–626, VI, 1–157, 168–192; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, chs. i–vii, and *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction*, 63–225, 253–303; W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*, I, introductions to each chapter; P. J. Hamilton, *Reconstruction Period;* Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 425–465, 480–487; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 1–55, and *Division and Reunion*, ch. xi; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 819–825, 830–863; J. W. Burgess, *Reconstruction*, chs. i–ix; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, II, chs. xi, xii; T. C. Smith, in *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 622–638; E. E. Sparks, *United States*, II, 278–300; E. B. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time*, 18–40, 68–85; W. G. Brown, *Tenth Decade* (*Atlantic*, XCVI, 359, 760); *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 711–717; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, chs. i, ii.

Special. — H. A. Herbert and others, *Why the Solid South?* chs. i, viii, x, and in *Atlantic Monthly*, LXXXVII, 1, 145, 354, 473, 817, LXXXVIII, 121, 289, 432; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Civil War (Influence), Reconstruction; F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutional History of the United States*, III, chs. i–iii; P. S. Peirce, *Freedmen's Bureau*. — CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS (§ 240): H. V. Ames, *Proposed Amendments* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1896, II), 218–235 and index; H. E. Flack, *Adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment;* J. W. Garner, *Fourteenth Amendment* (*South Atlantic Quart.*, IV, 209); S. B. Weeks, *Negro Suffrage* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, IX, 671); J. W. Burgess, *Present Problems of Constitutional Law* (*ibid.*, XIX, 545); J. M. Mathews, *Fifteenth Amendment;* A. H. Stone, *Mississippi's Constitution in Reference to Freedman* (Miss. Hist. Soc., *Publications*, IV, 143); G. T. Stephenson, *Race Distinctions in American Law*, ch. xi; J. C. Rose, *Negro Suffrage* (*Am. Polit. Sci. Review*, I, 17); J. A. Hamilton, *Negro Suffrage and Congressional Representation*. — TREATISES: H. C. Black, *Constitutional Law* (2d ed.), §§ 202, 224, 232–234; J. W. Burgess, *Political Science*

and Constitutional Law, I, 201–232, II, 41–48; T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law* (3d ed.), 219–223, 233–252, 268, 272–280, 290–294; R. Foster, *Commentaries*, §§ 38, 52–56, 90 (pp. 546–564); W. D. Guthrie, *Lectures on the Fourteenth Article of Amendment;* J. I. C. Hare, *Constitutional Law*, 131, 508–543, 746–886; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 80, 85–90, 227, 238–242, 456–459, 480–487; G. W. McCrary, *Law of Elections*, §§ 2, 3, 12–16.

Under Lincoln: Nicolay and Hay, *Lincoln*, VI, ch. xvi, VIII, chs. xvi–xx, IX, chs. v, xix; J. K. Hosmer, *Outcome of the Civil War*, ch. viii; C. H. McCarthy, *Lincoln's Plan of Reconstruction;* E. G. Scott, *Reconstruction during the Civil War;* C. E. Chadsey, *Reconstruction prior to Close of Civil War;* F. W. Moore, *Representation from the Seceding States* (*Am. Hist. Review*, II, 279, 461); A. H. Carpenter, *Military Government of Southern Territory, 1861–1865* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1900, I, 467); W. E. Birkhimer, *Military Government and Martial Law.* — Under Johnson: W. A. Dunning, *More Light on Andrew Johnson* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 574, 951; authorship of messages); D. M. DeWitt, *Impeachment of Johnson;* C. E. Chadsey, *Struggle between President Johnson and Congress;* E. G. Ross, *Impeachment of Andrew Johnson;* F. T. Wilson, *Federal Aid in Domestic Disturbances* (*Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 2 sess., XV, No. 209), chs. v–viii. — In States: W. L. Fleming, *Civil War and Reconstruction in Alabama*, and *Reorganization of the Industrial System in Alabama* (*Am. Jour. of Sociology*, X, 473); J. M. Harrell, *Brooks and Baxter War* (Ark.); John Wallace, *Carpetbag Rule in Florida;* E. C. Woolley, *Reconstruction of Georgia;* J. R. Ficklen, *Reconstruction in Louisiana;* Albert Phelps, *Louisiana*, chs. xiv, xv; F. W. Moore, *Louisiana Politics, 1862–1866* (*South Atlantic Quart.*, I, 128); W. S. Myers, *Self-Reconstruction of Maryland;* J. W. Garner, *Reconstruction in Mississippi;* J. G. de R. Hamilton, *Reconstruction in North Carolina;* J. P. Hollis, *Reconstruction in South Carolina;* J. S. Reynolds, *Reconstruction in South Carolina;* J. W. Fertig, *Secession and Reconstruction in Tennessee;* R. L. McDonnold, *Reconstruction Period in Tennessee* (*Am. Hist. Mag.*, I, 307); C. W. Ramsdell, *Reconstruction in Texas;* J. A. C. Chandler, *Suffrage in Virginia*, ch. vi; H. J. Eckenrode, *Virginia during Reconstruction;* C. H. Ambler, *Disfranchisement in West Virginia* (*Yale Review*, XIV, 38, 155).

Northern Biographies: H. G. Pearson, *John A. Andrew*, II, 260–287; E. Stanwood, *J. G. Blaine*, ch. iv; G. S. Merriam, *Samuel Bowles*, II, chs. xxxii, xxxiii; [Detroit Post and Tribune], *Zachariah Chandler*, ch. xvi; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, chs. xiii, xiv; J. W.

Schuckers, *Chase*, chs. xlviii–li; R. B. Warden, *Chase*, chs. xliv–xlviii; O. J. Hollister, *Schuyler Colfax*, chs. ix, x; Ed. Cary, *G. W. Curtis*, chs. xiv, xv; J. H. Wilson, *C. A. Dana*, chs. xxii, xxiii; B. R. Curtis, *Memoir of B. R. Curtis*, ch. xiii; Hamlin Garland, *Grant*, chs. xxxviii–xlii; Adam Badeau, *Grant in Peace*, chs. ii–xvii; J. R. Young, *Around the World with Grant*, II, 358–365, 454–463; W. A. Linn, *Horace Greeley*, ch. ix; C. E. Hamlin, *Hannibal Hamlin*, chs. xxxvi–xxxviii; F. A. Walker, *General Hancock*, 295–304; W. S. Jones, *Andrew Johnson;* John Savage, *Johnson*, chs. xx–xxii, App. 88–130; W. D. Foulke, *Morton*, I, chs. xxxii–xxxv, II, chs. i, ii, v, vi; F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, chs. xxxvi, xli; T. K. Lothrop, *Seward*, ch. xxi; F. Bancroft and W. A. Dunning, *Carl Schurz's Political Career* (C. Schurz, *Reminiscences*, III), ch. i; T. E. Burton, *John Sherman*, ch. vii; W. S. Kerr, *John Sherman*, I, chs. xxii, xxvi–xxviii, xxx; G. C. Gorham, *Stanton*, II, chs. xc–cxviii; S. W. McCall, *Thaddeus Stevens*, chs. xiii–xix; J. A. Woodburn, *Stevens* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1906, I), 221–231; M. Storey, *Sumner*, chs. xvi, xviii–xxx; A. G. Riddle, *B. F. Wade*, chs. ix, x. — Southern Biographies: Herbert Fielder, *Joseph E. Brown;* W. E. Dodd, *Jefferson Davis*, ch. xxii; Mrs. Davis, *Jefferson Davis*, II, chs. lvi, lvii; B. H. Hill, Jr., *B. H. Hill*, 46–67, 273–350; Ed. Mayes, *L. Q. C. Lamar*, ch. xii; Johnston and Browne, *A. H. Stephens*, chs. xxxix–xli; Louis Pendleton, *A. H. Stephens*, ch. xvii; P. A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs*, chs. xxiv–xxviii; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, ch. xi.

Sources. — Official Documents: *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Documents*, 39, 40 Congs.; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 39 Cong. 1 sess., I, No. 2, II, No. 43 (reports of Grant, Schurz, and Truman), and *House Reports*, 39 Cong. 1 sess., II, No. 30 (report of Committee on Reconstruction, 1866, which is also printed, without testimony, in Ed. McPherson, *Reconstruction*, 84; these four reports are of special significance); *House Reports*, 40 Cong. 1 sess., No. 7; *House Misc. Docs.*, 40 Cong. 2 sess., II, Nos. 85, 89, 91, 92, 101, 107, 134, and *Senate Misc. Docs.*, 40 Cong. 2 sess., Nos. 42, 43 (trial of Johnson on impeachment); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, 189–191, 213–215, 222–226, 251, 252, 305–757; *Statutes at Large*, XIII, 507, 737, 744, 758, 760, XIV, especially 27, 173, 364, 428, 430, 432, 486, 571, 811, XV, 2, 14, 41, 72, 73, 85, 193, 257, 344, 711 (most of these laws and proclamations are in substance in Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 35, 42, 44, 46, 47, 50–52, 56–59, 61, 62, 64, 66–69, 71, 72, 74–76). — Cases: *Ex parte* Milligan (1867): 4 *Wallace*, 2; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2381. — Cummings *v.* Missouri (1867): 4

Wallace, 277; Thayer, *Cases*, 1447; C. E. Boyd, *Cases*, 381. — *Ex parte* Garland (1867): 4 *Wallace*, 333, Emlin McClain, *Cases*, 576. — Mississippi *v.* Johnson (1867): 4 *Wallace*, 475; Thayer, *Cases*, 196; McClain, *Cases*, 102; Boyd, *Cases*, 652. — Georgia *v.* Stanton (1867): 6 *Wallace*, 50; Thayer, *Cases*, 201; McClain, *Cases*, 606 *n.* — White *v.* Cannon (1868): 6 *Wallace*, 443. — *Ex parte* McCardle (1869): 7 *Wallace*, 506. — Texas *v.* White (1869): 7 *Wallace*, 700; Thayer, *Cases*, 302; McClain, *Cases*, 838; Boyd, *Cases*, 552. — White *v.* Hart (1872): 13 *Wallace*, 646; Thayer, *Cases*, 259. — Gunn *v.* Barry (1873): 15 *Wallace*, 610; McClain, *Cases*, 1029 *n.* — Slaughter House cases (1873, 1884): 16 *Wallace*, 36 and 111 *U.S.*, 746; Thayer, *Cases*, 516, 537; McClain, *Cases*, 19. — United States *v.* Reese (1876): 92 *U.S.*, 214. — United States *v.* Cruikshank (1876): 92 *U.S.*, 542; McClain, *Cases*, 31. — Williams *v.* Bruffy (1878): 96 *U.S.*, 176. — Strauder *v.* West Virginia (1880): 100 *U.S.*, 303; Boyd, *Cases*, 511. — *Ex parte* Siebold (1880): 100 *U.S.*, 371; Thayer, *Cases*, 326; McClain, *Cases*, 56. — United States *v.* Harris (1883): 106 *U.S.*, 629. — Civil Rights cases (1883): 109 *U.S.*, 3; Thayer, *Cases*, 554; McClain, *Cases*, 37 *n.* — State Action: action by the states on the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth amendments to the Constitution is in *Documentary History of the Constitution*, II, 520–897, V. 495–567. The new constitutions of the Southern states are printed in F. N. Thorpe, *Charters and Constitutions*. For reference to state documents, consult histories of reconstruction in states (ante). — Unofficial Collections: W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*, I; Ed. McPherson, *Reconstruction*, and *Handbook of Politics* (1872–1878, biennial); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 141–154; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxiii; *American Annual Cyclopædia* (1864–1877; volume for 1864, p. 307, prints the Wade-Davis protest of Aug. 5, 1864); *Tribune Almanac* (annual). The files of the *Nation*, *Harper's Weekly*, *Galaxy*, *Independent*, *Christian Examiner*, *Christian Union*, *New York Times*, *Tribune*, *Sun*, and *Chicago Tribune* illustrate the currents of sentiment in the period.

Contemporary Writings: Mrs. M. L. Avary, *Dixie after the War;* G. S. Boutwell, *Reminiscences*, II, chs. xxx–xxxii; Carl Schurz, *Reminiscences*, III, chs. vi, vii, ix, x; J. B. Bradley, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 151–163; B. F. Butler, *Butler's Book*, ch. xx: *Diary and Correspondence of Chase*, 334–337, 382, 417–423, 430–434, 443–456 (see also the index); J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, II, chs. i, iii–xii, xiv; Mrs. C. Clay, *A Belle of the Fifties*, chs. xviii–xxix; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, chs. xvi–xxxiv; S. M. Cullom, *Fifty Years*,

chs. viii, ix; G. W. Curtis, *Orations and Addresses*, I, 123–214; Fred. Douglass, *Life and Times*, chs. xii–xiv; Francis Fessenden, *W. P. Fessenden*, II, chs. vii–x; Rollo Ogden, *E. L. Godkin*, I, chs. vii, viii; Wm. Salter, *J. W. Grimes*, 276–367; O. O. Howard, *Autobiography*, II, pt. iii; Andrew Johnson, *Speeches;* G. W. Julian, *Recollections*, chs. xii–xiv; Jos. Le Conte, *Autobiography*, chs. ix, x; A. Lincoln, *Works* (Biog. ed.), index, and VIII, 61, 64, 79–81, 326–328, IX, 218–223, 289–291, 296, 299–301, X, 11, 37–39, 85, 139, 152–154, 185, 266–269, 312–314, 333, XI, 84–92, (Federal ed.), VI, 158, 172, 331–334, VII, 28–32, 50–56, 74–77, 84, 102, 105, 129, 150, 159, 168, 170, 233, 268, 362; Hugh McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, chs. xxv, xxvi; B. F. Perry, *Reminiscences*, 242–314, and *Sketches*, 191–216; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, chs. xvi–xxi; J. H. Reagan, *Memoirs*, Apps. B–E; J. M. Schofield, *Forty-six Years in the Army*, chs. xix, xxi, xxii; P. H. Sheridan, *Memoirs*, II, chs. x, xi; J. Sherman, *Recollections*, I, chs. xvi, xix; *Sherman Letters*, 245–325; S. D. Smedes, *Memorials of a Southern Planter*, chs. xviii–xxi; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, IV, chs. l–liii; Chas. Sumner, *Works*, VI–XV (see contents); S. J. Tilden, *Writings and Speeches*, I, 395–420, and *Letters* passim; W. M. Stewart, *Reminiscences*, chs. xx, xxii, xxiv; Rich. Taylor, *Destruction and Reconstruction*, ch. xv; W. H. Trescot, *Reconstruction in South Carolina* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XV, 574); T. W. Barnes, *Thurlow Weed*, chs. xxiv, xxv; R. H. Wilmer, *Recent Past*, 139–165; O. M. Roberts, *Experience of an Unrecognized Senator* (Texas Hist. Assoc., *Quarterly*, XII, 87); G. Welles, *Diary*, II, III (see index under "Reconstruction"); Jon. Worth, *Correspondence* (see index); E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, ch. xliv; J. A. Garfield, *Works*, I, 1, 73, 95, 243; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, colloquies xxiii, xxiv, and *Reviewers Reviewed*, 226–270; Gustave Koerner, *Memoirs*, II, chs. xliv–xlvi; Cornelius Cole, *Memoirs*, chs. xxx, xxxii. — Descriptions: Sidney Andrews, *South since the War;* Victoria V. Clayton, *White and Black;* Elizabeth W. Pearson, *Letters from Port Royal;* E. A. Pollard, *The Lost Cause Regained;* Whitelaw Reid, *After the War;* Robt. Somers, *Southern States since the War;* J. T. Trowbridge, *The South;* J. H. Kennaway, *On Sherman's Track.*

Bibliography. — W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, ch. xxii; W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*, references *passim;* J. F. Rhodes, *History*, V–VII, footnotes *passim;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 51, 52 (lects. 79, 80), 160; bibliographies appended to state histories of reconstruction cited above; A. P. C. Griffin, *References on Impeachment*, and *References on Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments;*

The South in the Building of the Nation, IV, 625, 626, 645; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II, 478, 506.

§ 242. Carpetbag and Negro Rule, 1868–1877

Summary. — Union, or Loyal, Leagues; "carpetbaggers"; "scalawags." — Ku Klux Klan; Knights of the White Camelia. — 1869, Feb. 27, submission of Fifteenth amendment; 1870, March 30, ratified. — 1870, Restoration of Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas; 1871, Georgia. — 1870, May 31, Enforcement act; 1871, Feb. 15, substitute for iron-clad oath; Feb. 28, act for federal supervision of elections; April 20, Ku Klux act; — 1872, May 22, Amnesty act; June 10, supplementary federal election law. — Misrule of negro and carpetbag governments: conservatives; 1872, federal troops occupy the capitals of Louisiana, Alabama, and Arkansas. — White ascendancy: 1870, Democratic control of North Carolina, Tennessee, Georgia, and Virginia; 1872, removal of political disabilities; improvement of white leadership; 1872–1876, split in Republican party in Southern states; 1872, Feb. 19, report of the "Ku Klux committee"; 1874, white ascendancy in Alabama, Arkansas, and Texas; Louisiana uprising; "Mississippi plan"; 1874, April 27, Lamar's oration on Sumner; Dec. 7, Grant's message; 1875, Jan. 13, Grant on the federal purge of Louisiana legislature; Feb., Force bill fails in Senate; March 1, Civil Rights act; Sept., refusal of troops to Mississippi; election of 1876 (§ 251); 1877, withdrawal of troops by Hayes (§ 251); 1880, May 4, act forbidding use of army at the polls. — Federal decisions (§ 241): 1873, Slaughter House cases; 1876, United States *v.* Reese; 1876, United States *v.* Cruikshank; 1883, United States *v.* Harris; 1883, Civil Rights cases. — Later Southern history (§ 261).

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VI, 200–204, 244–246, 284–334, 390–391, VII, 74–174; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, chs. xi, xiii, xv–xvii, xix, and *Essays*, 225–252, and *Undoing of Reconstruction* (*Atlantic*, LXXXVIII, 437); W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 55–64, 72–78, 97–102, 104–108, 136–140, and *Division and Reunion*, ch. xii; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, chs. v, vi: J. W. Burgess, *Reconstruction*, chs. x–xiii; T. C. Smith, in *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 638–654; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 863–875, 889–893, 906–918; F. N. Thorpe, *Constitutional History*, III, chs. iv, v; Johnston and Woodburn, *American Political History*, II,

465–478, 487–492; *South in the Building of the Nation*, IV, 601–625, 632–645; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 715–722; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, ch. iii.

Special. — Carpetbag and Negro Rule (see § 241 for state reconstruction, biographies, etc.): H. A. Herbert, *Why the Solid South?* chs. ii–vi, viii, xii–xiv; W. E. B. Du Bois, *Reconstruction* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XV, 781); F. Bancroft, *Negro in Politics;* G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, chs. xxviii–xxxvi; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, chs. xxi; xxiii; A. H. Stone, *Race Problems*, chs. vi, viii; G. W. Cable, *Silent South*, and *Negro Question;* W. K. Boyd, *W. W. Holden*, ch. iii–v, App.; J. W. Moore, *North Carolina*, II, chs. ix–xii; W. L. Royall, *Virginia Debt Controversy.* The periodicals cited in § 241, reached through *Poole's Index*, contain a mass of material; for material in historical society publications, etc., see American Historical Association, *Report*, 1905, II; especially useful are Alabama Historical Society, *Transactions*, and Mississippi Historical Society, *Publications.* — Ku Klux Klan and Election Frauds: J. C. Lester and D. L. Wilson, *Ku Klux Klan* (Fleming ed.), and in *Century*, VI, 398; W. G. Brown, *Lower South*, ch. iv, and *Ku Klux Movement* (*Atlantic*, LXXXVII, 634); J. E. Cutler, *Lynch Law*, ch. v; W. A. Sinclair, *Aftermath of Slavery*, chs. ii–vi. — Schools and Churches: B. T. Washington, *Up from Slavery*, and *Future of the American Negro*, ch. i, and *Story of the Negro*, ch. xiii, and (with others) *Negro Problem*, ch. i; Mrs. E. A. Talbot, *E. C. Armstrong*, chs. v–viii; John Eaton, *Grant, Lincoln, and the Freedmen;* P S. Peirce, *Freedmen's Bureau*, ch. v; J. W. Alvord, *Letters from the South;* A. T. Porter, *Led on Step by Step*, chs. xxi–xlii; Maria Waterbury, *Seven Years among the Freedmen;* E. G. Murphy, *Present South*, chs. ii, iii; J. C. Reed, *Brothers' War*, ch. xvi; Atlanta University, *Publications*, V, VI; W. E. B. Du Bois, *Negro Church;* National Teachers' Associations, *Proceedings*, 1865, 1870; H. K. Carroll, *Religious Forces*, 27, 255, 263, 294; J. M. Buckley, *Methodism*, 517–526; G. G. Smith, *G. F. Pierce*, chs. xvi, xvii; R. R. Wright, *Negro Education in Georgia*; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, chs. xxiv–xxvii; J. L. M. Curry, *The Negro since 1860*, and *Education of Negro* (Commissioner of Education, *Report*, 1895, II, 1374); A. D. Mayo, *Schools in North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia* (*ibid.*, 1904, I, 999); John F. Slater Fund, *Proceedings*, 1884. — Social and Economic Conditions: P. A. Bruce, *Plantation Negro;* G. T. Stephenson, *Race Distinctions;* Washington and Du Bois, *Negro in the South;* J. A. Tillinghast, *Negro in Africa and America*, 171–228.

Sources. — (See § 241 for sources not here repeated.) — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: CONGRESSIONAL GLOBE, 40 Cong. 3 sess. to 42 Cong. 3 sess.; *Congressional Record*, 43, 44 Congs.; *Congressional Documents* of the period, especially the Ku Klux report and testimony in 42 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, II, No. 41 (13 pts.); also 40 Cong. 3 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, No. 15; 41 Cong. 1 sess., *House Misc. Docs.*, No. 12; 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, No. 58; *House Reports*, I, No. 16; *House Misc. Docs.*, V, No. 154; 42 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Reports*, No. 1 (outrages in Southern states); *House Misc. Docs.*, Nos. 3, 21, 35; 2 sess., *House Exec. Docs.*, X, No. 209; *House Reports*, I, Nos. 15, 22, IV, No. 92; *House Misc. Docs.*, IV, No. 211; 3 sess., *Senate Reports*, I, No. 357, II, No. 457; 43 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, II, No. 51; *House Exec. Docs.*, XVI, No. 229; *House Reports*, IV, No. 732; 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, Nos. 13, 17; *House Reports*, I, No. 2, II, Nos. 101, 127, V, No. 261, VI, No. 262, IV, No. 265; 44 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Reports*, III, No. 527; 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 2; *Senate Reports*, II, No. 611; *Senate Misc. Docs.*, II, No. 14, VI, No. 48: *House Exec. Docs.*, IX, No. 30; *House Reports*, I, No. 156; *House Misc. Docs.*, III, No. 31, VII, No. 35; 45 Cong. 2 sess., *House Misc. Docs.*, V, No. 52 (digest of election cases, 1871–1876); *Statutes at Large*, XVI, 3, 6, 7, 40, 59, 62, 140–146, 363, 433–440, XVII, 13, 142, 348, XVIII, 335, XXI, 113; *Revised Statutes* (1878 ed.), 32 (the above are in substance with references in Wm. McDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 79–85, 89, 91, 92, 94, 95, 99, 104); J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VII. — CONSTITUTIONAL ASPECTS (§ 241). — DESCRIPTIONS AND REMINISCENCES: Francis B. Leigh, *Ten Years on a Georgia Plantation;* W. A. Allen, *Governor Chamberlain's Administration* (S. C.); W. L. Clowes, *Black America;* R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, 297–376; H. R. Helper, *The Negroes;* Ed. King, *Great South*, or *Southern States;* J. A. Leland, *Voice from South Carolina;* R. G. McClellan, *Republicanism in America;* Chas. Nordhoff, *Cotton States in 1875;* J. S. Pike, *The Prostrate State* (S. C.); J. S. Reed, *Old South and the New;* A. W. Tourgée, *Fool's Errand*, and *Bricks without Straw*, and *Appeal to Cæsar* (fiction by a carpet bagger); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, §§ 155–157; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, II. chs. xvi–xix, xxi, xxiii, xxv, xxvi; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xv–xviii. — EDUCATION, CHURCHES, AND NEGRO RELIEF: W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*, II, chs. ix, x; reports of Freedmen's Aid Societies; reports of state superintendents of education.

Bibliography. — (See also § 241.) — W. E. Du Bois, *Select Bibli-*

ography of the American Negro, and *Select Bibliography of the Negro American;* P. S. Peirce, *Freedmen's Bureau*, 175–191; Southern Society for the Study of Race Conditions, *Race Problems*, 224–240; A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List of References on the Negro Question;* J. A. Tillinghast, *Negro in Africa and America*, 229–231; Wellford Addis, *Bibliography of Negro Education* (Commissioner of Education, *Report*, 1893–1894, I, 1038).

§ 243. Financial Reconstruction, 1865–1872

Summary. — 1865, Civil War debt (§ 237); forms of taxation; banking systems. — 1865, Revenue Commission. — 1865, March 3, Act levying tax on state bank circulation; 1865, Dec., Secretary McCulloch's report; Dec. 18, House resolution to retire greenbacks; inflated prices; theories of resumption of specie payment. — 1866-1870, Reductions of internal revenue taxes. — 1866, April 12, Funding and contraction act; 1868, Feb. 4, repeal of contraction; "Ohio idea," payment of bonds in currency. — 1868, Presidential campaign: financial issues; Republican victory. — 1869, March 18, Public-credit act; 1870, July 14, 1871, Jan. 20, refunding acts. — Question of constitutionality of greenbacks: 1870, Feb. 7, Chief Justice Chase's adverse decision (Hepburn *v.* Griswold); enlargement of court; 1871, May 1, Knox *v.* Lee (constitutional); 1884, March 3, Juilliard *v.* Greenman. — Gold purchases; 1869, Sept. 24, Black Friday. — Tariff: 1866–1870, Wells's revenue commission reports; 1865–1867, tariff debates; 1867, March 2, wool and woolens tariff act; western opposition; 1870, July 14, general tariff act; 1872, June 6, tariff act, slight reductions; later tariffs (§ 249). — 1870, July 14, Reduction of income tax. — 1872, Presidential campaign (§ 249): division of Liberal Republicans and Democrats on the tariff; Republican financial platform; labor reform convention. — Later problems (§ 252).

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VI, 158–167, 215–233, 236–280; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, 27, 129, 131–133, 136–141, 177, 193, 195, 196, 199, 220–225; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 16, 30–32, 40–45, 64–67; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 819–825, 857–860, 897–899; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 338–343; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 285–288; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, article Legal Tender Controversy.

Special. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 142–157, 163–168; A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years of American Finance*, 1–18; T. E. Burton, *John Sherman*, chs. viii–x; Francis Fessenden, *W. P. Fessenden*, II, 103–108, 289–325; W. D. Foulke, *Morton*, II, 13, 65–102; Wm. Salter, *J. W. Grimes*, 304–318, 325–327, 333–335, 363, 364; A. B. Hart, *Chase*, chs. xi, xv. — FUNDING: R. A. Bayley, *National Loans*, 91–94, 152–171; W. F. DeKnight, *Currency and Loans*, 26, 27, 98–109, 120–208 *passim;* J. S. Gibbons, *National Loans;* W. A. Richardson, *Practical Information concerning the Public Debt.* — MONEY: J. J. Knox, *United States Notes*, ch. xi; Horace White, *Money and Banking* (3d ed.), 121–139, 150–153; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, ch. vi; *Report of the Monetary Commission of the Indianapolis Convention*, 202–204, 414–422; W. C. Mitchell, *Gold Prices and Wages under the Greenback Standard;* J. K. Upton, *Money in Politics*, ch. xiv, xv; C. J. Bullock, *Monetary History*, pt. i, ch. vii; M. S. Wildman, *Money Inflation*, ch. v. — CONSTITUTIONALITY OF GREENBACKS: J. B. Thayer, *Legal Tender* (*Harvard Law Review*, I, 73); E. J. James, *Legal Tender Decisions;* D. H. Chamberlain and T. H. Talbot, *Legal Tender Decision of 1884* (*Am. Law Review*, XVIII, 410, 618); W. C. Ford, *Legal Tender Decision* (*Princeton Review*, Sept., 1884, 123); J. B. Harrison, *The Nationals* (*Atlantic*, XLII, 521); H. H. Neill, *Legal Tender Question* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, I, 250); B. T. De Witt, *Legal Tender Laws* (*ibid.*, XV, 96). — BANKING AND INDEPENDENT TREASURY: J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 101–113, 137–141, 270–273, 295–297. — TAXATION AND TARIFF: F. C. Howe, *Internal Revenue System*, chs. iii–vii; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 171–229; E. Stanwood, *American Tariff Controversies*, II, chs. xiv, xv; Ida M. Tarbell, *Tariff in Our Times*, chs. ii, iii; C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, ch. vii; J. D. Goss, *Tariff Administration*, ch. iv.

Sources. — *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Documents*, 40–42 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VI, VII; *Report on the Finances* (annual, 1865–1872); A. P. Andrew, *Financial Diagrams*, and *Statistics for the United States, 1867–1909;* National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 191–209, 365–376, 525–530, 648–657; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 199–210; *American Annual Cyclopædia* (1865–1872). — CASES: Lane County *v.* Oregon (1869): 7 *Wallace*, 71; Emlin McClain, *Cases*, 40. — Pacific Insurance Co. *v.* Soule (1869): 7 *Wallace*, 433. — Veazie Bank *v.* Fenno (1870): 8 *Wallace*, 533; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1334; McClain, *Cases*, 222; C. E. Boyd, *Cases*, 56. — Hepburn *v.* Griswold (1870): 8 *Wallace*, 603; Thayer, *Cases*, 2222; Boyd, *Cases*,

118. — Legal Tender cases (1871): 12 *Wallace*, 457; Thayer, *Cases*, 2237; McClain, *Cases*, 442; Boyd, *Cases*, 136. — Scholey *v.* Rew (1875): 23 *Wallace*, 331. — Springer *v.* United States (1881): 102 *U.S.*, 586; Thayer, *Cases*, 1321; Boyd, *Cases*, 85. — Juilliard *v.* Greenman (1884): 110 *U.S.*, 421; Thayer, *Cases*, 2255; McClain, *Cases*, 442; Boyd, *Cases*, 157. — TARIFF: R. G. Proctor, *Tariff Acts, 1789–1897* (*House Docs.*, 55 Cong. 2 sess., LXXII, No. 562); J. S. Morrill, *Tariff on Imports* (*Senate Reports*, 48 Cong. 1 sess., I, No. 12); Ed. Young, *Customs-Tariff Legislation*, pp. cxxxviii–cxcviii; D. A. Wells, *Reports of the Revenue Commission* (1867–1870), and *Recent Financial Experiences of the United States* (*Cobden Club Essays*, 2d ser., 457). See also periodicals as listed in "Bibliography" below. — REMINISCENCES: H. McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, 170–180, 193–221, 234–257; G. S. Boutwell, *Reminiscences*, II, chs. xxxiii, xxxv, xxxvi; J. Sherman, *Recollections*, I, chs. xvii, xx, xxi.

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, pp. ix–xxvii, §§ 141, 153, 162.

§ 244. Foreign Relations, 1865–1885

Summary. — Earlier foreign relations (§ 238). — The French in Mexico (§ 238): 1866, intervention of United States; 1867, withdrawal of French troops. — 1867, March 30, Purchase of Alaska. — Isthmian negotiations (§ 257). — England: Alabama claims (§ 238); 1866, Fenian movement; 1869, April 13, Senate's rejection of the Johnson treaty, Sumner's speech; 1871, May 8, Treaty of Washington; 1872, Sept. 14, Geneva award; Oct. 21, San Juan arbitration decision; 1877, Halifax Commission. — Right of expatriation; 1868, Feb. 22, German (typical) naturalization convention. — West Indies: 1867, Danish West Indies question; 1869–1870, Santo Domingo question. — 1868–1878, Cuban insurrection: 1873, *Virginius* incident. — Orient and Chinese exclusion question (§ 268). — Blaine's South American policy: 1881, Chili-Peru wars. — 1875, Jan. 30, Hawaiian reciprocity treaty (§ 253). — Later foreign relations (§ 263).

General. — W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, ch. x; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 147–150, 202–250; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VI, chs. xxxv, xxxviii, VII, 29–36; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 40–44, 67–72; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 46–56, 87–95, 409–411; T. C. Smith, *Expansion after the War, 1865–1871* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*,

XVI, 412); Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 875–888; J. W. Foster, *Century of American Diplomacy*, ch. xi; J. B. Henderson, *American Diplomatic Questions*, 389–406; W. F. Johnson, *Century of Expansion*, ch. vii; W. E. Curtis, *United States and Foreign Powers*, chs. ix, xv.

Special. — MEXICO: F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, ch. xl; C. A. Duniway, *Reasons for the Withdrawal from Mexico* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1902, I, 312); J. H. Latané, *United States and Spanish America*, ch. vi; H. H. Bancroft, *Mexico*, VI, chs. i–xii; Paul Gaulot, *La Vérité sur l'Expédition du Mexique;* T. B. Edgington, *Monroe Doctrine*, ch. xv. — ALASKA (§ 198): F. Bancroft, *Seward*, II, ch. xlii; H. H. Bancroft, *Alaska*, ch. xxviii. — CUBA AND WEST INDIES: F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain*, I, chs. xiv–xix; J. M. Callahan, *Cuba and International Relations*, 350–452; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, IV, 328, 329, 425–487; J. Parton, *Danish Islands*. — GREAT BRITAIN: J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, 495–702, 712–723, V, 4639–4685; C. F. Adams, *Lee at Appomattox*, No. 2, and *C. F. Adams*, chs. xvii–xix; E. L. Pierce, *Sumner*, IV, 160–168, 383–401, 488–491; D. H. Chamberlain, *Charles Sumner and the Treaty of Washington;* Andrew Lang, *Sir Stafford Northcote*, I, ch. xii; Edmond Fitzmaurice, *Earl Granville*, II, ch. iii; John Morley, *Gladstone*, II, ch. ix; Caleb Cushing, *Treaty of Washington*; J. C. B. Davis, *Mr. Fish and the Alabama Claims;* T. W. Balch, *Alabama Arbitration*.

Sources. — *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Record*, 39–49 Congs.; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 40, 67 (pp. 193–197), 104 (pp. 464–467), 390–400, 475, 907, 957–959; *Diplomatic Correspondence* and *Foreign Relations* (1865–1885); W. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements;* Gideon Welles, *Diary*, II, III (see index by name of countries); A. B. Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 174–177. — MEXICO: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 40 Cong. 1 sess., No. 20; *House Exec. Docs.*, 40 Cong. 2 sess., VII, No. 25. — SANTO DOMINGO: A. D. White, *Autobiography*, I, chs. ix, xi, xxviii; S. G. Howe, *Letters and Journals*, II, ch. xviii.

Bibliography. — *General Index to Foreign Relations, 1861–1899;* A. B. Hart, *Foundations*, 241–293, and *Manual*, §§ 54 (lect. 86), 83, 84; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, 355, 356; J. B. Moore, *Arbitrations*, I, 682; H. H. Bancroft, *Alaska*, pp. xxiii–xxxviii; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books relating to Cuba*, and *List of Books on Danish West Indies*, and *List of References on International Arbitration*, 101; J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 260–273; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 356.

§ 245. Development of the Mining Frontier, 1859–1876

Summary. — Early conditions in California (§ 216); 1855, hydraulic mining in California; 1859, mining rushes to Pike's Peak, Colorado; Comstock Lode (Virginia City, Nevada); Arizona mines; 1860–1861, Idaho (Lewiston); 1862–1864, western Montana (Virginia City, Helena); 1867, Wyoming mines; 1875, Black Hills. — Emigration from Pacific coast (eastward frontier extension) and across the plains. — Mining territories (§ 203): 1859, "State of Jefferson" (Colorado); 1861, Feb. 28, Colorado Territory; March 2, Nevada Territory; March 2, Dakota Territory; 1863, Feb. 24, Arizona Territory; March 3, Idaho Territory; 1864, Oct. 31, admission of Nevada (§ 239); 1864, May 26, Montana Territory; 1868, July 25, Wyoming Territory; 1876, Aug. 1, admission of Colorado (38th). — Mining camp traits. — Influences of new gold in Civil War. — Rise of the silver question (§ 252).

General. — F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, chs. ix, x; E. D. Fite, *Social and Industrial Conditions*, ch. ii; C. M. Harvey, *Trail of the Argonauts* (*Atlantic*, CVIII, 115); T. C. Smith, *Expansion after the Civil War* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XVI, 412); N. S. Shaler, *United States*, I, chs. vi, viii; Jos. Schafer, *Pacific Northwest*, 260–270; C. H. Shinn, *Story of the Mine;* E. S. Meade, *Story of Gold.*

Special. — T. H. Hittell, *California*, II, bk. vii, ch. vii, III, bk. viii; Eliot Lord, *Comstock Mining and Miners* (U. S. Geol. Survey, *Monographs*, IV); Williams and Wheeler, *Mining in Montana;* T. J. Dimsdale, *Vigilantes of Montana;* N. P. Langford, *Vigilante Days and Ways;* K. B. Judson, *Montana;* C. P. Connolly, *Story of Montana* (*McClure's Mag.*, XXVII, 346); H. A. V. Ferguson, *Fort Benton Memories;* H. M. Chittenden, *Early Steamboat Navigation on the Missouri*, II; A. M. Hough, *Establishment of our Mission in Montana;* L. E. Munson, *Pioneer Life* (*Jour. of Am. Hist.*, I, 97, Montana), and *Montana as it Was and as it Is* (*New Englander*, LI, 96); J. Mullan, *Miners' and Travelers' Guide;* John Hailey, *Idaho;* H. H. Bancroft, *California*, VII, ch. xxi, and *Washington, Idaho, and Montana*, and *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming*, and *Arizona and New Mexico;* F. L. Paxson, *Boundaries of Colorado* (Univ. of Col., *Studies*, II, 87), and *Territory of Jefferson* (*ibid.*, III, 15), and *Territory of Colorado* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XII, 53); J. C. Smiley, *Denver;* David Boyd, *Greeley and Union Colony of Colorado;* Doane

Robinson, *South Dakota*, chs. xxiv, xxv; Annie D. Tallent, *Black Hills*.

Sources. — *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 37–44 Congs.; H. Gannett, *Boundaries* (3d ed.); *Organic Acts for the Territories;* population statistics in *Census Reports*, 1860–1870, also *Ninth Census, Statistical Abstract*, and *Twelfth Census, Statistical Atlas*, plates 10, 11; publications of state historical societies (§ 45), reached by Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II; state documents (§ 43), reached by R. R. Bowker, *State Publications*, and by A. R. Hasse, *Index* (§ 24); *American Annual Cyclopædia* (1861–1876); Census Bureau, *Special Report on Mines and Quarries* (1902); U. S. Mint, *Reports* (1859–1876), and *Report on the Production of Precious Metals* (1880); *Home Missionary* (1860–1876); R. W. Raymond, *Mining Industry of the Rocky Mountains*, and *Statistics of Mines and Mining;* J. R. Browne, *Mineral Resources west of the Rocky Mountains* (1868), and *Resources of the Pacific Slope* (1869); W. A. Jones, *Report upon the Reconnaissance of Northwestern Wyoming;* J. C. Ives, *Report upon the Colorado River.* — Far Western Descriptions: Clarence King, *Mountaineering in the Sierra Nevada*, especially ch. xiv; Alex Majors, *Seventy Years on the Frontier;* W. M. Stewart, *Reminiscences*, chs. xiv–xvii; W. A. Bell, *New Tracks in North America;* J. H. Beadle, *Undeveloped West*, and *Western Wilds;* H. Greeley, *Overland Journey;* Samuel Bowles, *Across the Continent*, and *Our New West;* A. D. Richardson, *Beyond the Mississippi*, and *Our New States and Territories;* H. H. Hall, *Great West;* W. A. Goulder, *Reminiscences* (Oregon and Idaho); F. C. Young, *Across the Plains in '65;* R. F. Burton, *City of the Saints;* S. L. Clemens (Mark Twain), *Roughing It;* C. L. Youngblood, *Ten Years on the Plains;* H. A. Boller, *Among the Indians;* John Codman, *Round Trip;* A. S. Duniway, *From the West to the West;* F. Fry, *Traveler's Guide;* D. S. Tuttle, *Reminiscences of a Missionary Bishop;* A. K. McClure, *Three Thousand Miles through the Rocky Mountains;* H. N. Maguire, *Resources of Montana* (1868), and *New Map and Guide to Dakota and the Black Hills* (1877); Wm. Ludlow, *Report of a Reconnoissance of the Black Hills* (1874); Chas. Prosch, *Reminiscences of Washington Territory;* C. J. Steedman, *Bucking the Sage Brush;* F. M. Thompson, *Complete Guide to the New Gold Regions;* J. C. Van Tramp, *Prairie and Rocky Mountain Adventures;* Robt. Vaughn, *Then and Now;* Frances A. Victor, *Eleven Years in the Rocky Mountains*, and *The River of the West;* Granville Stuart, *Montana* (1865); R. E. Strahorn, *Handbook of Wyoming* (1877); W. A. Baillie-Grohman, *Camps in the*

Rockies; Wm. Wright (Dan de Quille), *Big Bonanza;* G. T. Ingham, *Digging Gold among the Rockies;* Frank Fossett, *Colorado* (1876); Ernest Ingersoll, *Camp of the Carbonates* (*Scribner's Monthly*, XVIII, 801, Col.); A. A. Hayes, *Grub Stakes and Millions* (*Harper's Mag.*, LX, 380, Col.); J. W. Barclay, *Colorado* (*Fortnightly Review*, XXXIII, 119); Helen H. Jackson, in *Atlantic Monthly*, XLIII, 567, LII, 753, and in *Scribner's Monthly*, XV, 386, XVI, 55.

Bibliography. — C. W. Smith, *Check-list relating to the Pacific Northwest;* H. H. Bancroft, *Works* (footnotes and bibliographies); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 389–394; Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II (index under the various states by name, and "Gold," "Gold Rushes," etc.); *Poole's Index* and supplements, and *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature* (*s.v.* "Frontier" and "Pioneer Life," "Mining," etc.); W. R. Crane, *Index of Mining Engineering Literature* (*s.v.* "Districts").

§ 246. Continental Railroads, 1861–1872

Summary. — Earlier history of railroads (§ 201). — Pacific railroads: 1819–1846, projects; 1850–1862, sectional rivalry over route; 1853–1855, surveys; overland mail and pony express; 1862–1871, congressional charters, land grants, and bonds to Central Pacific, Union Pacific, Kansas Pacific, Northern Pacific, Southern Pacific, Atlantic and Pacific, Texas Pacific, etc.; 1864, July 2, Pacific Railway act; 1865, 1866, amendments; 1864–1869, construction of the Central Pacific and Union Pacific railroads; rivalry of the roads; Huntington, Stanford, Crocker, Hopkins; government's relations; bonds; Credit Mobilier (§ 249). — Extension of the middle western railroads to the prairies. — Development of trunk lines. — Later history (§§ 250, 259, 260).

General. — F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, chs. xi–xiii, xix; E. D. Fite, *Social and Industrial Conditions*, ch. iii; W. C. Brown, *Tenth Decade* (*Atlantic*, XCVI, 31); W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, 7, 144–146, 225–227; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, ch. xxii.

Special. — Overland Stage: F. A. Root, and W. E. Connelley, *Overland Stage to California;* Alex. Majors, *Seventy Years on the Frontier;* A. L. Stimson, *Express Business*, chs. xix, xx; C. F. Lummis, *Pioneer Transportation in America* (*McClure's Mag.*, XXV, 561, XXVI, 81); W. F. Bailey, *Pony Express* (*Century*, XXXIV, 882). —

Pacific Railroads: L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, I, 234–269, II, 49–114; J. P. Davis, *Union Pacific Railway;* H. K. White, *Union Pacific Railroad;* F. A. Cleveland and F. W. Powell, *Railroad Promotion*, chs. xv, xvi; F. L. Paxson, *Pacific Railroads and Disappearance of the Frontier* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I, 105); C. E. Russell, in *Hampton's Magazine*, XXIV, XXV *passim; Pacific Monthly*, XIX, 13–27, 201–214, XX, 67–75, 213–221; H. H. Bancroft, *Chronicles of the Builders*, V, VI, and *California*, VII. — Middle Western Railroads (§ 250): W. K. Ackerman, *Illinois Central; Yesterday and To-day* (Chicago and Northwestern Railway); J. W. Cary, *Chicago, Milwaukee, and St. Paul Railway Company;* H. G. Pearson, *An American Railroad Builder* (J. M. Forbes), ch. v; C. F. Adams, *Railroads*, 80–148; J. L. Ringwalt, *Development of Transportation Systems*, 174–211; E. R. Johnson, *American Railway Transportation*, 26–28; B. H. Meyer, *Railway Legislation in Wisconsin, 1853–1874* (Wis. Acad. of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, *Transactions*, XII, 337); F. H. Spearman, *Strategy of Great Railroads;* C. F. Adams and H. Adams, *Chapters of Erie;* H. V. Poor, *Manual of Railroads*, 1881, Introd.

Sources. — (See also §§ 201, 250.) — 42 Cong. 2 sess., *House Exec. Docs.*, XII, No. 213; *House Misc. Docs.*, IV, No. 228 (N. P. Ry.); 3 sess., *House Reports*, II, Nos. 77 (Credit Mobilier), 78 (U. P. R. R.); Pacific Railway Commission, *Report* (50 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, No. 51); *Pacific Railroad, Congressional Proceedings in the 37th, 38th, and 41st Congresses* (Westchester, Pa., 1875); Apps. to *Annual Reports* of Commissioner of Railroads (federal statutes); G. M. Dodge, *How we Built the Union Pacific Railroad;* H. V. Poor, *Manual of Railroads* (1868–1872); reports of the various railroad companies; periodicals, reached by "Bibliography" below.

Bibliography. — (See also § 250.) — Cleveland and Powell, *Railroad Promotion*, 295–342; L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, II, chs. vi, vii, footnotes; F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, 389, 390, and *Pacific Railroads*, footnotes; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books relating to Railroads;* Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II (index, under "Railroads"); Superintendent of Documents, *Transportation, Price Lists*, No. 25.

§ 247. Indian Relations, 1860–1876

Summary. — Situation in 1850 (§ 216); army on the frontier. — 1850–1865, Indian wars: Pacific Northwest; Southwest; Great Plains. — 1866, Protecting the roads to the mine: Red Cloud;

Spotted Tail; Fort Philip Kearny; Fetterman massacre. — Protecting the railroads. — 1867–1868, Peace commissions. — 1868, War against Cheyennes and Sioux. — 1868–1869, Reservations; extinction of the buffalo. — Indian problems; 1871, March 3, Indian act (wards of the nation). — 1874–1876, Black Hills; 1876, June 25, Custer massacre. — 1877, Chief Joseph's retreat. — 1887, Feb. 8, Dawes act (lands in severalty).

General. — F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, chs. ii, viii, xiv–xviii, xx, xxi; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, ch. vii; C. T. Brady, *Indian Fights and Fighters*, and *Northwestern Fights and Fighters;* G. A. Forsyth, *Story of the Soldier;* J. M. Hanson, *Conquest of the Missouri.*

Special. — F. Farrand, *Basis of American History*, ch. ix; F. W. Hodge, *Handbook of American Indians;* E. S. Curtis, *American Indian;* R. I. Dodge, *Our Wild Indians;* J. P. Dunn, *Massacres of the Mountains;* F. A. Walker, *Indian Question;* G. W. Maypenny, *Our Indian Wards;* J. B. Harrison, *Latest Studies on Indian Reservations;* Jas. McLaughlin, *My Friend the Indian;* S. K. Humphrey, *The Indian Dispossessed;* H. H. Jackson, *Century of Dishonor*, chs. iii–vii, App. i, iii; L. E. Textor, *Official Relations between the United States and the Sioux Indians;* Doane Robinson, *Dakota or Sioux Indians* (Dakota Hist. Soc., *Collections*, II, pt. ii); I. V. D. Heard, *Sioux War;* C. S. Bryant, *Great Massacre by the Sioux Indians;* E. Swift, *Graduates of West Point in Indian Wars* (*Centennial of U. S. Military Academy*, I, 525); Henry Howe, *Times of the Rebellion in the West;* United States Military Service Institution, *Journal* passim; W. F. Drannan, *Thirty-one Years on the Plains*, and *Chief of Scouts*, N. A. Miles, *Rounding up the Red Men* (*Cosmopolitan*, LI, 105); C. A. Eastman, *Story of the Little Big Horn* (*Chautauquan*, XXXI, 353); Hamlin Harland, *General Custer's Last Fight* (*McClure's Mag.*, XI, 443); J. G. Bourke, *General Crook in the Indian Country* (*Century*, XLI, 643); A. J. Sowell, *Texas Rangers;* R. H. Williams, *With the Border Ruffians* (Texas frontier). — EXTINCTION OF THE BISON: W. T. Hornaday, *Passing of the Buffalo* (*Cosmopolitan*, IV, 85), and *Extinction of the American Bison* (Smithsonian Institute, *Report*, 1887, II, 367); L. Farrand, *Basis of American History*, 63 (map); G. B. Grinnell, *Last of the Buffalo* (*Scribner's Mag.*, XII, 267); T. L. Riggs, *Last Buffalo Hunt* (*Independent*, LXIII, 32); J. A. Allen, *American Bisons* (U. S. Geol. Survey, *9th Annual Report*).

Sources. — Public documents are listed in Superintendent of Documents, *Indians, Price Lists*, No. 24; Bureau of Ethnology, *18th Annual Report*, pt. ii (cessions); C. J. Kappler, *Indian Affairs, Laws and Treaties;* annual reports of the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, of the Board of Indian Commissioners, of the Secretary of War, and of the Bureau of Engineers for this period; F. B. Heitman, *Historical Register of the United States Army;* J. P. Dunn, *Massacres of the Mountains* (list of Congressional documents at pp. 757-764); *Record of Engagements with Hostile Indians within the Military Division of the Missouri from 1868 to 1882;* J. G. Bourke, *On the Border with Crook;* Chas. King, *Campaigning with Crook;* N. A. Miles, *Personal Recollections*, chs. x-xxi; P. H. Sheridan, *Personal Memoirs*, II, chs. xii-xiv; W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs* (2d ed.), II, 410-414, 434-437; *Sherman Letters*, 287-291, 296, 317-322; G. A. Custer, *My Life on the Plains;* Elizabeth B. Custer, *Tenting on the Plains*, and *Boots and Saddles*, and *Following the Guidon*, and *The Boy General;* Martha Summerhayes, *Vanished Arizona: Recollections of the Army Life of a New England Woman;* Mrs. H. B. Carrington, *Ab-sa-ra-ka;* H. M. Stanley, *My Early Travels*, I; O. O. Howard, *Nez Perce Joseph*, and *My Life and Experiences among our Hostile Indians;* R. W. Johnson, *A Soldier's Reminiscences;* J. R. Browne, *Adventures in the Apache Country* (1863-1864); J. F. Finerty, *War Path and Bivouac* (Sioux); F. M. Hans, *Great Sioux Nation;* W. F. Cody, *Adventures of Buffalo Bill*, and *Story of the Wild West*, and *True Tales of the Plains;* E. E. White, *Service on Indian Reservations;* D. C. Poole, *Among the Sioux* (Indian agent); H. B. Whipple, *Lights and Shadows of a Long Episcopate*, chs. iii-xvi, xxi-xxvi; M. A. D. W. Howe, *Bishop Hare;* J. H. Taylor, *Frontier and Indian Life*, and *Kaleidoscopic Lives*.

Bibliography. — F. W. Hodge, *Handbook of American Indians*, II, 1179-1221; E. Swift, in *Centennial of the Military Academy*, 583-585; J. P. Dunn, *Massacres of the Mountains*, 757-764; Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II (index, under "Indians," "Army," names of officers, Indian chiefs, tribes, battles, etc.); *Poole's Index*, similarly.

§ 248. Lands and Western Agriculture, 1862–1880

Summary. — Earlier history (§§ 201, 202, 208, 220, 229). — Sectional and class contests over public lands: 1850, Sept. 20, first railroad land grant (Illinois Central); 1854, Aug. 4, Graduation act; 1862, May 20, Homestead act; 1862, July 2, Morrill Land

Grant act for agricultural colleges; 1873, March 3, Timber Culture act; 1877, March 3, Desert Land act; 1878, June 3, Timber and Stone act. — Evasions; 1879, Land Commission. — Railroad land sales. — Middle Western development: 1860–1880, agricultural growth; prairie pioneering; agricultural machinery; extension of wheat culture; growth of North Central states in population and political power; Granger movement (§ 250). — Internal commerce. — Later history (§§ 259, 260, 264).

General. — E. D. Fite, *Social and Industrial Conditions*, ch. i; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, ch. xx; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 294–297, 306, 307; W. C. Edgar, *Story of a Grain of Wheat*, chs. viii, xi; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 719, 720; F. J. Turner, *Middle West* (*Internat. Monthly*, IV, 808).

Special. — LAND: S. Sato, *Land Question*, 168–181; C. R. Van Hise, *Conservation of Natural Resources*, 280–292; R. T. Hill, *Public Domain and Democracy*, chs. ii, vii, viii; J. B. Sanborn, *Congressional Grants of Land in Aid of Railways*, chs. ii–iv, and *Political Aspects of Homestead Legislation* (*Am. Hist. Review*, VI, 19); L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, II, 13–33; B. Terry, *Die Heimstätten-Gesetz-Bewegung* (*Deutsch-Amerikanische Geschichtsblätter*, II, III); J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, VII, 29–36, 285–364, VIII, 21–78, IX, 46–51; T. J. Middleton, *Andrew Johnson and the Homestead Law* (*Sewanee Review*, XV, 316); E. J. James, *Origin of the Land Grant Act of 1862;* L. H. Bailey, *Cyclopedia of American Agriculture*, IV, ch. v. — AGRICULTURE, L. H. Bailey, *Cyclopedia of American Agriculture*, IV, especially 64–69, 108–125; C. L. Flint, *Hundred Years' Progress* (Commissioner of Agri., *Report*, 1872, 274); G. K. Holmes, *Progress of Agriculture* (Dept. of Agri., *Yearbook*, 1899, 307); G. B. Loring, *American Agriculture* (Mass. Board of Agri., *36th Annual Report*, 1888, 308); H. W. Quaintance, *Influence of Farm Machinery;* H. N. Casson, *Romance of the Reaper;* Max Sering, *Die Landwirthschaftliche Konkurrenz Nordamerikas;* H. C. Taylor, maps of wheat production, in *World's Work*, XIX, 12,232–12,237, and in International Harvester Co., *Almanac*, 1911; J. G. Thompson, *Wheat-Growing Industry in Wisconsin*, chs. ii, iii; P. T. Dondlinger, *Book of Wheat;* C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, 183–193, 200–205, 245–273; H. Gannett, *Gazetteer of Kansas* (U.S. Geol. Survey, *Bulletin*, No. 154); Emily G. Balch, *Our Slavic Fellow Citizens*, 343–348; J. Jenkins, *The Northern Tier;* D. W. Wilder, *Annals of Kansas*

(2d ed.), 310–597 *passim;* E. V. Smalley, *Isolation of Life on Prairie Farms* (*Atlantic*, LXXII, 378); P. Bigelow, *Bonanza Farms* (*Atlantic*, XLV, 33); M. H. Catherwood, *Prairie Farmer* (*Lippincott's Mag.*, XXV, 706).

Sources. — PUBLIC DOMAIN: T. Donaldson, *Public Domain* (Public Land Commission, *Report*, 1880); [*Land*] *Laws of the United States, Local or Temporary*, and *Existing Laws* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 47 Cong. 2 sess., XVI–XVIII); General Land Office, *Reports;* Congressional committees' reports, etc., listed in Superintendent of Documents, *Lands, Price Lists*, No 20; Henry George, *Our Land and Land Policy*, and *Progress and Poverty*. — AGRICULTURE (§ 250): Reports of the U. S. Commissioner of Agriculture and of the state agricultural boards; volumes on agriculture in the reports of the Census Bureau for 1860, 1870, 1880; *Grain Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1899–1900, p. 1957); *Wages of Farm Labor, 1866–1892* (Dept. of Agri., Division of Statistics, *Reports*, No. 4); reports of the New York Produce Exchange, the Chicago Board of Trade, etc. See also agricultural newspapers and periodicals, and state and local histories (§ 37).

Bibliography. — Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II (see index, titles "Agriculture," "Land;" etc.): S. J. Buck, *Granger Movement* (in press, lists of agricultural newspapers, etc.); various indexes to the publications of the United States Agricultural Department, — *e.g. Index to Annual Reports* (1837–1893), *List of Publications, with Index* (1862–1902); G. M. Tucker, *American Agricultural Periodicals.*

CHAPTER XXX

POLITICAL REACTION, 1872–1880

§ 249. Administrative Demoralization and the Liberal Republicans, 1869–1875

Summary. — Reaction against Republican reconstruction; 1870, Missouri Liberal revolt; Carl Schurz. — 1868–1872, Grant's lax administration; civil service reform movement; tariff reduction issue (§ 243). — 1872, Liberal Republican convention; tariff issue avoided; Greeley's nomination indorsed by Democrats; Grant's reëlection. — Scandals: 1871, exposure of the Tweed Ring; 1872–1873, Credit Mobilier investigation; "salary grab"; "moiety system"; 1875 "whiskey ring" scandal; 1876, Belknap scandal; cabinet resignations; 1876, June 5, Blaine's explanation of the "Mulligan letters." — Financial crisis of 1873 (§ 252). — 1874, "Tidal wave"; Democratic House. — 1875, Republican legislation: Jan. 14, Resumption act (§ 252); March 3, repeal of tariff act of 1872.

General. — W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, chs, xii, xv, xviii; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VI, ch. xxxix, VII, 1–29, 64–73, 175–206; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 11–16, 23–32, 57–78, 104–109, 200–205, 230–242; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xxiv; W. Wilson, *American People*, IV, 78–96; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, chs. xxxvii, xxxviii; A. K. McClure, *Our Presidents*, 221–243; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 56–72.

Special. — *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), IV, 32, 582, VII, 391, XXVII, 720, 721; J. B. Crawford, *Credit Mobilier;* Rowland Hazard, *Credit Mobilier;* H. K. White, *Union Pacific Railway*, 73–80; W. A. Dunning, *Second Birth of the Republican Party* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 56); Gustavus Myers, *Tammany Hall*, chs. xxv–xxvii; M. P. Breen, *Thirty Years of New York Politics*, letters v–xliv; J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.; index, under

" Corruption," " Rings," etc.); E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. xiv; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 171–193; I. M. Tarbell, *Tariff*, 71–81. — CIVIL SERVICE (§§ 176, 186, 204, 254): C. R. Fish, *Civil Service*, 206–214; L. M. Salmon, *Appointing Power*, 87–99; A. B. Hart, *Actual Government*, ch. xvi, and *Practical Essays*, No. 4; H. C. Lodge, *Historical and Political Essays*, 114–137. — BIOGRAPHIES: H. Garland, *Grant*, chs. xliii–xlvi; O. J. Hollister, *Schuyler Colfax*, chs. xi–xiv; E. Stanwood, *Blaine*, chs. v, vi; C. Schurz, *Reminiscences*, III, 315–362; C. F. Adams, Jr., *C. F. Adams*, 389–392; W. A. Linn, *Greeley*, ch. ix; M. Storey, *Sumner*, ch. xxiv; J. H. Wilson, *C. A. Dana*, chs. xxv, xxvi; W. D. Foulke, *Morton*, II, chs. x, xii, xiv; C. E. Hamlin, *Hannibal Hamlin*, chs. xxxix, xl; John Bigelow, *S. J. Tilden*, I, chs. viii–x; A. B. Paine, *Th. Nast*, chs. xviii–xxx; G. S. Merriam, *Samuel Bowles*, II, chs. xxxvi, xxxvii, xxxix, xlii; Ed. Cary, *G. W. Curtis*, chs. xv, xvi; Moorfield Storey and E. W. Emerson, *E. R. Hoar*, ch. v; J. D. Cox in *Atlantic Monthly*, LXXVI, 162.

Sources. — *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 41–44 Congs.; E. McPherson, *Handbook of Politics* (1868–1876); *American Annual Cyclopædia* (1870–1876); *Tribune Almanac; American Almanac;* periodicals (§ 40), especially *Nation, Harper's Weekly*, and *North American Review;* newspapers (§ 41); J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, II, chs. xxii, xxiv; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xxi–xxv; G. S. Boutwell, *Reminiscences*, II, chs. xxxvii, xxxviii; G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*, ch. xv, and *Later Speeches*, 1–57, 79–105; J. Tilden, *Writings*, I, 467–471, 483–606, and *Letters;* J. A. Garfield, *Works*, I, 499–519, II, 30–45; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, chs. xxiii–xxvii; G. W. Curtis, *Orations and Addresses*, II, Nos. 1–4; J. R. Lowell, *Political Essays*, 295–326; A. D. White, *Autobiography*, I, 159–181; R. Brinkerhoff, *Recollections*, chs. xvi, xvii. — CORRUPTION: 42 Cong. 3 sess., *House Reports*, II, Nos. 77, 78, and *Senate Reports*, III, No. 519 (Credit Mobilier); 44 Cong. 1 sess., *House Reports*, I, Nos. 176, 186, II, No. 345, V, No. 784, VI, Nos. 789, 791, 793, VII, No. 794; *House Misc. Docs.*, IV, No. 84, V, No. 167, IX, No. 186, X, No. 193; *Congressional Record*, IV, 2724, 2725, 3602–3617 (Blaine); [Moorfield Storey], *Blaine's Record;* J. McDonald, *Secrets of the Great Whiskey Ring.*

Bibliography. — *Good Government*, XVI, 48 (public documents on civil service); C. R. Fish, *Civil Service*, App. D; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 110 (lect. 45), 213; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, No. 17; footnotes to Rhodes.

§ 250. Transportation and the Granger Movement, 1867–1877

Summary. — Rapid agricultural expansion of Middle West; rural isolation; slight share of farmers in legislation; deficiency of gold; competition of wheat soils; increase of production; decline of agricultural prices; mortgages. — Railroads: rapid extension; rates; capitalization; cost of construction; discriminations; lack of effective public regulation; eastern stockholders *versus* pioneer shippers. — Grangers: 1867, Kelley and the Patrons of Husbandry; 1868–1871, slow growth; 1872–1874, rise to height; 1874–1876, decline; strongest in Mississippi Valley and Pacific Northwest; characteristics of granges and farmers' clubs; co-operative enterprises. — Granger demands; party fusions; independent political action. — State railway rate legislation: regulation by commission; granger laws. — Influence on federal action: 1874, April 24, Windom report; 1874, McCrary bill; 1876, Hopkins bill; 1878, Feb. 26, Reagan report and bill. — Supreme Court decisions on power of state to regulate common carriers: 1877, March 1, Munn *v.* Illinois, and Granger cases. — 1876–1880, Railway receiverships; reaction in favor of railroads. — Influence of Grangers on later railway regulation; on later reform programs. — Subsequent farmers' movements (§§ 256, 262). — Relation to California labor troubles (§ 268).

General. — E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, ch. xi: *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), X, 181, 182; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, 225–229, 264; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 61–65; C. F. Adams, *Granger Movement* (*N. Am. Review*, CXX, 394); C. W. Pierson, *Granger Movement* (*Popular Sci. Monthly*, XXXII, 199, 368); McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Grangers, Interstate Commerce Decisions, Transportation (Problems of Regulation).

Special. — S. J. Buck, *Granger Movement* (in press), and *Independent Parties, 1873–1876* (*Turner Essays*, 137), and *Agricultural Organizations in Illinois, 1870–1880* (Ill. Hist. Society, *Journal*, III, 10); O. H. Kelley, *Order of Patrons of Husbandry;* E. W. Martin, *Grange Movement;* J. Perriam, *The Groundswell;* E. S. Carr, *Patrons of Husbandry on the Pacific Coast;* J. W. Darrow, *Patrons of Husbandry;* D. W. Aikin, *The Grange* (Dept. of Agri., *Special Reports*, No. 55); A. G. Warner, *Three Phases of Coöperation*, ch. i;

H. B. Learned, *President's Cabinet*, ch. xi; C. H. Greathouse, *Department of Agriculture* (Dept. of Agri.; Division of Pubs., *Bulletin*, No. 3). — AGRICULTURAL DISCONTENT (§§ 259, 260, 262): T. B. Veblen, *The Price of Wheat since* 1867 (*Jour. of Political Economy*, I, 68); W. L. Fleming, *Civil War and Reconstruction in Alabama*, 710–734; A. F. Bentley, *Condition of the Western Farmer;* K. L. Butterfield, *Farmers' Social Organizations* (*Cyclop. of Am. Agri.*, IV, 289); J. R. Elliott, *American Farms;* A. M. Simons, *American Farmer*, 12–60; W. C. Flagg, *Farmers' Movement* (*Jour. Soc. Sci.*, VI, 100); I. B. Ross, *Agrarian Revolution* (*N. Am. Review*, CXC, 376); E. A. Pratt, *Organization of Agriculture*, ch. xviii. — RAILROAD AND THE FARMER (§§ 262, 269): Cleveland and Powell, *Railroad Promotion*, chs. x, xiv; L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, II, 21–23, chs. xix–xxii; E. R. Johnson, *American Railway Transportation*, ch. xxv; S. F. Van Oss, *American Railroads as Investments*, chs. iii, xxx–xxxviii; B. H. Meyer, *Railway Legislation*, 190–194; Stuart Daggett, *Railroad Reorganization;* A. D. Adams, *Reasonable Rates* (W. Z. Ripley, *Railway Problems*, ch. xxiii), and *Reasonable Rates* (*Jour. of Polit. Econ.*, XII, 79); H. S. Haines, *Problems in Railway Regulation*, ch. iii; J. L. Ringwalt, *Transportation Systems*, 229–233, 265–269: W. W. Cook, *Corporation Problem*, ch. ii; C. F. Adams, *Railroads*, 116–146; A. B. Stickney, *Railway Problem*, chs. viii–x; Albert Stickney *State Control of Trade and Commerce*, chs. iii, iv; J. F Hudson, *Railways and the Republic*, ch. iv; Wm. Larrabee, *Railroad Question*, chs. x, xi; E. J. James, *Agitation for Federal Regulation of Railways;* A. T. Hadley, *Railroad Transportation*, ch. vii; C. A. Prouty, *Dependence of Agriculture on Transportation* (Mich. Pol. Soc. Assoc., *Publications*, IV, 116); W. D. Dabney, *Public Regulation of Railways*, 89–281: H. C. Adams, *Farmer and Railway Legislation* (*Century*, XXI, 780); F. H. Dixon, *State Railroad Control*, and *Railroad Control in Nebraska* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XII, 617); A. G. Warner, *Railroad Problems* (*ibid.*, VI, 66); C. R. Aldrich, *Repeal of Granger Law* (*Iowa Jour. of Hist. and Politics*, III, 256); P. A. Dey, *Railroad Legislation* (*Iowa Hist. Record*, IX, 555); J. H. Gordon, *Illinois Railway Legislation;* Frank Hendrick, *Railway Control by Commissions*, chs. viii, xi: H. R. Meyer, *Government Regulation of Railway Rates*, pt. ii; H. H. Swain, *Economic Aspects of Railroad Receiverships*, ch. ii.

Sources. — (See also §§ 262, 269.) — Many of the special references above are contemporaneous. *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Record*, especially, *Globe*, 41 Cong. 2 sess., 239, 868; 42 Cong. 3 sess., App., 56; *Record*, II, 1945, 2147, 2427, 2493, App., 6, 56, 163;

Report on Transportation Routes to the Seaboard ("Windom report"; *Senate Reports*, 43 Cong. 1 sess., III, No. 307); reports of state railway commissions (see R. R. Bowker, *State Publications*); J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, X, ch. vi; reports of western state agricultural societies and boards; Patrons of Husbandry, *Proceedings* (state and national); railway reports, especially those of the Chicago, Burlington, and Quincy, the Chicago, Milwaukee, and St. Paul, and the Chicago Northwestern for these years; *American Annual Cyclopædia* (1872–1876); *Tribune Almanac* (1872–1876); E. McPherson, *Handbook* (biennial, 1872–1876); contemporary newspapers, especially *Prairie Farmer*, *Chicago Tribune*, *American Agriculturist*, *Grange Bulletin*, *American Patron;* periodicals, particularly *Nation*, *Atlantic Monthly*. — CASES: Munn *v.* Illinois (1877): 94 *U.S.*, 113; E. C. Boyd, *Cases*, 289; Emlin McClain, *Cases*, 946. — Granger cases (1877): 94 *U.S.*, 155, 161, 179, 180; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1975, 1978 *n.* — Schulenburg *v.* Harriman (1875): 21 *Wallace*, 44.

Bibliography. — *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), X, 182; G. M. Tucker, *American Agricultural Periodicals;* S. J. Buck, *Granger Movement* (in press), *passim.* For references on railroad regulation, see § 269.

§ 251. Disputed Election and the Closing of Reconstruction, 1876–1879

Summary. — 1876, Candidacy of Hayes against Tilden; financial issue (§ 252). — Disputed election: the count in Florida, Louisiana, and South Carolina; Oregon question; location of authority to count; 1877, electoral commission; decision for Hayes. — End of Reconstruction: "Wormley agreement"; 1877, withdrawal of troops from Louisiana and South Carolina (§ 242); effect upon white rule; policy of moderation. — Republican dissension. — Republican executive against Democratic House of Representatives: election laws; riders to appropriations; 1879, both houses Democratic. — Southern development (§ 261).

General. — W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, chs. xix–xxi; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, chs. i, vi–viii; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VII, 206–291, and *Historical Essays*, 245–264; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 205–230; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 104–113; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 906–917; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 73–103.

Special. — P. L. Haworth, *Hayes-Tilden Disputed Election;* A. M. Gibson, *A Political Crime;* Manton Marble, *Secret Chapter;* J. M. Rogers, *How Hayes became President* (*McClure's Mag.*, XXIII, 76); J. Bigelow, *Tilden*, I, 294–313, II, chs. i–iii, vi, and *Supreme Court and the Electoral Court;* E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xxv, and *Blaine*, ch. vii; Gail Hamilton, *Blaine*, ch. xiv; T. E. Burton, *John Sherman*, 252–257; W. D. Foulke, *Morton*, II, chs. xix–xxiv; G. S. Merriam, *Samuel Bowles*, II, 259–263, 278–306, 350–356; A. R. Conklin, *Roscoe Conkling*, chs. xxvi, xxvii; C. Schurz, *Hayes* (*Appletons' Cyclop. of Am. Biog.*, III, 134); Ed. Spencer, *T. F. Bayard*, ch. xiii; B. H. Hill, Jr., *B. H. Hill*, ch. vi; Ed. Mayes, *Lamar*, chs. xix, xxiii; A. B. Paine, *Th. Nast*, chs. xxxviii, xxxix, xliv; J. H. Wilson, *C. A. Dana*, ch. xxvi; E. W. Stoughton, *Electoral Commission* (*N. Am. Review*, CXXXV, 193).

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 44 Cong. 2 sess., 45 Cong.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VII, 439–640; E. McPherson, *Handbook* (biennial, 1876–1880); *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1876–1880); *Tribune Almanac; American Almanac;* periodicals and newspapers (§§ 40, 41), especially *Nation* and *Harper's Weekly;* S. J. Tilden, *Writings*, II, 354–492, and *Letters* passim; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, II, chs. xxv, xxvi, xxviii; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xxvi, xxvii, II, chs. ii–vi; J. Sherman, *Recollections*, I, ch. xxviii; H. McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, ch. xxvii; J. A. Garfield, *Works*, II, 393–462, 543–550, 655–739; A. K. McClure, *Recollections*, 98–105; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, chs. xxxvi, xxxvii; Wm. Allen, *Governor Chamberlain's Administration*, chs. xxii–xxvii; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, chs. xxviii, xxix. — Hayes-Tilden Contest: *Congressional Documents*, especially 44 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 2; *Senate Reports*, I, Nos. 536, 548, 561, 598, 627, 678, 704, IV, No. 701; *Senate Misc. Docs.*, I, Nos. 1, 5, 8, 16, 18, 23, 25, 40, II, No. 14, III, Nos. 44, 45; *House Exec. Docs.*, IX, No. 30; *House Reports*, I, Nos. 100, 108, 143, 156, II, No. 175; *House Misc. Docs.*, I, Nos. 6, 26, 31, 34, 35, 38, II, No. 13; 45 Cong. 3 sess., *House Reports*, I, No. 140; *House Misc. Docs.*, IV, V; *Proceedings of Congress and Electoral Commission* (also in *Congressional Record*, V, pt. iv); *Statutes at Large*, XIX, 227; M. H. Northrup (Sec. of the House committee), *A Grave Crisis* (*Century*, XL, 923); J. P. Bradley, *Miscellaneous Writings*, 8–10, 165–223.

Bibliography. — Footnotes to the following authors: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VII, especially, 279; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, chs. xvii, xix–xxi; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, chs. vi–viii, x, and ch. xx; P. L. Haworth, *Hayes-Tilden Disputed Election.*

§ 252. Financial Questions, 1873–1880

Summary. — Earlier financial history (§ 243). — Panic of 1873 (§ 253); era of depression to 1878. — 1873, Feb. 12, Demonetization of silver ("crime of '73"). — 1874, April 22, Veto of the Inflation bill. — 1874, Democratic congressional victories (§ 249). — 1875, Jan. 14, Resumption act: provisions. — 1876, Greenback party in presidential campaign: platform; 1878, height of greenback agitation. — Silver question: increase of silver production (§ 245); 1871–1875, demonetization in Europe; 1877, Nov. 5, Bland "Free Silver" bill passed House; Matthews concurrent resolution on payment of bonds in silver; sectional voting; 1878, Feb. 28, Bland-Allison act. — 1879, Resumption: John Sherman; "bumper wheat crop"; fall in foreign exchange; prosperity and speculation. — Later history (§ 254).

General. — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, VII, 37–73; W. A. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, 235–241, 258–260, 294, 295; E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, ch. ix; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 158–161, 170–175; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, ch. x; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 343–349; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 301–304, 335–337; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, article Greenback Party.

Special. — A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years*, 18–72; C. J. Bullock, *Select Readings in Public Finance*, §§ 68, 82; D. A. Wells, *Recent Economic Changes*, chs. i, ii, iv; T. E. Burton, *John Sherman*, chs. xi, xii; W. D. Foulke, *Morton*, II, ch. xv; E. N. Dingley, *Nelson Dingley*, chs. x, xi; E. P. Oberholtzer, *Jay Cooke*, II, ch. xviii; W. V. Byars, *An American Commoner* (Bland), ch. xii. — FUNDING: R. A. Bayley, *National Loans*, 95–98, 171–173; W. F. De Knight, *Currency and Loans*, 24, 25, 109, 110, 120–208 *passim*. — MONEY: J. J. Knox, *United States Notes*, 139–155; H. White, *Money and Banking* (3d ed.), 153–157, 167–171; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, chs. vii, x, xi, xiv, xv, Apps. *passim; Report of the Monetary Commission of the Indianapolis Convention*, 138–142, 205–208, 214–218, 422–432; F. W. Taussig, *Silver Situation*, pt. i, chs. i–iii, vii; D. K. Watson, *American Coinage*, chs. viii–xi, xvii; H. B. Russell, *International Monetary Conference*, chs. ii–v. — BANKING AND INDEPENDENT TREASURY: J. J. Knox, *Banking in the United States*, 113–131, 141–165, 273–281, 298, 299; David Kinley, *Independent Treasury* (Nat. Monetary Com.), 225–236; J. B. Phillips, *Methods*

of Keeping the Public Money, chs. vii, viii. — CRISIS OF 1873: O. M. W. Sprague, *Crises*, ch. i; T. E. Burton, *Financial Crises*, especially 287–289; H. White, *Financial Crisis* (*Fortnightly*, XXV, 810); V. B. Denslow, *Principles of Economic Philosophy*, 390–395; C. A. Conant, *Modern Banks of Issue*, 453–466, 509–514.

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 43-46 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VII; *Report on the Finances* (annual, 1873–1880); *Statistical Abstract* (annual, 1878–1880); E. P. Andrew, *Diagrams*, and *Statistics for the United States, 1867–1900;* National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 230–241, 417–430, 530–550, 572–586, 680–693; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws relating to Finance*, 210–219, 241–249, 295–300; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 96–98, 100, 102, 103, 105; *Appletons' (American) Annual Cyclopædia* (1872–1880).

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, §§ 153, 162, 169; T. E. Burton, *Financial Crises*, 369–371.

§ 253. Commercial Reorganization, 1865–1880

Summary. — Earlier history (§§ 201, 202). — Civil War (§ 238): Southern blockade; cotton; northern wheat exports; destruction by Confederate cruisers; tariff restrictions (§ 239). — Decline of American merchant marine; progress of coastwise and internal shipping; 1865, opening of the South to commerce. — 1865–1875, Imports exceed exports (except 1874); 1876–1887, exports exceed imports. — Exports: development of interior (§§ 246, 248, 250, 259, 260); wheat surplus; 1876, rise of cattle and meat exports; corn feeding; refrigerator system; cheap railroad rates and Great Lakes shipping (§§ 250, 259, 269); revived cotton exports; petroleum. — Imports: increase of raw materials over manufactured goods; variety of imports; influence of tariff (§ 243). — Leading ports. — Directions of foreign commerce. — Increase of internal commerce (§ 248). — Increase of manufactures. — 1876, Centennial Exposition. — Speculation: growth of Wall Street; 1869, gold conspiracy (243); crisis of 1873 (§ 252); commercial depression; 1877, railroad riots. — Tariff (§§ 243, 249). — 1875, Jan. 30, Hawaiian reciprocity treaty; significance. — New fortunes. — Capital and labor (§ 256). — Later problems (§§ 269, 270).

General. — E. D. Fite, *Social and Industrial Conditions*, chs. i–vi; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 16–18, 195–200, 351; E. E.

Sparks, *National Development*, 16–19, 53–67, 305–326; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, chs. xx, xxii, xxiii, xxv, xxx; H. R. Hatfield, *Lectures on Commerce*, 57–80, 145–174; W. C. Webster, *General History of Commerce*, ch. xxix; Clive Day, *History of Commerce*, chs. li–liii; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 288–294, 307–312.

Special. — Merchant Marine: W. L. Marvin, *American Merchant Marine*, chs. xiv–xvi; W. W. Bates, *American Marine*, ch. ix; J. R. Spears, *American Merchant Marine*, ch. xvi; D. A. Wells, *Our Merchant Marine;* Henry Fry, *North Atlantic Steam Navigation*, chs. xxiii, xxxi; *Shipping Industry* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1900–1901, p. 1369); J. R. Soley, in N. S. Shaler, *United States*, I, ch. x; J. D. J. Kelley, *Question of Ships*, chs. i–vi, App. i, ii. — Foreign Commerce: W. C. Ford, in C. M. Depew, *One Hundred Years*, I, ch. iii; J. E. Conner, *Industrial Causes affecting American Commercial Policy* (Am. Acad. of Pol. and Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXIII, 43); J. L. Laughlin and H. P. Willis, *Reciprocity*, chs. i, ii; Chalfant Robinson, *Two Reciprocity Treaties*, pt. ii; R. Mayo-Smith and E. R. A. Seligman, *Commercial Policy* (*Schriften des Vereins für Socialpolitik*, XLIX, 34); D. A. Wells, *Recent Economic Changes*, chs. i, ii; *Monthly Summary of Commerce and Finance*, 1903–1904, pp. 4337–4367; Bureau of Statistics, *Exports of Manufactures, 1800 to 1906;* C. H. Evans, *Exports, 1789 to 1883* (*House Misc. Docs.*, 48 Cong. 1 sess., XXIV, No. 49, pt. ii). — Internal Commerce (§§ 243, 246, 248, 250, 252): G. G. Tunell, *Statistics of Lake Commerce* (*House Docs.*, 55 Cong. 2 sess., LI, No. 277), and *Transportation on the Great Lakes* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, IV, 332), and *Flour and Grain Traffic* (*ibid.*, V, 340); *Grain Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1899–1900, p. 1957); Bureau of Statistics, *Reports on Internal Commerce* (*Commerce and Navigation*, 1876–1891, pt. ii); C. R. Fish, *Economic History of Wisconsin* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1907, 204). — Iron and Steel: J. M. Swank, *Iron in All Ages* (2d ed.), chs. xlii–liii, lix, lx; H. N. Casson, *Romance of Steel*, 1–26, 72–100; *Iron and Steel Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1900–1901, p. 197). — Coal: W. J. Nicolls, *Story of American Coals;* *Coal Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1899–1900, p. 2815); Peter Roberts, *Anthracite Coal Industry;* Fred. Prime, *Coals* (*Tenth Census*, XV, 605). — Petroleum: I. M. Tarbell, *Standard Oil Company*, chs. ii–ix; G. H. Montague, *Standard Oil Company*, 1–88; Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on Petroleum Industry*, I, chs. i, ii, § 1. — Lumber: J. E. Defebaugh, *Lumber Industry*, I, 491–493, 532–556, II *passim;* G. W. Hotchkiss, *Lumber and Forest In-*

dustry of Northwest passim; *Lumber Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1900–1901, p. 1079). — COTTON: M. B. Hammond, *Cotton Industry*, chs. iv–vi, xi, App. i; *Tenth Census*, V, VI. — WALL STREET AND SPECULATION: J. A. Scoville (W. Barrett), *Old Merchants of New York;* S. S. Pratt, *Work of Wall Street*, ch. i; C. A. Conant, *Wall Street and the Country*, ch. iv; John Moody and G. K. Turner, *Masters of Capital* (*McClure's Mag.*, XXXVI, 2, XXXVII, 185); Bouck White, *Book of Daniel Drew*, chs. xxi–xl; Gustavus Myers, *Great American Fortunes*, II, III; A. Youngman, *Economic Causes of Great Fortunes*, ch. iii; J. G. Cannon, *Clearing Houses;* J. K. Medbery, *Men and Mysteries of Wall Street;* C. F. and H. Adams, *Chapters of Erie*, chs. i, iii; E. P. Oberholtzer, *Jay Cooke*, II, chs. xiv–xvii. — CAPITAL AND LABOR (§ 256): J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, IX, Introd.; J. F. Rhodes, *Railroad Riots* (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 86).

Sources. — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: *Commerce and Navigation; Statistical Abstract* (1878-1880); *Commercial Relations* (annual), and *Consular Reports* (monthly from 1880); *Ninth* and *Tenth Census; House Exec. Docs.*, 41 Cong. 2 sess., VI, No. 111; *House Reports*, 42 Cong. 2 sess., I, No. 28; *Senate Reports*, 52 Cong. 2 sess., III, No. 1394 (Aldrich report on wages, prices and transportation); on Hawaiian reciprocity see 122 *U.S.*, 116 and 124 *U.S.*, 190. — UNOFFICIAL: *Appletons'* (*American*) *Annual Cyclopædia* (1865–1880); reports of boards of trade and chambers of commerce; *Commercial and Financial Chronicle* (weekly), and *Financial Review* (annual); *Journal of Commerce; Commercial Bulletin; Hunt's Merchants' Magazine* (to 1871); *Bankers' Magazine;* J. R. Commons, *Documentary History of American Industrial Society*, IX, X; *Great Industries of the United States;* S. M. Peto, *Resources and Prospects of America* (1865); Henry Clews, *Fifty Years in Wall Street;* Henry Villard, *Memoirs*, II, chs. xxxviii–xlii; J. M. Forbes, *Letters and Recollections*, II, ch. xx.

Bibliography. — C. Day, *History of Commerce*, 551, 552, 616–618; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Mercantile Marine Subsidies*, and *List of References on Reciprocity.*

CHAPTER XXXI

NEW INDUSTRIAL FOUNDATIONS, 1880–1890

§ 254. Administrative Problems and the Surplus, 1880–1884

Summary. — Campaign of 1880: Republican candidates, Grant and third term issue, "senatorial triumvirate," Blaine, Sherman, nomination of Garfield; Democratic convention, nomination of Hancock; Greenback convention; blurred issues; Greenback issues and areas; election of Garfield. — Garfield's administration: dominance of Blaine; discussions over appointments, Conkling, "Stalwarts," and "Half-Breeds," "senatorial courtesy," resignation of New York senators; 1881, July 2, assassination of Garfield; Sept. 19, death; accession of Vice President Arthur. — 1883, Jan. 16, Civil Service Reform act. — 1882, Problem of the surplus: extravagant appropriations; pensions; 1882, Aug. 2, river and harbor act passed over veto; 1884, bankers' panic; 1885, decline of surplus. — Tariff: declining agricultural prices; Western discontent; 1882, May 15, Tariff Commission authorized; 1883, March 3, tariff and internal revenue act; 1884, Democratic control of House; Morrison "horizontal reduction" bill.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, chs. xi, xii, xvii, xix; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 307–356; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 151–169; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, ch. xxxix; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 103–114.

Special. — Civil Service (§ 249): C. R. Fish, Civil Service, 216–223; Henry Lambert, *Progress of Civil Service Reform*, 10–24.— Surplus: D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, ch. xviii; H. C. Adams, *Surplus Financiering* (*National Revenues*, 45): A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years*, ch. iv. — Tariff: F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, ch. iv; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, 197–221; J. M. Tarbell, *Tariff*, ch. v. — Miscellaneous: J. F. Rhodes, *National Republican Conventions* (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 297); C. L. Becker, *Unit Rule*

in Conventions (*Am. Hist. Review*, V, 64); E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, ch. xxvi; O. M. W. Sprague, *Crises*, 108–120. — BIOGRAPHIES: E. N. Dingley, *Nelson Dingley*, chs. xii–xiv; A. R. Conkling, *Roscoe Conkling*, chs. xxxi–xxxv; Adam Badeau, *Grant in Peace*, chs. xxxvii–xl; Ferris Greenslet, *J. R. Lowell*, 191–212; Ed. Cary, *G. W. Curtis*, chs. xx, xxii: E. Stanwood, *Blaine*, 216–241.

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 46 Cong. 3 sess. — 48 Cong.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VIII; *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1880–1884); *Tribune Almanac; American Almanac;* E. McPherson, *Handbook* (biennial, 1882–1884); campaign textbooks; periodicals (§ 40); National Civil Service Reform League, *Proceedings; Civil Service Record*, I–IV; Civil Service Commission, *First Report.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, II, ch. xxix; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xxviii, xxix; G. S. Boutwell, *Reminiscences*, ch. xl, and *Blaine and Conkling* (*McClure's Mag.*, XIV, 281); T. C. Platt, *Autobiography* chs. vi–viii; S. M. Cullom, *Fifty Years*, ch. xv; G. W. Curtis, *Orations and Addresses*, III, ch. x; J. G. Wilson, *Grant's Letters to a Friend*, 103–107; J. Sherman, *Recollections*, II, chs. xl–xlvii; *Sherman Letters*, 350–366; J. A. Garfield, *Works*, II, 723–795; A. K. McClure, *Recollections*, 106–123; A. D. White, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xi, xii; H. L. Dawes, *Garfield and Conkling* (*Century*, XXV, 341); M. Halstead, *Tragedy of Garfield's Administration* (*McClure's Mag.*, VI, 269); T. B. Connery, *Garfield-Conkling Tragedy* (*Cosmopolitan*, XXIII, 145).

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 176; C. R. Fish, *Civil Service*, 253–266; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 17, 37, 38: E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, ch. xx; *Poole's Index* and supplements.

§ 255. Democratic Administration, 1885–1889

Summary. — Campaign of 1884: Blaine; Grover Cleveland; Independents (" mugwumps "); Anti-Monopolists; Greenbackers; Prohibitionists; issues; personalities; victory of Democrats; end of an era. — 1885–1889, Cleveland's administration; Democratic House; Republican Senate. — Civil service: removals; 1887, March 3, repeal of Tenure of Office act. — 1886, Jan. 19, Presidential Succession act. — 1887, Feb. 3, Electoral Count act. —Vetoes. — Australian ballot. — 1887, Feb. 4, Interstate Commerce act (§§ 250, 256, 269); industrial combinations (§§ 256, 269); 1886–

1889, strikes and labor questions (§ 256). — 1887, March 3, Anti-Polygamy act. — 1888, Sept. 13, Chinese act (§§ 258, 268). — Silver question (§ 262). — Foreign relations (§§ 257, 263). — Surplus: 1886–1890, rise in revenue; river and harbor bills; 1886–1890, bond purchases; reduction of national bank issues; 1887, Dec. 6, Cleveland's tariff message; 1888, Mills tariff bill. — 1888, Presidential election: tariff issue; political bosses, Quay, Platt; money in politics; Prohibitionists; Harrison's victory over Cleveland.

General. — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, chs. ii, iv–vi, viii; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 460–507, 539, 547–558; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years of the Republic*, chs. i, ii, iv; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 169–196; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 650–661; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 942–957, 963–968; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. xxvii–xxix; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 114–135.

Special. — J. F. Rhodes, *National Republican Conventions* (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 304–306), and *Cleveland's Administrations*, I (*ibid.*, L, 496); Rudolph Blankenburg, *Forty Years in the Wilderness* (on Pa. and Quay, *Arena*, XXXIII, 1, 113, 225); H. C. Lea, *Mr. Cleveland and Civil Service Reform* (*Independent*, XL, 1329); T. Roosevelt, *American Ideals*, No. 7; A. B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, Nos. 4, 9; C. F. Randolph, *Surplus Revenue* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, III, 226); A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years*, ch. v; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, 251–255, and *Silver Situation*, pt. i, chs. iv, v; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, 220–241; O. H. Perry, *Proposed Tariff Legislation* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, II, 69); I. M. Tarbell, *Tariff*, chs. vi, vii; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, ch. xv; E. Stanwood, *Blaine*, ch. ix; Ed. Mayes, *Lamar*, ch. xxix; A. B. Paine, *Th. Nast*, chs. liii, lv–lvii, lix.

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 48–50 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VIII; Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 111–113; *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1884–1888); E. McPherson, *Handbook* (1884–1888); *American Almanac; Tribune Almanac.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: G. Cleveland, *Presidential Problems*, ch. i, and *Writings and Speeches*, chs. i–iv, xi, xii, xv–xx; G. F. Parker, *Recollections of Cleveland*, chs. iv–vii; Gail Hamilton, *Blaine*, 623–632, 646–650; E. L. Godkin, *Problems of Modern Democracy*, 98–122; J. R. Lowell, *Literary and Political Addresses*, 7–37, 181–221; S. M. Cullom,

Fifty Years, ch. xvi; T. C. Platt, *Autobiography*, chs. ix–xii; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xxix, xxx, II, chs. xi, xiv; R. M. La Follette, *Personal Narrative*, and in *American Magazine*, LXXII, 660, LXXIII, 3; Benjamin Harrison, *Speeches*, 7–222; J. Sherman, *Recollections*, II, chs. xlvii, l, li, liii–lv; *Sherman Letters*, 357–378; A. E. Stevenson, *Something of Men I have Known*, ch. xviii; A. D. White, *Autobiography*, I, 201–212.

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, ch. xxi, and *Financial History*, § 176; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 197; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 765–770; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 823, 824; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 12; R. R. Bowker and Geo. Iles, *Reader's Guide*, especially 110–112 (civil service).

§ 256. Capital and Labor, 1885–1890

Summary. — Development of capital and classes (§§ 202, 253, 269).— Cities (§ 203): North Atlantic increase; improvements, electric lighting, telephones, electric railways; problems (§§ 269, 272, 274),— Increase of manufactures. — Railway combinations: Gould and Vanderbilt systems; destructive competition (§ 253); pools; discriminations; 1886, Oct. 25, Wabash decision; 1887, Feb. 4, Interstate Commerce act (§ 269). — Industrial combinations (§ 269): Standard Oil trust; anthracite coal roads; other combinations; New Jersey charters; state regulation; 1888, Republican antitrust platform; 1890, July 2, federal Antitrust act. — 1880–1890, Immigration (§ 258). — Knights of Labor: 1879, organization; 1885–1886, growth. — Strikes: 1886, Gould system, extent; Chicago stockyards; Chicago anarchists, Haymarket bomb throwing. — Labor problems (§ 270): boycott; walking delegate; sympathetic strike; closed shop; eight hour day; immigration (§ 258); sweatshops; woman and child labor. — 1884, June 27, Federal Bureau of Labor; 1886, April 22, Cleveland's recommendations; 1886–1888, federal and state acts for voluntary arbitration. — 1886, American Federation of Labor (unions) replaces Knights of Labor. — Single taxers: 1879, Henry George's *Progress and Poverty;* 1886, candidacy for Mayor of New York; 1888, Edward Bellamy's *Looking Backward;* Nationalist societies. — Farmers' unrest (§§ 250, 262): agricultural prices; 1889, Farmers' Alliance; 1890, People's Party, St. Louis convention,

demands. — Silver issue: falling ratio; 1886, Free Coinage bill; Aug. 4, small silver certificates authorized.

General. — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, chs. i, iii, vi, xii, xiv; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 127–141, 220–222; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 486, 527–536; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 956, 961, 971–973; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, chs. xxvi–xxix; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 347–369; C. D. Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, chs. xiii, xiv, xvii, xix–xxv, xxviii.

Special. — LABOR (§§ 202, 270): G. E. McNeil, *Labor Movement;* T. S. Adams and H. L. Sumner, *Labor Problems*, 119–122, 160, 179–186, 219–223, 230, 295, 510–519, 526, 536, 540, 542; Émile Levasseur, *American Workman;* R. T. Ely, *Labor Movement;* Margaret A. Schaffner, *The Labor Contract*, 46–53; F. S. Hall, *Sympathetic Strikes;* G. W. W. Hanger, *Strikes and Lockouts* (Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, IX, 1097); Ira Cross, *Strike Statistics* (Am. Statis. Assoc., *Publications*, n.s., XI, 168); W. Kirk, *Knights of Labor and the American Federation of Labor* (J. H. Hollander, *American Trades Unionism*, 353, also in C. J. Bullock, *Readings in Economics*, 613); F. J. Stimson, *Handbook to the Labor Laws*, and *Labor in its Relation to Law.* — CAPITAL (§§ 253, 269). — CITY PROBLEMS (§ 272): D. F. Wilcox, *Story of City Government;* A. F. Weber, *Growth of Cities*, especially 20–40; M. R. Maltbie, *Municipal Functions* (*Municipal Affairs*, II, 577); A. B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, No. 8; F. J. Goodnow, *Municipal Problems;* J. A. Riis, *How the Other Half Lives*, and *Making of an American*, chs. iii, ix, x; *Eleventh Census*, IX, 679–867; Bureau of the Census, *Street and Electric Railways, 1902*, 159–171; *Twelfth Census*, X, 157–181; H. N. Casson, *Telephone.* — SOCIAL REFORM (§§ 272, 274): W. D. P. Bliss, *New Encyclopedia of Social Reform* passim; Morris Hillquit, *Socialism* (5th ed.), pt. ii, chs. ii, iii; C. D. Wright, *Practical Sociology;* H. George, Jr., *Henry George.* — INTERSTATE COMMERCE (§§ 250, 269): E. R. Johnson, *American Railway Transportation*, chs. xvi, xxvi; C. S. Langstroth and W. Stilz, *Railway Coöperation;* B. H. Meyer, *Railway Legislation*, 189–239; W. Z. Ripley, *Railway Problems*, ch. iv; H. S. Drinker, *Interstate Commerce Act;* A. H. Walker, *Sherman Law*, and in *North American Review*, CXCIV, 801–803.

Sources. — LABOR: *Congressional Documents*, especially 49 Cong. 2 sess., *House Reports*, III, No. 4174 (Gould system strike); 50 Cong. 1 sess., *House Misc. Docs.*, XV, No. 572 (contract labor); 2 sess., *House Reports*, IV, No. 4147 (anthracite miners); Missouri Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Official History of the Great Strike of*

1886; F. T. Wilson, *Federal Aid in Domestic Disturbances*, ch. x; *Wages of Farm Labor* (Dept. of Agri., Div. of Statistics, *Reports*, No. 4); J. R. Buchanan, *Story of a Labor Agitator;* T. V. Powderly, *Thirty Years of Labor;* H. D. Lloyd, *A Strike of Millionaires against Miners;* D. D. Lum, *Trial of the Chicago Anarchists;* periodicals (indexed in *Poole's Index*); J. P. Altgelt, *Live Questions.* — INTERSTATE COMMERCE (§ 269): Wabash Railway Co. *v.* Illinois (1886), 118 *U.S.*, 557, and J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2045; *Senate Reports*, 49 Cong. 1 sess., II, III (Cullom report); *Statutes at Large*, XXIV, 379 (Interstate Commerce act, also in Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, No. 114); Interstate Commerce Commission, *Annual Reports* (1887–), and *Reports and Decisions;* G. F. Edmunds, *Anti-Trust Law* (*N. Am. Review*, CXCIV, 803).

Bibliography. — (See also §§ 202, 203, 270.) — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 329, 334–337, 339, 340; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Labor*, and *List of Books relating to Railroads;* Helen Marot, *Handbook of Labor Literature;* Commissioner of Labor, *Index of All Reports issued by Bureaus of Labor Statistics* (1902 ed.); G. E. Barnett, *Trial Bibliography of American Trade Union Publications;* R. C. Brooks, *Bibliography of Municipal Administration* (*Municipal Affairs*, I); W. H. Tolman and W. I. Hull, *Handbook of Sociological Information;* Harvard University, *Guide to Reading in Social Ethics*, 144–210; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 108 (lect. 35), and *Actual Government*, § 95; C. D. Wright, *Practical Sociology*, pp. xi–xvii and ch. references; *Poole's Index;* R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, Nos. 16, 23, 24; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 46, 51, 58–65.

§ 257. Canal Diplomacy, 1866–1889

Summary. — Earlier phases (§ 224). — 1866, Darien Canal Commission; 1867, Admiral Davis's report; 1867, June 21, Nicaragua treaty; 1869, completion of Suez Canal; 1869, 1870, Colombia draft treaties; 1872, Interoceanic Canal Commission; 1872–1876, surveys of various routes; 1876, report favoring Nicaraguan route. — De Lesseps's French canal: 1876, Société Civile; 1878, Colombian concessions to Wyse; 1879, Paris International Scientific Congress; decision for Panama route. — American counter plans: Grant's presidency of the Interoceanic Canal Company; 1879, Monroe Doctrine discussions in Congress; House committee; De Lesseps's visit to United States; 1880, naval sta-

tions established; 1880, March 8, Hayes's message; French government's disavowals. — 1881, De Lesseps begins construction. — 1881, Eads's Tehuantepec ship-railway project; House report. — Blaine's policy: 1881, June 24, circular letter; England's Mosquito protectorate revived; efforts to abrogate the Clayton-Bulwer treaty; 1882, Frelinghuysen's correspondence. — Rival routes: 1884, Nicaragua draft treaty; 1885, Colombian revolution, American intervention; 1885, March 13, Nicaragua treaty withdrawn by Cleveland; his policy; 1887, Nicaragua concession; 1888, March 22, Cleveland's arbitration of Nicaragua-Costa Rica boundary; Nov. 23, Bayard's note on the Mosquito territory; 1889, receivership for De Lesseps's company; New Panama company; 1889, Feb. 20, United States charter of Maritime Canal Company of Nicaragua. — Later phases (§ 263).

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, ch. xiii; D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 117–123; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 399–405; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 700–703; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 1055–1062; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Canal Diplomacy, Nicaragua Canal Policy.

Special. — See also §§ 263, 267.) — Harmodio Arias, *Panama Canal*, ch. iii; W. F. Johnson, *Four Centuries of the Panama Canal*, chs. v–vii; L. M. Keasbey, *Nicaragua Canal*, chs. xiv–xxi; J. H. Latané, *United States and Spanish America*, ch. iv; A. R. Colquhoun, *Key of the Pacific*, chs. i, ii; C. H. Forbes-Lindsay, *Panama*, 46–67, 125–152; Fritz Regel, *Panamakanal*, 21–42; I. D. Travis, *Clayton-Bulwer Treaty*, ch. vi; J. B. Henderson, *American Diplomatic Questions*, 65–77, 137–167; T. B. Edgington, *Monroe Doctrine*, ch. xix; E. R. Johnson, *Inland Waterways*, ch. xii; T. S. Woolsey, *America's Foreign Policy*, 133–168; Augustin Garçon, *Histoire du Canal de Panama;* Hector Pétin, *États-Unis et la Doctrine de Monroe*, ch. vi; Freeman Snow, *Treaties and Topics*, 337–347; T. J. Lawrence, *Essays on Disputed Questions*, Nos. 2, 3; M. M. de Peralta, *Canal Interoceánico*, 35–55; Philippe Bunau-Varilla, *Panama*, 19–41.

Sources. — OFFICIAL: *Diplomatic Correspondence* and *Foreign Relations* (see *General Index* under " Canal " and nations by name); *Parliamentary Papers*, 1882, LXXX, [c. 3110], [c. 3446], 1884, LXXXVII, [c. 3834]; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 339 (pp. 13–19), 341–343, 344 (pp. 37–43), 350, 357–362, 367 (pp. 222–238), 368; M. M. Malloy, *Treaties, Conventions, and Agreements*, II, 1284; *Compilation of Reports on Foreign Relations* (*Senate*

Docs., 56 Cong. 2 sess., XXII), 105–133, 135, 139–158, 187–407; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VII, 33, 569, 585, 586, 610, VIII, 41, 238, 256–260, 303, 327, IX, 35; *Congressional Documents* as follows: 39 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, II, No. 62 (Davis report, 1866); 42 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, III, No. 6 (Shufeldt survey, 1871); 3 sess., *House Misc. Docs.*, V, No. 113 (Selfridge survey, 1870); 45 Cong. 3 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, II, No. 75 (Collins survey, 1875); 46 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 15 (report of 1876); 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, IV, No. 112 (correspondence); *House Reports*, IV, No. 1121; 3 sess., *House Misc. Docs.*, No. 16; 47 Cong. spec. sess. of Senate, *Senate Exec. Docs.*, No. 5 (correspondence); 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, IV, No. 78, and VI, No. 194 (correspondence); *Senate Reports*, III, No. 368; *House Reports*, VI, No. 1698; 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, I, No. 952; *House Exec. Docs.*, XXIII, No. 107 (Sullivan's *Report on Information*, 1883); 48 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 26 (correspondence), VI, No. 123 (Rogers report, 1884); 2 sess., *Senate Misc. Docs.*, I, No. 12 (correspondence); 49 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 50 (correspondence); 51 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, No. 5, and *Senate Reports*, I, No. 1944, and 52 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 4 (progress on Nicaragua Canal, 1890). — Unofficial: Interoceanic Canal Congress, *Compte Rendu* (1879); E. L. Corthell, *Atlantic and Pacific Ship-Railway;* U.S. Grant, *Nicaragua Canal* (*N. Am. Review*, CXXXII, 107); Sullivan and Cromwell, *Compilation of Documents relative to a Trans-Isthmian Canal*, II, 1147–1254, III; Nicaragua Canal Construction Company, *Interoceanic Canal of Nicaragua* (1891); J. C. Rodrigues, *Panama Canal;* Commission d'Études instituée par le Liquidateur de la Compagnie Universelle, *Rapports* (1890); L. N. B. Wyse, *Rapports sur l'Exploration de l'Isthme Américain* (1879); Commission d'Enquête sur les Affaires de Panama, *Rapport Général* (1893); *Appletons' (American) Annual Cyclopædia* (1866–1889); *American History Leaflets*, No. 34; contemporary periodicals (§ 40). — Contemporary Descriptions: Félix Belly, *À Travers l'Amérique Centrale* (1867); *Interoceanic Canal and the Monroe Doctrine* (1880); L. N. B. Wyse, *Canal de Panama* (1886); Félix Paponot, *Achèvement du Canal de Panama* (1889); Paul Ponsolle, *Le Tombeau des Milliards* (1890); Gustave Rouanet, *Complicités du Panama* (1893); articles in *Revue des Deux Mondes*.

Bibliography. — H. A. Morrison, *List of Books relating to an Interoceanic Canal;* E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 357, 358; H. Arias, *Panama Canal*, pp. xi–xiv; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, No. 25; *Poole's Index*, and supplements; L. M. Keasbey, *Nicaragua Canal*, footnotes; F. Regel, *Panamakanal*, 118–128.

§ 258. Problem of Immigration, 1878–1898

Summary. — Changing national composition (§§ 161, 200). — Statistics. — Changing rate of immigration: American causes; foreign causes. — Changing source of immigrants: height of German and Scandinavian immigration; increase of Southeastern Europeans. — Stocks: local foreign conditions leading to immigration; factors of assimilability; proportion of various stock to total population; composite nationality. — Chinese (§ 268). — Relation of railroad and steamships to immigration. — Destination of immigrants: sections; city; country. — Economic aspects: labor market (§ 256); wages; standard of living; tariff. — Social aspects; assimilation; intermarriage; illiteracy; religion; crime; defectives; pauperism; slums. — Political aspects. — Federal investigations, legislation, and administration: relation to labor movement, to tariff legislation; 1882, Aug. 3, general immigration act; 1885, Feb. 26, 1887, Feb. 23, contract labor acts; 1889, Ford Committee report; 1891, March 3, Immigration and Contract Labor act, Superintendent of Immigration created; 1892, July 28, Stump report; 1893, Feb. 22, Chandler report; 1893, March 3, act strengthening administration; 1895, March 2, Bureau of Immigration, Commissioner General of Immigration; 1897, March 2, illiteracy test vetoed by Cleveland; March 25, Lodge report. — Anti-immigration organizations. — Influence on Europe.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 32–34, 229, 230, 249, 250; A. B. Hart, *National Ideals*, 41–46; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 420–422, 434–437; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 369–374; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Foreign Race Elements, Immigration.

Special. — Richmond Mayo-Smith, *Emigration and Immigration;* J. W. Jenks and W. J. Lauck, *Immigration Problem;* J. R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants;* P. F. Hall, *Immigration;* J. D. Whelpley, *Problem of the Immigrant;* W. F. Willcox, *Distribution of Immigrants* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XX, 523); E. A. Steiner, *Immigrant Tide*, and *On the Trail of the Immigrant;* W. Z. Ripley, *Races in the United States* (*Atlantic*, CII, 745); J. H. Senner, *Immigration Question* (Am. Acad. of Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, X, 1); René Gonnard, *L'Emigration Européenne;* Broughton Brandenburg, *Imported Americans;* H. P. Fairchild, *Immigration and Crises* (*Am. Econ. Review*, I, 753);

Peter Roberts, *Anthracite Coal Communities;* R. A. Woods, *Americans in Progress,* and *The City Wilderness.* The "Bibliography" opens an extensive mass of periodical and monographic literature. — Special Nationalities (see the titles in § 161): A. B. Faust, *German Element,* I, ch. xvii, II; Verein für Socialpolitik, *Schriften,* LII, LXXII *passim;* O. N. Nelson, *Scandinavians in the United States;* F. J. Warne, *Slav Invasion and the Mine Workers;* E. G. Balch, *Slavic Citizens;* Giovanni Preziosi, *Italiana negli Stati Uniti;* Eliot Lord, *Italian in America; Italians in Chicago* (Commissioner of Labor, *9th Special Report,* also, condensed, in Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin,* II, 691); E. F. Fogg, *Italian on the Land* (*ibid.,* XIV, 473); R. F. Foerster, *Statistical Survey of Italian Emigration* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.,* XXIII, 66); H. P. Fairchild, *Greek Immigration;* E. Hamon, *Canadiens-Français de la Nouvelle-Angleterre;* C. E. Amaron, *Your Heritage, or New England Threatened;* Wm. MacDonald, *French Canadians in New England* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.,* XII, 245); E. J. James and others, *Immigrant Jew;* Mary Antin, *The Promised Land* (autobiography); *American Jewish Yearbook; Jewish Encyclopedia,* XII, 345–378; Louise S. Houghton, *Syrians in the United States* (*Survey,* XXVI, 481, 647). — Chinese and Japanese (§ 268).

Sources. — Chief of Bureau of Statistics, *Annual Reports;* Superintendent of Immigration, *Annual Reports* (1892–1894); Commissioner General of Immigration, *Annual Reports* (1895–); *Commercial Relations* (annual, 1878–); *Consular Reports* (monthly, 1880–). *Congressional Documents:* especially 49 Cong. 2 sess., *House Exec. Docs.,* XXIV, No. 157 (reports of consular officers, 1886); 50 Cong. 1 sess., *House Misc. Docs.,* XV, No. 572 (contract labor); 2 sess., *House Reports,* I, No. 3792 (Ford report); 51 Cong. 2 sess., *House Reports,* II, No. 3472; 52 Cong. 1 sess., *House Exec. Docs.,* XXXVII, No. 235; *House Reports,* XII, No. 2090 (Stump report); 2 sess., *Senate Reports,* II, No. 1333 (Chandler report); 54 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Reports,* XI, No. 290 (Lodge report); 57 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Reports,* IX, No. 2119 (Penrose report); *House Docs.,* XV, No. 184, LXXXII, No. 380 (Industrial Commission); 59 Cong. 2 sess., *House Docs.,* LIII, No. 737; 61 Cong. 2 and 3 sess., *Senate Docs.* passim (reports of Immigration Commission). *Immigration* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.,* 1902–1903, p. 4335); Bureau of Statistics, *Arrivals of Immigrants, 1820 to 1892;* New York Commission of Immigration, *Report;* Immigration Restriction League, *Publications.*

Bibliography. — Harvard University, *Guide to Social Ethics,* 37, 210–215; A. P. C. Griffin, *List of Books on Immigration,* and *List*

of Works relating to Germans in the United States; P. F. Hall, *Immigration*, 369–374; J. R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants*, pp. vi–xii; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 225; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 26, 27; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 5.

§ 259. Extension of Transportation and Population to the Northwest, 1880–1890

Summary. — "Old Northwest" (§ 193). — 1870, 1880, 1890, Settled area of New Northwest; interstate migration; nativities; losses in Eastern rural counties. — Extension of "Granger railroads" (§ 250): Chicago, Milwaukee, and St. Paul; Chicago and Northwestern; Chicago, Burlington, and Quincy. — Rush of settlers to the arid west of Kansas and Nebraska; droughts. — Completion of Northern railroads to the Pacific: 1883, Northern Pacific; 1883, Canadian Pacific; 1884, Oregon Short Line; 1893, Great Northern, James J. Hill. — Effects on frontier. — New wheat regions: railroad colonization; Dakota; 1880–1890, increased wheat production; bonanza farming; Minneapolis flour mills; hard wheat; steel rollers; agricultural machinery; wheat maps; decline in price of wheat. — Increased silver production: decline in price (§ 262). — New cattle and sheep areas: Western Dakota, Montana, Wyoming. — Irrigation and fruit raising in Pacific Northwest. — Lumbering. — Great Lakes iron fields: 1873, Bessemer process (§ 253); need of high-grade ores; 1873, Marquette field; 1884, Gogebic; 1884, Vermillion; 1892, Mesabi; statistics of ore production; pig iron production; revolution in steel industry; effects on transportation, construction, and manufacture; relation of upper Ohio Valley coal fields to Great Lake ores; growth of Pittsburg and Great Lake cities. — Increased traffic of Great Lakes: 1883, widening of Sault Canal; deep waterways conventions; steel fleets; systematization of industry. — Admission of new states: 1889, Nov. 2, North and South Dakota; Nov. 8, Montana; Nov. 11, Washington; 1890, July 3, Idaho; July 10, Wyoming (44th); characteristics of their constitutions; political results; party tactics; increased influence of West in Senate; silver interests. — Agricultural depression.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 17–21, 48, 51, 53–55, 255–281, 305–326; D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 5–9, 11–12, 15–17, 19; N. S. Shaler, *United States*, I, 354–374, 485–517, II, 103; F. L. Paxson, *Last American Frontier*, ch. xxii, and *Admission of the "Omnibus States," 1889–1890* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1911, 77); E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, chs. xxi, xxiii; E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, 243–254; D. A. Wells, *Recent Economic Changes*, 166–178; Emerson Hough, *Settlement of the West* (*Century*, LXIII, 361–369).

Special. — New Northwest (§§ 245, 247): H. H. Bancroft, *Oregon*, chs. xxiii, xxiv, and *Washington, Idaho, and Montana*, 287–392, 535–588, 720–808, and *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming*, 224–322, 446–454, 504–658, 750–763, 783–806, and *Alaska*, chs. xxviii–xxxiii; Jos. Schafer, *Pacific Northwest*, chs. xvii, xviii; E. S. Meany, *Washington*, chs. xv, xvi, xviii; H. S. Lyman, *Oregon*, IV, ch. viii; Doane Robinson, *South Dakota*, chs. xxvi–xxviii; C. P. Connolly, *Story of Montana* (*McClure's*, XXVII, 451, XXVIII *passim*); M. A. Leeson, *Montana;* W. Craig, *North Dakota Life* (Am. Geog. Soc., *Bulletin*, XL, 321); W. W. Folwell, *Minnesota*, chs. xvi–xviii; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, chs. ix, x; W. E. Smythe, *Arid America*, 185–237; R. S. Baker, *Great Northwest* (*Century*, LXV, 647); J. A. Wheelock, *New Northwest* (*Harper's Mag.*, XCVI, 299); F. N. Thorpe, *Recent Constitution-Making* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, II, 145); J. B. Ross, *Agrarian Revolution in the Middle West* (*N. Am. Review*, CXC, 376). — Railroad Extension (§§ 250, 253): E. V. Smalley, *Northern Pacific Railroad*, chs. xxv–xxxi; E. P. Oberholzer, *Jay Cooke*, II, 511–540; F. L. Paxson, *Pacific Railroads* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I, 105); L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, II, ch. x; J. Moody and G. K. Turner, *Masters of Capital* (*McClure's*, XXXVI, 123); J. Moody, *Romance of the Railways* (*Moody's Mag.*, V, 161, 291, VI, 7, 327); Mary H. Severance, *J. J. Hill* (*Review of Reviews*, XXI, 669, cf. XXXIV, 449); J. H. Baker, *Transportation in Minnesota* (Minn. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, IX, 1); S. F. Van Oss, *American Railways as Investments*, chs. xxx–xxxviii, xlvi, xlvii; F. H. Spearman, *Strategy of Great Railroads*, 49–89, 177–211. — Agriculture (§§ 248, 250): H. N. Casson, *C. H. McCormick*, ch. xi; E. Levasseur and H. L. de Vilmorin, *Agriculture aux États Unis*, 145–253; P. V. Lawson, *Invention of the Roller Flour Mill* (Wis. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, 1907, p. 244); C. W. Thompson, *Movement of Wheat-Growing* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XVIII, 570); C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, chs. vii, viii. — Great Lakes and Iron Fields (§ 253): F. W.

Taussig, *Iron Industry* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XIV, 143, and in C. J. Bullock, *Readings in Economics*, 193–216); Herbert Quick, *American Inland Waterways;* R. D. Williams, *P. A. White;* D. H. Kelton, *Sault Ste. Marie Canal;* J. O. Curwood, *Great Lakes*, pt. i; J. C. Mills, *Our Inland Seas*, chs. xiv–xxv; H. R. Mussey, *Combinations in Mining Industry*, chs. iv, v; Walter Thayer, *Transportation on the Great Lakes* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXI, 126); *Monthly Summary of Commerce and Finance*, 1899–1900, p. 2524 (commerce through the Sault). — Lumber Industry (§§ 253, 273). — Silver Mining (§ 262). — Cattle and Sheep (§ 260).

Sources. — *Congressional Record*, and *Documents*, 50, 51 Congs. (the more important on resources, government, and politics are cited in F. L. Paxson, *Omnibus States*, above); *Census*, 1880, 1890; *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1880–1890); *Statistical Abstract* (annual); reports and pamphlets of boards of trade, state immigration boards, state commissioners of statistics, etc. (§ 35); Detroit Deep Waterways Convention, *Proceedings* (1891); Toronto Deep Waterways Convention, *Proceedings* (1894); International Deep Waterways Association, *Proceedings* (1895); Industrial Commission, *Report* (see index); C. H. Keep and S. J. Brock, *Commerce and Shipping of the Great Lakes* (*House Exec. Docs.*, 52 Cong. 1 sess., XXVII, XXVIII); publications of state historical societies (listed in Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II); periodicals (§ 40, reached through *Poole's Index*); trade journals, especially *Northwestern Miller;* newspapers (§ 41), especially *St. Paul Pioneer Press*, *Seattle Post-Intelligence* and *Times*, *Oregonian* (Portland). — Railroads: reports and pamphlets of Northern Pacific and Great Northern railroads; Henry Villard, *Memoirs*, II, chs. xxxix–xlii; W. B. Hazen, *Great Middle Region* (*N. Am. Review*, CXX, 1); J. J. Hill, *Highways of Progress* (also in part, with maps and diagrams, in *World's Work*, XIX, XX). — Typical Descriptions (§§ 245, 247): Julian Ralph, *Our Great West* (1893); R. P. Porter, *The West from the Census of 1880;* Paul de Rousiers, *American Life*, chs. v–x; R. D. Paine, *Greater America* (1911); L. P. Brockett, *Our Western Empire;* H. J. Winser, *Great Northwest Guide Book* (1883); G. H. Atkinson, *Northwest Coast* (1878); C. C. Coffin, *Seat of Empire* (1870), and *Dakota Wheat Fields* (*Harper's Mag.*, LX, 529); P. F. McClure, *Dakota* (*ibid.*, LXXVIII, 347); F. J. Rowbotham, *Trip to Prairie Land* (Dakota, 1885); G. W. France, *Struggles for Life and Home* (1889); Ethelbert Talbot, *My People of the Plains;* F. T. Gilbert, *Resources, Business, and Business Men of Montana* (1888); R. M. Hall, *Oregon, Washington, and Idaho* (1903); A. C. Mason, *Compen-*

dium concerning Tacoma and Washington Territory (1888); [Northern Pacific Railroad], *Great Northwest;* J. L. Onderdonk, *Idaho* (1885); [Oregon Immigration Board], *Pacific Northwest* (1891); [Oregon R. R. and Nav. Co.], *Eastern Washington Territory and Oregon* (1888); The Oregonian, *Handbook of the Pacific Northwest;* J. W. Pace and H. J. Mock, *Montana Blue Book* (1891); [Pacific Northwest Immigration Board], *Pacific Northwest;* Secretary of State, *Resources of Wyoming* (1889); W. M. Thayer, *Marvels of the New West* (1889); [Union Pacific Railroad], *Wealth and Resources of Oregon and Washington* (1889); Robt. Vaughn, *Then and Now* (1864–1900); Mrs. C. H. Strahorn, *Fifteen Thousand Miles by Stage;* Frances F. Victor, *Atlantis Arisen* (1891); W. S. Webb, *California and Alaska* (1891); O. D. Wheeler, *Wonderland* (1886); Stanley Wood, *Over the Range to the Golden Gate;* G. A. Batchelder, *Dakota Territory; New Empires in the Northwest* (New York Tribune, *Extras*, I: 1889); G. N. Lamphere, *Wheat Raising in the Red River Valley* (Minn. Hist. Soc., *Collections*, X, 1); T. T. V. Smith, *New Wheat Fields in the Northwest* (*Nineteenth Century*, VI, 10); *Wheat Fields of the Northwest* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXIII, 572).

Bibliography. — H. H. Bancroft, *Pacific States*, XXV, XXVI, XXVIII (authorities and footnotes); C. W. Smith, *Check List relating to the Pacific Northwest;* K. B. Judson, *Pacific Northwest;* Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1905, II; *Poole's Index* and supplements.

§ 260. Extension of Transportation and Population to the Great Plains and the Southwest, 1880–1896

Summary. — 1870, 1880, 1890, Settled area in Southwest; interstate migration; nativities. — Extension of railroads through Texas and to Pacific: 1881, Southern Pacific (Huntington); 1883, Santa Fé System (Strong); Denver and Rio Grande (Palmer); Texas Pacific (Scott); Missouri Pacific. — Cattle industry on the Great Plains: origin; ranches; the cattle trail; the cowboy; range wars; fencing; public domain problems; presidential proclamations; 1884, height of range cattle industry; extension to Northwest; railroad influence; advance of packing industry; refrigerator cars; Chicago; Kansas City; Omaha. — Indian territory: cattle leases; 1889, Oklahoma opened; April 22, the "rush"; 1890, May 2, Oklahoma Territory. — Arid America (§ 273): beginnings of irrigation. — Mining in the Southwest. — The Mormon question (§ 229): 1887, March 3, Edmunds Anti-polygamy

act; 1896, Jan. 4, admission of Utah (45th). — Growth of Texas. — Southwestern frontier traits.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 21–28, 251–264, 310, 311; D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 10, 11, 16 (map); E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 536, 585–588; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 276, 277, 299–301.

Special. — New Southwest (§ 245): R. S. Baker, *The Great Southwest* (*Century*, LXIV *passim*); H. H. Bancroft, *Arizona and New Mexico*, 530–536, 541, 542, 569–577, 582–590, 596–607, 712–715, 723, 734–736, 739, 740, 746, 752–757, 771, and *Utah*, 677–699, 720–750, 759–770, and *North Mexican States and Texas*, II, chs. xx, xxi; W. A. Linn, *Mormons*, bk. vi, chs. xx–xxiv; S. J. Buck, *Oklahoma* (Wis. Acad. of Sci., Arts, and Letters, *Transactions*, XV, 325); H. Gannett, *Gazetteer of Kansas;* W. E. Smythe, *Arid America*, 106–118, 238–257; Isaiah Bowman, *Forest Physiography*, chs. xiv–xvii, xxii; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, chs. viii, ix; J. C. Van Dyke, *The Desert;* G. W. James, *Wonders of the Colorado Desert;* R. T. Hill, *Wonders of the American Desert* (*World's Work*, III, 1818); I. M. Strobridge, *In Miners' Mirage Land;* J. A. Munk, *Arizona Sketches;* R. J. Hinton, *Handbook to Arizona;* Mary Austin, *Land of Little Rain;* Randall Parrish, *Great Plains; National Geographic Magazine*, I, 277, XI, 337, 438; C. F. Lummis, *Land of Poco-Tiempo*, and *Some Strange Corners*, and *Tramp across the Continent;* state and territorial histories (§ 37); periodicals (§ 40), including *World's Work*, *Overland Monthly*, *Sunset Magazine*, *Land of Sunshine*, *Out West*, *Irrigation Age*, *Southwest Illustrated Magazine*, and illustrated weeklies. — Railroad Extension to Southwest: F. L. Paxson, *Pacific Railroads* (Am. Hist. Assoc., *Report*, 1907, I), 113–115, 117; L. H. Haney, *Congressional History of Railways*, II, ch. ix; Stuart Daggett, *Railroad Reorganization*, ch. vi; F. A. Cleveland and F. W. Powell, *Railroad Promotion*, 275; H. V. Poor, *Manual* (annual, especially 1881); J. Moody, *Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé* (*Moody's Mag.*, VI, 145); F. Spearman, *Strategy of Great Railroads*, 115–174; *William Palmer* (*World's Work*, XV, 9899). — Cattle and Sheep Industry: Emerson Hough, *Story of the Cowboy;* Paul de Rousiers, *American Life*, chs. i–iv; W. H. Miller, *Kansas City;* Jos. Nimmo, *American Cowboy* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXXIII, 880); Owen Wister, *Evolution of the Cow Puncher* (*ibid.*, XCI, 602); C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, 250–275, 304; R. T. Hill, *Public Domain and Democracy*, 179–188 (fencing); H. L. Bentley, *Cattle Ranges of the Southwest* (Dept. of Agri., *Farmers' Bulletin*, No. 72); J. L.

Cowan, *Knights and Barons of Our Western Empire* (*Overland*, n.s., XLVIII, 251); R. Doubleday, *Where the Beef doth Grow* (*Munsey's*, XXIII, 45). — Frontier Lawlessness: E. Hough, *Story of the Outlaw;* A. B. Paine, *Capt. Bill McDonald;* D. G. Wooten, *Texas*, II, 330–367; A. J. Sowell, *Texas Rangers;* Arthur Chapman, *The Men who tamed the Cow Towns* (*Outing*, XLV, 131); Edgar Rye, *The Quirt and the Spur* (Texas); W. J. L. Sullivan, *Twelve Years in the Saddle for Law and Order* (Texas).

Sources. — Cattle and Sheep Industry (§ 273): Clarence Gordon, *Cattle, Sheep, and Swine* (*Tenth Census*, III, 952); F. H. Newell, *Agriculture by Irrigation* (*Eleventh Census*, III); Jos. Nimmo, *Report on the Range and Cattle Business* (also in Bureau of Statistics, *Internal Commerce*, 1885, pt. iii); H. M. Taylor, *Importance of the Range Industry* (Bureau of Animal Industry, *Report*, 1885, p. 293), and *Condition of the Range Cattle Industry* (*ibid.*, 1886, p. 105); Carmen, Heath, and Minto, *History and Present Condition of the Sheep Industry* (1892). — Fencing the Public Domain: 48 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, VI, No. 127; *House Exec. Docs.*, XXVI, No. 119; *House Reports*, V, No. 1325; 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, I, No. 979; 49 Cong. 2 sess., *House Exec. Docs.*, XXIV, No. 166; Commissioner of the General Land Office, *Annual Reports;* J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VIII, 308 (Cleveland's proclamation, 1885); Public Lands Commission, *Report* (*Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 3 sess., IV, No. 189, with map). — Ranch Life: T. Roosevelt, *Ranch Life* (Northwest); Andy Adams, *Log of a Cowboy*, and *Reed Anthony, Cowman*, and *Texas Match Maker*, and *The Outlet;* Frederic Remington, *Pony Tracks*, and *In the Sierra Madre with the Punchers* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXXXVIII, 350); J. A. Lomax, *Cowboy Songs;* Reginald Aldridge, *Ranch Notes;* E. B. Bronson, *Reminiscences of a Ranchman;* R. M. Allen, *Harvard Men in the Range Cattle Business* (*Harvard Graduates Mag.*, II, 185); John Ambulo, *Cattle on a Thousand Hills* (*Overland*, n.s., IX, 225); John Baumann, *On a Western Ranche* (*Fortnightly Review*, XLVII, 516); W. B. Grohman, *Cattle Ranches* (*ibid.*, XXXIV, 438); G. R. Buckman, *Ranches* (*Lippincott's*, XXIX, 425); *Nation*, XLI, 172–174; *Cattle Herding* (*Littell's Living Age*, CXXXIII, 126); *Cowboy Life* (*Outing*, XIX, 181, 269, 357); C. M. Harger, *Modern Methods in the Cattle Industry* (*Outlook*, LXXII, 39), and *Sheep and Shepherds* (*ibid.*, 689; see also LXXIII, 839), and *Cattle Trails of the Prairies* (*Scribner's Mag.*, XI, 732); W. J. Hornaday, *Cowboys of the Northwest* (*Cosmopolitan*, II, 219); Fannie McCormick, *Kansas Farm;* Chas. Michelson, *War for the Range* (*Munsey's*, XXVIII,

380); Minnie J. Reynolds, *Texas Trail* (*ibid.*, XXIX, 576); William Shepherd, *Prairie Experiences in Handling Cattle and Sheep;* Frank Wilkeson, *Cattle Raising on the Plains* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXXII, 788).

Bibliography. — H. H. Bancroft, *Pacific States*, XI, XII, XIX (authorities and footnotes); J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History*, 389–394; American Historical Association, *Report*, 1905, II (see index): J. A. Munk, *Arizona Bibliography* (1908); C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, footnotes to chs. vii, viii; University of Chicago, *Bibliography of Economics for 1909*, 78; *Poole's Index* and supplements.

§ 261. The New South, 1870–1895

Summary. — South in 1870 (§ 242). — White ascendancy (§ 242). — Changes in position of "poor whites." — Cotton raising: black belt; white farmer; fertilizers; by-products, cotton seed. — Cotton manufacture: 1870–1890, statistics of textile mills; woman and child labor. — Fruit and truck gardening. — Rice. — Sugar. — Longleaf pine lumbering. — Iron and coal: fields; iron and steel works, Birmingham, Atlanta; statistics; northern capital. — Negro: progress; education; crime and lynch law; penal system; race question. — Negro disfranchisement (§ 241): 1890, defeat of "force bill"; 1890, Mississippi constitution; 1895, South Carolina; later action. — Virginia "readjusters." — Education. — Literature. — Churches.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 33–36, 314; D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 17–19, 162, 171–173; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 33, 49, 199, 215, 296, 457, 721; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 113, 540–546, 579–585, 749–770; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 272–276, 296, 297, 302, 360, 382–284, 390, 391, 449–451; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 307–312; C. D. Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, ch. xii; J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), chs. xcii, xciii; *The South in the Building of the Nation* passim (see contents).

Special. — E. G. Murphy, *Problems of the Present South*, and *Basis of Ascendancy;* H. W. Grady, *New South*, and *Cotton and its Kingdom* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXIII, 719); J. C. Harris, *H. W. Grady*, 83–207; A. B. Hart, *Southern South;* E. A. Alderman, *The Growing South* (*World's Work*, XVI, 10,373); W. P. Trent, *Dominant Forces*

(*Atlantic*, LXXXIX, 42), and *Tendencies of Higher Life* (*ibid.*, 766); S. B. Weeks, *Negro Suffrage* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, IX, 671); A. E. McKinley, *Two Southern Constitutions* (*ibid.*, XVIII, 480); F. G. Caffey, *Suffrage Limitations in the South* (*ibid.*, XX, 53); L. C. Willcox, *The South in Fiction* (*Bookman*, XXXIII, 44). More recent phases of the New South are in the following: *World's Work*, XIV (Southern number, June, 1904); Edwin Mims, *The South Realizing Itself* (*ibid.*, XXII, 14,972); R. H. Edmonds, *South's Amazing Progress* (*Review of Reviews*, XXX, 177); *The New South* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXV, No. 1); F. T. Carlton, *The South during the Last Decade* (*Sewanee Review*, XII, 174). — Economic: M. B. Hammond, *Cotton Industry*, chs. iv–vi; J. C. Hardy, *South's Supremacy in Cotton Growing;* Ethel Armes, *Story of Coal and Iron in Alabama;* W. L. Fleming, *Reorganization of the Industrial System in Alabama* (*Am. Jour. Sociology*, X, 473). — Negro (§ 242): A. H. Stone, *Studies in the American Race Problem;* Andrew Carnegie, *Negro in America; America's Race Problems* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XVII), 95–140; *Economic Future of the Negro* (Am. Econ. Assoc., *Publications*, 3d ser., VII, 219–324); Kelly Miller, *Race Adjustments;* B. T. Washington and W. E. B. DuBois, *Negro in the South;* B. T. Washington, *Negro Problem*, and *Story of Negro*, II, and *Future of Negro;* W. H. Thomas, *American Negro;* J. A. Tillinghast, *Negro in Africa and America*, pt. iii; W. D. Weatherford, *Negro Life in the South;* G. S. Merriam, *Negro and the Nation*, chs xxxvi–xl: F. L. Hoffman, *Race Traits and Tendencies of the American Negro;* G. W. Cable, *Negro Question*, and *Silent South;* T. N. Page, *The Negro;* D. W. Culp, *Twentieth Century Negro Literature;* W. B. Smith, *Color Line;* Carl Kelsey, *Negro Farmer;* W. A. Sinclair, *Aftermath of Slavery;* R. S. Baker, *Following the Color Line;* W. P. Pickett, *Negro Problem;* J. E. Cutler, *Lynch Law*, chs. vi–ix; R. A. Patterson, *Negro and his Needs.* — Mountain Whites: S. T. Wilson, *Southern Mountaineer;* E. C. Semple, *Anglo-Saxons of the Kentucky Mountains* (*Geog. Jour.*, XVII, 588); Southern Education Board, *Bulletin*, I; John Fox, Jr., *Southern Mountaineer* (*Scribner's Mag.*, XXIX, 387, 556); W. G. Frost, *Our Contemporary Ancestors* (*Atlantic*, LXXXIII, 311); T. R. Dawley, *Southern Mountaineers* (*World's Work*, XIX, 12,704); G. E. Vincent, *Retarded Frontier* (*Am. Jour. Sociology*, IV, 1); J. A. R. Rogers, *Birth of Berea College;* Felix Adler, *Child Labor in Southern Industry* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXV, 491).

Sources. — Documents: *Census* (1870–1900), especially Bureau of Census, *Bulletin*, No. 8 (Negroes), and *Tenth Census*, V (cotton

production); Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, Nos. 10, 14, 22, 32, 37, 38, 48, 52, 62; *Statistical Abstract* (annual); *Senate Reports*, 53 Cong. 3 sess., III, No. 986 (cotton growers); Bureau of Labor, *Report on Woman and Child Wage-Earners* (also in *Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 2 sess., No. 645), especially I, VI, ch. v, XVI, chs. i, ii; W. L. Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*, II, 450–455; reports of boards of trade of New Orleans, Richmond, Atlanta, Memphis, etc., *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia*. — NEGRO: American Negro Academy, *Occasional Papers;* Atlanta University, *Publications;* Hampton Negro Conference, *Reports*, and *Proceedings;* John F. Slater Fund, *Occasional Papers;* B. T. Washington, *Up from Slavery*, and *Working with the Hands*, and *Tuskegee and its People;* W. E. B. Du Bois, *Souls of Black Folk*. — DESCRIPTIONS (§ 242): C. D. Warner, *Studies in the South and West* (1889), chs. i–vi, and *On Horseback* (1888), 3–151; W. H. Page (Nich. Worth), *The Southerner;* Julian Ralph, *Dixie* (1896); W. F. Tillett, *The White Man of the New South* (*Century*, XXXIII, 769: 1887); Wm. Archer, *Through Afro-America* (1910); A. K. McClure, *The South* (1886).

Bibliography. — A. B. Hart, *Southern South*, 7–19; *South in the Building of the Nation* (ch. bibliographies); W. E. B. DuBois, *Select Bibliography of the American Negro*, and *Select Bibliography of the Negro American;* A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List on the Negro Question*, and *List of Discussions of the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments;* Harvard University, *Guide to Readings in Social Ethics*, 90–99; Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 1–3; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 3.

CHAPTER XXXII

ECONOMIC UNREST, 1890–1898

§ 262. Money and Tariff, 1890–1898

Summary. — 1889, Republican control (§ 255); Reed rules. — Silver legislation: 1889–1890, new Western states (§ 259); 1890, July 14, Sherman Silver Purchase act. — 1890, July 2, Sherman Antitrust act (§§ 256, 269). — 1890, Force bill (§ 261). — Surplus: 1890, June 27, Dependent Pension act; pension investigations; 1890, Oct. 1, McKinley Tariff act; 1891, March 2, refund of direct war tax; naval expenditures; "billion dollar Congress." — 1890, "Tidal wave" election; influence of People's party (Populists); Democratic House; 1892, "popgun" tariff bills. — Election of 1892: Republican convention, compromise silver plank, protection plank, Harrison renominated; Democratic convention, revenue tariff plank, ambiguous monetary plank, Cleveland nominated; Populist convention, prophetic platform, Weaver nominated; other conventions; influence of Homestead strike; Cleveland's second election; complete Democratic control (first since 1859); free silver balance of power. — Financial reaction: 1890, stringency; agricultural depression; railroad receiverships; 1891, agricultural and gold exports; 1892, speculative activity; 1893, panic, causes, results; special session of Congress; Nov. 1, repeal of Silver Purchase act; "endless chain" drain on gold reserve; 1894, Jan., Nov., 1895, Feb., sale of bonds for gold, Morgan syndicate; 1895, March 29, veto of bill to coin the seigniorage; 1896, Jan., popular loan; 1893–1896, era of depression. — 1894, Industrial unrest (§ 270). — 1894, Aug. 27, Wilson-Gorman Tariff act; Democratic dissensions; income tax declared unconstitutional by Supreme Court. — Free-silver campaign: 1894, silver propaganda in all parties; June, Omaha free-silver convention; "Coin's Financial School"; "land-slide" election; Republican Congress;

1894–1900, free-silver balance in Senate; 1896, Republican convention, gold standard, bolt of silver men, protection plank, McKinley nominated; Democratic convention, free silver, Bryan's speech and nomination; Populist fusion with Democrats; Gold Democratic convention; character of campaign; election of McKinley; 1900, March 14, Gold Standard act (§ 272). — 1897, July 24, Dingley Tariff act; failure of reciprocity treaties.

General. — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, chs. iv–vi, ix–xi, xiv–xvii, xx; J. F. Rhodes, *Cleveland's Administrations*, II (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 602–605); W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 198–269; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 556, 562, 577, 691–699, 773–787, 797, 798; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 166–176, 193–215, 252–372, 389–407, 437–529; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 968–975, 988–997, 1002–1007, 1011–1021; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 661–674; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, 349–352, 395, 396, 444–448; E. Stanwood, *Presidency*, chs. xxx, xxxi; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 143–174; Herbert Croly, *Marcus A. Hanna*, chs. xiii–xix.

Special. — Currency: F. W. Taussig, *Silver Situation*, pt. i, chs. vi–viii, pt. ii and *Treasury in 1894–1896* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XIII, 204); A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years*, chs. vi–xi; D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, ch. xix; W. R. Lawson, *American Finance*, 119–180; D. K. Watson, *American Coinage*, chs. xii–xvi; F. A. Walker, *International Bimetallism;* A. B. Hepburn, *Coinage and Currency*, 297–414; Horace White, *Money and Banking* (3d ed.), 175–192; J. L. Laughlin, *Bimetallism*, chs. xvi, xvii; C. A. Conant, *Modern Banks of Issue*, 377–385, 524–551; H. B. Russell, *International Monetary Conference*, chs. vii–ix; O. M. W. Sprague, *Crises*, 124–215; T. E. Burton, *Financial Crises*, and *John Sherman*, 336–400; M. S. Wildman, *Money Inflation*, 173–215; R. F. Hoxie, *Debate of* 1890 (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, I, 535); C. J. Bullock, *Monetary History*, ch. viii; W. J. Lauck, *Panic of 1893;* H. C. Nicholas, in *Van Norden's Magazine*, Dec., 1907; W. C. Ford, *Movement of Gold and Foreign Exchanges, 1894–1895* (*Yale Review*, IV, 128); F. A. Cleveland, *Bank and the Treasury*, ch. i. — Tariff and Income Tax: I. M. Tarbell, *Tariff*, chs. viii–x; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History*, chs. v–vii, and *Reciprocity* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, VII, 26); E. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, chs. xvi–xviii; C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, ch. viii; Wm. Hill, *Votes on McKinley and Wilson Bills* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, II, 290); Geo. Tunell, *Second*

Income Tax (*ibid.*, III, 311); A. C. Miller, *National Finance and the Income Tax* (*ibid.*, 255); E. R. A. Seligman, *Income Tax*, chs. iv–vi; J. M. Gould and G. F. Tucker, *Federal Income Tax Explained;* F. C. Howe, *Internal Revenue System*, 233–252. — PENSIONS: W. H. Glasson, *Military Pension Legislation*, chs. iii–vii; E. H. Hall, *Civil War Pensions* (Mass. Hist. Soc., *Proceedings*, XLII, 113); W. B. Hale, *Pension Carnival* (*World's Work*, XX, 13, 485, XXI *passim*); C. F. Adams, *Pensions* (*ibid.*, XXIII, 188, 327, 385). — POPULISTS (§§ 250, 252): F. L. McVey, *Populist Movement;* F. E. Haynes, *New Sectionalism* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, X, 269); J. A. Woodburn, *Political Parties*, 110–130; W. F. Mappin, *Farm Mortgages* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, IV, 433); J. P. Dunn, *Mortgage Evil* (*ibid.*, V, 65); F. M. Drew, *Farmers' Movement* (*ibid.*, VI, 282); C. F. Emerick, *Agricultural Discontent* (*ibid.*, XI, 433, 601, XII, 93); E. W. Bemis, *Discontent of the Farmer* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, I. 193); C. W. Davis, *Why the Farmer is not Prosperous* (*Forum*, IX, 231, 348); C. S. Gleed, *True Significance of Western Unrest* (*ibid.*, XVI, 252); C. S. Walker, *Farmers' Movement* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, IV, 790); A. F. Bentley, *Condition of the Western Farmer;* F. J. Turner, *Problem of the West* (*Atlantic*, LXXVIII, 289); W. Wilson, *Making of the Nation*, (*ibid.*, LXXX, 1); C. M. Harger, *A New Business Alliance* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXV, 380); Samuel Williston, *Semi-Arid Kansas* (Univ. of Kan., *Quarterly*, III, 211). — LABOR (§§ 256, 270). — CONGRESSIONAL ORGANIZATION: L. G. McConachie, *Congressional Committees;* M. P. Follett, *The Speaker*, especially §§ 69–71, 127–129; H. B. Fuller, *Speakers of the House*, ch. viii; J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), I, chs. xiv, xv.

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 51–54 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, IX; *Finance Report* (annual); *Statutes at Large*, XXVI–XXX, especially XXVI, 182 (pensions), 289 (silver purchase), 567 (tariff), 822 (return of direct tax), XXVIII, 4 (repeal of silver purchase), 509 (tariff and income tax), XXX, 151 (tariff), the silver acts are reprinted in Wm. MacDonald, *Select Statutes*, Nos. 121, 125; National Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 245–257, 439–448, 589–614, 698–710; A. P. Andrew, *Statistics, 1867–1909*, and *Financial Diagrams;* R. G. Proctor, *Tariff Acts*, 1789 to 1897 (*House Docs.*, 55 Cong. 2 sess., LXXII, No. 562), 314–565; *United States Reports*: especially Field *v.* Clark (1892), 143 *U.S.*, 650 (tariff); United States *v.* Ballin (1892), 144 *U.S.*, 1 (Reed rules); Pollock *v.* Farmers' Loan (1895), 157 *U.S.*, 429, 158 *U.S.*, 601 (income tax);

United States *v.* Realty Company (1896), 163 *U.S.*, 427 (sugar bounty); *Statistical Abstract* (annual); *Report of the Monetary Commission of the Indianapolis Convention;* Commissioner of Pensions, *Annual Reports;* pension investigations, in *House Exec. Docs.*, 48 Cong. 1 sess., XXVIII, No. 172, *House Reports*, 51 Cong. 2 sess., III, No. 3732, 52 Cong. 1 sess., VIII, IX; Republican National Convention, *Proceedings* (1892, 1896); Democratic National Convention, *Proceedings* (1892, 1896); campaign handbooks (1892, 1896); *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia;* E. McPherson, *Handbook* (to 1894); *Tribune Almanac; World Almanac; Sound Currency; Nation; Commercial and Financial Chronicle; Journal of Commerce and Commercial Bulletin;* general periodicals of the period as listed in supplements to *Poole's Index.* — Reed Rules: T. B. Reed and others, in *North American Review*, CLI, 90, 229, 237, 367; H. C. Lodge, *Obstruction* (*Nineteenth Century*, XXIX, 423). — Contemporary Writings: G. Cleveland, *Presidential Problems*, 121–170, and *Writings and Speeches*, especially 100–106, 303–328, 374; R. W. Gilder, *Grover Cleveland;* B. Harrison, *Speeches;* J. Sherman, *Recollections*, II, chs. lvii, lix–lxv; A. D. White, *Autobiography*, I, chs. xiii, xiv; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, II, ch. xxii; T. C. Platt, *Autobiography*, chs. xiii–xvii; W. M. Stewart, *Reminiscences*, chs. xxxi–xxxvi, and *Silver* (*Forum*, XI, 429); E. L. Godkin, *Problems*, 249–274; W. J. Bryan, *First Battle;* W. V. Byars, *An American Commoner* (Bland), chs. xviii–xxvii; R. P. Bland on silver, in *North American Review*, CLI, 344, CLVIII, 554; W. H. Harvey, *Coin's Financial School;* W. A. Peffer, *Farmer's Side*, and on Populist party, in *North American Review*, CLVII, 665, and *Cosmopolitan*, X, 694, and *Forum*, VIII, 464; W. V. Allen, *Principles of Populism* (*Independent*, XLVIII, 1223); J. B. Weaver, *Call to Action;* H. R. Chamberlain, *Farmers' Alliance;* W. A. White, *Kansas* (*Forum*, XXIII, 75), and *Typical Kansas Community* (*Atlantic*, LXXX, 171).

Bibliography. — D. R. Dewey, *Financial History*, § 185, and *National Problems*, ch. xxi; A. P. C. Griffin, *List relating to Taxation of Incomes*, and *List on Reciprocity* (2d ed.); H. H. B. Meyer, *List on Sugar*, and *List on Wool;* F. L. McVey, *Populist Movement*, footnotes; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), X, 181; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 54 (lects. 84, 85); Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 7, 32–35, 42–45; American Historical Association, *Report*, 1905, II.

§ 263. Foreign Relations, 1885–1897

Summary. — Earlier phases (§ 244). — Fisheries (§§ 194, 224, 244): Northeastern, 1885, expiration of treaty of Washington (1871); 1885, Cleveland's withdrawal of draft treaty from Senate; bait question; 1887, commission; 1888, treaty defeated by Senate; *modus vivendi*. — Isthmian Canal (§§ 224, 257): 1889–1898, Maritime Canal Company of Nicaragua; Clayton-Bulwer treaty obstacle; activity of the New Panama Company; 1897, Walker's Isthmian Canal Commission. — Incidents: 1885, Austrian refusal of Minister Keiley; 1888, Sackville-West. — South America: Blaine's policy; 1890, Pan-American Congress; 1891–1892, Chilian episode; 1895, Dec. 17, Cleveland's Venezuela message (Monroe Doctrine); Olney Doctrine; 1896, commission of investigation; 1897, arbitration; failure of general arbitration treaty. — Pacific (§§ 264, 268): Increase of Western population; doctrine of dominant interest; 1886, Bering Sea; seals; Blaine; 1893, arbitration; 1889, June 14, Samoan Islands, Tripartite treaty; 1893, Hawaiian revolution; American protectorate; disavowals; Feb. 14, annexation treaty, March 9, withdrawn by Cleveland; Commissioner Blount; withdrawal of flag; the Queen and the Republic; 1894, May 31, Senate declaration; 1898, July 7, annexation by joint resolution. — Later diplomatic questions (§ 267).

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, chs. xiii, xiv; D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, chs. vii, xiii, xix; J. B. Moore, in *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, ch. xxi; E. Stanwood, *Blaine*, ch. x; J. B. Henderson, Jr., *American Diplomatic Questions* passim; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 185, 186, 196, 240–252; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 409–416, 508–516, 605–614, 700–708; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 957–961, 975–981, 997–1002; T. S. Woolsey, *America's Foreign Policy*, 115, 169, 195, 213, 223; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Fisheries, Pan-American Congresses, Reciprocity.

Special. — NORTHEASTERN FISHERIES: C. B. Elliot, *Northeastern Fisheries*, 90–100; J. I. Doran, *Our Fishery Rights;* J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy*, ch. iv; Raymond McFarland, *New England Fisheries*, ch. xix; Freeman Snow, *Treaties and Topics*, 427–470. — VENEZUELA: J. F. Rhodes, *Cleveland's Administrations*, II (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 607–612); J. H. Latané, *United States and*

Spanish America, ch. vi; T. B. Edgington, *Monroe Doctrine*, ch. xvi; A. B. Hart, *Monroe Doctrine* (U.S. Naval Institute, *Proceedings*, XXII, No. 3); Rich. Olney, *International Isolation* (*Atlantic*, LXXXI, 577). — Pacific (§§ 264, 268): A. C. Coolidge, *United States as a World Power*, ch. xvii; J. W. Foster, *American Diplomacy in the Orient*, chs. xi, xii; A. T. Mahan, *Interest of America in Sea Power*, Nos. 1–3; J. M. Callahan, *American Relations in the Pacific*, chs. viii, ix; S. B. Stanton, *Behring Sea Controversy;* C. Calvo, *Droit International* (4th ed.), I, 471, 489, VI, 370–446; T. D. Woolsey, *International Law* (6th ed.), §§ 59, 60; W. E. Hall, *International Law* (6th ed.), 140–154, 252 *n.*; T. J. Lawrence, *International Law*, § 106; T. A. Walker, *International Law*, 175–204; *Fur Seal Question* (*Am. Jour. of Internat. Law*, I, 742): J. Stanley-Brown, *Bering Sea Controversy* (*Yale Review*, II, 196); E. J. Phelps, *Behring Sea Controversy* (*Harper's Mag.*, LXXXII, 766); T. B. Browning, *Bering Sea Controversy* (*Law Quart. Review*, VII, 128); G. H. Knott, *Arbitration of Behring Sea Controversy* (*Am. Law Review*, XXVII, 684); H. E. Chambers, *Hawaii;* F. J. Carpenter, *America in Hawaii;* W. D. Alexander, *Hawaiian People*. — Isthmian Canal (§§ 257, 267): L. M. Keasbey, *Nicaragua Canal*, chs. xxi, xxii; W. F. Johnson, *Four Centuries*, ch. viii; C. H. Huberich, *Trans-Isthmian Canal;* F. Regel, *Panamakanal*, 42–50; Achille Viallate, *États-Unis et le Canal Interocéanique* (*Revue Général de Droit Internat. Public*, X. 5); C. H. Forbes-Lindsay, *Panama*, ch. vii; E. R. Johnson, *Nicaragua Canal* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, VII, 38); H. L. Abbot, *Problems of the Panama Canal*, ch. i.

Sources. — *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 49–54 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, VIII, IX; *Foreign Relations* (1885–1897); W. M. Malloy, *Treaties*, 185, 729–762, 1576; J. B. Moore, *International Law Digest*, §§ 166–168 (Northeastern fisheries), 172, 173 (seal fisheries), 361–365 (Isthmian Canal), 297 (Chile), 966 (Venezuelan boundary), 110 (Samoan Islands), 108 (pp. 494–510, Hawaiian Islands), 638 (pp. 480–484, Keiley case), 640 (pp. 536–548, Sackville-West), and *International Arbitrations*, I, 755–961, V, 4759–4767 (fur seals and Bering Sea), 5017, 5018 (Venezuela boundary). Among the more significant public documents are: (Canal) 52 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 4; 53 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 5; 3 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, I, No. 20; 54 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Docs.*, XIII, No. 315; *Senate Reports*, VI, No. 1109; 55 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, VIII, No. 1265; (Fisheries) 49 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, I, No. 1683; 50 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, IX, No. 113; (Seals) 52 Cong.

1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.*, V, No. 55; *Fur Seal Arbitration* (16 vols.); D. S. Jordan and others, *Fur Seals;* (Hawaii) 53 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Reports*, II, No. 227; 56 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Docs.*, XXIV, pp. 361–1169; (Chile) 52 Cong. 1 sess., *House Exec. Docs.*, XXXIV, No. 91; (Venezuela and general arbitration) *Foreign Relations*, 1895, I, 542–576, 1896, 222–255; 58 Cong. 3 sess., *Senate Docs.*, IV, No. 161. *British and Foreign State Papers; Annual Register; Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia;* International Bureau of American Republics, *Bulletins.* — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: G. Cleveland, *Presidential Problems*, ch. iv; A. D. White, *Autobiography*, II, 13–21, 117–130; J. W. Foster, *Diplomatic Memoirs*, II, chs. xxv–xxvii, xxxiv; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, II, ch. xii.

Bibliography. — A. P. C. Griffin, *List of References on International Arbitration*, and *List on Samoa and Guam*, and *List relating to Hawaii;* H. A. Morrison, *List relating to Interoceanic Canal;* R. MacFarland, *New England Fisheries*, 344–363; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 84 (lects. 78, 79), 86 (lects. 80–82); Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*, Nos. 24, 25.

§ 264. Development of the Pacific Coast, 1890–1910

Summary. — Increased interest in the Pacific: Alaskan gold; Spanish-American War, insular annexations (§ 265); Panama Canal (267); Japanese activity; growth of population and wealth. — Physical geography; resources; size. — Relations to Asia and other Pacific countries (§ 268). — 1890–1910, Population; city growth; development of particular industries; irrigation (§ 273); transportation (§§ 259, 260); influence of Southern Pacific Railway; 1900–1910, new railroads, their strategic significance; Oriental commerce (§ 268), rivalry of ports; improvements of harbors. — Alaska: fur seal question (263); 1896, Klondike gold discoveries; 1899, Nome; development, effect on Seattle; 1903, Oct. 20, boundary decision; 1905, Lewis and Clark Centennial Exposition at Portland; 1909, Alaska-Yukon-Pacific Exposition at Seattle; 1909–1910, Ballinger-Pinchot controversy (§ 273); Cunningham coal claims, the Guggenheims; question of government. — 1906, April 18–20, San Francisco earthquake and fire; 1911, selection of San Francisco for Panama-Pacific Exposition of 1915. — Labor questions: scarcity of supply; Chinese and Japanese immigration (§ 268); 1891–1893, labor contests; 1901, San Francisco strike,

triumph of labor unions; 1903–1904, anti-injunction struggle; 1910, Los Angeles dynamiting. — California politics and corruption: Southern Pacific Railway influences; 1906–1909, San Francisco graft exposures; municipal reform and public works in Los Angeles and Seattle; campaign of 1910. — Oregon political system (§ 272). — Pacific Coast ideals and traits; literature and art.

General. — E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 356–381, 734–737, 790–796; Jos. Schafer, *Pacific Slope and Alaska*, 357–359, 365, 366, 395–417; W. E. Smythe, *Conquest of Arid America*, 121–160, 197–212; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), articles on the various Pacific Coast states and Alaska.

Special. — Josiah Royce, *Race Questions*, No. 4; A. P. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, ch. x; Isaiah Bowman, *Forest Physiography*, chs. ix–xiii; J. E. Chapman, *Pacific Civilization* (*Collier's*, XLIII, 32); L. Pease, *Boosters* (*ibid.*, 22); Herbert Bashford, *Literary Development* (*Atlantic*, XCII, 1); C. R. Enock, *The Great Pacific Coast*, and *Farthest West;* J. B. Meikle, *American Mastery of the Pacific* (*World's Work*, X, 6467); C. M. Keys, *Contest for Pacific Traffic* (*ibid.*, 6503), and *Country Ready for Capital* (*ibid.*, XVIII, 1922); H. T. Finck, *Progressive Pacific Coast* (*Scribner's Mag.*, XLVII, 213); J. E. Hodgson, *Dredging of Gold Placers;* E. S. Holmes, *Agricultural Conditions* (*Scientific Am., Sup.*, LII, 21,695); C. F. Hodder, *Big Things of the West* (*ibid.*, LV, 22,805); A. Hovey-King, *Lumber Industry* (*Review of Reviews*, XXVII, 317); R. P. Jennings, *Building up a State* (*World To-Day*, VIII, 320), and *The West that has become the East* (*ibid.*, XV, 1124); H. H. Bancroft, *New Pacific;* J. Barrett, *Our Pacific Opportunity* (*Overland*, n.s., XXXV, 149). — ALASKA: A. W. Greely, *Handbook of Alaska* (1909); J. S. Maclain, *Alaska and the Klondike* (1905); Hugo Erdmann, *Alaska* (1909); Ella Higginson, *Alaska;* E. R. Scidmore, *Appletons' Guide Book to Alaska* (1893); Geo. Davidson, *Alaska Boundary* (with history of Alaska); T. W. Balch, *Alaska Frontier;* A. H. Brooks, *Coal Fields of Alaska* (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, XXI, 83); *Collier's Weekly*, XLIV, XLV *passim; World's Work*, VI, 3955, X, 6528, XVIII, 11,941; *Hampton's Magazine*, XXIV, 451, 631, XXV, 691. — THE NORTHWEST: J. J. Hill, *Highways of Progress*, chs. vii–ix; Jos. Schafer, *Pacific Northwest*, ch. xix; W. D. Lyman, *The Columbia River*, pt. i, ch. xii, pt. ii, chs. iii, vi; F. G. Young, *Columbia River Improvement* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXI, 189); E. S. Meany, *Washington*, pt. v; A. B. Hart, *Obvious Orient*, chs. iv–vii; R. S. Baker, *Great Northwest* (*Century*, LXV, 647); N. H. Darton, *Our Pacific*

Northwest (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, XX, 645); *World's Work*, II, 813, X, 6445, 6459, 6474, 6491, 6511, XV, 9992, XXI, 13,767; J. F. Carr, in *Outlook*, LXXXVI, 363, 868: *Outing*, XLVII, 579, LI, 432, LIII, 77; R. A. Ballinger, *Puget Sound Region* (*Independent*, LXVI, 1374), and *Seattle* (*Review of Reviews*, XXXIX, 714); A. M. Field, *Lumbering in Washington* (*Independent*, LXIII, 1108); Caroline Sheldon, *Puget Sound Country and Alaska* (*Chautauquan*, LI, 175); D. B. Bogie, *Coming Industrial Empire of Puget Sound* (*Engineering Mag.*, XX, 989); W. D. Lyman, *Washington* (*Atlantic*, LXXXVII, 505); A. Berglund, *Wheat Situation in Washington* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXIV, 489); J. J. Hill, *Looking Forward* (*Putnam's*, VII, 62); B. H. Elford, *Inland Empire* (*Overland*, n.s., XLV, 541); Wallace Nash, *Settler's Handbook to Oregon;* Louise G. Stephens (Katharine), *Letters from an Oregon Ranch;* R. L. Jones, *World's Fruit Basket* (*Collier's*, XLIII, 16). — CALIFORNIA: D. S. Jordan, *California and Californians;* B. I. Wheeler, *Forecast for California* (*Outlook*, XCIX, 167); T. J. Vivian, *Commercial, Industrial, Transportation, and Other Industries of California;* G. T. Daniels, *California* (1904); E. W. Maslin, *Resources of California* (1893); W. H. Hall, *Physical Data and Statistics of California;* A. G. McAdie, *Climatology of California;* C. F. Lummis, in *The Americana*, article "California" (1911), and *The Right Hand of the Continent* (*Harper's Mag.*, C, 171); John Muir, *The Mountains of California;* C. D. Warner, *Our Italy* (1891); Walter Lindley and J. P. Widney, *California of the South* (3d ed., 1896); J. W. Hansom, *American Italy* (1896); Kate Sanborn, *A Truthful Woman in Southern California* (1893); C. A. Keeler, *San Francisco and Thereabout* (1903); A. J. Wells, *A New California* (*World To-Day*, XIX, 1155); R. T. Fisher, *The Big Trees of California* (*World's Work*, III, 1714); Douglas White and W. A. Lawson, *Northern California* (*Harper's Weekly*, XLVII, 2099); see periodicals indexed in *Poole's Index* and *Readers' Guide*, under "California." — CALIFORNIA POLITICS: Lucile Eaves, *California Labor Legislation;* T. F. Bonnet, *The Regenerators* (San Francisco graft); Franklin Hichborn, *Story of the California Legislature* (1909, 1911); Lincoln Steffens, in *American Magazine*, LXIV, 339, LXV, 26, 140, 390, 614, LXVI, 120 (San Francisco graft); C. E. Russell, in *Hampton's Magazine*, XXIV, 843, XXV, 364 (state politics); *McClure's Magazine*, XXIX, 547, XXXIII, 277, XXXVI, 386 (San Francisco graft).

Sources. — *Census Reports* (1890–1910); U. S. Geological Survey, *Bulletins*, and *Mineral Resources*, and *Water Supply and Irrigation Papers;* state documents (see Bowker's *State Publications* and

Hasse's *Index* in § 24 above), especially bureaus of labor statistics, state boards of trade, immigration boards, publicity bureaus, state blue books, and annuals; also publications of chambers of commerce, etc., of Pacific Coast cities. Newspapers (§ 41) and periodicals (§ 40), especially *Sunset*, *Overland*, *Land of Sunshine*, *Out West*, *Pacific Monthly*, *The Coast*, *West Shore*, *World's Work*, *Collier's;* annuals and handbooks issued by leading newspapers; railroad literature. — ALASKA: Marcus Baker and Jas. McCormick, *Geographic Dictionary of Alaska* (2d ed., Geol. Survey, *Bulletins*, No. 299); A. H. Brooks and others, *Mining and Mineral Wealth of Alaska* (*ibid.*, No. 442), and *Geography and Geology of Alaska* (Geol. Survey, *Profes. Papers*, No. 45); W. L. Fisher, *Alaska Coal Problems* (Bureau of Mines, *Bulletins*, No. 36); *Commercial Alaska, 1867–1903* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.*, 1903–1904, p. 37); *Congressional Record*, XLV, 927, 1026, 1880; *Harriman Alaska Expedition* (1899), I, II; *Explorations in Alaska* (1869–1900, *Senate Reports*, 56 Cong. 1 sess., XI, No. 1023); Alaskan Boundary Tribunal, *Proceedings;* Sheldon Jackson, *Introduction of Reindeer* (Com. of Educ., *Reports*, 1890–1906); Bureau of Fisheries, *Reports* (see Supt. of Documents, *Price Lists*, No. 32); Alaska Salmon Commission, *Preliminary Report*, and monographs in *Bulletins* of Bureau of Fisheries; Tappan Adney, *Klondike Stampede* (1900); W. S. Edwards, *In to the Yukon* (1909); Eugene McElwaine, *Truth about Alaska* (1901); Jeremiah Lynch, *Three Years in the Klondike* (1904); Lanier McKee, *Land of Nome* (1902); Fred. Palmer, *In the Klondyke* (1899); Fred. Schwatka, *Along Alaska's Great River* (1885); J. E. Spurr, *Through the Yukon Gold Diggings* (1900); May K. Sullivan, *A Woman who went to Alaska* (1902); H. S. Wellcome, *Story of Metlakahtla* (1887).

Bibliography. — C. W. Smith, *Check-List relating to the Pacific Northwest;* K. B. Judson, *Pacific Northwest;* Superintendent of Documents, *Documents relating to Non-contiguous Territory*, *Price Lists*, No. 32; Governor of Alaska, *Report* (1910, with list of govt. pubs. on Alaska); U. S. Geological Survey, *Bulletins*, No. 442; *Readers' Guide;* supplements to *Poole's Index; Annual Library Index;* these indexes should be consulted under the names of the states, regions, and special topics.

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE TRANSFORMING NATION, 1898–1910

§ 265. Cuba and the Spanish-American War, 1895–1899

Summary. — Cuba: earlier American interests (§§ 224, 244); 1895, revolution; reconcentration; 1896, April 6, Congressional resolution; Dec. 7, Cleveland's message; 1897, June 27, American protest; Spanish negotiations; 1898, Feb., De Lôme letter incident; Feb. 15, *Maine* explosion; March 9, Congressional appropriation for defense; March 17, Senator Proctor's speech; March 29, American ultimatum; April 6, appeal of European ambassadors; April 11, McKinley's message; April 20, intervention in Cuba declared, disclaimer of acquisition. — War: April 24, Spanish declaration of war; May 1, Manila Bay, Dewey, German incident; voyage of the *Oregon;* Watson's fleet; June, blockade of Spanish fleet in Santiago, Schley, Sampson; naval efficiency, sea-power; invasion of Cuba, military unpreparedness; June 22, Shafter's landing; June 30-July 3, San Juan Hill; July 3, destruction of Spanish fleet, Cervera; July 17, surrender of Santiago; fever, "round robin"; Aug. 4, return of troops; July 25, invasion of Porto Rico. — Investigations: Alger; Schley. — Peace negotiations: Aug. 12, protocol; Aug. 13, surrender of Manila; Philippine question; Paris conference; Dec. 10, treaty of peace signed; terms; 1899, Feb. 6, ratified by Senate; April 14, proclaimed. — End of Spanish empire. — America a world power: new colonial possessions; sea-power in Pacific (§ 266).

General. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, chs. i–iv; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXV, 594; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VI, 170–182, 583–638; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 674–686; W. Wilson, *American People*, V, 269–300; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 531–608; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 796, 799–823; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 1021–

1048; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Cuba, Spanish War; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 175–186.

Special. — War: F. E. Chadwick, *Spanish-American War*, I, II, chs. i–xix; R. H. Titherington, *Spanish-American War;* H. H. Sargent, *Campaign of Santiago de Cuba;* M. F. Steele, *American Campaigns*, I, ch. xxvii, II, 299–311 (maps); A. T. Mahan, *Lessons of War with Spain;* J. R. Spears, *Our Navy in War with Spain;* E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy*, III, 39–440; G. R. Clark, *United States Navy*, chs. xxv–xxvii; H. W. Wilson, *Downfall of Spain;* John Barrett, *Dewey;* Émile Bujac, *Précis de Campagnes Contemporaines*, IV; Hermann Kunz, *Taktische Beispiele aus den Kriegen der neuesten Zeit*, II, pt. ii; Severo Gómez Nuñez, *Guerra Hispano-Americana;* Chas. Benoist, *Espagne, Cuba, et les États-Unis.* — Diplomatic: F. E. Chadwick, *United States and Spain, Diplomacy*, chs. xx–xxix, *Spanish-American War*, II, chs. xx, xxi; H. E. Flack, *Spanish-American Diplomatic Relations;* Louis Le Fur, *Guerre Hispano-Américaine;* A. T. Mahan, *Interest of America in Sea Power*, 271; J. I. Rodriguez, *Idea de la Anexion de la Isla de Cuba;* Henry Bonfils, *Droit International Public* (2d ed.), §§ 295–325; A. G. de Lapradelle, *Question Cubaine* (*Revue du Droit Public*, XIII, 70–81).

Sources. — Documents: *Congressional Record* and *Congressional Documents*, 54, 55 Congs.; J. D. Richardson, *Messages and Papers*, X; *Foreign Relations* (1895–1900, especially 1898); *Spanish Diplomatic Correspondence and Documents, 1896–1900* (translation issued by U. S. Dept. of State); *Compilation of Reports of Committee on Foreign Relations* (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess., XXV, No. 231), pt. vii; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, I, 48, 243, IV, 611, V, 213, 375, VI, 105; "Maine" Court of Inquiry, *Report* (*Senate Docs.*, 55 Cong. 2 sess., XXI, No. 207); Secretary of the Navy, *Annual Report* (1898); Secretary of War, *Annual Reports* (1898–1900); *Notes on the Spanish-American War* (*Senate Docs.*, 56 Cong. 1 sess., XXXIV, No. 388); Commission on War Department, *Report* (*ibid.*, XVII–XXIV, No. 221); Court of Inquiry on Schley, *Proceedings* (*House Docs.*, 57 Cong. 1 sess., CIII, CIV, No. 485); *Treaty of Peace* (*Senate Docs.*, 55 Cong. 3 sess., VIII, No. 62); *Papers relating to the Treaty with Spain* (*ibid.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess., XI, No. 148); *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1897, 1898). — Accounts of Participants: Fred. Funston, *Memories of Two Wars*, pt. i; J. D. Long, *New American Navy;* R. A. Alger, *Spanish-American War;* C. D. Sigsbee, *Battle Ship Maine;* W. S. Schley, *Forty-five Years under the Flag*, chs. xxiv–xxxvi; R. D. Evans, *A Sailor's Log*, chs. xxxiv–xxxix; W. A. M. Goode, *With Sampson;* V. M. Concas y Palau,

Escuadra del Almirante Cervera; Jos. Wheeler, *Santiago Campaign;* T. Roosevelt, *Rough Riders;* Stephen Bonsal, *Fight for Santiago;* José Müller y Tejeiro, *Santiago de Cuba;* R. H. Davis, *Cuban and Porto Rican Campaigns: History of Troop A;* O. O. Howard, *Fighting for Humanity;* F. D. Millet, *Expedition to the Philippines; Century Magazine,* LVI, LVII *passim; Scribner's Magazine,* XXIV, XXV *passim.*

Bibliography. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power,* ch. xix; F. E. Chadwick, *Spanish-American War,* II, 475-478; A. P. C. Griffin, *List relating to Cuba,* and *List on Porto Rico,* and *List relating to the Occupation of the Philippine Islands* (1905 ed.), and *Select List relating to the Far East,* and *List on Samoa and Guam;* T. H. Pardo de Tavera, *Biblioteca Filipina;* A. B. Hart, *Manual,* §§ 86 (lect. 83), 194; R. W. Neeser, *United States Navy,* I, especially 73-76, 131-133, 153 (index, title "War with Spain"); C. T. Harbeck, *Bibliography of the United States Navy,* 56-65; *Poole's Index, Fourth Supplement; Readers' Guide.*

§ 266. Government of Dependencies, 1899–1910

Summary. — Annexations: Hawaiian Islands (§ 263); Philippines (§ 265); Guam (§ 265); Porto Rico (§ 265); 1899, Dec. 2, division of Samoan Islands (Tutuila); Caribbean Sea; Isthmian Canal (§ 267). — Philippine revolt: reënforcements; Aguinaldo; 1899, Feb. 4, outbreak of hostilities; problems; military operations; 1902, restoration of order. — Election of 1900 (§ 272). — Government of dependencies, Philippines: 1899, first Commission; 1900, March 16, second Commission appointed; W. H. Taft; instructions (theory of dependencies); acts of the Commission; 1901, March 2, Spooner amendment (civil authority); 1902, July 1, Organic act; Taft's Philippine administration; 1903, Dec., Friars' Lands agreement; 1905, completion of census; 1907, general election and first Assembly. — 1900, April 12, Territorial government for Porto Rico (Foraker act). — 1900, April 30, Territorial government for Hawaii. — Cuban government: continued occupation by United States troops; Governor Leonard Wood; sanitation; 1901, March 2, Platt amendment; accepted in Cuban constitution; 1902, May 20, withdrawal of United States; Cuban republic; 1902, Dec. 11, reciprocity treaty; 1906, insurrection; Sept. 29, American provisional government instituted

under Secretary Taft; 1909, Jan. 28, withdrawal of troops. — Tariff questions: 1900, April 12, Porto Rican tariff act; 1901, May 27, Insular Cases decision (status of dependent territory); 1902, March 8, Philippine Tariff act; relation of tariff for dependencies to general tariff system. — Alaska (§ 264). — Canal Zone (§ 267). — Later phases.

General. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, chs. viii–x; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXI, 399, 400; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VI, 182–190, 255–258, 367–403, 409–419, 646–673, VII, 174–181, 492–498, 503–505; Garner and Lodge, *United States*, II, 1035–1048; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 608–620; O. K. Davis, *Our Conquests in the Pacific;* E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 823–862, 913; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Dependencies, Hawaii, Insular Cases, Philippines, Porto Rico; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 187–194.

Special. — W. F. Willoughby, *Territories and Dependencies*, chs. iii–ix; W. W. Willoughby, *Constitutional Law*, I, chs. xxvii–xxxi. D. Y. Thomas, *Military Government in Newly Acquired Territory*, 281–330; C. F. Randolph, *Law and Policy of Annexation;* J. A. Woodburn, *American Republic*, 373–397; C. A. Conant, *United States in the Orient;* S. E. Baldwin, *Acquisition and Government of Island Territory;* J. B. Moore, *Four Phases of American Development*, chs. iii, iv; A. H. Snow, *Administration of Dependencies;* A. E. McKinley, *Island Possessions; American Colonial Policy and Administration* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXX, No. 1); *Foreign Policy* (*ibid.*, Sup., May, 1899); A. T. Mahan, *Retrospect and Prospect*, 39, 89; A. B. Hart, *Foundations*, chs. v, vi; A. R. Colquhoun, *Mastery of the Pacific;* H. H. Bancroft, *New Pacific; Harvard Law Review*, especially XII, XIII, XV; *North American Review*, CLXXII, 1, CLXXIII, 45, 154; *Review of Reviews*, XIX, 67, XXI, 451; J. M. Callahan, *American Relations in the Pacific*, 135–164; L. S. Rowe, *United States and Porto Rico.* — PHILIPPINES: D. P. Barrows, *Philippines*, ch. xiii; F. W. Atkinson, *Philippine Islands;* C. H. Forbes-Lindsay, *Philippines under Spanish and American Rules;* H. P. Willis, *Our Philippine Problem;* John Foreman, *Philippine Islands;* H. M. Wright, *Handbook of the Philippines;* J. R. Arnold, *Official Handbook of the Philippines*, and *Philippine Service* (*N. Am. Review*, CXCV, 238); F. H. Sawyer, *Inhabitants of the Philippines;* G. J. Younghusband, *Philippines;* D. C. Worcester, *Philippine Islands and their People;* A. J. Brown, *New Era in the Philippines;* J. A. Le Roy, *Philippine Life;* Mrs. Campbell

Dauncey, *An Englishwoman in the Philippines;* W. B. Freer, *Philippine Experiences of an American Teacher;* Edith Moses, *Unofficial Letters of an Officer's Wife;* Friedrich Rinne, *Zwischen Filipinos und Amerikanern auf Luzon;* Edwin Wildman, *Aguinaldo;* Henri Turot, *Aguinaldo et les Philippines.* — CUBA: A. G. Robinson, *Cuba and the Intervention;* C. M. Pepper, *To-morrow in Cuba;* J. Bryce, *Cuba* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXXIV, 445). — IMPERIALISM: A. C. Collidge, *United States as a World Power*, chs. vi–ix, xvii; F. H. Giddings, *Democracy and Empire*, ch. xvii; J. Bryce. *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), II, chs. xcvi, xcvii; Brooks Adams, *America's Economic Supremacy*, 1–25, and *New Empire*, ch. vi; Moorfield Storey, *What shall we do with our Dependencies?* D. S. Jordan, *Imperial Democracy;* W. G. Sumner, *Conquest of the United States by Spain;* C. F. Adams, *Imperialism;* C. Schurz, *American Imperialism;* G. F. Hoar, *No Power to conquer Foreign Nations;* Ed. Atkinson, *Cost of War and Warfare;* Albert Shaw, *Political Problems of American Development*, ch. ix; Seth Low and others, *United States as a World Power;* Josiah Strong, *Expansion under New World Conditions;* periodicals as cited in bibliographies below.

Sources. — OFFICIAL: *Congressional Record*, especially the president's messages; J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, §§ 94, 109, 110; C. E. Magoon, *Law of Civil Government in Territory subject to Military Occupation*, and *Legal Status of the Islands Acquired; Compilation of Acts, Treaties, and Proclamations relating to Insular and Military Affairs* (1897–1903, *Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 2 sess., XII, No. 105); Secretary of War, *Annual Reports* (1899–1903, especially 1902, Apps. A, B); Insular cases, 182 *U.S.*, 1, 223, 244, 183 *U.S.*, 151, 176 (the briefs, arguments, and other documents are in *House Docs.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess., XCVII, No. 509); *Monthly Summary of Commerce and Finance*, 1901–1902, pp. 19–290; [First] Philippine Commission, *Report* (4 vols.); Philippine Commission, *Annual Reports* (in *Annual Reports* of the War Dept., there is a reprint, with omissions, as *Reports, 1900–1903*), and *Acts* (1902–1907), and *Official Gazette* (weekly, 1902–): Bureau of Insular Affairs, *Gazetteer of the Philippine Islands* (*Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 1 sess., XXI, No. 280); Coast Survey, *Atlas of the Philippine Islands;* Bureau of the Census, *Census of the Philippine Islands* (1903, 4 vols.); *Special Report of Wm. H. Taft on the Philippines* (1908, *Senate Docs.*, 60 Cong. 1 sess., VII, No. 200); *Affairs in the Philippine Islands* (*Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 1 sess., XXIII–XXV, No. 331; hearings before the Senate committee, 1902); H. K. Carroll, *Report on Porto Rico* (1899); *Laws effective in Porto Rico, 1900* (*House Docs.*, 60 Cong. 2 sess.,

XXIX–XXXII, No. 1484); *Register of Porto Rico* (annual, 1901–); Governor of Porto Rico, *Annual Report*, and Governor of Hawaii, *Annual Report* (1901– , in *Annual Reports* of the Dept. of Interior); *Report of the Military Governor of Cuba* (1901, *House Docs.*, 56 Cong. 2 sess., XII, XIII, in 8 pts.); *Establishment of Free Government in Cuba* (*Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 2 sess., VII, No. 312); *Foreign Relations*, 1902, pp. 320–364 (Cuban correspondence). — UNOFFICIAL: C. A. Beard, *Readings in American Government*, ch. xxi; R. L. Metcalfe, *The Real Bryan*, 245–254; T. Roosevelt, *Addresses* (index under "Cuba," "Navy," "Philippines"); Roosevelt and Taft, *The Philippines;* W. H. Taft, *Four Aspects of Civic Duty*, ch. iii, and *Present Day Problems*, 1–42; Whitelaw Reid, *Problems of Expansion*; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography*, II, ch. xxxiii; J. G. Schurman, *Philippine Affairs;* Fred. Funston, *Memories of Two Wars*, pt. ii; J. A. LeRoy, *Mabini on the Failure of the Filipino Revolution* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XI, 843); W. C. Forbes, *Decade of American Rule in the Philippines;* C. H. Allen, *Civil Government in Porto Rico* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXXIV, 159).

Bibliography. — W. F. Willoughby, *Territories and Dependencies*, App.; A. P. C. Griffin (see "Bibliography" §265), *List relating to Colonization, Dependencies, Protectorates, and Related Topics;* Superintendent of Documents, *Public Documents relating to Non-contiguous Territory*, *Price Lists*, No. 32; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 85, 86 (lects. 84, 86), 153, 194, 219; J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, ch. xix; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 10; T. H. Pardo de Tavera, *Biblioteca Filipina;* W. E. Retana, *Aparato Bibliográfico de la Historia General de Filipinas*, III, 1410–1492.

§ 267. American Diplomatic Problems, 1901–1910

Summary. — Earlier problems (§ 263). —1901–1909, Roosevelt's "big stick" policy. — Isthmian Canal (§ 263): 1901, Nov. 18, Hay-Pauncefote treaty (abrogation of Clayton-Bulwer treaty); 1902, June 28, Canal act, alternative routes; purchase of French Canal Company's rights; 1903, Sept. 14, Colombian rejection of treaty; 1903, Nov., Panama revolution; Nov. 6, recognition of Panama Republic; Nov. 18, Panama treaty; 1904, April 28, Canal Zone act, 1905, 1906, 1907, reorganizations of Canal Zone administration; 1905, Dec. 21, Panama Bonds act; 1906, June 29, lock system accepted; 1907, construction begun; Colonel Goethals. — The Orient (§ 268). — International peace: 1899, 1907,

Hague Conferences; 1901, 1906, 1910, Pan-American Congresses; 1903, Alaskan boundary arbitration (§ 264); 1904, general arbitration treaties, Senate amendments, Roosevelt's withdrawal; 1905, Pan-American arbitration treaty ratified; 1906, April 7, Algeciras Convention (proviso); 1907, Nobel Peace Prize foundation; 1909, Feb. 23, Hague Conference treaties ratified (proviso); international scientific and humanitarian congresses; 1910, Dec. 14, Carnegie Peace fund. — Collection of public debts: Latin-American problems; claims against Venezuela; 1901, Dec. 3, Roosevelt's message, limits of Monroe Doctrine; Drago Doctrine; 1902, European states' blockade of Venezuela; 1903, diplomatic intervention by United States, submission to Hague Tribunal; 1904, Santo Domingo's debt; Dec. 6, Roosevelt's message ("international police power"); 1905, Feb. 4, Dominican protocol, Senate opposition, *modus vivendi*, 1907, Feb. 25, ratification by Senate of revised treaty. — Cuba (§ 266). — 1909, Jan. 27, Bryce-Root treaty on North Atlantic coast fisheries; 1910, Sept. 7, Hague Tribunal decision. — 1910, Maximum and minimum tariff negotiations. — 1910, March 25, Report of Liberian Commission.

General. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, chs. xi, xii, xiv–xvi; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VII, 666–668, 671–674, 678, 680, 683, and special articles there cited; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXIII, 709–711; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 698–704; *United States as a World Power* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXVI, No. 1); McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Arbitration and Peace, Canal Diplomacy, Claims (International), Drago Doctrine, Fisheries, Hague Conference, San Domingo.

Special. — Panama Canal (§§ 257, 263): W. F. Johnson, *Four Centuries of the Canal*, chs. ix–xxi; Harmodio Arias, *Panama Canal;* F. Regel, *Panamakanal*, 50–117; H. L. Abbot, *Problems of the Panama Canal*, chs. ii–vi; H. C. Weir, *Conquest of the Isthmus;* on the fortification of the canal, see *American Journal of International Law*, III, 354, 885, IV, 314, V, 298, 615, 620. — Orient (§ 268). — International Peace: *American Year Book*, 1910, 87–90, 100–108; J. B. Moore, *American Diplomacy*, ch. viii; J. W. Foster, *Arbitration and the Hague Court;* P. S. Reinsch, *Second Hague Conference* (*Am. Polit. Sci. Review*, II, 204); A. S. Hershey, [*Hague*] *Convention* (*Am. Jour. Internat. Law*, II, 29); *President Taft on*

International Peace (*ibid.*, V, 718); Lake Mohonk Conference on International Arbitration, *Proceedings.* — VENEZUELA AND SANTO DOMINGO: Marquis Barral de Montferrat, *De Monroe à Roosevelt*, ch. xii; T. B. Edgington, *Monroe Doctrine*, ch. xxix; F. G. Newlands, *San Domingo Question* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXXX, 885); J. H. Hollander, *Convention of 1907* (*Am. Jour. Internat. Law*, I, 287); W. C. Dennis, *Orinoco Steamship Case* (*ibid.*, V, 35); J. H. Latané, *Forcible Collection of International Debts* (*Atlantic*, XCVIII, 542). — LIBERIA: *American Year Book*, 1910, 99, 100 (with bibliography). — FISHERIES: P. T. McGrath, *Atlantic Fisheries Dispute* (*Review of Reviews*, XLI, 718); *American Journal of International Law*, I, 144, III, 461, IV, 903, V, 1.

Sources. — GENERAL: *Foreign Relations* (1901–1910); *Congressional Record* (1901–1910); *American Journal of International Law; American Political Science Review.* — PANAMA CANAL: T. Roosevelt, *How we acquired the Panama Canal* (*Outlook*, XCIX, 314, also separate); Isthmian Canal Commission, *Reports; Foreign Relations*, 1903, 132–349; *Congressional Documents* as follows: 58 Cong. 1 sess., *House Docs.*, I, No. 8 (Panama revolt); 2 sess., *Senate Docs.*, III, No. 95, and IV, No. 143, and V, No. 166 (Panama relations); 59 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Docs.*, XV, No. 231 (report of consulting engineers); 2 sess., *Senate Docs.*, XXX–XXXIII (hearings before the Senate committee); 60 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Docs.*, XX, No. 542 (Colombia and Panama). *Opinions of the Attorneys-General*, XXIV, 144 (title to Panama Canal); W. M. Malloy, *Treaties*, I, 782 (Hay-Pauncefote), II, 1349 (Panama); *Parliamentary Papers*, 1901, XCI, [Cd. 438], 1902, CXXX, [Cd. 905]; *American History Leaflets*, No. 34. — VENEZUELA: J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, VI, 586–597, VII, 140, 141; *Foreign Relations*, especially 1901, pp. xxxvi, 193, 195, 1903, pp. 419, 420, 429; *Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 2 sess., XV, No. 316, 3 sess., VII, No. 119, 59 Cong. 1 sess., XXIX, No. 533; R. Tello Mendozo, *Venezuela ante il Conflicto con las Potencias aliadas.* — SANTO DOMINGO: J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, VI, § 962; *Foreign Relations*, 1904, p. xli, 1905, pp. 298, 302; *Senate Docs.*, 59 Cong. 2 sess., V, No. 307 (Samana Bay Co.); S. M. Cullom, *Recollections*, 387–389. — CUBA (§ 266). — LIBERIA: *Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 2 sess., LX, No. 457 (report of Commission). — ALASKA (§ 264). — ORIENT (§ 268). — THE HAGUE CONFERENCES AND TRIBUNAL: J. B. Scott, *Hague Peace Conferences of 1899 and 1907*, and *Text of the Peace Conferences at The Hague*, and *American Addresses at the Second Hague Conference;* F. W. Holls, *Peace Conference* (1899); *American Journal of Inter-*

national Law and supplements *passim;* A. D. White, *Autobiography*, II, chs. xlv–xlix. — FISHERIES: *American Journal of International Law*, I, Sup., 350–377; *North Atlantic Coast Fisheries Arbitration* (*Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 3 sess., No. 870, in 8 vols.).

Bibliography. — A. P. C. Griffin, *List on International Arbitrations*, 77 (debts), 114 (Venezuela), 132 (Santo Domingo); H. A. Morrison, *List relating to Interoceanic Canal;* A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 86 (lect. 88), 196; P. M. Pearson, *Intercollegiate Debates*, No. 12; *American Journal of International Law* (each number contains a list of periodical literature); *Poole's Index*, *Fifth Supplement*, and *Readers' Guide*, and *Annual Library Index* afford access to the mass of magazine material.

§ 268. The Orient, 1861–1910

Summary. — Intercourse with Japan and China (§ 224): 1863–1864, Shimonoseki incidents; 1868, July 28, Burlingame's Chinese treaty; 1865–1869, railroad building and Chinese immigration (§ 246); 1877–1878, California "Sand Lots" agitation. — Restriction of Chinese immigration: 1879, March 1, Hayes's veto; 1880, campaign pledges; treaties of Nov. 17, 1880, and March 17, 1894; 1882, April 4, Arthur's veto; acts of May 6, 1882, July 5, 1884, Sept. 13, 1888, May 5, 1892 (Geary law), Nov. 3, 1893, July 7, 1898 (Hawaiian joint resolution), March 3, 1901, April 29, 1902; mob questions. — Opium trade. — American missionaries in the Orient. — Increased interests in the Pacific (§§ 244, 257, 263, 267): Hawaii; Samoa; Philippines; Guam; Panama Canal. — Problem of Oriental trade: Chinese boycotts; 1899, Hay's policy of "Open Door" and integrity of China; 1900, Boxer insurrection; 1903, Oct. 8, Chinese commercial treaty; 1904–1905, Japanese-Russian War; 1905, Sept. 5, peace of Portsmouth. — Japanese relations: 1906–1907, school question in San Francisco; 1907, Feb. 20, compromise immigrant act; cruise of the American fleet into Pacific. — Problems of Chinese loans, concessions, railroads. — 1909, Feb., Shanghai Opium Conference.

General. — E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, ch. xiv; J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, 295–302; J. W. Foster, *American Diplomacy in the Orient*, chs. vi, viii, x, xiii; C. A. Conant, *United States in the Orient;* A. C. Coolidge, *United States as a World Power*, chs. xvii–xix; P. S. Reinsch, *World Politics*, 86–202, 309–362;

A. T. Mahan, *America's Interest in International Relations*, chs. iii, iv; J. C. Hannah, *Eastern Asia*, ch. xx; W. E. Griffis, *America in the East;* J. M. Callahan, *American Relations in the Pacific*, 82–84, 108–113; Wolf von Schierbrand, *America, Asia, and the Pacific*, chs. iv–vi, xi–xx; J. J. Hill, *Highways of Progress*, chs. viii, ix; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, I, 352, V, 3570, 3585, VI, 668, VII, 666, 668, 672, 674, and cross references; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 356–381, 507, 905–907, 913, 914; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles, China, Chinese Immigration, Japan.

Special. — CHINESE IMMIGRATION: Mary R. Coolidge, *Chinese Immigration;* Lucile Eaves, *California Labor Legislation*, chs. iii–vi; J. R. Commons, *Races and Immigrants*, 117, 152, 235; G. F. Seward, *Chinese Immigration* (1881); *Chinese and Japanese in America* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXIV, No. 2). The periodicals contain much polemic literatures; see "Bibliography." — CHINA: F. W. and S. W. Williams, *China*, chs. vii, viii; G. H. Blakeslee, *China and the Far East;* A. H. Smith, *China in Convulsion*, and *China and America To-day;* Henri Cordier, *Relations de la Chine avec les Puissances Occidentales, 1860–1900*; A. R. Colquhoun, *Mastery of the Pacific;* J. H. Wilson, *Political Affairs in the Far East* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXVI, 59); Alleyne Ireland, *China and the Powers;* H. C. Thompson, *China and the Powers;* B. L. P. Weale, *Reshaping of the Far East* (1905), and *Truce in the East* (1907); T. F. Millard, *New Far East;* A. S. Daggett, *America in the China Relief Expedition.* — JAPAN: I. O. Nitobe, *United States and Japan* (1891); K. K. Kawakami, *American-Japanese Relations;* Louis Aubert, *Américains et Japonais;* Japanese and Korean Exclusion League, *Publications.* — JAPANESE-RUSSIAN WAR: A. S. Hershey, *International Law and Diplomacy of the Russo-Japanese War;* F. E. Smith and N. W. Sibley, *International Law as Interpreted during the Russo-Japanese War;* L. Aubert, *Paix Japonaise*, ch. iii; Kanichi Asakawa, *Russo-Japanese Conflict;* T. J. Lawrence, *War and Neutrality in the Far East.* — MISSIONARIES: J. S. Dennis, *Christian Missions and Social Progress*, and *Centennial Survey of Foreign Missions;* H. O. Dwight and others, *Encyclopedia of Missions;* Donald MacGillivray, *Protestant Missions in China;* A. H. Michie, *Englishman in China*, II, ch. xxii; J. B. Scott, *Government of the United States and Foreign Missionaries* (*Am. Jour. Internat. Law*, VI, 70); S. W. Williams, *Middle Kingdom*, II, ch. xix; *Christian Movement in Japan* (annual, 1902–); Count Okuma, *Fifty Years of New Japan*, II; A. H. Smith, *China and America To-day;* Frank Brinkley, *Oriental Series*, X–XII (see index under

" Christianity "). — American Views of the Oriental Problem: E. A. Ross, *The Changing Chinese;* A. T. Mahan, *Problem of Asia,* and *Lessons of the War with Spain;* P. S. Reinsch, *Intellectual and Political Currents in the Far East;* Brooks Adams, *America's Economic Supremacy,* and *The New Empire;* A. B. Hart, *Obvious Orient;* A. J. Beveridge, *Russian Advance;* H. C. Potter, *East of To-day and To-morrow;* W. A. P. Martin, *Awakening of China.*

Sources. — (See also § 267.) — Official: *Foreign Relations,* especially 1900 under " China," and Rockhill's report on China in App. to 1901; *Congressional Globe; Congressional Record; Congressional Documents;* federal judicial decisions, see the " Bibliography " for detailed references. Among the more important official sources are: J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law,* IV, §§ 567–578 (Chinese exclusion), V, §§ 799–813 (relations with China), VI, § 1025 (mobs), and I, pp. 504–509, III, p. 331, V, §§ 848–851 (Japanese); *Compilation of Laws, Treaties, and Regulations relating to the Exclusion of Chinese* (*Senate Docs.,* 57 Cong. 1 sess., XX, Nos. 291, 300); Department of Commerce and Labor, *Treaties, Laws, etc., governing Admission of Chinese* (1912); *Congressional Documents,* as follows: 44 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Reports,* III, No. 689 (1876, report and testimony of special joint committee to investigate Chinese on Pacific Coast); 45 Cong. 1 sess., *House Misc. Docs.,* I, No. 9 (1877, petition of Calif. Senate); 46 Cong. 2 sess., *House Reports,* II, No. 572 (1880, Blackburn report on immigration); 48 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.,* IV, No. 62 (1887, enforcement of exclusion act); 49 Cong. 1 sess., *House Exec. Docs.,* XXX, No. 102 (1886, anti-Chinese mobs); 51 Cong. 2 sess., *House Reports,* VI, No. 4048 (1891, Lehlbach report and testimony on immigration); 52 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Exec. Docs.,* II, 54 (1893, treaty stipulations and exclusion); 55 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Docs.,* V, No. 120, VI, No. 167 (1897, illegal entry); 56 Cong. 1 sess., *House Docs.,* XCVIII, No. 547 (1900, message on " Open Door "); 57 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Reports,* X, No. 776 (1902, report and testimony on exclusion); 59 Cong. 2 sess., *Senate Docs.,* III, No. 147 (1906, message and Sec. Metcalf's report on Japanese in San Francisco); 61 Cong. 2 and 3 sess., *Senate Docs.* passim, especially No. 633 (reports of Immigration Commission). *Commercial China in 1904* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.,* 1903–1904, p. 2325); *Commercial Japan in 1904* (*ibid.,* 2871). — Unofficial: J. W. Foster, *Diplomatic Memoirs,* II, chs. xxx-xxxiii, xxxvii, xxxviii; J. B. Angell, *Reminiscences,* ch. vi; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years,* II, 651–656; G. F. Hoar, *Autobiography,* II, ch. ix; S. W. William, *Life and Letters;* Yung Wing, *My*

Life in China and America. There is an extensive source literature of missions; see the "Bibliography."

Bibliography. — Henri Cordier, *Bibliotheca Sinica*, especially IV, 2509–2520, 2551–2626; A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List relating to the Far East* (1904), and *Chinese Immigration* (1904); Harvard University, *Guide to Reading in Social Ethics*, 215, 236–242; M. R. Coolidge, *Chinese Immigration*, 505–517; R. E. Cowan and Boutwell Dunlap, *Bibliography of the Chinese Question;* E. E. Sparks, *National Development*, 358; J. H. Latané, *American as a World Power*, 330–332; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 6; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, §§ 86 (lect. 87), 155, 195; J. S. Dennis, *Christian Missions*, end of lectures i–iv, also III, 557–573; H. B. Morse, *International Relations of Chinese Empire*, 693–698; Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXIX, 151 (China); E. H. Parker, *China and Religion*, pp. xi–xiii.

§ 269. The Trust Problem 1898–1910

Summary. — 1890, end of the frontier line; 1896–1898, return of prosperity; agricultural readjustment; gold increase; 1900, March 14, Gold Standard act. — 1898–1902, Era of economic combinations: Morgan's reorganizations of railroads; rise of trusts; Standard Oil, Rockefeller; Harriman's railroad combinations; development of high finance; Wall Street groups; banking alliances; 1899, New Jersey act. — Supreme Court limitation of scope of Sherman Antitrust act (§ 256): 1895, Jan. 21, Knight case; 1897, March 22, Trans-Missouri Freight Association case; 1899, Dec. 4, Addyston Pipe case; extension to labor: 1908, Feb. 3, Danbury Hatters' case (§ 270); 1911, May 15, Gompers contempt case. — Individual trusts: Standard Oil, Amalgamated Copper, Sugar, Tobacco, Whiskey, etc.; 1901, promotion mania; United States Steel Corporation; 1902, Feb. 10, Industrial Commission's final report; President Roosevelt's regulative policy; 1902, Anthracite Coal Strike Commission. — Interstate commerce: Supreme Court's restrictive interpretations of Interstate Commerce act; 1902, Interstate Commerce Commission's report on rebates; 1903, Feb. 14, Department of Commerce and Labor, Bureau of Corporations; Feb. 19, Elkins Antirebate act; Harriman's railroad purchases; 1904, March 14, dissolution of Northern Securities ("holding company" device); 1906, June 29, Hepburn Railway Rate

act, commodities clause. — State regulation of public service corporations (§ 272), types: 1897, Iowa; 1905, 1907, Wisconsin; 1907, New York. — State regulation of trusts. — 1904, Election of Roosevelt; 1904–1905, New York trust companies and the insurance scandal; 1904–1907, prosecutions of trusts, "immunity," investigations; 1907, Jan. 26, act forbidding corporation contributions to politics; panic of 1907; Tennesse Coal and Iron incident; reaction; 1908, May 30, Emergency Currency act; 1909, merger of telephone and telegraph interests; Sugar Trust scandals. — 1909–1910, Taft's trust prosecutions; 1910, June 18, Mann-Elkins Railway act; 1911, May 15, 30, Supreme Court's dissolution of American Tobacco Co. and Standard Oil, the "rule of reason." — Waterpower combinations. — Trust leaders' attitude toward federal regulation.

General. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, ch. xviii; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 334; J. L. Laughlin, *Industrial America*, chs. iv–vii; E. L. Bogart, *Economic History*, ch. xxvii; K. Coman, *Industrial History* (rev. ed.), 355–361; W. Z. Ripley, *Trusts, Pools, and Corporations*, Introd.; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 915–928; A. D. Noyes, *Forty Years of Finance*, chs. xi–xiv, and *Future of High Finance* (*Atlantic*, CV, 229); J. Moody and G. K. Turner, *Masters of Capital* (*McClure's*, XXXVI, 3, 123, 334, 564, XXXVII, 73, 185, 418); McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Corporations, Interstate Commerce; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VII, 116–135, 263–270.

Special. — Concentration of Wealth (§ 253): R. T. Ely, *Evolution of Industrial Society*, ch. vi; F. W. Taussig, *Principles of Economics*, I, ch. vi; C. B. Spahr, *Present Distribution of Wealth;* R. Mayo-Smith, *Statistics and Economics*, bk. iii; Gustavus Myers, *Great American Fortunes;* Anna Youngman, *Economic Causes of Great Fortunes*, ch. iv, and *Tendency of Modern Combination* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, XV, 193, 284); G. K. Holmes, *Concentration of Wealth* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, VIII, 589); B. J. Hendrick, *Great American Fortunes* (*McClure's*, XXX, 33, 236, 323), and *Story of Life Insurance*, especially ch. vii; Yale University, *Morals in Modern Business;* Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life*, chs. viii, xii; E. A. Ross, *Sin and Society*, chs. v, vi; F. L. McVey, *Modern Industrialism;* R. S. Baker, *Our New Prosperity;* C. J. Bullock, *Concentration of Banking Interests* (*Atlantic*, XCII, 182); C. M. Keys, *Money Kings* (*World's Work*, XIV, 9475, XV, 9519, 9705, 9779, XVI,

10,571, 10,683); F. N. Doubleday, *Rockefeller* (*ibid.*, XV, 10,703); I. M. Tarbell, *Rockefeller* (*McClure's*, XXV, 227); C. A. Conant, *Wall Street;* Henry Clews, *Wall Street Point of View;* H. C. Emery, *Speculation on the Stock and Produce Exchanges;* Carl Hovey, *J. P. Morgan;* C. M. Keys, *Harriman* (*World's Work*, XIII, 8455, 8537); Edwin Le Fèvre, *Harriman* (*Am. Mag.*, LXIV, 115); B. J. Hendrick, on Harriman (*McClure's*, XXXIII, 641); Barnard Alderson, *Carnegie;* H. W. Lanier, *The Many-Sided Carnegie* (*World's Work*, I, 618); C. M. Schwab, *Carnegie's Enterprises* (*Engineering Mag.*, XX, 505); American Academy of Political and Social Science, *Annals* passim. The periodicals of the past decade abound in popular criticisms of leading capitalists and trusts; see the "Bibliography."

Trusts: J. W. Jenks, *The Trust Problem* (1902); W. Z. Ripley and others, *Trusts, Pools, and Corporations* (1905); C. R. Van Hise, *Concentration and Control* (1912); R. T. Ely, *Monopolies and Trusts* (1900); W. F. Willoughby, *The Integration of Industry* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XVI, 94); J. B. Clark, *The Control of Trusts* (1901), and *The Problem of Monopoly* (1904); G. H. Montague, *Trusts of To-day* (1904); H. L. Higginson, *Justice to the Corporations* (*Atlantic*, CI, 9); recent economic treatises, as those of F. W. Taussig, A. T. Hadley, H. R. Seager, etc., have useful discussions. — Defense of Trusts: S. C. T. Dodd, *Combinations* (1894), and *Trusts* (1900); George Gunton, *Trusts and the Public* (1899); Henry Apthorp, *Trusts* (1899); C. R. Flint, *Industrial Combinations* (1900); J. H. Bridge, *The Trust, Its Book* (1902); J. R. Day, *Raid on Prosperity* (1908). — Attacks on Trusts: H. D. Lloyd, *Wealth against Commonwealth;* C. W. Baker, *Monopolies and the People;* A. B. Nettleton, *Trusts or Competition;* W. M. Collier, *The Trusts;* Henry Wallace, *Trusts and how to deal with Them;* W. H. Harper, *Restraint of Trade;* Franklin Pierce, *Tariff and the Trusts;* G. L. Bolen, *Plain Facts as to the Trusts and the Tariff.* — Trust Finance: E. S. Meade, *Trust Finance;* W. H. Lough, *Corporation Finance;* Francis Cooper, *Financing an Enterprise.* — Legal Aspects: W. C. Noyes, *The Law of Intercorporate Relations* (3d. ed., 1912); Bruce Wyman, *Control of the Market;* A. J. Eddy, *Law of Combinations;* M. S. Hottenstein, *Sherman Anti-Trust Law* (*Am. Law Review*, XLIV, 827); A. H. Walker, *Standard Oil and Tobacco Cases* (*ibid.*, XLV, 718); H. R. Seager, *Recent Trust Decisions* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXVI, 581); R. L. Raymond, *Federal Anti-Trust Act* (*Harvard Law Review*, XXIII, 353), and *Standard Oil and Tobacco Cases* (*ibid.*, XXV, 31); W. L. Snyder, *Interstate Com-*

merce Act and the Federal Anti-Trust Laws (1906); F. H. Cook, *Law of Combinations, Monopolies, and Labor Unions* (2d. ed., 1909); W. B. Hornblower, *Anti-Trust Legislation and Litigation* (Am. Bar Assoc., *Reports*, XXXVI, 304); G. W. Wickersham, *Recent Interpretations of the Sherman Act* (*Mich. Law Review*, X, 1); Frank Hendrick, *Power to regulate Corporations; North American Review*, CXCIV, 1-95. See also the legal periodicals, especially *Harvard Law Review*, *American Law Register*, *American Law Review* (see § 24 for indexes). — History of Sherman Antitrust Act (§ 256): A. H. Walker, *Sherman Law;* G. F. Edmunds, *Interstate Trust and Commerce Act* (*N. Am. Review*, CXCIV, 803).

Individual Trusts: I. M. Tarbell, *History of the Standard Oil Company;* G. H. Montague, *Standard Oil;* Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on Petroleum Industry* (1905), and *Report on Transportation of Petroleum* (1906); United States *v.* Standard Oil, 173 *Fed. Rep.*, 177, and 221 *U. S.*, 1 (hist. résumé; more extended histories are in the *Briefs* of the case in the Circuit Court). C. P. Connolly, *Montana* (Heinze and Amalgamated, *McClure's*, XXIX, 1, 214, 317). J. H. Bridge, *Carnegie Steel Company;* H. L. Wilgus, *United States Steel Corporation;* Abraham Berglund, *United States Steel Corporation;* F. W. Taussig, *Iron Industry* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XIV, 143, also in C. J. Bullock, *Select Readings in Economics*, 193); N. H. Casson, *Romance of Steel; Hearings before the House* (*Stanley*) *Committee to investigate the Steel Trust;* H. R. Mussey, *Combinations in Mining Industries.* Meyer Jacobstein, *Tobacco Industry*, pt. ii, ch. iv; Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on the Tobacco Industry*, pt. i (1909); United States *v.* American Tobacco Company, 164 *Fed. Rep.*, 700, and 221 *U. S.*, 106 (brief history of trust). P. L. Vogt, *Sugar-Refining Industry;* Herbert Myrick, *American Sugar Industry;* J. C. Welliver, *Mormon Church and Sugar Trust* (*Hampton's*, XXIV, 82), and *Annexation of Cuba by the Sugar Trust* (*ibid.*, 375); A. D. Albert, *Chase of Sugar Smugglers* (*Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 1 sess., VIII, No. 60; cf. IX, No. 87); C. P. Norcross, *Tragedies of the Sugar Trust* (*Cosmopolitan*, XLVIII, 192, also in *Cong. Record*, XLV, 4850); *Hearings held before the Special* (*House*) *Committee on Investigation of American Sugar-Refining Company.* J. O. Armour, *The Packers, the Private Car Lines, and the People;* C. E. Russell, *Greatest Trust in the World;* R. S. Baker, *Railroads on Trial* (*McClure's*, XXVI, 319); Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on the Beef Industry* (1905). A. W. Atwood, *Great Express Monopoly* (*Am. Mag.*, LXXI, 427). Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on Water Power Development* (1912).

Public Service Corporations: Bruce Wyman, *Public Service Corporations;* National Civic Federation, *Report on the Municipal and Private Operation of Public Utilities* (1907); Ivins and Mason, *Public Utilities;* C. L. King, *Municipal Utilities;* L. S. Rowe, *Problems of Municipal Government*, chs. x–xiv; D. F. Wilcox, *Municipal Franchises;* O. L. Pond, *Municipal Control of Public Utilities; Proceedings of Pittsburgh Conference for Good City Government* (1908), 257, 269, 288; B. H. Meyer, *Central Utilities Commissions and Home Rule* (*Am. Polit. Sci. Review*, V, 374); W. Z. Ripley, *Capitalization of Public Service Corporations* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XV, 106). — Railroads (§§ 250, 256): W. Z. Ripley, *Railway Problems* (1907), and *Roosevelt's Railway Policy* (*Atlantic*, XCVI, 377), and *Federal Railroad Regulation* (*ibid.*, CV, 414), and *Railroad Rate Making in Practice* (*Railway Age Gazette*, XLVI *passim*); H. S. Haines, *Restrictive Railway Legislation* (1905), and *Railway Corporations as Public Servants* (1907), and *Problems in Railway Regulations* (1911); C. L. Raper, *Railway Transportation* (1912); B. H. Meyer, *Northern Securities Case*, and *Railway Legislation*, and *Past and Future of Interstate Commerce Commission* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XVII, 394); F. H. Dixon, *Mann-Elkins Act* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, XXIV, 593); F. J. Swayze, *Regulation of Railway Rates under Fourteenth Amendment* (*ibid.*, XXVI, 389); S. W. Briggs, *Regulation of Interstate Commerce, History of Bills and Resolutions* (1862–1911); Cleveland and Powell, *Railway Promotion* passim; Stuart Daggett, *Railroad Reorganization* passim; F. A. Delano, *Perkins of the Burlington* (*Appleton's Mag.*, XI, 294); C. S. Langstroth and Wilson Stilz, *Railway Coöperation* passim; C. S. Vrooman, *American Railway Problems* (1910); F. L. McVey, *Railroad Transportation* (1910); Frank Parsons, *Railways, the Trusts, and the People* (1906), and *Heart of the Railroad Problem* (1906); M. M. Kirkman, *Railway Rates and Government Ownership* (1907); F. H. Spearman, *Strategy of Great Railroads* (1904); C. M. Keys, in *World's Work*, XX, 13,045, 13,419, 13,555, XXI, 13,680; R. S. Baker, *Railroads on Trial* (*McClure's*, XXVI, 318, 398, 535); J. H. Beale and B. Wyman, *Law of Railroad Rate Regulation* (1906); C. H. Hull, *Railway Alliance and Trade Districts* (*Internat. Monthly*, III, 703); Howard Elliot, *Coöperation between the Railway Owner, the Railway Employee, and the Railway User* (1910); E. P. Ripley, *Railroads and the People* (*Atlantic*, CVII, 12); M. A. Knapp and others, *Federal Regulations of Corporations* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXVI, 613); M. B. Hammond, *Railway Rate Theories of the Interstate Commerce Commission* (1911), and *Recent Efforts to Advance*

Freight Rates (*Am. Econ. Review*, I, 766); L. G. McPherson, *The Working of the Railroads* (1907), and *Railroad Freight Rates* (1909); Henry Fink, *Regulation of Railway Rates* (1905); H. R. Meyer, *Government Regulation of Railway Rates* (1905); H. T. Newcomb, *Work of the Interstate Commerce Commission* (1905); W. C. Noyes, *American Railroad Rates* (1905); G. O. Virtue, *Anthracite Combinations* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.*, X, 296).

Sources. — OFFICIAL: T. Roosevelt, *Works* (1902), and *Addresses and Presidential Messages* (1904); W. H. Taft, *Presidential Addresses and State Papers* (1910). *Congressional Records* and *Documents* of the period (see " Bibliography " for *Lists* by Griffin and Superintendent of Documents of references to important documents and speeches). Supreme Court decisions in *United States Reports;* leading cases are. United States *v.* E. C. Knight Co. (1895), 156 *U. S.*, 1; *In re* Debs (1895), 158 *U.S.*, 564; United States *v.* Trans-Missouri Freight Assoc. (1897), 166 *U. S.*, 290; United States *v.* Joint Traffic Assoc. (1898), 171 *U. S.*, 505; Stock Yards cases (1898), 171 *U. S.*, 578, 604; Addyston Pipe and Steel Co. *v.* United States (1899), 175 *U. S.*, 211; Northern Securities Co. *v.* United States (1904), 193 *U. S.*, 197; Swift and Co. *v.* United States (1905), 196 *U. S.*, 375; Loewe *v.* Lawlor (1908, Danbury Hatters' case), 208 *U. S.*, 274; Standard Oil Co. *v.* United States (1911), 221 *U. S.*, 1; United States *v.* American Tobacco Co. (1911), 221 *U. S.*, 106; Gompers *v.* Bucks Stove Co. (1911), 221 *U. S.*, 418. Collections and lists of cases are Bruce Wyman, *Cases on Restraint of Trade* (1903); J. A. Finch and J. L. Lott, *Federal Anti-Trust Decisions* (1890–1911); Department of Justice, *Civil and Criminal Cases instituted under the Antitrust Law and Act to Regulate Commerce* (1908), and *Sherman Antitrust Law with Amendments and Lists of Decisions* (1911). The testimony, briefs, and arguments of the Standard Oil case in the Circuit Court have been printed in 29 vols. Industrial Commission, *Reports*, especially I, II, IV, IX, XIII, XVIII (Europe), XIX (résumé, index, etc.); Interstate Commerce Commission, *Annual Reports*, and *Special Reports*, and *Bulletins*, and *Decisions*, and *Indexes;* Secretary of Commerce and Labor, *Reports;* Commissioner of Corporations, *Reports; Twelfth Census*, *Manufactures*, and *Bulletins*, No. 122 (industrial combinations); *Regulation of Railway Rates, Hearings before the Committee on Interstate Commerce* (1904, with *Digest; Senate Docs.*, 59 Cong. 1 sess., XV–XXI); Interstate Commerce Commission, *Evidence taken on Proposed Advances in Freight Rates* (1911); Railroad Securities Commission, *Report* (1911, *House Docs.*, 62 Cong. 2 sess., No. 256); *Bills and Debates relating to Trusts*

(1888–1902, *Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 2 sess., XIV, No. 147); J. W. Jenks, *Trusts and Industrial Combinations* (1900, Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, No. 29, p. 661); *Amendment of Antitrust Law, Hearings before the (Senate) Committee on the Judiciary* (1908); *Wages and Hours of Labor, 1890 to 1907* (Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, No. 77, p. 1); *Retail Prices of Food, 1890 to 1907* (*ibid.*, p. 181); *Wholesale Prices, 1890 to 1908* (*ibid.*, No. 81, p. 195); New York Legislature, *Report and Proceedings of Joint Committee to Investigate Trusts* (1897, *Senate Docs.*, No. 60); New York (Armstrong) Legislative Insurance Investigating Committee, *Testimony and Report.* — UNOFFICIAL: Chicago Conference on Trusts, *Speeches and Resolutions* (1899); T. Roosevelt, *New Nationalism;* Andrew Carnegie, *Triumphant Democracy* (1886), and *Gospel of Wealth* (1900), and *Empire of Business* (1902); J. J. Hill, *Highways of Progress*, ch. vi; J. D. Rockefeller, *Random Reminiscences; American Year Book* (1910, 1911); *Commercial Year Book* (1898–1900); *Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia* (1898–1902); *Moody's Manual of Corporation Securities* (1900–1909).

Bibliography. — C. J. Bullock, in W. Z. Ripley, *Trusts, Pools, and Corporations*, ch. xviii; A. P. C. Griffin, *Lists relating to Trusts* (3d ed., 1907), and *List on Federal Control* (1904), and *List of More Recent Works on Federal Control* (1907), and *List relating to Iron and Steel in Commerce* (1907), and *List relating to Railroads in their Relation to Government* (1907), and *Select List on Government Ownership* (1903); H. H. B. Meyer, *Select List on the Valuation and Capitalization of Railroads* (1909), and *Select List on the Cost of Living and Prices* (1910); Superintendent of Documents, *Price Lists*, No. 54, *Political Economy* (*s.v.* "Corporations"), No. 25, *Transportation; List of Works relating to Railroad Rates* (N. Y. City Public Library, *Bulletin*, X, 184); University of Chicago, *Bibliography of Economics for 1909; Writings on American History* (see above, § 24); D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, 341; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 339; S. S. Huebner, *Bibliography on Securities and Stock Exchanges* (1910, Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXV, 699); R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 16; *Poole's Index, Fourth* and *Fifth Supplement; Readers' Guide; Annual Library Index.*

§ 270. Labor and Injunction, 1894–1910

Summary. — Earlier phases (§§ 202, 256). — Panic of 1893; unemployment; federal injunctions in strikes. — 1893, Western

Federation of Miners; 1894, Cripple Creek strike. — 1894, Coxey's army. — 1894, Pullman strike: President Cleveland's interference ; federal injunctions; Debs case. — 1898, June 1, Interstate Commerce Arbitration act. — 1898, Federal Industrial Commission formed. — 1901, Steel strike. — 1902, Anthracite Coal strike: President Roosevelt's interference; 1903, March 18, Commission's report. — 1902, Labor Conference of National Civic Federation. — 1903, Feb. 14, Department of Commerce and Labor established. — Increase of large-scale industry. — 1900–1904, rapid growth of American Federation of Labor; Gompers. — 1903–1904, Second Cripple Creek strike: dynamite and deportation; 1907, Moyer and Haywood trial. — 1905, Industrial Workers of the World (socialistic). — Employers' protective associations. — 1906, American Association for Labor Legislation. — 1906, June 11, Liability of Common Carriers act: overturned by Supreme Court. — 1907, March 4, Hours of Railroad Employees act. — 1908, Jan. 31, Roosevelt's message on employers' liability; April 22, new act; sustained by the Court. — 1908, Feb. 3, Danbury Hatters' case. — 1908, Injunction issue in presidential campaign. — 1908–1910, Bucks Stove case. — 1909–1910, Shirtwaist strike. — 1910, Ritchie (Illinois) woman labor case. — Labor problems (§ 256): tendencies of state and federal labor legislation; industrial education; insurance; employers' liability; coöperation and profit sharing; social betterment efforts; socialism; labor in politics (§§ 264, 272); growing class consciousness; attitude toward law and courts.

General. — D. R. Dewey, *National Problems*, ch. xviii; J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, 308–313; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 711–733; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 372–388, 689–698; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 2957, 2958, VI, 268, VII, 384–410, 412; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia*, articles Labor, Strikes, Wages, Women's Labor.

Special. — T. S. Adams and H. L. Sumner, *Labor Problems;* F. T. Carlton, *Organized Labor;* J. R. Commons, *Trade Unionism*, and *Class Conflict* (*Am. Jour. Sociology*, XIII, 756); W. D. P. Bliss, *New Encyclopedia of Social Reform*, 624–627; J. P. Peters, *Labor and Capital;* W. H. Tolman, *Social Engineering* (welfare work); E. A. Pratt, *Organization of Agriculture.* — TRADE UNIONS: C. W. Eliot, *Future of Trade Unionism;* J. O. Fagan, *Labor and the Railroads;*

C. D. Wright, *Labour Organisations* (*Contemp. Review*, LXXXII, 516); M. A. Schaffner, *Labor Contract;* J. H. Hollander and G. E. Barnett, *American Trades Unionism;* M. A. Aldrich, *American Federation of Labor;* E. L. Spedden, *Trade Union Label.* — WAGES (§§ 256, 274): Scott Nearing, *Wages, 1908–1910;* R. C. Chapin, *Standard of Living among Workingmen's Families in New York;* C. H. Henderson, *Pay-day.* — WOMAN AND CHILD LABOR: Edith Abbott, *Women in Industry;* Florence Kelley, *Some Ethical Gains through Legislation;* Annie M. MacLean, *Wage-Earning Women;* Sue A. Clark, *Making Both Ends Meet;* Scott Nearing, *Solution of Child Labor Problem; Child Labor* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXV, No. 3); Josephine Goldmark, *Child Labor Legislation* (*ibid.*, Sup., May, 1908). — STRIKES: W. D. P. Bliss, *New Cyclopedia of Social Reform*, 1167; O. T. Crosby, *Strikes;* B. M. Rastall, *Labor History of the Cripple Creek District;* T. S. Adams, *Violence in Labor Disputes* (Am. Econ. Assoc., *Publications*, 3d ser., VII, 176). — LEGAL ASPECTS: F. H. Cook, *Law of Combinations, Monopolies, and Labor Unions* (2d ed., 1909); G. G. Groat, *Attitude of American Courts in Labor Cases;* L. D. Clark, *Law of Employment of Labor;* Crystal Eastman, *Work-Accidents and the Law;* T. C. Spelling, *Injunctions* (2d ed., 1901); J. L. High, *Law of Injunctions* (1905); W. H. Dunbar, *Government by Injunction;* Lucile Eaves, *California Labor Legislation*, especially ch. xix. — SOCIALISM: M. Hillquit, *Socialism* (5th ed.), pt. ii, chs. iv, v; J. W. Hughon, *American Socialism.* — PERIODICALS: A mass of important data is in such periodicals as the *Annals of American Academy of Political and Social Science*, *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, *Political Science Quarterly*, *Journal of Political Economy*, *American Economic Review*, and the law reviews listed in § 40; see " Bibliography."

Sources. — OFFICIAL: Commissioner of Labor, *Reports* (annual and special); Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin* (bimonthly); reports of state labor bureaus; Industrial Commission, *Report*, V, VII, VIII, X, XII, XIV, XVII, XIX; *Twelfth Census*, especially *Employees and Wages;* Bureau of the Census, *Special Reports; Thirteenth Census* (in preparation); *Senate Docs.*, 53 Cong. 3 sess., II, No. 7, and 57 Cong. 2 sess., XV, No. 209, pp. 228–239 (Pullman strike, 1894); 58 Cong. spec. sess., I, No. 6 (anthracite coal strike, 1902; also in Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, No. 46); 3 sess., III, No. 122 (Colorado, 1880–1904); 58 Cong. spec. sess., I, No. 6 (anthracite coal strikes, 1902; also in Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, No. 46); 61 Cong. 2 sess., XLVI (prices, wages, and hours of labor, 1910); LXXXVI–CIV, No. 645 (woman and child labor, 1910); 62 Cong. 1 sess., No. 110

(iron and steel laborers, 1911, in 4 vols.); Major-General Commanding the Army, *Annual Report*, 1899, pt. i, 28–74 (Idaho miners' riots, 1899). — LAWS, DECISIONS, INJUNCTIONS: *Congressional Record*, XLII, 2361, 7849–7864 (injunctions); *Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 1 sess., XVI, No. 190, and 60 Cong. 1 sess., XXXIII, No. 525 (injunctions); Commissioner of Labor, *22d Annual Report* (1908, laws); Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin* (digest of laws and decisions in almost every number). Federal and other decisions can be reached through *American Digest*, X, 1095–1200, XXVII, 1415, and *American Digest Decennial Edition*, X, 1765, and *American Digest Annotated* under "Conspiracy" and "Injunction." — UNOFFICIAL: American Federation of Labor, *Proceedings of Annual Conventions;* National Civic Federation, *Conference on Industrial Conciliation* (1901); American Association for Labor Legislation, *Review* (and its other publications); National Labor Committee, *Proceedings* (1905–); Russell Sage Foundation, *Publications*, especially *The Pittsburgh Survey; Charities and the Commons*, and the *Survey;* G. Cleveland, *Presidential Problems*, 79–110; T. Roosevelt, *The Roosevelt Policy*, I, 340, II, 444, 676, 703, 738, and *New Nationalism;* W. H. Taft, *Presidential Addresses and State Papers*, 142, 191, and *Political Issues*, 161, 203, and *Present-Day Problems*, 241, 290; W. J. Bryan, *Speeches*, II, 164; John Mitchell, *Organized Labor;* Jane Addams, *Twenty Years at Hull House;* E. V. Debs, *Debs;* J. F. Willard (Josiah Flynt), *Tramping with Tramps;* J. R. Buchanan, *Story of a Labor Agitator;* Harry Orchard, *Confession and Autobiography* (*McClure's*, XXIX *passim*, XXX, 113); the *Appeal to Reason* (Girard, Kan.), the *Call* (N.Y), and *International Socialist Review* (Chicago) represent the socialist movement.

Bibliography. — (See also § 256.) — A. P. C. Griffin, *Select List on Labor and Strikes* (1903), on *Industrial Arbitration* (1903), on *Child Labor* (1906), on *Employers' Liability* (1906), on *Eight-Hour Working Day* (1908), and on *Workingmen's Insurance* (1908); H. H. B. Meyer, *Select List on Cost of Living and Prices* (1910), and on *Boycotts and Injunctions* (1911); Superintendent of Documents, *Labor Question, Price Lists*, No. 33; F. T. Carlton, *Organized Labor* (topical references at end of chs.); Adams and Sumner, *Labor Problems* passim; R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, No. 25; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 229 (injunctions); University of Chicago, *Bibliography of Economics for 1909; Cumulative Index of Labor Laws and Decisions* (1910, Labor Bureau, *Bulletin*, No. 91, pp. 1161–1196); Wisconsin Historical Society, *Bulletins of Information*, No. 44 (labor collection); E. Abbott, *Women in Industry*, 392–399.

§ 271. Tariff, 1898–1910

Summary. — 1897–1909, Dingley tariff (§ 262): reasons for long continuance; antitrust influence; 1902, "Iowa idea"; other state demands for revision. 1904, subordination of tariff issue in campaign. — European tariff tendencies; nationalism; increased cost of living; effects of panic of 1907. — 1908, Republican tariff plank on equalization of cost of production and reasonable profits; Democratic plank; Taft's campaign speeches for revision downward; 1908, Nov.–Dec., tariff hearings. — Payne-Aldrich act: 1909, March 15, special session of Congress to consider tariff; March 16, bill presented; limitation of amendments under the rules; April 10, passage in House; features; Senator Aldrich's leadership; protective amendments in Senate; attacks by Middle Western "Insurgent Republicans"; sectional divisions and combinations; log-rolling; "jokers"; problem of American trust ownership of foreign raw materials; duties restored on iron ore, hides, and coal; lumber schedule; July 8, passage in Senate; non-concurrence of House; presidential influence; conference report; Aug. 5, enactment; provision for Tariff Commission. — Public discontent: 1909, Sept. 17, Taft's Winona speech; "Schedule K"; wood pulp and paper schedule; hostility of the press; 1910, Nov., elections favor Democrats and "Insurgent Republicans" Democratic House; Insurgent (Progressive Republican) balance of power in Senate. — Problems of maximum and minimum clause; discussion of Canadian reciprocity; 1911, April 4, extra session to consider reciprocity; July 26, reciprocity act; rejected by Canada.

General. — J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VII, 640–647; *New International Year Book*, 1909, pp. 686–689, 1910, pp. 701–703; *American Year Book*, 1910, pp. 33–36, 321–325, 1911, pp. 45–48, 90–93, 123, 291.

Special. — F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History* (5th ed.), ch. viii, in *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, XXIV, 1, and in *Atlantic Monthly*, CI, 334 (sugar), CVI, 721 (tariff commission); I. M. Tarbell, *Tariff*, chs. xi–xiii; C. W. Wright, *Wool-Growing and the Tariff*, ch. viii; G. M. Fisk, *Payne-Aldrich Tariff* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXV, 35); H. P. Willis, *Tariff of 1909* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, XVII, 1, 589, XVIII, 1, 173); S. W. McCall, *Payne Tariff Law* (*Atlantic*, CIV, 562); R. L. Bridgman, *Passing of the Tariff;* H. C. Emery, *New Protec-*

tionism (*Yale Alumni Weekly*, XIII, 51), and *Tariff Board* (*Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 3 sess., No. 700); S. K. Hornbeck, *Most-Favored Nation Clause;* R. G. Blakey, *Beet-Sugar Industry and the Tariff.* See also periodicals, especially *Quarterly Journal of Economics, Political Science Quarterly, Journal of Political Economy, American Economic Review.*

Sources. — *Congressional Record*, XLIV, especially the speeches of Aldrich, Cummins, Dolliver, La Follette, and Payne; *Congressional Documents* (see "Bibliography" and § 262): 60 Cong. 2 sess., *House Docs.*, CXXXIII–CXXXVI, No. 1502 (pulp and paper investigation), CXXXVII, No. 1503 (notes on tariff revision), CXXXVIII, No. 1504 (imports and duties, 1894–1907), CXXXIX–CXLVI, No. 1505 (tariff hearings); 61 Cong. 1 sess., *Senate Docs.*, X, No. 68 (wages in Germany); 2 sess., *Senate Docs.*, LVIII, No. 164 (Taft's Winona speech); *House Docs.*, CXXIX, No. 671 (tariff acts, 1789–1909), CXXX, No. 948 (comparison of tariffs of 1897 and 1909); 3 sess., *Senate Docs.*, No. 831 (collected reciprocity treaties); 62 Cong. 2 sess., *House Docs.*, Nos. 342 (message and report of Tariff Board on wool schedule — "Schedule K"), 643 (report of Board on cotton manufactures — "Schedule I"); *Statutes at Large*, XXXVI, 11 (Payne-Aldrich act); Bureau of Census, *Manufactures, 1905.*

Bibliography. — Superintendent of Documents, *List of Documents relating to Tariff, Price Lists*, No. 37 (2d ed.); University of Chicago, *Bibliography of Economics for 1909;* A. P. C. Griffin, *List on Reciprocity* (1902).

§ 272. Politics and Parties, 1900–1910

Summary. — 1900, March 4, Gold Standard act. — Campaign of 1900: Republican convention, McKinley and Roosevelt nominated, "full-dinner pail" slogan; Democratic convention, Bryan nominated, platform subordinates free silver to anti-imperialism (§ 266); Populists; Socialists; Republican success. — 1901, Sept. 6, McKinley assassinated; Sept. 14, death; accession of Roosevelt; his traits and prior career. — Labor and capital (§§ 269, 270); 1903, Feb. 14, Department of Commerce and Labor. — 1901–1903, Panama question (§ 267); other diplomatic issues (§ 267). — Campaign of 1904: Republicans renominate Roosevelt and ignore tariff issue; Democratic convention, Parker nominated, omission of money and income tax planks, Parker's gold-standard telegram;

trust issue; corporation contributions; election of Roosevelt; Democratic governors in Roosevelt states; party splits in state politics. — Reform wave: 1905–1906, New York insurance investigation (§ 269), C. H. Hughes; trust suits (§ 269); 1907, postal and land frauds investigations; beginning of congressional insurgency, control by Aldrich and Cannon, La Follette's roll-call tactics. — Progressive legislation: 1906, June 29, Railway Rate act (§ 269); June 30, Meat Inspection act; June 30, Pure Food act; Roosevelt and Congress; business reaction against administration. — 1907, Oct. 22, Panic; Tennessee Coal and Iron incident. — Conservation (§ 273); betterment commissions (§ 274). — Campaign of 1908: Republicans nominate Taft, Roosevelt's influence, La Follette's rejected platform; Democrats nominate Bryan; platforms; conservatives and radicals; minor parties; election of Taft. — 1909, Extra session: July 12, income tax amendment submitted; tariff (§ 271). — Alaskan lands dispute (§ 271). — Insurgent revolt: 1909, tariff; 1910, March 19, Speaker Cannon overruled by Progressives and Democrats; rules question (§ 262); Republican dissensions; program of Progressives. — 1909–1910, Presidential legislative bills; Progressives dissent; 1910, May 5, Senator Bourne's speech on the Oregon system; 1910, June 18, Mann-Elkins Interstate Commerce act (§ 269), Commerce Court; June 25, enabling act for New Mexico and Arizona; June 25, Publicity of Campaign Contributions act. — Campaign of 1910: high cost of living (§ 273); popular unrest; Democratic House elected; Progressives' balance of power in Senate; increased socialistic vote; Dec. 17, Senator Lorimer acquitted of bribery charge by conservative combination; political effects. — 1911, Jan. 23, National Progressive Republican League organized.— 1900–1910, State and municipal governmental reforms.

General. — J. H. Latané, *America as a World Power*, chs. vii, xiii; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VI, 639–641, 646–666, VII, 665–683; H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, 641–682, 704–716; *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXIII, 707–711, XXVII, 733–735; E. B. Andrews, *Our Own Time*, 865–878, 897–912; *American Year Book*, 1910, chs. iii, vi, 1911, chs. iv, viii; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia* passim; P. L. Haworth, *Reconstruction and Union*, 195–283.

Special. — W. A. White, *The Old Order Changeth;* Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life;* W. E. Weyl, *New Democracy;* Lyman Abbott, *Rights of Man;* Albert Shaw, *Political Problems;* C. W. Eliot, *Conflict between Individualism and Collectivism;* M. Ostrogorski, *Democracy and the Party System*, ch. xiv; F. J. Turner, *Social Forces in American History* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 217), and *Contributions of the West to American Democracy* (*Atlantic*, XCI, 83); N. M. Butler, *Why should we Change our Form of Government?* J. R. Day, *Raid on Prosperity;* C. R. Atkinson and C. A. Beard, *Syndication of Speakership* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXVI, 381); H. B. Fuller, *Speakers*, ch. ix. Contemporary newspapers and periodicals abound in material (§§ 24, 40, 41); consult especially the *North American Review*, *Review of Reviews*, *Literary Digest*, *American Political Science Review*, *World's Work*, *Outlook*, *Independent*, *Arena*, *Harper's Weekly*, *Nation*. Such popular magazines as *Collier's Weekly*, *La Follette's Weekly*, *The American*, *McClure's*, *Everybody's*, *Hampton's*, etc., afford evidence of radical public sentiment. Chronological summaries are in *Political Science Quarterly*, *Literary Digest*, *World Almanac*, *American Year Book*, etc. The references below to periodicals are illustrative merely. — Political Campaigns: E. Stanwood, *Democratic Predicament* (*Atlantic*, XCV, 145: 1904); C. A. Conant, *Meaning of the Election* (*ibid.*, CIII, 93: 1908). — Political Leaders, Roosevelt: P. L. Allen, *America's Awakening;* J. A. Riis, *Roosevelt;* F. E. Leupp, *The Man Roosevelt*, and *Taft and Roosevelt* (*Atlantic*, CVI, 648); "E. S.," *Mr. Roosevelt* (*Atlantic*, CIX, 577); G. W. Douglas, *Many-Sided Roosevelt;* J. S. Bennett, *Roosevelt and the Republic* (anti); M. E. Stone, *Roosevelt, Please Answer* (*Metropolitan*, XXIV); R. A. Benedict, *Malefactors of Great Wealth!* (anti); Leslie Chase, *Rooseveltiana* (anti); Albert Shaw, *Cartoon History of Roosevelt's Career;* Raymond Gross, *T. R. in Cartoon.* — Bryan: H. J. Ford, *Explanation of Bryan* (*World's Work*, XVI, 10,215); F. J. Giddings, *Bryan* (*Century*, LXXIII, 154); Lincoln Steffens, *Bryan-Johnson* (*Everybody's*, XIX, 3). — Taft: *President Taft* (*Atlantic*, CIX, 164); *Political Balance Sheet* (*Outlook*, XCIV, 742); *President and the People* (*World's Work*, XIX, 12,648). — La Follette: L. Steffens, *Enemies of the Republic: La Follette* (*McClure's*, XXII, 563); W. B. Hale, *La Follette* (*World's Work*, XXII, 14,591); R. S. Baker, *Meaning of Insurgency* (*Am. Mag.*, LXXII, 59); F. C. Howe, *Wisconsin, an Experiment in Democracy;* C. McCarthy, *Wisconsin Idea;* L. Steffens, *Sending a State* [*Wisconsin*] *to College* (*Am. Mag.*, LXVII, 349); E. L. Philipp, *Political Reform in Wisconsin* (anti

La Follette); the opposition is best expressed in the conservative daily press. — Others: B. J. Hendrick, *Hughes* (*McClure's*, XXX, 521, 670, see also XXV, 495); I. M. Tarbell, *How about Hughes* (*Am. Mag.*, LXV, 451); Herbert Croly, *Marcus Hanna*, chs xx–xxvi; W. B. Hale, *Woodrow Wilson;* Carl Lorenz, *Tom L. Johnson.*

Popular Government: W. B. Munro, *Initiative, Referendum, and Recall;* A. N. Holcombe, *Popular Government and Current Politics* (*Am. Year Book*, 1910, 138); C. E. Merriam, *Primary Election;* J. R. Commons, *Proportional Representation* (2d ed.), App. ii–v; E. C. Meyer, *Nominating Systems;* G. H. Haynes, *Election of Senators*, and *People's Rule in Oregon* (*Polit. Sci. Quart.*, XXVI, 32); D. F. Wilcox, *Government by all the People* (in press); C. A. Beard, *Initiative, Referendum, and Recall Documents*, and *Digest of Short Ballot Charters;* Jon. Bourne, Jr., *Initiative, Referendum, and Recall* (*Atlantic*, CIX, 122, 143); S. W. McCall, *Representative and Direct Government* (*ibid.*, CVIII, 454); R. L. Owen, *Code of the People's Rule* (*Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 2 sess., LXI, No. 603); *Direct Legislation Record* (quarterly, 1894–1903); J. W. Sullivan, *Direct Legislation* (origins); Margaret A. Schaffner, *Initiative, Referendum, and Recall* (*Am. Polit. Sci. Review*, II, 32); E. P. Oberholtzer, *Referendum;* B. J. Hendrick, *Initiative in Oregon* (*McClure's*, XXXVIII, 235, 435, 505); C. G. Dawes, *Initiative and Referendum;* F. V. Holman, *Some Unsatisfactory Results in Oregon.* — Municipal Government (§ 274): Conference for Good City Government, *Reports;* W. B. Munro, *Government of American Cities* (in press); C. R. Woodruff, *City Government by Commission;* E. S. Bradford, *Commission Government in American Cities;* J. A. Fairlie, *Municipal Administration*, pts. ii–iv, and *Essays in Municipal Administration*, Nos. 1–14; A. R. Hatton, *Digest of City Charters.* — State Government: J. Q. Dealey, *Our State Constitutions;* J. B. Phillips, *Recent State Constitution Making;* P. S. Reinsch, *American Legislatures*, and *Readings on American State Government;* C. A. Beard, *Readings in American Government and Politics*, and *American Government and Politics;* Herbert Putnam, *Legislative Reference Bureaus* (Library of Congress, *Report*, 1911, App. iv). — Progressive Republicans: J. P. Dolliver, *Forward Movement* (*Outlook*, XCVI, 161); R. S. Baker, in *American Magazine*, LXXI, 3, LXXII, 59; W. A. White, *Storming the Citadel* (*ibid.*, LXXII, 570); G. H. Shibley, *Progressive Movement* (*Twentieth Century Mag.*, II, 44). — Corruption: B. B. Lindsey and H. J. O'Higgins, *The Beast;* L. Steffens, *Shame of the Cities*, and in *McClure's Magazine*, XX, XXI *passim* (cities), XXIV, XXV *passim* (states), and *American*

Magazine, LXIV, 489 (land frauds); C. P. Connolly, *Montana* (Clark election, 1898, *McClure's*, XXVII, 627, XXVIII, 27); A. C. McLaughlin, *Significance of Political Parties* (*Atlantic*, CI, 145); Franklin Hichborn, *Story of California Legislature* (1909, 1911); R. C. Brooks, *Corruption in American Politics and Life;* R. Blankenburg, *Forty Years in the Wilderness* (on Pa. politics, *Arena*, XXXIII, XXXIV *passim*); T. W. Lawson, *Frenzied Finance*, and in *Everybody's*, XII–XV *passim*. — CRITICISM OF JUDICIARY: J. A. Smith, *Spirit of American Government*, ch. v; F. J. Goodnow, *Social Reform and the Constitution*, ch. viii; C. A. Beard, *Supreme Court and the Constitution* (in press); Frank Parsons, *Legal Doctrine and Progress;* H. S. Smalley, *Nullifying the Law by Judicial Interpretation* (*Atlantic*, CVII, 452); G. W. Alger, *Criticising the Courts* (*ibid.*, CVIII, 656); G. E. Roe, *Our Judicial Oligarchy;* National Bar Association *Proceedings;* legal periodicals (§§ 27, 40). — SOCIALISM (§ 270): R. F. Hoxie, *Rising Tide of Socialism* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, XIX, 609).

Sources. — PUBLIC DOCUMENTS (§§ 266, 267, 269–271, 273): The *Price Lists* of the Superintendent of Public Documents, especially *Political Economy* (No. 54), *Tariff* (No. 37), *Lands* (No. 20), give useful indications. Presidential messages are particularly important for this section. The *Price Lists* and the special works in §§ cited above give references to significant speeches in Congress. In *Congressional Record*, XLV, 3240–3251, 3281–3335, 3388–3417, 3425–3439, 6274–6282, is the account of the insurgent movement in the House, and 5823–5830 contain Senator Bourne's speech on the Oregon system. In Pacific States Telephone Company *v.* Oregon (1912) the Supreme Court refused to interfere with the Oregon system. — WRITINGS OF LEADERS: W. J. Bryan, *Commoner Condensed* (1902), and *Speeches* (1909), and *Commoner* passim (editor), and in *North American Review*, CLXX, 753 (1900), CLXXI, 788 (1901); R. L. Metcalf, *The Real Bryan* (selections). T. Roosevelt, *American Ideals* (1897), and *Strenuous Life* (1901), and *Works* (1902), and *Addresses and Presidential Messages* (1904), and *African and European Addresses* (1910), and *New Nationalism* (1910); *Outlook* (1910–1912, articles by Roosevelt as contributing editor); Alan Warner, *The Real Roosevelt* (selections). W. H. Taft, *Four Aspects of Civic Duty* (1906), and *Present-Day Problems* (1908), and *Political Issues and Outlooks* (1909), and *Presidential Addresses and State Papers* (1910). R. M. La Follette, *Autobiography* (*Am. Mag.*, LXXII, LXXIII *passim*), and *Personal Narrative of Political Experiences*, and *Railway Regulation* (1905); speeches in the Senate, *Congres-*

sional Record, XL, 5684–5733 (railway rates, 1906), XLII, 3434, 3566, 3793 (trusts and panic, 1908), XLV, 7372 (interstate commerce, 1910). *La Follette's Weekly* (editor, 1909–). W. Wilson, *Constitutional Government* (1908), and *Civic Problems* (1909). T. L. Johnson, *My Story*.

Bibliography. — A. P. C. Griffin, *References on Political Parties*, and *References on Primary Elections;* H. H. B. Meyer, *Additional References relating to Popular Election of Senators;* C. E. Fanning, *Election of Senators*, and *Direct Primaries;* Edith M. Phelps, *Initiative and Referendum* (2d ed.); R. C. Ringwalt, *Briefs on Public Questions*, Nos. 7–9; C. A. Beard, *American Government and Politics*, 755–759; P. S. Reinsch, *Readings on American State Government*, 465–470; W. B. Munro, *Initiative, Referendum, and Recall*, ch. xvi; A. B. Hart, *Manual*, § 205; *Poole's Index*, *Fourth* and *Fifth Supplement; Annual Library Index* (1907–); *Readers' Guide*. These references to periodicals are of especial importance in view of the unorganized contemporaneous political discussion.

§ 273. Conservation

Summary. — Termination of free land era; large-scale exploitation of remaining natural resources (§ 269); contests for Rocky Mountain and Alaskan mines; Southwestern development; influence of arid lands. — "Rushes" to newly opened Indian reservations; migration to Canadian Northwest; investments in Mexico; prospective exhaustion of minerals, soils, public domain. — Irrigation, experience in Utah and the arid Southwest (§§ 216, 260). — 1873, 1890, Agitation by American Association for Advancement of Science; 1888, March 20, Irrigation Division of the Geological Survey authorized; 1891, March 3, Forest Reserves act; 1891–1893, succeeding acts; 1891, March 3, repeal of Preëmption and Timber Culture acts; 1897, President Cleveland's vast forest reservations; 1898, Gifford Pinchot, Chief of Division of Forestry; his training and influence. — Beginnings of Reclamation: 1877, March 3, Desert Land act; 1894, Aug. 18, Carey act. — Roosevelt's policy: 1901, Dec. 3, message; 1902, June 17, Reclamation act, Senator Newlands. — 1905, Jan. 2–6, American Forestry Congress; Feb. 1, the Forestry Service; 1907, March 2, extension of forest reserves; March 14, Inland Waterways Commission; Dec. 3, message; 1908, Oct 7, Lakes to Gulf Deep Waterways Convention

at Chicago; May 13–15, Dec. 8, White House conferences of governors, etc., on conservation; 1909, Jan. 22, report of Conservation Commission presented to Congress; Feb. 23, North American Conservation Conference; March 3, National Waterways Commission act; water powers question; land frauds; Appalachian Reserve bills. — Taft's policy: 1909, Oct. 30, Lakes to Gulf Deep Waterway Convention at New Orleans; July 29, organization of National Conservation Association; Aug. 26–28, first National Conservation Congress at Seattle. — Pinchot's attack on Secretary of Interior Ballinger: Alaskan coal fields (§ 264); Cunningham claims; 1910, Jan. 6, removal of Pinchot; Sept. 9, Dec. 5, reports of investigating committee. — 1910, Jan. 14, President Taft's conservation message; June 22, land act providing for entry of surface and reservation of minerals; June 25, Reclamation Certificates act; June 25, act asserting President's power to reserve lands from entry; Sept. 5–8, Conservation Congress at St. Paul, state or national control, Roosevelt and Taft; 1911, March 1, Conservation of Navigable Waters act. — Significance of conservation issue. — Problems of public domain: minerals; water powers; inland waterways; irrigation; forests; soils; drainage of swamp lands; application of conservation principles to scientific business management, health, etc.

General. — C. R. Van Hise, *Conservation of Natural Resources;* O. W. Price, *The Land we live In;* J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference,* VII, 145; *American Year Book,* 1910, pp. 39–44, 162, 293–311, 687, 688, 1911, pp. 53–56, 418–440; McLaughlin and Hart, *Cyclopedia,* articles Conservation, Irrigation, Public Lands; *Conservation* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals,* XXXIII, No. 3); F. B. Vrooman, *Roosevelt, Dynamic Geographer;* C. A. Beard, *Readings in American Government,* ch. xx; G. Pinchot, *Fight for Conservation;* M. H. Gregory, *Checking the Waste.*

Special. — The Changing West (§§ 259, 260): B. H. Hibbard, *Tenancy* (*Quart. Jour. Econ.,* XXV, 105, 710); E. A. Ross, *Middle West* (*Century,* LXXXIII, 609); F. W. Blackmar, *Kansas after the Drought* (*Review of Reviews,* XXIV, 314); H. N. Casson, *New American Farmer* (*ibid.,* XXXVII, 598); C. H. Matson, *Awakening of Nevada* (*ibid.,* XXXIV, 56); S. A. Thompson, *Great Northwest* (*ibid.,* VIII, 524); W. S. Harwood, *The New Earth;* T. B. Collins, *New Agriculture;* A. C. Laut, *End of Free Land* (*Collier's,* XLVII,

15); W. B. Thornton, *Revolution by Farm Machinery* (*World's Work*, VI, 3766); M. G. Cunniff, *Texas and the Texans* (*ibid.*, XI, 7267), and *Oklahoma* (*ibid.*, XII, 7603); R. E. Rinehart, *Seizing the Desert's Last Stronghold* (*ibid.*, XV, 10,147); G. W. Ogden, *Newest Land of Promise* (*Everybody's*, XVII, 654); Herbert Kaufman, *Southwestward Ho* (*ibid.*, XXII, 723); D. H. MacAdam, *Enter Arizona and New Mexico* (*Metropolitan*, XXIV, 627); J. A. Munk, *Arizona Sketches;* B. S. McGuire, *Big Oklahoma* (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, XVII, 103); B. F. Yoakum, *Ten Years of Oklahoma* (*World's Work*, XXI, 13,928); Emerson Hough, *Oklahoma* (*Appleton's Mag.*, IX, 387); Department of Commerce and Labor, *Agricultural Opportunities . . . Western States* (*Southern Group*, 1912); *American Immigration into Canadian Northwest* (*Daily Consular Reports*, Nov. 17, 1903, etc.). See advertising literature of railroads, state boards, trade periodicals, etc.; *Readers' Guide* under " Frontier " and names of states opens periodical literature.

Public Lands: R. T. Hill, *Public Domain and Democracy*, chs. vii, viii; S. A. D. Puter and Horace Stevens, *Looters of the Public Domain;* Frank Parsons, *Railways, the Trusts, and the People*, ch. viii; J. D. Whelpley, *Nation as a Land Owner* (*Harper's Weekly*, XLV, 1204, 1238, 1283, reprint in *Senate Docs.*, 57 Cong. 1 sess., XVI, No. 183); E. F. C. Bohm, *Carey Act;* C. W. Wilber, *Way of the Land Transgressor* (*Pacific Monthly*, XVIII, XIX *passim*); L. Steffens, *Taming of the West* (*Am. Mag.*, LXIV, 489, 585). — Waterways (§ 259): *American Waterways* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXI, No. 1, XXXIII, 521); Herbert Quick, *American Inland Waterways;* E. R. Johnson, *Ocean and Inland Water Transportation*, chs. xxiv–xxix; W J McGee, *Our Dawning Waterway Era* (*World's Work*, XV, 10,121); J. L. Mathews, *Remaking the Mississippi;* J. C. Mills, *Our Inland Seas*, chs. xvi–xxv. — Reclamation: F. H. Newell, *Irrigation;* W. E. Smythe, *Conquest of Arid America;* Elwood Mead, *Irrigation Institutions;* E. W. Hilgard, *Report on Relation of Soil to Climate*, and *Alkali Lands and Soils;* F. H. King *Irrigation and Drainage*, and *The Soil;* F. W. Blackmar, *Mastery of the Desert* (*N. Am. Review*, CLXXXII, 676), and *Economics and Politics of the Reclamation Service* (*Forum*, XXXVIII, 131); H. C. Taylor, *Economic Problems in Agriculture by Irrigation* (*Jour. Polit. Econ.*, XV, 209); J. H. Beacom, *Irrigation* (*Geog. Jour.*, XXIX, 400); P. Rogers, *Law of New Conditions illustrated by the Law of Irrigation* (Am. Bar Assoc., *Reports*, XXIV, 376); F. G. Newlands, F. H. Newell and others, in *Pacific Monthly*, XVI *passim;* H. M. Wright, *Government as a Home Maker* (*World To-Day*, X,

156); French Strother, *Building a Wonderful Community* (*World's Work*, IX, 5827); A. W. Page, *Real Conquest of the West* (*ibid.*, XV, 9691); H. M. Wilson, *Reclaiming the Swamp Lands* (*Nat. Geog. Mag.*, XVIII, 292). See files of *Irrigation Age*, general periodicals (see "Bibliography"), and Pacific Coast periodicals (§ 264). — DRY FARMING: J. A. Widtsoe, *Dry Farming*, chs. xvii, xviii; J. L. Cowan, *Dry Farming* (*Century*, LXXII, 435); H. Quick, *Desert Farming without Irrigation* (*World's Work*, XII, 7886). — WATER POWERS (see "Sources"). — FORESTS: I. Bowman, *Forest Physiography;* J. E. Defebaugh, *Lumber Industry of America;* G. W. Hotchkiss, *Lumber and Forest Industry of the Northwest; National Cyclopædia of American Biography*, XIII, 136 (Fernow), 340 (Hough, Eggleston), Sup. I, 30 (Pinchot); B. E. Fernow, *Forestry*, 398–438, and *Economics of Forestry*, ch. xi; John Muir, *Our National Parks;* W. H. Page, *Gifford Pinchot* (*World's Work*, XIX, 12,662); W. C. Barnes, *Gifford Pinchot* (*McClure's* XXXI, 319); S. E. White, *Fight for the Forests* (*Am. Mag.*, XLV, 252). — MINERALS (§§ 253, 259, 261; and see "Sources," especially Report of National Conservation Commission). — SOILS (see "General" and "Sources"): I. P. Roberts, *Fertility of the Land.* — COST OF LIVING (§ 270): Irving Fisher, *Purchasing Power of Money;* G. R. Askwith, *Report on Cost of Living and Wages;* J. J. Hill, *Highways of Progress* (see the index), and *Address before Farmers' National Congress* (1908); *Independent*, LXVIII, LXIX *passim; Cosmopolitan*, XLIX *passim; Review of Reviews*, XLI, XLII *passim.* — HEALTH (§ 274). — INDUSTRIAL EFFICIENCY: F. W. Taylor, *Principles of Scientific Management*, and *Shop Management;* Arthur Shadwell, *Industrial Efficiency*, II, ch. xviii. — BALLINGER-PINCHOT INCIDENT (§ 264): see the files of current periodicals in 1909–1910 for criticism of Secretary Ballinger, especially *Collier's*, *Outlook*, *Hampton's Magazine*, *American Magazine*, and *McClure's Magazine;* the daily press, *Leslie's Weekly*, etc., exhibit less opposition. — MAPS (See Superintendent of Documents, *Maps, Price Lists*, No. 53): *United States, showing the Extent of Public Surveys* (General Land Office, 1909); *National Forests* (Forest Service, 1910); *Natural Forest Regions* (*ibid.*, 1910); I. Bowman, *Forest Physiography; Principal Irrigation Projects* (Reclamation Service, 1908); *Grazing Lands* (Public Lands Commission, 1905); Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on Transportation by Water*, pt. i, 60, pt. ii *passim* (water-borne traffic); National Conservation Commission, *Report* passim.

Sources. — Government documents are too abundant for detailed citation; see the "Bibliography," especially the *Price Lists*

of the Superintendent of Documents. Among the more important reports are the following: National Conservation Commission, *Report* (*Senate Docs.*, 60 Cong. 2 sess., X–XII, No. 676); *Proceedings of a Conference of Governors in the White House, May 13–15, 1908* (*House Docs.*, 60 Cong. 2 sess., CXXVIII, No. 1425); Industrial Commission, *Report*, especially XIX (general index); National Conservation Congress in St. Paul, *Report* (1910, Pres. Taft's address is also in *Cong. Record*, XLVI, 34); National Conservation Association, *Publications*, including *American Conservation; Forestry and Irrigation*, continued under the titles *Conservation* and *American Forestry* (issued monthly by the Am. Forestry Assoc.). — BALLINGER-PINCHOT INCIDENT: Senate hearings and reports in *Senate Docs.*, 61 Cong. 2 sess., XLIV, No. 248, 3 sess., XXXIV–XLV, No. 719; Secretary of the Interior, *Annual Reports* (1909, 1910); comment on Pres. Taft's letter to Sec. Ballinger, March 7, 1911, in *Outlook*, XCVII, 566; Commissioner of Public Lands, *Decision on Cunningham Coal Entries*. — LANDS: Commissioner of Public Lands, *Annual Reports;* Public Lands Commission, *Report* (1905, *Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 3 sess., IV, No. 189); G. K. Holmes, *Changes in Farm Values, 1900–1905* (Dept. of Agri., Bureau of Statistics, *Bulletin*, No. 43). — WATERWAYS: Inland Waterways Commission, *Preliminary Report* (*Senate Docs.*, 60 Cong. 1 sess., XVII, No. 325); National Waterways Commission, *Hearings on Development and Control of Water Power* (*ibid.*, 62 Cong. 2 sess., No. 274), and *Final Report* (*ibid.*, No. 654); *Twelfth Census, Water Transportation;* Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on Transportation by Water* (3 pts.); War Department, Chief of Engineers, *Annual Reports*; Chicago Harbor Commission, *Report* (1909). See also reports of Ohio River Valley Improvement Association, Lakes to Gulf Deep Waterway Association, Missouri River Improvement Association, Upper Mississippi River Improvement Association, Western Waterways Association, Columbia River Association, Lake Carriers' Association, Atlantic Deeper Waterways Association, Interstate Inland Waterways Association, National Rivers and Harbors Congresses. — RECLAMATION: Reclamation Service, *Annual Reports* and *Reclamation Record* (monthly, 1908–); *Irrigation* (1902, Census Bureau, *Bulletins*, No. 16); Geological Survey, *Water Supply and Irrigation Papers;* Senate Committee on Irrigation and Reclamation, *Report* (1911, *Senate Reports*, 61 Cong. 3 sess., No. 1281; cf. the report for 1890, *ibid.*, 51 Cong. 1 sess., V, VI, No. 928). — DRY FARMING: *Resources of the Semiarid Region* (*Senate Docs.*, 58 Cong. 3 sess., IV, No. 191), *Congressional Record*, XLII, 4367–4371; Dry Farming Con-

gresses, *Reports;* H. W. Campbell, *Soil Culture Manual.* — FORESTS: Publications of the Forest Service (see Supt. of Docs., *Price Lists,* No. 43; 3d ed.), especially *Annual Reports* of Forester, in *Reports* of the Agricultural Department; G. Pinchot, *Use of the National Forests* (*Forest Service,* 1907); *Manufactures, Lumber and Timber Products* (1905, Census Bureau, *Bulletins,* No. 77); Commissioner of Corporations, *Report on the Lumber Industry* (*Senate Docs.,* 61 Cong. 3 sess., No. 818); Geological Survey, *Forest Reserves* (pt. v in *19th–21st Annual Reports,* 1898–1900), and *Professional Papers,* Nos. 6–9, 22, 23, 29, 30, 33, 37 (Southern Appalachians), 39; American Forest Congress, *Proceedings* (1905); *Lumber Trade* (*Mo. Summary of Com. and Fin.,* 1900–1901, p. 1081). — COST OF LIVING (see Supt. of Docs., *Price Lists,* No. 54): *Wages and Prices* (*Senate Docs.,* 61 Cong. 2 sess., XLVI); Mass. Bureau of Statistics, *Living Conditions of the Wage-earning Population* (1911).

Bibliography. — C. R. Van Hise, *Conservation,* footnotes; A. P. C. Griffin, *List relating to Deep Waterways from Great Lakes to Atlantic* (1908); Superintendent of Documents, *Price Lists,* No. 20, *Lands* (1911), No. 43, *Forest Service Publications* (1911), No. 54, *Political Economy* (1911); E. A. Hedrick, *List relating to Irrigation and Land Drainage* (1902, Dept. of Agri., *Library Bulletin,* No. 41); H. M. Wilson, *Irrigation Engineering* (1909, ch. bibliographies); J. A. Widtsoe, *Dry Farming,* 417–427; Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Soils, *List of Publications* (1907); *Forestry Quarterly* (articles on current literature and periodical literature in each number).

§ 274. American Society in the Twentieth Century

Summary. — Population: numbers; rate of increase; density; distribution; composition; immigration (§ 258); interstate migration; negro question (§ 261); Indians. — Sections: geographic provinces; resources; interrelations. — Government and politics (§ 272). — Defense: army; navy. — Social stratification (§§ 269, 270); distribution of wealth. — Industry (§§ 269, 270, 271, 273): inventions; business methods; "scientific management" (§ 273); improvements in communication and transportation; professions. — Rural conditions; urban conditions (§ 258). — Education: higher; common; public; private; extension; vocational. — Social life: health and sanitation; manners and morals; libraries; philanthropy, huge benefactions for education, medicine, libraries, etc., by Carnegie, Rockefeller, and others; amusements and recrea-

tion, museums, arts galleries, theaters, out-of-door life; arts, painting, sculpture, architecture, landscape gardening and city planning, music. — Social reform: woman's movement; temperance; labor (§ 270); charities and correction; defectives; "uplift movements." — Churches and religious activities. — Literature, sectional traits. — Psychological traits and tendencies; sectional characteristics; American spirit and ideals.

General. — *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.), XXVII, 634–663; W. M. Davis in H. R. Mill, *International Geography*, 710–773; J. F. Muirhead (ed.), K. Baedeker, *United States* (1909); J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth* (1910 ed.), II, chs. lxxvi–cxxiii; P. Leroy-Beaulieu, *United States in the Twentieth Century;* C. D. Wright, *Practical Sociology; American Year Book* (annual since 1910); J. H. Wright, *History of all Nations*, XXIII, ch. v; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, VI, VII, article "United States"; A. B. Hart, *American Ideals; Story of Ten Wonderful Years* (*World's Work*, XXI, 13,838, 13,869); *World Almanac* (annual); H. T. Peck, *Twenty Years*, ch. xvi.

Special. — Travel and Description (§ 38): Hugo Münsterberg, *The Americans*, and *Die Amerikaner*, and *American Traits*, and *Aus Deutsch-Amerika;* J. G. Brooks, *As Others see Us;* H. G. Wells, *Future in America;* J. F. Muirhead, *Land of Contrasts;* Wm. Archer, *America To-day;* Henry James, *The American Scene;* H. P. Robinson, *The Twentieth-Century American;* N. M. Butler, *The American as he Is;* A. M. Low, *America at Home;* R. de Bary, *Land of Promise;* Thérèse Blanc (Th. Bentzon), *Choses et Gens d'Amérique*, and *Les Américaines chez elles* (2d. ed.), and *Questions Américaines;* Paul Bourget, *Outre-Mer;* Paul Adam, *Vues d'Amérique;* Émile Boutmy, *Psychologie Politique du Peuple Américain;* Abbé Félix Klein, *Au Pays de "la Vie Intense,"* and *L'Amérique de Demain;* Chas. Wagner, *My Impressions of America;* Marie Dugard, *Société Américaine;* Jules Huret, *En Amérique;* Raymond Gros, *Au Pays du Dollar;* Urbain Gohier, *Peuple du XX^e Siècle aux États-Unis;* Emil Deckert, *Nordamerika;* Wilhelm von Polenz, *Das Land der Zukunft;* Karl Lamprecht, *Amerikana;* Ludwig Fulda, *Amerikanische Eindrücke;* Alberto Gutierrez, *Notas e Impresiones de los Estados Unidos.* — Sections (§§ 269, 270, East, 261, South, 264, 273, West): Geo. French, *New England;* E. A. Ross, *Middle West* (*Century*, LXXXIII *passim*). — American Appreciations: Herbert Croly, *Promise of American Life;* E. A. Ross, *Changing America;* Henry Van Dyke, *The American Spirit;* T. Roosevelt,

The Strenuous Life, and *New Nationalism;* Barrett Wendell, *Liberty, Union, and Democracy;* C. E. Eliot, *American Contributions to Civilization;* F. H. Giddings, *Democracy and Empire;* A. M. Low, *American People*, II; F. J. Turner, *Social Forces in American History* (*Am. Hist. Review*, XVI, 217). — SOCIAL REFORM (§§ 269, 270, 273): W. D. P. Bliss, *Encyclopedia of Social Reform;* F. H. Streightoff, *Standard of Living among the Industrial People;* J. G. Brooks, *Social Unrest;* F. G. Peabody, *Approach to the Social Question;* W. H. Tolman, *Social Engineering;* H. R. Seager, *Program of Social Reform;* W. B. Bailey, *Modern Social Conditions;* P. U. Kellogg, *The Pittsburgh Survey;* Robt. Hunter, *Poverty; Studies in Philanthropy and Social Progress;* Jane Addams, *Twenty Years in Hull House*, and *Democracy and Social Ethics*, and *Newer Ideals of Peace*, and *The Spirit of Truth;* Chas. McCarthy, *Wisconsin Idea*, chs. vi, x. — CITY PROBLEMS (§§ 256, 269, 272): D. F. Wilcox, *American Cities;* F. C. Howe, *The City the Hope of Democracy;* R. W. De Forest and Lawrence Veiller, *Tenement House Problem;* C. M. Robinson, *Improvement of Towns and Cities;* John Nolen, *What is needed in American City Planning*, and *Replanning Small Cities;* B. C. Marsh, *Introduction to City Planning;* R. M. Hurd, *Principles of City Land Values;* J. A. Riis, *Battle with the Slum;* Chas Zueblin, *American Municipal Progress.* — TEMPERANCE: F. G. Peabody and others (Committee of 50), *The Liquor Problem; Regulation of the Liquor Traffic* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXXII, No. 3); Raymond Calkins, *Substitutes for the Saloon;* John Koren, *Economic Aspects of the Liquor Problem; Anti-Saloon Year Book; American Prohibition Year Book;* United States Brewers' Association, *Year Book.* — RURAL PROBLEMS: L. H. Bailey, *Cyclopedia of American Agriculture*, IV, and *The State and the Farmer*, and *Training of Farmers;* Commission on Country Life, *Report* (also in *Senate Docs.*, 60 Cong. 2 sess., XXI, No. 705); *Country Life* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XL); Sir H. C. Plunkett, *Rural Life Problem;* K. L. Butterfield, *Chapters in Rural Progress;* W. A. McKeever, *Farm Boys and Girls.* — WOMAN MOVEMENT (§ 270, labor): E. A. Hecker, *Woman's Rights; Woman's Work and Organizations* (Am. Acad. Pol. Soc. Sci., *Annals*, XXVIII, No. 2); *Significance of the Woman Suffrage Movement* (*ibid.*, Sup., May, 1910); W. H. Allen, *Woman's Part in Government;* Thérèse Blanc (Th. Bentzon), *Femmes d'Amérique;* C. V. C. de Varigny, *Women of the United States;* Scott Nearing, *Women and Social Progress.* — RECREATION AND AMUSEMENT: R. L. Hartt, *The People at Play;* W. P. Eaton, *American Stage of To-day;* P. H. Davis, *Football;* A. G. Spalding, *American National Game* (baseball);

World Almanac, index under various sports, games, etc. — EDUCATION: B. I. Wheeler, *Unterricht und Demokratie in Amerika;* C. F. Thwing, *Education since the Civil War;* F. H. Swift, *Public Permanent Common School Funds;* C. S. Cooper, *American Undergraduate* (*Century*, XXXIII *passim*); R. S. Bourne, *Two Generations* (*Atlantic*, CVII, 591), and *The College, an Undergraduate View* (*ibid.*, CVIII, 667); H. S. Pritchett, *Spirit of the State Universities* (*Atlantic*, CV, 741); Mosely Educational Commission to the United States, *Reports;* Paul Monroe, *Cyclopedia of Education;* C. W. Eliot, *Education for Efficiency;* D. S. Snedden, *Problem of Vocational Education;* H. S. Person, *Industrial Education; Educational Review;* John Corbin, *Which College for the Boy?* E. E. Slosson, *Great American Universities;* W. T. Foster, *Administration of the College Curriculum;* L. F. Snow, *The College Curriculum;* C. F. Birdseye, *Reorganization of our Colleges;* Abraham Flexner, *American College;* C. S. Slichter, *Recent Criticism of American Scholarship* (Wis. Acad. of Sci., Arts, and Letters, *Transactions*, XIV, 1). — LITERATURE (§§ 261, South, 264, Pacific Coast): G. E. Woodberry, *America in Literature*, 205–253; Barrett Wendell, *Literary History of America*, 514–530. For reviews of current literature, see *Nation*, *Bookman*, *Dial*, and other literary periodicals. — THE NEWSPAPERS: J. E. Rogers, *The American Newspaper;* Will Irwin, *American Newspaper* (*Collier's*, XLVI *passim*); various writers in *Atlantic Monthly*, CV, 145, 303, 646; Francis Fenton, *Influence of Newspapers on Crime* (*Am. Jour. Sociology*, XVI, 342, 538). — ART: Wm. Walton, *Art Institutions* (*Scribner's Mag.*, L, 253); Samuel Isham, *American Painting*, chs. xvi–xxviii; Lorado Taft, *American Sculpture*, pt. iii; L. C. Elson, *American Music;* Henry Tyrrell, *Art Progress* (*World Almanac*, 1911, p. 473, 1912, p. 496); Alfred Hopkins, *American Renaissance* (*Outlook*, XCVIII, 187); Jos. Pennell, *Sky Scrapers of New York* (*Century*, LXIX, 776); *American Art Annual* (1898–); *Art and Progress* (issued by Am. Federation of Arts, 1909–). — BENEFACTIONS (see also § 269 under references to Carnegie and Rockefeller): *World Almanac*, index under "Benefactions." — RELIGION: H. K. Carroll, *Religious Forces;* Henry Bargy, *Religion dans la Société aux États-Unis;* Wilhelm Müller, *Religiöse Leben in Amerika.*

Sources. — OFFICIAL: United States Census publications for 1900 and 1910 (a mine of material on subjects of this section); Industrial Commission, *Report* (§ 269); Department of Commerce and Labor, *Reports*, and *Bulletins*, e.g. *Special Report on Marriage and Divorce*, II (1867–1906); Commissioner of Labor, *Workmen's Insurance* (in *23d Annual Report*); G. W. W. Hanger, *Housing of*

the Working People by Employers (Bureau of Labor, *Bulletin*, No. 54, p. 1191), and *Building and Loan Associations* (*ibid.*, No. 55, p. 1491); Commissioner of Education, *Reports*. — UNOFFICIAL: Publications of the National Civic Federation; National Conference on Charities and Corrections, *Proceedings* (cumulative index, 1907), also the *Proceedings* of the different state conferences; *Charities and The Commons*, and its successor, the *Survey;* National League for the Protection of the Family, *Reports; Journal of Social Science;* National Conference on City Planning, *Proceedings;* Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, *Annual Reports*, and *Bulletins;* National Society for the Promotion of Industrial Education, *Bulletins*. *Congress of Arts and Science* of the Universal Exposition at St. Louis (1904) contains surveys of most of the topics dealt with in this section. A multitude of national organizations devoted to religion, education, art, social reform, science, learning, etc., publish reports, and organs of their work; the above list is merely suggestive. For lists of national organizations, and indications of their activity, see *American Year Book* (annual since 1910), and *World Almanac*.

Bibliography. — Harvard University, *Guide to Reading in Social Ethics and Allied Subjects* (more comprehensive than is indicated by the title); *Economic Bulletin* (published quarterly by the Am. Econ. Assoc., 1908–1910); W. D. P. Bliss, *Encyclopedia of Social Reform;* H. H. B. Meyer, *Select List on City Planning*, and *Select List on Workingmen's Insurance;* Superintendent of Documents, *Price Lists*, No. 24, *Indians*, No. 54, *Political Economy;* J. B. Reynolds, *Civic Bibliography for Greater New York;* R. C. Brooks, *Bibliography of Municipal Administration and City Conditions* (*Municipal Affairs*, I); G. E. Howard, *General Sociology, an Analytical Reference Syllabus*, 66–86; W. S. Monroe, *Bibliography of Education; Bibliography of Education* (1899–1909, annual summaries, of which those for 1899–1906 appeared in *Educational Review*, and for 1907–1909 in *Bulletin*, Nos. 386, 410, of U. S. Bureau of Educ.); E. C. Richardson, *Index to Periodical Articles on Religion; Poole's Index*, *Fourth* and *Fifth Supplement; Readers' Guide*. Others of the references in " Bibliography " of § 200 are applicable here.

Note

In view of the lack of organization of the material on recent history, especial importance is attached to such helps as the subject titles in *Writings in American History*, *American Catalogue*, *United States Catalog*, the *Supplements* to *Poole's Index*, *Readers' Guide*, and *Annual Library Index* (see § 24).

INDEX

[In this index works are entered but once, the reference being to the page on which the title of a work is cited in full, or, in the case of a book not so cited, to the page on which it first appears. The index includes only a selection of the articles from periodicals and proceedings.]

Abbott, H. L., *Panama Canal*, 544.
Abbott, B. V., *U. S. Digest*, 150; *Digest of Law of Corporations*, 408.
Abbott, Edith, *Women in Industry*, 406; *Wages*, 406.
Abbott, L. J., *Oklahoma*, 81.
Abbott, Lyman, *Beecher*, 394.
Abbott, S. W., *Public Hygiene*, 394.
Abbott, Samuel, *Fac-similes of Hist. Am. Maps*, 51.
Abdy, E. S., *Journal*, 90.
Abel, A. H., *Indian Consolidation*, 377.
Abert, J. J., exploration, 433.
Ableman *v.* Booth, 449.
Abolitionists, movement, 423; mails controversy, 425; petitions, 425; literature, 449; polit. activity, 449. — *See also* Antislavery, Slavery.
Abridgement of the [Plantations] Laws, 131.
Academy, articles on hist. methods, 19.
Academy of Pacific Coast History, *Publications*, 158.
Acadia, settlement and cession, 251, 288; removal of Acadians, 288.
Account of a Journey to Niagara, 294.
Accurate Journal, 289.
Ackerman, W. K., *Ill.-Central R. R.*, 402; *Early Ill. R.Rs.*, 402.
Acrelius, Israel, *New Sweden*, 66.
Acton, Baron, *Study of History*, 17.
Acts of Trade, revision, 295, 298.
Adair, Jas., *Am. Indians*, 242.
Adam, Paul, *Vues d'Amérique*, 582.
Adams, Abigail, *Familiar Letters*, 169; *Letters of Mrs. Adams*, 298.
Adams, Alice D., *Neglected Period of Anti-Slavery*, 385.
Adams, Alton D., *Reasonable Rates*, 513.
Adams, Andy, *Log of Cowboy*, 535; *Reed Anthony*, 535; *Texas Match Maker*, 535; *Outlet*, 535.
Adams, Brooks, *Emancipation of Mass.*, 70; *Laird Rams*, 482; *Am. Econ. Supremacy*, 553; *New Empire*, 553.
Adams, C. F. (1), biog., 103; *John Adams*, 103; Eng. mission, 480.
Adams, C. F. (2), *Mass., Historians and History*, 70; *Three Episodes*, 70; *Braintree*, 71; *C. F. Adams*, 103; *R. H. Dana*, 107; *Studies, Milit. and Dipl.*, 169; *Railroads*, 402; *Const. Ethics of Secession*, 465; *Trent Affair*, 482; *J. Q. Adams and Emancipation*, 487; *Lee at Appomattox*, 501; *Chapters of Erie*, 505; *Granger Movement*, 512; *Pensions*, 541; *Imperialism*, 553.
Adams, C. K., *Manual of Hist. Lit.*, 30.
Adams, E. D., *Brit. Interests in Texas*, 440; *Eng. Interest in Cal.*, 442.
Adams, F. C., *Uncle Tom at Home*, 423.
Adams, H. B., *History in Am. Colleges*, 17; *Sparks*, 118; *Germanic Origin*, 279; *Md.'s Influence*, 312; *Contribs. to Am. Educ. Hist.*, 393.
Adams, H. C., *Taxation*, 349; *Public Debts*, 349; *Farmer and Ry. Legis.*, 513; *Surplus Financiering*, 520.
Adams, Hannah, *Memoir*, 169.
Adams, Henry, *U. S.*, 41; *Gallatin*, 108; *Randolph*, 116; *N. Eng. Federalism*, 176; *Chapters of Erie*, 505.
Adams, John, biogs., 103; *Works*, 163; *Familiar Letters*, 169; peace negotiations, 310; *Defence of Constitutions*, 314; administration, 358–362; defeat for reëlection, 361.
Adams, John Q., biogs., 103; *Madison and Monroe*, 114; *Memoirs*, 169; Eng. mission, 335; *Jubilee of Constitution*, 344; and Monroe doctrine, 386; election and admin., 388; antislavery congressman, 425; abolition petitions and censures, 425; and Texas, 439.
Adams, Natl., *Portsmouth*, 75.
Adams, Nehemiah, *South Side View*, 422.
Adams, Samuel, biogs., 103; *Writings*, 163; *Appeal*, 296; *Instructions*, 297.
Adams, T. S., *Labor Problems*, 524; *Violence in Labor Disputes*, 568.
Adams, W. H. D., *Eng. Party Leaders*, 309.
Addams, Jane, *Twenty Years at Hull House*, 569; *Democracy and Social Ethics*, 583; *Newer Ideals of Peace*, 583; *Spirit of Truth*, 583.
Addis, W., *Bibl. of Negro Educ.*, 498.
Addyston Pipe case, 560.
Adler, Felix, *Child Labor in Southern Industry*, 537.
Administration. — *See* Executive.
Admissions of states, 205, 206, 375, 409, 483, 489, 502, 530, 534, 572.
Adney, Tappan, *Klondike*, 548.
Adolphus, John, *England*, 41.
Agassiz, E. C., *L. Agassiz*, 103.
Agassiz, Louis, biogs., 103.
Agnew, D. H., *Phila. Almshouse*, 395.
Agnew, Daniel, *Pa. North of the Ohio*, 82.
Agriculture, colon., 291, 327; pioneer, 375;

trans-Alleghany surplus of products, 375; conditions (1820–60), 398; land grants for colleges, 508; growth of western (1862–80), 508; Granger movement, 512; Alliance and People's party, 523, 539; northwestern wheat region, 530; depression (1890), 530; modern cotton raising, 536; southern development, 536. — *See also* Economic conditions, Irrigation, and products by name.
Aguilar, Martin de, voyage, 331.
Aguinaldo, Emilio, revolt, 551.
Aikin, D. W., *Grange*, 512.
Aikin, J. G., *Digest*, 132.
Akins, T. B., *Docs. of U. S.*, 150.
Alabama, bibl., 63; hists., 63; records and statutes, 132; hist. soc., 158; territory, 375; admission, 375; secession, 466; reconstruction, 490, whites regain control, 495. — *See also* South, States.
Alabama, and *Kearsarge*, 475; depredations, 480.
Alabama claims, origin, 480; negotiation and arbitration, 500.
Alabama Hist. Soc., pubs., 158.
Alaska, bibl., 63; hists., 63; Russian claims and delimitation, 386; purchase, 500; fur seals question, 543; gold discoveries, 545; boundary, 545; mineral claims controversy, 545, 577; govt., 545.
Alaska Salmon Com., *Report*, 548; monographs, 548.
Alaskan Boundary Tribunal, *Proceedings*, 548.
Albach, J. R., *Annals of the West*, 58.
Albany, N. Y., annals, 143.
Albany Congress, 289.
Albany Institute, pubs., 161.
Albemarle, Earl of, *Rockingham*, 117.
Alcott, L. M., hist. novel, 184.
Alden, G. H., *New [Western] Govts.*, 321; *State of Franklin*, 338.
Alderson, Barnard, *Carnegie*, 562.
Aldrich, C. R., *Repeal of Granger Law*, 513.
Aldrich, M. A., *Am. Fed. of Labor*, 568.
Aldrich, N. W., control in Congress, 572.
Aldrich, P. E., *Origin of N. Eng. Towns*, 279.
Aldrich, T. B., hist. novel, 187.
Aldridge, Reg., *Ranch Notes*, 535.
Alexander, D. S., *Polit. History*, 342.
Alexander, E. P., *Memoirs*, 477.
Alexander, J. E., *Transatlantic Sketches*, 90.
Alexander, W. D., *Hawaiian People*, 544.
Alexander, Wm., biog., 118.
Alfriend, F. H., *Davis*, 107.
Algeciras Convention, 555.
Alger, R. A., investigation, 549; *Span.-Am. War*, 550.
Algerine war, 379.
Alien and Sedition acts, 360.
Allen, A. V. G., *Phillips Brooks*, 104; *Jon. Edwards*, 107.
Allen, C. H., *Govt. in Porto Rico*, 554.
Allen, Ethan, biog., 103; *Narrative*, 303.
Allen, G., *Reminiscences*, 169.
Allen, G. W., *Naval War with France*, 359; *Navy and Barbary Corsairs*, 364.
Allen, Ira, *Vermont*, 86.
Allen, J. A., *Am. Bisons*, 506.
Allen, J. G., *Topical Studies*, 12.
Allen, J. L., hist. novels, 184.
Allen, P. L., *Am.'s Awakening*, 573.
Allen, Paul, ed. of *Lewis and Clark*, 97.
Allen, W. A., *Chamberlain's Admin.*, 497.
Allen, W. F., *Reader's Guide*, 183; *Essays*, 279; *Hist. Topics*, 325.
Allen, W. H., *Woman's Part in Govt.*, 583.
Allen, W. V., *Populism*, 542.
Allibone, S. A., *Dict. of Eng. Lit.*, 38.
Allinson, Samuel, *Acts of N. J.*, 142.
Allison, W. B., silver bill, 516.
Allison, W. H., *Materials for Am. Relig. Hist.*, 181.
Almon, John, *Chatham*, 116; *Collection of Papers*, 131; *Charters*, 131; *Remembrancer*, 306.
Altamira, Rafael, *Enseñanza de la Hist.*, 17.
Altgelt, J. P., *Live Questions*, 535.
Altsheler, J. A., hist. novel, 184.
Alvord, C. W., *St. Joseph*, 307; *Vincennes*, 307; *Cahokia Records*, 320; *Kaskaskia Records*, 320; *Proc. of 1763*, 321; *Treaty of Ft. Stanwix*, 321; *County of Ill.*, 333.
Alvord, J. W., *Letters*, 496.
Amadas, Philip, voyage, 257.
Amalgamated Copper trust, 560.
Amaron, C. E., *Your Heritage*, 529.
Ambler, C. H., *Sectionalism in Va.*, 321; *Va. and Pres. Succession*, 440; *Disfranchisement in W. Va.*, 491.
Amendments to constitution, first ten, 341; eleventh, 381; proposed, 486; thirteenth, 486; fourteenth, 489; fifteenth, 489; for income tax submitted, 572.
America, naming, 246.
American Academy of Polit. and Soc. Sci., *Annals*, 123; *New South*, 537; *Am.'s Race Problems*, 537; *Am. Colon. Policy and Admin.*, 552; *Foreign Policy*, 552; *U. S. as World Power*, 555; *Chinese and Japanese in Am.*, 558; *Child Labor*, 568; *Am. Waterways*, 578; *Regulation of Liquor Traffic*, 583; *Country Life*, 583; *Woman's Work and Organizations*, 583; *Woman's Suffrage*, 583.
American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Soc., 423.
American Antiq. Soc., article on hist. methods, 19; pubs., 158.
American Anti-Slavery Soc., 423.
American Archives, 156.
American Art Annual, 584.
American Assoc. (Revolutionary), 298.
American Assoc. for Advancement of Sci., and conservation, 576.
American Assoc. for Labor Legis., 567; *Review*, 569.
American Board of Foreign Missions, *Annual Reports*, 397.
American Catalogue, 33.
American Catholic Hist. Researches, 292.
American Church Hist. Ser., 58.
American Commonwealth Ser., 62.
American Colonization Soc., 385; *Reports*, 386.
American Convention, 385; *Minutes*, 386.
American Digest, 156.
American Federation of Labor, 523, 567.

American Forestry Congress, 576; *Proceedings*, 581.
American Geog. Soc., *Bulletin*, 47.
American Geologist, 47.
American history, scope, 1; relation to hist. of other nations, 2, 4; materials, 3; relation to other studies, 4; educ. value, 5; value as training in use of materials, 5; complexity and unity, 6, 7; truth in, 8–10; point of view, 10–12.
American Hist. Leaflets, 178.
American Hist. MSS. Com., *Reports*, 180.
American Historical Assoc., reports, conferences, and articles on study of history, 16, 19; *Bibl. of Am. Hist. Socs.*, 32; *Writings on Am. Hist.*, 34; conference report on geog. and hist., 45; pubs., 158.
American Hist. Review, articles on hist. methods, 19; value, 122.
American History Ser., 40.
American Home Missionary Soc., *Reports*, 397.
American-Irish Hist. Soc., pubs., 158.
American Jewish Hist. Soc., pubs., 158.
American Jewish Yearbook, 529.
American Library Assoc., bibl. aids, 32, 33.
American Negro Academy, *Papers*, 538.
American Pioneer, 377.
American Prohibition Year Book, 583.
American Revolution, value of study, 5; important dates, 201, 202; underlying causes, 291; passive resistance (1761–66), 295; active resistance (1767–74), 298; outbreak, 301; siege of Boston, 301; invasion of Canada, 301; independence, 303; in middle states and west, 304; French alliance, 308; conciliation plan, 308; in south, 309; peace, 310; Confederation, 311; finances, 312; state govts., 313.
American State Papers, 154.
American Statesmen Ser., 102.
American Sugar Refining Co., 560; investigation, 563.
American system, 379.
American Tobacco Co., 560; case, 561.
American Year Book, 38.
Ames, Fisher, biog., 103; *Works*, 163; *Speeches*, 348.
Ames, H. V., *Outlines*, 31; *State Docs.*, 176; *X. Y. Z. Letters*, 359; *Proposed Amendments*, 410.
Ames, J. G., *Comprehensive Index*, 37.
Ames, M. C., *Ten Years*, 169.
Ames, Seth, *F. Ames*, 103.
Amesbury, Mass., history, 71.
Amherst, Jeffrey, *Journal from Letters*, 289.
Amnesty act, 495.
Amory, T. C., *Jas. Sullivan*, 118; *John Sullivan*, 118.
Ampère, J. J., *Promenade en Am.*, 90.
Amphlett, Wm., *Emigrant's Directory*, 53.
Amusements (1820–60), 391; present day, 581. — *See also* Social life.
Anarchists in Chicago, 523.
Anburey, Thos., *Travels*, 91.
Anderson, Adam, *Commerce*, 292.
Anderson, E. H., *[Mormon] Church*, 434.
Anderson, F. M., *Contemp. Opinion of Va. and Ky. Resolutions*, 360.
Anderson, J. S. M., *Colon. Church*, 287.
Anderson, R. B., *Norweg. Immigration*, 392.
Anderson, Robt., at Ft. Sumter, 468, 470.
Anderson *v.* Dunn, 381.
André, John, biog., 103.
Andreas, A. T., *Chicago*, 67.
Andrew, A. P., *Finan. Diagrams*, 499; *Statistics*, 499.
Andrew, J. A., biogs., 103.
Andrews, C. M., *Bibl. of Hist.*, 30; *Guide to Materials in Brit. Museum*, 181; *Colon. Self-Govt.*, 260; *River Towns of Conn.* 279; *Brit. Committees*, 324.
Andrews, E. B., *U. S.*, 40; *Our Own Time*, 58.
Andrews, Sidney, *South since War*, 494.
Andros, Edmund, govt. and overthrow, 286.
Andros Tracts, 286.
Angell, J. B., *Reminiscences*, 559.
Ann, Cape, settlements at, 276.
Annals of Congress, 153.
Annapolis, history, 70.
Annapolis Convention, 339.
Annexations, 316; La., 365; Fla., 365, 383; Ore., 365, 437; Texas, 439; Cal., New Mex., 442; Gadsden purchase, 442; desire for Cuba, 451; Alaska, 500; attempts in W. I., 500; Hawaii, 543; after Span. war, 551; Tutuila, 551; Canal Zone, 554. — *See also* Territory.
Annual Library Index, 33.
Annual Literary Index, 33.
Annual Register, 297.
Anson, W. R., *Law and Custom*, 324.
Anthony, S. B., *Woman Suffrage*, 58.
Anthracite Coal Strike Com., 560, 567.
Antietam, battle, 475.
Antifederalists, 341.
Anti-imperialism, 571. — *See also* Dependencies.
Antimasonic party, 412.
Antin, Mary, *Promised Land*, 529.
Antinomianism, 280.
Antirent agitation in N. Y., 430.
Anti-Saloon Year Book, 583.
Antislavery, movement and societies before 1830, 385, 423. — *See also* Abolitionists, Slavery.
Appalachian Reserve bills, 577.
Applegarth, A. C., *Quakers in Pa.*, 327.
Applegate, J., *Day with Cow Column*, 436.
Appleton, Nathan, *Corresp. with Lowell*, 403; *Power Loom*, 403; *Labor*, 407.
Appletons' Annual Cyclopædia, 38.
Appletons' Cyclop. of Am. Biog., 40.
Appletons' Hand-Book of Travel, 53.
Apthorp, Henry, *Trusts*, 562.
Arber, Ed., *Pilgrim Fathers*, 274.
Arbitrary arrests during Civil war, 483.
Arbitration, industrial. — *See* Labor.
Arbitration, international, northeastern boundary, 437; Alabama claims, 500; San Juan boundary, 500; Halifax commission, 500; Venezuela-Guiana boundary, 543; draft general treaties, 543, 555; Bering Sea, 543; Alaska boundary,

545; Pan-Am. treaty, 555; fishery, by Hague tribunal, 555. — *See also* Foreign relations, International peace.
Arbuthnot affair, 383.
Archæological Institute of Am., *Reports* and *Papers*, 158.
Archæology of N. Am., 240.
Archer, Gabriel, narrative, 258.
Archer, Wm., *Afro-America*, 538; *America To-day*, 582.
Archives. — *See* Public records.
Arfwedson, C. D., *U. S. and Canada*, 91.
Arias, H., *Panama Canal*, 526.
Arizona, bibl., 63; hists., 63; records, 132; mining rush, 502; territory, 502; enabling act, 572. *See also* Southwest.
Arkansas, hists., 63; records and statutes, 132; hist. soc., 158; territory, 375, 385; admission, 409; secession, 470; milit. govt., 489; reconstruction, 490; whites regain control, 495. — *See also* South, States.
Arkansas Hist. Soc., pubs., 158.
Armes, Ethel, *Coal and Iron in Ala.*, 537.
Armour, J. O., *Packers*, 563.
Armroyd, Geo., *Internal Nav.*, 404.
Armstrong, E. C., biog., 496.
Armstrong, John, *Wayne*, 310; *War of 1812*, 372.
Armstrong, M. K., *Early Empire Builders*, 65.
Army, after Revolution, 333; fed. and confed., 472, 483; negro troops, 486. — *See also* wars by name.
Arnold, Benedict, biogs., 103; treason, 304.
Arnold, Sir Edwin, *Seas and Lands*, 91.
Arnold, I. N., *Benedict Arnold*, 103; *Lincoln*, 112.
Arnold, J. R., *Handbook of Philippines*, 552; *Philippine Service*, 552.
Arnold, S. G., *Rhode Island*, 83.
Art and Progress, 584.
Arthur, C. A., administration, 520; veto of Chinese immigration bill, 557.
Articles of Confederation, 312; attempted finan. amendments, 334. — *See also* Confederation.
Arts, condition (1820–60), 391; Pacific coast, 546; present day, 582. — *See also* Social life.
Asakawa, K., *Russo-Jap. Conflict*, 558.
Asbury, Francis, biog., 377; *Heart of Journal*, 378.
Ashburton treaty, 437.
Ashe, S. A., *North Carolina*, 79.
Ashe, Thos., *Travels*, 91.
Asher, G. M., *Henry Hudson*, 266.
Ashley, R. L., *Am. Fed. State*, 410.
Ashley's men, exploration, 432.
Askwith, G. R., *Cost of Living*, 579.
Association of History Teachers of Middle States, *Conventions*, 16.
Assumption of state debts, 348.
Astoria, 366, 372, 431.
Athens Co., O., history, 81.
Atkinson, C. R., *Syndication of Speakership*, 573.
Atkinson, Ed., *Cost of War*, 553.
Atkinson, F. W., *Philippine Islands*, 552.
Atkinson, G. H., *Northwest Coast*, 532.
Atkinson, Henry, exploration, 433.
Atkinson, Jos., *Newark*, 75.
Atlanta, capture, 475.
Atlanta University, *Publications*, 538.
Atlantic City, history, 75.
Atlantic Monthly, articles on hist. methods, 19.
Attleborough, Mass., history, 71.
Attorneys-General, *Opinions*, 155. — *See also* Dept. of Justice.
Atwater, Caleb, *Ohio*, 80.
Atwater, E. E., *New Haven*, 64.
Atwood, W. W., *Topog. Maps*, 48.
Aubert, Louis, *Américains et Japonais*, 558; *Paix Jap.*, 558.
Auckland Correspondence, 308.
Audubon, J. W., *Western Journal*, 91.
Auger, Édouard, *Voyage*, 436.
Augusta Co., Va., histories, 87, 88.
Austin, G. L., *Phillips*, 116.
Austin, J. G., hist. novels, 184.
Austin, J. T., *Gerry*, 108.
Austin, Mary, *Land of Little Rain*, 534.
Austin, O. P., *Expansion*, 316.
Austin, S. F., *Journal*, 435.
Austin, Stephen, in Texas, 433.
Australian ballot, 521.
Austria, Keiley incident, 543.
Autobiographies; value, 168; select list, 169–176.
Avary, Mrs. M. L., *Dixie*, 493.
Avery, E. M., *United States*, 41.
Avezac, Armand d', *Waltzeemüller*, 246.
Ayllon, L. V. de, colony, 248.

B., A., *Account of Revolutions*, 286.
Babcock, K. C., *Scandinavian Element*, 318; *Rise of Am. Nationality*, 370.
Babson, J. J., *Gloucester*, 72.
Bache, R. M., *Gen. Meade*, 114.
Bacheler, A. W., *Reference Handbook*, 13.
Backus, Isaac, biog., 103; *Baptists*, 292.
Bacon, E. M., *Provincial Press*, 126.
Bacon, L. W., *Am. Christianity*, 327.
Bacon, Leonard, *Hist. Discourses*, 282.
Bacon, Thos., *Laws of Md.*, 137.
Bacon's rebellion, 260.
Bacourt, A. F. de, *Souvenirs*, 91.
Badeau, Adam, *Grant*, 109.
Bailey, L. H., *Cyclop. of Am. Agri.*, 400; *State and Farmer*, 583; *Training of Farmers*, 583.
Bailey, W. B., *Social Conditions*, 583.
Baillie, Wm., *J. Warren*, 407.
Baillie-Grohman, W. A., *Camps in the Rockies*, 503.
Baily, Francis, *Journal*, 91.
Baird, C. W., *Rye*, 78; *Huguenot Emigration*, 250.
Baird, S. J., *New School*, 394.
Baker, C. W., *Monopolies*, 562.
Baker, E. A., *Best Fiction*, 183; *History in Fiction*, 183.
Baker, J. H., *Transp. in Minn.*, 531.
Baker, J. M., *Finding List*, 35.
Baker, Marcus, *Geog. Dict. of Alaska*, 548.
Baker, R. S., *Color Line*, 537; *New Prosperity*, 561.

Balboa, V. N. de, discovery, 245.
Balch, E. G., *Our Slavic Fellow Citizens*, 318.
Balch, T. W., *Alabama Claims*, 501; *Alaska Frontier*, 546.
Baldwin, Henry, *General View*, 344.
Baldwin, J. D., *Ancient Am.*, 240.
Baldwin, J. G., *Flush Times*, 396.
Baldwin, S. E., *Am. Judiciary*, 347; *Island Territory*, 552.
Baldwin Locomotive Works, history, 402.
Ballads, special, and collections, 189, 190.
Ballagh, J. C., *White Servitude*, 328; *Slavery in Va.*, 422.
Ballard, Ed., *Popham Colony*, 283.
Ballinger, R. A., Pinchot controversy, 577.
Ballou, Adin, *Hopedale*, 408.
Baltimore, Cecil, Baron, biog., 105; settlement of Md., 262.
Baltimore, George, Baron, biog., 105; career, 262.
Baltimore, history, 70.
Bancroft, Fred., *Seward*, 117; *Negro in Politics*, 496.
Bancroft, Geo., *U. S.*, 41; biog., 103; *Hist. of Constitution*, 312; *Plea for Constitution*, 350; *Van Buren Corresp.*, 441.
Bancroft, H. H., *Literary Industries*, 17; *Pacific States*, 41; (*Alaska*, 63; *Arizona and N. Mex.*, 63; *Cal.*, 64; *Nev., Col., and Wy.*, 64; *Wash., Idaho, and Mon.*, 67; *Oregon*, 81; *North Mex. States and Texas*, 85; *Utah*, 86; *Mexico*, 241; *Central Am.*, 245;) *Native Races*, 241; *Chronicles of Builders*, 505; *New Pacific*, 546.
Bandelier, A. F., *Investigations*, 240; various papers on Indians, 241; on Cabeza and Marcos, 249; *Zuñi Tribe*, 249.
Bandini, A. M., *Vespucci*, 247.
Bank of United States, first, 348; its constitutionality, 350; second established, 379; Jackson's war on second, 414; removal of deposits, 417; fate, 418; attempts to revive, 430.
Banks, N. P., speaker, 456.
Banks, land, in provincial Mass., 286; of North America, 333; state, after War of 1812, 379; pet, 418; speculation, 419; Whig attempts under Tyler, 430; after Civil War, 498; tax on circulation of state, 498.—*See also* Bank of U. S., Finances, National banks, Panics.
"Barbarossa," *Lost Principle*, 463.
Barbary powers, relations with, 354, 363, 379.
Barbé-Marbois, François, *Louisiane* and *Louisiana*, 69; *Complot d'Arnold*, 307.
Barber, J. W., *New York*, 76; *Conn.*, 282; *New Jersey*, 294.
Barbeyrac, Jean, *Supplément*, 52.
Barcia, A. G., *Florida*, 248.
Barclay, Robt., *Agri. Tour*, 91.
Barclay, Thos., *Corresp.*, 169.
Bargy, Henry, *Relig. dans la Société*, 584.
Barker, E. C., *Finances of Texas Rev.*, 435; *Slave Trade in Texas*, 435; *Jackson and Texas*, 440.
Barlow, Arthur, voyage, 257.
Barlow, Joel, *Writings*, 163.
Barnard, Henry, biog., 393; *Normal Schools*, 396; *Am. Jour. of Educ.*, 396; *Educ. Biog.*, 407; *Educ. and Labor*, 407.
Barnburners, 445.
Barneby, W. H., *Life*, 91.
Barnes, Albert, *Scriptural View*, 422.
Barnes, M. S., *Hist. Methods*, 17.
Barnes, T. W., *T. Weed*, 120.
Barnett, G. E., *Bibl. of Am. Trade Union Pubs.*, 525; *Am. Trades Unionism*, 568.
Barney, Joshua, biog., 104.
Barney, Mary, *J. Barney*, 104.
Barns, C. R., *Missouri*, 73.
Barr, W. W., *Mental Defectives*, 394.
Barral de Monteferrat, Marquis, *De Monroe à Roosevelt*, 452.
Barrett, J. A., *Ordinance of 1787*, 80.
Barrett, John, *Dewey*, 550.
Barrett, Lawrence, *Forrest*, 394.
Barringer, G. A., *Cat. de l'Hist. d'Am.*, 34.
Barrows, D. P., *Philippines*, 552.
Barrows, H. H., *Geog. of Ill. Valley*, 67.
Barrows, Wm., *Oregon*, 81.
Barry, J. S., *Massachusetts*, 71.
Barry, T. A., *San Francisco*, 436.
Bartlett, D. W., *Pres. Candidates*, 461.
Bartlett, J. R., *Bibl. of R. I.*, 83; *Personal Narrative*, 91; *Gaspee*, 300; *Lit. of Rebellion*, 472.
Bartlett, Josiah, *Medical Science*, 293.
Barton, R. T., *Va. Colon. Decisions*, 151.
Bartram, Wm., *Travels*, 91.
Bary, R. de, *Land of Promise*, 582.
Basanier, Martin, *Floride*, 251.
Baskin & Co., O. L., *Denver*, 64.
Bassett, J. S., *Jackson*, 111; *Regulators*, 321; *Writings of Wm. Byrd*, 321; *Const. Beginnings in N. C.*, 326; *Servitude in N. C.*, 328; *Federalist System*, 346; *Slavery in N. C.*, 422.
Bastidas, Rodrigo de, voyage, 245.
Batchelder, G. A., *Dakota Ter.*, 65.
Bateman, W. O., *Polit. and Const. Law*, 318.
Bates, A. C., *Conn. Statute Laws*, 133.
Bates, F. G., *R. I. and Union*, 338.
Bates, Mary, *Calhoun*, 105.
Bates, S. A., *Records of Braintree*, 139.
Bates, W. W., *Am. Navigation*, 357; *Am. Marine*, 400.
Batts, Thos., *Journal*, 321.
Baxter, J. B., *Gorges*, 276.
Bayard, J. A., *Documents*, 362.
Bayard, Jas., *Exposition*, 344.
Bayard, R. H., *Documents*, 362.
Bayard, T. F., biog., 515; canal diplomacy, 526.
Bayley, R. A., *National Loans*, 313.
Baylies, Francis, *New Plymouth*, 274.
Beadle, J. H., *Undeveloped West*, 503; *Western Wilds*, 503.
Beale, J. H., *Law of R. R. Rate Regulation*, 564.
Beaman, C. C., *Ala. Claims*, 481.
Beaman, M. G., *Index Analysis*, 152.
Bean, T. W., *Valley Forge*, 306.
Beard, C. A., *Readings in Am. Govt.*, 326; *Syndication of Speakership*, 573; *Ini-*

tiative Docs., 574; *Short Ballot Charters*, 574; *Am. Govt.*, 574; *Supreme Ct. and Constitution*, 575.
Beardsley, E. E., *Seabury*, 118.
Beatson, Robt., *Naval and Military Memoirs*, 302.
Beaumarchais, Caron de, biogs., 308.
Beauregard, P. G. T., biog., 467.
Beazley, C. R., *Dawn of Modern Geog.*, 337; *Cabots*, 255.
Becher, A. B., *Landfall*, 244.
Becker, C. L., *Unit Rule*, 520.
Bedford, Duke of, *Corresp.*, 296.
Bee, Thos., *Reports*, 151.
Beecher, C. E., *True Remedy*, 397; *Domestic Economy*, 407.
Beecher, H. W., biogs., 104, 394.
Beecher, Lyman, *Autobiog.*, 169.
Beecher, W. C., *H. W. Beecher*, 104.
Beer, G. L., *Commercial Policy*, 292; *Brit. Colon. Policy*, 324.
Belknap, Jeremy, *New Hampshire*, 75.
Belknap scandal, 510.
Bell, C. H., *Exeter*, 75.
Bell, H. C., *Leitersburg*, 320.
Bell, John, campaign of 1860, 460.
Bell, W. A., *New Tracks*, 503.
Bellamy, Ed., *Looking Backward*, 523.
Belligerency, in Civil war, 480.
Belly, Félix, *Am. Centrale*, 527.
Belmont, battle, 475.
Beltrami, G. C., *Pilgrimage*, 91.
Bemis, E. W., *Discontent of Farmer*, 541.
Benedict, David, *Baptists*, 292.
Benedict, R. A., *Malefactors of Great Wealth*, 573.
Benedict, W. A., *Sutton*, 72.
Benjamin, J. P., biog., 452.
Bennett, E. H., *Mass. Digest*, 151.
Bennett, J. G., biog., 394.
Bennett, J. S., *Roosevelt*, 573.
Bennett, Rich., in Md., 263.
Bennington, Vt., history, 86; battle, 305.
Benoist, Chas., *Espagne, Cuba, Etats-Unis*, 550.
Bentley, A. F., *Western Farmer*, 513.
Bentley, H. L., *Cattle Ranges*, 534.
Benton, E. J., *Wabash Trade Route*, 401.
Benton, T. H., biogs., 104; *Thirty Years' View*, 169; *Abridgment*, 349; and Texas, 439; *Hist. and Legal Exam.*, 458.
Bentzon, Th. — *See* Blanc (Thérèse).
Berglund, A., *Wheat in Wash.*, 547; *U. S. Steel Corporation*, 563.
Bering, Vitus, voyage, 431.
Bering Sea arbitration, 543.
Berkeley, Lord, and New Jersey, 268.
Berkeley, Sir Wm., in Va., 260.
Bernard, Sir Francis, biog., 104; *Letters on Trade*, 292.
Bernard, John, *Retrospections*, 169.
Bernard, Mountague, *Neutrality*, 466.
Bernhard of Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach, *Reise* and *Travels*, 91.
Bernheim, Ernst, *Lehrbuch der hist. Methode*, 17.
Bernheim, G. D., *German Settlements*, 264.
Bernheimer, C. S., *Russian Jew*, 318.
Besse, Jos., *Quakers*, 270.
Beste, J. R., *Wabash*, 91.
Beveridge, A. J., *Russian Advance*, 559.
Beverly, Robt., *Virginia*, 86.
Bibliographies, of methods, 15, 16; use, 23; special aids, 28–30; formal, 30, 31; outlines, 31, 32; indexes, 32–34; library cats., 34, 35; indexes to fed. docs., 35–37; of N. Am. geology, 47; general state and local, 62; special state, 63–88 *passim*.
Bibliography of Educ., 585.
Bibliothèque Nationale, *Cat.*, 34.
Biddle, Chas., *Autobiog.*, 169.
Biddle, Nich., *Bank of U. S.*, 414.
Biddle, Rich., *Cabots*, 255.
Bienville, Sieur de, biog., 104; in La., 253.
Bigelow, John, *Tilden*, 119; ed. of Franklin's *Works*, 165; *Retrospections*, 169; *France and Confederate Navy*, 481; *Supreme Ct. and Electoral Court*, 515.
Biggar, H. P., *Trading Companies*, 251.
Billon, F. L., *St. Louis*, 73.
Binney, C. C., *H. Binney*, 104.
Binney, Horace, biog., 104; *Habeas Corpus*, 484.
Binns, John, *Recollections*, 169.
Biographical Cong. Directory, 38.
Biographies, series, 102; select list of individual, 103–121.
Bioren, John, *Laws of U. S.*, 46; *Laws of Pa.*, 145.
Bird, Isabella, *Englishwoman in Am.*, 91.
Birdseye, C. F., *Reorgan. of Colleges*, 584.
Birkbeck, Morris, *Notes of Journey*, 91; *Letters from Ill.*, 91.
Birkhimer, W. E., *Milit. Govt.*, 491.
Birney, C. H., *Grimké Sisters*, 424.
Birney, J. G., biog., 104; abolitionist, 423.
Birney, Wm., *J. G. Birney*, 104.
Bishop, A. L., *Geography*, 48; *State Works of Pa.*, 401.
Bishop, C. F., *Elections*, 278.
Bishop, Geo., *N. Eng. Judged*, 284.
Bishop, J. L., *Am. Manufactures*, 58.
Bisset, Jas., *Abridgment*, 137.
Bittinger, L. F., *Germans in Colon. Times*, 320; *Ger. Relig. Life*, 320.
Black, Alex., *Ohio*, 80.
Black, H. C., *Const. Law*, 318.
Black, J. S., *Stanton*, 118; *Reports*, 155; and secession, 468.
Black codes, 489.
Black Friday, 408.
Black Hawk war, 419.
Black Hills, mining rush, 502.
Black Warrior affair, 451.
Blackburn, W. M., *N. and S. Dak.*, 65.
Blackmar, F. W., *Robinson*, 117; *Span. in Southwest*, 248; *Fed. and State Aid to Higher Educ.*, 393; *Mastery of Desert*, 578; *Economics and Politics of Reclamation*, 578.
Blackstone, Wm., *Commentaries*, 297.
Blaine, J. G., biogs., 104; *Twenty Years*, 169; S. Am. policy, 500, 543; Mulligan letters, 510; candidacy (1880), 520; (1884), 521; canal dipl., 526; and fur seals, 543.
Blair, E. H., *Indian Tribes*, 242.

Blair, Jas., in Va., 261; *Va.*, 261.
Blake, Jas., *Dorchester*, 72.
Blakeslee, G. H., *China*, 558.
Blakey, R. G., *Beet-Sugar and Tariff*, 571.
Blanc, Thérèse, *Choses et Gens d'Amérique*, 582; *Américaines chez elles*, 582; *Questions Am.*, 582; *Femmes d'Amérique*, 583.
Blanchard, Claude, *Journal*, 293.
Blanchard, Rufus, *Northwest*, 80.
Bland, Ed., *Discovery*, 321.
Bland, R. P., biog., 104; and silver, 516; articles on silver, 542.
Bland, Rich., *Enquiry*, 296.
Bland-Allison act, 516.
Blane, W. N., *Excursion*, 91.
Blankenburg, R., *Forty Years in Wilderness*, 522.
Blauvelt, M. T., *Cabinet Govt.*, 324.
Blaxton, Wm., settlement, 276.
Bledsoe, A. T., *Liberty and Slavery*, 422; *Is Davis a Traitor?*, 465.
Blennerhassett, Harman, biog., 368; *Papers*, 368.
Bliss, E. M., *Missions*, 394.
Bliss, W. D. P., *New Encyc. of Social Reform*, 524.
Bliss, W. F., *History in Elementary Schools*, 13.
Blockade in Civil war, 475, 480.
Blouët, Paul, *Jonathan*, 99.
Blount, J. H., in Hawaii, 543.
Blowe, Daniel, *View of U. S.*, 53.
Blunt, Jos., *Confederacy*, 237.
Boardman, Jas., *America*, 92.
Boardman, Tim., *Log-Book*, 169.
Bodge, G. M., *Soldiers in King Philip's War*, 285.
Bogart, E. L., *Economic Hist.*, 58.
Boggess, A. C., *Settlement of Ill.*, 67.
Bohm, E. F. C., *Carey Act*, 578.
Boker, G. H., *Poems of War*, 477.
Bole, J. A., *Harmony Soc.*, 406.
Bolen, G. L., *Trusts and Tariff*, 562.
Boller, H. A., *Indians*, 503.
Bolles, A. S., *Finan. Hist.*, 313; *Pa.*, 337.
Bolton, C. K., *Scotch-Irish Pioneers*, 320.
Bolton, H. E., *Span. in Texas*, 435.
Bond, B. W., *Monroe's Mission*, 355.
Bond, Phineas, *Letters*, 336.
Bonds. — *See* Public debt.
Bone, J. H. A., *Petroleum*, 403.
Bonfils, H., *Droit Internat.*, 550.
Bonham, Jeriah, *Recollections*, 169.
Bonnet, T. F., *Regenerators*, 547.
Bonsal, Stephen, *Santiago*, 551.
Bonus bill, 379.
Boone, Daniel, biogs., 104; in Ky., 319.
Boone, R. G., *Education*, 327.
Booth, Edwin, biog., 394.
Booth, J. B., biog., 394.
Booth, M. L., *New York*, 78.
Borcke, Heros von, *Confed. War*, 474.
Borgeaud, Chas., *Democracy*, 297; *Premiers Constitutions*, 314; *Adoption and Amendment of Constitutions*, 314.
Boscawen, Ed., *Journal from Letters*, 289.
Boston, hists., 71; *Records*, 139; settlement, 277; *Instructions* (1764), 296; *Liberty* affair, 298; Massacre, 298; Tea Party, 298; Port act, 298; siege, 301. — *See also* Suffolk Co.
Boston Public Library, *Annual List*, 34; *Bulletin*, 34; *Index*, 36; *Bibl. of Higher Educ. of Women*, 397.
Botume, E. H., *Contrabands*, 423.
Boudinot, Elias, biog., 104.
Boudinot, J. J., *E. Boudinot*, 104.
Boundaries, intercolon. disputes, 237; Va. charter, 258; Md., 262; N. Y., 268; Pa. disputes, 269, 332, 337; Ga. charter, 265; Conn., 281, 337; in treaty of 1783, 310; summary of internat. disputes, 316; colon. Indian line, 319; Mass.-N. Y. preëmption line, 332; Pa.-Va. line, 332; S. C.-Ga., 337; La. purchase, 365, 383; northeastern controversy, 437; northern line, 437; Oregon controversy, 437; San Juan arbitration, 500; Alaska, 545. — *See also* Territory.
Bourget, Paul, *Outre-Mer*, 92.
Bourgmont, Sieur de, exploration, 431.
Bourke, J. G., *On the Border*, 507.
Bourne, E. G., *Northmen*, 243; *Spain in Am.*, 244; *Bull of Demarcation*, 245; *De Soto*, 249; *Champlain*, 251; *Use of History by Framers*, 340; *Surplus Revenue*, 401; *Essays in Hist. Criticism*, 435; *Aspects before 1840*, 438.
Bourne, H. E., *Teaching of History*, 17.
Bourne, Jon., speech on Oregon system, 572; *Initiative*, 574.
Boutell, L. H., *R. Sherman*, 117.
Boutmy, Émile, *Eng. Constitution*, 324; *Const. Law*, 344; *Psychologie Polit. du Peuple Am.*, 582.
Bouton, Natl., *Concord*, 75.
Boutwell, G. S., *Speeches*, 163; *Constitution*, 464; *Reminiscences*, 493.
Bowden, Jas., *Friends in Am.*, 270.
Bowditch, N. I., *Mass. General Hospital*, 395.
Bowen, C. W., *Boundary Disputes*, 282.
Bowen, Francis, *Otis*, 115.
Bowker, R. R., *Reader's Guide*, 30; *State Pubs.*, 32; *Am. Cat.*, 33.
Bowles, Samuel, biog., 104; *Across the Continent*, 503; *Our New West*, 503.
Bowles's New Map, 53.
Bowman, Isaiah, *Forest Physiog.*, 432.
Boxer insurrection, 557.
Boyd, Andrew, *Lincoln Bibl.*, 472.
Boyd, C. E., *Cases*, 177; *County of Ill.*, 333.
Boyd, D., *Greeley*, 64.
Boyd, W. K., *Antecedents of N. C. Convention*, 321; *W. W. Holden*, 496.
Boykin, Samuel, *H. Cobb*, 106.
Bozman, L. L., *Maryland*, 70.
Brackenridge, H. H., hist. novel, 184; *Insurrection*, 358.
Brackenridge, H. M., *Western Insurrection*, 357.
Brackett, J. R., *Negro in Md.*, 328.
Bradbury, John, *Travels*, 92.
Braddock, Ed., defeat, 289.
Bradford, Alden, *Mass.*, 71; *Mayhew*, 114; *Speeches of Govs.*, 138; *Mass. State Papers*, 297.
Bradford, E. S., *Commission Govt.*, 574.
Bradford, T. L., *Bibliographer's Manual*, 32.

Bradford, Wm., *Plymouth Plantation*, 163; as a source, 273; in Holland and Plymouth, 273–275; *Letter Book*, 274.
Bradford, Wm., of Phila., biog., 305.
Bradley, J. B., *Misc. Writings*, 493.
Bradley, M. M., *Polit. Beginnings*, 438.
Brady, C. T., *Indian Fights*, 506; *Northwestern Fights*, 506.
Brainerd, Ezra, *Emma Willard*, 393.
Braintree, Mass., hists., 71; records, 139.
Brandenburg, B., *Imported Americans*, 528.
Brann, H. A., *John Hughes*, 110.
Brannan, John, *Official Letters*, 373.
Brant, Jos., biog., 306.
Brayton, G. A., *Samuel Gorton*, 109.
Breckinridge, J. C., campaign (1860), 460.
Breen, M. P., *N. Y. Politics*, 510.
Breese, Sidney, *Illinois*, 67.
Bremer, Fredrika, *Homes of the New World*, 92.
Brenaman, J. N., *Va. Conventions*, 148.
Brereton, John, narrative, 258.
Bretz, J. P., *Postal Extension*, 376.
Brevard, Jos., *Digest*, 146.
Brevoort, J. C., *Verrazano*, 249.
Brewer, W., *Alabama*, 63.
Brewster, C. W., *Portsmouth*, 75.
Brewster, Wm., Pilgrim, 273.
Brice, W. A., *Fort Wayne*, 67.
Bridge, J. H., *The Trust*, 562; *Carnegie Steel Co.*, 563.
Bridgman, Laura, biog., 395.
Bridgman, R. L., *Passing of Tariff*, 570.
Briggs, C. A., *Am. Presbyterianism*, 273.
Briggs, S. W., *Regulation of Interstate Com*, 564.
Brigham, A. P., *Geog. Influences*, 48.
Brigham, C. S., *Bibl. of R. I.*, 83; *Archives of R. I.*, 83; *R. I.*, 83.
Brigham, Wm., *Laws of New Plymouth*, 275.
Bright, John, *Speeches on Am. Question*, 482.
Brightly, F. C., *Digest of Decisions of Pa.*, 151; *Analytical Digest*, 152; *Law of Elections*, 411.
Brinkerhoff, R., *Recollections*, 511.
Brinkley, Frank, *Oriental Series*, 558.
Brinton, D. G., *Aboriginal Am. Authors*, 243.
Briscoe *v.* Kentucky, 412.
Brissot de Warville, J. P., *Nouveau Voyage* and *New Travels*, 92.
Bristed, C. A., *Upper Ten Thousand*, 396.
Bristed, John, *Resources*, 381.
Bristol, R. I., history, 83.
Bristol Parish, Va., history, 87.
British and Foreign State Papers, 473.
British Dominions in N. Am., 58.
British Museum, *Cat.*, 34; *Subject Index*, 34.
Brock, Isaac, biog., 372.
Brock, R. A., *Virginia*, 86; *Huguenot Emigration*, 294.
Brock, S. J., *Com. and Shipping of Gt. Lakes*, 572.
Brockett, L. P., *Western Empire*, 532.
Broderick, D. C., biog., 460.
Brodhead, J. R., *New York*, 76; *Address before N. Y. Hist. Soc.*, 286.
Bromme, Traugott, *Reisen*, 92.
Bromwell, W. J., *Immigration*, 395.
Bronson, E. B., *Reminiscences*, 535.
Brook, Lord, and Conn., 281.
Brook, Benj., *Relig. Liberty*, 273.
Brookings, W. D., *Brief for Debate*, 32.
Brookline, Mass., history, 71; *Records*, 139.
Brooklyn, histories, 77.
Brooks, A. H., *Mining of Alaska*, 548; *Geog. and Geol. of Alaska*, 548.
Brooks, E. S., *New York*, 76.
Brooks, J. G., *As Others see Us*, 89; *Social Unrest*, 583.
Brooks, J. T., *Gold Finders*, 436.
Brooks, Noah, *Knox*, 112; *Washington in Lincoln's Time*, 170.
Brooks, Phillips, biog., 104.
Brooks, R. C., *Bibl. of Munic. Admin.*, 412; *Corruption*, 575.
Brothers, Thomas, *United States*, 92.
Brough, C. H., *Irrigation*, 86.
Brown, A. E., *J. Hancock*, 109.
Brown, A. J., *Philippines*, 552.
Brown, Alex., *First Republic*, 87; *Genesis of U. S.*, 87.
Brown, B. F., *Maryland*, 263.
Brown, C. B., hist. novel, 184.
Brown, C. R., *Govt. of Ind.*, 67.
Brown, E. E., *Middle Schools*, 58; *Origin of State Universities*, 393.
Brown, G. W., *John Brown*, 104.
Brown, Henry, *Illinois*, 67.
Brown, Ignatius, *Indianapolis*, 67.
Brown, J. C., *Merchant Banking*, 407.
Brown, J. E., biog., 492.
Brown, J. H., *Texas*, 85.
Brown, J. H., *Lamb's Biog. Dict.*, 38.
Brown, Jacob, in War of 1812, 372.
Brown, John, *British Churches*, 292.
Brown, John, biogs., 104; in Kan., 454; raid, 458.
Brown, John, *Pilgrim Fathers*, 273.
Brown, S. G., *Choate*, 105.
Brown, S. R., *Western Gazetteer*, 53.
Brown, W. G., *Lower South*, 58; *Ala.*, 63; *Douglas*, 107; *Ellsworth*, 107; *Jackson*, 111; *Tenth Decade*, 490.
Brown, W. H., *First Locomotives*, 404.
Brown *v.* Maryland, 381.
Browne, A. G., *J. A. Andrew*, 103.
Browne, C. F., *Artemus Ward*, 485.
Browne, J. H., *Secessia*, 477.
Browne, J. R., *Pacific Slope*, 53; *Report of Cal. Convention*, 132; *Mineral Resources*, 503; *Apache Country*, 507.
Browne, N. E., *A. L. A. Portrait Index*, 33.
Browne, W. H., *Barons Baltimore*, 105; *A. H. Stephens*, 118.
Bruce, H. A., *Boone*, 104; *Expansion*, 316.
Bruce, Henry, *Sam Houston*, 110; *Oglethorpe*, 115.
Bruce, P. A., *Econ. Hist of Va.*, 87; *Institutional Hist. of Va.*, 87; *Plantation Negro*, 496.
Bry, Theodor de, *Voyages*, 242.
Bryan, W. J., biog., 104; campaign (1896), 540; *First Battle*, 542; *Speeches*, 569; campaign (1900), 571; (1908), 572; *Commoner Condensed*, 575; *Real Bryan*, 575.
Bryant, C. S., *Great Massacre*, 506.
Bryant, W. C., *United States*, 41.

Bryce, Geo., *Canadian People*, 252; *Hudson's Bay Co.*, 252.
Bryce, Jas., *Am. Commonwealth*, 58; *Predictions of Hamilton*, 392; *Cuba*, 553.
Bryce-Root treaty, 555.
Buchanan, Jas., biog., 104; *Works*, 163; *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, 170; and abolition petitions, 425; Mex. policy, 452; and Kan., 454; election, 456; and Dred Scott decision, 458; Covode investigation, 460; and secession, 468.
Buchanan, J. R., *Labor Agitator*, 525.
Buchanan, Roberdeau, *McKean*, 113.
Buck, Ed., *Ecclesiastical Law*, 279.
Buck, J. S., *Milwaukee*, 88.
Buck, S. J., *Oklahoma*, 81; *Granger Movement*, 512; *Independent Parties*, 512; *Agri. Organs*, 512.
Buck, W. J., *Penn*, 115; *Indian Walk*, 271.
Buckingham, Lord, *Courts*, 311.
Buckingham, J. S., *America*, 92; *Eastern and Western States*, 92; *Slave States*, 92.
Buckingham, J. T., *Newspaper Lit.*, 126.
Buckle, H. T., *Civilization*, 273.
Buckley, J. M., *Methodism*, 496.
Buckman, D. L., *Old Steamboat Days*, 401.
Bucks Stove case, 567.
Budd, Thos., *Good Order in Pa.*, 270.
Buell, Rowena, *Rufus Putnam*, 322.
Buffalo, history, 77.
Buffalo Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Bugbee, J. M., *Govt. of Boston*, 411.
Bugbee, L. G., *Texas Empresario*, 435; *Slavery in Early Texas*, 435.
Bujac, Émile, *Campagnes Contemp.*, 550.
Bulfinch, Thos., *Oregon*, 81.
Bull of Demarcation, 244.
Bull Run, battles, 475.
Bullen, F. T., *Men of Merchant Service*, 404.
Bulloch, J. D., *Secret Service*, 481.
Bullock, C. J., *Finances*, 334; *Finan. Hist. of Mass.*, 338; *Monetary Hist.*, 338; *Readings in Finance*, 516; *Readings in Economics*, 524; *Concentration of Banking Interests*, 561.
Bullock, Wm., *Journey*, 92.
Bump, O. F., *Notes*, 464.
Bunau-Varilla, P., *Panama*, 526.
Bunker Hill, battle, 301.
Bureau of Census, *Century of Pop. Growth*, 291; *Street Rys.*, 524; *Census of Philippine Islands*, 553; *Manufactures*, 571; *Irrigation*, 580; *Lumber and Timber Products*, 581.
Bureau of Corporations, *Reports: Petroleum*, 518; *Transp. of Petroleum*, 563; *Tobacco*, 563; *Beef*, 563; *Water Power Development*, 563; *Transp. by Water*, 580; *Lumber*, 581.
Bureau of Education, *Bulletin*, 15; *Public Libraries*, 392; *Reports*, 393.
Bureau of Immigration, origin, 528; *Reports*, 529.
Bureau of Insular Affairs, *Gazetteer of Philippine Islands*, 553.
Bureau of Labor, origin, 523; *Bulletin*, 524; *Index of Reports*, 525; *Italians in Chicago*, 529; *Woman and Child Wage Earners*, 538; *Wages and Hours of Labor* 566; *Retail Prices of Food*, 566; *Wholesale Prices*, 566; *Cumulative Index of Labor Laws*, 559; *Workmen's Insurance*, 584.
Bureau of Statistics, *Exports of Manufactures*, 518; *Arrivals of Immigrants*, 529.
Burgess, J. W., *Middle Period*, 40; *Civil War*, 40; *Reconstruction*, 40; *Present Problems*, 490; *Polit. Sci.*, 490.
Burgoyne, John, biog., 104; campaign, 304; *Expedition*, 306.
Burk, J. D., *Virginia*, 87.
Burke, Edmund, *European Settlements*, 58; *Works*, 296; *Conciliation*, 300; biog., 308.
Burnaby, Andrew, *Travels*, 92.
Burnet, Jacob, *North-Western Ter.*, 80.
Burnet, Wm., frontier builder, 319.
Burnett, F. H., hist. novel, 184.
Burnett, P. H., *Recollections*, 436.
Burns, J. A., *Catholic Schools*, 393.
Burns rendition, 449.
Burnside, A. E., *Expedition*, 477.
Burr, Aaron, biogs., 105; *Journal*, 170; in election of 1800, 361; Hamilton duel, 367; conspiracy, 367; bibl., 368.
Burr, G. L., on geog. and hist., 45.
Burrage, H. S., *Early Eng. and French Voyages*, 250.
Burrows, Montagu, *Foreign Policy of Great Britain*, 355.
Burton, R. F., *City of Saints*, 503.
Burton, Rich., *Whittier*, 120.
Burton, T. E., *J. Sherman*, 117; *Crises*, 517.
Bury, J. B., *Inaugural Lecture*, 17.
Bush, G. G., *Higher Educ. in Mass.*, 393.
Bushnell, Henry, *Granville*, 80.
Bushnell, Horace, *Life and Letters*, 396.
Business, scientific management, 577.—*See also* Commerce, Economic conditions.
Butel-Dumont, G. M., *Louisiane*, 242.
Butler, B. F., *Own Book*, 493.
Butler, C. H., *Cases*, 155.
Butler, F. A. (Kemble), *Journal*, 92; *Records*, 172: *Ga. Plantation*, 422.
Butler, Mann, *Kentucky*, 68.
Butler, N. M., *Influence of War of 1812*, 380; *Educ. in U. S.*, 395; *Why should we change our Form of Govt.?*, 573; *American*, 582.
Butler, Pierce, *J. P. Benjamin*, 452.
Butler, W. F., *Wild Northland*, 92.
Butterfield, C. W., *Girtys*, 80.
Butterfield, Daniel, biog., 105.
Butterfield, J. L., *D. Butterfield*, 105.
Butterfield, K. L., *Rural Progress*, 583.
Butterworth, Benj., *Indus. Art*, 400.
Buttrick, Tilly, *Voyages*, 92.
Byars, W. V., *Am. Commoner*, 104.
Byfield, Natl., *Revolution in N. Eng.*, 286.
Bynner, E. L., hist. novels, 184.
Byrd, Wm., *Writings*, 321.
Byrdsall, F., *Loco-Foco Party*, 410.
Byrne, Stephen, *Irish Emigration*, 392.

Cabeza de Vaca, journey, 248
Cabinet, 346.—*See also* Department.
Cable, G. W., hist. novels, 184; *Silent South*, 496; *Negro Question*, 490.

Cabot, Geo., biog., 105.
Cabot, J. E., *Emerson*, 107.
Cabot, John, voyages, 255.
Cabot, Sebastian, 255.
Cabot map, 255.
Cabrillo, J. R., voyage, 431.
Caffey, F. G., *Suffrage Limitations*, 537.
Caird, Jas., *Prairie Farmer*, 403.
Cairnes, J. E., *Slave Power*, 421.
Cairns, W. B., *Am. Literature*, 393.
Caldwell, H. W., *Studies in Hist.*, 17; *Am. Ter. Development*, 177; *Survey*, 177; *Am. Legislators*, 177; *Am. Hist.*, 177.
Caldwell, J. W., *Const. Hist. of Tenn.*, 85.
Calef, Robt., *More Wonders*, 287.
Calender of Home Office Papers, 130.
Calendar of State Papers, 130.
Calhoun, J. C., biogs., 105; *Corresp.*, 164; *Works*, 164; and second bank, 379; and western trade, 399; "Exposition" and nullification, 415; *Calhoun by Polit. Friends*, 417; and distribution of surplus, 419; and antislavery in Congress, 425; and Texas, 439; and compromise (1850), 447.
California, hists., 64; records and statutes, 132; hist. socs., 159; admission, 409, 447; Span. in, 431; Am. settlers and Bear Flag republic, 434; gold, 434; conquest, 442; and Wilmot proviso, 445; self-organ., 447; corrupt politics, 546; Chinese question, 557. — *See also* Far West, Pacific coast, States.
California Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Calkins, Raymond, *Substitutes for Saloon*, 583.
Call, Daniel, *Reports*, 151.
Call from Death to Life, 285.
Callahan, J. M., *Am. Relations in Pacific*, 58; *Cuba*, 58; *Dipl. Hist. of Confederacy*, 58.
Callender, E. B., *Stevens*, 118.
Callender, G. S., *Econ. History*, 327; *Early Transportation*, 401.
Callender, John, *Rhode Island*, 83.
Callender, Thos., sedition case, 360.
Calvert. *See* Baltimore (Baron).
Calvert Papers, 262.
Calvin, Jean, *Institutes*, 273.
Calvo, C., *Droit Internat.*, 544.
Cambridge, Mass., history, 71.
Cambridge Modern History, 40.
Camden, S. C., hist., 84, battle, 309.
Campbell, Lord, *Lord Chancellors*, 296; *Lord Chief Justices*, 296.
Campbell, Chas., *Virginia*, 87.
Campbell, Douglas, *Puritan*, 273.
Campbell, H. C., *Wisconsin*, 88.
Campbell, H. W., *Soil Culture Manual*, 581.
Campbell, J. A., and confed. commissioners, 470.
Campbell, J. W., *R. J. Meigs*, 114.
Campbell, Maria, *Wm. Hull*, 110.
Campbell, W. W., *Tryon County*, 79; *Clinton*, 106.
Canada, records, 150; French voyages, 250; settlement, 251; conditions under French, 252; French-Eng. conflicts, 288, 289; invasion (1775), 301; and fugitive slaves, 427; *Caroline* and McLeod cases, 428; Fenians, 500. — *See also* Boundaries, Fisheries, Reciprocity.
Canal Zone act, 554.
Canals, development (1820–60), 399. — *See also* Internal improvements, Isthmian transit, Waterways.
Candler, Isaac, *Summary View*, 92.
Canning, Geo., biogs., 105; and Monroe doctrine, 386.
Cannon, Jas. G., *Clearing Houses*, 519.
Cannon, Jos. G., as speaker, 572.
Cape May Co., N. J., history, 76.
Capen, E. W., *Poor Laws*, 394.
Capers, H. D., *Memminger*, 114.
Capital, early capitalists, 406; postbellum fortunes, 517, 560; philanthropy, 581. — *See also* Labor, Trusts.
Capital, federal, location, 348, 353. *See also* Washington.
Carey, H. C., *Underground Railroad*, 427.
Carey, Mathew, *Laws of Pa.*, 145; *Am. Remembrancer*, 356; *Olive Branch*, 369.
Carey act, 576.
Carlier, A., *République Am.*, 318; *Marriage in U.S.*, 394.
Carlton, F. T., *Organized Labor*, 58; *Econ. Influences on Educ.*, 392; *Workingmen's Party*, 406; *Humanitarianism*, 406; *Am. Utopia*, 406; *South during Last Decade*, 537.
Carman, E. A., *Sheep Industry*, 535.
Carnegie, Andrew, *Negro in Am.*, 537; biog., 562; *Triumphant Democracy*, 566; *Gospel of Wealth*, 566; *Empire of Business*, 566; philanthropy, 581.
Carnegie Foundation for Advancement of Teaching, *Reports*, 585; *Bulletins*, 585.
Carnegie Institution, proposed hist. atlas, 50; work on treaties, 52; guides to foreign archives, 181; *Handbook of Learned Socs.*, 392.
Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, *Cat.*, 34.
Carnegie Peace fund, 555.
Carolina, charter and settlement, 264; divided, and charter surrendered, 264. *See also* North Carolina, South Carolina.
Caroline affair, 428.
Carpenter, A., *Trial of Burr*, 368.
Carpenter, A. H., *Habeas Corpus*, 326; *Naturalization*, 326; *Milit.* Govt., 491.
Carpenter, E. J., *Am. in Hawaii*, 544.
Carpenter, F. B., *Six Months at the White House*, 170.
Carpetbag rule in South, 495.
Carr, E. S., *Patrons of Husbandry*, 512.
Carr, Lucien, *Mo.*, 73; *Mounds*, 240.
Carrington, H. B., *Battles*, 302.
Carrington, Mrs. H. B., *Ab-sa-ra-ka*, 507.
Carroll, B. R., *Hist. Collections of S. C.*, 84.
Carroll, Chas., biog., 105; *Letters*, 164.
Carroll, H. K., *Relig. Forces*, 496; *Report on Porto Rico*, 553.
Carson, H. L., *Supreme Court*, 329; *100th Anniversary of Const.*, 340.
Carson, Jos., *Medical Dept. of University of Pa.*, 393.
Carter, C. E., *Gt. Br. and Ill.*, 321.

Carter, N. H., *Reports*, 143.
Carteret, Geo., and N. J., 268.
Carteret, Philip, in N. J., 268.
Cartier, Jacques, voyages, 249.
Cartwright, Peter, *Autobiog.*, 378.
Caruthers, R. L., *Compilation*, 147.
Caruthers, Wm., hist. novels, 184.
Carver, Jon., *Travels*, 242.
Cary, Ed., *G. W. Curtis*, 106.
Cary, J. W., *C. M. & St. P. Ry.*, 505.
Case, J. W., *Southold Records*, 143.
Case's Map of U.S., 50.
Cass, Lewis, biog., 105; pres. campaign, 445; resignation from cabinet, 468.
Casseday, Benj., *Louisville*, 68.
Casson, H. N., *McCormick*, 400; *Reaper*, 508; *Steel*, 518; *Telephone*, 524.
Castañeda, Pedro, *Relacion*, 241.
Catherwood, M. H., hist. novels, 184.
Catlin, Geo., *Indians*, 242.
Catterall, R. C. H., *Second Bank*, 380.
Cattle, sheep, and meat, industry (1820–60), 398; export, 517; industry in Northwest, 530; in Southwest, 533.
Caulkins, F. M., *New London*, 64; *Norwich*, 64.
Cavendish, Henry, *Debates*, 300, 301.
Cecil Co., Md., history, 70.
Celoron de Bienville, *Journal*, 289.
Census, bibl., 397. — *See also* Bureau, Population.
Centennial Exposition, 517.
Century Co., *Battles and Leaders*, 58.
Century Cyclop. of Names, 39.
Centz, P. C., *Republic of Republics*, 314.
Cervera, Pasqual, in Span.-Am. war, 549.
Chaddock, R. E., *Ohio*, 376.
Chadsey, *Reconstruction*, 491; *Johnson and Congress*, 491.
Chadwick, F. E., *U. S. and Spain*, 58; *Causes of Civil War*, 402.
Chalmers, Geo., *Collection of Treaties*, 51; *Political Annals*, 58; *Opinions*, 150; *Revolt*, 304.
Chamberlain, D. H., *Chamberlain's Admin.*, 497; *Legal Tender*, 499; *Sumner and Treaty of Washington*, 501.
Chamberlain, H. R., *Farmers' Alliance*, 542.
Chamberlain, Mellen, *Authentication of Declaration of Independence*, 304.
Chamberlain, N. H., *Sewall*, 117.
Chambers, H. E., *West Fla.*, 366; *Hawaii*, 544.
Chambers, T. F., *Early Germans of N. J.*, 75.
Chambers, Wm., *Things as they Are*, 92; *Am. Slavery and Colour*, 422.
Champlain, Samuel, in Canada, 250; *Œuvres*, 251.
Champlain, Lake, history, 77; discovery, 251.
Chancellor, W. E., *United States*, 42.
Chancellorsville, battle, 475.
Chandler, J. A. C., *Representation in Va.*, 326; *Suffrage in Va.*, 410.
Chandler, P. W., *Am. Crim. Trials*, 268.
Chandler, Zach., biog., 491.
Channing, E., *Students' History*, 13; *U. S., 1765–1865*, 40; *U. S.*, 42; *Am. Hist. Leaflets*, 178; *Town and County Govt.*, 278; *Navigation Laws*, 292; *Eng. Hist.*, 324; *Jeffersonian System*, 363.
Channing, W. E., biog., 105; *Works*, 397; *Elevation of Labouring Portion*, 407; *Labor Assocs.*, 407.
Channing, W. H., *W. E. Channing*, 105.
Chapin, R. C., *Standard of Living*, 568.
Chapman, J. A., *Wyoming*. 82.
Charities and the Commons, 569.
Charity, conditions (1820–60), 391; present day, 582. — *See also* Reform.
Charlemagne Tower Collection of Colon. Laws, 131.
Charleston, S. C., hist., 84; ordinances, 146; founded, 264; in Am. Rev., 301, 309; attack on Ft. Sumter, 468, 470.
Charleston Year Books, 264.
Charlestown, Mass., history, 71.
Charlestown, N. H., history, 75.
Charlevoix, P. F. X. de, *Nouvelle France*, 242.
Charnay, D., *Cités et Ruines*, 242.
Charter of Liberties in N. Y., 267.
Charter of Privileges in Pa., 270.
Charters, text of colon., 131; Va., 258; Md., 262; Carolina, 264; Ga., 265; Pa., 269; Council for N. Eng., 275; first Mass., 277; R. I., 281; Conn., 281; overthrow of Mass., 285; second Mass., 286.
Chase, Benj., *Old Chester*, 75.
Chase, C. W., *Haverhill*, 72.
Chase, Ellen, *Beginnings of Am. Rev.*, 302.
Chase, Leslie, *Rooseveltiana*, 573.
Chase, S. P., *Ohio*, 80; biogs., 105; abolitionist, 423; *Diary and Corresp.*, 424; in Senate, 447; and compromise (1850), 447; and Kan.-Neb. bill, 453; as sec. of treasury, 478.
Chase, Samuel, impeachment, 363.
Chastellux, Marquis de, *Voyages* and *Travels*, 92, 93.
Chateaubriand, Vicomte de, *Voyages*, 93.
Chatham, Earl of, biogs., 116; and conquest of Canada, 289; *Corresp. with Colon. Govs.*, 290; *Corresp.*, 296; ministry with Grafton, 298.
Chattanooga, campaign, 475.
Chauncy, Chas., *Letter*, 287.
Cheetham, Jas., *Paine*, 115.
Cheever, G. B., *Guilt of Slavery*, 422.
Cheney, E. P., *Europ. Background*, 324; *Anti-Rent*, 430.
Cheney, H. V., hist. novel, 184.
Cherokee Indians, in Am. Rev., 305; and Ga., 354, 419.
Cherokee Nation *v.* Ga., 419.
Chesney, C. C., *Grant*, 109.
Chesnut, M. B., *Diary*, 474.
Chesnutt, C. W., *F. Douglass*, 107.
Chester, N. H., history, 75.
Chester Co., Pa., history, 306.
Chevalier, Michel, *Lettres*, 93; *Society in U. S.*, 93; *Voies de Communication*, 404; *Fall in Value of Gold*, 435.
Cheyenne Indians, wars, 506.
Chicago, history, 67; anarchists, 523; meat packing, 533.
Chicago Conference on Trusts, *Speeches*, 566.
Chicago Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.

Chicago, Univ. of, *Bibl. of Economics*, 566.
Chickamauga, battle, 475.
Chickering, Jesse, *Immigration*, 395.
Child, John, *N. Eng.'s Jonah*, 279.
Child, L. M., hist. novels, 184; *Oasis*, 422; *Hopper*, 424.
Child labor (1820–60), 405; present conditions, 523, 568; in southern mills, 536.
Childs, G. W., *Grant*, 109.
Chile episode (1891), 543. — *See also* Latin-America.
Chilton, Ed., *Virginia*, 261.
China, early Am. trade, 356, 398; early relations with U. S., 451; problem of integrity and trade, 557; Boxer insurrection, 557; missionaries, 557. — *See also* Chinese immigration.
Chinese immigration question, 557.
Chipman, Daniel, *T. Chittenden*, 105; *Seth Warner*, 306.
Chisholm *v.* Georgia, 381.
Chittenden, H. M., *Am. Fur Trade*, 58; *Steamboat Nav. on Mo.*, 432; *De Smet*, 436.
Chittenden, L. E., *Reminiscences*, 170; *Conference Convention*, 469.
Chittenden, Thos., biog., 105.
Chitwood, O. P., *Justice in Va.*, 326.
Choate, Rufus, biog., 105; *Works*, 164.
Christian Commission, 483.
Christian Movement in Japan, 558.
Christiana affair, 449.
Church, E. D., cat. of library, 34.
Church, Thos., *Entertaining Passages*, 285.
Church of England, estab. in Md., 263. — *See also* Religion.
Churchill, Winston, hist. novels, 184.
Cieza de Leon, *Chronica del Peru*, 248.
Cincinnati, hists., 80; settlement, 332.
Circourt, A. de, *Hist. Conclusions*, 308.
Cist, Chas., *Cincinnati*, 80.
Cities, transportation (1820–60), 399; govt. (1820–60), 409; conditions and improvements (1885–90), 523; govt. reform, 546, 572; present conditions, 581; planning, 582.
Civil Rights acts (1866), 489; (1875), 495; cases, 495.
Civil service, beginning under constitution, 346; Jefferson's policy, 363; Four Years' Tenure act, 383; Jackson's policy, 412; Tenure of Office act, 489; reform act, 520; under Cleveland, 521; repeal of Tenure of Office act, 521.
Civil Service, Commission, *Reports*, 521.
Civil Service Record, 521.
Civil war, *Official Records*, 157; conditions of sections (1861), 462; process of secession, 466; Buchanan and secession, 468; attempts at compromise, 468; Ft. Sumter, 468, 470; principles of coercion, 468; outbreak, 470; loyal slave sections, 470; southern army, 472; intercombatant relations, 472; milit. events, 475; northern finances, 478; foreign relations during, 480; northern admin., 483; northern army, 483; arbitrary govt., 483; popular sentiment, 483; slavery conditions during, 485; negro troops, 486. *See also* Confederate States, Reconstruction, Secession.
Claiborne, J. F. H., *Mississippi*, 73; *Sam. Dale*, 170.
Claiborne, Wm., and Md., 262, 263.
Clap, Roger, *Memoirs*, 277.
Clarendon, Earl of, and Carolina, 264.
Clark, A. H., *Clipper Ship Era*, 400.
Clark, G. R., conquest of Northwest, 305; grant, 332; corresp. with Genet, 356.
Clark, G. R., *U. S. Navy*, 58.
Clark, J. B., *Control of Trusts*, 562; *Problem of Monopoly*, 562.
Clark, J. V. H., *Onondaga*, 320.
Clark, L. D., *Law of Employment of Labor*, 568.
Clark, R. C., *Beginnings of Texas*, 432.
Clark, S. A., *Making Both Ends Meet*, 568.
Clarke, A. B., *Booths*, 394.
Clarke, H. D., *Hand-Book*, 156.
Clarke, J. F., *Anti-Slavery Days*, 170.
Clarke, L. H., *Report*, 143.
Clarke, M. S., *Bank of U. S.*, 349.
Clarkson, Thos., *Penn*, 115.
Clason, A. W., *Seven Conventions*, 342.
Classes, development, 408, 567. — *See also* Capital, Labor.
Classroom papers, 229.
Clay, Mrs. C., *Belle of Fifties*, 493.
Clay, C. M., *Life*, 170; abolitionist, 423.
Clay, Henry, biogs., 105, 106; *Works*, 164; and War of 1812, 371; and Am. system, 379; Mo. compromise, 385; and Span. Am., 386; candidacy (1832), 414; censure of Jackson, 418; and distribution of surplus, 419; financial plans under Tyler, 430; Texas and campaign of 1844, 440; compromise of 1850, 447.
Clay, J. C., *Swedes on Delaware*, 66.
Clay, T. H., *H. Clay*, 105.
Clayton, V. V., *White and Black*, 494.
Clayton-Bulwer treaty, 451; attempts to abrogate, 526, 543; abrogated, 554.
Clemens, S. L., *Life on Mississippi*, 170; hist. novels, 185; *Roughing It*, 503.
Clement, C. E., *Cushman*, 394.
Cleveland, F. A., *R. R. Promotion*, 402; *Bank and Treasury*, 540.
Cleveland, Grover, biogs., 106; election (1884), 521; first admin., 521; defeat (1888), 522; *Pres. Problems*, 522; *Writings*, 522; and labor, 523; and canal diplomacy, 526; and immigration, 528; election (1892), 539; financial policy of second admin., 539; foreign affairs, 543, 549; and Pullman strike, 567; forest reserves, 576.
Cleveland, Henry, *A. H. Stephens*, 118.
Cleveland, histories, 80, 81.
Clewell, J. H., *Wachovia*, 79.
Clews, Henry, *Wall Street*, 519.
Clinton, DeWitt, biogs., 106; *Vindication of Jefferson*, 362; candidacy (1812), 374.
Clinton, Sir Henry, attacks on Charleston, 301, 309; *Observations on Stedman's History*, 303; *Cornwallis Controversy*, 310.
Clowes, W. L., *Black America*, 497.
Clute, J. J., *Staten Island*, 79.

Coast Survey, 379; *Atlas of Philippine Islands*, 553.
Coal, industry, 398, 518; southern fields, 538; anthracite strike, 560, 567.
Cobb, Howell, biog., 106.
Cobb, R. L., *Laws of Tenn.*, 147.
Cobb, S. H., *Palatines*, 320.
Cobb, T. R. R., *Hist. Sketch of Slavery*, 328; *Law of Slavery*, 422; *Corresp.*, 467.
Cobbett, Pitt, *Leading Cases*, 482.
Cobbett, Wm., *Emigrant's Guide*, 53; *Year's Residence*, 93; biog., 106; *Porcupine's Works*, 356.
Cobden, Rich., *Letters to Sumner*, 482.
Coburn, F. W., *Bennington*, 306.
Cochin, Aug., *Results of Slavery*, 422; *Results of Emancipation*, 424.
Cockrum, W. M., *Indiana*, 67.
Cod, Cape, hist., 71.
Codman, J. T., *Brook Farm*, 408.
Codman, John, *Arnold's Expedition*, 303; *Round Trip*, 503.
Cody, W. F., *Adventures of Buffalo Bill*, 507; *Story of the Wild West*, 507; *True Tales of the Plains*, 507.
Coffin, C. C., hist. novel, 185; *Seat of Empire*, 532.
Coffin, Joshua, *Newbury*, 72; *Slave Insurrections*, 422.
Coffin, Levi, *Reminiiniscences*, 170.
Coffin, Victor, *Quebec Act*, 301; *Quebec and Am. Rev.*, 321.
Coggeshall, Geo., *Am. Privateers*, 373.
Cohens *v.* Virginia, 381.
Coin's Financial School, 539.
Coke, E. T., *Subaltern's Furlough*, 93.
Coke, Ed., *Institutes*, 297.
Colburn, Jer., *Bibl. of Local Hist. of Mass.*, 71.
Colby, C., *Am. Statis. Annual*, 54.
Colby, C. W., *Selections*, 177.
Colby, F. M., *Internat. Year Book*, 38.
Colden, Cadwallader, *Five Nations*, 242.
Cole, Cornelius, *Memoirs*, 494.
Cole, G. W., *Cat. of Library of E. D. Church*, 34.
Coleccion de Docs. Inéditos, 245.
Coleccion de Librosque Tratan de América, 245.
Coleman, A. M., *Crittenden*, 106.
Coleman, Wm., *Death of Hamilton*, 368.
Coles, E., *Ordinance* (1787), 331.
Colfax, Schuyler, biog., 492.
Colgrove, K. C., *Congress and Pioneers*, 333, 434.
Collectanea Adamantæa, 251.
Colleges, hist. work in, 24; use of great libraries, 195; special use of libraries, 196; recitations, 198; use of textbooks, 199; quiz, 207; debates, 212; student lectures, 212; seminaries, 213; examinations, 215; methods of reading, 217–220; lectures, 222, 223; note taking, 223–226; giving out references, 227; classroom papers, 229; topical written work, 229–231; special reports, 232; theses, 232–234; monographs, 234; William and Mary, 261; in 1820–60, 391; present day, 581. — *See also* Education.
Collie, G. L., *Govt. Maps for Schools*, 48.
Collier, W. M., *Trusts*, 562.
Collins, Lewis, *Kentucky*, 68.
Collins, T. B., *New Agriculture*, 577.
Collins, W. H., *Domestic Slave Trade*, 427.
Colombia. — *See* Isthmian transit, Latin-America.
Colonies, English, Brit. records on, 130; collections of statutes, 131; charters, 131; important dates in hist., 200, 201; wars with French colony, 288, 289; conditions (1760), 291; Brit. control, 291, 324; govt., 325; social conditions and slavery, 327. — *See also* American Revolution, and colonies by name.
Colonization of negroes, movement, 385; Lincoln's plan, 486.
Colorado, bibl., 64; hists., 64; mining rush, 502; State of Jefferson, 502; territory, 502; admission, 502. — *See also* Far West, States.
Colorado Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Colquhoun, A. R., *Key to Pacific*, 526; *Mastery of Pacific*, 558.
Colton, Calvin, *Clay*, 105.
Colton, Walter, *Three Years in Cal.*, 436.
Columbus, Christopher, biogs., 106; life and discoveries, 244; companions and successors, 245.
Columbus, O., history, 81.
Coman, Katharine, *Indus. Hist.*, 58.
Combe, Geo., *Notes on U. S.*, 93.
Comet case, 427.
Commerce, colon., 291, 327; Acts of Trade, 295, 298; Townshend acts, 298; French treaty (1778), 308; questions under Confederation, 335; early fed. regulations, 356; conditions of foreign, after War of 1812, 379; questions under J. Q. Adams, 388; development of foreign (1820–60), 398; of coastwise, 398; of internal, 398; sectional rivalry for western trade, 399; organization (1820–60), 406; prosperity (1845), 443; southern conventions (1860), 460; blockade during Civil war, 475, 480; prosperity during Civil war, 483, 517; foreign (1865–80), 517; postbellum development of internal, 517; of Great Lakes, 530; of Pacific coast, 545; problem of Oriental, 557; fed. department, 560; state regulation of public service corporations, 561. — *See also* Economic conditions, Immigration, Internal improvements, Interstate commerce, Isthmian transit, Neutral trade, Panics, Post office, Railroads, Reciprocity, Shipping, Slave trade, Tariff, Travel, Trusts.
Commerce and Navigation, 403.
Commerce court, 572.
Commercial Relations, 519.
Commission on Country Life, *Report*, 583.
Commissioner. — *See* Bureau, or office by name.
Committee of Eight, *Hist. in Elementary Schools*, 16.
Committee of 50, *Liquor Problem*, 583.
Committee on Conduct of War, *Reports*, 476.

Committees of correspondence, 301.
Commons, J. R., *Doc. Hist. of Am. Indus. Soc.*, 58; *Races and Immigrants*, 58; *Labor Organ. and Politics*, 406; *Greeley and Working Class*, 406; *Trade Unionism*, 567; *Class Conflict*, 567; *Proportional Representation*, 574.
Compact theory, in state constitutions, 313; of fed. constitution, 343.
Compilation of Reports on For. Rel., 526.
Compiled Statutes, 154.
Compromise of 1850, 447; finality, 456.
Conant, C. A., *Banks of Issue*, 517; *Wall Street*, 519; *U. S. in Orient*, 552.
Concas y Palau, V. M., *Cervera*, 550.
Concessions of New Jersey, 268.
Concord, Mass., histories, 71, 302; battle, 301.
Concord, N. H., hist., 75; records, 141.
Concord Lyceum, *Proceedings*, 392.
Condy, T. D., *Digest*, 146.
Cone, Mary, *Putnam*, 116.
Confederate Milit. History, 476.
Confederate States, records, 156, 157, 179; organization and career, 472; foreign relations, 480. — *See also* Civil war.
Confederation, journals of Congress, 152, 153; formation, 311; organization, 329; inefficiency, 329; territorial questions, 330; finances, 333; slavery questions, 334; foreign and commercial relations, 335; condition of states under, 337.
Conference of Governors, *Proceedings*, 580.
Conference system, 217.
Congdon, C. T., *Reminiscences*, 170.
Congress of Arts and Science, 18.
Congress of Confederate States, journal, 156; career, 472.
Congress of U. S., indexes to statutes, 152; journals, 153; debates, 153; statutes, 153; docs., 154; organization of first, 346; implied powers, 350; Clay as speaker of House, 379; activity (1820–60), 409; Jackson's controversy with Senate, 418; gag rules, 425; N. J. contested elections, 428; speakership contests (1847), 445; (1855), 456; (1859), 456; and Johnson, 489; Hayes and "riders," 514; Reed rules, 539; insurgent revolt (1910), 572.
Congressional Debates, 153.
Congressional Globe, 153.
Congressional Record, 153.
Conkling, A. R., *R. Conkling*, 106.
Conkling, Roscoe, biog., 106; and Garfield, 520.
Connecticut, bibls., 64; hists., 64, 65; records and statutes, 133; early judicial decisions, 150; hist. socs., 159; contest with Pa., 269, 271, 337; settlement and charter, 281; absorbs New Haven, 282; in N. Eng. Confed., 283; and Quakers, 284; conditions (1760), 293; western claim, 312, 330; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341. — *See also* Colonies, New England, States.
"Connecticut Farmer," *Remarks*, 331.
Connecticut Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Connelley, W. E., *Overland Stage*, 504.
Conner, J. E., *Indus. Causes affecting Am. Com. Policy*, 518.
Connolly, C. P., *Montana*, 74.
Connor, R. D. W., *Harnett*, 110.
Conover, G. S., *Journals*, 307.
Conrad, H. C., *Delaware*, 66.
Conservation, movement, 576.
Conservation and Am. Forestry, 580.
Constitutions, state, texts, 131; bibl. and records of conventions, 132–150; first, 313, 337; tendencies (1820–60), 409; postbellum southern, 489; northwestern (1890), 530; new southern, 530. — *See also* Articles of Confederation, Federal constitution, Government.
Consular Reports, 519.
Continental Congresses, *Extracts* of first, 131; journals, 152, 153; meeting of first, 298; position and powers, 303. — *See also* Confederation.
Continuous voyages, 369.
Contract labor acts, 528.
Conway, M. D., *Paine*, 115; *Randolph*, 116; *Autobiog.*, 482.
Cook, F. H., *Law of Combinations*, 563.
Cook, Jas., voyage, 431.
Cook, W. W., *Corporation Problem*, 513.
Cooke, G. W., *Unitarianism*, 394.
Cooke, J. E., *Virginia*, 87; *R. E. Lee*, 112; hist. novels, 185.
Cooke, Jay, biog., 106.
Cooke, P. St. G., *Scenes in Army*, 433.
Cool Thoughts, 311.
Cooley, H. S., *Slavery in N. J.*, 328.
Cooley, T. M., *Mich.*, 72; *Const. Limitations*, 318; *Const. Law*, 344; *Const. History*, 410.
Coolidge, A. C., *U. S. as World Power*, 59.
Coolidge, A. J., *New England*, 53.
Coolidge, M. R., *Chinese Immigration*, 558.
Coolidge, Susan. — *See* Woolsey (S. C.).
Cooper, C. S., *Am. Undergraduate*, 584.
Cooper, Francis, *Financiering an Enterprise*, 562.
Cooper, J. F., *Notions*, 93; hist. novels, 185.
Cooper, Peter, biog., 106.
Cooper, T. V., *Am. Politics*, 177.
Cooper, Thos., *Some Information*, 93; *Statutes of S. C.*, 146; sedition case, 360.
Cooper, W. F., *Code of Tenn.*, 147.
Cooper, Wm., *Guide*, 333.
Coöperative histories, 57.
Cope, W. P., *Penn*, 115.
Corbett, J. S., *Drake*, 256; *Seven Years' War*, 289; *Signals*, 310.
Cordier, Henri, *Chine et les Puissances*, 558; *Bibl. Sinica*, 560.
Córdoba, Hernandez de, voyage, 247.
Cornelison, J. A., *Relig. in U. S.*, 292.
Cornell, W. M., *Pennsylvania*, 82.
Cornwallis, Lord, *Corresp.*, 106; biog., 306; campaigns, 309; *Clinton Controversy*, 310.
Coronado, F. de, explorations, 248.
Corporations, development (1820–60), 406. — *See also* Bureau, Trusts.
Corruption, polit. (1820–60), 409; during Grant's adminis., 510; recent discussions, 574.

Cortéz, Hernando, in Mexico, 247.
Corthell, E. L., *Atlantic and Pacific Ship-Railway*, 527.
Corwin, E. S., *Dred Scott Decision*, 458.
Corwin, Thos., biog., 106; *Speeches*, 164; and compromise (1860), 468.
Cost of living, present problem, 568, 579, 581. — *See also* Labor.
Cotten, E. R., *Macon*, 114.
Cotton, John, *Abstract of Lawes*, 279; *Answer to Williams*, 280.
Cotton, invention of gin, 353; development of culture, 385, 398; development of manufactures, 398; King Cotton, dependence of Confed. States on, 462, 480, 517; postbellum industry, 519; modern culture, 536; southern manufactures, 536. — *See also* Agriculture, Manufactures, Slavery.
Cotton gin, 353.
Coues, Elliott, *On the Trail of a Spanish Pioneer*, 93; *New Light on Northwest*, 93; ed. of Fowler's *Journal*, 94; of Larpenteur's *Narrative*, 96; of Lewis and Clark, 97; of Pike's *Expeditions*, 99.
Council for New Eng., patents to Plymouth, 274; charter and history, 275; records, 276; grant of Mass., 276; northern grants, 283.
Country life. — *See* Rural.
Courtenay, W. A., *Centennial Address*, 84.
Coutant, C. G., *Wyoming*, 89.
Cowan, R. E., *Bibl. of Chinese Question*, 560.
Cowpens, battle, 309.
Cox, I. J., *La Salle*, 252; *Indian as Dipl. Factor*, 355; *Early Explor. of La.*, 366; *La.-Texas Frontier*, 366; *S. W. Boundary of Texas*, 440; *Significance of La.-Texas Frontier*, 440.
Cox, J. D., *Reminiscences*, 170.
Cox, S. D., *Lincoln*, 74.
Cox, S. S., *Three Decades*, 170.
Coxe, Brinton, *Judicial Power*, 297.
Coxe, Daniel, *Carolana*, 79.
Coxe, Tench, *Conduct of Gt. Bn.*, 369.
Coxey's army, 567.
Craig, N. B., *Exposure*, 357.
Craig, W., *N. Dak. Life*, 531.
Cranch, Wm., *Reports*, 154.
Crandall, F. A., *Checklist*, 36.
Crane, Stephen, hist. novel, 185.
Crane, W. C., *Sam Houston*, 110.
Crane, W. R., *Index of Mining Engineering Lit.*, 504.
Crane, W. W., *Politics*, 325.
Crawford, J. B., *Credit Mobilier*, 510.
Crawford, M., *Journal*, 436.
Crawford, S. W., *Genesis of Civil War*, 472.
Crawford, W. H., biog., 106; *Digest*, 134.
Credit Mobilier, 504, 510.
Creek Indians, treaty (1790), 354; and Ga., 388.
Creighton, Louise, *Raleigh*, 256.
Creole case, 427.
Cresap, Michael, biog., 106.
Crèvecœur, St. John de, *Letters* and *Lettres*, 93.
Crew, H. W., *Dayton*, 80.
Crime. — *See* Punishment, Reform.
"Crime of '73," 516.
Crimean war, U. S. and, 451.
Cripple Creek strike, 567.
Crises. — *See* Panics.
Crissman, G. R., *Library Method*, 13.
Crittenden, J. J., biog., 106.
Crittenden compromise, 468.
Crocker, Chas., railroad builder, 504.
Crockett, David, *Exploits*, 170.
Croly, Herbert, *Promise of Am. Life*, 317; *Hanna*, 540.
Crosby, O. T., *Strikes*, 568.
Cross, *Answer to Brief State*, 271.
Cross, A. L., *Anglican Episcopate*, 292.
Crozat, Antoine, and La., 253.
Crumrine, Boyd, *Washington Co.*, 82.
Cuba, relations with U. S. (1807–59), 451; insurrection (1868–78), 500; (1895), 549; Span.-Am. war, 549; independence and relations with U. S., 551.
Cullom, S. M., *Fifty Years*, 493.
Culp, D. W., *Negro Literature*, 537.
Cumberland, Md., history, 70.
Cumberland road, 379.
Cumings, S., *Western Pilot*, 53.
Cummings, John, *Poor Laws*, 394.
Cumulative Book Index, 33.
Cumulative Book Review Digest, 32.
Cunningham, Wm., *Growth of Eng. Industry*, 292.
Cunningham coal claims, 545, 577.
Curley, E. A., *Nebraska*, 53.
Curry, J. L. M., *Legal Justification*, 465; *Govt. of C. S.*, 473; *Negro*, 496.
Curtis, G. H., *Dissent*, 273.
Curtis, B. R. (1), biog., 106; *Reports*, 155; *Works*, 444.
Curtis, B. R. (2), *B. R. Curtis*, 106.
Curtis, E. S., *Am. Indian*, 506.
Curtis, Francis, *Repub. Party*, 457.
Curtis, G. T., *Const. Hist.*, 42; *Buchanan*, 104; *Webster*, 120; *Hist. of Const.*, 304.
Curtis, G. W., biog., 106; *Orations*, 164; *Lotus Eating*, 396; *Potiphar Papers*, 396; *Early Letters*, 408.
Curtis, W. E., *U. S. and For. Powers*, 501.
Curwen, Samuel, *Journal*, 170.
Curwood, J. O., *Great Lakes*, 532.
Cushing, Caleb, *Treaty of Washington*, 501.
Cushman, Charlotte, biog., 394.
Cussy, Ferd. de, *Traités*, 52.
Custer, E. B., *Tenting on Plains*, 507; *Boots and Saddles*, 507; *Following the Guidon*, 507; *Boy General*, 507.
Custer, G. A., *Life on Plains*, 507.
Custer massacre, 506.
Cutler, J. E., *Lynch Law*, 377.
Cutler, J. P., *M. Cutler*, 106.
Cutler, Manasseh, biog., 106.
Cutler, W. P., *Ordinance of 1787*, 80; *M. Cutler*, 106.
Cutts, J. M., *Brief Treatise*, 170.

Dabney, R. L., *Defence of Va.*, 463; *Jackson*, 467.
Dabney, W. D., *Public Regulation of Rys.*, 513.
Daenell, Ernst, *Spanier in Nordamerika*, 40

Daggett, A. S., *Am. in China Relief Expedition*, 558.
Daggett, John, *Attleborough*, 71.
Daggett, Stuart, *R. R. Reorgan.*, 513.
Dakota, *Resources*, 53; hists., 65; territory, 502; settlement. 530. — *See also* Far West, North Dakota, Northwest, South Dakota.
Dale, Sam., biog., 170.
Dale's laws, 259.
Dall, W. H., *Alaska*, 63.
Dallas, A. J., biog., 107; *Laws of Pa.*, 145; *Reports*, 151, 154.
Dallas, G. M., *A. J. Dallas*, 107; *Letters*, 452.
Dallinger, F. W., *Nominations*, 361.
Dana, C. A., *Grant*, 109; *Recollections*, 170; biog., 394.
Dana, E., *Bounty Lands in Ill.*, 53; *Geog. Sketches*, 53.
Dana, R. H., biog., 107; *Wheaton's Internat. Law*, 387; *Two Years before the Mast*, 404.
Danbury Hatters' case, 560, 567.
Danforth, H. G., *Digest*, 156.
Daniel, F. S., *Richmond Examiner*, 474.
Daniels, G. T., *California*, 547.
Danish West Indies, attempted annex., 500.
Dankers, Jaspar, *Journal*, 93.
Darlington, W. M., *Gist's Journals*, 320.
Darby, J. F., *Recollections*, 170.
Darby, Wm., *Emigrants' Guide*, 54; *Geog. Description of La.*, 54; *Tour*, 93.
Darmstaedter, Paul, *Vereinigten Staaten*, 40.
Darrow, J. W., *Patrons of Husbandry*, 512.
Dartmouth College case, 381.
Dates, list of important, 200–206.
Dauncey, Mrs. C., *Englishwoman in Philippines*, 553.
Davenport, F. G., *Guide*, 181.
Davenport, F. M., *Primitive Traits*, 377.
Davenport, John, in New Haven, 282.
Davenport, W. T., *Bibl. of Kelley*, 433.
Davidson, Alex., *Illinois*, 67.
Davidson, Geo., *Alaska Boundary*, 63; *Drake's Anchorage*, 257.
Davidson, H. H., *Reference History*, 31.
Davidson, Robt., *Presbyterian Church in Ky.*, 377.
Davies, H. E., *Gen. Sheridan*, 117.
Davis, A. M., *Currency and Banking*, 287; *Shays Rebellion*, 338; *Nat. Banking System*, 479.
Davis, C. A., *Major Jack Downing*, 185.
Davis, C. H., *Coast Survey*, 401.
Davis, E. H., *Ancient Monuments*, 240.
Davis, G. L., *Day-Star*, 263.
Davis, H. W., *Speeches*, 485.
Davis, Horace, *Am. Constitutions*, 314.
Davis, J. C. B., *Cases*, 155; *Fish and Alabama Claims*, 501.
Davis, J. F., *Index*, 133.
Davis, J. P., *U. P. Railway*, 505.
Davis, J. T., *Mining Law*, 435.
Davis, Jefferson, *Confed. Govt.*, 42; biogs., 107; and compromise (1850), 447; resolutions on slavery, 460; and secession compromise, 468; as pres. of Confederate States, 472.
Davis, John, *Travels*, 93.
Davis, M. L., *Burr*, 105.
Davis, O. K., *Conquests in Pacific*, 552.
Davis, P. H., *Football*, 583.
Davis, P. M., *Late War*, 372.
Davis, Reuben, *Recollections*, 170.
Davis, R. H., *Cuban and Porto Rican Campaigns*, 551.
Davis, V. J., *Jefferson Davis*, 107.
Davis, W. B., *Missouri*, 73.
Davis, W. M., *Continent of N. Am.*, 48; *Physical Geog.*, 48; *Practical Exercises*, 48; *Govt. Maps for Schools*, 48.
Davis, W. T., *Plymouth*, 72.
Davis, W. W. H., *New Mexico*, 248.
Davison, G. M., *Traveller's Guide*, 54.
Dawes, A. L., *Sumner*, 118.
Dawes, C. G., *Initiative*, 574.
Dawes, E. C., *Ohio Company*, 332.
Dawson, G. F., *Logan*, 113.
Dawson, H. B., *Battles*, 302; *Papers concerning André*, 307; *Trial of Smith*, 307.
Dawson, S. E., *Cabots*, 255.
Day, Clive, *Commerce*, 59.
Day, J. R., *Raid on Prosperity*, 562.
Day, S. P., *Down South*, 477.
Day, Sherman, *Pennsylvania*, 82.
Dayton, O., history, 80.
Dealey, J. J., *State Constitutions*, 574.
Deane, Chas., *Slavery in Mass.*, 328.
Deane, Silas, *Papers*, 164; in France, 308.
Debates, use in teaching history, 211.
Debates in Congress, records, 153.
De Bow, J. D. B., *Indus. Resources*, 402.
Debs, E. V., *Debs*, 569.
Debs case, 567.
Debts due British merchants, treaty provision and controversy, 310, 335. — *See also* Public debt.
Deckert, Emil, *Nordamerika*, 582.
Declaration of Paris, 451.
Declaratory act, 295.
Declaring acts void, 337, 381. — *See also* Judiciary.
De Costa, B. F., *Verrazano*, 249.
Dedham, Mass., hist., 71; records, 139.
Deep Waterways conventions, 530.
Deerfield, Mass., history, 71.
Defebaugh, J. E., *Lumber*, 400.
Defectives, treatment, 391, 582.
De Fonblanque, E. B., *Burgoyne*, 104.
De Forest, R. W., *Tenement House Problem*, 583.
De Hass, Wills, *Western Va.*, 87.
DeKnight, W. F., *Currency*, 499.
Delaware, hists., 66; records and statutes, 133; hist. soc., 159; settlement, 269; as colony, 271; ratification, 341; does not secede, 470; abolition of slavery, 486. — *See also* Colonies, South, States.
Delaware Co., N. Y., history, 77.
Delaware Co., Pa., history, 83.
Delaware Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Dellenbaugh, F. S., *Breaking the Wilderness*, 366.
De Lolme, J. L., *Eng. Constitution*, 324.
De Lôme incident, 549.
Democratic party, beginning, 351; Locofocos, 428; Barnburners, 445; split on slavery, 449; during Civil war, 483;

restored to control (1893), dissensions, 539. — *See also* Elections, Politics.
Denison, Fred., *Westerly*, 293.
Dennis, J. S., *Christian Missions*, 558; *Centennial Survey*, 558.
Dennis, W. C., *Orinoco Steamship Case*, 556.
Denslow, V. B., *Econ. Philos.*, 517.
Dent, J. C., *Last Forty Years*, 429.
Denton, Daniel, *New York*, 267.
Denver, J. W., in Kansas, 454.
Denver, histories, 64, 502.
Department of Agriculture, *Wages of Farm Labor*, 509.
Department of Commerce and Labor, established, 560, 567; *Agri. Opportunities*, 578; *Reports*, 584; *Bulletins*, 584.
Department of Justice, *Cases under Anti-trust Law*, 565; *Sherman Law*, 565. — *See also* Attorneys-General.
Department of State, *Doc. Hist. of Const.*, 156.
Dependencies, govt., 551; status, 552.
Depew, C. M., *One Hundred Years*, 399.
Deposits, removal of, 417.
Derby, J. B., *Reminiscences*, 171.
De Renne, W. J., library, 66.
Desert Land acts, 508, 576.
Desmond, H. J., *Know-Nothing*, 410.
Desty, Robt., *Constitution*, 156.
De Trobriand, P. R., *Four Years*, 477.
Detroit, capture, 372.
Deutscher Pionier-Verein, pubs., 158.
Dewey, D. R., *Finan. Hist.*, 59; *Banks*, 349; *State Banking*, 429; *National Problems*, 522.
Dewey, Geo., in Philippines, 549; biog., 550.
Dewhurst, W. W., *Saint Augustine*, 66.
De Witt, B. T., *Legal Tender*, 499.
De Witt, Cornelius, *Jefferson*, 111.
Dewitt, D. M., *Assassination of Lincoln*, 484; *Impeachment of Johnson*, 491.
Dexter, E. G., *Hist. of Educ.*, 59.
Dexter, F. B., *Population*, 292.
Dexter, H. M., *Williams*, 120; *Congregationalism*, 273.
Dexter, Morton, *England and Holland of Puritans*, 273.
Dey, P. A., *R. R. Legislation*, 513.
Diaz del Castillo, B., *Historia*, 241.
Dicey, A. V., *Law of Constitution*, 350.
Dicey, Edward, *Six Months*, 477.
Dickens, Chas., *Am. Notes*, 94.
Dickinson, D. S., *Speeches*, 164.
Dickinson, John, biog., 107; *Polit. Writings*, 164; *Letters of a Farmer*, 296; draft of Articles of Confed., 312.
Digest of U. S. Reports, 156.
Digested Summary of Claims, 36.
Digests, select, of early decisions, 150; state and fed., 155, 156.
Dillon, J. B., *Indiana*, 67; *Oddities of Colon. Leg.*, 131.
Dillon, J. F., *Marshall*, 382.
Dimsdale, T. J., *Vigilantes*, 502.
Dingley, E. N., *N. Dingley*, 107.
Dingley, Nelson, biog., 107.
Dingley Tariff act, 540, 570.
Dinwiddie, Robt., frontier builder, 319; *Official Records*, 322.
Diplomatic Corresp. of U. S., 156.
Direct Legislation Record, 574.
Direct taxation, under Adams, 358, 361; of Civil war period, 478; refund, 539. —*See also* Taxation.
Discovery, important dates, 200; pre-Columbian, 243; Columbus, 244; companions and successors of Columbus, 245; in Peru and Mexico, 247; Span., in U. S., 248; French voyages, 250; French, in interior, 252; Cabot, 255; Drake's voyage, 256; Amadas and Barlow, 257; Eng. voyages on N. Eng. coast, 258; Hudson, 266; Eng., in interior, 319; voyages on Pacific coast, 431; exploration of Far West, 431.
District of Columbia, location, 348, 353; slavery and slave trade in, 425, 445, 447, 486.
Disturnell, John, *Trip through the Lakes*, 54; *Western Traveller*, 54.
Dix, D. L., biog., 107; and reform, 391.
Dix, J. A., biog., 107; *Speeches*, 164.
Dix, Morgan, *J. A. Dix*, 107.
Dixon, Arch., and Kan.-Neb. bill, 453.
Dixon, F. H., *State R. R. Control*, 513; *R. R. Control in Neb.*, 513; *Mann-Elkins Act*, 564.
Dixon, W. H., *Penn*, 269.
Document Catalogue, 37.
Document Index, 37.
Documentary Hist. of Const., 156.
Dodd, S. C. T., *Combinations*, 562; *Trusts*, 562.
Dodd, W. E., *Davis*, 107; *Macon*, 114; *Statesmen of Old South*, 321; *Marshall and Va.*, 382; *Fight for Northwest*, 461.
Dodd, W. F., *State Constitutions*, 410; *Govt. of D. C.*, 410.
Doddridge, Jos., *Notes*, 322.
Dodge, G. M., *U. P. R. R.*, 505.
Dodge, Henry, exploration, 433.
Dodge, M. A., *Blaine*, 104.
Dodge, R. I., *Indians*, 432.
Dodge, T. A., *Civil War*, 59.
Donaldson, Thos., *Public Domain*, 46.
Donck, Adrien van der, *Beschrijvinge*, 267.
Dondlinger, P. T., *Wheat*, 508.
Donelson, Ft., capture, 475.
Dongan, Thos., in N. Y., 267.
Doniol, Henri, *Participation*, 308.
Donne, W. B., *Corresp. of George III*, 301.
Doran, J. I., *Fishery Rights*, 543.
Dorchester, Mass., histories, 72.
Dorchester Fishing Company, 276.
Dorr, H. C., *Proprietors of Providence*, 281.
Dorr rebellion, 430.
Doubleday, Abner, *Ft. Sumter*, 472.
Dougherty, J. H., *Constitutions of N. Y.*, 314.
Doughty, A. G., *Documents*, 150; *Siege of Quebec*, 289.
Douglas, G. W., *Roosevelt*, 573.
Douglas, S. A., biogs., 107; Kan.-Neb. bill, 453; and Kan. struggle, 454; Lincoln debates, 460; campaign of 1860, 460.
Douglass, Fred., biogs., 107, 422; *Life and Times*, 171.

Douglass, Wm., *Summary*, 59.
Dover Public Library, *List relating to N. H.*, 74.
Downie, Wm., *Hunting for Gold*, 436.
Doyle, J. A., *English in Am.*, 42.
Drago doctrine, 555.
Drake, Daniel, *Pioneer Life in Ky.*, 68.
Drake, F. S., *Roxbury*, 72; *Knox*, 112.
Drake, Francis, voyage, 256, 431.
Drake, S. A., *Great West*, 59; *N. Eng. Legends*, 189; *New Eng.*, 277; *Nooks and Corners*, 293; *Old Landmarks*, 293; *Hist. Fields*, 302.
Drake, S. G., *Boston*, 71; *Five Years' War*, 288.
Drannan, W. F., *Thirty-one Years*, 506; *Chief of Scouts*, 506.
Draper, J. W., *Civil War*, 42.
Draper, Lyman, *King's Mountain*, 310.
Drayton, John, *Memoirs*, 303.
Dred Scott decision, 458.
Drew, Benj., *Refugee*, 450.
Drew, F. M., *Farmers' Movement*, 541.
Drewry, W. S., *Southampton Insur.*, 422.
Drinker, H. S., *Interstate Com. Act*, 524.
Dry Farming Congresses, *Reports*, 580.
Duane, Jas., *Territorial Rights*, 338.
Duane, Wm., *Laws of U. S.*, 46.
Du Bois, W. E. B., *John Brown*, 104; *Bibl. of Negro American*, 318; *Slave-Trade*, 327; *Reconstruction*, 496; *Negro Church*, 496; *Negro in South*, 496; *Bibl. of Am. Negro*, 497; *Souls of Black Folk*, 538.
Du Bose, J. W., *Yancey*, 121.
Duden, Gottfried, *Bericht*, 94.
Duden, Margaret, *Internal Improvements in Ind.*, 401.
Dudley, Jos., biog., 107; as pres. of Mass., 286.
Dudley, Thos., biog., 107; *Letters*, 278.
Duer, W. A., *Stirling*, 118; *Outlines*, 411; *Lectures*, 411.
Duflot de Mofras, E., *Exploration*, 433.
Dugard, Marie, *Société Am.*, 582.
Duke of York's laws, 267.
Dumont, Jean, *Corps Dipl.*, 52.
Dunbar, C. F., *Topics and References*, 31; *Laws relating to Finance*, 349.
Dunbar, W. H., *Govt. by Injunction*, 568.
Duncan, J. M., *Travels*, 94.
Duniway, A. S., *From West to West*, 503.
Duniway, C. A., *Freedom of Press*, 293; *Withdrawal from Mexico*, 501.
Dunlap, Boutwell, *Bibl. of Chinese Question*, 560.
Dunlap, Wm., *New York*, 305.
Dunmore's war, 319.
Dunn, J. P., *Indiana*, 67; *Massacres*, 506; *Mortgage Evil*, 541.
Dunning, W. A., *Civil War and Reconstruction*, 59; *Reconstruction*, 490; *Second Birth of Repub. Party*, 510.
Duponceau, P. S., *Hist. Discourse*, 82.
Du Quesne, Ft., capture, 289.
Durand, D. D., *Finance of N. Y. City*, 411.
Durand, J., *Docs. on Am. Rev.*, 308.
Durfee, Calvin, *Williams College*, 393.
Durrett, R. T., *Bryant's Station*, 307.
Durrie, D. S., *Missouri*, 73; *Madison*, 88.
Dutch element, 317. — *See also* New Netherland.
Dutch West India Co., 266.
Duval, J. P., *Compilation*, 134.
Duyckinck, E. A., *Cyclop. of Am. Lit.*, 39.
Dwight, H. O., *Encyc. of Missions*, 558.
Dwight, S. E., *Pres. Edwards*, 107.
Dwight, T. W., *Report on Prisons*, 397.
Dwight, Theo. (1), *Jefferson*, 111; *Hartford Convention*, 374.
Dwight, Theo. (2), *Northern Traveller*, 54; *Conn.*, 64; *Journals of Madam Knight*, 96.
Dwight, Timothy, *Travels*, 94.
Dyer, David, *Albany Penitentiary*, 395.
Dyer, Oliver, *Jefferson Davis*, 107.

E., S., *Further Quæries*, 286.
Eads, J. B., Tehuantepec project, 526.
Earl, Thos., *Lundy*, 113.
Earle, A. M., *Margaret Winthrop*, 277; *Sabbath in N. Eng.*, 327; *Home Life*, 327.
Earle, J. C., *Prime Ministers*, 309.
Earle, Pliny, *Bloomingdale Asylum*, 397.
East-Hampton, L. I., records, 143.
East India Company, 258.
Eastman, Crystal, *Work-Accidents*, 568.
Eaton, A. W. H., *Kings Co., N. S.*, 311.
Eaton, Alex., *Street Railways*, 405.
Eaton, John, *Grant, Lincoln, and Freedmen*, 496.
Eaton, Theophilus, in New Haven, 282.
Eaton, W. P., *Am. Stage*, 583.
Eaves, Lucile, *Cal. Labor Legis.*, 547.
Echoes from the South, 474.
Eckenrode, H. J., *Va. during Reconstruction*, 491.
Economic Bulletin, 585.
Economic conditions, study, 11; colon., 291, 327; after War of 1812, 379; development (1820–60), 398, 405; in 1845, 443; sectional (1861), 462; periods of depression, 516, 539; scientific business management, 577. — *See also* Agriculture, Capital, Cattle, Commerce, Finances, Fisheries, Labor, Land, Lumber, Manufactures, Mining, Natural resources, Public lands, Slavery, Social conditions, Trusts.
Eddis, Wm., *Letters*, 294.
Eddy, A. J., *Law of Combinations*, 562.
Edes, Peter, *Diary*, 171.
Edgar, W. C., *Grain of Wheat*, 400.
Edginton, T. B., *Monroe Doctrine*, 501.
Edmonds, J. E., *Civil War*, 475.
Edmunds, G. F., *Anti-Trust Law*, 525.
Edmunds Anti-Polygamy act, 522, 533.
Education, William and Mary College, 261; in Plymouth colony, 275; in colon. Mass., 278, 287; general colon. conditions, 327; development (1820–60), 391; land grants for agri. colleges, 508; in new South, 536; present conditions, 581.
Education, articles on hist. methods, 20.
Educational Review, articles on hist. methods, 20.
Edwards, Ed., *Free Town Libraries*, 392.
Edwards, Jon., biogs., 107.
Edwards, N. W., *Illinois*, 376.

Edwards, Rich., *Great West*, 74.
Edwards, W. S., *The Yukon*, 548.
Edwards Co., Ill., history, 67.
Eells, Myron, *Whitman*, 435.
Egerton, H. L., *Canadian Const. Development*, 150.
Eggerling, H. W. E., *Beschreibung*, 94.
Eggleston, Ed., *Beginners of a Nation*, 59; *Transit of Civilization*, 59; hist. novels, 185; *Household History*, 327.
Eggleston, G. C., *Am. War Ballads*, 190; *Rebel's Recollections*, 474; *Confed. War*, 476.
Egle, W. H., *Pennsylvania*, 82.
Egleston, Melville, *Land System*, 278.
Egmont, Earl of, *Journal of Trustees of Ga.*, 265.
Eighty Years' Progress, 399.
Elections, federal (1788), 346; (1792), 351; (1796), 358; (1800), 361; (1804), 363; (1808), 370; (1812), 374; (1816), 383; (1820), 383; (1824), 388; (1828), 412; (1832), 414; (1836), 428; (1840), 430; (1844), 439; (1848), 445; (1852), 456; (1856), 456; (1860), 460; (1862), 483; (1864), 483; (1868), 490, 498; acts for fed. supervision, 495; (1872), 498; (1874), 510; (1876), 514, 516; (1880), 520; (1884), 521; Electoral Count act, 521; (1888), 522; (1890), 539; (1892), 539; (1894), 539; (1896), 540; act forbidding corporation contributions, 561; (1900), 571; (1904), 571; (1908), 572; act for publicity of campaign contributions, 572; (1910), 570, 572. — *See also* Politics, Suffrage.
Electoral Commission, 514.
Electoral Count act, 521.
Elementary School Teacher, article on hist. methods, 20.
Eliot, C. W., *Am. Hist. Docs.*, 177; *Future of Trade Unionism*, 567; *Individualism and Collectivism*, 573; *Am. Contributions to Civilization*, 583; *Educ. for Efficiency*, 584.
Eliot, W. G., *Archer Alexander*, 450.
Elizabeth, N. J., histories, 75.
Elkins Antirebate act, 560.
Ellet, E. F., *Women of Am. Rev.*, 299.
Elliot, C. B., *Fisheries*, 543.
Elliot, Chas., *Am. Slavery*, 426.
Elliot, Howard, [*Ry.*] *Coöperation*, 564.
Elliot, Jon., *Debates*, 156; *Funding System*, 334.
Elliott, C. W., *New Eng. Hist.*, 59.
Elliott, E. B., *Continuous Voyages*, 369.
Elliott, H. W., *Arctic Province*, 63; *Report on Alaska*, 63.
Elliott, Howard, *Montana*, 74.
Elliott, J. R., *Am. Farms*, 513.
Elliott, S. B., *Sam Houston*, 434.
Ellis, G. E., *Puritan Age*, 71; *Anne Hutchinson*, 110; *Bunker Hill*, 302.
Ellis, G. W., *King Philip's War*, 285.
Ellsworth, Oliver, biog., 107.
Elmer, L. Q. C., *Govt. of N. J.*, 294; *Constitution adopted in 1776*, 314.
Elson, H. W., *United States*, 42.
Elson, L. C., *Am. Music*, 394.
Elting, Irving, *Dutch Village Communities*, 326.
Ely, R. T., *Labor Movement*, 406; *Evolution of Indus. Soc.*, 561; *Monopolies*, 562.
Emancipation, in northern states, 335; proclamations, 486; Thirteenth amendment, 486, 489. — *See also* Slavery.
Embargo Laws, 369.
Embargo of 1807, 370. — *See also* Neutral trade.
Emergency Currency act, 561.
Emerick, C. F., *Credit System*, 376; *Agri. Discontent*, 541.
Emerson, E. W., *R. W. Emerson*, 107; *C. R. Lowell*, 113; *E. R. Hoar*, 511.
Emerson, F. V., *Geog. Influence in Distribution of Slavery*, 353.
Emerson, R. W., biogs., 107.
Emery, H. C., *Speculation*, 562; *New Protectionism*, 570; *Tariff Board*, 571.
Emigrants' Guide, 54.
Emory, W. H., *Milit. Reconnoissance*, 433.
Employers' liability, federal legislation, 567.
Encomium case, 427.
Encyclopædia Britannica, 39.
Endicott, C. M., *J. Endicott*, 107.
Endicott, John, biog., 107; in Mass., 277.
Enforcement act, 495.
Engelhardt, Z., *Missions*, 435.
England. — *See* Great Britain.
English, T. D., *Am. Ballads*, 190.
English, W. H., *Conquest of Northwest*, 307.
English bill, 454.
Enock, C. R., *Great Pacific Coast*, 546; *Farthest West*, 546.
Epochs of Am. History, 40.
Erdmann, Hugo, *Alaska*, 546.
Erie Co., Pa., history, 83.
Erskine, D. M., Am. mission, 370.
Escurial, treaty of, 354.
Essex, Mass., history, 72.
Essex Institute, pubs., 160.
Estaing, Comte d', in Am. Rev., 308.
Evans, C. H., *Exports*, 518.
Evans, Chas., *Am. Bibl.*, 32.
Evans, R. D., *Sailor's Log*, 550.
Everett, Ed., *Orations*, 164.
Everhart, Elfrida, *Handbook of U. S. Docs.*, 35.
Examinations, classroom tests, 214; oral, 214; formal written, 215.
Excise. — *See* Internal revenue.
Executive, list of presidents, 204, 205; under Confederation, 329; organization under constitution, 346; state (1820–60), 409; Jackson and Congress, 418; of Confed. States, 472; arbitrary govt. during Civil war, 483; Johnson and Congress, 489; Presidential Succession act, 521. — *See also* Civil service, Elections, Government, and presidents by name.
Exeter, N. H., history, 75.
Expatriation, controversy, 500.
Expenditures, early fed., 348; under Jefferson, 363; Jackson's policy, 412; of Civil war period, 478. — *See also* Finances, Surplus.
Explorations. — *See* Discovery.
Express business, rise, 399; pony, 505.

Fagan, J. O., *Labor and Railroads*, 567.
Fagan, W. L., *Southern War Songs*, 477.
Fairbanks, G. R., *Florida*, 66.
Fairchild, H. L., *Travels of John Lincklaen*, 97.
Fairchild, H. P., *Immigration and Crises*, 528; *Greek Immigration*, 529.
Fairchild, J. H., *Oberlin*, 393.
Fairlie, J. A., *Munic. Admin.*, 411; *Essays in Munic. Admin.*, 574.
Faithfull, Emily, *Three Visits*, 94.
Falconer, Thos., *Oregon Question*, 438.
Fanning, C. E., *Elec. of Senators*, 576; *Direct Primaries*, 576.
Far West, exploration, 431; trade and settlement to 1850, 433; development of mining frontier, 502; agri. extension, 508; development, of farther Northwest, 530; and of Gt. Plains and Southwest, 533. — *See also* Pacific coast.
Farmer, John, *Collections*, 75.
Farmers. — *See* Agriculture.
Farmers' Alliance, 523.
Farragut, D. G., biogs., 108.
Farragut, Loyall, *D. G. Farragut*, 108.
Farrand, L., *Basis of Am. Hist.*, 236.
Farrand, Max, *Records of Fed. Convention*, 177; *Indian Boundary Line*, 321; *West and Rev.*, 321; *Legis. for Territories*, 331; *Compromises*, 340; *Judiciary Act*, 361.
Farrar, C. S., *The War*, 465.
Faust, A. B., *German Element*, 59.
Faux, Wm., *Memorable Days*, 94.
Fay, Benj., *Slave-Keeping*, 328.
Fearon, H. B., *Sketches of Am.*, 94.
Featherstonhaugh, G. W., *Excursion*, 94.
Federal constitution, important dates in development, 202, 203; framing convention, 339; ratification, 341; theories, 343; organ. of govt. under, 346; implied powers, 350; Va. and Ky. resolutions, 360; and annexations, 365; Hartford Convention, 374; development by Supreme court, 381; territory and slavery questions, 385, 445, 458; nullification, 415; fugitive slaves question, 449; secession, 464; compared with that of Confed. States, 472; reconstruction, 489; dependencies, 551. — *See also* Government, Supreme court.
Federal Convention, 339.
Federal Reporter Digest, 156.
Federalist, 341, 343.
Federalist party, beginning, 341, 351; fall from power, 361; as opposition, 363, 365, 370, 374; disappearance, 383. — *See also* Elections, Politics.
Fédix, M., *Orégon*, 81.
Fehlandt, A. F., *Drink Reform*, 394.
Felt, J. B., *Eccl. Hist. of N. Eng.*, 59; *Ipswich*, 72; *Salem*, 72; *Mass. Currency*, 287; *Customs of N. Eng.*, 293.
Fenian movement, 500.
Fenton, H. T., *Am. Politics*, 177.
Fergus, Robt., *Chicago River Convention*, 405.
Ferguson, H. A. V., *Ft. Benton*, 502.
Fernald, M. L., *Plants of Wineland*, 243.
Fernow, B. E., *Forestry*, 579; *Economics of Forestry*, 579.
Fernow, Berthold, *Ohio Valley*, 80; *Records of New Amsterdam*, 143.
Ferrall, S. A., *Ramble*, 94.
Ferrelo, Bart., voyage, 431.
Ferris, Benj., *Settlements on the Delaware*, 66.
Fertig, J. W., *Secession in Tenn.*, 491.
Fessenden, Francis, *W. P. Fessenden*, 108.
Fessenden, W. P., biog., 108; as sec. of treasury, 478.
Ficklen, J. R., *Louisiana*, 69; *Reconstruction in La.*, 491.
Fidler, Isaac, *Observations*, 94.
Field, D. D., biog., 108.
Field, E. W., *Correspondence*, 482.
Field, Ed., *Colon. Taverns*, 327.
Field, H. M., *D. D. Field*, 108; *Atlantic Telegraph*, 402.
Field, T. W., *Battle of Long Island*, 305.
Fielder, Herbert, *J. E. Brown*, 492.
Fifteenth amendment, 495.
Filmer, Robt., *Patriarcha*, 297.
Filmore, Millard, *Papers*, 164; president, 447; and compromise, 447; in campaign of 1856, 456.
Filson Club, pubs., 159.
Finances, of Am. Rev., 312; of Confederation, 333; organ. and early years under constitution, 348, 355; under Jefferson, 363; of War of 1812, 372; reorgan. after war, 379; state (1820–60), 409; Whig plans and Tyler's vetoes, 430; effect of gold discoveries, 434, 502; conditions (1845–48), 443; of Confed. States, 472; northern, during Civil war, 478; post-bellum reconstruction, 498; depression (1873–78), 516; (1890–96), 539. — *See also* Banks, Capital, Economic conditions, Expenditures, Money, Panics, Public debts, Revenue, Surplus, Taxation, Trusts.
Finch, J. A., *Fed. Anti-Trust Decisions*, 565.
Finch, John, *Travels*, 94.
Findley, Wm., *Insurrection*, 338.
Finerty, J. F., *War Path*, 507.
Fink, Henry, *Regulation of Ry. Rates*, 565.
Finney, C. G., biog., 394; *Memoirs*, 397.
Fischer, Theobald, *Raccolta*, 238.
Fish, C. R., *Syllabus*, 31; *Guide to Roman Archives*, 181; *Civil Service*, 347; *Econ. Hist. of Wis.*, 518.
Fisher, G. P., *Colonial Era*, 40.
Fisher, Irving, *Purchasing Power of Money*, 579.
Fisher, R. S., *Statis. Gazetteer*, 54; *Am. Statis. Annual*, 54.
Fisher, Sidney G., *Trial of Constitution*, 421.
Fisher, Sydney G., *Franklin*, 108; *Penn*, 269; *Making of Pa.*, 270; *Struggle for Am. Independence*, 291; *Evolution of Const.*, 324.
Fisher, W. C., *Am. Trade Regulations before 1789*, 336.
Fisher, W. L., *Alaska Coal*, 548.
Fisheries, treaty of 1783, 310; colon., 327; convention (1818), 379; development (1820–60), 398; controversy and reciprocity treaty (1854), 451; Halifax commission, 500; renewal of controversy and draft treaties (1885–88), 543;

modus vivendi, 543; arbitration by Hague tribunal, 555. — *See also* Fur seals.
Fiske, G. M., *Payne-Aldrich Tariff*, 570.
Fiske, John, *Appletons' Cyclop. of Am. Biog.*, 40; *Discovery*, 42; *Old Virginia*, 42; *New England*, 42; *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, 42; *New France*, 42; *Am. Revolution*, 42; *Critical Period*, 42; *Mississippi Valley*, 42; *New World*, 42.
Fite, E. D., *Pres. Election of 1860*, 458; *Soc. and Econ. Conditions*, 484.
Fithian, P. V., *Journal*, 171.
Fitzhugh, Geo., *Cannibals All*, 422.
Fitzmaurice, Edmond, *Shelburne*, 117; *Granville*, 501.
Flack, H. E., *Fourteenth Amendment*, 490; *Span.-Am. Dipl.*, 550.
Flagg, C. A., *Ref. List of Conn. Local Hist.*, 64; *Guide to Mass. Local Hist.*, 71; *Bibl. of N. Y. Colon. Hist.*, 76.
Flagg, W. C., *Farmers' Movement*, 513.
Flanders, Henry, *Chief Justices*, 329.
Flatbush, N. Y., history, 77.
Fleming, H. E., *Magazines*, 394.
Fleming, W. L., *Doc. Hist. of Reconstruction*, 177; *Civil War and Reconstruction in Ala.*, 473; *Reorgan. of Indus. System in Ala.*, 537.
Fletcher, Francis, *World Encompassed*, 257.
Fletcher, H. C., *Am. War*, 463.
Fletcher, W. I., *A. L. A. Index*, 32; *Poole's Index*, 33.
Fletcher *v.* Peck, 381.
Flexner, Ab., *Am. College*, 584.
Flick, A. C., *Loyalism*, 311.
Fling, F. M., *Studies in History*, 17.
Flint, C. L., *100 Years' Progress*, 377.
Flint, C. R., *Indus. Combinations*, 562.
Flint, M. B., *Long Island*, 77.
Flint, T., *Miss. Valley*, 54; *Geog. and Hist. of Western States*, 376.
Flom, G. T., *Norweg. Immigration*, 392.
Florida, hists., 66; records and statutes, 133; hist. soc., 159; discovery, 248; settlement, 250; annex., 383; admission, 409; secession, 466; reconstruction, 490. — *See also* South, States, West Fla.
Florida Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Flower, Geo., *Edwards Co., Ill.*, 67.
Floyd, J. B., resignation, 468.
Flushing, L. I., history, 294.
Flynt, Josiah. — *See* Willard (J. F.).
Foerster, R. F., *Ital. Emigration*, 529.
Fogg, E. F., *Italian on the Land*, 529.
Foley, Henry, *[Jesuit] Records*, 262.
Folks, Homer, *Destitute Children*, 395.
Follett, M. P., *Speaker*, 347.
Folsom, Geo., *Saco*, 283.
Folwell, W. W., *Minnesota*, 73.
Foot, S. A., *Dred Scott*, 458.
Foote, H. S., *Texas*, 85.
Foote, W. H., *N. C.*, 79; *Va.*, 87.
Foraker act, 551.
Forbes, J. G., *Floridas*, 66.
Forbes, J. M., biog., 402; *Letters*, 404.
Forbes, R. B., *Reminiscences*, 404.
Forbes, W. C., *Decade of Am. Rule*, 554.
Forbes-Lindsay, C. H., *Panama*, 526; *Philippines*, 552.
Force, M. E., *Gen. Sherman*, 118.
Force, Peter, *National Calendar*, 54; *Am. Archives*, 156; *Tracts*, 177.
Force bill (1875), 495; (1890), 539.
Ford, A. C., *Colon. Precedents of Land System*, 59.
Ford, H. A., *Cincinnati*, 80.
Ford, H. J., *Am. Politics*, 59.
Ford, K. B., *Cincinnati*, 80.
Ford, P. L., *Check List of Bibls.*, 28; *Pamphlets on Constitution*, 30; *Franklin Bibl.*, 108; *Franklin*, 108; *Washington*, 120; ed. of Dickinson's *Writings*, 164; of Jefferson's *Writings*, 166; hist. novel, 185; *Bibl. of Constitution*, 341; *Essays on Constitution*, 343; *Bibl. Hamiltoniana*, 349.
Ford, Thos., *Ill.*, 67; admin., 401.
Ford, W. C., *Washington*, 120; ed. of Washington's *Writings*, 167; *Washington as Employer*, 328; *Adams and Monroe Doctrine*, 388; *Legal Tender Decision*, 499; *Movement of Gold*, 540.
Fordham, E. P., *Narrative*, 94.
Foreign relations, expectancy of South (1861), 462; right of expatriation, 500; Algeciras conference, 555. — *See also* Annexations, Arbitration, Boundaries, International peace, Isthmian transit, Latin-Am., Reciprocity, Treaties, and nations and wars by name.
Foreign Relations, 501; *General Index*, 501.
Foreman, John, *Philippine Islands*, 552.
Forestry, forest reserves, 576; Forestry Service, Pinchot, 576. — *See also* Lumber.
Forestry and Irrigation, 580.
Forestry Quarterly, 581.
Forman, S. F., *Freneau*, 352.
Forman, S. S., *Journey*, 377.
Formby, John, *Am. Civil War*, 463.
Forney, J. W., *Anecdotes*, 171.
Forrest, Edwin, biog., 394.
Forrest, W. S., *Norfolk*, 87.
Forster, W. E., *Penn and Macaulay*, 270.
Forsyth, G. A., *Story of the Soldier*, 506.
Forsyth, Wm., *Cases*, 150.
Fort Wayne, history, 67.
Fort Harmar treaty, 354.
Fort Stanwix treaty, 319.
Fortescue, G. K., *Subject Index*, 34.
Fortescue, J. W., *British Army*, 302.
Fortier, Alcée, *Louisiana*, 69.
Fosdick, L. J., *French Blood*, 318.
Fossett, Frank, *Colorado*, 504.
Foster, A. J., Am. mission, 370.
Foster, Arthur, *Digest*, 134.
Foster, B. F., *Merchant's Manual*, 408.
Foster, F. H., *Seminary Method*, 17.
Foster, H. D., *Bennington*, 306.
Foster, J. W., *Am. Dipl. in Orient*, 59; *Century of Am. Dipl.*, 59; *Dipl. Memoirs*, 545; *Arbitration and Hague Court*, 555.
Foster, W. E., *S. Hopkins*, 110; *References to Const.*, 315; *Town Govt.*, 326.
Foster, W. T., *Admin. of College Curriculum*, 584.
Foulke, W. D., *Morton*, 115.
Fourteenth amendment, 489.
Fowke, Gerard, *Stone Age*, 240.

Fowler, Jacob, *Journal*, 94.
Fowler, John, *Journal*, 94.
Fox, C. J., biogs., 108; and peace, 310; *Speeches*, 311.
Fox, Chas., *Text Book of Agri.*, 403.
Fox, G. V., on Columbus's landfall, 244.
Fox, Geo., biog., 108; Quaker, 269.
Fox, W. F., *Lumber*, 400.
France, G. W., *Struggles*, 532.
France, Am. explorations and settlements, 249–254; wars for Canada, 288, 289; in Am. Rev., 308; in peace negotiations, 310; relations with Confederation, 336; relations with U. S. during French Rev., 354; X. Y. Z. mission and war, 358; sale of La., 365; neutral trade controversy, 368, 370; spoliation claims, 388, 412; and Civil war, 462, 480; in Mexico, 480, 500.
Franchère, Gabriel, *Voyage to the Northwest Coast*, 81.
Frankland, C. H., biog., 293.
Franklin, Benjamin, biogs., 108; bibl., 108; *Calendar of Papers*, 164; *List of Papers*, 164; *Life and Writings*, 165; *Works*, 165; *Writings*, 165; *Autobiog.*, 171; *Life*, 171; examination (1775), 296; Hutchinson letters, 302; in France, 308; peace negotiations, 310; draft of Articles of Confed., 312; and western land cos., 322.
Franklin, F. G., *Naturalization*, 410.
Franklin Co., N. Y., history, 78.
Franklin, State of, 337.
Franz, Alex., *Kolonisation des Mississippitales*, 69.
Frederic, Harold, hist. novel, 185.
Fredericksburg, battle, 475.
Fredonian war, 433.
Free Democrats, 449, 456.
Free Soil party, 445.
Freedmen's Bureau, 489.
Freeman, D. A., *Calendar of Confed. Papers*, 474.
Freeman, E. A., *Methods*, 18; *Some Impressions of U. S.*, 95; *Eng. Constitution*, 324.
Freeman, Fred., *Cape Cod*, 71.
Freer, W. B., *Philippine Experiences*, 553.
Frelinghuysen, F. T., canal dipl., 526.
Fremantle, A. J., *Three Months*, 477.
Frémont, J. C., *Exploring Expedition*, 95; *Report*, 95; *Memoirs*, 95; exploration, 432; in Cal., 434; campaign of 1856, 456.
French, Alice, hist. novel, 185.
French, B. F., *Hist. Collections of La.*, 69; *Hist. Collections of La. and Fla.*, 69.
French, Geo., *New England*, 582.
French, W. H., *Index of Claims*, 37.
French and Indian war, 288, 289.
French decrees, 369, 370.
French element, 317.
French spoliation claims, 358, 388, 412.
Freneau, Philip, biog., 352.
Friedenwald, Herbert, *Declaration of Independence*, 304.
Friars' Lands agreement, 551.
Fries's insurrection, 361.
Froebel, Julius, *A Travers l'Am.*, 95.
Frontenac, Ft., capture, 289.
Frontier. — *See* West.
Frontier posts, 330, 354.
Frost, J. H., *Ten Years*, 171.
Frothingham, O. B., *Parker*, 115; Gerrit *Smith*, 118.
Frothingham, Rich., *Rise of Republic*, 59; *Charlestown*, 71; *Warren*, 119; *Siege of Boston*, 302.
Froude, J. A., *Eng. Seamen*, 256.
Fruit raising (1820–60), 398; in Northwest, 530; in South, 536.
Fry, F., *Traveler's Guide*, 503.
Fry, Henry, *N. Atlantic Steam Nav.*, 518.
Fry, W. H., *New Hampshire*, 75.
Fugitive slaves, in colon. times, 327; under Confederation, 334; first fed. act, 353; new bills, 385; conditions and cases before 1850, 426; act of 1850, 447; agitation and cases under new act, 449; personal liberty acts, 449; status during Civil war, 485; repeal of act of 1850, 486. — *See also* Slavery.
Fulda, Ludwig, *Am. Eindrücke*, 582.
Fuller, H. B., *Purchase of Fla.*, 66; *Speakers*, 541.
Fuller, Thos., *Church History*, 273.
Fulmore, Z. T., *Annex. and Mex. War*, 440.
Fulton, Robt., biogs., 108, 401.
Fundamental Articles of New Haven, 282.
Fundamental Constitutions, 264.
Fundamental Orders of Conn., 281.
Funston, Fred., *Memories*, 550.
Fur seals, controversy and arbitration, 543.
Fur trade in Far West, 432.
Furnam, Gabriel, *Brooklyn*, 77; *Antiquities of L. I.*, 77.

Gadsden Purchase, 442.
Gaffarel, Paul, *Floride Française*, 66; *Découverte*, 243; *Brésil*, 250.
Gag resolutions, 425.
Gaine, Hugh, *Universal Register*, 54.
Gale, A. L., *Bryan*, 104.
Gallatin, Albert, biogs., 108; *Writings*, 165; and finances, 357, 363; report on internal improvements, 379; *Memorial*, 417; *Northeastern Boundary*, 437.
Gallaudet, E. M., *T. H. Gallaudet*, 395.
Gallaudet, T. H., biog., 395.
Galloway, Jos., *Candid Examination*, 311.
Galton, Douglas, *Report on Rys.*, 404.
Gamble, Thos., *Savannah*, 134.
Gambrall, T. C., *Church in Md.*, 294.
Gambrill, J. M., *Bibl. of History*, 30.
Gannett, Henry, *Boundaries*, 46; *Place Names*, 46; *Maps of U. S.*, 49; *Scribner's Statistical Atlas*, 50; state registers, 53; *Mother Maps*, 317; *Building of a Nation*, 302.
Ganong, W. F., *Boundaries of N. B.*, 437.
Garcés, Francisco, diary, 93.
Garcilasso de la Vega, *Commentarios*, 248.
Garçon, Aug., *Canal de Panama*, 526.
Garden, Alex., *Anecdotes*, 171.
Garden, G. de, *Traités*, 52.
Gardiner, S. R., *England*, 273; *Docs. of Puritan Rev.*, 297; *Students' Hist.*, 324.

Garfield, J. A., biogs., 108; *Works*, 165; election, 520; assassination, 520.
Garland, H. A., *Randolph*, 117.
Garland, Hamlin, *Grant*, 109; hist. novel, 186.
Garneau, F. X., *Canada*, 252.
Garner, J. W., *U. S.*, 42; *Fourteenth Amendment*, 490; *Reconstruction in Miss.*, 491.
Garrett, W. R., *Tenn.*, 85; *S. C. Land Cession*, 313.
Garrison, F. J., *W. L. Garrison*, 108.
Garrison, G. P., *Texas*, 85; *Westward Extension*, 429; *Dipl. Corresp. of Texas*, 441.
Garrison, W. L., biogs., 108; *Selections*, 423; abolition movement, 423.
Garrison, W. P., *W. L. Garrison*, 108.
Gasparin, A. E. de, *Uprising*, 463.
Gaspee, burning, 298.
Gaulot, Paul, *Expédition du Mex.*, 501.
Gay, S. H., *U. S.*, 41; *Madison*, 334.
Gayarré, Chas., *Louisiane* and *Louisiana*, 69; hist. novel, 186.
Gazetteers, 53–56.
Geary, J. W., in Kansas, 454.
Geary law, 557.
Gee, Joshua, *Trade of Gt. Bn.*, 292.
General Collection of Treatys, 52.
General Personal Index of Journals, 36.
Genet, E. C., Am. mission, 354; *Corresp.*, 356.
Geographies, 53–56.
Geography. — *See* Discovery, Historical geography, Maps, Physical geography, Territory.
Geological Survey, work and pubs., 47; topog. and special maps, 49; Irrigation Division, 576; *Forest Reserves*, 581.
Geology. — *See* Physical geography.
George III, *Corresp. with North*, 301.
George, Henry, *Our Land and Land Policy*, 509; *Progress and Poverty*, 509; single tax movement, 523; biog., 524.
George, Henry, Jr., *H. George*, 524.
George, Staughton, *Duke of Yorke's Laws*, 145; *Charter to Penn*, 145.
Georgia, bibl., 66; hists., 66, 67; records and statutes, 134; hist. soc., 159; charter and settlement, 265; royal province, 265; conditions (1760), 295; western claim, 312, 330; boundary, 337; ratification, 341; and Indians, 354, 388, 419; Yazoo grants, 375; secession, 466; reconstruction, 490, 495; whites regain control, 495. — *See also* Colonies, South, States.
Georgia Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Gephart, W. F., *Transportation*, 376.
Gerard, J. W., *Peace of Utrecht*, 52.
Germain, Lord Geo., corresp., 305.
German element, 317; on frontier, 319.
Germany, and expatriation, 500; Samoa, 543; and Span.-Am. war, 549.
Gerry, Elbridge, biog., 108; *Some Letters*, 359.
Gerstner, C. von, *Beschreibung*, 95.
Gettysburg, battle, 475.
Ghent, treaty of, 372.
Gibbes, W. R., *Doc. History*, 303.
Gibbons, J. S., *National Loans*, 499.
Gibbons *v.* Ogden, 381.
Gibbs, Geo., *Administrations of Washington and Adams*, 103.
Gibson, A. M., *Disputed Election*, 515.
Gibson, Jas., *Journal*, 288; biog., 289.
Giddings, F. H., *Democracy and Empire*, 553.
Giddings, J. R., biog., 109; *Speeches*, 165; antislavery congressman, 425; censure, 425.
Giesecke, A. A., *Am. Commercial Legis. before 1789*, 59.
Gihon, J. H., *Geary and Kansas*, 455.
Gilbert, F. T., *Resources of Mon.*, 532.
Gilbert, Humphrey, voyage, 256.
Gilbert, J. H., *Trade in Early Ore.*, 435.
Gilchrist, B. B., *Mary Lyon*, 393.
Gilder, R. W., *Cleveland*, 106.
Giles, F. W., *Topeka*, 68.
Giles resolutions, 357.
Gillespie, W. W., *Road Making*, 404.
Gillet, R. H., *Democracy*, 497.
Gilman, Caroline, *Recollections*, 171; hist. novel, 186.
Gilman, D. C., *New Internat. Encyc.*, 39; *Monroe*, 114.
Gilman, M. D., *Bibl. of Vt.*, 86.
Gilmer, J. H., *Southern Politics*, 474; *Confed. States vs. Gilmer*, 474.
Gilmore, J. R., *Rear-Guard*, 85; *Sevier*, 85; *Advance-Guard*, 85.
Gilpin, H. D., ed. of Madison's *Papers*, 166.
Girard, C., *États Confed.*, 474.
Girardin, L. H., *Burk's Va.*, 310.
Gist, Christopher, *Journals*, 95; explorations, 319.
Gladstone, T. H., *Englishman in Kansas*, 95.
Gladstone, W. E., *Vaticanism*, 263; biog., 501.
Glasson, W. H., *Milit. Pension Legis.*, 541.
Glen, Jas., *Description of S. C.*, 84; *Answers*, 295.
Gloucester, Mass., history, 72.
Gneist, R., *Eng. Parliament*, 324.
Gobright, L. A., *Recollections*, 171.
Goddard, H. P., *Luther Martin*, 114.
Goddard, S. A., *Letters*, 482.
Goddard, T. A., *Banks*, 414.
Godey's Lady's Book, 396.
Godkin, E. L., biog., 109; *Problems*, 522.
Godwin, Parke, *Chas. Fourier*, 408.
Goethals, G. W., Panama canal, 554.
Gohier, Urbain, *Peuple du XXe Siècle aux États Unis*, 582.
Gold, Cal., discovery and effect, 434; later discoveries, 502; speculation, Black Friday, 498; drain on reserve, 539; standard, 540. — *See also* Money.
Gold Democrats, 540.
Gold Standard act, 540.
Goldmark, J., *Child Labor Legis.*, 568.
Goldsmith, Lewis, *Exposition*, 359.
Gomara, F. L. de, *Conquista de México*, 247.
Gomez, Estevan, voyage, 248.
Gómez Nuñez, S., *Guerra Hispano-Am.*, 550.

Gompers, Samuel, contempt case, 560; and Am. Federation of Labor, 567.
Gonnard, René, *Emigration Européenne*, 528.
Good Government, 511.
Goode, G. B., *Smithsonian Instn.* 392; *Nat. Institutions*, 392; *Fisheries*, 400.
Goode, W. A. M., *With Sampson*, 550.
Goodell, Wm., *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, 327; *Am. Slave Code*, 422; *Views*, 426.
Goodnow, F. J., *City Govt.*, 411; *Munic. Problems*, 411; *Social Reform and Constitution*, 575.
Goodpasture, A. V., *Tenn.*, 85; *Watauga Assoc.*, 320.
Goodrich, De Witt, *Indiana*, 68.
Goodrich, S. G., *Recollections*, 171.
Goodrich-Bishop episode, 363.
Goodwin, D. R., *Slavery*, 422.
Goodwin, F. P., *Growth of Ohio*, 376; *Miami Country*, 376.
Goodwin, J. A., *Pilgrim Republic*, 72.
Goodwin, T. S., *Natural History of Secession*, 463.
Gordillo, Francisco, voyage, 248.
Gordon, A. C., hist. novel, 186.
Gordon, Clarence, *Cattle, Sheep, and Swine*, 535.
Gordon, G. H., *War Diary*, 477.
Gordon, J. H., *Ill. Ry. Legis.*, 513.
Gordon, T. F., *N. J.*, 75; *Gazetteer of N. Y.*, 76; *Pa.*, 82.
Gordon, Wm., *Am. Revolution*, 296.
Gordy, J. P., *Polit. Hist. of U. S.*, 59; *Normal School Idea*, 393.
Gordy, W. F., *U. S. for Schools*, 13; *Pathfinder*, 18.
Gorges, Ferdinando, 275; grant, 276; *Briefe Relation*, 276; *Briefe Narration*, 276.
Gorges, Robt., grant, 275; colony, 276.
Gorges Society, publications, 177.
Gorham, G. C., *Stanton*, 118.
Gorton, Samuel, biog., 109; in R. I., 281; *Simplicities Defence*, 281.
Gosnold, Bart., voyage, 258.
Goss, E. H., *Revere*, 117.
Goss, J. D., *Tariff Admin.*, 357.
Gouge, W. M., *Fiscal Hist. of Texas*, 85; *Paper Money*, 414.
Gough, John, *Quakers*, 284.
Gould, B. A., *Investigations*, 236.
Gould, E. W., *Fifty Years*, 171.
Gould, J. M., *Income Tax*, 541.
Gould, Jay, *Delaware Co.*, 77; strike on railway system, 523.
Goulder, W. A., *Reminiscences*, 503.
Gourges, Dominic de, in Fla., 250.
Government, Va. under charter and crown, 259, 260; Md., 262; Carolina, 264; Ga., 265; N. Neth., 266; N. Y., 267; N. J., 268; Pa., 269, 270; Plymouth, 274; colon. Mass., 278; R. I., 281; Conn., 281; New Haven colony, 282; provin. Mass., 286; relation of colonies with Gt. Bn., 291; Eng. institutions to 1775, 323; colon. institutions, 325; of Confederation, 329; organ. of fed., 346; polit. conceptions, 408, 409; development of fed. and state (1820–60), 408; of Confed. States, 472; of dependencies, 551; recent popular reform movements, 572. — *See also* Charters, Constitutions Executive, Foreign relations, Judiciary, Legislature, Local govt., Politics, Representation, Union.
Grady, H. W., *New South*, 536; *Cotton and its Kingdom*, 536; biog., 536.
Grafton, Duke of, ministry, 298.
Grafton, Mass., history, 72.
Graham, J. D., *Mason and Dixon Line*, 270.
Graham, Jas., *D. Morgan*, 114.
Grahame, Jas., *United States*, 296.
Granger, M. M., *Washington vs. Jefferson*, 465.
Granger movement, 512.
Grant, A. M., *Memoirs*, 95.
Grant, E. B., *Boston Rys.*, 404.
Grant, U. S., biogs., 109, 492; *Memoirs*, 171; in Civil War, 475; *Report* (1865), 477; election, 490, 498; and South, 495; foreign relations under, 500; lax admin. and scandals, 510; reëlection, 510; veto of inflation, 516; candidacy (1880), 520; and Interoceanic Canal Co., 525; *Nicaragua Canal*, 527.
Grant, W. L., *Voyages of Champlain*, 251.
Grant, W. P., *Canadian Const. Development*, 150.
Granville, Earl, biog., 501.
Granville, O., history, 80.
Gray, Asa, *Letters*, 171.
Gray, Horace, *Dred Scott*, 458.
Gray, Robt., voyage, 431.
Gray, Russell, *Mass. Digest*, 151.
Gray, W. H., *Oregon*, 81.
Graydon, Alex., *Memoirs*, 171.
Great Britain statutes to 1775, 130; reports of Royal MSS. Com., 130; Am. discoveries and claims, 255–258; maritime awakening, 256; conditions (1600), 258; Puritanism, 272; polit. institutions (1775), 323; relations with Confederation, 335; with U.S. (1789–98), Jay treaty, 354; neutral trade controversy, 368, 370; War of 1812, 371; commercial convention (1815), 379; question of W. I. trade, 379, 388; and slave trade, 385, 388, 427, 486; and Texas, 439, 440; and Isthmian transit, Clayton-Bulwer treaty, 451, 526, 543, 554; and Civil war, 462, 480; Alabama claims, 480, 500; Sackville-West incident, 543; Venezuela-Guiana boundary, 543; draft general arbitration treaty, 543; fur seal question, 543; Samoa, 543. — *See also* American Revolution, Canada, Colonies.
Great Industries of U. S., 519.
Great Lakes, discovery, 251, 252; commerce, 398, 517, 530; fisheries, 398; iron fields, 530. — *See also* Waterways.
Greathouse, C. H., *Dept. of Agri.*, 513.
Greeley, Horace, *Am. Conflict*, 43; biogs., 109, 394; *Recollections*, 172; *Hints toward Reforms*, 397; *Reforms and Reformers*, 408; *Slavery Extension*, 453; *Overland Journey*, 503; candidacy (1872), 510.
Greeley, Col., history, 64.

Greely, A. W., *Public Docs.*, 36; *Handbook of Alaska*, 63.
Green, J. R., *Eng. People*, 273.
Green, S. A., *Groton Hist. Ser.*, 72; *Records of Groton*, 279.
Greenback party, 516, 520, 521.
Greene, D. H., *East Greenwich*, 281.
Greene, E. B., *Provincial Am.*, 265; *Provincial Governor*, 325; *Govs.' Letter Books*, 411.
Greene, F. V., *Gen. Greene*, 109.
Greene, G. W., *Am. Revolution*, 59; *R. I.*, 83; *Natl. Greene*, 109; *German Element*, 305.
Greene, M. L., *Relig. Liberty in Conn.*, 64.
Greene, Natl., biogs., 109; campaigns, 309.
Greenfield, Mass., history, 72.
Greenhow, Robt., *Ore. and Cal.*, 81.
Grenslet, Ferris, *Lowell*, 521.
Greenville treaty, 354.
Gregg, Alex., *Old Cheraws*, 320.
Gregg, Josiah, *Commerce*, 435.
Gregory, H. E., *Geography*, 48.
Gregory, M. H., *Checking the Waste*, 577.
Grenville, Geo., *Papers*, 296.
Grenville, Rich., Ralegh's colony, 257.
Greve, C. T., *Cincinnati*, 80.
Griffin, A. P. C., *Lists*, 31; *Bibl. of Am. Hist. Socs.*, 32; *Index upon Am. Local Hist.*, 62; *Lists: Immigration*, 318; *Negro Question*, 318; *Germans*, 323; *Constitution*, 345; *Banks*, 349; *Polit. Parties*, 352; *Recognition*, 388; *Subsidies*, 405; *Railroads*, 405; *Labor*, 408; *Cuba*, 452; *Reciprocity*, 452; *Hawaii*, 452; *Impeachment*, 494; *Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments*, 494; *Danish W. I.*, 501; *Internat. Arbitration*, 501; *Tax. of Incomes*, 542; *Samoa and Guam*, 545; *Porto Rico*, 551; *Occupation of Philippines*, 551; *Colonization*, 554; *Far East*, 560; *Chinese Immigration*, 560; *Trusts*, 566; *Fed. Control*, 566; *Iron and Steel in Commerce*, 566; *Railroads in relation to Govt.*, 566; *Govt. Ownership*, 566; *Indus. Arbitration*, 569; *Child Labor*, 569; *Employers' Liability*, 569; *Eight-Hour Working Day*, 569; *Workingmen's Insurance*, 569; *Primary Elections*, 576; *Deep Waterways*, 581.
Griffis, W. E., *Sir Wm. Johnson*, 111; *Perry*, 116; *Pilgrims*, 274; *Am. in East*, 558.
Griffith, E. C., *Gerrymander*, 410.
Griffith, T. W., *Baltimore*, 294.
Grigsby, H. B., *Va. Fed. Conven.*, 342.
Grijalva, Juan de, discovery, 245.
Grimes, J. W., biog., 109.
Grimké, A. H., *Garrison*, 108; *Summer*, 119.
Grimké, J. F., *Laws of S. C.*, 146.
Grimké sisters, abolitionists, 423; biog., 424.
Grinnell, J. B., *Men and Events*, 172.
Griswold, R. W., *Repub. Court*, 347; *Corresp.*, 396.
Griswold, W. M., *List of Novels*, 183.
Groat, G. G., *Am. Courts in Labor Cases*, 568.
Gros, Raymond, *T. R. in Cartoon*, 573; *Au Pays du Dollar*, 582.
Groseilliers, Sieur des, in West, 252.
Gross, S. D., *Physicians*, 407.
Grosvenor, W. M., *Protection*, 443.
Groton, Mass., history, 72; records, 279.
Grund, F. J., *Americans*, 95; *Aristocracy in Am.*, 95.
Guadeloupe Hidalgo, treaty, 442.
Guam, annexation, 551.
Gue, B. F., *Iowa*, 68.
Guild, R. A., *Chaplain Smith*, 292.
Guilford, Conn., history, 65.
Guilford, N. C., battle, 309.
Gunboat system, 363.
Gunton, Geo., *Trusts*, 562.
Gurowski, Adam, *Am. and Europe*, 421; *Slavery*, 426.
Guthrie, A. L., *Readers' Guide*, 32.
Guthrie, W. D., *Fourteenth Amendment*, 491.
Gutierrez, A., *Estados Unidos*, 582.

Habeas corpus during Civil war, 483.
Habenicht, H., *N. Am.* (map), 50.
Hackett, F. W., *Portsmouth Records, 1645–1656*, 141.
Hadden, J. M., *Journal*, 306.
Hadley, A. T., *R. R. Transportation*, 513.
Hadley, Mass., history, 72.
Hageman, J. F., *Princeton*, 306.
Hague Conferences, 555; treaties, 555.
Hague Tribunal, Venezuela debt case, 555; fishery arbitration, 555.
Hailey, John, *Idaho*, 67.
Haines, Chas. Glidden, *Penitentiary System*, 397.
Haines, Chas. Grove, *Judic. Powers*, 382.
Haines, H. S., *Problems in Ry. Regulations*, 401; *Restrictive Ry. Legis.*, 564; *Ry. Corporations as Public Servants*, 564.
Haines, Helen, *New Mexico*, 76.
Hakluyt, Rich., *Navigations*, 242; *Discourse*, 257.
Hakluyt Society, *Works*, 177.
Hale, C., *Debates*, 342.
Hale, E. E., *Washington*, 120; hist. novels, 186; *Franklin in France*, 308; *Irish Immigration*, 393.
Hale, E. E. (2), *Lowell*, 113.
Hale, John Parker, in Senate, 445.
Hale, John Peter, *Trans-Allegheny Pioneers*, 313.
Hale, W. B., *Woodrow Wilson*, 574.
"Half-Breeds," 520.
Haliburton, T. C., hist. novel, 186; *Rule and Misrule*, 287.
Halifax Commission, 500.
Hall, B. H., *Eastern Vt.*, 86.
Hall, Basil, *Forty Etchings*, 95; *Travels in N. Am.*, 95; *Voyages and Travels*, 95.
Hall, C. S., *S. H. Parsons*, 115.
Hall, D. A., *Bank of U. S.*, 349.
Hall, D. B., *Ref. List on Maine Local Hist.*, 70.
Hall, F. S., *Sympathetic Strikes*, 524.
Hall, G. S., *Bibl. of Educ.*, 15; *Methods of Teaching History*, 18.
Hall, H. H., *Great West*, 503.
Hall, Henry, *Ethan Allen*, 103; *Ship Building*, 401.
Hall, Hiland, *Vermont*, 86.

Hall, Jas., *Letters*, 95; *Sketches*, 95; *Statistics*, 404; *The West*, 404.
Hall, P. F., *Immigration*, 318.
Hall, R. M., *Ore., Wash., Idaho*, 532.
Hall, S. C., *Retrospect*, 172.
Hall, W. E., *Internat. Law*, 544.
Hall, W. H., *Physical Data of Cal.*, 432.
Hallowell, A. D., *Motts*, 115.
Hallowell, R. P., *Quaker Invasion*, 284.
Hallum, John, *Arkansas*, 63.
Halsey, F. W., *Tour of Four Great Rivers*, 100; *Old New York Frontier*, 307.
Hamilton, A. M., *Hamilton*, 109; *Works*, 165.
Hamilton, Alex., biogs., 109; *Works*, 165; notes in Fed. Conven., 340; as sec. of treasury, 348, 356; Jefferson controversy, 351; and French war, 358; intrigue against Adams, 361; duel and death, 367.
Hamilton, F. W., *Grenadier Guards*, 310.
Hamilton, Gail. — *See* Dodge (M. A.).
Hamilton, J. C., *Hamilton*, 109; ed. of Hamilton's *Works*, 165.
Hamilton, J. G. de R., *Reconstruction in N. C.*, 491.
Hamilton, Jas. Albert, *Negro Suffrage*, 490.
Hamilton, Jas. Alex., *Reminiscences*, 172.
Hamilton, Luther, *Rantoul*, 117.
Hamilton, P. J., *Colon. Mobile*, 63; *Reconstruction*, 490.
Hamilton, Patrick, *Arizona*, 63.
Hamilton, Thos., *Men and Manners*, 95.
Hamilton, Mass., history, 72.
Hamlin, C. E., *H. Hamlin*, 492.
Hamlin, Hannibal, biog., 492.
Hammond, J. D., *Polit. Parties*, 76.
Hammond, John, *Leah and Rachel*, 263.
Hammond, M. B., *Cotton Industry*, 400; *Ry. Rate Theories*, 564; *Recent Efforts to Advance Rates*, 564.
Hamon, E., *Canadiens-Français de la Nouvelle-Angleterre*, 529.
Hamor, Ralph, *True Discourse*, 260.
Hampton Negro Conference, *Reports*, 538; *Proceedings*, 538.
Hancock, John, biog., 109.
Hancock, W. S., biog., 110; *Reminiscences*, 172.
Handlin, W. W., *Am. Politics*, 465.
Haney, L. H., *Cong. Hist. of Rys.*, 59.
Hanger, G. W. W., *Strikes*, 524; *Housing of Working People by Employers*, 585; *Building and Loan Assocs.*, 585.
Hanger, Geo., *Life*, 172.
Hanna, C. A., *Scotch-Irish*, 305; *Wilderness Trail*, 320.
Hanna, M. A., biog., 540.
Hannah, J. C., *Eastern Asia*, 558.
Hannay, Jas., *Acadia*, 251.
Hans, F. M., *Great Sioux*, 508.
Hansard's Parl. History, 297.
Hansom, J. W., *Am. Italy*, 547.
Hanson, J. M., *Conquest of the Missouri*, 506.
Hanway, Castner, trial, 449.
Hapgood, Norman, *Lincoln*, 112; *Webster*, 120.
Harbeck, C. T., *Bibl. of Navy*, 551.
Hardin, Ben, biog., 173.
Harding, S. B., *G. R. Smith*, 118; *Ratification*, 338.
Hardwick, Mass., history, 72.
Hardy, J. C., *South's Supremacy in Cotton*, 537.
Hare, J. I. C., *Am. Const. Law*, 340.
Hare, W. H., biog., 507.
Hariot, Thos., *Narrative*, 257.
Harlem, N. Y., history, 77.
Harmon, D. W., *Journal*, 96.
Harnett, Cornelius, biog., 110.
Harper, W. H., *Restraint of Trade*, 562.
Harper, Wm., *Pro-Slavery Argument*, 422.
Harper and Bros., *Pictorial Hist.*, 476.
Harper's Encyc. of U. S. Hist., 39.
Harper's Ferry raid, 458.
Harrell, J. M., *Brooks and Baxter War*, 491.
Harriman, E. H., railway combinations, 560.
Harriman, Walter, *Warner*, 75.
Harriman Alaska Expedition, 548.
Harrington, Jas., *Oceana*, 297.
Harrington, T. F., *Harvard Medical School*, 393.
Harris, Alex., *Polit. Conflict*, 425.
Harris, J. C., *H. W. Grady*, 536.
Harris, N. D., *Negro Servitude*, 385.
Harris, T. L., *Trent Affair*, 481.
Harris, T. M., *Journal*, 96.
Harris, Thos., *Md. Reports*, 151.
Harrison, Benj., election, 522; *Speeches*, 523; admin., 539; defeat (1892), 539.
Harrison, Mrs. Burton, *Recollections*, 474.
Harrison, Fred., *Meaning of History*, 18.
Harrison, J. B., *Indian Reservations*, 506.
Harrison, Josiah, *Compilation*, 142.
Harrison, W. H., election and death, 430.
Harrisse, Henri, *Colomb*, 244; *Vespuccius*, 246; *Discovery of N. Am.*, 248; *Cabot*, 255.
Harrower, John, *Diary*, 328.
Harry, J. W., *Md. Constitution*, 410.
Harsha, W. J. J., *Iowa*, 68.
Hart, A. B., *Manual*, 13; *Essentials*, 13; *Studies in Am. Educ.*, 18; *Cyclopedia*, 39; *Epochs*, 40; *Formation of Union*, 41; *Am. Nation*, 43; *Epoch Maps*, 50; *Foundations of Am. Foreign Policy*, 59; *National Ideals*, 60; *Southern South*, 60; *Chase*, 105; *Contemporaries*, 177; *Source Book*, 178; *Source Readers*, 178; *Am. Hist. Leaflets*, 178; *Practical Essays*, 326; *Federal Govt.*, 341; *Monroe Doctrine*, 387; *Slavery and Abolition*, 392; *Actual Govt.*, 511; *Obvious Orient*, 546.
Hart, C. H., *Robt. Morris*, 115.
Hart, J. C., hist. novel, 186.
Harte, Bret, hist. novel, 186; biog., 434.
Hartford Co., Conn., hist., 65.
Hartford Convention, 374.
Hartt, R. L., *People at Play*, 583.
Hartwell, Henry, *Virginia*, 261.
Harvard College Library, *Card Cat. Subjects*, 34.
Harvard Law School, *Cat.*, 34.
Harvard University, *Guide to Social Ethics*, 30; *References in History* 17, 433.
Harvey, John, in Va., 260.
Harvey, Peter, *Webster*, 120.
Harvey, W. H., *Coin's Finan. School*, 542.
Harwood, W. S., *New Earth*, 577.

Haskell, F. A., *Gettysburg*, 477.
Haskins, C. H., *Yazoo Cos.*, 376.
Hasse, A. R., *Index to State Docs.*, 33; *Books on Polit. Rights*, 341; *Reports of Explorations*, 433; *North-Eastern Boundary*, 439.
Hastings, L. W., *Emigrant's Guide*, 436.
Haswell, A., *Matthew Philips*, 322.
Hatch, L. C., *Admin. of Rev. Army*, 312.
Hatfield, E. F., *Elizabeth*, 75.
Hatfield, H. R., *Commerce*, 518.
Hatton, A. R., *Digest of City Charters*, 574.
Haven, S. F., on grants by N. Eng. Council, 276.
Haverhill, Mass., history, 72.
Hawaii, intervention and proposed annex. (1854), 451; reciprocity, 500, 517; revolution and attempted annex., 543; annex., 543; govt., 551.
Hawkins, Sir John, 256.
Hawkins, W. G., *Lunsford Lane*, 450.
Hawks, F. L., *North Carolina*, 79; *Doc. Hist. of Epis. Church*, 178.
Haworth, P. L., *Reconstruction and Union*, 490; *Disputed Election*, 515.
Hawthorne, Natl., *Pierce*, 116; hist. novels, 186.
Hay, John, *Lincoln*, 113; Open Door policy, 557.
Hay-Pauncefote treaty, 554.
Hayburn's case, 381.
Hayden survey, 47.
Haydn's Dict. of Dates, 39.
Hayes, A. B., *Lincoln*, 74.
Hayes, C. W., *Appalachians*, 48.
Hayes, R. B., election, 514; and South, 514; contest with Congress, 514; and Isthmian canal, 526; Chinese immigration veto, 557.
Haymarket bomb throwing, 523.
Hayne, R. Y., biog., 110; Webster debate, 415.
Haynes, F. E., *New Sectionalism*, 541.
Haynes, G. H., *Sumner*, 119; *Representation in Mass.*, 278; *Election of Senators*, 574; *People's Rule in Oregon*, 574.
Hayward, John, *Gazetteer of U. S.*, 54; *New Eng. Gazetteer*, 54.
Haywood, John, *Tenn.*, 85; *Revisal of Acts*, 147; *Laws of Tenn.*, 147.
Haywood, M. de L., *Tryon in N. C.*, 321.
Hazard, Ebenezer, *Hist. Collections*, 178.
Hazard, Rowland, *Credit Mobilier*, 510.
Hazard, Samuel, *U. S. Register*, 54; *Annals of Pa.*, 82.
Hazen, C. D., *Contemp. Am. Opinion of French Rev.*, 352.
Hazen, W. B., *Narrative*, 477; *Gt. Middle Region*, 532.
Hazelton, J. H., *Declaration of Independence*, 304.
Headley, J. W., *Confed. Operations*, 481.
Health, conditions (1820–60), 391; application of conservation principles, 577; present-day conditions, 581.
Heard, I. V. D., *Sioux War*, 506.
Heath, H. A., *Sheep Industry*, 535.
Heath, Sir Robt., grant, 264.
Heath, Wm., *Memoirs*, 172.
Heaton, J. L., *Vermont*, 86.
Hebard, G. R., *Pathbreakers*, 432.
Hecker, E. A., *Woman's Rights*, 583.
Heckewelder, John, *Narrative*, 321.
Hedrick, E. A., *List Relating to Irrigation and Drainage*, 581.
Heinrich, Pierre, *Louisiane*, 69.
Heitman, F. B., *Hist. Register*, 507.
Helper, H. R., *Impending Crisis*, 422; *Negroes*, 497.
Helps, Arthur, *Span. Conquest*, 247.
Henderson, C. H., *Pay-day*, 568.
Henderson, G. F. R., *Stonewall Jackson*, 111.
Henderson, J. B., *Am. Dipl. Questions*, 380.
Henderson, Rich., *Transylvania*, 319.
Hendrick, B. J., *Life Insurance*, 561.
Hendrick, Frank, *Ry. Control by Commissions*, 513; *Power to regulate Corporations*, 563.
Hening, W. W., *Statutes*, 149.
Henkels, S. V., *Bibliographer's Manual*, 32.
Hennepin, Louis, exploration, 252.
Henry, A. J., *Climatology*, 48.
Henry, Alex., journals, 93.
Henry, J. J., *Accurate Account*, 303.
Henry, John, mission, 370.
Henry, Patrick, biogs., 110; *Va. Resolutions*, 297.
Henry, W. W., *Patrick Henry*, 110.
Henry, Fort, capture, 475.
Hensel, W. U., *Christiana Riots*, 450.
Hepburn, A. B., *Coinage*, 334.
Hepburn Railway Rate act, 560.
Hepburn *v.* Griswold, 498.
Heralds of a Liberal Faith, 394.
Herbert, H. A., *Abolition Crusade*, 424; *Why the Solid South?* 490.
Herndon, W. H., *Lincoln*, 112.
Herrera, A. des, *Historia*, 245.
Hershey, A. S., [*Hague*] *Convention*, 555; *Internat. Law of Russo-Jap. War*, 558.
Herty, Thos., *Digest*, 137.
Hesse, N., *Westliche Nordamerika*, 96.
Hessians in Am. Revolution, 304.
Heston, A. M., *Absegami*, 75.
Hewatt, Alex., *S. C. and Ga.*, 84.
Hewes, F. W., *U. S.*, 42; *Scribner's Statistical Atlas*, 50.
Hewett, D., *Am. Traveller*, 54.
Hewitt, A. S., *Mining*, 400.
Hibbard, B. H., *Agri. in Dane Co.*, 400; *Tenancy*, 577.
Hichborn, F., *Cal. Legislature*, 547.
Hickcox, J. H., *Monthly Cat.*, 37.
Higgins, Mrs. Napier, *Bernards*, 104.
Higginson, Ella, *Alaska*, 546.
Higginson, Francis, biog., 110; *True Relation*, 277; *N. Eng. Plantation*, 277; in Mass., 277.
Higginson, H. L., *Justice to Corporations*, 562.
Higginson, Stephen, biog., 110; *Letters*, 337.
Higginson, T. W., *U. S.*, 41; *F. Higginson*, 110; *S. Higginson*, 110; *Phillips*, 116; *Am. Explorers*, 178; *Eng. Hist.*, 324; *Travellers*, 422; *Black Regiment*, 477.
High, J. L., *Law of Injunctions*, 568.
Hildreth, Jas., *Dragoon Campaigns*, 433.

Hildreth, Rich., *U. S.*, 43; hist. novel, 186; *Banks*, 349; *Despotism*, 422.
Hildreth, S. P., *Pioneer History*, 80.
Hildrup, J. S., *Missions*, 435.
Hildt, J. C., *U. S. and Russia*, 373.
Hilgard, E. W., *Relation of Soil to Climate*, 578; *Alkali Lands*, 578.
Hill, B. H., (1), biog., 492.
Hill, B. H. (2), *B. H. Hill*, 492.
Hill, D. G., *Dedham Records*, 139.
Hill, F. S., *Historic Ships*, 373.
Hill, F. T., *Decisive Battles of Law*, 360.
Hill, H. A., *Abbott Lawrence*, 112.
Hill, J. J., and Gt. Northern, 530; *Highways of Progress*, 532.
Hill, L. B., *Oklahoma*, 81.
Hill, Mabel, *Liberty Docs.*, 178.
Hill, R. T., *Public Domain*, 60.
Hill, Wm., *First Stages of Tariff*, 326.
Hillard, G. S., *McClellan*, 113; *Jer. Mason*, 114.
Hillegas, Michael, *Journals*, 145.
Hillquit, Morris, *Socialism*, 406.
Hincks, Francis, *Boundaries*, 437.
Hinds, W. A., *Am. Communities*, 406.
Hines, Gustavus, *Oregon*, 81.
Hingham, Mass., history, 72.
Hinman, R. R., *Blue Laws*, 282; *Antiquities*, 293.
Hinsdale, B. A., *How to Study History*, 15; *Bounding the Original U. S.*, 46; *Old Northwest*, 46; *Am. Govt.*, 325; *Mann*, 393.
Hinsdale, M. L., *President's Cabinet*, 60; *Leg. Hist. of Schools in Ohio*, 393.
Hinton, R. J., *Handbook of Ariz.*, 534.
Historians, prominent Am., 3.
Historical geography, importance, 24, 45; sources, 45, 51, 52; secondary works, 45, 46; maps, 50; use in teaching history, 209; of N. Am., 236; of U. S., 316. — *See also* Geography.
Historical novels, guides, 183, 184; list, 184–189.
Historical recreations, 210.
Historical societies, pubs., 157–163.
Histories of U. S., textbooks, 13, 14; brief, 40, 41; comprehensive, 41–44.
History of All Nations, 42.
History Teacher's Magazine, 20.
Hitchcock, Henry, *Constitutions*, 314.
Hittell, J. S., *Resources of Cal.*, 54; *San Francisco*, 64.
Hittell, T. H., *California*, 64.
Hoar, E. R., biog., 511.
Hoar, G. F., *Autobiog.*, 172; *No Power to Conquer Foreign Nations*, 553.
Hoar, Samuel, Charleston mission, 427.
Hobart, A. C., *Never Caught*, 477. [297.
Hobbes, T., *Phil. Rud.*, 297; *Leviathan*,
Hockett, H. C., *Federalism*, 364.
Hodder, F. H., *Outlines*, 31; *Audubon's Journal*, 91; *English Bill*, 455.
Hodge, Chas., *Presbyterian Church*, 292.
Hodge, F. W., *Handbook*, 241; *Span. Explorers*, 249.
Hodgkin, Thos., *Geo. Fox*, 108.
Hodgson, Adam, *Letters*, 96.
Hodgson, J. E., *Dredging of Gold Placers*, 546.
Hodgson, Jos., *Cradle of Confederacy*, 121.
Hoffman, C. F., *Winter in the West*, 96.
Hoffman, F. L., *Race Traits*, 537.
Hojeda, Alonso de, discoveries, 245.
Holbrook, J., *Ten Years Among Mail Bags*, 405.
Holden, W. W., biog., 496.
Holdsworth, J. T., *Banks*, 349.
Holland, J. G., *Western Mass.*, 72; *Lincoln*, 113; hist. novel, 186.
Holland purchase, history, 77.
Hollander, J. H., *Am. Trades Unionism*, 524; *Convention of 1907*, 556.
Hollis, I. N., *Constitution*, 373.
Hollis, J. P., *Reconstruction in S. C.*, 491.
Hollister, G. H., *Conn.*, 64.
Hollister, O. J., *Colfax*, 492.
Holloway, J. B., *Index of Claims*, 37.
Holloway, J. N., *Kansas*, 68.
Holls, F. W., *Peace Conference*, 556.
Holm, T. C., *New Sweden*, 66.
Holman, F. V., *John McLoughlin*. 434; *Unsatisfactory Results in Oregon*, 574.
Holmes, Abiel, *Annals*, 296.
Holmes, Isaac, *Account of U. S.*, 96.
Holmes, G. K., *Progress of Agri.*, 508; *Concentration of Wealth*, 561; *Farm Values*, 580.
Holmes, O. W., *Emerson*, 107; *Motley*, 115; hist. novels, 186.
Holmes, W. H., *Aboriginal Pottery*, 240.
Holst, Hermann von, *U. S.*, 44; *Calhoun*, 105; *Constitutional Law*, 314; *John Brown*, 459.
Holy Alliance, 386.
Homans, J. S., *For. Commerce*, 404.
Home Missionary, 397.
Homestead legislation, 459, 507.
Homestead strike, 539.
Hone, Philip, *Diary*, 172.
Hood, J. B., *Advance and Retreat*, 477.
Hood, John, *Index of Laws*, 142.
Hooker, Rich., *Eccl. Polity*, 297.
Hooker, Thos., biog., 110.
Hopewell, M., *Edwards' Great West*, 74.
Hopkins, J. H., *Slavery*, 422.
Hopkins, Mark, biog., 393.
Hopkins, Mark, railroad builder, 504.
Hopkins, Stephen, biog., 110; *True Representation*, 290; *Rights of Colonies*, 296.
Hopper, I. T., biog., 424
Hornaday, W. T., *Bison*, 432.
Hornbeck S. K., *Most-Favored Nation Clause*, 571.
Hornblower, W. B., *Anti-Trust Legis.*, 563.
Horry, Peter, *Marion*, 310.
Horsmanden, D., *N. Y. Conspiracy*, 268.
Horticulture. — *See* Fruit.
Hosack, David, *Clinton*, 106.
Hoskins, Nathan, *Vermont*, 86.
Hosmer, J. K., *La. Purchase*, 60; *Mississippi Valley*, 60; *S. Adams*, 103; *Vane*, 119; *Hutchinson*, 302; *Appeal to Arms*, 462; *Outcome of Civil War*, 473.
Hotchkin, J. H., *Western N. Y.*, 79.
Hotchkiss, G. W., *Lumber*, 400.
Houck, Louis, *Missouri*, 74; *Span. Régime*, 74.
Hough, A. M., *Mission in Mon.*, 502.
Hough, Emerson, *Cowboy*, 534; *Outlaw*, 535.

Hough, F. B., *Jefferson Co.*, 77; *Lewis Co.*, 77; *St. Lawrence and Franklin Cos.*, 78; *Papers of Nantucket*, 139; *Const. of N. Y.*, 143; *Savannah*, 309; *Charleston*, 309.
House of Representatives. — *See* Congress.
Houston, D. F., *Nullification*, 60.
Houston, Sam, biogs., 110, 434, 440.
Houston, Wm., *Documents*, 150.
Houston *v.* Moore, 381.
Hovey, Alvah, *Isaac Backus*, 103.
Hovey, Carl, *Stonewall Jackson*, 111; *J. P. Morgan*, 562.
Howard, B. C., *Reports*, 155.
Howard, G. E., *Local Const. History*, 278; *Preliminaries of Revolution*, 291; *Gen. Sociology*, 585.
Howard, O. O., *Gen. Taylor*, 119; *Autobiog.*, 172; *Nez Perce Joseph*, 507; *Life among Indians*, 507; *Fighting for Humanity*, 551.
Howe, F. C., *Internal Revenue*, 357; *Wisconsin*, 573; *City, the Hope of Democracy*, 583.
Howe, Henry, *New York*, 76; *Ohio*, 80; *Times of Rebellion in West*, 506.
Howe, John, *Secret Reports*, 371.
Howe, M. A. D. W., *Bancroft*, 103; *Am. Bookmen*, 393; *A. Potter*, 394; *Bishop Hare*, 507.
Howe, Maud, *Laura Bridgman*, 395.
Howe, S. G., *Letters*, 172; *Refugees*, 449.
Howe, Wm., in Am. Rev., 304; *Narrative*, 305.
Howell, G. R., *Southampton*, 78.
Howell, T. B., *State Trials*, 292.
Howells, W. C., *Recollections*, 377.
Howells, W. D., *Boy's Town*, 186.
Howison, R. R., *Virginia*, 261.
Hoxie, R. F., *Debate of 1890*, 540; *Socialism*, 575.
Hoyt, H. M., *Luzerne 17 Townships*, 307.
Hubbard, Wm., *N. Eng.*, 283; *Narrative of Troubles*, 285.
Huberich, C. H., *Trans-Isthmian Canal*, 544.
Hudson, A. S., *Concord*, 71.
Hudson, Chas., *Lexington*, 302.
Hudson, Fred., *Journalism*, 126.
Hudson, Henry, voyages, 266.
Hudson, J. F., *Rys. and Republic*, 513.
Hudson River, history, 77.
Hudson's Bay Co., in Oregon, 431.
Huebner, S. S., *Bibl. on Securities*, 566.
Huelsemann episode, 451.
Hughes, C. H., insurance investigation, 572.
Hughes, J. T., *Doniphan's Expedition*, 96.
Hughes, John, biog., 110.
Hughes, R. M., *Gen. Johnston*, 111.
Hughon, J. W., *Am. Socialism*, 568.
Huguenots, settlements, 250.
Hulbert, A. B., *Hist. Highways*, 46; *Crown Collection of Maps*, 51; *Washington and West*, 333; *Cumberland Road*, 380; *Great Am. Canals*, 401.
Hull, W. I., *Handbook of Sociological Information*, 525.
Hull, Wm., biog., 110.
Humboldt, Alex. von, *Examen Critique*, 246.
Humphrey, S. K., *Indian*, 506.
Humphreys, David, *Putnam*, 302.
Hunt, C. E., *Shenandoah*, 481.
Hunt, C. H., *Ed. Livingston*, 113.
Hunt, Freeman, *Am. Merchants*, 407.
Hunt, Gaillard, *Calhoun*, 105; *Madison*, 114; ed. of Madison's *Writings*, 166; *Forty Years*, 175.
Hunt, R. D., *Cal.'s Constitution*, 448.
Hunt, Wm., *Justice of Quebec Act*, 323
Hunter, C. L., *Western N. C.*, 79.
Hunter, Robt., *Poverty*, 583.
Huntington, C. C., *Ohio Canals*, 401.
Huntington, C. P., railroad builder, 504, 533.
Hunt's Merchants' Mag., 402.
Hurd, J. C., *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, 327; *Theory of National Existence*, 344; *Union-State*, 465.
Hurd, R. C., *Habeas Corpus*, 324; *Personal Liberty*, 411.
Hurd, R. M., *City Land Values*, 583.
Huret, Jules, *En Amérique*, 582.
Hurn, E. A., *Wis. Women*, 484.
Huse, Caleb, *Supplies for Confed. Army*, 481.
Huske, Ellis, *Present State*, 292.
Hutchinson, Anne, biog., 110; Antinomianism, 280.
Hutchinson, C. C., *Resources of Kansas*, 54.
Hutchinson, E. M., *Library of Am. Literature*, 179.
Hutchinson, Thos., *Mass.*, 71; *Collection of Papers*, 138; *Diary*, 165; Hutchinson letters, 301; biog., 302.
Hylton *v.* United States, 381.

Iberville, Sieur d', in La., 253.
Icazbalceta, J. G., *Coleccion*, 245.
Idaho, hists., 67; statutes, 134; mining rush, 502; territory, 502; admission, 530. — *See also* Far West, Northwest, States.
Iles, Geo., *Reader's Guide*, 30.
Illinois, hists., 67; records and statutes, 135; hist. socs., 159; under Eng., 319; as county of Va., 332; territory, 375; admission, 375. — *See also* Northwest, States, West.
Illinois Govs. Letter Books, 404.
Illinois Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Illustrative material, use, 182; hist. novels, 183–189; poems and ballads, 189, 190.
Imlay, Gilbert, *Topog. Description*, 333.
Immigrant Restriction League, *Pubs.*, 529.
Immigration, general conditions, 317; amount and character (1820–60), 391; problems and fed. legis. (1878–98), 528; Chinese and Japanese, 557. — *See also* Bureau, Population.
Impeachments, Pickering and Chase, 363; Peck, 412; Johnson, 490; Belknap, 510.
Imperialism. — *See* Dependencies.
Implied powers, doctrine, 350.
Import duties. — *See* Tariff.
Impressment controversy, 368, 372.
Income tax, Civil war, 478; reduction, 498; of 1894, declared unconst., 539; const. amendment for, submitted, 572.
Independence, declaration, 303.
Index, 482.
Index to Executive Communications, 36.
Index to Legal Periodicals, 33.
Indexes, list of special, 32–34; of fed. docs., 35–37; of fed. statutes, 152.

Indian Territory, set apart, 419; cattle leases, 533; Oklahoma, 533.
Indiana, hists., 67, 68; records and statutes, 135; hist. soc., 159; territory, 375; admission, 375. — *See also* Northwest, States, West.
Indiana Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Indianapolis, history, 67.
Indianapolis Convention, *Report of Monetary Com.*, 499.
Indians, value of study, 5; and prehist. man, 240; conditions, 241; massacre in Va., 259; and Pilgrims, 274; Pequod war, 281; King Philip's war, 285; in French-Eng. wars, 288; in Am. Rev., 304; colon. boundary line, 319; wars and treaties (1789–93), 354; supposed Brit. intrigue (1810), 371; cessions east of the Miss., 375, 388; conflict with Ga., removal of southern, 388, 419; Black Hawk war, 419; Seminole war, 419; wars and commissions in Far West (1860–76), 505; national wards act, 506; Dawes act, 506.
Industrial Com., 560, 567; *Reports*, 565.
Industrial Workers of the World, 567.
Industry. — *See* Economic conditions.
Ingersoll, C. J., biog., 110; *Second War*, 372.
Ingersoll, Chas., *Fears for Democracy*, 465.
Ingersoll, L. D., *Iowa*, 68.
Ingham, G. T., *Digging Gold*, 504.
Ingle, Ed., *Parish in Md.*, 326; *Va. Local Institutions*, 326.
Initiative, 574.
Injunctions in strikes, federal, 566.
Inland Waterways Commission, 576; *Report*, 580.
Inman, Henry, *Santa Fé Trail*, 434.
Innes, J. H., *New Amsterdam*, 78.
Insular cases, 552. — *See also* Dependencies.
Insurance, 391; investigation, 561; workmen's, 567.
Intellectual organization (1820–60), 391. — *See also* Education, Social conditions.
Internal improvements, Jefferson's policy, 363; demand in West, 375, 419; Cumberland road, 379; bills and vetoes (1817–22), 379; under J. Q. Adams, 388; river and harbor legis., 388, 398, 520, 522; progress (1820–60), 398; Jackson's vetoes, 419; Tyler's and Polk's vetoes, 443. — *See also* Commerce, Conservation, Railroads, Roads, Waterways.
Internal revenue, Stamp act, 295; first fed. excise and Whiskey rebellion, 357; direct tax (1798), 358; Fries's insurrection, 361; Civil war taxes, 478; reductions, 498; act of 1883, 520; refund of Civil war direct tax, 539; income tax of 1894 declared unconst., 539; amendment on income tax submitted, 572. — *See also* Taxation.
International Bureau of Am. Repubs., *Bulletins*, 545.
International peace, Hague conventions and treaties, 555; draft general arbitration treaties, 555; funds, 555. — *See also* Arbitration.
International Year Book, 38
Interoceanic Canal, 387.
Interoceanic Canal Congress, *Compte Rendu*, 527.
Interstate comity (1820–60), 409.
Interstate commerce, Supreme court on control, 381, 512, 523; fed. reports and bills (1874–78), 512; act (1887), 523; Supreme court's restriction of act, 560; report on rebates, 560; antirebate and rate acts, 560, 561; Northern Securities case, 560; employers' liability and hours of labor acts, 567. — *See also* Commerce, Railroads, Trusts.
Interstate Commerce Arbitration act, 567.
Interstate Commerce Commission, creation, 523; *Reports*, 565; *Decisions*, 565; *Indexes*, 565; *Freight Rates*, 565. — *See also* Interstate commerce.
Investigations, place in hist. method, 25, 26; use of libraries, 195; systems of written work, 229–235.
Iowa, hists., 68; records and statutes, 135; hist. soc., 159; territory, 409; admission, 409. — *See also* States, West.
Iowa Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Ipswich, Mass., histories, 72.
Iredell, Jas., biog., 110.
Ireland, A., *China and Powers*, 558.
Ireland, J. N., *Records of N. Y. Stage*, 394.
Iron and steel, special tariff act (1818), 379; development of industry (1820–60), 398; postbellum development, 518; Great Lakes ore fields, 530; southern fields and mills, 536; trust, 560.
Iroquois Indians, 252; in Am. Rev., 304.
Irrigation, in Utah, 434; in Pacific Northwest, 530; beginning in Southwest, 533; fed. legis. and development, 576. — *See also* Agriculture.
Irving, Washington, *Astoria*, 81; *Columbus*, 106; biog., 110; *Washington*, 120; hist. novel, 186; *Companions of Columbus*, 245; *Bonneville*, 432.
Irwin, Will, *Am. Newspaper*, 584.
Isham, Chas., *Fishing Question*, 380.
Isham, Samuel, *Am. Painting*, 394.
Isthmian Canal Com., *Reports*, 556.
Isthmian transit and canal, Colombian treaty (1846), 451; Mosquito question and Clayton-Bulwer treaty, 451; railroad, 451; surveys and reports on routes, 525; French Panama company, work and failure, 525; efforts to abrogate Clayton-Bulwer treaty, 526, 543; Nicaraguan concession and company, 526, 543; new French company, 543; abrogation of Clayton-Bulwer treaty, 554; purchase of French canal, 554; draft Colombian treaty, 554; Panama revolution and treaty, 554; Canal Zone act, 554; financiering and construction of canal, 554.
Ives, J. C., *Colorado River*, 503.
Ivins, W. M., *Public Utilities*, 564.
Izard, Ralph, *Corresp.*, 165.

Jackson, Andrew, biogs., 111; *Statesmanship*, 165; in Fla., 383; Rhea letter, 383; candidacy (1824), 388; career and character, 412; election, 412; policy as president,

412; war on bank, 414; and nullification, 415; removal of deposits, 417; censure, 418; internal improvements veto, 419.
Jackson, F. J., Am. mission, 370.
Jackson, H. H., hist. novels, 186; *Century of Dishonor*, 506.
Jackson, Sheldon, *Reindeer*, 548.
Jackson, T. J., biogs., 111, 467.
Jacob, J. J., *Michael Cresap*, 106.
Jacobstein, Meyer, *Tobacco*, 327.
Jäger, Oskar, *Teaching of History*, 18.
James I, *Works*, 297.
James, Benj., *Digest*, 146.
James, C. F., *Doc. Hist. of Relig. Liberty in Va.*, 322.
James, E. J., *Legal Tender*, 499; *Land Grant Act*, 508; *Agitation for Fed. Regulation of Rys.*, 513; *Immigrant Jew*, 529.
James, G. W., *Colorado Desert*, 534.
James, Henry, *Am. Scene*, 96.
James, J. A., *Indian Dipl.*, 307; *Problems of Northwest*, 307; *Clark and Detroit*, 307; *Const. of Iowa*, 410.
James, Wm., *Milit. Occurrences*, 372; *Naval Hist. of Gt. Bn.*, 373; *Naval Occurrences*, 373.
Jameson, J. A., *Const. Conventions*, 314; *National Sovereignty*, 345.
Jameson, J. F., *Original Narratives of Early Am. Hist.*, 90; *Narratives of New Neth.*, 266; *Introd. to Study of States*, 314; *Essays in Const. Hist.*, 329; studies on Fed. Conven., 341.
Janney, S. M., *Penn*, 115; *Friends*, 269.
Janson, C. W., *Stranger in Am.*, 96.
Janvier, T. A., *Old New York*, 78; *Dutch Founding of N. Y.*, 266.
Japan, first relations with U. S., 451; activity in Pacific, 545; later relations, 557; Russian war, 557. — *See also* Japanese immigration.
Japanese Exclusion League, *Pubs.*, 558.
Japanese immigration question, 557.
Jay, John, biogs., 111; *Corresp.*, 165; peace negotiations, 310; Jay treaty, 354.
Jay, John, *Peace Negotiations*, 310.
Jay, Wm., *J. Jay*, 111; *Misc. Writings*, 165; *Mexican War*, 440.
Jay treaty, 354.
Jefferson, Jos., biog., 394; *Autobiog.*, 396.
Jefferson, Thos., *Notes on Va.*, 87; biogs., 111; bibls., 165, 365; *Writings*, 165, 166; *Anas*, 172; *Reports*, 151; *Summary View*, 297; ordinance (1784), 331, 335; plan of coinage, 333; Hamilton controversy, 351; election to presidency, 361; career, 363; personality and principles as president, 363; La., Fla., and Oregon, 365; and Burr conspiracy, 367; and rights of neutral trade, 369; embargo, 370.
Jefferson, State of, 502.
Jefferson Co., N. Y., history, 77.
Jenkins, J., *Northern Tier*, 508.
Jenkins, J. S., *Polit. Parties in N. Y.*, 76; *Calhoun*, 105; *Polk*, 116; *Wright*, 121.
Jenkinson, Isaac, *Burr*, 105.
Jenks, J. W., *Immigration Problem*, 528; *Trust Problem*, 562; *Trusts and Indus. Combinations*, 566.
Jenness, J. S., *Transcripts*, 283.
Jennings, Isaac, *Memorials*, 86.
Jennings, J. T., *Bibl. of N. Y. Colon. Hist.*, 76.
Jennings, L. J., *Eighty Years*, 411.
Jervey, T. D., *R. Y. Hayne*, 110.
Jervis, J. B., *R. R. Property*, 404.
Jesse, J. H., *Selwyn*, 308.
Jesuits, *Relations*, 90; in Canada, 252.
Jevons, W. S., *Investigations*, 435.
Jewish Encyclopedia, 529.
Jogues, Isaac, *Novum Belgium*, 266.
John F. Slater Fund, *Proceedings*, 496; *Papers*, 538.
Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, 124; articles on hist. methods, 20.
Johnson, A. B., *Light House Service*, 401.
Johnson, Allen, *Douglas*, 107; *Popular Sovereignty*, 453.
Johnson, Amandus, *Swedish Settlements*, 66.
Johnson, Andrew, biogs., 111, 492; reconstruction policy, 489; struggle with Congress, 489; impeachment, 490; *Speeches*, 494.
Johnson, B. T., *Washington*, 120.
Johnson, E. R., *Am. Ry. Transp.*, 401; *River and Harbor Bills*, 420; *Inland Waterways*, 526; *Nicaragua Canal*, 544; *Ocean and Inland Water Transp.*, 578.
Johnson, Ed., *Wonder-Working Providence* 277.
Johnson, F. G., *Pavements*, 402.
Johnson, Harrison, *Nebraska*, 74.
Johnson, J. F. W., *Notes*, 403.
Johnson, John, *Old Md. Manors*, 326.
Johnson, L. D., *Gibson*, 289.
Johnson, O., *Route across Rocky Mts* , 436.
Johnson, Oliver, *Garrison*, 108.
Johnson, R. W., *Reminiscences*, 507.
Johnson, Reverdy, *Popular Sovereignty*, 453; Alabama claims treaty, 500.
Johnson, Rossiter, *War of Secession*, 475.
Johnson, T. L., biog., 574; *My Story*, 576.
Johnson, W. D., *High Plains*, 432.
Johnson, W. E., *Temperance*, 394.
Johnson, W. F., *Expansion*, 355; *Panama Canal*, 526.
Johnson, Sir Wm., biogs., 111; frontier builder, 319; *Calendar of MSS.*, 322.
Johnson, Wm., *Natl. Greene*, 109.
Johnston, A. S., biog., 461.
Johnston, Alex., *Am. Politics*, 41; *Conn.*, 65; *Am. Orations*, 178; *Am. Polit. History*, 351.
Johnston, Geo., *Cecil Co., Md.*, 70.
Johnston, H. P., *Campaign of 1776*, 305; *Harlem Heights*, 305; *Yorktown*, 309.
Johnston, J. E., biog., 111; *Narrative*, 172; in Civil war, 475.
Johnston, J. S., *First Explorations of Ky.* 322.
Johnston, Mary, hist. novels, 186.
Johnston, R. H., *Bibl. of Jefferson*, 365.
Johnston, R. M., *A. H. Stephens*, 118; hist. novels, 187.
Johnston, W. P., *A. S. Johnston*, 461.
Joliet, Louis, exploration, 252.
Jomard, E. F., *Monuments de Geog.*, 238.
Jones, A. D., *Illinois*, 54.

Jones, Alex., *Telegraph*, 402.
Jones, Augustine, *T. Dudley*, 107.
Jones, C. C., *Ga.*, 66; *Acts of Colony of Ga.*, 134; *Antiquities*, 242; *Dead Towns*, 265; *Delegates of Ga.*, 299.
Jones, Hugh, *Virginia*, 261.
Jones, J. B., *Rebel Clerk's Diary*, 474.
Jones, J. P., *Calendar of MSS.*, 111; biogs., 112.
Jones, J. W., *R. E. Lee*, 112.
Jones, Jos., *Letters*, 172.
Jones, L. A., *Index to Legal Period. Lit.*, 33.
Jones, L. E., *Am. Cat.*, 33.
Jones, Thos., *N. Y. during Rev.*, 294.
Jones, W. A. *Reconnaissance*, 503.
Jones, W. S., *A. Johnson*, 492.
Jordan, D. S., *Cal. and Californians*, 432; *Fur Seals*, 545; *Imperial Democracy*, 553.
Josselyn, John, *Two Voyages*, 96.
Journal of Geography, 47.
Journal of Geology, 47.
Journal of Philosophy, article on hist. methods, 21.
Journal of Social Science, 585.
Journals, of Continental Congress, 152, 153; of Congress, 152.
Judd, Sylvester, *Hadley*, 72; hist. novel, 187.
Judiciary, digests and reports of decisions before 1789, 150; state and fed. digests, 155; Court of Appeals under Confederation, 329; early state decisions on unconst. legis., 337; organ. under constitution, 346; act of 1800 and appts. under it., 361, 363; Jefferson's contest, 363; Jackson's attitude, 412; conditions of fed. and state (1820–60), 409; recent criticism, 575. — *See also* Government, Impeachments, Supreme court.
Judson, K. B., *Montana*, 74; *Pacific Northwest*, 436.
Juilliard *v.* Greenman, 498.
Julian, G. W., *Giddings*, 109; *Recollections*, 172; *Later Speeches*, 511.

Kalb, John, biog., 112.
Kalm, Peter, *Beschreibung* and *Travels*, 96.
Kansas, hists., 68; records, 135; hist. soc., 159; territorial act, 409, 452; struggle, 454; admission, 454; settlement of western, 530. — *See also* Far West, States.
Kansas City, meat packing, 533; history, 534.
Kansas Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Kansas–Nebraska act, 452.
Kapp, Friedrich, *Kalb*, 112; *Steuben*, 118; *Aus und über Am.*, 172; *Immigration*, 395; *Sklavenfrage*, 421; *Sklaverei*, 453.
Kappler, C. J., *Indian Affairs*, 157.
Kasson, J. A., *Evolution of Const.*, 340.
Kawakami, K. K., *Am.-Jap. Relations*, 558.
Kayserling, Meyer, *Columbus*, 244.
Kearny, J. W., *Am. Finances*, 349.
Keasbey, L. M., *Nicaragua Canal*, 60.
Keatinge, M. W., *Teaching of History*, 18.
Keeler, C. A., *San Francisco*, 547.
Keep, C. H., *Com. and Shipping of Gt. Lakes*, 532.
Keiley incident, 543.
Keith, H. E., *Internal Improvements in Mich.*, 401.
Keller, A. G., *Geography*, 48.
Kelley, Florence, *Ethical Gains through Legislation*, 568.
Kelley, H. J., *Settlement of Ore.*, 81.
Kelley, J. D. J., *Question of Ships*, 518.
Kelley, O. H., *Patrons of Husbandry*, 512.
Kellogg, L. P., *Rev. on Upper Ohio*, 307; *Dunmore's War*, 323; *Am. Colon Charter*, 324.
Kellogg, P. U., *Pittsburgh Survey*, 583.
Kelsey, Carl, *Negro Farmer*, 537.
Kelsey, R. W., *U. S. Consulate*, 435.
Kelton, D. H., *Sault Ste. Marie Canal*, 532.
Kemble, F. A. — *See* Butler (F. A.).
Kemper, C. F., *Early Western Movement in Va.*, 320.
Kendall, Amos, *Autobiog.*, 172; and abolition mail, 425.
Kendall, E. A., *Travels*, 96.
Kendall, Elizabeth, *Source Book*, 178.
Kendall, G. W., *Texan Santa Fé Expedition*, 85.
Kennaway, J. H., *Sherman's Track*, 495.
Kennedy, J. H., *Cleveland*, 80.
Kennedy, J. P., *Wirt*, 121; hist. novels, 187.
Kennedy, R. M., *Camden*, 84.
Kennedy, W. S., *Whittier*, 120.
Kennedy, Wm., *Texas*, 85.
Kent, Jas., biog., 112; *Commentaries*, 329.
Kent, Wm., *Jas. Kent*, 112.
Kentucky, hists., 68; records, 136; hist. soc., 159; in Revolution, 304; exploration and settlement, 319, 332; movement for statehood, 337; admission, 375; does not secede, 470; abolition of slavery, 486. — *See also* South, States, West.
Kentucky resolutions, 360.
Kentucky *v.* Dennison, 427.
Kercheval, Samuel, *Valley of Va.*, 87.
Kerr, C. H., *U. S. Senate*, 347.
Kerr, W. S., *J. Sherman*, 492.
Ketchum, Wm., *Buffalo*, 77.
Kettell, Samuel, *Personal Narrative*, 244.
Kettell, T. P., *Debts of States*, 412.
Keyes, E. D., *Fifty Years' Observation*, 173.
Kidder, Fred., *Boston Massacre*, 300.
Kiepert, Rich., *N. Am.* (map), 50.
Kilbourn, John, *Ohio Gazetteer*, 80.
Kilty, Wm., *Laws of Md.*, 137.
Kimball, Everett, *Jos. Dudley*, 107.
Kimball, G. S., *Corresp. of Pitt*, 289.
King, C. C., *Washington*, 120.
King, C. F., *Govt. Maps for Schools*, 48.
King, C. L., *Munic. Utilities*, 564.
King, C. R., *Rufus King*, 112.
King, Chas., hist. novel, 187; *Campaigning with Crook*, 507.
King, Clarence, *Mountaineering*, 503.
King, Dan, *Thos. W. Dorr*, 430.
King, Ed., *Great South*, 497.
King, F. H., *Irrigation and Drainage*, 578; *Soil*, 578.
King, Grace, *New Orleans*, 69; *La.*, 69; *Bienville*, 104; hist. novels, 187.
King, Horatio, *Turning on the Light*, 467.
King, John, *Commentaries*, 464.
King, Rufus, biog., 112; and slavery in Northwest Ter., 335; notes in Fed. Convention, 340; Eng. mission, 368.

King, Rufus, *Ohio*, 80.
King George's war, 288.
King Philip's war, 285.
King survey, 47.
King William's war, 288.
Kingdom, Wm., *Am. and Brit. Colonies*, 377.
King's Mountain, battle, 309.
Kingsbury, S. M., *Records of Va. Co.*, 260.
Kingsford, Wm., *Plank Roads*, 404.
Kingsford, Wm., *Canada*, 150.
Kingsley, Chas., hist. novel, 187.
Kingston, N. Y., history, 77.
Kinley, David, *Independent Treasury*, 429, 516.
Kinney, J. K., *Digest*, 156.
Kirby, G. B., *Years of Experience*, 397.
Kirk, W., *Knights of Labor*, 524.
Kirke, Edmond. — *See* Gilmore (J. R.).
Kirke, Thos., captures Quebec, 251.
Kirkland, T. J., *Camden*, 84.
Kirkman, M. M., *Motive Power*, 402; *Building Rys.*, 402; *Cars*, 402; *Ry. Rates*, 564.
Kittredge, G. L., on witchcraft, 287.
Klein, Félix, *Au Pays de la Vie Intense*, 582; *Amérique de Demain*, 582.
Kline, G. W., *Bryan*, 104.
Klippart, J. H., *Wheat Plant*, 403.
Knapp, H. S., *Maumee Valley*, 80.
Knapp, M. A., *Fed. Regulation of Corporations*, 564.
Knight, G. W., *Land Grants for Educ.*, 392.
Knight, John, *Journal*, 96.
Knight, S. K., *Journals*, 96.
Knight case, 560.
Knights of Labor, 523.
Knights of White Camelia, 495.
Knowles, J. D., *R. Williams*, 121.
Know-Nothings, 456.
Knox, Henry, biogs., 112; *Journal*, 289.
Knox, J. J., *Banking*, 349; *U. S. Notes*, 443.
Knox, Wm., correspondence, 305.
Knox County, O., history, 81.
Knox *v.* Lee, 498.
Koch, C. G. de, *Traités*, 52.
Koerner, Gustave, *Memoirs*, 494.
Kohl, J. G., *Discovery of Maine*, 238.
Konkle, B. A., *Thos. Williams*, 429.
Koren, John, *Econ. Aspects of Liquor Problem*, 583.
Kossuth, Louis, visit, 451.
Koszta incident, 451.
Ku Klux act, 495.
Ku Klux Klan, 495.
Kunz, Hermann, *Taktische Beispiele*, 550.

Labor, struggle with capital as history, 5; development (1820–60), 405; railroad riots (1877), 517; Knights of Labor, 523; strikes (1886), 523; problems, 523, 567; federal bureau, 523; arbitration laws, 523, 567; Am. Federation, 523; in southern mills, 536; questions on Pacific coast, 545; Supreme court cases, 560, 567; federal dept., 560; and panic of 1893, 566; injunctions, 566; great strikes, (1894–1910), 567; and socialism, 567; employers' protective assocs., 567; federal employers' liability and hours legis., 567; in politics, 567. — *See also* Bureau, Economic conditions, Slavery, Social conditions.
Laboulaye, E. R. L., *Paris en Am.*, 96; *Separation*, 463.
La Cosa, Juan de, discoveries, 245.
Ladd, H. O., *New Mexico*, 76; *War with Mexico*, 442.
Lady of Va., *Diary*, 474.
Laet, Joannes de, *Nieuwe Wereld*, 267.
La Fayette, Marquis de, biogs., 112; *Memoirs*, 306; in Va., 309.
Lafitau, J. F., *Sauvages*, 241.
La Follette, R. M., *Personal Narrative*, 523; as Insurgent, 572; *Autobiog.*, 575; *Ry. Regulation*, 575; *La Follette's Weekly*, 576.
La Harpe, Bernard de, *Journal Hist.*, 253.
Lake Mohonk Conference, *Proceedings*, 556.
Lakes to Gulf Waterways Conventions, 576, 577.
Lalor, J. J., *Cyclopædia*, 39.
Lamar, L. Q. C., biog., 112; oration on Sumner, 495.
Lamb, John, biog., 112.
Lamb, M. J., *New York*, 78; *Homes of America*, 293.
Lambert, E. R., *Colony of New Haven*, 65.
Lambert, Henry, *Civil Service Reform*, 520.
Lamb's Biog. Dict., 38.
L'Amistad case, 427.
Lamphere, G. N., *Wheat Raising*, 533.
Lamprecht, Karl, *Geschichtswissenschaft*, 18; *What is History?* 18; *Amerikana*, 582.
Lancaster, Mass., records, 139.
Lancaster Co., Pa., *histories*, 82, 83.
Land, system in colon. Mass., 278; colon. companies, 319; colon. systems, 332. — *See also* Public lands, Territory.
Landon, J. S., *Const. History*, 41.
Landrum, J. B. O., *Upper S. C.*, 320.
Lane, Ralph, colony, 257.
Lane, W. C., *A. L. A. Portrait Index*, 33.
Lane Seminary and abolition, 423.
Lang, Andrew, *Northcote*, 501.
Langford, N. P., *Vigilante Days*, 502.
Langlois, C. V., *Etudes Hist.*, 18.
Langstroth, C. S., *Ry. Coöperation*, 524.
Langworthy, Ed., *Chas. Lee*, 112.
Lanier, Sidney, *Florida*, 66.
Lanman, J. H., *Michigan*, 72.
Lapradelle, A. G. de, *Question Cubaine*, 550.
Larcom, Lucy, *N. Eng. Girlhood*, 187.
Lardner, Dionysius, *R. R. Economy*, 404.
Larned, E. D., *Windham Co., Conn.*, 65.
Larned, J. N., *Lit. of Am. Hist.*, 30; *Hist. for Ready Ref.*, 39.
La Rochefoucauld-Liancourt, *Voyage* and *Travels*, 100.
Larpenteur, Chas., *Forty Years a Fur Trader*, 96.
Larrabee, Wm., *R. R. Question*, 513.
Larson, L. M., *Milwaukee*, 411.
La Salle, Sieur de, exploration, 252; attempted colony, 253.
Latané, J. H., *U. S. and Span. Am.*, 60; *Am. as World Power*, 549; *Forcible Collection of Internat. Debts*, 556.

Lathers, Rich., *Reminiscences*, 173.
Lathrop, J., *Pocket Register*, 55.
Latimer case, 426.
Latin-America, part in Am. history, 1; Miranda project, 358, 388; revolt and Monroe doctrine, 386; Panama Congress, 388; relations with U. S. (1844-60), 451; Blaine's policy, 500, 543; Pan-Am. congresses, 543, 555; Pan-Am. arbitration, 555. — *See also* Isthmian transit, Monroe doctrine, and nations by name.
Latrobe, C. J., *Rambler*, 97.
Lauck, W. J., *Immigration Problem*, 528; *Panic of 1893*, 540.
Laudonnière, René de, in Fla., 250.
Lauer, P. E., *Church and State*, 279.
Laughlin, J. L., *Bimetallism*, 357; *Reciprocity*, 518; *Indus. Am.*, 561.
Laughton, J. K., *Span. Armada*, 130.
Laut, A. C., *Story of Trapper*, 432; *Great Northwest*, 432.
Law, John, and Louisiana, 253.
Law. — *See* Professions.
Lawrence, A. A., biog., 112.
Lawrence, Abbott, biog., 112.
Lawrence, Amos, *Diary*, 166.
Lawrence, T. J., *Disputed Questions*, 525; *Internat. Law*, 544; *War and Neutrality in Far East*, 558.
Lawrence, Wm., *A. A. Lawrence*, 112.
Lawson, John, *Description of N. C.*, 295.
Lawson, P. V., *Roller Flour Mill*, 531.
Lawson, T. W., *Frenzied Finance*, 575.
Lawson, W. R., *Am. Finance*, 540.
Leake, I. Q., *John Lamb*, 112.
Leaming, Aaron, *Grants*, 142.
Learned, H. B., *President's Cabinet*, 60.
Learned societies, pubs., 157–163; in 1820–60, 391.
Lechford, Thos., *Plain Dealing*, 279; *Note Book*, 279.
Lecky, W. E. H., *England*, 43; *Am. Revolution*, 43.
Leclercq, Chrétien, *Premier Etablissement de la Foy*, 253.
Lecompton constitution, 454.
Le Conte, Jos., *Autobiog.*, 494.
Lectures, by students, 212; seminary, 213; talks by teachers, 222; formal, 222; systems of note taking, 223–225; giving out references, 227.
Lederer, John, *Discoveries*, 321.
Lee, Arthur, biog., 112; in France, 308.
Lee, Chas., biogs., 112; treason, 306; papers, 307.
Lee, Daniel, *Ten Years*, 171.
Lee, F. B., *New Jersey*, 75.
Lee, F. D., *Savannah*, 295.
Lee, Fitzhugh, *Gen. Lee*, 112.
Lee, Henry, *Memoirs*, 309.
Lee, J. H., *American Party*, 397.
Lee, R. E., biogs., 112; in Civil war, 475.
Lee, R. H. (1), biog., 112; *Letters*, 166; resolutions on independence, 303.
Lee, R. H. (2), *Arthur Lee*, 112; *R. H. Lee*, 112.
Lee, Wm., *Letters*, 166.
Le Fur, Louis, *Guerre Hispano-Am.*, 550.
Leeson, M. A., *Montana*, 531.
Legal periodicals, indexes, 33.
Legal tender. — *See* Paper Money.
Legaré, H. S., *Writings*, 166.
Leggett, Wm., *Writings*, 166.
Legislature, condition in states (1820–60) 409. — *See also* Congress, Government, Representation.
Leif Ericson, 243.
Leigh, F. B., *Ga. Plantation*, 497.
Leisler's rebellion, 267.
Leland, C. G., *Lincoln*, 113.
Leland, J. A., *Voice from S. C.*, 497.
Lelewel, J., *Géographie*, 238.
Leonard, D. L., *Missionary Annals*, 394.
Leopard-Chesapeake affair, 369.
Le Page du Pratz, *Louisiane* and *Louisiana*, 69.
Le Roy, J. A., *Philippine Life*, 552; *Mabini on Filipino Rev.*, 554.
Leroy-Beaulieu, P., *United States*, 582.
Lescarbot, Marc, *Nouvelle France*, 251.
Leslie, Emma, hist. novel, 187.
Lesseps, F. de, Panama canal, 525.
Lester, C. E., *Vespucius*, 246; *Houston*, 440.
Lester, J. C., *Ku Klux*, 496.
Letter from a Gentleman of N. Y., 268.
Lettre d'un Habitant, 288.
Leupp, F. E., *Roosevelt*, 573; *Taft and Roosevelt*, 573.
Levasseur, A., *Lafayette en Amérique en 1824 et 1825*, 97.
Levasseur, Emile, *Am. Workman*, 524; *Agriculture*, 531.
Levering, J. H., *Indiana*, 68.
Levermore, C. H., *New Haven*, 65.
Lewis, G. C., *Govt. of Dependencies*, 291; *Observation in Politics*, 297; *Administrations*, 309.
Lewis, J. J., *Chester Co.*, 306.
Lewis, T. H., *Span. Explorers*, 249.
Lewis, V. A., *West Va.*, 88; *Battle of Point Pleasant*, 320.
Lewis, W. D., *Great Am. Lawyers*, 407.
Lewis and Clark, *History of the Expedition*, 97; *Original Journals*, 97; expedition, 366.
Lewis Co., N. Y., history, 77.
Lexington, Mass., battle, 301; history, 302.
Leypoldt, F., *American Cat.*, 33.
Libby, O. G., *Geog. Distribution of Votes*, 342; *Lead and Shot Trade*, 401.
Liberal Republicans, 510.
Liberator, 423.
Liberia, origin and failure, 385; commission (1910), 555.
Liberty, seizure, 298.
Liberty party, 423, 439.
Libraries, useful cats., 35; necessity of working, 191; small collections, 191; small standard, 192; collateral use, 194; use of great, 195; noted for hist. material, 195; special use by students, reserve system, 196; and night use, 196; of 1820–60, 391; present day, 581.
Library of Congress, bibls. issued by, 31; *A. L. A. Cat.*, 33; *State Pubs.*, 33; *Cat.*, 34; distribution of cat. cards, 34; *Check List of Newspapers*, 126.
Lieber, Francis, *Stranger in Am.*, 97; biog., 112; *Civil Liberty*, 411.

Lincecum, Gideon, *Autobiog.*, 378.
Lincklaen, John, *Journals*, 97.
Lincoln, Abraham, biogs., 112, 113, 377; *Works*, 166; *Writings*, 166; reminiscences, 170, 173, 174; and slavery in D. C., 445; Douglas debates, 460; election, 460; and secession compromise, 468, 470; career, 470; inauguration, 470; Ft. Sumter crisis, 470; call for troops, 470; bibls., 472; and foreign relations, 480; and arbitrary arrests, 483; influence, 483; reëlection, 483; assassination, 483; and emancipation and colonization, 486; and reconstruction, 489.
Lincoln, C. H., *Calendar of J. P. Jones MSS.*, 111; *Rev. Movement in Pa.*, 312.
Lincoln, C. Z., *Messages from Govs. of N. Y.*, 404.
Lincoln, Wm., *Journal of Provincial Congress*, 138.
Lincoln, Neb., history, 74.
Lindley, Walter, *Cal. of South*, 547.
Lindsey, B. B., *The Beast*, 574.
Linn, W. A., *Greeley*, 109; *Mormons*, 407.
Linn, Wm., *Serious Considerations*, 362.
Lippincott, Isaac, *Pioneer Industry*, 377.
Lippincott's Dict. of Biog., 39.
Liquor. — *See* Temperance.
List of Private Claims, 36.
Literature, American, colon., 287, 327; conditions (1820–60), 391; of new South, 536; of Pacific coast, 546; in 20th century, 582. — *See also* Newspapers, Press, Social conditions.
Little, C. E., *Cyclop. of Dates*, 39.
Little, L. P., *Ben Hardin*, 173.
Livermore, Geo., *Hist. Research*, 335.
Livermore, T. L., *Numbers and Losses*, 463.
Livingston, Ed., biog., 113.
Livingston, W. F., *Putnam*, 116.
Livingston, Wm., biog., 113.
Lloyd, H. D., *Strike of Millionaires*, 525; *Wealth against Commonwealth*, 562.
Lloyd, Thos., *Cong. Register*, 347.
Lobingier, C. S., *People's Law*, 410.
Local government, in colon. Va., 259; in colon. Mass., 278; in Eng., 324; colon., 325; development (1820–60), 409. — *See also* Cities, Government.
Local histories, bibls., 62; list, 63–89 *passim*.
Locke, D. R., *Nasby*, 485.
Locke, John, *Civil Govt.*, 297.
Locke, M. S., *Anti-Slavery*, 60.
Lockwood, G. B., *New Harmony*, 407.
Locofocos, 428.
Lodge, H. C., *U. S.*, 42; *History of Nations*, 42; *Revolution*, 60; *Boston*, 71; *Cabot*, 105; *Hamilton*, 109; ed. of Hamilton's *Works*, 165; *Washington*, 120; *Webster*, 120; *Eng. Colonies*, 238; *Hist. and Polit. Essays*, 511.
Löher, F. von, *Deutscher in Am.*, 395.
Logan, J. A., biog., 113.
Logan, J. H., *Upper S. C.*, 84.
Logan, Jas., *Correspondence*, 271.
Lomax, J. A., *Cowboy Songs*, 535.
Lomenie, Louis de, *Beaumarchais*, 308.
London Company, 259.
Long, A. L., *R. E. Lee*, 112.
Long, J. D., *New Am. Navy*, 550.
Long, S. H., *Expedition*, 97; exploration, 431
Long Island, histories, 77, 78; bibl., 78; battle, 304.
Long Island Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Longfellow, H. W., *Memorials*, 173; poems illustrative of Am. history, 189
Longstreet, A. B., *Ga. Scenes*, 187.
Longstreet, Jas., *Manassas to Appomattox*, 477.
Lord, E. L., *Indus. Experiments*, 327.
Lord, Eliot, *Comstock Mining*, 502.
Lord, Eliot, *Italian in Am.*, 318.
Lorenz, Carl, *T. L. Johnson*, 574.
Lorimer, Wm., bribery charges, 572.
Loring, C. G., *Correspondence*, 482.
Loring, C. W., *Nullification*, 344.
Loring, G. B., *Am. Agri.*, 508.
Los Angeles, labor troubles, 546; munic. reform, 546.
Loskiel, G. H., *Mission*, 242.
Lossing, B. J., *Hudson*, 77; *New York*, 78; *Schuyler*, 117; *Field Book of Rev.*, 300; *Two Spies*, 307; *Empire State*, 372; *War of 1812*, 372.
Lothrop, T. K., *Seward*, 117.
Lott, J. L., *Fed. Anti-Trust Decisions*, 565.
Lough, W. H., *Corporation Finance*, 562.
Louisburg, captures, 288.
Louisiana, hists., 69, 70; records and statutes, 136; hist. soc., 160; French settlement, 253; cession to Spain, 253; conditions under Spain, 253; purchase, 365; territory, 375; admission, 375; secession, 466; milit. govt., 489; reconstruction, 490; uprising against carpetbag govt., 495; overthrow of carpetbag govt., 514. — *See also* South, States.
Louisiana Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Louisiana purchase, 365; boundaries settled, 383.
Louisville, history, 68.
Lovejoy, E. P., killed, 423.
Low, A. M., *Am. People*, 317; *America at Home*, 582.
Low, Seth, *U. S. as World Power*, 553.
Lowdermilk, W. H., *Cumberland*, 70.
Lowell, A. L., *Essays on Govt.*, 347.
Lowell, C. R., biog., 113.
Lowell, E. J., *Hessians*, 305.
Lowell, J. R., biogs., 113, 521; *Letters*, 173; poems illustrative of Am. history, 189; *Among my Books*, 287; abolitionist, 423; *Anti-Slavery Papers*, 441; *Biglow Papers*, 446; *Polit. Essays*, 467; *Lit. and Polit. Addresses*, 522.
Lowell, John, *Dred Scott*, 458.
Lowery, W., *Span. Settlements*, 248.
Lowry, Robt., *Mississippi*, 73.
Loyal Land Company, 319.
Loyalists, 310, 311, 335.
Lubbock, A. B., *Round the Horn*, 404.
Lucas, C. P., *Hist. Geog.*, 237; *Canada*, 303
Lucas, Eliza, *Journal*, 265.
Lucas, Robt., *Exec. Journal*, 135.
Lucas, Samuel, *Charters*, 238.
Luckey, G. W. A., *Training of Teachers* 393.

Ludlow, Wm., *Black Hills*, 503.
Luetscher, G. P., *Early Polit. Mach.*, 352.
Lumber, development of industry (1820–60), 398; postbellum industry, 518; southern pine, 536. — *See* Forestry, Econ. cond.
Lummis, C. F., *Span. Pioneers*, 248; *Land of Poco-Tiempo*, 534; *Strange Corners*, 534; *Tramp across Continent*, 534; article on Cal., 547.
Lundy, Benj., biog., 113.
Lunt, E. C., *Key to Census*, 397.
Lunt, Geo., *Origin of Late War*, 446.
Luzerne Co., Pa., history, 82.
Lyceums (1820–60), 391.
Lyell, Sir Chas., *Travels*, 97.
Lyman, H. S., *Oregon*, 81.
Lyman, Phineas, land company, 319.
Lyman, Theo., *Diplomacy*, 308.
Lyman, W. D., *Columbia River*, 546.
Lynch, Jer., *Senator of Fifties*, 460; *Klondike*, 548.
Lynch law in South, 536.
Lyon, Mary, biog., 393.
Lyon, Matthew, biog., 113; sedition case, 360.

McAdie, A. G., *Climatology of Cal.*, 432.
Macaulay, T. B., charges against Penn, 269.
Macauley, Jas., *New York*, 77.
McCabe, J. D., *Great Fortunes*, 407.
McCaleb, W. F., *Burr Conspiracy*, 368; *Gutierrez Expedition*, 435.
McCall, G. A., *Letters*, 97.
McCall, Hugh, *Georgia*, 66.
McCall, S. W., *Stevens*, 118; *Payne Tariff Law*, 570; *Representative and Direct Govt.*, 574.
McCardle, W. H., *Mississippi*, 73.
McCarthy, C. H., *Lincoln's Plan of Reconstruction*, 491.
McCarthy, Carlton, *Soldier's Life*, 477.
McCarthy, Chas., *Anti-Masonic Party*, 410; *Wis. Idea*, 573.
McCarty, D. G., *Territorial Govs.*, 376.
McCarty, Wm., *Songs*, 190.
McClain, Emlin, *Cases*, 178; *Const. Law*, 341.
McClellan, G. B., biogs., 113; *Own Story*, 173; *Report*, 476.
McClellan, R. G., *Republicanism*, 497.
McClelland, C. P., *Ohio Canals*, 401.
McClintock, J. N., *New Hampshire*, 75.
McClure, A. K., *Lincoln*, 173; *3000 Miles*, 503; *Our Presidents*, 510; *South*, 538.
McConachie, L. G., *Cong. Committees*, 541.
McCord, D. J., *Statutes of S. C.*, 146.
McCormac, E. I., *White Servitude*, 328.
McCormick, C. H., biog., 400.
McCormick, Fannie, *Kansas Farm*, 535.
McCormick, Jas., *Geog. Dict. of Alaska*, 548.
MacCoun, Townsend, *Hist. Geog.*, 50.
McCrady, Ed., *South Carolina*, 84.
McCrary, G. W., *Law of Elections*, 491.
McCrie, Thos., *John Knox*, 273.
McCulloch, Hugh, *Men and Measures*, 173; as sec. of treasury, 498.
McCulloch, J. R., *Dictionary*, 403.
M'Culloch *v.* Maryland, 381.
McDonald, Bill, biog., 535.
McDonald, J., *Whiskey Ring*, 511.
MacDonald, Wm., *U. S.*, 41; *Select Charters*, 178; *Select Docs.*, 178; *Select Statutes*, 178; *Doc. Source Book*, 178; *Jacksonian Democracy*, 392; *French Canadians in N. Eng.*, 529.
Macdonough, Rodney, *T. Macdonough*, 113.
Macdonough, Thos., biog., 113.
McDougall, M. G., *Fugitive Slaves*, 327.
Mace, A. G., *Aletheia*, 408.
Mace, W. H., *Method in History*, 18; *Working Manual*, 32.
McElroy, R. M., *Kentucky*, 68.
McElwaine, Eugene, *Alaska*, 548.
McFarland, R., *N. Eng. Fisheries*, 400.
MacGillivray, Donald, *Protestant Missions in China*, 558.
MacGregor, John, *Progress of Am.*, 399.
McHenry, Jas., biog., 113; notes in Fed. Conven., 340.
M'Henry, John, *Md. Reports*, 151.
Machiavelli, Niccolo, *Discourses*, 297.
Mackay, Alex., *Western World*, 97.
McKean, Thos., biog., 113.
McKee, Lanier, *Nome*, 548.
McKee, T. H., *Reports of Select Committees*, 37; *National Conventions*, 178.
McKeever, W. A., *Farm Boys and Girls*, 583.
Mackenzie, A. S., *Paul Jones*, 112.
Mackenzie, Alex., *Voyages*, 97.
Mackenzie, Roderick, *Strictures*, 309.
MacKenzie, W. L., *Van Buren*, 429.
McKinley, A. E., *Suffrage Franchise*, 326; *Two Southern Constitutions*, 537; *Island Possessions*, 552.
McKinley, Wm., election (1896), 540; Span. war, 549; govt. of dependencies, 551; reëlection, 571; assassination, 571.
McKinley Tariff act, 539.
Maclain, J. S. *Alaska*, 546.
McLaughlin, A. C., *Teaching of American History*, 13; *U. S. for Schools*, 13; *Cyclopedia*, 39; *Cass*, 105; *Am. Nation*, 192; *Confederation*, 310; *Social Compact*, 344; *Western Posts*, 355; *Significance of Parties*, 575.
McLaughlin, J. F., *Lyon*, 113.
McLaughlin, Jas., *Indian*, 506.
Maclay, E. S., *Am. Privateers*, 60; *U. S. Navy*, 60.
Maclay, Wm., *Journal*, 173.
MacLean, A. M., *Wage-Earning Women*, 568.
MacLean, J. P., *Shaker Literature*, 408.
McLeod, Donald, *Wisconsin*, 88.
McLeod incident, 428.
McLoughlin, John, biog., 434.
McMahon, J. V. L., *Govt. of Md.*, 70.
McMaster, J. B., *People of U. S.*, 43; *Trail Makers*, 90; ed. of Lewis and Clark, 97; *Franklin*, 108; *Webster*, 120; *Pa. and Fed. Const.*, 145; *With the Fathers*, 347; *X. Y. Z. Letters*, 359; *Acquisition of Rights*, 410.
McMullen, John, *Canada*, 252.
McMurry, C. A., *Method in History*, 18.
McNeil, G. E., *Labor Movement*, 406.
Macon, Natl., biogs., 114; *Letters*, 365; *Corresp.*, 365.

Macon bills, 370.
MacPherson, David. *Commerce*, 292.
McPherson, Ed., *Index of (Finance) Bills*, 36; *Rebellion*, 178; *Reconstruction*, 178; *Handbook*, 178.
McPherson, J. H. T., *Liberia*, 386.
McPherson, L. G., *Working of R. Rs.*, 565; *R. R. Freight Rates*, 565.
McRee, G. J., *Iredell*, 110.
McSherry, Jas., *Maryland*, 262.
McVey, F. L., *Populist Movement*, 541; *Modern Industrialism*, 561.
Macy, Jesse, *Polit. Parties*, 60; *Eng. Constitution*, 324; *Institutional Beginnings*, 410.
Macy, Obed, *Nantucket*, 72.
Madison, Dorothy, *Memoirs*, 173.
Madison, Jas., biogs., 114; *Papers*, 166; *Letters*, 166; *Writings*, 166; notes of debates in Fed. Conven., 340; elected president, 370; and non-intercourse, 370; and War of 1812, 371, 374; bank, tariff, and internal improvements, 379; and nullification, 415.
Madison, history, 88.
Magoon, C. E., *Civil Govt. in Ter. under Milit. Occupation*, 446; *Legal Status of Islands Acquired*, 553.
Magruder, A. B., *Marshall*, 114.
Maguire, H. N., *Resources of Mon.*, 503; *New Map to Dakota*, 503.
Maguire, J. F., *Irish in Am.*, 392.
Mahan, A. T., *Sea Power and War of 1812*, 60; *Farragut*, 108; *Sea Power and French Rev.*, 369; *Interest of Am. in Sea Power*, 544; *Lessons of War with Spain*, 550; *Retrospect and Prospect*, 552; *Am. Interest in Internat. Relations*, 558; *Problem of Asia*, 559.
Mahan, Asa, *Am. War*, 476.
Mahon, Lord, *England*, 43.
Maillard, N. D., *Texas*, 85.
Maine, H. S., *Popular Govt.*, 340.
Maine, bibls., 70; hists., 70; records and statutes, 137; hist. soc., 160; Popham colony, 272; Gorges patent, 276; settlement, 283; admission, 385, 409.—*See also* Colonies, Massachusetts, New England, States.
Maine, explosion, 549.
Maine Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Maitland, F. W., *Teaching of History*, 18.
Major, R. H., *Letters of Columbus*, 244; *Prince Henry*, 246; *True Date*, 255.
Majors, Alex., *Seventy Years*, 503.
Makemie, F., *Narrative*, 292.
Makower, Felix, *Church of Eng.*, 273.
Mallet brothers, exploration, 431.
Mallory, Daniel, *Clay*, 105.
Malloy, W. M., *Treaties*, 157.
Maltbie, M. R., *Munic. Functions*, 524.
Manchester, N. H., history, 75.
Mandeville, G. H., *Flushing*, 294.
Mangourit, M. A. B. de, *Corresp.*, 356.
Manila Bay, battle, 549.
Mann, Herman, *Dedham*, 71.
Mann, Horace, and schools, 391; biog., 393; *Life and Works*, 396.
Mann-Elkins Railway act, 561.
Manning, W. R., *Nootka Sound*, 355.
Mansfield, E. D., *Memories*, 173.
Mansfield, J. B., *New Eng.*, 53.
Mansfield, John, *Bibl. of Educ.*, 15.
Manufactures, colon., 291, 327; Hamilton's report, 356; beginnings as industry, 356; development after 1812, 379; conditions (1820–60), 398; postbellum development, 517; iron and steel, and Great Lakes ore, 530; southern iron and steel, 530; southern cotton, 536.—*See also* Economic conditions, Tariff, and industries by name.
Manuscript sources, collections, 180; use, 180; guides, 180, 181.
Mappin, W. F., *Farm Mortgages*, 541.
Maps, physical, of N. Am., 49, 50; historical, 50, 51; reprints, 51, 238; importance and use in teaching history, 208–210; important original, illustrating voyages and European claims, 239, 246, 255; illustrating U. S. history (1781–1865), 317–487 *passim*; of Span.-Am. war, 550; of conservation, 579.—*See also* Geography.
Marble, Manton, *Secret Chapter*, 515.
Marblehead, Mass., history, 72.
Marbois.—*See* Barbé-Marbois.
Marbury, Horatio, *Digest*, 134.
Marbury *v.* Madison, 363, 381.
Marcel, G., *Reproductions*, 239; *Cat. des Docs. Geog.*, 240.
March, C. W., *Reminiscences*, 173.
March to the sea, 475.
Marcos, Fray, 248.
Marcou, Jules, *Agassiz*, 103.
Marcy, R. B., *Army Life*, 433.
Margry, Pierre, *Mémoires*, 242.
Marietta, O., settlement, 332.
Marion, Francis, biogs., 309, 310.
Markham, C. R., *Columbus*, 106; *Columbus's Journal*, 256; *Hawkins' Voyages*, 256.
Marot, Helen, *Labor Literature*, 408.
Marquarde, Thos., *Drake*, 257.
Marquette, Jacques, exploration, 252.
Marryat, Fred., *Diary*, 97.
Marsden, J. B., *Early Puritans*, 273.
Marsh, A. J., *Report of Convention*, 141.
Marsh, B. C., *City Planning*, 583.
Marsh, C. C., *G. P. Marsh*, 114.
Marsh, G. P., biog., 114.
Marshall, Christopher, *Diary*, 173.
Marshall, Humphrey, *Kentucky*, 68.
Marshall, J. A., *Am. Bastile*, 484.
Marshall, John, biogs., 114, 382; *Washington*, 120; *Writings*, 166; great decisions, 381.
Marshall, O. H., *Hist. Writings*, 251.
Marshall, T. M., *S. W. Boundary*, 440
Marshall, W. I., *Acquisition of Oregon*, 435.
Marshall Co., Iowa, history, 68.
Marsillac, J., *Penn*, 115.
Martens, Chas. de, *Traités*, 52.
Martens, G. F. de, *Traités*, 52.
Martin, E. W., *Grange Movement*, 512.
Martin, F. X., *La.*, 69; *N. C.*, 79; *Collection of Statutes*, 131; *Notes*, 151.
Martin, G. H., *Mass. School System*, 392.
Martin, Gen. Jos., biog., 332.
Martin, Jos., *Gaz. of Va.*, 87.

Martin, Luther, biog., 114.
Martin, W. A. P., *Awakening of China*, 559.
Martin, W. E., *Internal Improvements in Ala.*, 401.
Martin *v.* Hunter's Lessee, 381.
Martin *v.* Mott, 381.
Martineau, Harriet, Retrospect, 98; *Society in Am.*, 98.
Martyr, Peter, *Decades*, 245.
Marvin, W. L., *Am. Marine*, 357.
Maryland, bibls., 70; hists., 70; records and statutes, 137; early decisions, 151; hist. soc., 160; charter and settlement, 262; boundary disputes, 262, 269; relig. and polit. dissensions, 263; and Quakers, 284; conditions (1760), 294; and western claims, 312; ratification, 341; does not secede, 470; abolishes slavery, 486.—*See also* Colonies, South, States.
Maryland Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Maslin, E. W., *Resources of Cal.*, 547.
Mason, A. C., *Compendium*, 532.
Mason, E. C., *Veto Power*, 380.
Mason, E. G., *Illinois*, 67.
Mason, Geo., biog., 114.
Mason, H. D., *Public Utilities*, 564.
Mason, J. M., *Trent* affair, 480; biog., 481.
Mason, Jer., biog., 114.
Mason, John, grant, 275.
Mason, John, *Pequot War*, 282.
Mason, Virginia, *J. M. Mason*, 481.
Mason and Dixon line, 269.
Massachusetts, general hists., 70, 71; bibl. of local hist., 71; local hists., 71, 72; records and statutes, 138; early decisions, 151; hist. socs., 160; absorbs Plymouth, 275; first settlements, 276; grant by Council for N. Eng., 276; charter and great settlement, 277; institutional development, 278; Roger Williams, 280; Antinomianism, 280; Gorton, 281; and northern settlements, 283; in N. Eng. Confed., 283; and Quakers, 284; overthrow of charter, 285; govt. and overthrow of Andros, 286; second charter, 286; under royal govs., 286; witchcraft, 287; conditions (1760), 293; and genesis of Revolution, 298, 301; western claims, 312, 330, 332; first constitution, 313; emancipation in, 335; Shays rebellion, 337; ratification, 341.—*See also* Colonies, New England, States.
Massachusetts Bureau of Statistics, *Living Conditions of Wage-earning Population*, 581.
Massachusetts Hist. Soc., pubs., 160; *Lowell Lectures*, 276.
Massachusetts State Library, *Cat.*, 35.
Massey, W. N., *England*, 43.
Massie, D. M., *N. Massie*, 376.
Massie, J. W., *America*, 98.
Massie, Natl., biog., 376.
Masson, David, *Milton*, 273.
Materials for American history, 3; value of training in use, 5.
Mather, Cotton, biog., 114; *Magnalia*, 284; *Wonders of the Invisible World*, 287.
Mather, Increase, biog., 114; *Remarkable Providences*, 279; *Brief History*, 285.
Matheson, Jas., *Narrative*, 100.
Mathews, J. L., *Remaking the Miss.*, 578.
Mathews, J. M., *Fifteenth Amendment*, 490.
Mathews, L. K., *Expansion of N. Eng.*, 60; *Erie Canal*, 401.
Matson, Henry, *References*, 31.
Matthews, Brander, *Poems of Am. Patriotism*, 190.
Maumee Valley, history, 80.
Maury, Ann, *Memoirs*, 261.
Maverick, Aug., *H. J. Raymond*, 394.
Maverick, Samuel, settlement, 276; *Description of N. Eng.*, 278.
Maxcy, Virgil, *Laws of Md.*, 137.
Maximilian, in Mexico, 480.
Maximilian of Wied-Neuwied, *Travels*, 98.
May, John, *Journal*, 98.
May, S. J., *Memoirs*, 173; *Anti-Slavery Conflict*, 173.
May, T. E., *Const. History*, 291.
Mayes, Ed., *Lamar*, 112.
Mayflower, voyage, 274.
Mayflower compact, 274.
Mayhew, Jon., biog., 114.
Mayo, A. D., *Common Schools* 393; *Schools in N. C., S. C., and Ga.*, 490.
Mayo, Robt., *Polit. Sketches*, 173.
Maypenny, G. W., *Indian Wars*, 506.
Mead, E. D., *Old South Leaflets*, 179.
Mead, Elwood, *Irrigation Institutions*, 578.
Meade, E. S., *Story of Gold*, 502; *Trust Finance*, 562.
Meade, G. G., biogs., 114.
Meade, Wm., *Old Churches of Va.*, 87.
Meany, E. S., *Washington*, 88; *Vancouver's Discovery*, 101.
Meat Inspection act, 572.
Medbery, J. K., *Wall Street*, 519.
Medley, D. J., *Eng. Const. Hist.*, 324.
Meeker, Ezra, *Pioneer Reminiscences*, 88.
Meeker, Royal, *Shipping Subsidies*, 401.
Meigs, R. J., biog., 114; *Journal*, 303.
Meigs, R. J., *Code of Tenn.*, 147.
Meigs, W. M., *Benton*, 105; *Ingersoll*, 110; *Growth of Constitution*, 340.
Melish, John, *Information to Emigrants*, 55; *Traveller's Directory*, 55; *Statis. View*, 55; *Travels*, 98.
Mellick, A. D., *Old Farm*, 75.
Melyn, Cornelis, *Breeden-Raedt*, 267.
Memminger, C. G., biog., 114.
Memorials concerning Nova Scotia, 237.
Memorizing, value, 199; list of valuable facts and dates, 200–206.
Menendez, Pedro, in Fla., 250.
Mendon, Mass., history, 72.
Mercer, John, *Abridgment*, 149.
Mereness, N. D., *Maryland*, 70.
Merivale, Herman, *Colonization*, 291.
Merriam, C. E., *Am. Polit., Theories*, 60; *Theory of Sovereignty*, 344; *Primary Election*, 574.
Merriam, G. S., *S. Bowles*, 104; *Negro and the Nation*, 421.
Merriam, J. M., *Ordinance* (1787), 331.
Merrick, G. B., *Old Times*, 404.
Merrill, Jos., *Amesbury*, 71.
Merrimac, Mass., history, 71.
Merriman, T. M., *Pilgrims*, 280.

Merwin, H. C., *Bret Harte*, 434.
Merry Mount, 276.
Merryman case, 483.
Metcalf, J. G., *Mendon*, 72.
Metcalfe, R. L., *Real Bryan*, 554.
Method in American history, bibl., 15, 16; reports on, 16, 17; books on, 17, 18; period, articles on, 19-21; collateral authorities, 22; place, 22; in schools, 24; in college, 25; place of investigation, 25, 26; study without a teacher, 26, 27. — *See also* Reading, Teaching.
Mexican war, 441.
Mexico, conquest, 247; Am. war, 441; Gadsden purchase from, 442; French in, 480, 500. — *See also* Latin-America, Texas.
Meyer, B. H., *R. R. Legis. in Wis.*, 402; *Ry. Legis.*, 513; *Central Utilities Coms.*, 564; *Northern Securities Case*, 564; *Interstate Commerce Com.*, 564.
Meyer, E. C., *Nominating Systems*, 574.
Meyer, H. H. B., *Lists: Supreme Court*, 348; *Sugar*, 542; *Wool*, 542; *Value and Capitalization of R. Rs.*, 566; *Cost of Living and Prices*, 566; *Boycotts and Injunctions*, 569; *Popular Elec. of Senators*, 576; *City Planning*, 585; *Workingmen's Insurance*, 585.
Meyer, H. R., *Govt. Regulation of Ry. Rates*, 513.
Meyerholz, Chas., *Fed. Supervision over Territories*, 411.
Michaux, F. A., *Travels*, 98.
Michie, A. H., *Englishman in China*, 558.
Michie, P. S., *McClellan*, 113; *Upton*, 119.
Michie, T. J., *Encyclopedia*, 156.
Michigan, hists., 72; records and statutes, 130; hist. soc., 160; territory, 375; admission, 409. — *See also* Northwest, States.
Michigan Pioneer Soc., pubs., 160.
Midnight appointments, 361, 363.
Mikkelsen, M. A., *Bishop Hill*, 407.
Miles, H. A., *Lowell*, 403.
Miles, N. A., *Recollections*, 507.
Mill, R. H., *Internat. Geog.*, 48.
Millard, T. F., *New Far East*, 558.
Mille, Jas. de, hist. novel, 187.
Miller, A. C., *Income Tax*, 541.
Miller, C. N., *Montana*, 74.
Miller, E. I., *Leg. of Provin. Va.*, 325.
Miller, F. W., *Cincinnati*, 80.
Miller, John, *Description of N. Y.*, 268.
Miller, Kelley, *Race Adjustments*, 537.
Miller, Samuel F., *Reports*, 155; *Constitution*, 329.
Miller, Stephen F., *Bench and Bar*, 295.
Miller, W. H., *Kansas City*, 534.
Millet, F. D., *Expedition to Philippines*, 551.
Milligan case, 483.
Mills, D., *Boundaries of Ontario*, 237.
Mills, J. C., *Inland Seas*, 401.
Mills, Robt., *Statistics of S. C.*, 84.
Mills and Hick's Register, 55.
Mills Tariff bill, 522.
Milwaukee, history, 88.
Miner, Chas., *Wyoming*, 82; antislavery congressman, 425.
Mining, development (1820-60), 398; gold in Cal., 434; development of western frontier (1859-76), 502; traits, 502; Great Lakes iron fields, 530; in Southwest, 533; southern coal and iron fields, 536; miners' strikes (1894-1904), 567. — *See also* Economic conditions, and minerals by name.
Minneapolis, flour mills, 530.
Minnesota, bibl., 73; hists., 73; records, 140; hist. soc., 160; territory, 409; admission, 409. — *See also* Northwest, States, West.
Minnesota Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Minor, B. B., *Southern Literary Messenger*, 394.
Minor, L., *Virginian in N. Eng.*, 396.
Minot, G. R., *Massachusetts*, 71; *Insurrection in Mass.*, 339.
Minto, John, *Pioneers*, 435; *Sheep Industry*, 535.
Miranda, Francisco de, biog., 355; project, 358.
Missionaries in Orient, 557.
Mississippi, bibl., 73; hists., 73; records and statutes, 140; hist. soc., 160; territory, 375; admission, 375; secession, 466; reconstruction, 495; whites regain control, 495. — *See also* South, States.
Mississippi Company, 319.
Mississippi Dept. of Archives, *Reports*, 73.
Mississippi Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Mississippi River, Span. discovery, 248; French exploration, 252; right of free navigation, 335, 372; commerce, 375, 398. — *See also* Waterways.
Mississippi Valley, history, 69.
Mississippi Valley Hist. Assoc., *Proceedings*, 158.
Missouri, hists., 73, 74; records and statutes, 140; hist. socs., 160, 161; settlement, 375; territory, 375; admission and Mo. compromise, 385, 409; enlarged, 452; does not secede, 470; abolishes slavery, 486. — *See also* South, States, West.
Missouri Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Strike of 1886*, 524.
Missouri compromise, 385; and Kan.-Neb. act, 453; declared unconst., 458.
Missouri Hist. Soc., pubs., 160.
Missouri State Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Mitchell, A. F., *Westminster Assembly*, 273.
Mitchell, John, *Organized Labor*, 569.
Mitchell, S. A., *Accompaniment to Reference Map*, 55; *Ill. in 1837*, 55.
Mitchell, S. W., hist. novels, 187.
Mitchell, W. C., *Greenbacks*, 479; *Gold Prices and Wages*, 499.
Mobile, history, 63; battle, 475.
Mock, H. J., *Mon. Blue Book*, 533.
Mohawk Valley, hist., 78; settlement, 319.
Moiety system scandal, 510.
Mombert, J. I., *Lancaster Co.*, 82.
Monetary Commission, *Laws concerning Money*, 349.
Monette, J. W., *Valley of Miss.*, 60.
Money, plan of coinage (1784), 233; early fed. coinage, 356; ratio act, (1834), 418;

specie circular, 418. — *See also* Finance, Gold, Paper money, Silver.
Monitor and *Merrimac*, 475.
Monmouth, battle, 304.
Monmouth Co., N. J., history, 76.
Monographs, 57; guide to, 57; preparation, 234.
Monroe, Jas., biogs., 114; *Calendar*, 166; *Papers*, 166; *Writings*, 166; proposition (1785), 336; French missions, 354, 365; *View*, 356; Eng. treaty, 369; veto of internal improvements, 379; admins., 383; Mo. compromise, 385; Monroe doctrine, 386.
Monroe, Paul, *Cyclop. of Educ.*, 584.
Monroe, W. S., *Henry Barnard*, 393; *Bibl. of Educ.*, 397.
Monroe doctrine, genesis and statement, 386; later applications, 387; and Venezuela-Guiana boundary, 543; and forcible collection of public debts, 555; internat. police power, 555. — *See also* Latin-America.
Montague, G. H., *Standard Oil*, 518; *Trusts*, 562.
Montana, *Treasure State*, 55; hists., 74; hist. soc., 161; mining rush, 502; territory, 502; cattle, 530; admission, 530. — *See also* Far West, Northwest, States.
Montana Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Montcalm, Marquis de, Quebec, 289; *Journal*, 289.
Montesquieu, *Esprit des Lois*, 297.
Montgomery, D. H., *Leading Facts*, 14.
Montgomery, T. H., *Univ. of Pa.*, 294.
Monthly Summary of Com. and Fin.: *Grain Trade*, 509; *Shipping Industry*, 518; *Iron and Steel Trade*, 518; *Coal Trade*, 518; *Lumber Trade*, 519; *Immigration*, 529; *Com. Alaska*, 548; *Com. China*, 559; *Com. Japan*, 559.
Moody's Manual of Corporation Securities, 566.
Moore, Chas., *Saint Marys Falls Canal*, 401.
Moore, F. W., *Representation from Seceding States*, 491; *La. Politics*, 491.
Moore, Francis, *Voyage to Ga.*, 98.
Moore, Frank, *Andrew Johnson*, 111; collections of ballads, 190; *Diary of Am. Rev.*, 301; *Rebellion Record*, 467.
Moore, G. H., *Treason of Lee*, 306; *Slavery in Mass.*, 328.
Moore, Jacob B., *Collections*, 75.
Moore, John B., *Am. Diplomacy*, 60; *Digest of Internat. Law*, 157; *Arbitrations*, 157; *Four Phases of Am. Development*, 552.
Moore, John W., *North Carolina*, 79.
Moore, Jos. W., *Am. Congress*, 347.
Moran, T. F., *Bicameral System*, 326.
Moravian Diaries, 321.
Moreau, Célestin, *Acadie*, 251.
Morey, W. C., *Genesis of Written Constitution*, 314; *First State Constitutions*, 314; *Sources of Am. Federalism*, 326.
Morgan, Daniel, biog., 114.
Morgan, J. P., and gold reserve, 539; railroad reorganizations, 560; biog., 562.
Morgan, L. H., *Iroquois*, 241.
Morley, Henry, *Burke*, 308.
Morley, John, *Gladstone*, 501.
Mormons, rise, 406, 434; bibl., 408; in Ill., 434; migration to Utah, 434; war, 459; Anti-polygamy act, 533. — *See also* Utah.
Morrell, Benj., *Narrative*, 98.
Morrill, J. S., *Tariff*, 500.
Morrill Land Grant act, 507.
Morris, B. F., *T. Morris*, 115.
Morris, C. N., *Internal Improvements in Ohio*, 401.
Morris, Gouverneur, biogs., 114; *Diary and Letters*, 173.
Morris, J. E., *King Philip's War*, 285.
Morris, Robt., biogs., 115; land speculations, 332; govt. finances, 333.
Morris, Thos., biog., 115.
Morrison, H. A., *Lists: Interoceanic Canal*, 452; *Official Pubs. of Confed.*, 474.
Morse, A. D., *Democ. Party*, 352; *Party Revolution of 1800*, 361; *Polit. Influence of Jackson*, 413; *Repub. Party*, 457.
Morse, A. E., *Federalist Party*, 338.
Morse, H. B., *Internat. Relations of Chinese Empire*, 560.
Morse, J. T., *Am. Statesmen Series*, 102; *John Adams*, 103; *J. Q. Adams*, 103; *Franklin*, 108; *Hamilton*, 109; *Jefferson*, 111; *Lincoln*, 113.
Morse, Jed., *Geography*, 48, 55.
Morse, Lemuel, *Christian Com.*, 485.
Morse, S. F. B., biogs., 115, 402.
Morton, J. S., *Nebraska*, 74.
Morton, O. P., biog., 115.
Morton, T. G., *Pa. Hospital*, 395.
Morton, Thos., *N. Eng. Memorial*, 274; at Merry Mount, 276; *N. Eng. Canaan*, 277.
Mosby, J. S., *Reminiscences*, 477.
Mosely Educ. Com., *Reports*, 584.
Moses, Bernard, *Politics*, 325; *Munic. Govt. in San Francisco*, 435.
Moses, Edith, *Letters*, 553.
Moses, John, *Illinois*, 67.
Mosquito Coast. — *See* Clayton-Bulwer.
Motley, J. L., biog., 115; *Corresp.*, 166; hist. novel, 187.
Motley, J. M., *Apprenticeship*, 406.
Motolinía, Toribio, *Nueva España*, 247.
Mott, E. H., *Story of Erie*, 402.
Mott, Jas., biog., 115.
Mott, Lucretia, biog., 115.
Moulton, C. W., *Library of Literary Criticism*, 39.
Moulton, J. W., *New York*, 77.
Moultrie, Wm., *Memoirs*, 303.
Mountain whites. — *See* Poor whites.
Mountfield, D., *Church and Puritans*, 273.
Mourt's Relation, 274.
Moustier, Comte de, *Corresp.*, 343.
Mowry, A. M., *Dorr War*, 410.
Mowry, W. A., *Whitman*, 435.
Müller, Wm., *Religiöse Leben*, 584.
Müller y Tejeiro, José, *Santiago*, 551.
Münsterberg, Hugo, *Am. Traits*, 98; *Amerikaner*, 98; *Aus Deutsch-Am.*, 582.
Mugwumps, 521.
Muhlenberg, H. A., *P. Muhlenberg*, 115.
Muhlenberg, Peter, biog., 115.

Muir, John, *Mountains of Cal.*, 547; *National Parks*, 579.
Muirhead, J. F., *Land of Contrasts*, 98; *Baedeker's United States*, 582.
Mulford, I. S., *New Jersey*, 75.
Mullan, J., *Miners' Guide*, 502.
Muller, F., & Co., *Remarkable Maps*, 239.
Mulligan letters, 510.
Munford, B. B., *Va.'s Attitude*, 344.
Municipal government. — *See* Cities.
Munk, J. A., *Arizona Bibl.*, 63; *Arizona Sketches*, 534.
Munn *v.* Illinois, 512.
Munro, W. B., *Seigniorial System*, 252; *Initiative*, 574; *Govt. of Am. Cities*, 574.
Munro, W. H., *Bristol*, 83.
Munsell, Joel, *Annals of Albany*, 143; *Hist. Series*, 179.
Murat, Achille, *America*, 98; *Lettres*, 98.
Murdoch, Beamish, *Nova Scotia*, 251.
Murfree, M. N., hist. novels, 187.
Murphy, E. G., *Present South*, 496; *Basis of Ascendancy*, 536.
Murphy, H. C., *Verrazano*, 249; *Henry Hudson*, 266.
Murray, A. M., *Letters*, 98.
Murray, C. A., *Travels*, 98.
Murray, J. O., *Francis Wayland*, 393.
Murray, Nich., *Elizabeth-Town*, 75.
Mussey, H. R., *Combinations in Mining Industry*, 532.
Muzzey, A. B., *Reminiscences*, 173.
Myers, Gustavus, *Great Am. Fortunes*, 407; *Tammany Hall*, 411.
Myers, W. S., *Self-Reconstruction in Md.*, 491.
Myrick, Herbert, *Sugar Industry*, 563.

Nadaillac, Marquis de, *Prehist. Am.*, 240.
Nantucket, hist., 72; papers, 139.
Napoleon I, sale of La., 365; and neutral trade, 369, 370.
Narragansett, R. I., histories, 83, 84.
Narratives, collections, 176–180.
Narvaez, Pamfilo de, expedition, 248.
Nash, Wallace, *Handbook of Ore.*, 547.
Nash, Wallis, *Two Years*, 173.
Nashville, hist., 85; battle, 475.
Nason, Elias, *Frankland*, 293.
Nast, Thos., biog., 511.
Nation, discussion on hist. methods, 21.
National banks, creation, 478; reduction in issues, 522; Emergency Currency act, 561. — *See also* Banks.
National Civic Federation, *Operation of Public Utilities*, 564; labor conference, 567; *Conference on Indus. Conciliation*, 568.
National Civil Service Reform League, *Proceedings*, 521.
National Conference of Charities and Correction, *Reports*, 394.
National Conference on City Planning, *Proceedings*, 585.
National Conservation Assoc., 577; *Publications*, 580.
National Conservation Commission, 577; *Report*, 580.
National Conservation Congresses, 577; *Report*, 580.
National Cyclop. of Am. Biog., 39.
National Educational Association, *Fiftieth Anniversary Volume*, 15; *Report of Com of Ten*, 16; articles on hist. methods, 21.
National Geog. Monographs, 48.
National Geog. Soc., *Nat. Geog. Mag.*, 47.
National Labor Com., *Proceedings*, 569.
National League for Protection of Family, *Reports*, 585.
National Progressive Repub. League, 572.
National Soc. for Promotion of Indus. Educ., *Bulletins*, 585.
National Soc. for Sci. Study of Educ., *Year Book*, 17.
National Waterways Com., 577; *Hearings on Water Power*, 580; *Report*, 580.
Natural resources, products of N. Am., 236; large scale exploitation, 560, 576; prospective exhaustion, 576; conservation movement, 576; problems, 577. — *See also* Agriculture, Economic conditions, Lumber, Mining, Public lands, Waterways.
Navarrete, M. F. de, *Viages*, 245; *Biblioteca Marítima Española*, 245.
Navy, in French war (1798), 358; Jefferson's gunboats, 363; in Barbary wars, 363, 379; in War of 1812, 372; in Civil war, 475; Confed. cruisers, 480; expenditures (1890), 539; in Span. war, 549; bibl., 551.
Neal, Daniel, *Puritans*, 273.
Nearing, Scott, *Wages*, 568; *Child Labor Problem*, 568; *Women and Social Progress*, 583.
Nebraska, hists., 74; records, 140; hist. soc., 161; territory, 409, 453; admission, 489; settlement of western, 530. — *See also* Far West, States.
Nebraska Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Necessity, Fort, 289.
Needles, Ed., *Hist. Memoir*, 328.
Neeser, R. W., *U. S. Navy*, 551.
Negro plot in New York, 267.
Negroes, element in population, 317; status of free, 421, 427; as soldiers, 486; Freedmen's Bureau, 489; black codes, 489; civil rights acts, 489, 495; Fourteenth amendment, 489; conditions and rule during reconstruction, 495; Fifteenth amendment, 495; failure of Force bill (1890), 536; present day conditions, 536; disfranchisement, 536. — *See also* Slavery.
Neill, E. D., *Minn.*, 73; *Va. Company*, 260; *Va. Vetusta*, 260; *Va. Carolorum*, 260; *Terra Mariæ*, 262; *Founders of Md.*, 262.
Neill, H. H., *Legal Tender*, 499.
Neilson, Chas., *Burgoyne's Campaign*, 306.
Neilson, Peter, *Recollections*, 99.
Nelson, Anson, *Sarah C. Polk*, 116.
Nelson, Fanny, *Sarah C. Polk*, 116.
Nelson, O. N., *Scandinavians*, 529.
Nelson, Wm., *Am. Newspapers*, 126.
Netherlands, Am. settlement, 266; Pilgrims in, 273.
Nettleton, A. B., *Trusts*, 562.
Neutral trade, controversy over rights, 368; embargo and non-intercourse, 370; and War of 1812, 371.

Nevada, hists., 74; records, 141; hist. soc., 161; admission, 483, 502; mining rush, 502; territory, 502. — *See also* Far West, States.
Nevada Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
New Amsterdam, records, 143. — *See also* New York City.
New Bedford Library, *Books on Whale Fishery*, 405.
New Empires in Northwest, 55.
New England, before 1620, 272; confederation, 283; King Philip's war, 286; under Andros, 286; conditions of provincial, 286, 293; and embargo, 370; and War of 1812, 374. — *See also* colonies by name.
New England Confederation, 283; and Quakers, 284.
New England Emigrant Aid socs., 454.
New England Hist. Gen. Soc., pubs., 160.
New England History Teachers' Assoc., *Syllabus*, 13; *Publications*, 17; *Hist. Sources*, 17; *Cat. of Hist. Material*, 50.
New Granada. — *See* Colombia.
New Hampshire, bibl., 74; hists., 75; records and statutes, 141; hist. soc., 161; Mason grant, 275; settlement, 283; conditions (1760), 293; first constitution, 313; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341. — *See also* Colonies, New England, States.
New Hampshire Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
New Haven colony, hists., 64, 65; records, 133; settlement, govt., and union with Conn., 282.
New Haven Colony Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
New Internat. Encyc., 39.
New Jersey, hists., 75, 76; records and statutes, 141; hist. soc., 161; grant and settlement, 268; Quaker control, 268; royal province, 268; conditions (1760), 294; Revolutionary campaign, 304; first constitution, 314; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341; contested election (1839), 428. — *See also* Colonies, States.
New Jersey Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
New London, Conn., history, 64.
New Mexico, hists., 76; records, 142; hist. soc., 161; Span. in, 248; territory, 409, 447; conquest, 442; and Wilmot proviso, 445; enabling act, 572. — *See also* Southwest.
New Mexico Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
New Netherland, settlement and conditions, 266. — *See also* New York.
New Orleans, hists., 69; founded, 253; battle (1815), 372; capture (1862), 475.
New Plymouth. — *See* Plymouth colony.
New York, bibl., 76; general hists., 76, 77; local hists., 77–79; records and statutes, 142; hist. socs., 161; Dutch settlement, 266; Eng. conquest and govt., 267; Leisler's rebellion, 267; boundary disputes, 268; under Andros, 286; conditions (1760), 294; campaigns in Revolution, 304; western claim, 312, 330; first constitution, 314; settlement of western, 319, 332; land settlement with Mass., 332; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341; Locofocos, 428; anti-rent agitation, 430; Barnburners, 445; insurance investigation, 561. — *See also* Colonies, States.
New York City, hists., 78; records of New Amsterdam, 143; Tweed Ring, 510.
New York City Public Library, *Bulletin*, 35.
New York Gen. and Biog. Soc., *Record*, 161.
New York Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
New York Legis. Insur. Investigating Com., *Testimony and Report*, 566.
New York State Educ. Dept., *Syllabus*, 32.
New York State Library, *Best Books*, 35.
Newark, N. J., history, 75.
Newburgh, N. Y., histories, 78.
Newburgh addresses, 334.
Newbury, Mass., history, 72.
Newburyport, Mass., history, 72.
Newcomb, H. T., *Interstate Commerce Com.*, 565.
Newell, F. H., *Agri. by Irrigation*, 535; *Irrigation*, 578.
Newell, M. A., *Normal Schools*, 393.
Newell, R. H., *Orpheus C. Kerr*, 485.
Newlands, F. G., *San Domingo Question*, 556; and reclamation, 578.
Newspapers, hist. value, 125; books on, 126; of special hist. use, 126; select list, 127, 128; first, in Va., 261; development (1820–60), 391. — *See also* Literature.
Niagara, Ft., captured, 289.
Nicaragua. — *See* Isthmian transit, Latin-America.
Nicaragua Canal Construction Co., *Interoceanic Canal*, 527.
Nichol, John, *Am. Literature*, 393.
Nichols, T. L., *Forty Years*, 99.
Nichols, W. S., *Insurance*, 394.
Nicholson, A. O. P., *Compilation*, 147.
Nicholson, Meredith, *Hoosiers*, 377.
Nicolay, J. G., *Lincoln*, 113; *Outbreak of Rebellion*, 470.
Nicolet, Jean, exploration, 252.
Nicoll, Rich., in New York, 267.
Nicolls, W. J., *Am. Coals*, 400.
Nicuesa, Diego de, 245.
Nield, Jon., *Hist. Novels*, 183.
Niles, H., *Principles and Acts*, 178.
Niles' Weekly Register, 125; value, 126.
Nimmo, Jos., *Am. Cowboy*, 534; *Range and Cattle Business*, 535.
Nitobe, I. O., *U. S. and Japan*, 558.
Nobel Peace Prize foundation, 555.
Nolen, John, *Am. City Planning*, 583; *Replanning Small Cities*, 583.
Nolte, Vincent, *Fifty Years*, 99.
Non-intercourse act (1809), 370.
Nootka Sound question, 354.
Nordenskiöld, A. E., *Atlas*, 239.
Nordhoff, Chas., *Communistic Socs.*, 406; *Cotton States*, 497.
Norfolk, Va., history, 87.
Norman, B. M., *New Orleans*, 69.
Norris, W. H., *Digest*, 151.
Norsemen, discoveries, 243, 272.
North, Lord, conciliation plan, 308.
North, S. N. D., *Newspaper and Periodical Press*, 126.

North American Conservation Conference, 577.
North American Review, 122, 125.
North Atlantic Coast Fisheries Arbitration, 557.
North Carolina, bibl., 79; hists., 79; records and statutes, 143; early decisions, 151; hist. socs., 161; settlement, 264; conditions (1760), 295; western claim, 312, 330; Regulation, 319; ratification, 341; secession, 470; milit. govt., 489; reconstruction, 490; whites regain control, 495. — *See also* Carolina, Colonies, South, States.
North Carolina Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
North Central Hist. Teachers' Assoc., *Proceedings*, 17.
North Dakota, hists., 65; records, 144; hist. soc., 161; admission, 530. — *See also* Dakota, Northwest, States.
North Dakota Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Northcote, Stafford, biog., 501.
Northeastern boundary controversy, 437.
Northern Securities case, 560.
Northrup, M. H., *Grave Crisis*, 515.
Northup, S., *Twelve Years a Slave*, 423.
Northwest, hists. of territory, 80; statutes, 144; conquest, 304; ordinances (1784), 330; (1785), 330; (1787), 330; land companies and settlement, 332; prohibition of slavery, 335; development of farther, after Civil war, 530. — *See also* West, and states by name.
Norton, A. B., *Knox County*, 81.
Norumbega, 272.
Norwich, Conn., history, 64.
Note taking, use, 23; in home study, 27; systems in lectures, 223, 224; in investigation, 225, 226.
Notes on Span.-Am. War, 550.
Notestein, W., *Western Indians*, 307.
Nott, Eliphalet, biog., 393.
Nott, Samuel, *Slavery*, 422.
Nourse, H. S., *Lancaster*, 139.
Nova Scotia, documents, 150. — *See also* Acadia.
Noyes, A. D., *Am. Finance*, 60; *Future of High Finance*, 561.
Noyes, W. C., *Law of Intercorporate Relations*, 562; *Am. R. R. Rates*, 565.
Nullification, 415.

Oberholtzer, E. P., *Jay Cooke*, 106; *Robt. Morris*, 115; *Referendum*, 574.
Oberlin College, and abolition, 423.
Oberlin-Wellington rescue, 449.
O'Callaghan, E. B., *New Netherland*, 77; *Doc. Hist.*, 142; *Laws of N. Neth.*, 142.
Ocean Co., N. J., history, 76.
Occupations, development (1820–60), 406. — *See also* Labor, Professions.
Official Records of the Navies, 477.
Ogden, J. C., *Excursion*, 99.
Ogden, Rollo, *E. L. Godkin*, 109.
Ogg, F. A., *Opening of Miss.*, 336; *Jay's Treaty*, 355.
Oglethorpe, J. E., biogs., 115; in Ga., 265.
Ohio, bibls., 79; hists., 80, 81; records and statutes, 144; hist. soc., 161; admission, 375. — *See also* Northwest, States, West.
Ohio Arch. Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Ohio Company, (1748), 319; (1787), 332.
"Ohio idea," 498.
Ohio Valley, history, 80; French in, 289.
Ohio Valley Hist. Assoc., pubs., 158.
Ojeda. — *See* Hojeda.
Oklahoma, hists., 81; opening, 533; territory, 533. — *See also* Southwest, States.
Okuma, Count, *New Japan*, 558.
Olaf Tryggwason, *Saga*, 243.
Old South Leaflets, 179.
Olden Time, 322.
Oliver, F. S., *Hamilton*, 109.
Oliver, P., *Puritan Commonwealth*, 71.
Olmstead, F. L., *Seaboard Slave States*, 99; *Texas*, 99; *Back Country*, 99; *Cotton Kingdom*, 99.
Olney, Rich., *Internat. Isolation*, 544.
Olney doctrine, 543.
Olson, J. E., *Northmen*, 243.
Omaha, meat packing, 533.
Onderdonk, J. L., *Idaho*, 533.
O'Neil, C. A., *Am. Electoral System*, 364.
Onis, Luis de, *Memoir*, 384.
Open Door policy, 557.
Opium, problem of trade, 557.
Oppenheim, S., *Early Cong. Debates*, 347.
Orange Co., N. Y., history, 78.
Orchard, Harry, *Confession*, 569.
Orders in council, 369; repeal, 371.
Ordronaux, John, *Const. Legis.*, 324.
Ordway, Albert, *Index of Journals*, 36.
Oregon, bibl., 81; hists., 81, 82; records, 144; hist. soc., 161; territory, 409, 445; admission, 409. — *See also* Far West, Oregon country, Pacific coast.
Oregon country, exploration and claim, 366, 431; Am. settlement, 434; boundary controversy, 437.
Oregon Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
O'Reilly, Alex., *Ordonnances*, 136, 253.
O'Rell, Max. — *See* Blouët.
Orient, relations with U. S., 557. — *See also* nations by name.
Oriskany, battle, 305.
Orleans, territory of, 365.
Osborn *v.* Bank, 381.
Osgood, H. L., *Am. Colonies*, 60.
Ostend Manifesto, 451.
Ostrogorski, M., *Democracy and Polit. Parties*, 352; *Democracy and Polit. System*, 410.
Oswald, Rich., peace negotiations, 310.
Otis, Jas., biogs., 115; *Vindication*, 296; *Rights of the Colonies*, 296; *Appeal*, 296.
Otto, W. T., *Cases*, 155.
Oviedo, G. F. de, *Historia*, 245.
Owen, C. H., *Mexican War*, 442.
Owen, John, *Journal*, 377.
Owen, R. L., *Code of People's Rule*, 574.
Owen, Robt., biog., 407; *Life*, 408.
Owen, T. M., *Bibl. of Ala.*, 63; *Bibl. of Miss.*, 73; *J. Owen's Journal*, 377.

Pace, J. W., *Mon. Blue Book*, 533.
Pacific coast, railroads to, 530, 533; irrigation and fruit raising in north-

western, 530; increased interest in, 545; geog., 545; commerce, 545; traits, 546; literature and art, 546. — *See also* Far West, and st.tes by name.
Pacific railroads, construction, 504, 530, 533.
Page, T. N., *Old South*, 174; hist. novels, 187; *Negro*, 537.
Page, W. H., *Southerner*, 538.
Paget, John, *Inquiry*, 270.
Paige, L. R., *Cambridge*, 71; *Hardwick*, 72.
Paine, A. B., *Th. Nast*, 511; *Bill McDonald*, 535.
Paine, R. D., *Greater America*, 532.
Paine, Thos., biogs., 115; *Public Good*, 331.
Palacio, *Outline of Revolution*, 388.
Palfrey, J. G., *New Eng.*, 43; *Compendious History*, 249.
Palmer, Fred., *Klondyke*, 548.
Palmer, P. S., *Lake Champlain*, 77.
Palmer, T. H., *Hist. Register*, 373.
Palmer, Wm., railroad builder, 533.
Panama Congress, 388.
Panama. — *See* Isthmian transit.
Panama Republic, 554.
Pan-American Congresses, 543, 555; arbitration treaty, 555.
Panics, (1819), 379; (1837), 428; (1839), 428; (1857), 459; (1873), 516; bankers' (1884), 520; (1893), 539, 566; (1907), 561. — *See also* Finances.
Paper money, in provin. Mass., 286; under Confederation, 333, 337; state bank circulation under Jackson, 418; Civil war greenbacks, 478; tax on state bank, 498; attempt to contract greenbacks, 498; legal tender decisions, 498; gold speculation and Black Friday, 498; veto of inflation, 516; Greenback party, 516, 520, 521; resumption, 516; Emergency Currency act, 561. — *See also* Money.
Paponot, Félix, *Canal de Panama*, 527.
Pardo de Tavera, T. H., *Bibl. Filipina*, 551.
Paris, Comte de, *Civil War*, 60.
Paris, treaty of (1763), 289; (1783), 310; (1898), 549.
Parker, A. A., *Trip to the West*, 99.
Parker, A. B., campaign (1904), 571.
Parker, E. H., *China and Religion*, 560.
Parker, G. F., *Cleveland*, 106.
Parker, Gilbert, hist. novel, 187.
Parker, Joel, *Personal Liberty Laws*, 458; *Const. Law*, 465; *Habeas Corpus*, 484; *Three Powers of Govt.*, 484.
Parker, Samuel, *Journal*, 99.
Parker, Theo., biogs., 115; *Hist. Americans*, 299; abolitionist, 423; *Speeches*, 454.
Parkinson, Rich., *Tour*, 99.
Parkman, Francis, *France and England*, 43; *Pontiac*, 43; *Oregon Trail*, 99; hist. novel, 187; *Pioneers of France*, 248; *Struggle for a Continent*, 249; *La Salle*, 252; *Old Régime*, 252; *Frontenac*, 252; *Half-Century of Conflict*, 252; *Montcalm and Wolfe*, 288.
Parmelee, G. W., *Siege of Quebec*, 289.
Parrish, Randall, *Great Plains*, 432.
Parsons, Frank, *Railways*, 564; *Heart of R. R. Problem*, 564; *Legal Doctrine and Progress*, 575.
Parsons, S. H., biog., 115.
Parsons, Theophilus (1), biog., 115; *Essex Results*, 314.
Parsons, Theophilus (2), *T. Parsons*, 115; *Law of Business*, 408.
Parson's Cause, 295.
Parton, Jas., *Burr*, 105; *Franklin*, 108; *Jackson*, 111; *General Jackson*, 111; *Jefferson*, 111; *Greeley*, 394; *Danish Islands*, 501.
Paterson, Wm., *Laws of N. J.*, 142; notes in Fed. Convention, 340.
Patrons of Husbandry. — *See* Granger.
Patroons in New Netherland, 266.
Pattee, W. S., *Braintree*, 71.
Patten, B. A., *San Francisco*, 436.
Patterson, C. S., *U. S. and States*, 350.
Patterson, R. A., *Negro*, 537.
Patton, J. H., *Natural Resources*, 48.
Patton, J. S., *Jefferson and Univ. of Va.*, 393.
Paulding, J. K., *John Bull in Am.*, 99; hist. novels, 187.
Paullin, C. O., *Navy in Am. Rev.*, 302; *Rodgers*, 364.
Pavie, Théo., *Souvenirs*, 99.
Paxson, F. L., *Last Am. Frontier*, 61; *Bibl. of Col.*, 64; *Independence of S. Am. Repubs.*, 387; *Boundaries of Col.*, 502; *Ter. of Jefferson*, 502; *Ter. of Col.*, 502; *Pacific R. Rs.*, 505; *Omnibus States*, 531.
Payne, E. J., *Elizabethan Seamen*, 179.
Payne-Aldrich Tariff act, 570.
Peabody, A. P., *Harvard Reminiscences*, 393; *Harvard Graduates*, 393.
Peabody, F. G., *Social Question*, 583; *Liquor Problem*, 583.
Peabody, O. W. B., *Putnam*, 116; *Sullivan*, 329.
Peabody Institute, *Catalogue*, 35.
Peace Conference (1861), 468.
Pearce, Stewart, *Luzerne County*, 82.
Pearson, E. W., *Letters*, 494.
Pearson, H. G., *Andrew*, 103; *Am. Railroad Builder*, 402.
Pearson, Jon., *Schenectady Patent*, 78.
Pearson, P. M., *Intercollegiate Debates*, 557.
Peck, C. H., *Jacksonian Epoch*, 389.
Peck, Geo., *Wyoming*, 82.
Peck, J. H., impeachment, 412.
Peck, J. M., *Guide for Emigrants*, 55; *Gazetteer of Ill.*, 67; *New Guide*, 376; *Forty Years*, 377.
Peckham, S. F., *Petroleum*, 400.
Pedder, H. C., *Garfield*, 108.
Peffer, W. A., *Farmer's Side*, 542; articles on Populists, 542.
Peirce, D. K., *Debates*, 342.
Peirce, P. S., *Freedmen's Bureau*, 490.
Pellew, Geo., *Jay*, 111.
Pendleton, Louis, *A. H. Stephens*, 118.
Peninsula campaign, 475.
Penn, Wm., biogs., 115, 116; N. J., 268; Pa., 269, 270; Macaulay's charges, 269.
Pennebecker, Hendrich, biog., 271.
Pennsylvania, local bibl., 82; hists., 82, 83; records and statutes, 144; early decisions, 151; hist. socs., 162; Dutch and Swedish, settlers, 269; Penn's charter and

settlement, 269; boundary disputes 269, 332, 337; govt. (1685–1760), 270; conditions (1760), 294; first constitution, 313; settlement of western, 319; donation lands, 332; Triangle, 332; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341. — *See also* Colonies, States.
Pennsylvania-German Soc., pubs., 158.
Pennsylvania Hist. Soc., *Charlemagne Tower Col. of Am. Colon. Laws*, 33; pubs., 162.
Pennsylvania State Library, *Check-List of Pa. [Local] Histories*, 82.
Pennypacker, I. R., *Meade*, 114.
Pennypacker, S. W., *Pennebecker*, 271.
Pensions, as relief for surplus, 520; act of 1890, 539; investigations, 539.
People. — *See* Population.
People's (Populist) party, 523, 539.
Pepper, C. M., *To-morrow in Cuba*, 553.
Pepperrell Papers, 288.
Pequod war, 281.
Peralta, M. M. de, *Canal Interoceánico*, 526.
Perez, Juan, voyage, 431.
Pérez, L. M., *Guide to Cuban Archives*, 181.
Perceval, John, *Journal of Trustees*, 134.
Periodicals, indexes, 32, 33; of special hist. use, 122, 123; guides, 122; select list, 123-125; development (1820–60), 391. — *See also* Literature.
Perkins, F. B., *Check List for Am. Local Hist.*, 62.
Perkins, G. H., *Letters*, 477.
Perkins, J. B., *France in Am. Rev.*, 308.
Perkins, J. H., *Annals of West*, 61.
Perriam, J., *Groundswell*, 512.
Perrot, Nicolas, *Mémoire*, 242.
Perry, B. F., *Reminiscences*, 494; *Sketches*, 494.
Perry, M. C., biog., 116; in Japan, 451.
Perry, T. S., *Lieber*, 112.
Perry, W. S., *Doc. Hist. of Epis. Church*, 178; *Hist. Collections*, 179.
Perryville, battle, 475.
Persinger, C. E., *Wilmot Proviso*, 446.
Person, H. S., *Indus. Educ.*, 584.
Personal liberty acts, 426, 449.
Perth Amboy, history, 76.
Peru, conquest, 247.
Peschel, Oscar, *Theilung der Erde*, 245.
Pet banks, 418.
Peters, J. P., *Labor and Capital*, 567.
Peters, Rich., *Admiralty Decisions*, 151.
Peters, Rich., Jr., *Reports*, 155.
Petin, Hector, *Doctrine de Monroe*, 452.
Petitions, abolition, 425.
Peto, S. M., *Resources of Am.*, 519.
Petrie, Geo., *Church and State*, 263.
Petroleum, beginning of industry, 398; development, Standard Oil, 518, 523.
Peyton, J. L., *Augusta Co.*, 87; *Am. Crisis*, 474.
Phelan, Jas., *Tennessee*, 85.
Phelps, Albert, *Louisiana*, 69.
Phelps, E. M., *Initiative*, 576.
Phelps and Gorham's purchase, 78.
Philadelphia, histories, 83; campaign in Revolution, 304.
Philanthropy, 581.
Philip Kearny, Ft., 506.
Philipp, E. L., *Polit. Reform in Wis.*, 573.
Philippine Commission, 551; *Reports*, 553; *Acts*, 553; *Official Gazette*, 553.
Philippine Islands, capture, 549; annex., 551; insurrection, 551; govt., 551; tariff, 552; *Affairs in*, 553.
Philips, Matthew, *Memoir*, 322.
Phillips, Henry, *Paper Currency of Rev.*, 313; *Continental Paper Money*, 313.
Phillips, J. B., *Keeping Public Money*, 516; *Recent State Const. Making*, 574.
Phillips, P. L., *List of Maps*, 317; *List of Atlases*, 317.
Phillips, U. B., *Ga. and State Rights*, 66; *S. C. Federalists*, 352; *Transp. in Cotton Belt*, 402; *State-Owned R. R.*, 402; *Transp. in Ante-Bellum South*, 402; *Econ. Cost of Slaveholding*, 422; *Black Belt*, 422; *Economics of Plantation*, 422; *Plantation as Civilizing Factor*, 422, *Southern Whigs*, 456.
Phillips, Wendell, biogs., 116; *Speeches*, 166; abolitionist, 423.
Phillips, Wm., *Conquest of Kansas*, 455.
Phinney, E., *Battle of Lexington*, 302.
Phisterer, Fred., *Statis. Record*, 463.
Physical geography, surveys, 47; work of Geog. Survey, 47; periodicals, 47; special works, 48; maps of N. Am., 49, 50; wall maps, 50; importance in teaching of history, 208; of N. Am., 236; pre-Columbian ideas, 243; of Far West, 431, 545; of North and South, 462. — *See also* Geography.
Piatt, Donn, *Gen. Thomas*, 119.
Pickard, Mrs. K. E. R., *Kidnapped*, 423.
Pickering, Danby, *Statutes at Large*, 130.
Pickering, John, impeachment, 363.
Pickering, Octavius, *T. Pickering*, 116.
Pickering, Timothy, biog., 116.
Pickett, A. J., *Alabama*, 63.
Pickett, W. P., *Negro Problem*, 537.
Pierce, E. L., *Sumner*, 119.
Pierce, F. C., *Grafton*, 72.
Pierce, Franklin, biog., 116; and Kan.-Neb. bill, 453; *Some Papers*, 455; election, 456.
Pierce, Franklin, *Tariff and Trusts*, 562.
Pierce, G. F., biog., 496.
Pierce, M. F., *Western Records*, 139.
Pierce, Wm., notes in Fed. Conven., 340.
Pierson, C. W., *Granger Movement*, 512.
Pierson, H. W., *Jefferson*, 111.
Pike, J. S., *Prostrate State*, 84; *New Puritan*, 287; *First Blows*, 448.
Pike, Z. M., *Expeditions*, 99; *Papers*, 367.
Pilgrims, in Eng. and Holland, 273; at Plymouth, 274, 275.
Pilling, J. C., bibls. on Indians, 242.
Pillow, G. J., *Letters to Polk*, 441.
Pillsbury, Parker, *Anti-Slavery Apostles*, 425.
Pinchot, Gifford, as chief of Division of Forestry, 576; Ballinger controversy, 577; *Fight for Conservation*, 577; *Use of Nat. Forests*, 581.
Pinckney, C. C., French mission, 354, 358.
Pinckney, Chas., notes in Fed. Conven., 340.
Pinckney, Eliza. — *See* Lucas.

Pineda, Alonzo de, discovery, 245.
Pinkney, Wm., biog., 116; Eng. mission, 369, 370.
Pitkin, Timothy, *U. S.*, 43; *Statis. View*, 365.
Pitt, Wm. (1). — *See* Chatham.
Pitt, Wm. (2), biogs., 116.
Pittsburg Landing, battle, 475.
Pittsburgh Survey, 569.
Pittsfield, Mass., history, 72.
Pizarros, in Peru, 247.
Platt, T. C., *Autobiog.*, 521; as boss, 522.
Platt amendment on Cuba, 551.
Plattsburg, battle, 372.
Ploetz, Karl, *Epitome*, 39.
Plumer, Wm. (1), biog., 116.
Plumer, Wm. (2), *W. Plumer*, 116.
Plunkett, H. C., *Rural Life Problem*, 583.
Plymouth, Mass., history, 72; *Records*, 139.
Plymouth colony, hist., 72; records, 138; genesis, 273; settlement, 274; later history and conditions, 275; absorbed by Mass., 275; and Quakers, 284. — *See also* Colonies, New England.
Plymouth Company, 275.
Plympton, C. W., *Bibl. on Travel*, 89.
Podmore, Frank, *Robt. Owen*, 407.
Poems and collections illustrative of Am. hist., 189, 190.
Polenz, W. von, *Land der Zukunft*, 582.
Political geography. — *See* Historical geog.
Politics, colon. parties, 291; of ratification, 341; first federal parties, 351; era of good feeling, 383; Am. principles (1820–60), 408, 409; parties under Jackson, 412; bosses and corruption, 522; result of new northwestern states (1890), 530; labor in, 567; reform movements, 572. — *See also* Elections, Government, and parties by name.
Polk, J. K., biog., 116; *Diary*, 174; and Ore. boundary, 437; election, 439; and war with Mex., 441; and econ. questions, 443; and Wilmot proviso, 445.
Polk, Sarah C., biog., 116.
Pollard, E. A., *Davis*, 107; *Lost Cause*, 456; *Southern History*, 476; *Lost Cause Regained*, 494.
Pollock, Fred., *Science of Politics*, 297.
Pomeroy, J. N., *Const. Law*, 340; *Internat. Law*, 481.
Pomeroy, R. W., *Young Merchant*, 408.
Ponce de Leon, Juan, in Fla., 248.
Pond, Enoch, *I. Mather*, 114.
Pond, O. L., *Munic. Control of Public Utilities*, 564.
Ponsolle, Paul, *Tombeau des Milliards*, 527.
Pontiac's conspiracy, 295.
Pony express, 504.
Poole, D. C., *Among Sioux*, 507.
Poole, Wm., *Antislavery Opinion*, 327.
Poole's Index, 33.
Pooley, W. V., *Settlement of Ill.*, 67.
Poor, H. V., *Internal Improvements*, 401; Manual, 505.
Poor Clergyman's Almanack, 55.
Poor whites, antebellum, 421; changes in position, 536.
Poore, B. P., *Cat. of Govt. Pubs.*, 35; *Constitutions*, 131; *Perley's Reminiscences*, 174.
Pope, John, *Tour*, 99.
Popham colony, 272.
Popular Sci. Monthly, article on hist. methods, 21.
Popular sovereignty, 453; and Dred Scott decision, 458.
Population, at each census, 206; of Am. colonies, 291; elements, 317; number, distribution, and conditions (1820–60), 391; antebellum southern, 421; change in position of poor whites, 536; development of classes, 567; present conditions, 581. — *See also* Cities, Immigration, Indians, Negroes, Rural, Social conditions.
Populist (People's) party, 523, 539.
Port Royal, captures, 288.
Porter, A. T., *Led on*, 496.
Porter, D. D., biog., 116; *David Porter*, 359; *Incidents of Civil War*, 477.
Porter, David, biog., 359.
Porter, Noah, *Am. Colleges*, 396.
Porter, R. P., *The West*, 532.
Porto Rico, invasion, 549; annexation, 551; govt., 551; *Laws effective in*, 553; *Register*, 554; *Annual Report of Gov.*, 554.
Portolá, Gaspar de, in Cal., 431; *Expedition*, 433.
Portraits, index, 33.
Portsmouth, N. H., histories, 75; records, 141; treaty at, 557.
Portsmouth, R. I., records, 146.
Post, L. M., *Recollections*, 174.
Post-office, beginning of federal, 356; development, 399; abolition mail, 425; frauds investigations, 572.
Potter, Alonzo, biog., 394.
Potter, C. E., *Manchester*, 75.
Potter, E. R., *Narragansett*, 83; *Paper Money*, 287; *Questions of R. I.*, 430.
Potter, H. C., *East of To-day*, 559.
Potter, M. E., *U. S. Cat.*, 33.
Pouchot, *Memoir*, 289.
Poussin, G. T., *United States*, 403; *Chemins de Fer*, 404; *Principe Démocratique*, 411.
Powderly, T. V., *Thirty Years of Labor*, 525.
Powell, F. W., *R. R. Promotion*, 402.
Powell, J. W., *Physiographic Regions*, 48.
Powell survey, 47.
Power, Tyrone, *Impressions*, 100.
Pownall, Thos., *Memorial*, 292.
Pratt, D. J., *Boundaries*, 268.
Pratt, E. A., *Organ. of Agri.*, 513.
Pratt, S. S., *Wall Street*, 519.
Pray, J. C., *Bennett*, 394.
Preble, G. H., *Steam Navigation*, 401.
Preble, P., *Decision of King of Netherlands*, 437.
Prentiss, G. L., *S. S. Prentiss*, 116.
Prentiss, S. S., biogs., 116.
Prescott, W. H., biog., 116; *Peru*, 247; *Mexico*, 247.
Presidential Succession act, 521.
Presidents, list, 204, 205. — *See also* Elections, Executive, and presidents by name.
Press, colonial, 327; development (1820–60), 391. — *See also* Literature, Newspapers.
Preston, H. W., *Documents*, 179.

Preziosi, G., *Italiana*, 529.
Price, R. R., *Topics*, 32.
Price, O. W., *Land we live In*, 577.
Prigg case, 426.
Primary election, 574.
Prime, Fred., *Coals*, 518.
Prime, N. S., *Long Island*, 78.
Prime, S. I., *Morse*, 402.
Prince, O. H., *Digest*, 134.
Prince Soc., *Publications*, 158.
Princeton, N. J., battle, 305; history, 306.
Pring, Martin, voyage, 258.
Prior Documents, 131.
Pritchett, H. S., *State Universities*, 584.
Privy Council, *Acts, Colon. Series*, 130.
Proclamation of 1763, 319.
Proctor, R. G., *Tariff Acts*, 500.
Proctor, Redfield, speech on Cuba, 549.
Products of North Am., 236.—*See also* Economic conditions.
Professions, colon., 291; conditions (1820–60), 391, 406; present conditions, 581.
Progressive Republicans, 570, 572.
Prohibition party, 522.
Proper, E. E., *Colon. Immigration Laws*, 326.
Prosch, Chas., *Reminiscences*, 503.
Prothero, G. W., *Select Statutes*, 324.
Proud, Robt., *Pennsylvania*, 82.
Prouty, C. A., *Agri. and Transportation*, 513.
Providence, R. I., history, 84; records, 146; settlement, 280.
Prowse, D. W., *Newfoundland*, 243.
Prudden, T. M., *Great Am. Plateau*, 432.
Pryor, Mrs. R. A., *Reminiscences*, 474.
Psychological Review, article on hist. methods, 21.
Public Archives Com., *Reports*, 180.
Public debt, under Confederation, 333; Hamilton's measures, 348; assumption of state, 348; Jefferson's reduction, 363; state repudiation, 428; Civil war loans, 478; postbellum refunding, 498; question of payment in greenbacks, 498; and in silver, 516; use of surplus to purchase bonds, 522; issue of bonds to preserve gold reserve, 539; forcible collection of Latin-Am., and Monroe doctrine, 555.—*See also* Finances, Paper money.
Public lands, laws, 46; state claims and cessions, 312, 330, 353; milit. bounties, 319, 332, 375; ordinance (1785), 332; early proceeds, 348; credit and cash systems, 379; educ. and other grants, 391, 419; speculation, 419; specie circular, 419; preemption act, 419, 576; homestead act, 459, 507; grants for railroads, 507, 508; grant for agri. colleges, 508; timber culture, desert, and stone acts, 508, 576; frauds, 508, 572, 577; commission (1879), 508; and cattle ranging, 533; rushes to opening of Indian reservations, 533, 576; Alaska controversy, 545, 577; end of free land era, 576; forest reserves, 576; conservation movement, 576; act for entry of surface only, 577; power of president to reserve from entry, 577; present problems, 577.—*See also* Economic conditions.
Public Lands Com., *Report*, 535.
Public Lands Office, *Map of U. S.*, 50; *Cunningham Coal Entries*, 580.
Public records, character, 128, 129; Brit. statutes, 130; Brit. colon. papers, 130; reports of Royal MSS. Com., 130; colon. statutes and charters, 131; colon., state, and local, 132–150; federal, 152–157; unofficial collections, 176–180; guides to Am. material in foreign archives, 181.
Public service corporations, state regulation, 561.—*See also* Railroads.
Publicity of Campaign Contributions act, 572.
Pulliam, D. L., *Const. Conventions of Va.*, 148.
Pullman strike, 567.
Pulszky, Francis, *White, Red, Black*, 100.
Punishment, systems (1820–60), 391; present conditions, 582.—*See also* Reform.
Purchas, Samuel, *Pilgrimes*, 242.
Purdy, T. C., *Steam Navigation*, 401; *Canals*, 401.
Pure Food act, 572.
Puritans, in Md., 263; in Eng., 272; Pilgrims, 273–275.
Purry, J. P., *Description*, 265.
Puter, S. A. D., *Looters of Public Domain*, 578.
Putnam, A. W., *Middle Tenn.*, 332.
Putnam, Daniel, *Bunker Hill*, 302.
Putnam, F. W., *Collections*, 240.
Putnam, Herbert, *Legislative Reference Bureaus*, 574.
Putnam, Israel. biogs., 116, 302.
Putnam, J. W., *Ill.- Mich. Canal*, 401.
Putnam, Rufus, biog., 116; *Memoirs*, 322.
Pynchon, Wm., *Diary*, 174

Quaintance, H. W., *Farm Machinery*, 508.
Quakers, in N. J., 268; origin and opinions, 269; in Pa., 269, 270; treatment in other colonies, 284.
Quay, M. S., as boss, 522.
Quebec, founding, 251; capture by Kirke, 251; by Wolfe, 289.
Quebec act, 298, 319.
Quebec Literary and Hist. Soc., publications, 163.
Queen Anne's war, 288.
Quick, H., *Am. Inland Waterways*, 532.
Quincy, Edmund, *J. Quincy*, 116.
Quincy, Josiah (1), biog., 116; *Reports*, 151.
Quincy, Josiah (2), *Boston*, 71; *J. Q. Adams*, 103; *Josiah Quincy, Jun.*, 116; biog., 116.
Quincy, Josiah (3), *Figures of the Past*, 174.
Quincy, Mass., histories, 71.
Quintuple treaty, 427.
Quitman, J. A., biog., 121.
Quiz, use, 207.

Races. — *See* Immigration, Population.
Radisson, Sieur, exploration, 252; *Voyages*, 252.
Rafinesque, C. S., *Life of Travels*, 100.
Rafn, C. C., *Antiquitates Am.*, 243.
Railroad Securities Com., *Report*, 565.
Railroads, rise and development (1820–60), 399; building of Pacific, 504, 530, 533;

prairie roads, 504; trunk lines, 504; protection from Indians, 506; land grants, 507, 508; Granger movement and laws, 512; strikes and riots (1877), 517; (1886), 523; (1894), 567; extension to Northwest, 530; state regulation, 561; federal labor legislation, 567. — *See also* Commerce, Interstate commerce.
Raines, C. W., *Bibl. of Texas*, 85.
Rainey, Thos., *Ocean Steam Nav.*, 405.
Rale, Wm., *View of Constitution*, 325.
Ralegh, Walter, asseaman, 256; colonies, 257.
Ralph, Julian, *Great West*, 532; *Dixie*, 538.
Ramsay, David, *S. C.*, 84; *Am. Rev.*, 296; *Revolution of S. C.*, 303.
Ramsdell, C. W., *Reconstruction in Texas*, 491.
Ramsey, J. G. M., *Tennessee*, 85.
Ranck, G. W., *Kentucky*, 68; *Boonesborough*, 320.
Randall, C. S., *Common School*, 396.
Randall, H. S., *Jefferson*, 111.
Randolph, C. F., *Surplus Rev.*, 522; *Annexation*, 552.
Randolph, Edmund, biog., 116; *Vindication*, 356.
Randolph, Edward, in N. Eng., 285.
Randolph, John, biogs., 116, 117; *Letters*, 174; opposition, 374.
Randolph, S. N., *Jefferson*, 111.
Rantoul, Robt., biog., 117.
Raper, C. L., *N. C.*, 79; *Why N. C. refused to Ratify*, 342; *Ry. Transp.*, 564.
Rastall, B. M., *Labor History of Cripple Creek*, 568.
Rather, E. Z., *De Witt's Colony*, 435; *Recognition of Texas*, 440.
Ratification of federal constitution, 341; theories, 343.
Ratzel, F., *Vereinigten Staaten*, 48.
Raum, J. O., *N. J.*, 76; *Trenton*, 306.
Raumer, Fred. von, *America*, 100.
Ravenel, Mrs. S. J., *Charleston*, 84.
Rawle, Wm., *Constitution*, 411.
Rawson, Ed., *Revolution Justified*, 286.
Ray, P. O., *Repeal of Mo. Compromise*, 453.
Raymond, H. J., *Lincoln*, 113; biog., 394.
Raymond, R. W., *Peter Cooper*, 106; *Mining Industry of Rocky Mts.*, 503; *Statistics of Mines*, 503.
Rayon, J. S., *Archivo Mexicano*, 247.
Read, D. B., *Isaac Brock*, 372.
Read, Geo., biog., 117.
Read, J. M., *Henry Hudson*, 266.
Read, W. T., *G. Read*, 117.
Readers' Guide, 32.
Reading in study of history, necessity, 216; consecutive, 217; topical, 217; conference system, 217; use of books, 218–220; secondary and source materials, 220, 221.
Reagan, J. H., *Memoirs*, 474.
Recall, 574.
Reciprocity, Canadian (1854), 451; under treaty of Washington, 500; Hawaiian, 500, 517; draft Canadian treaty (1888), 543; Cuban, 551; maximum and minimum tariff negotiations, 555; attempted Canadian (1911), 570.
Recitations, use, 198; reviews, 206; quiz, 207; debates, 211; oral reports, 212; student lectures, 212; seminary reports, 213; brief written, 228.
Reclamation movement, 576.
Reclamation Record, 580.
Reclus, Elisée, *Earth*, 236.
Recollections. — *See* Reminiscences.
Recollections of Army Life of N. Eng. Woman, 507.
Reconstruction, postbellum conditions of South, 489; northern interests, 489; theories of status of seceded states, 489; Lincoln's policy, 489; Johnson's policy, 489; policy and acts of Congress, 489; Fourteenth amendment, 489; Supreme court cases, 490, 495; readmission of states, 490, 495; carpetbag rule and fed. protection, 495; Ku Klux, 495; white ascendancy, 495; end, 514.
Records. — *See* Public records.
Recueil des Traitez, 51.
Reddaway, W. F., *Monroe Doctrine*, 61.
Redpath, Jas., *John Brown*, 104; *Echoes of Harper's Ferry*, 459.
Reed, Andrew, *Narrative*, 100.
Reed, J. C., *Brothers' War*, 421.
Reed, J. S., *Old South and New*, 497.
Reed, Jos., biog., 117.
Reed, T. B., on Reed rules, 542.
Reed, W. B., *J. Reed*, 117.
Reed rules, 539.
Reeder, A. H., in Kansas, 454.
Reeves, A. M., *Wineland*, 243.
Reeves, J. S., *Dipl. under Tyler*, 437.
Reference books, 38.
References, methods of giving out, 227.
Referendum, 574.
Reform movements, (1820–60), 391; in civil service, 510, 520; in govt., 572; present day, 582. — *See also* Charity, Punishment, Social conditions.
Regel, Fritz, *Panamakanal*, 526.
Regicides in N. Eng., 285.
Register of Debates, 153.
Registers, 53–56.
Regulation war, 319.
Reid, J. D., *Telegraph*, 402.
Reid, W. M., *Mohawk Valley*, 78.
Reid, Whitelaw, *Greeley*, 109; *After the War*, 494; *Problems of Expansion*, 554.
Reinsch, P. S., *Am. Legislatures*, 347; *Second Hague Conference*, 555; *World Politics*, 557; *Intel. and Polit. Currents in Far East*, 559; *Readings on Am. State Govt.*, 574.
Reizenstein, Milton, *Baltimore and Ohio R. R.*, 402.
Relation of a Voyage into N. Eng., 272.
Relation of Maryland, 262.
Religion, Jesuits in Canada, 252; dissenters in provin. Va., 261; contentions in colon. Md., 263; Penn's charter, 269; Puritans, 272; church and state in Mass., 278; treatment of Quakers, 284; in provin. N. Eng., 287; colon. conditions, 291, 327; conditions (1820–60), 391; communities, 405; in new South, 536; missionaries

in Orient, 557; present conditions, 582. — *See also* Mormons, Social conditions.
Remington, Fred., *Pony Tracks*, 535.
Reminiscences, value, 168; select list, 169–176.
Report of a French Protestant, 285.
Reports in study of history, oral, 212; seminaries, 213; system of special, 232.
Representation, beginning in Va., 259; in Md., 262; in Mass., 278; in Eng., 324; direct govt. movement, 574. — *See also* Government.
Republican party, first. — *See* Democratic.
Republican party, second, rise, 456; Liberals, 510; Stalwarts and Half-Breeds, 520; Insurgents, 570, 572. — *See also* Elections, Politics.
Repudiations, state, 428.
Requisitions under Confederation, 333.
Resumption of specie payments, 516.
Retana, W. E., *Aparato Bibl. de Filipinas*, 554.
Revenue, first fed., 348; in 1845, 443. — *See also* Finances, Public lands, Surplus, Taxation.
Revenue Commission, 498.
Revere, Paul, biog., 117.
Reviews, devices, 206; written, 228.
Revised Statutes, 153; *Supplement*, 153.
Reynolds, J. B., *Civic Bibl. for N. Y.*, 585.
Reynolds, J. H., *Makers of Ark.*, 63.
Reynolds, J. S., *Reconstruction in S. C.*, 491.
Reynolds, John, *Illinois*, 67.
Rhea letter, 383.
Rhees, W. J., *Smithsonian Instn.*, 395.
Rhode Island, bibls., 83; hists., 83, 84; records and statutes, 145; hist. soc., 162; settlement, 280; charter and development, 281; and N. Eng. Confed., 283; conditions (1760), 293; emancipation in, 335; ratification, 341; Dorr rebellion, 430. — *See also* Colonies, New England, States.
Rhode Island Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Rhodes, J. F., *Hist. Essays*, 18; *U. S.*, 43; *R. R. Riots*, 519; *Nat. Repub. Conventions*, 520; *Cleveland's Admins.*, 522.
Rice, A. T., *Lincoln*, 113.
Rice, F. P., *Worcester Records*, 139.
Rice, Harvey, *Pioneers*, 376.
Richard, Edouard, *Acadia*, 288.
Richardson, A. D., *Beyond the Mississippi*, 503; *New States*, 503.
Richardson, A. T., *De Smet*, 436.
Richardson, C. F., *Am. Literature*, 393.
Richardson, E. C., *Index to Period. Articles on Religion*, 585.
Richardson, J. D., *Messages*, 157; *Messages of the Confederacy*, 179.
Richardson, W. A., *Public Debt*, 499.
Richie, G. T., *Lincolniana*, 472.
Richman, I. B., *Cal.*, 64; *R. I.*, 83, 84.
Riddle, A. G., *Wade*, 119; *Recollections*, 174; hist. novel, 188.
Rider, S. S., *R. I. Hist. Tracts*, 84; *Paper Money*, 287.
Ridgely, David, *Annapolis*, 70.
Riedesel, F. A., *Memoirs*, 174.
Riedesel, Frederika, *Letters*, 174.
Rights, of Englishmen, 323; of colonists, 325; Am. conceptions, 408. — *See also* Government.
Riis, J. A., *Roosevelt*, 117; *How the Other Half Lives*, 524; *Making of an American*, 524; *Battle with the Slum*, 583.
Riker, Jas., *Harlem*, 77.
Riley, F. L., *Origins of Senates*, 326; *Transition from Span. Rule*, 355; *Span. Policy*, 355; *Diary of Miss. Planter*, 422.
Riley, I. W., *Founder of Mormonism*, 407.
Rindge, N. H., history, 75.
Ringwalt, J. L., *Transportation*, 400.
Ringwalt, R. C., *Briefs for Debate*, 32; *Briefs on Public Questions*, 32.
Rinne, Friedrich, *Zwischen Filipinos und Amerikanern*, 553.
Ripley, R. S., *War with Mexico*, 440.
Ripley, W. Z., *Ry. Problems*, 513; *Races*, 528; *Trusts*, 561; *Capitalization of Public Service Corporations*, 564; *Roosevelt's Ry. Policy*, 564; *Fed. R. R. Regulation*, 564; *R. R. Rate Making*, 564.
River and harbor bills, 388, 398, 520, 522. — *See also* Waterways.
Rivers, W. J., *Sketch of S. C.*, 264.
Rivers. — *See* Waterways.
Rives, G. L., *Spain and U. S.*, 355; *Corresp. of Barclay*, 370.
Rives, W. C., *Madison*, 114.
Roads, Samuel, *Marblehead*, 72.
Roads, Braddock's, 319; Forbes's, 319; Cumberland, 379; development (1820–60), 399. — *See also* Commerce, Internal improvements.
Roberts, A. — *See* Hobart (A. G.).
Roberts, E. H., *New York*, 77; *Oriskany*, 306.
Roberts, E. M., *Govt. Revenue*, 380.
Roberts, I. P., *Fertility*, 579.
Roberts, Peter, *Anthracite Coal Industry*, 518; *Coal Communities*, 529.
Robertson, J. A., *Louisiana*, 69; *Docs. in Span. Archives*, 181.
Robertson, J. R., *Genesis in Ore.*, 438.
Robertson, Jas., in Tenn., 319.
Robertson, Jas., *Few Months in Am.*, 100.
Robertson, W. S., *Miranda*, 355; *Span.-Am. Dipl.*, 387.
Robertson, Wyndham, *Oregon*, 437.
Roberval, Sieur de, 249.
Robin, l'Abbé, *New Travels*, 100.
Robins, J. J., *Trial of Hanway*, 450.
Robinson, A. G., *Cuba and Intervention*, 553.
Robinson, C. E., *Shakers*, 406.
Robinson, C. M., *Improvement of Towns and Cities*, 583.
Robinson, Chalfant, *Two Reciprocity Treaties*, 518.
Robinson, Chas., biog., 117.
Robinson, Doane, *South Dakota*, 65; *Dakota Indians*, 506.
Robinson, H. H., *Loom and Spindle*. 407.
Robinson, H. P., *Twentieth Century American*, 582.
Robinson, J. H., *Constitution*, 340.
Robinson, Rev. John. 273.
Robinson, John, correspondence, 305.
Robinson, R. E., *Vermont*, 86.

Robinson, S. T. L., *Kansas*, 455.
Rochambeau. Comte de, in Am. Rev., 309; *Memoirs* 310.
Roche, J. F., *By-ways of War*, 452.
Rockefeller, J. D., Standard Oil, 560; *Reminiscences*, 566; philanthropy, 581.
Rockhill, W. W., report on China, 559.
Rockingham, Marquis of, biog., 117; first ministry, 295; *Papers*, 296; second ministry, 310.
Rockport, Mass., history, 72.
Rodgers, John, biog., 364.
Rodrigues, J. C., *Panama Canal*, 527.
Rodriguez, J. I., *Anexion de Cuba*, 550.
Roe, E. P., hist. novels, 188.
Roe, G. E., *Judicial Oligarchy*, 575.
Rogers, E. R., *Four Southern Mags.*, 393.
Rogers, H. J., *Congress of Arts and Science*, 18.
Rogers, H. W., *Const. History*, 381.
Rogers, J. A. R., *Berea College*, 537.
Rogers, J. E., *Am. Newspaper*, 584.
Rogers, J. E. T., *Protest of Lords*, 296.
Rogers, J. M., *Clay*, 106.
Rogers, P., *Law of Irrigation*, 578.
Roman, Alfred, *Beauregard*, 467.
Roman Catholic church, Jesuits in Canada, 252; in Md., 263. — *See also* Religion.
Roos, F. F. de, *Personal Narrative*, 100.
Roosevelt, T., *Naval War of 1812*, 61; *Winning of the West*, 61; *New York*, 78; *Benton*, 104; *G. Morris*, 114; biogs., 117, 573; *Addresses*, 167; *Pres. Addresses*, 167; *Am. Ideals*, 522; *Ranch Life*, 535; *Rough Riders*, 551; *Philippines*, 554; foreign policy, 554; and arbitration treaties, 555; on Monroe doctrine, 555; *How we acquired Panama Canal*, 556; and trusts, 560; election (1904), 561, 571; *Works*, 565; *New Nationalism*, 566; and labor, 567; *Roosevelt Policy*, 569; vice-presidency, 571; president, character, 571; and Congress, 572; and Taft, 572; *Strenuous Life*, 575; *African and Europ. Addresses*, 575; *Real Roosevelt*, 575; and conservation, 576, 577.
Root, F. A., *Overland Stage*, 504.
Root, Jesse, *Reports*, 150.
Ropes, J. C., *Civil War*, 475.
Rose, G. H., Am. missions, 370.
Rose, J. C., *Negro Suffrage*, 490.
Rosebery, Earl of, *Pitt*, 116.
Rosier, Jas., narrative, 258.
Ross, Alex., *First Settlers*, 81.
Ross, Chas., *Cornwallis*, 106.
Ross, E. A., *Changing Chinese*, 559; *Sin and Society*, 561; *Middle West*, 577; *Changing America*, 582.
Ross, E. G., *Impeachment of Johnson*, 491.
Ross, J. B., *Agrarian Revolution*, 531.
Rothschild, Alonzo, *Lincoln*, 113.
Rouanet, G., *Complicités du Panama*, 527.
Rous, John, *New England*, 284.
Rousselot de Surgy, J. P., *Pensylvanie*, 82.
Rousset de Missy, J., *Supplément*, 52.
Roussiers, Paul de, *Am. Life*, 532.
Rowan Co., N. C., history, 79.
Rowbotham, F. J., *Prairie Land*, 532.
Rowe, L. S., *U. S. and Porto Rico*, 552; *Problems of Munic. Govt.*, 564
Rowland, K. M., *Chas. Carroll*, 105; *Geo. Mason*, 114.
Roxbury, Mass., history, 72.
Royal Commission on Hist. MSS., *Reports*, 130; guide to Am. material, 131; on Am. Rev., 305.
Royal Commissioners in N. Eng., 285.
Royall, W. L., *Jackson and Bank*, 414; *Va. Debt*, 496.
Royce, C. C., *Indian Land Cessions*, 46; *Cherokee Nation*, 420.
Royce, Josiah, *Cal.*, 64; *Race Questions*, 432.
Ruffhead, Owen, *Statutes at Large*, 130.
Ruge, Sophus, *Entwickelung, der Kartog.*, 239; *Entdeckungen*, 245.
Ruidíaz y Caravia, *Florida*, 250.
Rule of 1756, 368.
Rumple, Jethro, Rowan County, 79.
Runnels, M. T., *Sanbornton*, 75.
Rupp, I. D., *Western Pa.* 82; *Lancaster Co.*, 83; *Relig. Denominations*, 292; *Northumberland Co.*, 320.
Rural life, conditions (1820–60), 391, 406; present conditions and uplift, 581; report of commission on, 583. — *See also* Population, Social conditions.
Rush, Rich., *Residence at London*, 174; *Washington in Domestic Life*, 307.
Russell, A. E., *Brook Farm*, 408.
Russell, A. P., *T. Corwin*, 106.
Russell, C. E., *Greatest Trust*, 563.
Russell, H. B., *International Monetary Conference*, 516.
Russell, John, Earl, *C. J. Fox*, 108; *Recollections*, 174.
Russell, W. H., *Hesperothen*, 100; *My Diary*, 477.
Russell, W. S., *Guide to Plymouth*, 275; *Plymouth Memorials*, 275.
Russell Sage Foundation, *Pubs.*, 569.
Russia, and War of 1812, 372; Am. claims and policy, 386, 437; sale of Alaska, 500; Japanese war, 557.
Rutherfurd, Livingston, *Zenger*, 294.
Ruttenber, E. M., *County of Orange*, 78.
Ruville, Albert von, *Chatham*, 116.
Rye, Edgar, *Quirt and Spur*, 535.
Rye, N. Y., history, 78.
Ryerson, A. E., *Loyalists*, 311.

Sabin, Jos., *Books relating to America*, 28.
Sabine, Lorenzo, *Loyalists*, 310; *Fisheries*, 400.
Sackville-West incident, 543.
Safford, W. H., *Blennerhassett*, 368; *Blennerhassett Papers*, 368.
Sagard Théodat, Gabriel, *Canada*, 241; *Grand Voyage*, 241.
Sage, B. J. — *See* Centz.
Sahagun, F. B., *Cosas de Nueva España*, 241; *Conquista de México*, 247.
Saint Augustine, Fla., hist., 66; founding, 250.
St. Clair, Arthur, *Papers*, 167; Indian war, 354.
Saint Denis, J., exploration, 431.

St. George's Parish, Va., history, 87.
St. Germain, treaty, 251.
St. Lawrence Co., N. Y., history, 78.
St. Leger, Barry, expedition, 304.
Saint Louis, histories, 73, 74.
St. Mark's Parish, Va., history, 87.
Saint-Martin, V. de, *Hist. de Geog.*, 239.
Saint Paul, history, 73.
Salary grab, 510.
Salem, Mass., history, 72; records, 139; Naumkeag settlement, 276.
Salisbury, R. D., *Topog. Maps*, 48.
Salmon, D. E., *Sheep Industry*, 400.
Salmon, L. M., *Appointing Power*, 347; *Domestic Service*, 406.
Salt Lake City, history, 461.
Salter, Edwin, *Monmouth and Ocean Counties*, 76.
Salter, Wm., *Iowa*, 68; *Grimes*, 109.
Samoan Islands controversy, 543, 551.
Sampson, W. T., in Span.-Am. war, 549.
San Francisco, history, 64; founded, 431; earthquake and fire, 545; labor questions, 545; graft, 546; Sand Lots agitation, 557; Japanese school question, 557.
Sanborn, F. B., *New Hampshire*, 75; *John Brown*, 104; *Public Charities*, 394; *Recollections*, 455.
Sanborn, J. B., *Cong. Grants of Land in Aid of Rys.*, 61; *Polit. Aspects of Homestead Legis.*, 508.
Sanborn, Kate, *Southern Cal.*, 547.
Sanbornton, N. H., history, 75.
Sanderson, J. P., *Repub. Landmarks*, 392.
Sanderson, John, *Signers*, 299.
Sanford, E. B., *Conn.*, 65.
Sanford, L. G., *Erie County*, 83.
Sanitary Commission, 483.
Santa Fé trail, 433.
Santarem, Vicomte de, *Atlas*, 239; *Vespucius*, 246.
Santiago campaign, 549.
Santo Domingo, attempted annex., 500; debt question, 555.
Saratoga campaign, 304.
Sargent, Epes, *Clay*, 106.
Sargent, H. H., *Campaign of Santiago*, 550.
Sargent, Nathan, *Public Men*, 174.
Sargent, Winthrop, *André*, 103; *Loyalist Poetry*, 190; *Expedition against Ft. DuQuesne*, 289.
Sato, Shosuke, *Land Question*, 313.
Saunderson, H. H., *Charlestown*, 75.
Savage, John, *A. Johnson*, 492.
Savannah, histories, 67, 134; founded, 265; in Am. Rev., 309.
Sawyer, F. H., *Inhabitants of Philippines*, 552.
Say and Sele, Lord, and Conn., 281.
Saybrook, founded, 281.
Scaife, W. B., *America*, 46.
Schafer, Jos., *Pacific Northwest*, 81; *Land Grants for Educ.*, 393; *Acquisition of Oregon*, 432; *Oregon Pioneers*, 435; *Brit. Attitude*, 438; *Pacific Slope*, 546.
Schaff, Philip, *Creeds*, 273.
Schaffner, M. A., *Labor Contract*, 524; *Initiative*, 574.
Schaper, W. A., *Sectionalism in S. C.*, 84.
Scharf, J. T., *Del.*, 66; *Chronicles of Baltimore*, 70; *Md.*, 70; *Saint Louis*, 74; *Philadelphia*, 83.
Schenck, David, *North Carolina*, 79.
Schenectady, history, 78.
Schierbrand, Wolf von, *Am., Asia, and the Pacific*, 558.
Schlaeger, E., *Sociale und polit. Stellung der Deutschen*, 100.
Schley, W. S., in Span.-Am. war, 549; investigation, 549; *Forty-five Years*, 550.
Schmeckebier, L. F., *Know-Nothing*, 457.
Schmucker, S. M., *Clay*, 106; *Hamilton*, 109.
Schoell, F., *Traités*, 52.
Schoepp, J. D., *Travels*, 100.
Schofield, J. M., *Forty-Six Years*, 477.
School Review, articles on hist. methods, 21.
Schools, history in, 24.— *See also* Education, Teaching.
Schoonmaker, Marius, *Kingston*, 77.
Schouler, Jas., *Hist. Briefs*, 18; *U. S.*, 44; *Hamilton*, 109; *Jefferson*, 111; *Const. Studies*, 410.
Schuckers, J. W., *Chase*, 105.
Schulze, J. L., *Nachrichten*, 83.
Schurman, J. G., *Philippine Affairs*, 554.
Schurz, Carl, *Clay*, 106; *Lincoln*, 113; *Reminiscences*, 174; and Liberal Republicans, 510; *Hayes*, 515; *Am. Imperialism*, 553.
Schuyler, Eugene, *Am. Dipl.*, 310.
Schuyler, G. W., *Colon. N. Y.*, 77.
Schuyler, Margarita, memoirs, 171.
Schuyler, Philip, biogs., 117.
Schuyler, R. L., *Polk and Oregon*, 438.
Schwab, J. C., *Confederate States*, 61.
Schwatka, F., *Alaska's Gt. River*, 548.
Scidmore, E. R., *Guide Book to Alaska*, 546.
Scientific institutions, 391.
Scioto Company, 332.
Scisco, L. D., *Polit. Nativism*, 457.
Scoresby, Wm., *Am. Factories*, 407.
Scot, Geo., *Model of Govt.*, 141.
Scotch-Irish element, 317; on frontier, 319.
Scotch-Irish Soc., pubs., 158.
Scott, E. D., *Federalist*, 179.
Scott, E. G., *Const. Liberty*, 324; *Reconstruction*, 491.
Scott, J. B., *Hague Peace Conferences*, 556; *Text of Peace Conferences*, 556; *Am. Addresses*, 556; *Govt. of U. S. and For. Missionaries*, 558.
Scott, Jos., *Geog. Dict.*, 55; *U. S. Gazetteer*, 55.
Scott, N. N., *H. L. White*, 429.
Scott, T. A., railroad builder, 533.
Scott, W. A., *Repudiation*, 429.
Scott, Winfield, biogs., 117; *Memoirs*, 175; in Mex. war, 442; candidacy, 456; and secession, 468.
Scoville, J. A., *Old Merchants*, 407.
Scoville, Samuel, *H. W. Beecher*, 104.
Scribner's Hist. of U. S., 41.
Scribner's Statistical Atlas, 50.
Scudder, H. E., *Men and Manners*, 61; *Washington*, 120; *N. Webster*, 120; hist. novel, 188.
Seabury, Samuel, biog., 117; *Am. Slavery* 422.

Seager, H. R., *Trust Decisions*, 562; *Social Reform*, 583.
Seattle, munic. reform, 546.
Secession, Federalist intrigue, 363; threats (1850), 447; theories, 464; causes and process, 466, 470; attitude of North, 468. — *See also* Civil war, Federal constitution, Reconstruction.
Secondary books, use, 23.
Secret Journals, 153.
Sedgwick, C. M., hist. novels, 188.
Sedgwick, Ellery, *Paine*, 115.
Sedgwick, John, *Corresp.*, 443.
Sedgwick, Theo., *Wm. Livingston*, 113; *Treatise*, 411.
Seeley, J. R., *Brit. Policy*, 256; *Expansion*, 324.
Seelye, E. E., *Washington*, 120.
Seignobos, Chas., *Études Hist.*, 18.
Seligman, E. R. A., *Commercial Policy*, 518; *Income Tax*, 541.
Selwyn, Geo., biog., 308.
Seminaries, 213.
Seminole war, 383, 419.
Semmes, Raphael, *Service Afloat*, 481.
Semple, E. C., *Am. Hist. and Geog. Conditions*, 48; *Geog. Environment*, 48.
Semple, R. B., *Baptists in Va.*, 294.
Senate. — *See* Congress.
Senior, H. W., *Essays*, 411.
Senner, J. H., *Immigration Question*, 528.
Sergeant, John, *Speeches*, 167.
Sergeant, Thos., *Land Laws of Pa.*, 332.
Sering, Max, *Landwirthschaftliche Konkurrenz Nordamerikas*, 508.
Serra, Junípero, in Cal., 431.
Servants, white, 327.
Seven Years' war, 289.
Sevier, John, biog., 117; in Tenn., 319.
Sewall, Samuel, biog., 117; *Diary*, 175; *Revolution Justified*, 286; *Joseph Sold*, 328.
Seward, F. W., *W. H. Seward*, 117.
Seward, G. F., *Chinese Immigration*, 558.
Seward, W. H., *J. Q. Adams*, 103; biogs., 117; *Works*, 167; *Autobiog.*, 175; and Taylor, 447; in Senate, 447; speech on compromise (1850), 447; "irrepressible conflict" speech, 460; and secession compromise, 468; and Ft. Sumter, 470; as sec. of state, 480.
Sewel, Wm., *Quakers*, 270.
Seybert, Adam, *Statis. Annals*, 365.
Seyd, Ernest, *California*, 55.
Seymour, E. S., *Sketches of Minn.*, 73.
Shadrach rescue, 449.
Shadwell, A., *Indus. Efficiency*, 579.
Shafter, W. R., Santiago campaign, 549.
Shakers, 405; bibl., 408.
Shaler, N. S., *Nature and Man*, 48; *U. S.*, 48; *Ky.*, 68.
Shambaugh, B. F., *Iowa Biog. Series*, 68; *Messages of Govs.*, 135; *Fragments of Debates*, 135; *Consts. of Iowa*, 410; *Exec. Journal*, 412; *Doc. Material*, 412.
Shambaugh, B. M. H., *Amana*, 407.
Shanghai Opium Conference, 557.
Shannon, Wilson, in Kansas, 454.
Sharpe, Horatio, *Correspondence*, 294.
Sharpless, Isaac, *Quaker Govt. in Pa.*, 83.
Shattuck, Lemuel, *Concord*, 302.
Shaw, Albert, *Icaria*, 407; *Polit. Problems*, 573; *Cartoon Hist. of Roosevelt*, 573.
Shaw, J., *U. S. Directory*, 55.
Shays rebellion, 337.
Shea, Geo., *Hamilton*, 109.
Shea, J. G., *Exploration of Miss. Valley*, 252; *Early Voyages*, 252; *Catholic Church*, 292.
Sheahan, J. W., *Douglas*, 107.
Sheep. — *See* Cattle.
Shelburne, Earl of, biog., 117; and peace negotiations, 310.
Sheldon, E. M., *Michigan*, 72.
Sheldon, Geo., *Deerfield*, 71.
Sheldon, H. D., *Student Life*, 393.
Shenandoah Valley, history, 87; settlement, 261, 319.
Shepard, E. H., *St. Louis*, 74.
Shepard, E. M., *Van Buren*, 119.
Shepherd, W. R., *Hist. Atlas*, 51; *Guide to Span. Archives*, 181; *Proprietary Govt. in Pa.*, 270; *Wilkinson and Span. Conspiracy*, 336.
Shepherd, Wm., *Prairie Experiences in Handling Cattle*, 536.
Sheppard, J. H., *S. Tucker*, 119.
Sherburne, Andrew, *Memoirs*, 175.
Sherburne, J. H., *J. P. Jones*, 112.
Sheridan, P. H., biog., 117; *Memoirs*, 175.
Sherman, Henry, *Slavery*, 422.
Sherman, John, biogs., 117, 492; *Speeches and Reports*, 167; *Recollections*, 175; *Letters*, 175; and resumption, 516; candidacy, (1880), 520.
Sherman, Roger, biog., 117.
Sherman, W. T., biog., 118; *Letters*, 175; *Memoirs*, 175; *Home Letters*, 175; in Civil war, 475.
Sherman Antitrust act, 523; Supreme court decisions, 560, 561.
Sherman Silver Purchase act, 539; repeal, 539.
Sherwood, Adiel, *Gaz. of Ga.*, 67.
Shields, J. D., *Prentiss*, 116.
Shimmell, L. S., *Border Warfare*, 307.
Shimonoseki incidents, 557.
Shinn, C. H., *Story of the Mine*, 74; *Mining Camp*, 435.
Shipp, Barnard, *De Soto*, 248.
Shipp, J. E. D., *Giant Days*, 106.
Shipping, American, in early fed. days, 356; neutral trade controversy, 368, 370; influence on West of steamships, 375; after War of 1812, 379; conditions (1820–60), 398; decline, in foreign commerce, 517; progress of coastwise and internal, 517, 530. — *See also* Commerce.
Shirreff, Patrick, *Tour*, 100.
Shirtwaist strike, 567.
Shortt, Adam, *Documents*, 150.
Shuman, A. E., *Railroads*, 402.
Sibley, N. W., *Internat. Law and Russo-Jap. War*, 558.
Sidney, Algernon, *Discourses*, 297.
Siebert, W. H., *Underground Railroad*, 61.
Sigsbee, C. D., *Maine*, 550.
Silver, 16 to 1 ratio, 418; demonetization (1873), 516; rise of question, 516;

Bland-Allison act, 516; bill (1886), 524; small certificates, 524; Sherman act, 539; repeal of Sherman act, 539; veto of Seigniorage bill, 531; propaganda and campaign of 1896, 539; Gold Standard act, 540; in later campaigns, 571. — *See also* Money.
Simcoe, J. G., *Queen's Rangers*, 306.
Simms, J. B., *Frontiersmen*, 320.
Simms, W. G., *S. C.*, 85; hist. novels, 188; *War Poetry*, 190; *Marion*, 309.
Simons, A. M., *Social Forces*, 406; *Am. Farmer*, 513.
Simpson, J. H., *Great Basin*, 433.
Sims case, 449.
Sinclair, A., *Two Years in Ala.*, 481.
Sinclair, W. A., *Aftermath*, 496.
Single tax movement, 523.
Singleton, Arthur, *Letters*, 100.
Sioux Indians, relations, 506.
Skidmore, T., *Rights to Property*, 408.
Slade, Wm., antislavery congressman, 425.
Slater, Samuel, biog., 357.
Slaughter, Philip, *Bristol Parish*, 87; *St. George's Parish*, 87; *St. Mark's Parish*, 87.
Slave insurrections, 385, 421.
Slave trade, early Eng., 256; colon., 327; under Confederation, 334; fed. tax, 353; prohibition, 384; piracy, 385; domestic, 426; Quintuple treaty, 427; joint cruising, 427; domestic, in D. C., 447; revival threatened, 459; treaty with Eng. (1862), 486; interstate, forbidden, 486. — *See also* Slavery.
Slavery, importance of controversy, 6, 11; introduced in Va., 259; colon., 327; Northwest ordinance, 330, 334; taxation question under Confederation, 334; northern state emancipations, 335; effect of cotton gin, 353; Missouri compromise, 385; and Panama Congress, 388; split of churches on, 391; conditions (1830–60), 421; arguments, 423; in D. C., 425; foreign relations and cases, 427; and Texas, 434, 439; Wilmot proviso, 445; compromise of 1850, 447; Kan.-Neb. act, 452; Kansas struggle, 454; Dred Scott decision, 458; John Brown's raid, 458; as cause of Civil war, 462; in constitution of Confed. States, 472; public opinion during Civil war, 485; confiscation acts, 486; abolished in D. C. and territories, 486; Emancipation proclamations, 486; southern state emancipations, 486; Thirteenth amendment abolishes, 486, 489. — *See also* Abolitionists, Antislavery, Colonization, Fugitive slaves, Negroes, Slave trade, Social conditions.
Slichter, C. S., *Recent Criticism of Am. Scholarship*, 584.
Slidell, John, Mex. mission, 441; *Trent* affair, 480.
Sloane, W. M., *French War*, 40; *Aspects of La. Purchase*, 366.
Slossen, E. E., *Great Am. Universities*, 584.
Sluyter, Peter, *Journal*, 93.
Small, A. W., *Social Science*, 18; *Beginnings of Am. Nationality*, 314.
Smalley, E. V., *N. P. R. R.*, 531.
Smedes, S. D., *Southern Planter*, 422.
Smet, P. J. de, biog., 436.
Smiley, J. C., *Denver*, 502.
Smith, A. H., *China in Convulsion*, 558; *China and Am.*, 558.
Smith, Adam, *Wealth of Nations*, 292.
Smith, B. E., *Century Cyclop. of Names*, 39.
Smith, Buckingham, *Cabeza*, 249.
Smith, C. W., *Check-List of Books of Pacific Northwest*, 88.
Smith, E. A., *Confed. Treasury*, 473.
Smith, E. F., *Commentaries*, 411.
Smith, Edward, *Cobbett*, 106.
Smith, F. E., *Internat. Law and Russo-Jap. War*, 558.
Smith, G. G., *G. F. Pierce*, 496
Smith, G. R., biog., 118.
Smith, Geo., *Delaware County*, 83.
Smith, Gerrit, biog., 118; abolitionist, 423.
Smith, Goldwin, *U. S.*, 41; *Garrison*, 108; *Eng. and War of Secession*, 481.
Smith, H. K., *Lowell Institute*, 392.
Smith, J. A., *Spirit of Am. Govt.*, 575.
Smith, J. C., *Western Tourist*, 56.
Smith, J. E. A., *Pittsfield*, 72.
Smith, J. R., *Iron and Steel*, 400.
Smith, J. V., *Report*, 144.
Smith, James, *Tours*, 100.
Smith, Jedediah, exploration, 432.
Smith, Capt. John, biog., 118; *True Relation*, 259; *General Historie*, 259; *Map of Va.*, 259; credibility, 259; on N. Eng. coast, 272; *Description of N. Eng.*, 272; *N. Eng. Trials*, 272.
Smith, Joseph, and Mormonism, 434.
Smith, Joshua H., *Authentic Narrative*, 307.
Smith, Justin H., *Annex. of Texas*, 85; *Arnold's March*, 303.
Smith, P. H., *Acadia*, 288.
Smith, R. Mayo, *Emigration and Immigration*, 61; *Com. Policy*, 518; *Statistics and Economics*, 561.
Smith, Richard, *Journal*, 100; *Diary*, 304.
Smith, Mrs. S. H., *Forty Years*, 175.
Smith, Samuel, *Nova Cæsaria*, 76.
Smith, Seba, *Major Jack Downing*, 188.
Smith, T. C., *Parties and Slavery*, 392; *Liberty and Free-Soil Parties*, 424; *Expansion*, 500.
Smith, W. B., *Color Line*, 537.
Smith, W. H., *Indiana*, 68.
Smith, W. P., *Ry. Celebrations*, 404.
Smith, Wm., *New York*, 77.
Smith, Wm., *Brief State of Pa.*, 271.
Smith, Wm. Roy, *South Carolina*, 85; *Sectionalism in Pa.*, 321.
Smith, Wm. Rudolph, *Wisconsin*, 88.
Smith, Wm. Russell, *History of the Convention*, 132.
Smith, Z. F., *Kentucky*, 68.
Smucker, S. M., *Mormons*, 435.
Smyth, A. H., ed. of Franklin's *Writings*, 165; *Philadelphia Mags.*, 393.
Smyth, J. F. D., *Tour*, 100.
Smythe, Sir Thos., 258.
Smythe, W. E., *Arid America*, 432.
Snedden, D. S., *Vocational Educ.*, 584.
Snow, A. H., *Admin. of Dependencies*, 552.

Snow, C. H., *Boston*, 71.
Snow, Freeman, *Treaties and Topics*, 389.
Snow, L. F., *College Curriculum*, 393.
Snyder, W. L., *Interstate Com. Act*, 562.
Social conditions, study, 11; in French Canada, 252; in French La., 253; frontier, 319; colon., 327; pioneer society and ideals, 375; development (1820–60), 391; northern and southern (1861), 462; single tax movement, 523; present-day southern, 536; Pacific coast traits, 546; in 20th century, 581. — *See also* Cost of living, Economic conditions, Education, Government, Labor, Literature, Occupations, Pensions, Population, Reform, Religion, Slavery, Social life, Socialism.
Social life, colon., 291, 327; (1820-60), 391; present conditions, 581. — *See also* Social conditions.
Socialism, communities (1820-60), 405; Bellamy, 523; and labor, 567; periodicals, 569; increase, 572.
Soley, J. R., *Porter*, 116; *Blockade*, 481.
Somers, Robt., *Southern States*, 494.
Sonnenschein, W. S., *Best Books*, 34.
Soto, H. de, explorations, 248.
Soule, C. C., *Lawyer's Reference Manual*, 34.
Sound Currency, 542.
Sound dues, 451.
Sources, use, 22, 220; in home study, 27; of hist. geog., 45; classes, value and select lists, 122–181.
South, and western trade, 399; antebellum whites, 421; compared with North (1861), 462; development since 1877, 536. — *See also* Civil war, Confederate States, Reconstruction, Secession, Slavery, and states by name.
South America. — *See* Latin-Am.
South Carolina, hists., 84, 85; records and statutes, 146; hist. soc., 162; settlement, 264; conditions (1760), 295; western claim, 312, 330; Ga. boundary, 337; ratification, 341; nullification, 415; negro seamen acts, 427; secession, 466; and Ft. Sumter, 468, 470; reconstruction, 490; overthrow of carpetbag govt., 514. — *See also* Carolina, Colonies, South, States.
South Carolina Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
South Dakota, hists., 65; records, 146; hist. soc., 162; admission, 530. — *See also* Dakota, Northwest, States.
South Dakota Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
South in the Building of the Nation, 44.
South of the Ohio, territory, 375.
Southampton, L. I., history, 78.
Southern Cal. Hist. Soc., pubs., 159.
Southern Educ. Board, *Bulletin*, 537.
Southern Hist. Assoc., pubs., 158.
Southey, R., *Eng. Seamen*, 256.
Southold, L. I., history, 79; records, 143.
Southwest, development, 533. — *See also* Far West.
Sowell, A. J., *Texas Rangers*, 506.
Spafford, H. G., *Pocket Guide*, 56; *Gazetteer of N. Y.*, 77.
Spahr, C. B., *Present Distribution of Wealth*, 561.
Spain, Am. discoveries and conquests, 244–251; Eng. assaults on colon. policy, 256; in Am. Rev., 305; intrigue in West, 332; relations with Confederation, 335; treaty (1795), 354; convention (1802), 363; Am. war, 549. — *See also* Florida, Latin-America, Louisiana.
Spalding, A. G., *Am. National Game*, 583.
Spalding, H. H., *Missionaries*, 436.
Spangenberg, A. G., *Diary*, 321.
Spanish-America. — *See* Latin-America.
Spanish-American war, 549.
Spanish Armada, 257.
Spanish Dipl. Corresp., 550.
Sparks, E. E., *Topical Ref. Lists*, 32; *U. S.*, 41; *Expansion*, 61; *Lincoln-Douglas Debates*, 179; *Men who made Nation*, 341; *National Development*, 500.
Sparks, F. C., *Appendix*, 70.
Sparks, Jared, *Arnold*, 103; *Franklin*, 108; *Chas. Lee*, 112; *Morris*, 114; biog., 118; *Washington*, 120; *Dipl. Corresp.*, 157; ed. of Franklin's *Works*, 165; of Washington's *Writings*, 167.
Sparks, W. H., *Memories*, 175.
Sparling, S. E., *Munic. History of Chicago*, 411.
Spear, S. T., *Extradition*, 410.
Spearman, F. H., *Strategy of Great Railroads*, 505.
Spears, J. R., *Our Navy*, 61; *Am. Merchant Marine*, 400.
Specie circular, 418.
Speculation, (1832-36), 419; in gold, 498; Wall Street, 517; activity (1892), 539. — *See also* Finances, Panics.
Spedden, E. L., *Trade Union Label*, 568.
Speeches, collections, 176–180.
Speed, Thos., *Wilderness Road*, 320; *Union Cause in Ky.*, 470.
Speer, W., *Great Revival*, 377.
Speirs, F. W., *Street Ry.*, 402.
Spelling, T. C., *Injunctions*, 568.
Spelman, H., *Relation of Va.*, 259.
Spence, Jas., *Am. Union*, 411.
Spencer, D. E., *Local Govt. in Wis.*, 411.
Spencer, Ed., *T. F. Bayard*, 515.
Spicer, Jacob, *Grants*, 142.
Spooner amendment on Philippines, 551.
Spotswood, Alex., in Va., 261; *Letters*, 261; as frontier builder, 319.
Sprague, O. M. W., *Crises*, 61.
Sprague, W. B., *Annals*, 407.
Spring, L. W., *Kansas*, 68; *Mark Hopkins*, 393.
Spurr, J. E., *Yukon Diggings*, 548.
Squier, E. G., *Ancient Monuments*, 240.
Staatsarchiv, 481.
Stage travel, 399, 505.
"Stalwarts," 520.
Stamp act, 295.
Stamp Act Congress, 295; *Resolves*, 297.
Standard Oil, trust, 523, 560; case, 561.
Stanford, Leland, railroad builder, 504.
Stanhope, Earl, *Pitt*, 116.
Stanley, H. M., *Early Travels*, 507.
Stanton, E. M., biogs., 118; as sec. of war, 483.

Stanton, H. B., *Recollections*, 175.
Stanton, S. B., *Behring Sea*, 544.
Stanwood, Ed., *Tariff Controversies*, 61; *Presidency*, 61; *Blaine*, 104.
Staples, W. R., *Providence*, 84; *Doc. Hist. of Gaspee*, 300; *R. I. in Continental Cong.*, 342.
Stapleton, A. G., *Canning*, 105.
Starbuck, Alex., *Whale Fishery*, 400.
Stark, Caleb, *J. Stark*, 118.
Stark, John, biog., 118.
State Papers upon Purchase of La., 69.
State sovereignty, under Continental Congress, 313. — *See also* Federal constitution.
Staten Island, history, 79.
States, indexes of pubs., 32, 33; general bibls., 62; collections of constitutions, 131; early digests and decisions, 150, 151; lists and dates of admission, 205, 206, 375, 409, 483, 489, 502, 530, 534, 572; organization, 303; first constitutions, 313; under Confederation, 337; assumption of debts, 348; development of govt. (1820–60), 409; finances (1845–49), 443; govt. reform, 572. — *See also* Government, Union, and states by name.
Statesman's Year Book, 39.
Statistical Abstract, 318.
Statistics. — *See* Bureau.
Statutes, Brit., 130; Brit., relating to colonies, 131; of individual states, 132–150; indexes of federal, 152; federal, 153.
Statutes at Large, 153.
Steam navigation, influence on West, 375; development, 379. — *See also* Shipping.
Stearns, Chas., *H. B. Brown*, 450.
Stearns, E. S., *Rindge*, 75.
Stebbing, W., *Ralegh*, 256.
Stedman, Chas., *Am. War*, 302.
Stedman, E. C., *Library of Am. Literature*, 179; poems illustrative of Am. history, 189; *Poets of Am.*, 393.
Steedman, C. J., *Bucking the Sage Brush*, 503.
Steele, M. F., *Am. Campaigns*, 550.
Steele, O. G., *Western Guide Book*, 56.
Steevens, G. W., *Land of the Dollar*, 101.
Steffens, Lincoln, *Shame of Cities*, 574.
Steiner, B. C., *Guilford*, 65; *Descriptions of Md.*, 70; *McHenry*, 113; *Beginnings of Md.*, 262; *Slavery in Conn.*, 328; *Md.'s Adoption of Const.*, 342; *Higher Educ. in Conn.*, 393.
Steiner, E. A., *Immigrant Tide*, 528; *Trail of Immigrant*, 528.
Stephen, Jas., *War in Disguise*, 370.
Stephens, A. H., *War between the States*, 44; biogs., 118; as vice president of Confederate States, 472.
Stephens, F. F., *Transitional Period*, 347.
Stephens, H. B., *Cartier*, 250.
Stephens, J. L., *Travel*, 242.
Stephens, L. G., *Letters from an Ore. Ranch*, 547.
Stephenson, G. T., *Race Distinctions*, 490.
Sterns, W. P., *Foreign Trade*, 400.
Steuben, Wm. von, biog., 118.
Stevens, Chas. Ellis, *Sources of Const.*, 297.
Stevens, Chas. Emery, *Anthony Burns*, 450.
Stevens, F. E., *Black Hawk War*, 420.
Stevens, Hazard, *I. I. Stevens*, 118.
Stevens, Henry, *Franklin's Life and Writings*, 165; *Hist. and Geog. Notes*, 239.
Stevens, Horace, *Looters of Public Domain*, 578.
Stevens, I. I., biog., 118.
Stevens, J. A., *Gallatin*, 108.
Stevens, L. T., *Cape May County*, 76.
Stevens, Thaddeus, biog., 118; and reconstruction, 489.
Stevens, W. B., *Georgia*, 67.
Stevenson, A. E., *Something of Men*, 523.
Stevenson, E. L., *Portolan Charts*, 51; *Maps illus. Early Discovery*, 51.
Stewart, A. T., and retail trade, 406.
Stewart, Alvan, *Writings*, 422.
Stewart, W. M., *Reminiscences*, 494; *Silver*, 542.
Stickney, A. B., *Ry. Problem*, 513.
Stickney, Albert, *State Control of Trade*, 513.
Stickney, J. S., *Pioneer Indianapolis*, 376.
Stiles, H. R., *Windsor*, 65; *Brooklyn*, 77.
Still, Wm., *Underground Railroad*, 428.
Stillé, C. J., *Dickinson*, 107; *Wayne*, 120; *Beaumarchais*, 308; *How a Free People conduct a War*, 479; *Sanitary Com.*, 485.
Stilz, W., *Ry. Coöperation*, 524.
Stimson, A. L., *Express Cos.*, 405.
Stimson, F. J., *Law of Constitutions*, 344; *Am. Constitution*, 344; *Handbook to Labor Laws*, 524; *Labor in Relation to Law*, 524.
Stirling, Earl of. — *See* Alexander (Wm.).
Stirling, Jas., *Letters*, 101.
Stith, Wm., *Virginia*, 88.
Stoddard, Amos, *Sketches of La.*, 69.
Stoddard, W. O., *Garfield*, 108; *Monroe*, 114; *Men of Business*, 407.
Stone, A. H., *Miss.'s Constitution*, 490; *Race Problems*, 496.
Stone, F. D., *Pa. and Fed. Const.*, 145; *Plans for Union*, 312.
Stone, W. L., *New York*, 78; *Wyoming*, 83; *Sir Wm. Johnson*, 111; *Reports*, 143; *Campaign of Burgoyne*, 306; *Brant*, 306.
Stone, Wm., in Md., 263.
Stone River, battle, 475.
Storey, Moorfield, *Sumner*, 119; *E. R. Hoar*, 511; *Blaine's Record*, 511; *Dependencies*, 553.
Story, Jos., biog., 118; *Writings*, 167; *Commentaries*, 304; *Conflict of Laws*, 411.
Story, W. W., *J. Story*, 118.
Stoughton, John, *Penn*, 116.
Stovall, P. A., *Toombs*, 119.
Stowe, H. B., hist. novels, 188.
Strachey, W., *Travail into Va.*, 257.
Strahorn, Mrs. C. H., *15,000 Miles by Stage*, 533.
Strahorn, R. E., *Handbook of Wy.*, 503.
Straus, O. S., *R. Williams*, 121.
Streeter, S. F., *Maryland*, 263.
Streeter, T. W., *Bennington*, 306.
Streightoff, F. H., *Standard of Living*, 583.
Strickland, W. P., *Asbury*, 377.
Strikes. — *See* Labor.
Strobel, P. A., *Salzburgers*, 265.
Strobridge, I. M., *Miners' Mirage Land*, 534.

Strong, Josiah, *Expansion*, 553.
Strong, M. M., *Ter. of Wis.*, 89.
Strong, W. B., railroad builder, 533.
Stryker, W. S., *Trenton and Princeton*, 305.
Stuart, Granville, *Montana*, 503.
Stuart, Jas., *Three Years*, 101; *Refutation of Aspersions*, 101.
Studer, J. H., *Columbus*, 81.
Studies in Philanthropy, 583.
Sturges *v.* Crowninshield, 381.
Sturgis, Wm., *Oregon Question*, 438.
Stuvé, Bernard, *Illinois*, 67.
Stuyvesant, Peter, biog., 118; in New Neth., 266.
Subdivisions of Am. history, 12–14.
Suffolk Co., Mass., records, 139. — *See also* Boston.
Suffrage, colon., 325; conditions (1820–60), 409; Fourteenth and Fifteenth amendments, 489, 495; Australian ballot, 521; disfranchisement of negroes, 536. — *See also* Government.
Sugar, trust and scandal, 560, 561.
Sullivan, J. W., *Direct Legislation*, 574.
Sullivan, Jas., *Maine*, 70; biog., 118.
Sullivan, John, biogs., 118, 329; expedition, 305.
Sullivan, M. K., *Alaska*, 548.
Sullivan, W. J. L., *Twelve Years in the Saddle*, 535.
Sullivan, Wm., *Familiar Letters*, 175.
Sullivan and Cromwell, *Docs. relative to a Trans-Isthmian Canal*, 527.
Summerhayes, Martha, *Vanished Arizona*, 507.
Summers, L. P., *Southwest Va.*, 320.
Sumner, Chas., biogs., 118, 119; *Works*, 167; in Senate, 447; assault on, 456; and foreign relations, 480; reconstruction theory, 489; Lamar's oration, 495; and Alabama claims, 500.
Sumner, H. L., *Labor Problems*, 524.
Sumner, W. G., *Hamilton*, 109; *Jackson*, 111; *Financier*, 115; *Am. Currency*, 334; *Conquest of U. S. by Spain*, 553.
Sumter, Fort, episode, 468, 470.
Superintendent of Documents, *Table and Index*, 37; *Cat. of Public Docs.*, 37; *Monthly Cat.*, 37; *Price Lists*, 548.
Supreme court, reports, 154, 155; digests, 156; organization, 346; great const. decisions, 381; Dred Scott case, 458; and arbitrary govt., 483; and reconstruction, 490, 495; legal tender decisions, 498; Granger decisions, 512, 523; income tax decision, 539; Insular cases, 552; interpretation of interstate commerce and antitrust laws, 560, 567; Debs case, 567. — *See also* Judiciary.
Surface, G. T., *Geog. of Va.*, 320.
Surplus revenue, early periods, 419; distribution (1836), 419; problem and increased appropriations (1882–90), 520, 522, 539. — *See also* Finances.
Survey, 569.
Susquehanna Company, 319.
Susquehannah Title Stated, 271.
Sutcliff, Robt., *Travels*, 101.
Sutcliffe, A. C., *Robt. Fulton*, 401.
Sutton, R., *Report of Convention*, 136.
Sutton, Mass., history, 72.
Swain, G. F., *Water-Power*, 400.
Swain, H. H., *R. R. Receiverships*, 513.
Swain, J. B., *Clay*, 106.
Swan, J. G., *Northwest Coast*, 88.
Swank, J. M., *Progressive Pa.*, 83; *Iron*, 292.
Swayze, F. J., *Regulation of Ry. Rates*, 564.
Swedish settlements on Delaware, 269.
Swift, E., *Graduates of West Point in Indian Wars*, 506.
Swift, F. H., *School Funds*, 393.
Swift, H. W., *Mass. Digest*, 151.
Swift, Lindsay, *Franklin*, 108; *Brook Farm*, 406.
Sydow, Emil von, *N. Am.* (map), 50.
Syllabi, 12–14.
Symmes purchase, 332.

Taft, Lorado, *Am. Sculpture*, 394.
Taft, W. H., *Addresses*, 167; in Philippines, 551; provisional govt. in Cuba, 552; *Special Report on Philippines*, 553; *Philippines*, 554; *Four Aspects of Civic Duty*, 554; *Present Day Problems*, 554; on internat. peace, 555; trust prosecutions, 561; and tariff, 570; election, 572; legislative program, 572; *Polit. Issues*, 575; and conservation, 577.
Tailfer, Pat., *Narrative of Ga.*, 265.
Talbot, Mrs. E. A., *Armstrong*, 496.
Talbot, Ethelbert, *My People*, 532.
Tall, L. L., *Bibl. of History*, 30.
Tallack, Wm., *Friendly Sketches*, 101.
Tallent, A. D., *Black Hills*, 503.
Tallmadge, Benj., *Memoir*, 307.
Tallmadge, Jas., Mo. compromise, 385.
Taney, R. B., biog., 119; chief justice, 412; removal of deposits, 417.
Tanner, E. P., *Province of N. J.*, 268.
Tanner, H. S., *Am. Traveller*, 56; *Central Traveller*, 56; *View of Central U. S.*, 56; *Canals and R. Rs.*, 404.
Tappan, Arthur, biog., 395.
Tappan, Lewis, *A. Tappan*, 395.
Tarbell, I. M., *Lincoln*, 377; *Tariff*, 499; *Standard Oil*, 518.
Tarbox, I. N., *Raleigh*, 257.
Tariff, Townshend acts, 298; under Confederation, 337; first fed. act, 348; later increases, 348; home market argument, 375; development of protection (1812-20), 379; act of 1824, 388; of 1828, 388; Harrisburg Convention, 388; and nullification, 415; compromise of 1833, 416; Tyler's vetoes and act of 1842, 430; act of 1846, 443; of 1857, 459; Civil war acts, 478; postbellum acts, 498, 510; commission (1882), 520; act of 1883, 520; Cleveland's message, 522; Mills bill (1888), 522; as issue (1888), 522; McKinley act (1890), 539; Democratic "pop-gun" bills, 539; Wilson-Gorman act (1894), 539; Dingley act (1897), 540; with dependencies, 552; maximum and minimum negotiations, 555, 570; continuance of Dingley act, 570; basis of demand for revision, 570;

Payne-Aldrich act (1909), 570; board, 570; public discontent, 570. — *See also* Reciprocity, Taxation.
Tarleton, Banastre, *Campaigns*, 309.
Taswell-Langmead, T. P., *Eng. Const. Hist.*, 324.
Taussig, F. W., *Topics*, 32; *Tariff History*, 61; *State Papers*, 179; *Silver Situation*, 516; *Iron Industry*, 532; *Treasury in 1894–96;* 540; *Reciprocity*, 540; *Economics*, 561; other tariff articles, 570.
Taxation, contest in colon. Pa., 271; single-tax movement, 523. — *See also* Finances, Internal revenue, Tariff.
Taylor, F. W., *Scientific Management*, 579; *Shop Management*, 579.
Taylor, H. C., *Econ. Problems in Agri. by Irrigation*, 578.
Taylor, Hannis, *Eng. Constitution*, 279.
Taylor, J. H., *Frontier and Indian Life*, 507; *Kaleidoscopic Lives*, 507.
Taylor, J. W., *Ohio*, 81.
Taylor, John, *Letters*, 371; *Construction Construed*, 382; *New View*, 411.
Taylor, R. C., *Coal*, 403.
Taylor, Rich., *Destruction*, 477.
Taylor, T. E., *Running Blockade*, 477.
Taylor, W. B., *Henry and Telegraph*, 402.
Taylor, Zachary, biog., 119; in Mex. war, 441; *Letters*, 443; election, 445; and Southern Whigs, 445; and compromise, 447; death, 447.
Teachers' College Record, article on hist. methods, 21.
Teaching, training and function of teachers, 23; use of libraries, 191–197; class exercises and tests, 198–215; reading, 216–221; lectures, 222–227; written work, 228–235.
Teggart, F. J., *Notes to Lewis and Clark*, 366.
Telegraph, development, 399; Atlantic cable, 399.
Tello Mendozo, R., *Venezuela*, 556.
Temperance movement, (1820–60), 391; Prohibition party, 522; present conditions, 582.
Temperley, H. W. V., *Canning*, 105; *Latin-Am. Policy of Canning*, 387.
Temple, Geo., *Am. Tourist's Companion*, 56.
Ten Brook, Andrew. *Am. State Universities*, 393.
Tennessee, hists., 85; records and statutes, 147; hist. soc., 162; settlement, 319, 331, 332; State of Franklin, 337; Ter. South of the Ohio, 375; admission, 375; secession, 470; milit. govt., 489; Democrats regain control, 495. — *See also* South, States, West.
Tennessee Coal and Iron incident, 561.
Tennessee Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Tenure of Office act, 489; repeal, 521.
Ternaux-Compans, H., *Voyages*, 245.
Territories, *Organic Acts*, 46; ordinances under Confederation, 330; slavery question under Confederation, 335; organ. of La. purchase, 365; list and dates of formation, 375, 409, 502, 533; Mo. compromise on slavery, 385; govt., 409; Wilmot proviso, 445; theories of control, 445; compromise of 1850, 447; Kan.-Neb. act, 452; slavery and Dred Scott decision, 458; slavery abolished in, 486. — *See also* Dependencies.
Territory, European claims, 236, 255; by treaty of 1783, 310, 316; state claims and cessions, 312, 330, 353; Indian cessions, 319, 354, 375, 419. — *See also* Annexations, Boundaries, Geography, Public lands, Territories.
Terry, B., *Heimstätten-Gesetz-Bewegung*, 508.
Terry, S. H., *Retailer's Manual*, 408.
Texas, bibl., 85; hists., 85, 86; records and statutes, 147; hist. soc., 162; and La. purchase, 365; admission, 409; settlement and independence, 433; annex., 439; act of 1850, 447; secession, 466; reconstruction, 495; Democrats regain control, 495; growth, 534. — *See also* South, Southwest, States.
Texas Hist. Assoc., pubs., 162.
Texas *v.* White, 490.
Textbooks, character, 3; list, 13, 14; use, 199.
Textor, L. E., *Official Relations with Sioux*, 506.
Thacher, J. B., *Columbus*, 244.
Thacher, Jas., *Journal*, 175; *Plymouth*, 274.
Thackery, W. M., hist. novel, 188.
Thayer, Eli, *Kansas Crusade*, 455.
Thayer, J. B., *Marshall*, 114; *Cases*, 179; *Legal Tender*, 499.
Thayer, W. M., *New West*, 533.
Thayer, Walter, *Transp. on Gt. Lakes*, 532.
Thesis system, 232–234.
Thevet, André, *France Antarctique*, 250.
Things as They Are, 91.
Thirteenth amendment, 486, 489.
Thomas, C., *N. Am. Archæology*, 240.
Thomas, D. Y., *Milit. Govt.*, 446; *Southern Non-Slaveholders*, 460.
Thomas, E. S., *Reminiscences*, 175.
Thomas, F. W., *Randolph*, 117.
Thomas, G. H., biogs., 119.
Thomas Gabriel, *Pensilvania*, 83; *West-New-Jersey*, 269.
Thomas, Isaiah, *Printing*, 126.
Thomas, J. J., *Fruit Culturist*, 403.
Thomas, Jos., *Dict. of Biog.*, 40.
Thomas, T. P., *Govt. of Baltimore*, 411.
Thomas, W. H., *Am. Negro*, 537.
Thomas, W. I., *Source Book*, 243.
Thompson, B. F., *Long Island*, 78.
Thompson, C. M., *Admin. of Ford*, 401.
Thompson, C. W., *Movement of Wheat-Growing*, 531.
Thompson, D. P., hist. novel, 188.
Thompson, David, journals, 93.
Thompson, F. M., *Complete Guide*, 503.
Thompson, F. M., *Greenfield*, 72.
Thompson, Geo., Eng. abolitionist, 423.
Thompson, Geo., *Prison Life*, 425.
Thompson, H. C., *China and Powers*, 558.
Thompson, J. G., *Wheat Growing*, 400.
Thompson, J. W., *Bibl. upon teaching History*, 15.

Thompson, L. A., *Manual*, 134.
Thompson, Maurice, *Louisiana*, 70.
Thompson, R. W., *Recollections*, 175.
Thomson, P. G., *Bibl. of Ohio*, 79; *Cat. of Books relating to Ohio*, 79.
Thornton, J. Q., *Ore. and Cal.*, 81.
Thornton, J. W., *Pulpit of Am. Rev.*, 179.
Thorpe, F. N., *Const. Hist. of Am. People*, 44; *Const. Hist. of U. S.*, 44; *Am. People*, 44; *Constitutions and Charters*, 131; *Recent Const. Making*, 531.
Three Years on the Kansas Border, 93.
Thruston, G. P., *Tenn. Antiquities*, 242.
Thurston, R. H., *Fulton*, 108.
Thwaites, R. G., *Colonies*, 41; *Wisconsin*, 89; *Early Western Travels*, 90; *Jesuit Relations*, 90; ed. of Lewis and Clark, 97; *Boone*, 104; *France in Am.*, 252; *Rev. on Upper Ohio*, 307; *How Clark won Northwest*, 307; *Dunmore's War*, 323; *Lead Mining*, 400.
Thwing, C. F., *Higher Educ.*, 393; *Educ. since Civil War*, 584.
Ticknor, Geo., *Prescott*, 116.
Ticonderoga, capture, (1759), 289; (1775), 301.
Tiedeman, C. G., *Unwritten Constitution*, 464.
Tiernan, M. F. S., hist. novel, 188.
Tiffany, Francis, *D. L. Dix*, 107.
Tiffany, Joel, *Treatise on Govt.*, 344.
Tiffany, N. M., hist. novels, 188.
Tiffany, O. E., *Canadian Rebellion*, 429.
Tilden, S. J., biog., 119; *Writings and Speeches*, 167; *Letters*, 494; election of 1876, 514.
Tillinghast, J. A., *Negro*, 496.
Timber and Stone act, 508.
Timber Culture act, 508; repeal, 576.
Tipple, E. S., *Asbury's Journal*, 378.
Titherington, R. H., *Span.-Am. War*, 61.
Tobacco, culture, 398; trust, 560, 561. — *See also* Agriculture.
Tocqueville, Alexis de, *Democracy*, 316.
Todd, C. B., *New York*, 78.
Toleration act in Md., 263.
Tolman, W. H., *Handbook of Sociological Information*, 525; *Social Engineering*, 567.
Tompkins, D. B., *Public Papers*, 373.
Tompkins, H. B., *Bibl. Jeffersonia*, 111; *Burr Bibl.*, 368.
Toombs, Robt., biog., 119.
Topeka, history, 68.
Topical outlines, 31, 32.
Topical system of written work, 229; subjects, 230; composition, 231.
Topics in Am. history, works containing lists, 12–14.
Toppan, R. N., *Randolph*, 285.
Torfæus, Thormodus, *Hist. Vinlandiæ*, 243.
Tourgée, A. W., hist. novels, 188, 497.
Tower, Charlemagne, *La Fayette*, 112.
Tower, W. S., *Am. Whale Fishery*, 400.
Town government. — *See* Local government.
Townsend, E. D., *Anecdotes*, 477.
Townsend, G. A., *Non-Combatant*, 477.
Townshend acts, 298.
Tracy, F. B., *Canada*, 372.
Tracy, H. A., *Sutton*, 72.
Trans-Missouri Freight Assoc. case, 560.
Transportation. — *See* Commerce.
Transylvania Company, 319.
Travel, use of books on, 89; bibl. and criticisms, 89; collections, 90; select list, 90-102; conditions (1820-60), 399; overland stage, 505. — *See also* Commerce.
Travis, I. D., *Clayton-Bulwer Treaty*, 452.
Treasury, independent, first act and repeal, 428; revived, 443. — *See also* Finances.
Treat, P. J., *Land System*, 61.
Treaties, collections, 51, 52; affecting European claims to N. Am., 237; St. Germain (1632), 251; Utrecht (1713), 251; Paris (1763), 289; French alliance (1778), 308; Paris (1783), 310; Ft. Stanwix (1768), 319; Jay (1794), 354; Escurial (1795), 354; various Indian, 354; La. purchase (1803), 365; Ghent (1814), 372; Eng. commercial and fishery (1815, 1818), 379; Spanish (1819), 383; Quintuple (1841), 427; Ashburton (1842), 427, 437; on Oregon boundary (1846), 437; Guadaloupe Hidalgo (1848), 442; New Granada (1846), 451; Clayton-Bulwer (1850), 451; Washington (1871), 500; Paris (1898), 549; Hay-Pauncefote (1901), 554; Panama (1903), 554; Hague conference, 555; Chinese, 557; Portsmouth (1905), 557. — *See also* Foreign relations.
Trego, C. B., *Geog. of Pa.*, 320.
Tremain, Mary, *Slavery in D. C.*, 353.
Trent, W. P., *R. E. Lee*, 112; *Am. Literature*, 393; *Southern Statesmen*, 416; *Dominant Forces*, 536; *Tendencies of Higher Life*, 536.
Treat affair, 480.
Trenton, battle, 304; history, 306.
Trescot, W. H., *Dipl. of Rev.*, 308; *Dipl. Hist. under Washington*, 354; *Narrative of Negotiations*, 469; *Reconstruction in S. C.*, 494.
Trevelyan, G. O., *Am. Revolution*, 61.
Trinity Col. Hist. Soc., pubs., 161.
Tripolitan war, 363.
Trist, N. P., Mex. mission, 442.
Trollope, Anthony, *North America*, 101.
Trollope, F. M., *Domestic Manners*, 101.
Trott, Nich., *Laws of Brit. Plantations*, 131; *Laws of S. C.*, 146.
Troup, G. M., biog., 121.
Trowbridge, J. T., hist. novel, 188; *South*, 494.
Trowbridge, John, *Morse*, 115.
Truck gardening in South, 536.
True, F. W., *U. S. Nat. Museum*, 392.
True and Impartial State of Pa., 271.
True Declaration of Va., 259.
True Relation concerning N. Eng., 279.
Trumbull, Benj., *Conn.*, 65.
Trumbull, J. H., *Books printed in Conn.*, 64; *Hartford Co.*, 65; *Blue Laws*, 283; *Hist. Notes*, 394.
Trumbull, John, *Autobiog.*, 175.
Trusts, early, 523; antitrust act, 523; rise, 560; decisions limiting scope of antitrust act, 560; special, 560, 561;

state regulation, 561; investigations and prosecutions, 561; attitude toward fed. regulation, 561. — *See also* Economic conditions, Interstate commerce.
Tryon Co., N. Y., history, 79.
Tucker, G. F., *Monroe Doctrine*, 387; *Internat. Law*, 481; *Income Tax*, 541.
Tucker, G. M., *Am. Agri. Periodicals*, 377.
Tucker, Geo., *U. S.*, 44; *Jefferson*, 111.
Tucker, H. St. G., *Const. Law*, 314.
Tucker, J. R., *Constitution*, 344.
Tucker, St. G., hist. novel, 188; *Blackstone's Commentaries*, 345.
Tucker, Samuel, biog., 119.
Tuckerman, Bayard, *Lafayette*, 112; *Stuyvesant*, 118.
Tuckerman, H. T., *America*, 89.
Tuckerman, Jos., and the poor, 397.
Tudor, Wm., *Otis*, 115.
Tullidge, E. W., *Salt Lake City*, 461.
Tunell, G. G., *Ry. Mail Service*, 402; *Statis. of Lake Commerce*, 518; *Transp. on Gt. Lakes*, 518; *Flour and Grain Traffic*, 518; *Second Income Tax*, 540.
Turner, F. J., *Old West*, 319; *Western State-Making*, 321; *Significance of Frontier*, 332; *Genet's Attack on La.*, 355; *Policy of France*, 355; *Dipl. Contest for Miss. Valley*, 355; *New West*, 375; *Pioneer Ideals*, 377; *Middle West*, 508; *Problem of West*, 541; *Social Forces in Am. History*, 573; *Contributions of West*, 573.
Turner, O., *Holland Purchase*, 77; *Phelps and Gorham's Purchase*, 78.
Turot, Henri, *Aguinaldo*, 553.
Tuttle, C. R., *Ind.*, 68; *Wis.*, 89.
Tuttle, D. S., *Reminiscences*, 503.
Tutuila, annexation, 551.
Twain, Mark. — *See* Clemens (S. L.).
Tweed Ring, 510.
Twentieth Century Biog. Dict., 38.
Twichell, J. H., *J. Winthrop*, 121.
Twining, Thos., *Travels*, 101.
Twiss, Travers, *Oregon Ter.*, 438; *Law of Nations*, 481.
Twitchell, R. E., *New Mexico*, 76.
Twitchell, W. I., *Pathfinder*, 18.
Tyler, John, biog., 119; admin., bank and tariff vetoes, 430; northeastern boundary, 437; Texas, 439; and election of 1844, 439.
Tyler, L. G., *Tylers*, 119; *England in Am.*, 256; *Parties and Patronage*, 410; *Habeas Corpus*, 484.
Tyler, M. C., *Am. Lit. during Colon. Times*, 61; *Lit. Hist. of Am. Revolution*, 61; *Henry*, 110.
Tyler, Samuel, *Taney*, 119.
Tyson, P. T., *Geol. of Cal.*, 432.

Ulmann, Albert, *Landmark History*, 267.
Uncle Tom's Cabin, 449.
Underground railroad, 426, 449.
Underhill, John, *Newes from Am.*, 282.
Union, N. Eng. Confederation, 283; Albany Congress, 289; Stamp Act Congress, 295; first Continental Congress, 298; Association, 298; committees of correspondence, 301; summary of early efforts, 311; state sovereignty under Continental Congress, 313. — *See also* Confederation, Dependencies, Federal constitution, Reconstruction, Secession, Territories.
Union leagues, 495.
Union party, 483.
United Netherland Co., 266.
United States. — Bureaus, departments, etc., will be found under these words.
United States Brewers' Assoc., *Year Book*, 583.
United States Catalog, 33.
United States Reports, 155.
United States Steel Corporation, 560; investigation, 563.
United States *v.* Peters, 381.
Updike, Wilkins, *Episcopal Church in Narragansett*, 84.
Upham, C. W., *Pickering*, 116; *Witchcraft*, 287.
Upham, W. P., *Salem Records*, 139.
Upham, Warren, *Vérendrye*, 432.
Upshur, A. P., *Fed. Govt.*, 411.
Upton, Emory, biog., 119.
Upton, J. K., *Money in Politics*, 499.
Utah, hists., 86; records, 148; territory, 409, 447; admission, 534. — *See also* Far West, Mormons, States.
Utrecht, treaty, 251, 288.

Valentine, D. T., *New York*, 78.
Vallandigham, C. L., biog., 119; *Record*, 167; and secession compromise, 468; milit. trial, 483.
Vallandigham, J. L., *C. L. Vallandigham*, 119.
Van Buren, Martin, biogs., 119, 429; *Polit. Parties*, 352; *Calendar of Papers*, 414; admin., 428; defeat (1840), 430; campaign of 1844, 440; *Bancroft Corresp.*, 441; campaign of 1848, 445.
Vancouver, Geo., *Discovery*, 101; voyage, 431.
Vandalia, 319.
Vanderbilt, G. L., *Flatbush*, 77.
Van Dyke, Henry, *Am. Spirit*, 582.
Van Dyke, J. C., *Am. Art*, 61; *Desert*, 432.
Vane, Sir Henry, biog., 119; in Mass., 280.
Van Hise, C. R., *Conservation*, 48; *Concentration and Control*, 562.
Van Horne, T. B., *Gen. Thomas*, 119.
Van Oss., S. F., *Am. Railroads as Investments*, 513.
Van Santvoord, C., *E. Nott*, 393.
Van Santvoord, Geo., *Chief Justices*, 335.
Van Schaack, H. C., *P. Van Schaack*, 119.
Van Schaack, Peter, biog., 119.
Van Tramp, J. C., *Prairie and Rocky Mt. Adventures*, 503.
Van Tyne, C. H., *U. S. for Schools*, 13; *Am. Revolution*, 296; *Loyalists*, 311.
Varigny, C. V. C. de, *Women of U. S.*, 583.
Varney, G. J., *Maine*, 70.
Varnhagen, F. A. de, *Nouvelles Recherches*, 246.
Varnum, J. M., *Trevett against Weeden*, 338.
Vaughn, Robt., *Then and Now*, 503.
Veblen, T. B., *Price of Wheat*, 513.

Veech, Jas., *Monongahela*, 83; *Mason and Dixon's Line*, 270.
Veiller, L., *Tenement Problem*, 583.
Velasquez, Diego, conquers Cuba, 247.
Venable, W. H., *Buckeye Boyhood*, 396.
Venezuela-Guiana boundary, 543.
Verein für Socialpolitik, *Schriften*, 518.
Vérendrye family, exploration, 431; journals, 433.
Vérgennes, Comte de, *Mémoire Hist.*, 254.
Vermont, bibl., 86; hists., 86; records and statutes, 148; hist. soc., 162; emancipation in, 335; movement for statehood, 337; admission, 375.— *See also* New England, States.
Vermont Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Vernon, Thos., *Diary*, 175.
Verrazano, Giovanni da, voyage, 249.
Vespucci, Amerigo, 246.
Viallate, Achille, *États-Unis et le Canal*, 544.
Vicksburg, capture, 475.
Victor, F. A., *Eleven Years*, 503; *River of the West*, 503.
Victor, F. F., *Atlantis Arisen*, 533.
Victor, O. J., *Gen. Scott*, 117.
Vignaud, Henry, *Toscanelli and Columbus*, 244.
Vigne, G. T., *Six Months*, 101.
Viles, Jonas, *Mo. before 1804*, 376.
Villard, Henry, *Memoirs*, 519.
Villard, O. G., *John Brown*, 104.
Villiers du Terrage, Marc de, *Louisiane Française*, 69.
Vilmorin, H. L., *Agriculture*, 531.
Vincent, Francis, *Delaware*, 269.
Vining, E. P., *Inglorious Columbus*, 243.
Vinland, 243.
Violette, E. M., *Early Mo.*, 376.
Virginia, bibl., 86; hists., 86–88; records and statutes, 148; early decisions, 151; hist. soc., 162; Ralegh's colony, 257; charters, settlement, and early years, 258, 259; first assembly, 259; beginning of slavery, 259; charter annulled, 259; development (1624–89), 260; Bacon's rebellion, 260; provincial (1689–1760), 261; and Quakers, 284; conditions (1760), 294; resolves (1769), 298; (1773), 298; and independence, 303; western claim, 312, 330; first constitution, 313; settlement of western, 319; Pa. boundary, 332; milit. lands, 332; ratification, 341; secession, 470; reconstruction, 495; Democrats regain control, 495; "readjusters," 536; debt controversy, 555.— *See also* Colonies, South, States.
Virginia and Maryland, 263.
Virginia Company, records, 260; and Pilgrims, 274.
Virginia Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Virginia Military Tract, 375.
Virginia resolutions, 360.
Virginia State Library, *Bibl. of Colon. Va.*, 86.
Virginius incident, 500.
Virtue, G. O., *Anthracite Combinations*, 565.
Visit to Texas, 91.
Vivian, T. J., *Resources of Cal.*, 547.
Vizcaino, Sebastian, voyage, 431.
Vogt, P. L., *Sugar-Refining Industry*, 563.
Von Holst.— *See* Holst.
Voyage to Sagadahoc, 272.
Voyages.—*See* Discovery.
Vries, D. P. de, *Korte Historiael*, 267.
Vrooman, C. S., *Am. Ry. Problems*, 564.

WABASH DECISION, 523.
Wachovia, N. C., history, 79.
Waddell, J. A., *Augusta County*, 88.
Wade, B. F., biog., 119; in Senate, 447.
Wade-Davis bill, 489.
Wages.— *See* Cost of living, Labor.
Wagner, Chas., *Impressions of America*, 582.
Wait, T. B., *State Papers*, 254.
Wakarusa war, 454.
Wakeman, H. O., *C. J. Fox*, 108.
Waldseemüller, Martin, 246; *Cosmographie Introductio*, 247; map, 247.
Walker, A. H., *Sherman Law*, 524; *Standard Oil and Tobacco Cases*, 562.
Walker, C. M., *Athens County*, 81.
Walker, C. S., *Farmer's Movement*, 541.
Walker, F. A., *Making of the Nation*, 40; *Hancock*, 110; *Indian Question*, 506; *Internat. Bimetallism*, 540.
Walker, Felix, *Autobiog.*, 322.
Walker, G. L., *T. Hooker*, 110.
Walker, J. B., *N. H. Convention*, 342.
Walker, R. J., and tariff, 443; in Kansas, 454.
Walker, T. A., *Internat. Law*, 544.
Walker, Thos., exploration, 319.
Walker, Tim., *Am. Law*, 411.
Walker, W., *Congregationalism*, 273.
Walker, Wm., filibustering, 451.
Wall Street, 517; groups, 560.
Wallace, Henry, *Trusts*, 562.
Wallace, J. W., *Cases*, 155; *Wm. Bradford*, 305.
Wallace, John, *Carpet Bag Rule in Fla.*, 66.
Wallace, Lewis, hist. novel, 189.
Walpole, Horace, *Letters*, 296; *Memoirs of George III*, 308.
Walton, J. S., *Weiser*, 320.
Wansey, Henry, *Journal*, 101.
War of 1812, 371; opposition, 374.
War of the Rebellion, Official Records, 467.
Ward, G. W., *Chesapeake and Ohio Canal*, 389.
Ward, J. H., *Bishop White*, 120.
Ward, Natl., *Simple Cobbler*, 279.
Ward, Townsend, *Insurrection*, 357.
Warden, D. B., *Statis. Account*, 56.
Warden, R. B., *Chase*, 105; *Douglas*, 107.
Ware, J. E., *Emigrant's Guide*, 436.
Warfield, E. D., *Ky.'s Struggle*, 338; *Ky. Resolutions*, 360.
Warne, F. J., *Slav Invasion*, 529.
Warner, A. G., *Coöperation*, 512; *R. R. Problems*, 513.
Warner, Alan, *Real Roosevelt*, 575.
Warner, C. D., *Studies in the South and West*, 101; *Irving*, 110; *Capt. John Smith*, 118; *On Horseback*, 538; *Out Italy*, 547.
Warner, Seth, biog., 306.
Warner, N. H., history, 75.

Warren, Chas., *Am. Bar*, 61; *Harvard Law School*, 393.
Warren, Ed., *J. Warren*, 119.
Warren, J. P., *Confederation and Shays Rebellion*, 338.
Warren, John, biog., 119.
Warren, Jos., biog., 119; Massacre oration, 300.
Warren, Josiah, biog., 407.
Warren, Mercy, *Revolution*, 296.
Washburn, Emory, *Judicial History*, 279.
Washburn, Israel, *Northern Boundary*, 437.
Washburne, E. B., *Edwards Papers*, 377.
Washington, B. T., *Story of Negro*, 318; *Douglass*, 422; *Up from Slavery*, 496; *Future of Am. Negro*, 496; *Negro Problem*, 496; *Negro in the South*, 496; *Working with Hands*, 538; *Tuskegee*, 538.
Washington, Geo., biogs., 120; *Calendar of MSS.*, 167; *Calendar of Corresp.*, 167; *Writings*, 167; *Letters to Friends*, 167; *Letters to Tobias Lear*, 168; *Irvine Corresp.*, 168; *Wills*, 168; *Letters to*, 168; *Corresp. of Rev.*, 168; *Journal*, 175; *Itinerary*, 175; *After the Revolution*, 176; at Ft. Necessity, 289; commands army, 301; in Revolution (*see* American Revolution); and western lands, 323; *Crawford Corresp.*, 323; administrations, 346–358; farewell address, 358.
Washington, H. A., ed. of Jefferson's *Writings*, 165.
Washington, D. C., capture, 372. — *See also* Capital, District of Columbia.
Washington, State of, bibl., 88; hists., 88; statutes, 149; hist. soc., 162; territory, 409; admission, 530. — *See also* Far West, Oregon country, Pacific coast, States.
Washington Co., Pa., history, 82.
Washington High Schools, *Course of Study*, 32.
Washington, treaty of, 500.
Washington Univ. Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Wassenaer, N. J. de, *Historie*, 267.
Waterbury, Maria, *Freedmen*, 496.
Waterhouse, Benj., *Oregon*, 82.
Waterpower, combinations, 561; question, 577.
Waters, T. F., *Ipswich*, 72.
Watertown, Mass., *Records*, 139.
Waterways, improvement of harbors (1820–60), 398; coastwise trade (1820–60), 398; river and lake commerce (1820–60), 375, 398; canals (1820–60), 398; river and harbor bills, 388, 398, 520, 522; development of commerce of Great Lakes, 517, 530; deep waterways conventions, 530, 576; reclamation movement, conservation act, 577. — *See also* Commerce, Internal improvements.
Watkins, J. E., *Am. Rail*, 402.
Watkins, R., *Digest*, 134.
Watson, D. K., *Am. Coinage*, 516.
Watson, Elkanah, *Memoirs*, 101.
Watson, J. F., *Annals of New York*, 78; *Annals of Philadelphia*, 83.
Watson, P. B., *Pre-Columbian Bibl.*, 244.
Watson, R. G., *South America*, 247.
Watson, T. E., *Jefferson*, 111.
Watts, M. S., hist. novel, 189.
Wayland, Francis, biog., 393.
Wayland, J. W., *Ger. Element*, 320.
Wayne, Anthony, biogs., 120, 310; Indian war, 354.
Weale, B. L. P., *Reshaping of Far East*, 558; *Truce in East*, 558.
Wealth. — *See* Capital.
Weare, C. E., *Cabot's Discovery*, 255.
Weatherford, W. D., *Negro Life*, 537.
Weaver, C. C., *Internal Improvements in N. C.*, 401.
Weaver, J. B., *Call to Action*, 542.
Webb, S. B., *Corresp.*, 176.
Webb. W. S., *Cal. and Alaska*, 533.
Weber, A. F., *Growth of Cities*, 392.
Webster, Daniel, biogs., 120; *Letters*, 168; *Works*, 168; *Corresp.*, 168; reminiscences of, 172; Hayne debate, 415; Calhoun debate, 416; and Tyler, 430; Ashburton treaty, 437; and compromise (1850), 447.
Webster, H. J., *Harrison's Admin. of Ind. Ter.*, 376.
Webster, Noah, biog., 120; *Essays*, 168; *Am. Policy*, 337.
Webster, Pelatiah, *Polit. Union*, 337.
Webster, W. C., *Commerce*, 400.
Weed, Thurlow, biog., 120; *Autobiog.*, 176.
Weeden, W. B., *New Eng.*, 61; *R. I.*, 84; *Representation*, 278; *War Govt.*, 484.
Weeks, J. D., *Coke*, 400; *Glass*, 400.
Weeks, L. H., *Provincial Press*, 126.
Weeks, S. B., *Bibl. of N. C.*, 79; *Church and State in N. C.*, 321; *Relig. Development in N. C.*, 327; *Southern Quakers and Slavery*, 328; *Jos. Martin*, 332; *Beginnings of Schools in S. C.*, 393; *Negro Suffrage*, 490.
Weems, M. L., *Washington*, 120.
Weik, J. W., *Lincoln*, 112.
Weir, H. C., *Conquest of Isthmus*, 555.
Weiser, Conrad, biog., 320.
Weiss, John, *Parker*, 115.
Welby, Adlard, *Visit to N. Am.*, 101.
Weld, Isaac, *Travels*, 101.
Welde, Thos., *Short Story*, 280.
Wellcome, H. S., *Metlakahtla*, 548.
Weller, D., *Sullivan's Campaign*, 307.
Welles, Gideon, *Diary*, 176; *Lincoln and Seward*, 482.
Welling, J. C., *Addresses*, 362.
Wells, D. A., *Merchant Marine*, 357; *Reports of Revenue Com.*, 500; *Recent Finan. Experiences*, 500; *Recent Econ. Changes*, 531.
Wells, H. G., *Future in Am.*, 101.
Wells, W. V., *S. Adams*, 103.
Welsh, M. J., *Recollections*, 378.
Wendell, Barrett, *Lit. Hist. of Am.*, 61; *Cotton Mather*, 114; *Liberty, Union and Democracy*, 583.
Wentworth, John, *Reminiscences*, 176.
Wessagusset, settlement, 276.
West, importance of settlement, 6; settlement of Shenandoah Valley, 261; in Am. Rev., 304; state claims and cessions, 312, 330, 353; development under Eng.,

318; settlement (1775–89), 331; colon. contest with coast, 319; Span. intrigue, 332; movement for new states, 337; frontier posts question, 330, 334; Indian wars and foreign relations (1789–98), 354; Span. treaty (1795), 354; purchase of La., 365; Burr conspiracy, 367; settlement (1789–1820), 375; Yazoo grants, 375; pioneer society and ideals, 375; sectional rivalry for trade, 399; Granger movement, 512; later agri. discontent, 523, 539. — *See also* Far West, Northwest, Pacific coast, Southwest, Territories.
West Florida, claim and occupation, 365.
West Indies, Am. trade, 335, 379, 388. *See also* islands by name.
West Virginia, bibl., 88; hist., 88; records, 149; hist. soc., 162; admission, 483; abolishes slavery, 486. — *See also* South, States.
West Virginia Dept. of Archives, *Report*, 88.
West Virginia Hist. Soc., pubs., 162.
Westcott, Thompson, *Philadelphia*, 83.
Westerly, R. I., history, 293.
Western Federation of Miners, 566.
Western Reserve, 353, 375.
Westminster Confession, 273.
Weston, G. M., *Slavery*, 463.
Weston, P. C. J., *Docs. of S. C.*, 146.
Weston, Thos., settlement, 276.
Weston, Mass., records, 139.
Weyl, W. E., *New Democracy*, 573.
Weymouth, Geo., voyage, 258.
Wharton, Francis, *Rev. Dipl. Corresp.*, 157; *Digest*, 308; *State Trials*, 358.
Wheat, culture, 398; new regions and roller flour mills, 530. — *See also* Agriculture.
Wheaton, Henry, *Pinkney*, 116; *Reports*, 155.
Wheeler, B. I., *Unterricht und Demokratie in Am.*, 584.
Wheeler, E. P., *Supreme Court*, 347.
Wheeler, H. G., *Hist. of Congress*, 176.
Wheeler, J. H., *Hist. Sketches of N. C.*, 79; *Reminiscences of N. C.*, 79.
Wheeler, Jos., *Santiago Campaign*, 551.
Wheeler, O. D., *Wonderland*, 533.
Wheeler survey, 47.
Whelpley, J. B., *Problem of Immigrant*, 528; *Nation as Land Owner*, 578.
Whig party, origin, 412; breach with Tyler, 430; split on slavery, 447; breaking up, 456. — *See also* Elections, Politics.
Whipple, H. B., *Long Episcopate*, 507.
Whiskey rebellion, 357.
Whiskey trust, 560.
Whitaker, Epher, *Southold*, 79.
Whitcomb, S. L., *Chronol. Outlines*, 183.
White, A. D., *Autobiog.*, 176.
White, Andrew, *Relatio Itineris*, 262.
White, Anna, *Shakerism*, 406.
White, Bouck, *Daniel Drew*, 519.
White, E. E., *Service on Indian Reservations*, 507.
White, G. S., *Slater*, 357.
White, Geo., *Georgia*, 295.
White, H. K., *U. P. R. R.*, 505.
White, H. L., *Memoir*, 429.
White, Horace, *Money and Banking*, 349.
White, J. M., *Collection of Laws*, 136.
White, John, colony, 257.
White, John, *Planter's Plea*, 277.
White, P. A., biog., 532.
White, R. G., *Poetry of Civil War*, 477; *New Gospel of Peace*, 485.
White, W. A., hist. novels, 189; *Kansas*, 542; *Typical Kansas Community*, 542; *Old Order Changeth*, 573.
White, Wm., biog., 120.
Whitefield, Geo., *Journal*, 101.
Whitehead, John, *New Jersey*, 268.
Whitehead, W. A., *Perth Amboy*, 76; *East Jersey*, 76; *Contributions to East Jersey History*, 268.
Whitelock, Wm., *Jay*, 111.
Whitford, N. E., *Canal System*, 401.
Whiting, Wm., *War Powers*, 425.
Whitman, Marcus, in Oregon, 434; "saving Oregon" controversy, 434.
Whitmore, W. H., *Bibl. Sketch of Laws*, 138.
Whitney, E. L., *Govt. of S. C.*, 265.
Whitney, Eli, *Corresp.*, 353.
Whitney, J. D., *U. S.*, 48; *Report on Copper Lands*, 403; *Metallic Wealth*, 403; *Geol. of Cal.*, 432.
Whitney, L. G., *Burning of Convent*, 397.
Whitney, O. F., *Utah*, 86.
Whitten, R. H., *Admin. of Mass.*, 410.
Whittier, J. G., biogs., 120; poems illustrative of Am. history, 189; abolitionist, 423.
Whittlesey, Chas., *Cleveland*, 81.
Who's Who, 40.
Wickersham, G. W., *Recent Interpretations of Sherman Act*, 563.
Wickes, Stephen, *Medicine in N. J.*, 294.
Widney, J. P., *Cal. of South*, 547.
Widtsoe, J. A., *Dry Farming*, 579.
Wilcox, A. J., *Fed. Govt. and Slavery*, 450.
Wilcox, D. F., *City Govt.*, 424; *Munic. Franchises*, 564; *Govt. by all the People*, 574; *Am. Cities*, 583.
Wild, Ebenezer, *Journal*, 303.
Wilder, D. W., *Annals of Kan.*, 68.
Wilderness, battle, 475.
Wildman, Edwin, *Aguinaldo*, 553.
Wildman, M. S., *Money Inflation*, 540.
Wilgus, H. L., *U. S. Steel Corporation*, 563.
Wilhelm, L. W., *Local Institutions in Md.*, 326.
Wilkes, Geo., *Oregon*, 82.
Wilkeson, Frank, *Recollections*, 477.
Wilkins, M. E., hist. novels, 189.
Wilkinson, Jas., *Memoirs*, 176; and Span. intrigue, 336, 337.
Wilkinson, John, *Narrative*, 477.
Willard, Emma, biog., 393.
Willard, J. F., *Tramping with Tramps*, 569.
Willcox, W. F., *Distribution of Immigrants*, 528.
William and Mary College, 261.
Williams, A. M., *Sam Houston*, 110.
Williams, Edwin, *Statesman's Manual*, 180.
Williams, F. W., *China*, 558.
Williams, G. F., *Mass. Citations*, 151.
Williams, G. W., *Negro Race*, 62; *Negro Troops*, 463.

Williams, Gomer, *Liverpool Privateers*, 373.
Williams, J. F., *Bibl. of Minn.*, 73; *Saint Paul*, 73.
Williams, J. L., *Ter. of Fla.*, 66.
Williams, Jas., *South Vindicated*, 463; *Model Republic*, 463.
Williams, O. H., *Narrative*, 309.
Williams, R. D., *P. A. White*, 532.
Williams, R. H., *Border Ruffians*, 506.
Williams, Roger, biogs., 120, 121; in Mass., and R. I., 280.
Williams, S. W., *China*, 558; *Middle Kingdom*, 558; *Life and Letters*, 559.
Williams, Samuel, *Vermont*, 86.
Williams, Thos., biog., 429.
Williamson, Hugh, *North Carolina*, 79.
Williamson, Jos., *Bibl. of Maine*, 70.
Williamson, Passmore, case, 449.
Williamson, W. B., *Maine*, 70.
Willis, B., *Appalachians*, 48.
Willis, H. P., *Reciprocity*, 518; *Philippine Problem*, 552; *Tariff of 1909*, 570.
Willis, N. P., *Hurry-Graphs*, 396.
Willis, Wm., *Portland*, 283.
Williston, E. B., *Eloquence*, 343.
Williston, Samuel, *Semi-Arid Kan.*, 541.
Willoughby, W. F., *Territories and Dependencies*, 552; *Integration of Industry*, 562.
Willoughby, W. W., *Const. Law*, 318; *Am. Const. System*, 344; *Supreme Court*, 347.
Willsey, J. H., *Harper's Book of Facts*, 40.
Willson, Beckles, *Wolfe*, 121; *Great Company*, 252.
Wilmer, R. H., *Recent Past*, 494.
Wilmot proviso, 445.
Wilson, Adelaide, *Savannah*, 67.
Wilson, C. H., *Wanderer in Am.*, 101.
Wilson, D., *Lost Atlantis*, 243.
Wilson, D. L., *Ku Klux*, 496.
Wilson, F. T., *Federal Aid*, 491.
Wilson, G. G., *Internat. Law*, 481.
Wilson, H. M., *Irrig. Engineering*, 581.
Wilson, H. W., *Downfall of Spain*, 550.
Wilson, Henry, *Stanton*, 118; *Slave Power*, 457.
Wilson, J. G., *Appletons' Cyclop. of Am. Biog.*, 40; *New York*, 78; *Grant*, 109; *Grant's Letters*, 521.
Wilson, J. H., *Grant*, 109; *Dana*, 394; *Far East*, 558.
Wilson, J. R., *Oregon Question*, 438.
Wilson, Jas., *Works*, 168.
Wilson, Peter, *Acts of N. J.*, 142.
Wilson, S. T., *Southern Mountaineer*, 377.
Wilson, W. B., *Pa. R. R. Co.*, 402.
Wilson, Woodrow, *Division and Reunion*, 41; *Am. People*, 44; *State*, 325; *Making of the Nation*, 541; biog., 574; *Const. Govt.*, 576; *Civic Problems*, 576.
Wilson-Gorman Tariff act, 539.
Windham Co., Conn., history, 65.
Windom report, 512.
Windsor, Conn., history, 65.
Wines, E. C., *State of Prisons*, 395; *Report on Prisons*, 397.
Wines, F. H., *Punishment*, 395.
Wingfield, E. M., *Discourse*, 259.
Winser, H. J., *Great Northwest*, 56.
Winship, G. P., *Sailors' Narratives*, 90; *Coronado Expedition*, 241; *Cabot Bibl.*, 255.
Winslow, Ed., *Hypocrisy Unmasked*, 281.
Winsor, Justin, *Reader's Handbook*, 31; *America*, 44; *Cartier to Frontenac*, 62; *Miss. Basin*, 62; *Westward Movement*, 62; *Boston*, 71; *Columbus*, 106; *Index to Hist. Fiction*, 184; *Kohl Collection*, 240; *Bibl. of Ptolemy*, 240.
Winter, W. H., *Route across Rocky Mts.*, 436.
Winter, Wm., *Jeffersons*, 394.
Winthrop, John, *New England*, 168, 277; *Life and Letters*, 165; life and services, 277; and Vane, 280.
Winthrop, Margaret, biog., 277.
Winthrop, R. C., *J. Winthrop*, 121; *Addresses*, 168; biog., 442; speaker, 445.
Winthrop, R. C., Jr., *R. C. Winthrop*, 442.
Winthrop, Theo., hist. novel, 189.
Wirt, Wm., *Henry*, 110; biog., 121; *Arguments in Trial of Burr*, 368.
Wisconsin, hists., 88, 89; records and statutes, 149; hist. socs., 162, 163; territory, 409; admission, 409.—*See also* Northwest, States, West.
Wisconsin Academy, pubs., 162.
Wisconsin Hist. Soc., *Cat. of Newspaper Files*, 126; pubs., 163.
Wise, B. H., *H. A. Wise*, 410.
Wise, H. A., *Seven Decades*, 176; biog., 410.
Wise, J. S., *End of an Era*, 474.
Wister, Owen, *Grant*, 109; hist. novel, 189; *Cow Puncher*, 534.
Witchcraft delusion, 287.
Withers, A. S., *Border Warfare*, 88.
Witherspoon, John, *Works*, 168.
Wolcott, Oliver, in cabinet, 361.
Wolfe, Jas., biog., 121; Quebec, 289.
Wollaston, Capt., settlement, 276.
Woman, rights, 391, 582; labor, 405, 523, 536, 568.
Wood, C. J., *Reminiscences*, 176.
Wood, Leonard, in Cuba, 551.
Wood, Silas, *First Settlement of Towns on Long Island*, 78.
Wood, Stanley, *Over the Range*, 533.
Wood, W. B., *Civil War*, 475.
Wood, W. C. H., *Fight for Canada*, 289.
Wood, Wm., *N. Eng. Prospect*, 278.
Woodberry, G. E., *America in Literature*, 584.
Woodburn, J. A., *Am. Politics*, 62; *Am. Orations*, 178; *Am. Republic*, 344; *Am. Polit. History*, 351; *Mo. Compromise*, 385; *Stevens and Civil War*, 484.
Woodbury, Levi, *Writings*, 168.
Woodruff, C. R., *City Govt. by Commission*, 574.
Woods, H. F., *Brookline*, 71.
Woods, John, *Two Years' Residence*, 101.
Woods, R. A., *Americans in Progress*, 529; *City Wilderness*, 529.
Woodward, W. E., *Records of Salem Witchcraft*, 287.
Wooldridge, John, *Nashville*, 85.
Woolley, E. C., *Reconstruction in Ga.*, 491.

Wooley, J. G., *Temperance*, 394.
Woollen, Evans, *Labor Troubles*, 406.
Woolman, John, *Journal*, 176.
Woolsey, S. C., *Philadelphia*, 83.
Woolsey, T. D., *Internat. Law*, 481.
Woolsey, T. S., *Am. For. Policy*, 526.
Wooten, D. G., *Texas*, 85.
Worcester, D. C., *Philippine Islands*, 552.
Worcester, Mass., records, 139.
Worcester Soc. of Antiq., pubs., 160.
Worcester *v.* Georgia, 381, 419.
Works of statesmen, list, 163–168.
Worley, J. L., *Eng. and Texas*, 440.
Wormeley, K., *Other Side of War*, 485.
Wormley agreement, 514.
Worth, Jon., *Corresp.*, 494.
Worth, Nich. — *See* Page (W. H.).
Wortley, Lady E. S., *Travels*, 102.
Wright, C. D., *Practical Sociology*, 318; *Indus. Evolution*, 400; *Factory System*, 400; *Labour Organisations*, 568.
Wright, C. W., *Wool-Growing*, 389.
Wright, Frances, *Views of Society*, 102.
Wright, G. F., *Ice Age*, 240; *Finney*, 394.
Wright, H. M., *Handbook of Philippines*, 552.
Wright, J. H., *History of all Nations*, 42.
Wright, M. J., *Gen. Scott*, 117.
Wright, R. R., *Negro Educ. in Ga.*, 496.
Wright, Robt., *Oglethorpe*, 115; *Wolfe*, 289.
Wright, Silas, biog., 121.
Wright, Wm., *Big Bonanza*, 504.
Writings on Am. Hist., 34.
Writs of Assistance, 295.
Würtemberg, Herzog von, *Reise*, 102.
Wyandotte Convention, 454.
Wyatt, T., *Memoirs of Generals*, 299.
Wyckoff, W. C., *Silk*, 400.
Wyer, J. I., *Bibl. of Study of History*, 16.
Wyer, J. I., Jr., *U. S. Docs.*, 35.
Wyeth, N. J., *Corresp. and Journals*, 102; *Memoir*, 436.
Wyman, Bruce, *Control of Market*, 562; *Public Service Corporations*, 564; *Law of R.R. Rate Regulation*, 564; *Cases on Restraint of Trade*, 565.
Wyoming, hists., 89; records, 150; mining rush, 502; territory, 502; cattle, 530; admission, 530. — *See also* Far West, States.
Wyoming, Pa., histories, 82, 83; massacre, 305.
Wyoming Hist. Geol. Soc., pubs., 162.
Wyse, Francis, *America*, 102.
Wyse, L. N. B., *Rapports*, 527; *Canal de Panama*, 527.

X. Y. Z. EPISODE, 358.

YALE TODD CASE, 381.
Yale University, *Morals in Modern Business*, 561.
Yancey, W. L., biogs., 121.
Yates, J. V. N., *New York*, 77.
Yates, Robt., notes in Fed. Convention, 340.
Yazoo lands, 332, 353, 354, 375; case, 381.
Yesterday and To-day, 505.
Yoakum, Henderson, *Texas*, 86.
Yonge, Francis, *Proceedings of S. C.*, 264.
York, James, duke of, *Duke of Yorke's Laws*, 145, 267; grants, 267.
York Deeds, 137.
Yorktown, campaign (1781), 309.
Young, Alex., *Chronicles of Pilgrim Fathers*, 274; *Chronicles of Mass.*, 274.
Young, Ed., *Customs-Tariff Legis.*, 349.
Young, F. C., *Across the Plains*, 503.
Young, F. G., *Corresp. of Wyeth*, 102; *Oregon Trail*, 435; *Columbia River Improvement*, 546.
Young, J. R., *Around the World with Grant*, 492.
Young, J. S., *Cumberland Road*, 380.
Youngblood, C. L., *Ten Years on the Plains*, 503.
Younghusband, G. J., *Philippines*, 552.
Youngman, Anna, *Great Am. Fortunes*, 407; *Modern Combination*, 561.
Yucatan, Córdoba's voyage, 247; proposed annex (1848), 451.
Yung Wing, *Life*, 559.

ZAVALA, LORENZO DE, *Viage a los Estados-Unidos*, 102.
Zeisberger, David, *Diary*, 176.
Zeni brothers, story, 243.
Zeno, Nicolò, *Voyages*, 244.
Zueblin, Chas., *Am. Munic. Progress*, 583.

WITHDRAWN

3 5969 023 771 178

DATE DUE

HOWARD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

GAYLORD

PRINTED IN U.S.A.